King County Executive
Ron Sims

Metropolitan King County Council
Bob Ferguson, District 1
Larry Gossett, District 2
Kathy Lambert, District 3
Larry Phillips, District 4
Julia Patterson, District 5
Jane Hague, District 6
Pete von Reichbauer, District 7
Dow Constantine, District 8
Reagan Dunn, District 9

Department of Development and Environmental Services (DDES)
Stephanie Warden, Director
Joe Miles, Assistant Director
Harry Reinert, Special Projects Manager

Department of Natural Resources and Parks (DNRP)
Theresa Jennings, Director
Bob Burns, Deputy Director

Water and Land Resources Division (WLRD)
Mark Isaacson, Division Director
Joanna Richey, Assistant Division Director

Primary Contributing Staff (WLRD)
Curt Crawford, P.E, Stormwater Services Sec. Manager
Steve Foley, P.E., Senior Engineer
Ken Krank, P.E., Supervising Engineer
Kate Rhoads, Former Senior WQ Engineer
Sue Clarke, Former Senior WQ Engineer
Mary Lear, P.E., Engineer

Primary Supporting Staff (WLRD)
Bob Gilland, Administrative Specialist
Imelda Ngonevolalath, Administrative Specialist

Other Contributing Staff (Previous Editions)
Kelly Whiting, P.E., Former Senior Engineer
Louise Kulzer, Former Senior Water Quality Specialist
Jeff Stern, Senior Water Quality Planner
Thor Tyson, Former Geologist
Bruce Johnson, P.E., Former Senior Engineer
Linda Holden, P.E., Former Senior Engineer
Rhett Jackson, P.E., Former Senior Hydrologist
David Hartley, P.E., Former Senior Hydrologist
Randall Parsons, P.E., Former Senior Engineer
Dave Hancock, Senior Engineer
John Koon, Engineer
Jeff Jacobson, P.E., Former Engineer
Amy Carlson, Former Engineer
Don Althauser, P.E., Managing Engineer
Jennifer Gaus, Former Engineer
Randy Brake, Former Engineer
Zahid Khan, P.E., Supervising Engineer
Jeff O'Neill, P.E., Former Supervising Engineer
Ann Bethel, Former Engineer
Richard Lowe, P.E., Senior Engineer
Rebecca Marcy, Project Program Manager

Consultants (Previous Editions)
Rick Schaefer, P.E., formerly RW Beck & Associates
Malcom Leytham, PhD, P.E., Northwest Hydraulic Consultants
Gary Minton, PhD, P.E.
Carlos Herrera, P.E., Herrera Environmental Consultants
Beth Schmoyer, P.E., formerly Herrera Environmental
Mark Ewbank, P.E., Herrera Environmental Consultants
Mike Giseburt, P.E., R.W. Beck & Associates
Sarah Spear Cooke, Ph.D., Cooke Scientific Services
SvR Design Company

INTRODUCTION

TABLE OF CONTENTS AND OVERVIEW

KING COUNTY, WASHINGTON

SURFACE WATER DESIGN MANUAL

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1
DRAINAGE REVIEW AND REQUIREMENTS

Section 1.1	**Drainage Review**	**1-7**
Section 1.1.1	Projects Requiring Drainage Review	1-9
Section 1.1.2	Drainage Review Types and Requirements	1-10
Section 1.1.3	Drainage Review Required By Other Agencies	1-20
Section 1.1.4	Drainage Design Beyond Minimum Compliance	1-20
Section 1.2	**Core Requirements**	**1-21**
Section 1.2.1	Core Reqmt #1: Discharge at the Natural Location	1-21
Section 1.2.2	Core Reqmt #2: Offsite Analysis	1-23
Section 1.2.3	Core Reqmt #3: Flow Control	1-34
Section 1.2.4	Core Reqmt #4: Conveyance System	1-51
Section 1.2.5	Core Reqmt #5: Erosion and Sediment Control	1-57
Section 1.2.6	Core Reqmt #6: Maintenance and Operations	1-61
Section 1.2.7	Core Reqmt #7: Financial Guarantees and Liability	1-62
Section 1.2.8	Core Reqmt #8: Water Quality	1-64
Section 1.3	**Special Requirements**	**1-77**
Section 1.3.1	Special Reqmt #1: Other Adopted Area-Specific Requirements	1-77
Section 1.3.2	Special Reqmt #2: Flood Hazard Area Delineation	1-79
Section 1.3.3	Special Reqmt #3: Flood Protection Facilities	1-80
Section 1.3.4	Special Reqmt #4: Source Control	1-81
Section 1.3.5	Special Reqmt #5: Oil Control	1-82
Section 1.4	**Adjustment Process**	**1-85**
Section 1.4.1	Adjustment Authority	1-86
Section 1.4.2	Criteria for Granting Adjustments	1-86
Section 1.4.3	Adjustment Application Process	1-87
Section 1.4.4	Adjustment Review Process	1-88
Section 1.4.5	Request for Reconsideration Procedure	1-89

CHAPTER 2
DRAINAGE PLAN SUBMITTAL

Section 2.1	**Plans for Permits and Drainage Review**	**2-3**
Section 2.1.1	Plans Required for Permit Submittal	2-3
Section 2.1.2	Plans Required for Drainage Review	2-3
Section 2.2	**Plans Required with Initial Permit Application**	**2-5**
Section 2.2.1	Subdivision, UPD, and Binding Site Plans	2-5
Section 2.2.2	Short Subdivisions	2-6
Section 2.2.3	Commercial Site Development	2-6
Section 2.2.4	Single family Residential	2-6
Section 2.2.5	Other Permits	2-6
Section 2.3	**Drainage Review Plan Specifications**	**2-7**
Section 2.3.1	Engineering Plan Specifications	2-7
Section 2.3.2	Projects in Targeted Drainage Review	2-33
Section 2.4	**Plans Required After Drainage Review**	**2-35**
Section 2.4.1	Plan Changes After Permit Issuance	2-35
Section 2.4.2	Final Corrected Plan Submittal	2-35
Section 2.4.3	Final Plat, Short Plat, and Binding Site Plan Submittals	2-35

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER 3
HYDROLOGIC ANALYSIS & DESIGN

Section 3.1	**Hydrologic Design Standards and Principles**	**3-3**
Section 3.1.1	Hydrologic Impacts and Mitigation	3-3
Section 3.1.2	Flow Control Standards	3-5
Section 3.1.3	Hydrologic Analysis Using Continuous Models	3-6
Section 3.2	**Runoff Computation and Analysis Methods**	**3-9**
Section 3.2.1	Rational Method	3-11
Section 3.2.2	KCRTS/Runoff Files Method	3-19
Section 3.2.3	HSPF Model	3-34
Section 3.2.4	Storage Routing/Water Level Analysis Methods	3-35
Section 3.3	**Hydrologic Design Procedures and Considerations**	**3-39**
Section 3.3.1	General Hydrologic Design Process	3-39
Section 3.3.2	Flow Control Design with KCRTS	3-41
Section 3.3.3	Conveyance System Design with KCRTS	3-44
Section 3.3.4	Safety Factors in Hydrologic Design	3-45
Section 3.3.5	Design Options for Addressing Downstream Drainage Problems	3-46
Section 3.3.6	Point of Compliance Analysis	3-49
Section 3.3.7	Onsite Closed Depressions and Ponding Areas	3-52

CHAPTER 4
CONVEYANCE SYSTEM ANALYSIS & DESIGN

Section 4.1	**Route Design and Easement Requirements**	**4-3**
Section 4.1.1	Route Design	4-3
Section 4.1.2	Easement and Setback Requirements	4-3
Section 4.2	**Pipes, Outfalls, and Pumps**	**4-7**
Section 4.2.1	Pipe Systems	4-7
Section 4.2.2	Outfall Systems	4-28
Section 4.2.3	Pump Systems	4-35
Section 4.3	**Culverts and Bridges**	**4-37**
Section 4.3.1	Culverts	4-37
Section 4.3.2	Culverts Providing for Fish Passage/Migration	4-51
Section 4.3.3	Bridges	4-53
Section 4.4	**Open Channels, Floodplains, and Floodways**	**4-55**
Section 4.4.1	Open Channels	4-55
Section 4.4.2	Floodplain/Floodway Analysis	4-71

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER 5
FLOW CONTROL DESIGN

Section 5.1	**Low Impact Design**	**5-3**
Section 5.1.1	Site Design Concepts	5-3
Section 5.1.2	Use of Materials	5-4
Section 5.2	**Flow Control BMP Requirements**	**5-5**
Section 5.2.1	Individual Lot BMP Requirements	5-6
Section 5.2.2	Requirements for Use of BMP Credits	5-13
Section 5.3	**Detention Facilities**	**5-17**
Section 5.3.1	Detention Ponds	5-17
Section 5.3.2	Detention Tanks	5-31
Section 5.3.3	Detention Vaults	5-35
Section 5.3.4	Control Structures	5-38
Section 5.3.5	Parking Lot Detention	5-48
Section 5.3.6	Roof Detention	5-48
Section 5.3.7	Simple Detention Pond for Cleared Areas	5-49
Section 5.4	**Infiltration Facilities**	**5-57**
Section 5.4.1	General Requirements for Infiltration Facilities	5-57
Section 5.4.2	Infiltration Ponds	5-65
Section 5.4.3	Infiltration Tanks	5-68
Section 5.4.4	Infiltration Vaults	5-71
Section 5.4.5	Infiltration Trenches	5-73
Section 5.4.6	Alternative Infiltration Systems	5-76
Section 5.4.7	Small Infiltration Basins	5-76

CHAPTER 6
WATER QUALITY DESIGN

Section 6.1	**Water Quality Menus**	**6-3**
Section 6.1.1	Basic Water Quality Menu	6-4
Section 6.1.2	Enhanced Basic Water Quality Menu	6-7
Section 6.1.3	Sensitive Lake Protection Menu	6-9
Section 6.1.4	Sphagnum Bog Protection Menu	6-13
Section 6.1.5	High-Use Menu	6-14
Section 6.2	**General Requirements for WQ Facilities**	**6-17**
Section 6.2.1	Water Quality Design Flows	6-17
Section 6.2.2	Sequence of Facilities	6-19
Section 6.2.3	Setbacks, Slopes, and Embankments	6-21
Section 6.2.4	Facility Liners	6-23
Section 6.2.5	Flow Splitter Designs	6-29
Section 6.2.6	Flow Spreading Options	6-33
Section 6.3	**Biofiltration Facility Designs**	**6-39**
Section 6.3.1	Basic Biofiltration Swales	6-39
Section 6.3.2	Wet Biofiltration Swales	6-55
Section 6.3.3	Continuous Inflow Biofiltration Swales	6-58
Section 6.3.4	Basic Filter Strips	6-59
Section 6.3.5	Narrow Area Filter Strips	6-66
Section 6.4	**Wetpool Facility Designs**	**6-69**
Section 6.4.1	Wetponds — Basic and Large	6-69
Section 6.4.2	Wetvaults	6-83
Section 6.4.3	Stormwater Wetlands	6-89
Section 6.4.4	Combined Detention and Wetpool Facilities	6-95
Section 6.5	**Media Filtration Facility Designs**	**6-103**
Section 6.5.1	General Requirements	6-103
Section 6.5.2	Sand Filters — Basic and Large	6-104
Section 6.5.3	Sand Filter Vaults	6-123
Section 6.5.4	Linear Sand Filters	6-129
Section 6.5.5	StormFilter	6-134
Section 6.6	**Oil Control Facility Designs**	**6-139**
Section 6.6.1	Catch Basin Inserts	6-139
Section 6.6.2	Oil/Water Separators	6-145

TABLE OF CONTENTS

DEFINITIONS

APPENDICES

APPENDIX A
Maintenance Requirements for Flow Control, Conveyance, and WQ Facilities

APPENDIX B
Master Drainage Plan Objective, Criteria, Components and Review Process

APPENDIX C (detached)
Small Project Drainage Requirements

APPENDIX D (detached)
Erosion and Sediment Control Standards

REFERENCE

1 KCC 9.04 – Surface Water Runoff Policy

2 Adopted Critical Drainage Areas

3 Other Adopted Area Specific Drainage Requirements
- A RA Zone Clearing Restrictions

4 Other Drainage Related Regulations and Guidelines
- A Grading Code Soil Amendment Standard
- B Clearing & Grading Seasonal Limitations
- C Landscape Management Plan Guidelines
- D Shared Facility Maintenance Responsibility Guidance

5 Wetland Hydrology Protection Guidelines

6 Hydrologic/Hydraulic Design Methods
- A EPA Infiltration Rate Test
- B Pond Geometry Equations

7 Engineering Plan Support
- A King County Standard Map Symbols
- B Standard Plan Notes and Example Construction Sequence
- C Stormfilter Access and Cartridge Configuration

8 Forms and Worksheets
- A Technical Information Report (TIR) Worksheet
- B Offsite Analysis Drainage System Table
- C Water Quality Facility Sizing Worksheets
- D Flow Control and Water Quality Facility Summary Sheet and Sketch
- E CSWPPP Worksheet Forms
- F Adjustment Application Form and Process Guidelines
- G Dedication and Indemnification Clause - Final Recording
- H Bond Quantities Worksheet
- I Maintenance and Defect Agreement
- J Drainage Facility Covenant
- K Drainage Release Covenant
- L Drainage Easement
- M Flow Control BMP Covenant
- N Impervious Surface Limit Covenant
- O Clearing Limit Covenant
- P River Protection Easement
- Q Leachable Metals Covenant

9 Interim Changes to Requirements
- A Blanket Adjustments
- B Administrative Changes

10 King County-Identified Water Quality Problems

INTRODUCTION

OVERVIEW

King County's surface water features -- the rivers, lakes, wetlands, streams, and Puget Sound -- are a significant part of our natural beauty and rich heritage. Spawning salmon, meandering rivers, and clean water are important natural resources which must be managed wisely to protect their values.

As development of the County's landscape occurs and changes the quantity and quality of surface and storm water runoff, great care must taken to minimize the impacts of these changes to natural resources, public safety, and property. This necessitates the provision of surface and storm water management systems that not only mitigate such impacts but must comply with the County's National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) General Municipal Stormwater Permit issued by the Washington State Department of Ecology pursuant to the Clean Water Act.

This manual contains the requirements and standards for designing such surface and storm water management systems in King County. As part of the permit approval process for certain types of permits for proposed development projects, King County requires the construction of surface and storm water management systems to mitigate the impacts of new development and redevelopment on natural and existing man-made drainage systems.

This manual regulates proposed projects through a mixture of requirements, performance standards, and design standards. These requirements and standards are primarily enforced by the King County Department of Development and Environmental Services (DDES), which is responsible for the drainage review and approval of engineering plans and inspection of development projects during construction. This responsibility and how it's carried out is governed not only by King County code but to some extent by the County's NPDES municipal stormwater permit, which contains specific requirements for drainage review and inspection of development projects. In addition to the Surface Water Design Manual, DDES is also responsible for enforcing of all other King County regulations governing development.

The Water and Land Resources (WLR) Division of the King County Department of Natural Resources is responsible for developing the requirements and standards, which includes publishing, updating and providing the technical support for the Surface Water Design Manual. The WLR Division also reviews requests for experimental design adjustments and blanket adjustments as described in Chapter 1, Section 1.4.

The chapters of this manual are organized as follows:

Chapter 1 - DRAINAGE REVIEW AND REQUIREMENTS

Describes the basic drainage requirements that implement King County adopted surface water runoff policies and explains how these requirements are applied to proposed projects through the drainage review process.

Chapter 2 - DRAINAGE PLAN SUBMITTAL

Describes the requirements and specifications for submittal of design plans for drainage review, including report and plan formats, and scopes.

Chapter 3 - HYDROLOGIC ANALYSIS AND DESIGN

Presents the acceptable methods of hydrologic analysis used to estimate runoff and design flow control, conveyance, and water quality facilities.

Chapter 4 - CONVEYANCE SYSTEM ANALYSIS AND DESIGN

Presents the acceptable methods, details, and criteria for analysis and design of conveyance systems.

Chapter 5 - FLOW CONTROL DESIGN

Presents the acceptable methods, details, and criteria for analysis and design of flow control facilities.

Chapter 6 - WATER QUALITY DESIGN

Presents the acceptable methods, details, and criteria for analysis and design of water quality facilities.

DEFINITIONS - A comprehensive list of the words, terms, and abbreviations accompanied by their meaning as applied in this manual.

APPENDICES:

APPENDIX A - MAINTENANCE REQUIREMENTS FOR FLOW CONTROL, CONVEYANCE, AND WQ FACILITIES

Contains the thresholds and standards for maintenance of all flow control, conveyance, and water quality facilities required in this manual.

APPENDIX B - MASTER DRAINAGE PLAN OBJECTIVES, CRITERIA AND COMPONENTS AND REVIEW PROCESS

Describes in a general outline, the objectives, criteria, components and review process for Master Drainage Plans prepared for Urban Planned Developments and very large projects.

APPENDIX C - SMALL PROJECT DRAINAGE REQUIREMENTS (Separate Detached Publication)

Describes in a separate booklet available from the WLR Division or DDES, the simplified drainage requirements for smaller projects that qualify for Small Project Drainage Review.

APPENDIX D - EROSION & SEDIMENT CONTROL STANDARDS (Separate Detached Publication)

Describes in a separate booklet available from the WLR Division or DDES, the required measures to be implemented during construction to prevent discharges of sediment-laden runoff from the project site. It also describes effective management practices that may be needed to supplement the required erosion and sedimentation control measures.

REFERENCE - Includes materials that are strictly **for reference only** and have not been adopted by the public rule adopting this manual. The applicant is responsible to insure that the most current materials are used in preparing a permit application.

CHAPTER 1

DRAINAGE REVIEW AND REQUIREMENTS

KING COUNTY, WASHINGTON

SURFACE WATER DESIGN MANUAL

Section 1.1	**Drainage Review**	**1-7**
Section 1.1.1	Projects Requiring Drainage Review	1-9
Section 1.1.2	Drainage Review Types and Requirements	1-10
Section 1.1.3	Drainage Review Required By Other Agencies	1-20
Section 1.1.4	Drainage Design Beyond Minimum Compliance	1-20
Section 1.2	**Core Requirements**	**1-21**
Section 1.2.1	Core Reqmt #1: Discharge at the Natural Location	1-21
Section 1.2.2	Core Reqmt #2: Offsite Analysis	1-23
Section 1.2.3	Core Reqmt #3: Flow Control	1-34
Section 1.2.4	Core Reqmt #4: Conveyance System	1-51
Section 1.2.5	Core Reqmt #5: Erosion and Sediment Control	1-57
Section 1.2.6	Core Reqmt #6: Maintenance and Operations	1-61
Section 1.2.7	Core Reqmt #7: Financial Guarantees and Liability	1-62
Section 1.2.8	Core Reqmt #8: Water Quality	1-64
Section 1.3	**Special Requirements**	**1-77**
Section 1.3.1	Special Reqmt #1: Other Adopted Area-Specific Requirements	1-77
Section 1.3.2	Special Reqmt #2: Flood Hazard Area Delineation	1-79
Section 1.3.3	Special Reqmt #3: Flood Protection Facilities	1-80
Section 1.3.4	Special Reqmt #4: Source Control	1-81
Section 1.3.5	Special Reqmt #5: Oil Control	1-82
Section 1.4	**Adjustment Process**	**1-85**
Section 1.4.1	Adjustment Authority	1-86
Section 1.4.2	Criteria for Granting Adjustments	1-86
Section 1.4.3	Adjustment Application Process	1-87
Section 1.4.4	Adjustment Review Process	1-88
Section 1.4.5	Request for Reconsideration Procedure	1-89

CHAPTER 1

DRAINAGE REVIEW AND REQUIREMENTS

This chapter describes the drainage review procedures and types, the drainage requirements, and the adjustment procedures necessary to implement surface water runoff policies codified in Chapter 9.04 of the King County Code (KCC). It also provides direction for implementing the more detailed procedures and design criteria found in subsequent chapters of this manual.

Chapter Organization

The information presented in Chapter 1 is organized into four main sections as follows:

- Section 1.1, "Drainage Review" (p. 1-7)
- Section 1.2, "Core Requirements" (p. 1-21)
- Section 1.3, "Special Requirements" (p. 1-77)
- Section 1.4, "Adjustment Process" (p. 1-85).

Each of these sections begins on an odd page so the user can insert tabs if desired for quicker reference.

Formatting of Chapter Text

The text of Chapter 1 and subsequent chapters has been formatted using the following conventions to aid the user in finding, understanding, and properly applying the thresholds, requirements, and procedures contained in this manual:

- **Italic** is used to highlight the following: (a) terms when they are first introduced and defined within the same paragraph; (b) special notes that supplement or clarify thresholds, requirements, and procedures; (c) sentences considered important for purposes of understanding thresholds, requirements, and procedures; and (d) titles of publications.
- **Bold italic** is used to highlight terms considered key to understanding and applying drainage review thresholds, requirements, and procedures. These are called "key terms" and are defined below. This convention applies after the key term is defined and does not necessarily apply to tables and figures.
- **Bold** is used to highlight words and phrases that are not key terms but are considered important to emphasize for purposes of finding and properly applying thresholds, requirements, and procedures.

Key Terms and Definitions

Proper application of the drainage review and requirements in this chapter requires an understanding of the following key terms and their definitions. Other key terms may be defined in subsequent chapters. All such key terms are highlighted in **bold italic** throughout the manual. Other important terms that are not key terms are defined in the text when they are first introduced. These are highlighted in italic when

they are first introduced but are not highlighted throughout the manual. All terms defined in this chapter are also found in the "Definitions" section of this manual as are other important terms defined throughout the Manual.

Agricultural project means any project located on, and proposing improvements consistent with, the permitted uses of land zoned for Agriculture (A zoned lands) as defined in KCC 21A.08.

Construct or modify means to install a new drainage pipe/ditch or make improvements to an existing drainage pipe or ditch, for purposes other than *maintenance*,[1] that either serves to concentrate previously unconcentrated surface and storm water runoff or serves to increase, decrease, or redirect the conveyance of surface and storm water runoff. Construct or modify does not include installation or maintenance of a driveway culvert installed as part of a single family residential building permit.

Civil engineer means a person licensed by the state of Washington as a professional engineer in civil engineering.

Conveyance system nuisance problem means a flooding or erosion problem that does not constitute a ***severe flooding problem*** or ***severe erosion problem*** and that results from the overflow of a constructed conveyance system for runoff events less than or equal to a 10-year event. Examples include inundation of a shoulder or lane of a roadway, overflows collecting in yards or pastures, shallow flows across driveways, minor flooding of crawl spaces or unheated garages/outbuildings, and minor erosion.

Critical aquifer recharge area is the critical area designation, defined and regulated in KCC 21A, that is applied to areas where extra protection of groundwater quantity and quality is needed because of known susceptibility to contamination and importance to drinking water supply. Such areas are delineated on the *King County Critical Aquifer Recharge Area Map* available at DDES or on the County's Geographic Information System (GIS). See the "Definitions" section for more details.

Critical Drainage Area means an area where the Department of Natural Resources and Parks (DNRP) has determined that additional drainage controls (beyond those in this manual) are needed to address a severe flooding, drainage, and/or erosion condition that poses an imminent likelihood of harm to the welfare and safety of the surrounding community. Critical Drainage Areas (CDAs) are formally adopted by administrative rule under the procedures specified in KCC 2.98. When CDAs are adopted, they are inserted in Reference Section 2 of this manual and their requirements are implemented through Special Requirement #1, Section 1.3.1.

Erosion hazard area is the critical area designation, defined and regulated in KCC 21A, that is applied to areas underlain by soils that are subject to severe erosion when disturbed. See the "Definitions" section for more details.

Existing site conditions means those that existed prior to May 1979 (when King County first required flow control facilities) as determined from aerial photographs and, if necessary, knowledge of individuals familiar with the area, unless a drainage plan for land cover changes has been approved by the County since May 1979 as part of a *development*[2] permit or approval. If so, existing site

---

[1] *Maintenance* means those usual activities taken to prevent a decline, lapse, or cessation in the use of currently serviceable structures, facilities, equipment, or systems if there is no expansion of the structure, facilities, equipment, or system and there are no significant hydrologic impacts. Maintenance includes the repair or replacement of non-functional facilities and the replacement of existing structures with different types of structures, if the repair or replacement is required to meet current engineering standards or is required by one or more environmental permits and the functioning characteristics of the original facility or structure are not changed. For the purposes of applying this definition to the thresholds and requirements of this manual, DDES will determine whether the functioning characteristics of the original facility or structure will remain sufficiently unchanged to consider replacement as maintenance.

[2] *Development* means any activity that requires a permit or approval, including, but not limited to, a building permit, grading permit, shoreline substantial development permit, conditional use permit, special use permit, zoning variance or reclassification, subdivision, short subdivision, urban planned development, binding site plan, site development permit, or right-of-way use permit. "Development" does not include a Class I, II, III, or IV-S forest practice conducted in accordance with Chapter 76.09 RCW and Title 222 WAC or a class IV-G nonconversion forest practice, as defined in KCC 21A.06, conducted in accordance with Chapter 76.09 RCW and Title 222 WAC and a county approved forest management plan.

conditions are those created by the ***site*** improvements and drainage facilities constructed per the approved drainage plan.

Flood hazard area is the critical area designation, defined and regulated in KCC 21A, that is applied to areas subject to inundation by a 100-year flood event or areas at risk from channel migration. Flood hazard areas generally include, but are not limited to, aquatic areas (e.g., streams or lakes), wetlands, or closed depressions. See the "Definitions" section for more details.

Fully dispersed means the runoff from an impervious surface or non-native pervious surface has dispersed per the criteria for fully dispersed surface in Section 1.2.3.2.C (p. 1-46).

Groundwater protection areas include ***critical aquifer recharge areas*** as defined in KCC 21A, sole source aquifer areas as designated by the federal Environmental Protection Agency, and wellhead protection areas as mapped by the Washington State Department of Health.

High-use site means a commercial or industrial site that (1) has an expected average daily traffic (ADT) count equal to or greater than 100 vehicles per 1,000 square feet of gross building area; (2) is subject to petroleum storage or transfer in excess of 1,500 gallons per year, not including delivered heating oil; or (3) is subject to use, storage, or maintenance of a fleet of 25 or more diesel vehicles that are over 10 tons net weight (trucks, buses, trains, heavy equipment, etc.). Also included is any road intersection with a measured ADT count of 25,000 vehicles or more on the main roadway and 15,000 vehicles or more on any intersecting roadway, excluding projects proposing primarily pedestrian or bicycle use improvements. For the purposes of this definition, *commercial and industrial site* means that portion of a ***site's*** developed area associated with an individual commercial or industrial business (e.g., the area occupied by the business's buildings and required parking).

Historic site conditions means those that existed on the ***site*** prior to any development in the Puget Sound region. For lands not currently submerged (i.e., outside the ordinary high water mark of a lake, wetland, or stream), historic site conditions shall be assumed to be forest cover unless reasonable, historic, ***site-***specific information is provided to demonstrate a different vegetation cover. In some stream basins, as allowed per Section 1.2.3.1.B, historic site conditions for lands not currently submerged may be assumed to be 75% forest, 15% grass, and 10% impervious surface.

Land disturbing activity means any activity that results in a change in the existing soil cover, both vegetative and non-vegetative, or the existing soil topography. Land disturbing activities include, but are not limited to demolition, construction, clearing, grading, filling, excavation, and compaction. Land disturbing activity does not include tilling conducted as part of agricultural practices, landscape maintenance, or gardening.

Landslide hazard area is the critical area designation, defined and regulated in KCC 21A, that is applied to areas subject to severe risk of landslide due to topography, soil conditions, and geology. See the "Definitions" section for more details.

Landslide hazard drainage area means an area mapped by the County where it has been determined that overland flows from a project will pose a significant threat to health and safety because of its close proximity to a ***landslide hazard area*** that is on a slope steeper than 15%. Such areas are delineated on the Landslide Hazard Drainage Areas map adopted with this manual (see map pocket on inside of back cover).

Major receiving water means a large receiving water that has been determined by King County to be safe for the direct discharge of increased runoff from a proposed project without a flow control facility, subject to the restrictions on such discharges set forth in Core Requirement #3, Section 1.2.3. A list of major receiving waters is provided in Section 1.2.3.1 (p. 1-37). Major receiving waters are also considered safe for application of Basic WQ treatment in place of otherwise required Enhanced Basic WQ treatment (see Section 1.2.8.1).

Native vegetated surface means a surface in which the soil conditions, ground cover, and species of vegetation are like those of the original native condition for the ***site***. More specifically, this means (1) the soil is either undisturbed or has been treated according to the "native vegetated landscape"

specifications in Appendix C, Section C.2.1.8; (2) the ground is either naturally covered with vegetation litter or has been top-dressed with 4 inches of hog fuel consistent with the native vegetated landscape specifications in Appendix C; and (3) the vegetation is either (a) comprised predominantly of plant species, other than noxious weeds, that are indigenous to the coastal region of the Pacific Northwest and that reasonably could have been expected to occur naturally on the ***site*** or (b) comprised of plant species specified for a native vegetated landscape in Appendix C. Examples of these plant species include trees such as Douglas fir, western hemlock, western red cedar, alder, big-leaf maple and vine maple; shrubs such as willow, elderberry, salmonberry and salal; and herbaceous plants such as sword fern, foam flower, and fireweed.

Natural discharge area means an onsite area tributary to a single ***natural discharge location***.

Natural discharge location means the location where surface and storm water runoff leaves (or would leave if not infiltrated or retained) the ***site*** or ***project site*** under ***existing site conditions***.

New impervious surface means the addition of a hard or compacted surface like roofs, pavement, gravel, or dirt; or the addition of a more compacted surface, like paving over pre-existing dirt or gravel.

New pervious surface means the conversion of a ***native vegetated surface*** or other native surface to a non-native pervious surface (e.g., conversion of forest or meadow to pasture land, grass land, cultivated land, lawn, landscaping, bare soil, etc.), or any alteration of existing non-native pervious surface that significantly increases surface and storm water runoff (e.g., conversion of pasture land, grass land, or cultivated land to lawn, landscaping, or bare soil; or alteration of soil characteristics).

New PGIS means ***new impervious surface*** that is ***pollution-generating impervious surface***.

New PGPS means ***new pervious surface*** that is ***pollution-generating pervious surface***.

***Pollution-generating impervious surface* (*PGIS*)** means an impervious surface considered to be a significant source of pollutants in stormwater runoff. Such surfaces include those that are *subject to vehicular use*[3] or storage of *erodible or leachable materials, wastes, or chemicals*,[4] and that receive direct rainfall or the run-on or blow-in of rainfall.[5] Metal roofs are also considered to be PGIS unless they are treated to prevent leaching.

***Pollution-generating pervious surface* (*PGPS*)** means a non-impervious surface considered to be a significant source of pollutants in surface and storm water runoff. Such surfaces include those subject to use of pesticides and fertilizers, loss of soil, or the use or storage of erodible or leachable materials, wastes, or chemicals. Such surfaces include, but are not limited to, the lawn and landscaped areas of residential or commercial land uses, golf courses, parks, sports fields, and County-standard grassed modular grid pavement.

Project site means that portion of a ***site*** and any offsite areas subject to proposed project activities, alterations, and improvements including those required by this manual.

---

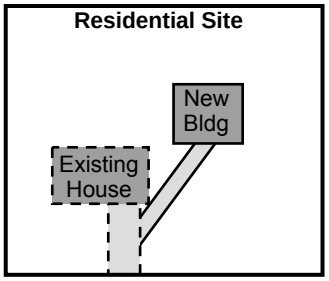
[3] *Subject to vehicular use* means the surface, whether paved or not, is regularly used by motor vehicles. The following surfaces are considered regularly used by motor vehicles: roads, unvegetated road shoulders, bike lanes within or not separated from the traveled lane of a roadway, driveways, parking lots, unfenced firelanes, diesel equipment storage yards, and airport runways. The following surfaces are not considered regularly used by motor vehicles: road shoulders primarily used for emergency parking, paved bicycle pathways, bicycle lanes adjacent to unpaved or paved road shoulders primarily used for emergency parking, fenced firelanes, and infrequently used maintenance access roads.

[4] *Erodible or leachable materials, wastes, or chemicals* are those substances that, when exposed to rainfall, measurably alter the physical or chemical characteristics of the rainfall runoff (examples include erodible soil, uncovered process wastes, manure, fertilizers, oily substances, ashes, kiln dust, garbage dumpster leakage, etc.).

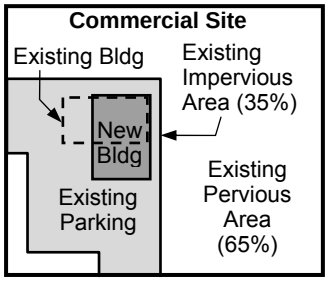
[5] A covered parking area would be considered pollution-generating if runoff from uphill could regularly run through it, or if rainfall could regularly blow in and wet the pavement surface. The same parking area would not be included if it were enclosed by walls or if a low wall and berm prevented stormwater from being blown in or from running onto the covered area.

Redevelopment project means a project that proposes to add, replace, or modify impervious surfaces for purposes other than a residential subdivision or maintenance on a ***site*** that is already substantially developed in a manner consistent with its current zoning or with a legal non-conforming use, or has an existing impervious surface coverage of 35% or more. The following examples illustrate the application of this definition.

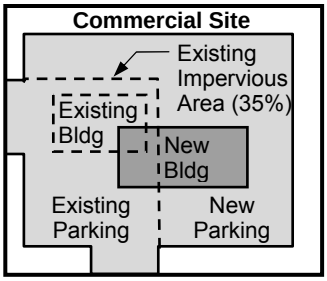
A Redevelopment Project that Adds New Impervious Surface



A Redevelopment Project that Replaces Impervious Surface



A Redev Project that Adds and Replaces Impervious Surface



Replaced impervious surface means any existing impervious surface on the ***project site*** that is proposed to be removed and re-established as impervious surface, excluding impervious surface removed for the sole purpose of installing utilities or performing maintenance. For the purposes of this definition, *removed* means the removal of buildings down to bare soil or the removal of Portland cement concrete (PCC) slabs and pavement or asphaltic concrete (AC) pavement. It does not include the removal of pavement material through grinding or other surface modification unless the entire layer of PCC or AC is removed.

Replaced PGIS means ***replaced impervious surface*** that is ***pollution-generating impervious surface***.

Severe building flooding problem means there is flooding of the *finished floor area*[6] of a *habitable building*,[7] or the electrical/heating system of a habitable building for runoff events less than or equal to a 100-year event. Examples include flooding of finished floors of homes and commercial or industrial buildings, or flooding of electrical/heating system components in the crawl space or garage of a home.

Severe erosion problem means there is an open drainage feature with evidence of or potential for erosion/incision sufficient to pose a sedimentation hazard to downstream conveyance systems or pose a landslide hazard by undercutting adjacent slopes. Severe erosion problems do not include roadway shoulder rilling or minor ditch erosion.

Severe flooding problem means a ***severe building flooding problem*** or a ***severe roadway flooding problem***.

Severe roadway flooding problem means there is flooding over all lanes of a *roadway*,[8] or a *sole access driveway*[9] is severely impacted, for runoff events less than or equal to the 100-year event. A severely impacted sole access driveway is one in which flooding overtops a culverted section of the driveway, posing a threat of washout or unsafe access conditions due to indiscernible driveway edges, or flooding is deeper than 6 inches on the driveway, posing a severe impediment to emergency access.

Single family residential project means any project that (a) constructs or modifies a single family dwelling unit, (b) makes improvements (e.g., driveways, roads, outbuildings, play courts, etc.) or

---

[6] *Finished floor area*, for the purposes of defining ***severe building flooding problem***, means any enclosed area of a building that is designed to be served by the building's permanent heating or cooling system.

[7] *Habitable building* means any residential, commercial, or industrial building that is equipped with a permanent heating or cooling system and an electrical system.

[8] *Roadway*, for the purposes of this definition, means the traveled portion of any public or private road or street classified as such in the *King County Road Standards*.

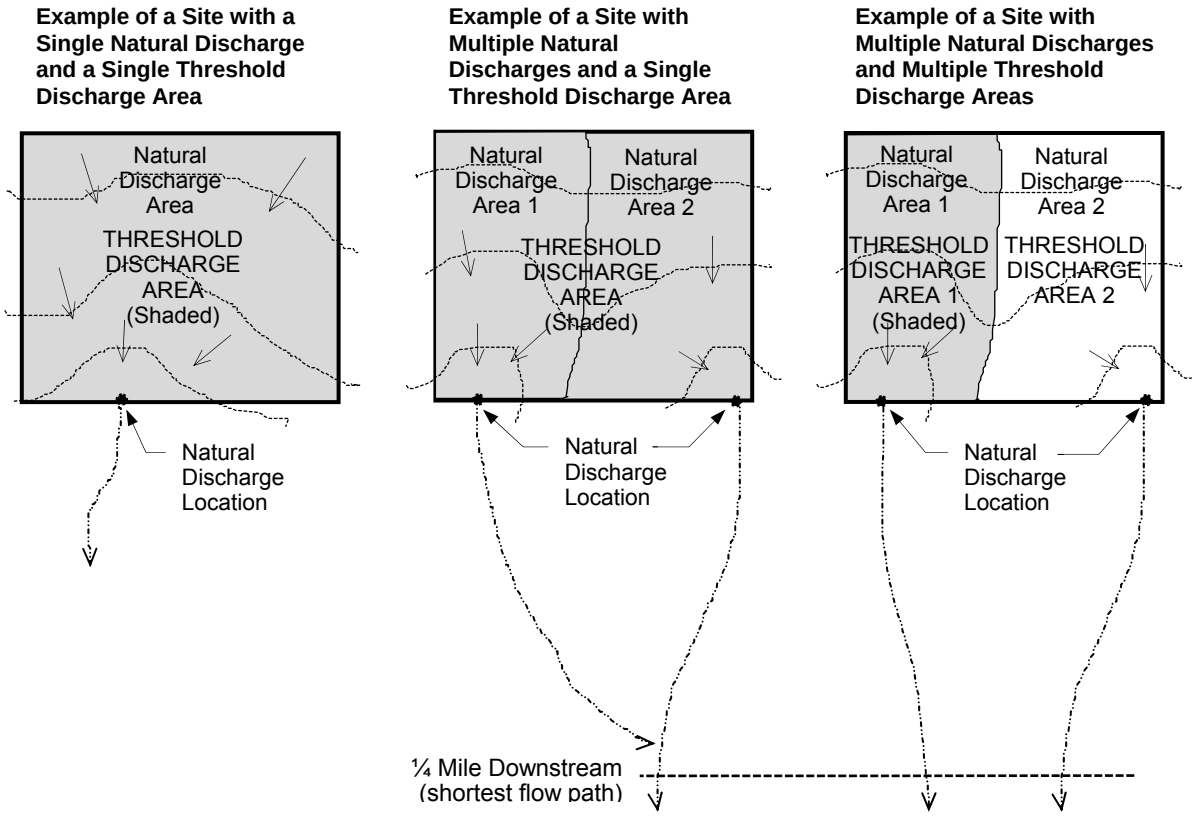
[9] *Sole access driveway* means there is no other unobstructed, flood-free route for emergency access to a habitable building.

clears native vegetation on a lot that contains or will contain a single family dwelling unit, or (c) is a plat, short plat, or boundary line adjustment that creates or adjusts lots that will contain single family dwelling units.

Site (a.k.a. ***development site***) means a single parcel, or two or more contiguous parcels that are under common ownership or documented legal control, used as a single parcel for purposes of applying for authority from King County to carry out a development/project proposal. For projects located primarily within dedicated rights-of-way, ***site*** includes the entire width of right-of-way within the total length of right-of-way subject to improvements proposed by the project.

Steep slope hazard area is the critical area designation, defined and regulated in KCC 21A, that is applied to areas on a slope of 40% or more within a vertical elevation change of at least 10 feet. See the "Definitions" section for more details.

Threshold discharge area means an onsite area draining to a single ***natural discharge location***, or multiple ***natural discharge locations*** that combine within one-quarter-mile downstream (as determined by the shortest flowpath). The examples below illustrate this definition. This term is used to clarify how the thresholds, exemptions, and exceptions of this manual are applied to ***sites*** with multiple discharge locations.



Transportation redevelopment project means a stand-alone transportation improvement project that proposes to add, replace, or modify impervious surface, for purposes other than maintenance, within a length of dedicated public or private road right-of-way that has an existing impervious surface coverage of thirty-five percent or more. Road right-of-way improvements required as part of a subdivision, commercial, industrial or multifamily project may not be defined as a separate transportation redevelopment project.

1.1 DRAINAGE REVIEW

Drainage review is the evaluation by King County staff of a proposed project's compliance with the drainage requirements of this manual. The King County department responsible for drainage review is the Department of Development and Environmental Services (DDES) unless otherwise specified in KCC 9.04. Drainage review by DDES is an integral part of its permit review process for development projects. This section describes when and what type of drainage review is required for a proposed project and how to determine which drainage requirements apply.

The section covers the following topics related to drainage review:

- "Projects Requiring Drainage Review," Section 1.1.1 (p. 1-9)
- "Drainage Review Types and Requirements," Section 1.1.2 (p. 1-10)
- "Drainage Review Required By Other Agencies," Section 1.1.3 (p. 1-20)
- "Drainage Design Beyond Minimum Compliance," Section 1.1.4 (p. 1-20)

Guide to Using Section 1.1

The following steps are recommended for efficient use of Section 1.1:

1. Determine whether your proposed project is subject to the requirements of this manual by seeing if it meets any of the **thresholds for drainage review** specified in Section 1.1.1 (p. 1-9). Making this determination requires an understanding of the key terms defined at the beginning of this chapter.
2. If drainage review is required per Section 1.1.1, use the flow chart in Figure 1.1.2.A (p. 1-11) to determine what **type of drainage review** will be conducted by DDES. The type of drainage review defines the scope of drainage requirements that will apply to your project as summarized in Table 1.1.2.A (p. 1-12).
3. Check the more detailed threshold information in Section 1.1.2 (beginning on page 1-10) to verify that you have determined the correct type of drainage review.
4. After verifying the type of drainage review, use the information in Section 1.1.2 to determine which **core requirements** (found in Section 1.2) and which **special requirements** (found in Section 1.3) must be evaluated for compliance by your project. To determine how to comply with each applicable core and special requirement, see the more detailed information on these requirements contained in Sections 1.2 and 1.3 of this chapter.

Note: For Steps 2 through 4, it is recommended that you arrange a predesign meeting with DDES permit review staff to confirm the type of drainage review and scope of drainage requirements that apply to your proposed project.

1.1.1 PROJECTS REQUIRING DRAINAGE REVIEW

Drainage review is required for any proposed project (except those proposing only **maintenance**) that is subject to a King County **development** permit or approval, including but not limited to those listed at right, AND that meets any one of the following conditions:

1. The project adds or will result in 2,000 square feet[10] or more of ***new impervious surface***, ***replaced impervious surface***, or ***new*** plus ***replaced impervious surface***, OR
2. The project proposes 7,000 square feet[10] or more of ***land disturbing activity***, OR
3. The project proposes to ***construct or modify*** a drainage pipe/ditch that is 12 inches or more in size/depth, or receives surface and storm water runoff from a drainage pipe/ditch that is 12 inches or more in size/depth, OR
4. The project contains or is adjacent to a ***flood hazard area*** as defined in KCC 21A.06, OR
5. The project is located within a ***Critical Drainage Area***,[11] OR
6. The project is a ***redevelopment project*** proposing $100,000[12] or more of improvements to an existing ***high-use site***, OR
7. The project is a ***redevelopment project*** on a single- or multiple-parcel ***site*** in which the total of ***new*** **plus** ***replaced impervious surface*** is 5,000 square feet or more and whose valuation of proposed improvements (including interior improvements and excluding required mitigation and frontage improvements) exceeds 50% of the **assessed value** of the existing ***site*** improvements.

If drainage review is required for the proposed project, the type of drainage review must be determined based on project and site characteristics as described in Section 1.1.2. The type of drainage review defines the scope of drainage requirements that must be evaluated for compliance with this manual.

King County Permits and Approvals
Administrative Subdivision (Short Plat)
Binding Site Plan
Boundary Line Adjustment
Conditional Use*
Clearing
Commercial Building
Experimental Design Adjustment*
Formal Subdivision (plat)
Franchise Utility Right-of-Way Use
Grading
Preapplication Adjustment*
Right-of-Way Use
Shoreline Substantial Development*
Single Family Residential Building
Special Use*
Unclassified Use*
Urban Planned Development
Zoning Reclassification*
Zoning Variance*
***Note: If the proposed project will require subsequent permits subject to drainage review, then DDES may allow the drainage review to be deferred until application for the later permits.*

[10] The thresholds for ***new impervious surface, replaced impervious surface,*** and ***land disturbing activity*** shall be applied by ***project site*** and in accordance with the definitions of these surfaces and activities.

[11] See Reference Section 3 for a list of ***Critical Drainage Areas***.

[12] This is the "project valuation" as declared on the permit application submitted to DDES. The dollar amount of this threshold is considered to be as of January 8, 2001 and may be adjusted on an annual basis using the local consumer price index (CPI). *Note: January 8, 2001 is the effective date of the ESA 4(d) Rule for Puget Sound Chinook salmon.*

1.1.2 DRAINAGE REVIEW TYPES AND REQUIREMENTS

For most projects resulting in 2,000 square feet or more of ***new*** and/or ***replaced impervious surface***, the full range of core and special requirements contained in Sections 1.2 and 1.3 must be evaluated for compliance through the drainage review process. However, for some types of projects, the scope of requirements applied is narrowed to allow more efficient, customized review. Each of the following four drainage review types tailors the review process and application of drainage requirements to a project's size, location, type of development, and anticipated impacts to the local and regional surface water system:

- Small Project Drainage Review, Section 1.1.2.1 (p. 1-13)
- Targeted Drainage Review, Section 1.1.2.2 (p. 1-15)
- Full Drainage Review, Section 1.1.2.3 (p. 1-18)
- Large Project Drainage Review, Section 1.1.2.4 (p. 1-19).

Each project requires only one of the above drainage review types, with the single exception that a project that qualifies for Small Project Drainage Review may also require Targeted Drainage Review. Figure 1.1.2.A (next page) can be used to determine which drainage review type is required. However, this may entail consulting the more detailed thresholds for each review type specified in the above-referenced sections.

Table 1.1.2.A (p. 1-12) can be used to quickly identify which requirements are applied in each type of drainage review. The applicant must evaluate the requirements "checked" for a particular drainage review type to determine what is necessary for compliance.

FIGURE 1.1.2.A FLOW CHART FOR DETERMINING TYPE OF DRAINAGE REVIEW REQUIRED

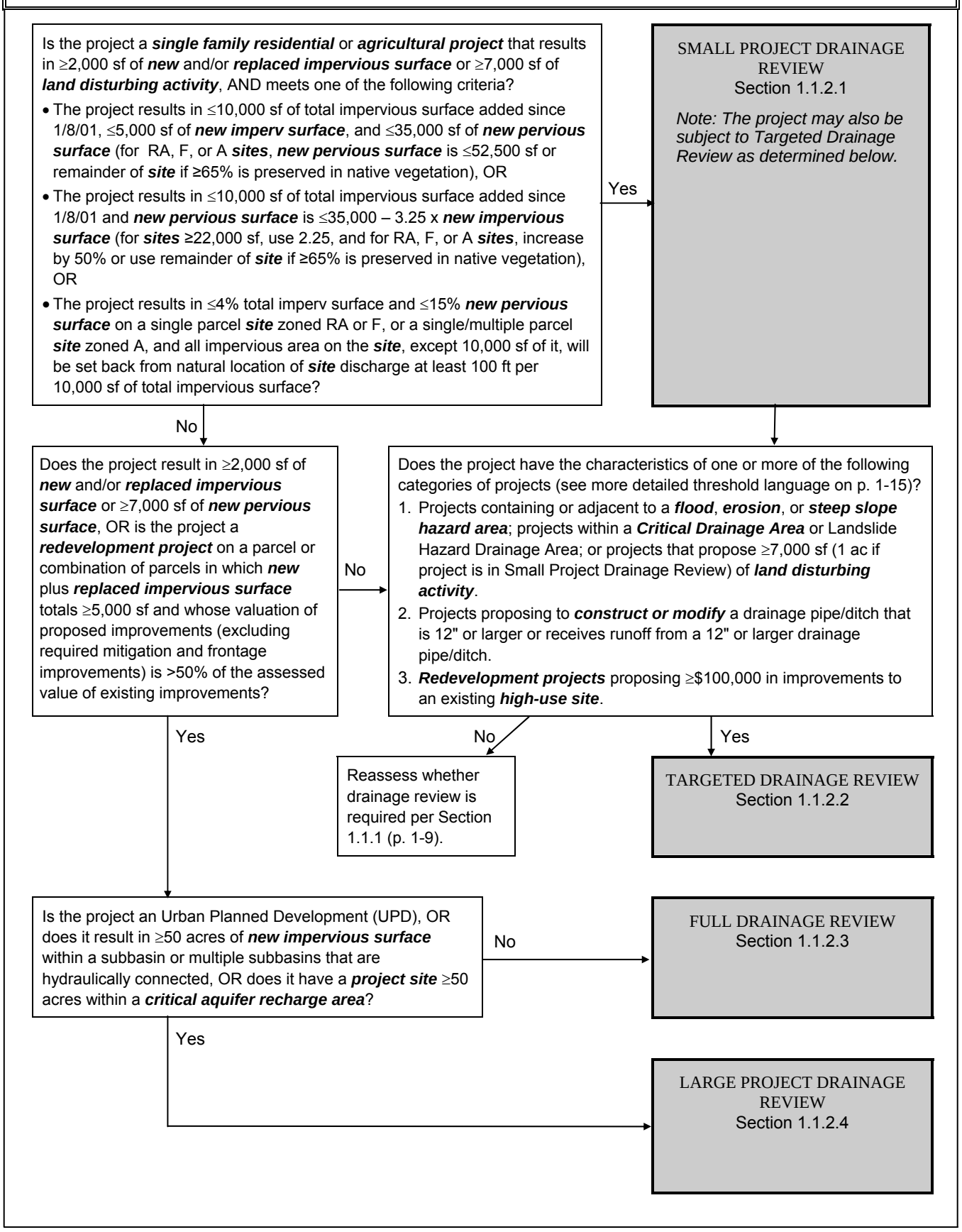


TABLE 1.1.2.A REQUIREMENTS APPLIED UNDER EACH DRAINAGE REVIEW TYPE

	Small Project Drainage Review	Targeted Drainage Review			Full Drainage Review	Large Project Drainage Review
	Single family residential projects and ***agricultural projects*** that result in ≥2,000 sf of ***new*** and/or ***replaced impervious surface*** or ≥7,000 sf of ***land disturbing activity*** but do not exceed the total impervious surface and ***new pervious surface*** thresholds specified in Sec. 1.1.2.1 (p. 1-13).	Projects that are not subject to Full or Large Project Drainage Review, AND have characteristics of **one or more** of the following categories of projects: 1. Projects containing or adjacent to a ***flood***, ***erosion***, or ***steep slope hazard area***; projects within a ***Critical Drainage Area*** or Landslide Hazard Drainage Area; or projects proposing ≥7,000 sf of ***land disturbing activity*** (1 ac if in Small Project Drainage Review). 2. Projects that ***construct or modify*** a drainage pipe/ditch that is 12" or larger or receive runoff from a 12" or larger drainage pipe/ditch. 3. ***Redevelopment projects*** with ≥$100,000 in improvements to a ***high-use site***(1)			All projects that result in ≥2,000 sf of ***new*** and/or ***replaced impervious surface*** or ≥7,000 sf of ***land disturbing activity*** but are not subject to Small Project Drainage Review, OR ***redevelopment projects*** meeting drainage review threshold #7 in Section 1.1.1 (p. 1-9).	UPDs, OR projects that result in ≥50 acres of ***new impervious*** within a sub-basin or multiple subbasins that are hydraulically connected, OR ***project sites*** ≥50 acres within a ***critical aquifer recharge area***.
		Category 1	**Category 2**	**Category 3**		
SMALL PROJECT DRAINAGE REQUIREMENTS	✓					
CORE REQUIREMENT #1 Discharge at Natural Location		*(2)	✓		✓	✓
CORE REQUIREMENT #2 Offsite Analysis		*(2)	✓(3)		✓(3)	✓(3)
CORE REQUIREMENT #3 Flow Control		*(2)			✓(3)	✓(3)
CORE REQUIREMENT #4 Conveyance System		*(2)	✓		✓	✓
CORE REQUIREMENT #5 Erosion & Sediment Control		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
CORE REQUIREMENT #6 Maintenance & Operations		*(2)	✓	✓	✓	✓
CORE REQUIREMENT #7 Financial Guarantees & Liability		*(2)	✓(3)	✓(3)	✓(3)	✓(3)
CORE REQUIREMENT #8 Water Quality		*(2)			✓(3)	✓(3)
SPECIAL REQUIREMENT #1 Other Adopted Requirements		✓(3)			✓(3)	✓(3)
SPECIAL REQUIREMENT #2 Flood Hazard Area Delineation		✓(3)			✓(3)	✓(3)
SPECIAL REQUIREMENT #3 Flood Protection Facilities		✓(3)			✓(3)	✓(3)
SPECIAL REQUIREMENT #4 Source Control		✓(3)	✓(3)	✓(3)	✓(3)	✓(3)
SPECIAL REQUIREMENT #5 Oil Control				✓(3)	✓(3)	✓(3)

(1) Category 3 projects installing oil controls that construct or modify a 12-inch pipe/ditch are also Category 2 projects.

(2) May be applied by DDES based on project or ***site***-specific conditions.

(3) These requirements have exemptions or thresholds that may preclude or limit their application to a specific project.

1.1.2.1 SMALL PROJECT DRAINAGE REVIEW

Small Project Drainage Review is a simplified drainage review for small residential building, clearing, and subdivision projects or small ***agricultural project*s** that result in either (a) 10,000 square feet or less of impervious surface added on or after January 8, 2001 (the effective date of the ESA 4(d) Rule for Puget Sound Chinook salmon) or (b) less than 4% of total impervious surface as specified in this section. The core and special requirements applied under Full Drainage Review are replaced with simplified small project drainage requirements that can be applied by a non-engineer. These requirements include simple stormwater dispersion, infiltration, and ***site*** design techniques called flow control Best Management Practices (BMPs), which provide the necessary mitigation of flow and water quality impacts for small projects. Also included are simple measures for erosion and sediment control (ESC). This simplified form of drainage review acknowledges that drainage impacts for many small project proposals can be effectively mitigated without construction of costly flow control and water quality facilities.

The Small Project Drainage Review process minimizes the time and effort required to design, submit, review, and approve drainage facilities for these proposals. In most cases, the requirements can be met with submittals prepared by contractors, architects, or homeowners without the involvement of a ***civil engineer***.

Note: some projects subject to Small Project Drainage Review may also require Targeted Drainage Review if they meet any of the threshold criteria in Section 1.1.2.2 (p. 1-15).

Threshold

THRESHOLD

Small Project Drainage Review is required for any ***single family residential project*** or ***agricultural project*** that will result in 2,000 square feet[13] or more of ***new impervious surface***, ***replaced impervious surface***, or ***new*** plus ***replaced impervious surface***, or 7,000 square feet or more of ***land disturbing activity***, AND that meets one of the following criteria:

- The project will result in no more than 10,000 square feet[13] of **total impervious surface** added on or after January 8, 2001, no more than 5,000 square feet of ***new impervious surface***, and no more than 35,000 square feet[13] of ***new pervious surface*** (for ***sites*** zoned as RA, F, or A, the ***new pervious surface*** threshold may be increased to 52,500 square feet[13] or to the remaining portion of the ***site*** if 65% or more of the ***site*** is preserved in native vegetation by clearing limit, covenant, easement, or tract), OR
- The project will result in no more than 10,000 square feet[13] of **total impervious surface** added on or after January 8, 2001 and its ***new pervious surface*** area will be no more than 35,000 square feet minus 3.25 times the area of ***new impervious surface*** being proposed by the project (for ***sites*** larger than 22,000 square feet, a factor of 2.25 may be used instead of 3.25, and for ***sites*** zoned as RA, F, or A, the allowable amount of ***new pervious surface*** calculated herein may be increased by 50% or may be the remaining portion of ***site*** if 65% or more of the ***site*** is preserved in native vegetation by clearing limit, covenant, easement, or tract), OR
- The project will result in no more than 4% **total impervious surface** and 15% ***new pervious surface*** on a single parcel ***site*** zoned as RA or F, or on a single or multiple parcel ***site*** zoned as A, AND all impervious surface area, except 10,000 square feet of it, will be set back from its natural location of discharge from the ***site*** at least 100 feet for every 10,000 square feet of **total impervious area**.

*Note: for the purposes applying this threshold to a proposed single family residential subdivision (i.e., plat or short plat project), the impervious surface coverage assumed on each created lot shall be 4,000 square feet (8,000 square feet if the **site** is zoned as RA) or the maximum allowed by KCC 21A.12.030,*

[13] The thresholds of 2,000 and 7,000 square feet shall be applied by project site. All other thresholds specified in terms of square feet of impervious or pervious surface shall be applied by ***threshold discharge area*** and in accordance with the definitions of these surfaces in Section 1.1. *Note: the calculation of total impervious surface added on after January 8, 2001 may exclude any such added impervious surface that is confirmed by DDES engineering staff to be already mitigated by a County approved and inspected flow control facility or BMP.*

whichever is less. A lower impervious surface coverage may be assumed for any lot in which the lower impervious surface coverage is set as the maximum through a declaration of covenant recorded for the lot. Also, the ***new pervious surface*** *assumed on each created lot shall be the entire lot area, except the assumed impervious portion and any portion in which native conditions are preserved by a clearing limit per KCC 16.82, a covenant or easement recorded for the lot, or a tract dedicated by the proposed subdivision.*

Scope of Requirements

REQMTS

IF Small Project Drainage Review is required, THEN the proposed project must comply with the simplified small project submittal and drainage design requirements detailed in *Small Project Drainage Requirements* adopted as Appendix C to this manual and available as a separate booklet from DNRP or DDES. These requirements include simplified BMPs/measures for flow control and erosion and sediment control.

Presumption of Compliance with Core and Special Requirements

The simplified drainage requirements applied under Small Project Drainage Review are considered sufficient to meet the overall intent of the core and special requirements in Sections 1.2 and 1.3, except under certain conditions when a proposed project has characteristics that trigger Targeted Drainage Review (see the threshold for Targeted Drainage Review in Section 1.1.2.2, p. 1-15) and may require the involvement of a ***civil engineer***. Therefore, any proposed project that is subject to Small Project Drainage Review as determined above and complies with the small project drainage requirements detailed in Appendix C is presumed to comply with all the core and special requirements in Sections 1.2 and 1.3 **except** those requirements that would apply to the project if it is subject to Targeted Drainage Review as specified in Section 1.1.2.2 (p. 1-15).

1.1.2.2 TARGETED DRAINAGE REVIEW

Targeted Drainage Review (TDR) is an abbreviated evaluation by DDES permit review staff of a proposed project's compliance with selected core and special requirements. Projects subject to this type of drainage review are typically Small Project Drainage Review proposals or other small projects that have ***site***-specific or project-specific drainage concerns that must be addressed by a ***civil engineer*** or DDES engineering review staff. Under Targeted Drainage Review, engineering costs associated with drainage design and review are kept to a minimum because the review includes only those requirements that would apply to the particular project.

Threshold

THRESHOLD

Targeted Drainage Review is required for any proposed project that is subject to drainage review as determined in Section 1.1.1 (p. 1-9) but is not subject to Full or Large Project Drainage Review as determined in Sections 1.1.2.3 (p. 1-18) and 1.1.2.4 (p. 1-19), AND that has the characteristics of one or more of the following project categories:

- **TDR Project Category #1:** Projects that contain or are adjacent to a ***flood hazard area***, ***erosion hazard area***, or ***steep slope hazard area*** as defined in KCC 21A.06; OR projects located within a ***Critical Drainage Area*** or ***Landslide Hazard Drainage Area***; OR projects that propose 7,000 square feet (1 acre if in Small Project Drainage Review) or more of ***land disturbing activity***. *Note: at the discretion of DDES, this category may also include any project in Small Project Drainage Review that has a design or **site**-specific issue that must be addressed by a **civil engineer**.*
- **TDR Project Category #2:** Projects that propose to ***construct or modify*** a drainage pipe/ditch that is 12 inches or more in size/depth or receives surface and storm water runoff from a drainage pipe/ditch that is 12 inches or more in size/depth.
- **TDR Project Category #3:** ***Redevelopment projects*** that propose $100,000 or more of improvements to an existing ***high-use site***.

Scope of Requirements

REQMTS

IF Targeted Drainage Review is required, THEN the applicant must demonstrate that the proposed project complies with the selected core and special requirements corresponding to the project category or categories that best match the proposed project. The project categories and applicable requirements for each are described below and summarized in Table 1.1.2.A (p. 1-12).

Note: If the proposed project has the characteristics of more than one project category, the requirements of each applicable category shall apply.

Compliance with these requirements requires the submittal of engineering plans and calculations stamped by a ***civil engineer***, unless deemed unnecessary by DDES. The engineer need only demonstrate compliance with those core and special requirements that have been predetermined to be applicable based on specific project characteristics as detailed below and summarized in Table 1.1.2.A (p. 1-12). The procedures and requirements for submitting engineering plans and calculations can be found in Section 2.3.

TDR Project Category #1

This category includes projects that are too small to trigger application of most core requirements, but may be subject to ***site***-specific floodplain or drainage requirements related to certain critical areas, or other area-specific drainage requirements adopted by the County. Such projects primarily include ***single family residential projects*** and ***agricultural projects*** in Small Project Drainage Review.

REQUIREMENTS

IF the proposed project meets the characteristics of TDR Project Category #1, THEN the applicant must demonstrate that the project complies with the following five requirements:

- Core Requirement #5: Erosion and Sediment Control, Section 1.2.5 (p. 1-57)
- Special Requirement #1: Other Adopted Area-Specific Requirements, Section 1.3.1 (p. 1-77)
- Special Requirement #2: Floodplain/Floodway Analysis, Section 1.3.2 (p. 1-79)
- Special Requirement #3: Flood Protection Facilities, Section 1.3.3 (p. 1-80)
- Special Requirement #4: Source Control, Section 1.3.4 (p. 1-81)

In addition, **DDES may require** the applicant to demonstrate compliance with any one or more of the **remaining seven core requirements** in Section 1.2 based on project or ***site***-specific conditions. For example, if the proposed project discharges to an ***erosion*** or ***steep slope hazard area*** as defined in KCC 21A.06, DDES may require compliance with "Core Requirement #1: Discharge at the Natural Location" (Section 1.2.1, p. 1-21). This may in turn require compliance with "Core Requirement #2: Offsite Analysis" (Section 1.2.2, p. 1-23) if a tightline is required by Core Requirement #1. If a tightline is found to be infeasible, DDES may instead require a flow control facility per "Core Requirement #3: Flow Control" (Section 1.2.3, p. 1-34). If a tightline is feasible, "Core Requirement #4: Conveyance System" (Section 1.2.4, p. 1-51) would be required to ensure proper size and design. Any required flow control facility or tightline system may also trigger compliance with "Core Requirement #6: Maintenance and Operations" (Section 1.2.6, p. 1-61), "Core Requirement #7: Financial Guarantees and Liability" (Section 1.2.7, p. 1-62), and possibly "Core Requirement #8, Water Quality" (Section 1.2.8, p. 1-64) if runoff from ***pollution-generating impervious surfaces*** is collected.

The applicant may also need to address compliance with any applicable critical areas requirements in KCC 21A as determined by DDES.

TDR Project Category #2

This category is intended to apply selected core and special requirements to those projects that propose to ***construct or modify*** a drainage system of specified size, but are not adding sufficient impervious surface to trigger Full Drainage Review or Large Project Drainage Review.

REQUIREMENTS

IF the proposed project meets the characteristics of TDR Project Category #2, THEN the applicant must demonstrate that the proposed project complies with the following requirements:

- Core Requirement #1: Discharge at the Natural Location, Section 1.2.1 (p. 1-21)
- Core Requirement #2: Offsite Analysis, Section 1.2.2 (p. 1-23)
- Core Requirement #4: Conveyance System, Section 1.2.4 (p. 1-51)
- Core Requirement #5: Erosion and Sediment Control, Section 1.2.5 (p. 1-57)
- Core Requirement #6: Maintenance and Operations, Section 1.2.6 (p. 1-61)
- Core Requirement #7: Financial Guarantees and Liability, Section 1.2.7 (p. 1-62)
- Special Requirement #4: Source Control, Section 1.3.4 (p. 1-81).

TDR Project Category #3

This category is intended to improve water quality by applying source control and oil control requirements to ***redevelopment projects*** located on the most intensively used ***sites*** developed prior to current water quality requirements. These are referred to as ***high-use sites***.

REQUIREMENTS

IF the proposed project meets the characteristics of TDR Project Category #3, THEN the applicant must demonstrate that the proposed project complies with the following requirements:

- Core Requirement #5: Erosion and Sediment Control, Section 1.2.5 (p. 1-57)
- Core Requirement #6: Maintenance and Operations, Section 1.2.6 (p. 1-61)
- Core Requirement #7: Financial Guarantees and Liability, Section 1.2.7 (p. 1-62)
- Special Requirement #4: Source Control, Section 1.3.4 (p. 1-81)
- Special Requirement #5: Oil Control, Section 1.3.5 (p. 1-82).

Note: In some cases, DDES may determine that application of these requirements does not require submittal of engineering plans and calculations stamped by a ***civil engineer****. For example, if catch basin inserts are proposed to meet oil control requirements, engineered plans and calculations may not be necessary. A plot plan showing catch basin locations may suffice.*

1.1.2.3 FULL DRAINAGE REVIEW

Full Drainage Review is the evaluation by King County staff (DDES unless otherwise specified in KCC 9.04) of a proposed project's compliance with the full range of core and special requirements in this chapter. This review addresses the impacts associated with changing land cover on typical ***sites***.

Threshold

THRESHOLD

Full Drainage Review is required for any proposed project, including a ***redevelopment project***, that is subject to drainage review as determined in Section 1.1.1 (p. 1-9), AND that meets one or more of the following criteria:

- The project will result in 2,000 square feet[14] or more of ***new impervious surface***, ***replaced impervious surface***, and ***new*** plus ***replaced impervious surface*** but is not subject to Small Project Drainage Review as determined in Section 1.1.2.1 (p. 1-13), OR
- The project will result in 7,000 square feet[14] or more of ***land disturbing activity*** but is not subject to Small Project Drainage Review per Section 1.1.2.1, OR
- The project is a ***redevelopment project*** on a parcel or combination of parcels in which the total of ***new*** **plus** ***replaced impervious surface*** is 5,000 square feet[14] or more and whose valuation of proposed improvements (including interior improvements and excluding required mitigation and frontage improvements) exceeds 50% of the **assessed value** of the existing parcel improvements.

Scope of Requirements

REQMTS

IF Full Drainage Review is required, THEN the applicant must demonstrate that the proposed project complies with the following requirements:

- All eight core requirements in Section 1.2
- All five special requirements in Section 1.3

Engineering plans and calculations stamped by a ***civil engineer*** must be submitted to demonstrate compliance with these requirements. The procedures and requirements for submittal of engineering plans and calculations are found in Section 2.3.

[14] The thresholds of 2,000, 5,000, and 7,000 square feet shall be applied by ***project site***.

1.1.2.4 LARGE PROJECT DRAINAGE REVIEW

Large Project Drainage Review is applied to development proposals that are large and/or involve resources or problems of special sensitivity or complexity. Because of the large size and complexities involved, there is usually a greater risk of significant impact or irreparable damage to sensitive resources. Such proposals often require a more definitive approach to drainage requirements than that prescribed by the core and special requirements in Sections 1.2 and 1.3; it may be appropriate to collect additional information about ***site*** resources, use more sophisticated models, and prepare special studies not specified in this manual. Large Project Drainage Review entails preparation of a **master drainage plan (MDP)** or limited scope MDP that is reviewed and approved by DDES.

Threshold

THRESHOLD

Large Project Drainage Review is required for any proposed project that is subject to drainage review as determined in Section 1.1.1 (p. 1-9), AND that meets any one of the following criteria:

- The project is designated for an **Urban Planned Development (UPD)** on the King County Comprehensive Plan Land Use Map, OR
- The project would, at full buildout, result in 50 acres or more of ***new impervious surface*** within a single subbasin or multiple subbasins that are *hydraulically connected*[15] across subbasin boundaries, OR
- The ***project site*** is 50 acres or more (including growth reserve areas) within a ***critical aquifer recharge area*** as defined in KCC 21A.06.

Scope of Requirements

REQUIREMENTS

IF Large Project Drainage Review is required, THEN the applicant must do the following:

1. Prepare a **MDP**, limited scope MDP, or special study in accordance with the process and requirements described in the MDP guidelines, *Master Drainage Planning for Large or Complex Site Developments*, available from DNRP or DDES. The MDP or special study shall be completed, or a schedule for completion identified and agreed to by DDES, prior to permit approval. *Note: Generally, it is most efficient for the MDP process to parallel the state Environmental Policy Act (SEPA) process.*
2. Demonstrate that the proposed project complies with all the core and special requirements in Sections 1.2 and 1.3, with some **potential modifications as follows:**
   - Core Requirement #2, Offsite Analysis, is typically modified during MDP scoping.
   - Core Requirement #3, Flow Control, may be modified to require more sophisticated hydrologic modeling.
   - Core Requirement #5, ESC, may be modified to require enhanced construction monitoring.
   - Core Requirement #7, Financial Guarantees and Liability, may be modified to implement a monitoring fund.
   - Special pre- and post-development monitoring may also be required if deemed necessary by DDES to adequately characterize sensitive ***site*** and downstream resources, and to ensure that onsite drainage controls and mitigation measures are effective in protecting sensitive or critical resources. Detailed guidelines for monitoring are appended to the MDP guidelines referenced above.

[15] *Hydraulically connected* means connected through surface flow or water features such as wetlands or lakes.

1.1.3 DRAINAGE REVIEW REQUIRED BY OTHER AGENCIES

Drainage review for a proposed project's impact on surface and storm waters may be addressed by processes or requirements apart from King County's. Agencies such as those listed below may require some form of drainage review and impose drainage requirements that are separate from and in addition to King County's drainage requirements. The applicant is responsible for coordinating with these agencies and resolving any conflicts in drainage requirements. *Note: King County is required to advise the Muckleshoot Indian Tribe of development proposals affecting certain critical areas or water bodies bearing anadromous fish.*

Agency	Permit/Approval
Seattle/King County Department of Public Health	Onsite Sewage Disposal and Well permits
Washington State	
Department of Transportation	Developer/Local Agency Agreement
Department of Fish and Wildlife	Hydraulic Project Approval
Department of Ecology	Short Term Water Quality Modification Approval Dam Safety permit NPDES Stormwater permit
Department of Natural Resources	Forest Practices Class IV permit
United States Army Corps of Engineers	Sections 10, 401, and 404 permits

1.1.4 DRAINAGE DESIGN BEYOND MINIMUM COMPLIANCE

This manual presents King County's minimum standards for engineering and design of drainage facilities. While the County believes these standards are appropriate for a wide range of development proposals, compliance solely with these requirements does not relieve the professional engineer submitting designs of his or her responsibility to ensure drainage facilities are engineered to provide adequate protection for natural resources and public and private property.

Compliance with the standards in this manual does not necessarily mitigate all probable and significant environmental impacts to aquatic biota. Fishery resources and other living components of aquatic systems are affected by a complex set of factors. While employing a specific flow control standard may prevent stream channel erosion or instability, other factors affecting fish and other biotic resources (e.g., increases in stream flow velocities) are not directly addressed by this manual. Likewise, some wetlands, including bogs, are adapted to a very constant hydrologic regime. Even the most stringent flow control standard employed by this manual does not prevent increases in runoff volume, which can adversely affect wetland plant communities by increasing the duration and magnitude of water level fluctuations. Thus, compliance with this manual should not be construed as mitigating all probable and significant stormwater impacts to aquatic biota in streams and wetlands; additional mitigation may be required.

In addition, the requirements in this manual target the types of impacts associated with the most typical land development projects occurring in the lowland areas of the County. Applying these requirements to vastly different types of projects, such as rock quarries or dairy farms, or in different climatic situations, such as ski areas, may result in poorer mitigation of impacts. Therefore, different mitigation may be required.

Additional mitigation may also be required to compensate for loss of critical area habitat functions associated with reducing standard buffer widths and clearing restrictions as allowed through the approval of Rural Stewardship Plans and Farm Management Plans per KCC 21A.24 and KCC 16.82.

1.2 CORE REQUIREMENTS

This section details the following eight core requirements:

- "Core Requirement #1: Discharge at the Natural Location," Section 1.2.1
- "Core Requirement #2: Offsite Analysis," Section 1.2.2 (p. 1-23)
- "Core Requirement #3: Flow Control," Section 1.2.3 (p. 1-34)
- "Core Requirement #4: Conveyance System," Section 1.2.4 (p. 1-51)
- "Core Requirement #5: Erosion and Sediment Control," Section 1.2.5 (p. 1-57)
- "Core Requirement #6: Maintenance and Operations," Section 1.2.6 (p. 1-61)
- "Core Requirement #7: Financial Guarantees and Liability," Section 1.2.7 (p. 1-62)
- "Core Requirement #8: Water Quality," Section 1.2.8 (p. 1-64).

1.2.1 CORE REQUIREMENT #1: DISCHARGE AT THE NATURAL LOCATION

REQUIREMENT

All surface and storm water runoff from a project must be discharged at the natural location so as not to be diverted onto or away from downstream properties. The manner in which runoff is discharged from the ***project site*** must not create a significant adverse impact to downhill properties or drainage systems (see "Discharge Requirements" below). *Note: Projects that do not discharge all **project site** runoff at the natural location will require an approved adjustment of this requirement (see Section 1.4). DDES may waive this adjustment, however, for projects in which only a small portion of the **project site** does not discharge runoff at the natural location and the runoff from that portion is unconcentrated and poses no significant adverse impact to downstream properties*.

Intent: To prevent adverse impacts to downstream properties caused by diversion of flow from one flowpath to another, and to discharge in a manner that does not significantly impact downhill properties or drainage systems. Diversions can cause greater impacts (from greater runoff volumes) than would otherwise occur from new development discharging runoff at the natural location. Diversions can also impact properties that rely on runoff water to replenish wells and ornamental or fish ponds.

❑ DISCHARGE REQUIREMENTS

Proposed projects must comply with the following discharge requirements (1, 2, and 3) as applicable:

1. Where no conveyance system exists at the abutting downstream property line and the natural (existing) discharge is unconcentrated, any runoff concentrated by the proposed project must be discharged as follows:

   a) IF the 100-year peak discharge[16] is less than or equal to 0.2 cfs under existing conditions and will remain less than or equal to 0.2 cfs under developed conditions, THEN the concentrated runoff may be discharged onto a rock pad or to any other system that serves to disperse flows.

   b) IF the 100-year peak discharge is less than or equal to 0.5 cfs under existing conditions and will remain less than or equal to 0.5 cfs under developed conditions, THEN the concentrated runoff may be discharged through a dispersal trench or other dispersal system provided the applicant can demonstrate that there will be no significant adverse impact to downhill properties or drainage systems.

[16] Peak discharges for applying this requirement are determined using KCRTS with 15-minute time steps as detailed in Chapter 3.

c) IF the 100-year peak discharge is greater than 0.5 cfs for either existing or developed conditions, or if a significant adverse impact to downhill properties or drainage systems is likely, THEN a conveyance system must be provided to convey the concentrated runoff across the downstream properties to an acceptable discharge point.[17] Drainage easements for this conveyance system must be secured from downstream property owners and recorded prior to engineering plan approval.

2. IF a proposed project, or any ***natural discharge area*** within a project, is located within a ***Landslide Hazard Drainage Area*** and drains over the erodible soils of a ***landslide hazard area*** with slopes steeper than 15%, THEN a **tightline system must be provided** through the ***landslide hazard area*** to an acceptable discharge point unless one of the following exceptions applies. The tightline system must comply with the design requirements in Core Requirement #4 and in Section 4.2.2 unless otherwise approved by DDES. Drainage easements for this system must be secured from downstream property owners and recorded prior to engineering plan approval.

   Exceptions: A tightline is not required for any ***natural discharge location*** where one of the following conditions can be met:

   a) Less than 2,000 square feet of ***new impervious surface*** will be added within the ***natural discharge area***, OR

   b) The developed conditions runoff from the ***natural discharge area*** is less than 0.1 cfs for the 100-year runoff event and will be infiltrated for runoff events up to and including the 100-year event, OR

   c) The *developed conditions runoff volume*[18] from the ***natural discharge area*** is less than 50% of the existing conditions runoff volume from other areas draining to the location where runoff from the ***natural discharge area*** enters the ***landslide hazard area*** onto slopes steeper than 15%, AND the provisions of Discharge Requirement 1 are met, OR

   d) DDES determines that a tightline system is not physically feasible or will create a significant adverse impact based on a soils report by a geotechnical engineer.

3. For projects adjacent to or containing a ***landslide***, ***steep slope***, or ***erosion hazard area*** as defined in KCC 21A.06, the applicant must demonstrate that onsite drainage facilities and/or flow control BMPs will not create a significant adverse impact to downhill properties or drainage systems.

[17] *Acceptable discharge point* means an enclosed drainage system (i.e., pipe system, culvert, or tightline) or open drainage feature (e.g., ditch, channel, swale, stream, river, pond, lake, or wetland) where concentrated runoff can be discharged without creating a significant adverse impact.

[18] For the purposes of applying this exception, the *developed conditions runoff volume* is the average annual runoff volume as computed with KCRTS per Chapter 3. Any areas assumed not to be cleared when computing the developed conditions runoff volume must be set aside in an open space tract or covenant in order for the proposed project to qualify for this exception. Preservation of existing forested areas in Landslide Hazard Drainage Areas is encouraged.

1.2.2 CORE REQUIREMENT #2: OFFSITE ANALYSIS

REQMT

All proposed projects must submit an offsite analysis report that assesses potential offsite drainage and water quality impacts associated with development of the ***project site*** and proposes appropriate mitigation of those impacts. The initial permit submittal shall include, at minimum, a **Level 1 downstream analysis** as described in Section 1.2.2.1 below. If impacts are identified, the proposed projects shall meet any applicable problem-specific requirements specified in Section 1.2.2.2 (p. 1-28) for mitigation of impacts to drainage problems and Section 1.2.2.3 (p. 1-31) for mitigation of impacts to water quality problems.

Intent: To identify and evaluate offsite flooding, erosion, and water quality problems that may be created or aggravated by the proposed project, and to ensure appropriate measures are provided for preventing creation or aggravation of those problems. In addition, this requirement is intended to ensure appropriate provisions are made, as needed, to mitigate other identified impacts associated with the quantity and quality of surface and storm water runoff from the ***project site*** (e.g., impacts to the hydrology of a wetland as may be identified by a "critical area report" per KCC 21A.24.110).

The primary component of an offsite analysis report is the **downstream analysis**, which examines the drainage system within one-quarter mile downstream of the ***project site*** or farther as described in Section 1.2.2.1 below. It is intended to identify existing or potential/predictable downstream flooding, erosion, and water quality problems so that appropriate mitigation, as specified in Sections 1.2.2.2 and 1.2.2.3, can be provided to prevent aggravation of these problems. A secondary component of the offsite analysis report is an **evaluation of the upstream drainage system** to verify and document that significant flooding and erosion impacts will not occur as a result of the proposed project. The evaluation must extend upstream to a point where any backwater effects created by the project cease.

❑ EXEMPTION FROM CORE REQUIREMENT #2

A proposed project is exempt from Core Requirement #2 if any one of the following is true:

1. DDES determines there is sufficient information for them to conclude that the project will not have a significant adverse impact on the downstream and/or upstream drainage system, OR
2. The project adds less than 2,000 square feet of ***new impervious surface***, AND less than 35,000 square feet of ***new pervious surface***, AND does not ***construct or modify*** a drainage pipe/ditch that is 12 inches or more in size/depth or that receives runoff from a drainage pipe/ditch that is 12 inches or more in size/depth, AND does not contain or lie adjacent to a ***landslide***, ***steep slope***, or ***erosion hazard area*** as defined in KCC 21A.06, OR
3. The project does not change the rate, volume, duration, or location of discharges to and from the ***project site*** (e.g., where existing impervious surface is replaced with other impervious surface having similar runoff-generating characteristics, or where pipe/ditch modifications do not change existing discharge characteristics).

1.2.2.1 DOWNSTREAM ANALYSIS

The level of downstream analysis required depends on specific ***site*** and downstream conditions. Each project submittal must include at least a Level 1 downstream analysis. Upon review of the Level 1 analysis, DDES may require a Level 2 or Level 3 analysis. If conditions warrant, additional, more detailed analysis may be required.

The **Level 1 downstream analysis** is a qualitative survey of each downstream system and is the first step in identifying flooding or erosion problems as described below under "Downstream Drainage Problems Requiring Special Attention." The Level 1 analysis also identifies water quality problems as described below under "Downstream Water Quality Problems Requiring Special Attention." Each Level 1 analysis is composed of four tasks at a minimum:

- **Task 1**: Define and map the study area

- **Task 2**: Review all available information on the study area
- **Task 3**: Field inspect the study area
- **Task 4**: Describe the drainage system, and its existing and predicted drainage and water quality problems.

Upon review of the Level 1 analysis, DDES may require a Level 2 or 3 downstream analysis, depending on the presence of existing or predicted flooding, erosion, or nuisance problems identified in the Level 1 analysis.

Levels 2 and 3 downstream analysis quantify downstream flooding, erosion, or nuisance problems by providing information on the severity and frequency of an existing problem or the likelihood of creating a new problem. A Level 2 analysis is a rough quantitative analysis (non-survey field data, uniform flow analysis). Level 3 is a more precise analysis (e.g., survey field data, backwater analysis) of significant problems. If conditions warrant, additional, more detailed analysis may be required beyond Level 3. For Levels 2 and 3 downstream analysis, an additional **Task 5**, addressing mitigation of existing and potential flooding, erosion, or nuisance problems, will be required.

Extent of Downstream Analysis

The downstream analysis must consider the existing conveyance system(s) for a **minimum flowpath distance downstream** of one-quarter mile and beyond that, as needed, to reach a point where the ***project site*** area constitutes less than 15% of the tributary area. This minimum distance **may be increased** as follows:

- **Task 2** of a Level 1 downstream analysis (described in detail in Section 2.3.1.1) is a review of all available information on the downstream area and is intended to identify existing drainage and water quality problems. *In all cases, this information review shall extend one mile downstream of the* ***project site***. The existence of flooding or erosion problems further downstream may extend the one-quarter-mile/15% minimum distance for other tasks to allow evaluation of impacts from the proposed development upon the identified flooding or erosion problems. The existence of documented water quality problems beyond the one-quarter-mile/15% distance may in some cases require additional mitigation of impacts as determined necessary by DDES based on the type and severity of problem.
- If a project's impacts to flooding or erosion problems are mitigated by improvements to the downstream conveyance system, the downstream analysis will extend a minimum of one-quarter mile beyond the improvement. This is necessary because many such improvements result in a reduction of stormwater storage or an increase in peak flows from the problem location.
- At their discretion, DDES may extend the downstream analysis beyond the minimum distance specified above on the reasonable expectation of drainage or water quality impacts.

A detailed description of the scope of offsite analysis and submittal requirements is provided in Section 2.3.1.1. Hydrologic analysis methods and requirements for Levels 2 and 3 downstream analysis are contained in Chapter 3; hydraulic analysis methods are contained in Chapter 4.

❑ DOWNSTREAM DRAINAGE PROBLEMS REQUIRING SPECIAL ATTENTION

While the area-specific flow control facility requirement in Core Requirement #3 (Section 1.2.3.1) serves to minimize the creation and aggravation of many types of downstream drainage problems, there are some types that are more sensitive to creation/aggravation than others depending on the nature or severity of the problem and which flow control facility standard is being applied. In particular, there are three types of downstream drainage problems for which the County has determined that the nature and/or severity of the problem warrants additional attention through the downstream analysis and possibly additional mitigation to ensure no creation/aggravation:

1. ***Conveyance system nuisance problem***
2. ***Severe erosion problem***

3. ***Severe flooding problem***.

These three types of downstream drainage problem are further described below and precisely defined at the beginning of Chapter 1.

Conveyance System Nuisance Problem (Type 1)

Conveyance system nuisance problems are minor but chronic flooding or erosion problems that result from the overflow of a constructed conveyance system that is substandard or has become too small as a result of upstream development (see p. 1-2 for a precise definition). Such problems warrant additional attention because of their chronic nature and because they result from the failure of a conveyance system to provide a minimum acceptable level of protection.

If a ***conveyance system nuisance problem*** is identified or predicted downstream, the need for additional mitigation must be evaluated as specified in Section 1.2.2.2 under "Drainage Problem-Specific Mitigation Requirements" (p. 1-30). This may entail additional onsite flow control or other measures as needed to prevent creation or significant aggravation of the problem.

For any other nuisance problem that may be identified downstream, this manual does not require mitigation beyond the area-specific flow control facility requirement applied in Core Requirement #3 (Section 1.2.3.1) because preventing aggravation of such problems (e.g., those caused by the elevated water surfaces of ponds, lakes, wetlands, and closed depressions or those involving downstream erosion) can require two to three times as much onsite detention volume, which is considered unwarranted for nuisance problems. However, if under some unusual circumstance, the aggravation of such a nuisance problem is determined by DDES to be a significant adverse impact, additional mitigation may be required.

Severe Erosion Problem (Type 2)

Severe erosion problems can be caused by conveyance system overflows or the concentration of runoff into erosion-sensitive open drainage features (see p. 1-5 for a precise definition). ***Severe erosion problems*** warrant additional attention because they pose a significant threat either to health and safety or to public or private property.

If a ***severe erosion problem*** is identified or predicted downstream, additional mitigation must be considered as specified in Section 1.2.2.2 under "Drainage Problem-Specific Mitigation Requirements" (p. 1-30). This may entail additional onsite flow control or other measures as needed to prevent creation or aggravation of the problem.

Severe Flooding Problem (Type 3)

Severe flooding problems (i.e., a ***severe building flooding problem*** or ***severe roadway flooding problem***) can be caused by conveyance system overflows or the elevated water surfaces of ponds, lakes, wetlands, or closed depressions (see p. 1-5 for precise definitions). ***Severe flooding problems*** warrant additional attention because they pose a significant threat either to health and safety or to public or private property.

If a ***severe flooding problem*** is identified or predicted downstream, the need for additional mitigation must be evaluated as specified in Section 1.2.2.2 under "Drainage Problem-Specific Mitigation Requirements" (p. 1-30). This may entail consideration of additional onsite flow control or other measures as needed to prevent creation or significant aggravation of the problem.

❑ DOWNSTREAM WATER QUALITY PROBLEMS REQUIRING SPECIAL ATTENTION

A *water quality problem*, for the purposes of impact mitigation in this manual, is a situation in which a waterbody of the State is documented by either the State or the County to be exceeding or at concern of exceeding the State's numeric water quality standards. The goal of this manual is to prevent creation or significant aggravation of such problems to the maximum extent practicable. While the area-specific water quality facility requirement in Section 1.2.8.1, the source controls required in Section 1.3.4, and the oil controls required in Section 1.3.5 all serve to minimize the creation and aggravation of many types of downstream water quality problems, there are some types that are either not addressed by these requirements (e.g., temperature problems) or warrant additional measures/considerations to minimize the proposed project's impacts to the maximum extent practicable. In particular, there are currently 7 types of downstream water quality problems for which the County has determined that additional attention needs to be given to preventing or minimizing increases in the pollutant or pollutants of concern discharging from the ***site***. These are as follows:

1. Bacteria Problem
2. Dissolved Oxygen Problem
3. Temperature Problem
4. Metals Problem
5. Phosphorus Problem
6. Turbidity Problem
7. High pH Problem

These problems are defined below and the mitigation of impacts to them is addressed in Section 1.2.2.3.

Bacteria Problem (Type 1)

A *bacteria problem* is defined as a stream reach, lake, or other waterbody of the state that is either (1) currently **designated by the state as a Category 5, 4, or 2 Water** due to exceedance or concern for exceedance of the state's numeric water quality standard for **fecal coliform** as documented in the state's latest published Clean Water Act Section 303d list (an electronic map of these waterbodies is posted at http://apps.ecy.wa.gov/wqawa/viewer.htm), or (2) is currently **designated by the County as a bacteria problem** based on credible data indicating exceedance or concern for exceedance of the state's numeric water quality standard for **fecal coliform** as documented in the latest published list of King County-Identified WQ Problems (Reference Section 10) posted at http://www.kingcounty.gov/environment/waterandland/stormwater/documents/surface-water-design-manual.aspx.

Dissolved Oxygen (DO) Problem (Type 2)

A *dissolved oxygen problem* is defined as a stream reach, lake, or other waterbody of the state that is either (1) currently **designated by the state as a Category 5, 4, or 2 Water** due to exceedance or concern for exceedance of the state's numeric water quality standard for dissolved oxygen as documented in the state's latest published Clean Water Act Section 303d list (an electronic map of these waterbodies is posted at http://apps.ecy.wa.gov/wqawa/viewer.htm), or (2) is currently **designated by the County as a DO problem** based on credible data indicating exceedance or concern for exceedance of the state's numeric water quality standard for dissolved oxygen as documented in the latest published list of King County-Identified WQ Problems (Reference Section 10) posted at http://www.kingcounty.gov/environment/waterandland/stormwater/documents/surface-water-design-manual.aspx.

Temperature Problem (Type 3)

A *temperature problem* is defined as a stream reach, lake, or other waterbody of the state that is either (1) currently **designated by the state as a Category 5, 4, or 2 Water** due to exceedance or concern for exceedance of the state's numeric water quality standard for temperature as documented in the state's latest published Clean Water Act Section 303d list (an electronic map of these waterbodies is posted at http://apps.ecy.wa.gov/wqawa/viewer.htm), or (2) is currently **designated by the County as a temperature problem** based on credible data indicating exceedance or concern for exceedance of the state's numeric water quality standard for temperature as documented in the latest published list of King County-Identified WQ Problems (Reference Section 10) posted at http://www.kingcounty.gov/environment/waterandland/stormwater/documents/surface-water-design-manual.aspx.

Metals Problem (Type 4)

A *metals problem* is defined as a stream reach, lake, or other waterbody of the state that is either (1) currently **designated by the state as a Category 5, 4, or 2 Water** due to exceedance or concern for exceedance of the state's numeric water quality standards for metals (**e.g., copper, zinc, lead, mercury, etc.**) as documented in the state's latest published Clean Water Act Section 303d list (an electronic map of these waterbodies is posted at http://apps.ecy.wa.gov/wqawa/viewer.htm), or (2) is currently **designated by the County as a metals problem** based on credible data indicating exceedance or concern for exceedance of the state's numeric water quality standards for metals (**e.g., copper, zinc, lead, mercury, etc.**) as documented in the latest published list of King County-Identified WQ Problems (Reference Section 10) posted at http://www.kingcounty.gov/environment/waterandland/stormwater/documents/surface-water-design-manual.aspx.

Phosphorus Problem (Type 5)

A *phosphorus problem* is defined as a stream reach, lake, or other waterbody of the state that is either (1) currently **designated by the state as a Category 5, 4, or 2 Water** due to exceedance or concern for exceedance of the state's numeric action standard for **total phosphorus** as documented in the state's latest published Clean Water Act Section 303d list (an electronic map of these waterbodies is posted at http://apps.ecy.wa.gov/wqawa/viewer.htm), or (2) is currently **designated by the County as a nutrient problem** based on credible data indicating exceedance or concern for exceedance of the state's numeric action standard for **total phosphorus** as documented in the latest published list of King County-Identified WQ Problems (Reference Section 10) posted at http://www.kingcounty.gov/environment/waterandland/stormwater/documents/surface-water-design-manual.aspx.

Turbidity Problem (Type 6)

A *turbidity problem* is defined as a stream reach, lake, or other waterbody of the state that is either (1) currently **designated by the state as a Category 5, 4, or 2 Water** due to exceedance or concern for exceedance of the state's numeric water quality standard for turbidity as documented in the state's latest published Clean Water Act Section 303d list (an electronic map of these waterbodies is posted at http://apps.ecy.wa.gov/wqawa/viewer.htm), or (2) is currently **designated by the County as a turbidity problem** based on credible data indicating exceedance or concern for exceedance of the state's numeric water quality standard for turbidity as documented in the latest published list of King County-Identified WQ Problems (Reference Section 10) posted at http://www.kingcounty.gov/environment/waterandland/stormwater/documents/surface-water-design-manual.aspx.

High pH Problem (Type 7)

A *High pH problem* is defined as a stream reach, lake, or other waterbody of the state that is either (1) currently **designated by the state as a Category 5, 4, or 2 Water** due to exceedance or concern for exceedance of the state's numeric water quality standard for high pH as documented in the state's latest published Clean Water Act Section 303d list (an electronic map of these waterbodies is posted at http://apps.ecy.wa.gov/wqawa/viewer.htm), or (2) is currently **designated by the County as a pH problem** based on credible data indicating exceedance or concern for exceedance of the state's numeric water quality standard for pH as documented in the latest published list of King County-Identified WQ Problems (Reference Section 10) posted at http://www.kingcounty.gov/environment/waterandland/stormwater/documents/surface-water-design-manual.aspx.

1.2.2.2 DRAINAGE PROBLEM IMPACT MITIGATION

*A proposed project must not significantly aggravate existing downstream drainage problems or create new problems as a result of developing the **site**.* This manual does not require development proposals to fix or otherwise reduce the severity of existing downstream drainage problems, although doing so may be an acceptable mitigation.

Principles of Impact Mitigation for Drainage Problems

Aggravation of an existing downstream drainage problem means increasing the frequency of occurrence and/or severity of the problem. Increasing peak flows at the location of a problem caused by conveyance system overflows can increase the frequency of the problem's occurrence. Increasing durations of flows at or above the overflow return frequency can increase the severity of the problem by increasing the depth and duration of flooding. Controlling peaks and durations through onsite detention can prevent aggravation of such problems by releasing the increased volumes from development at return frequencies below the conveyance overflow return frequency, which limits their effect to just causing the conveyance system to flow full for a longer period of time.

When a problem is caused by high water-surface elevations of a volume-sensitive water body, such as a lake, wetland, or closed depression, aggravation is the same as for problems caused by conveyance overflows. Increasing the volume of flows to a volume-sensitive water body can increase the frequency of the problem's occurrence. Increasing the duration of flows for a range of return frequencies both above and below the problem return frequency can increase the severity of the problem; mitigating these impacts requires control of flow durations for a range of return frequencies both above and below the problem return frequency. The net effect of this duration control is to release the increased volumes from development only at water surface elevations below that causing the problem, which in turn can cause an increase in these lower, but more frequently occurring, water surface elevations. This underscores an unavoidable impact of development upstream of volume-sensitive water bodies: the increased volumes generated by the development will cause some range of increase in water surface elevations, no matter what detention standard is applied.

Creating a new drainage problem means increasing peak flows and/or volumes so that after development, the frequency of conveyance overflows or water surface elevations exceeds the thresholds for the various problem types discussed in Section 1.2.2.1. For example, application of the Level 1 flow control standard requires matching the ***existing site conditions*** 2- and 10-year peak flows. The 100-year peak flow is only partially attenuated, and the flow increase may be enough to cause a ***severe flooding problem*** as described on page 1-25. The potential for causing a new problem is often identified during the Level 1 downstream analysis, where the observation of a reduction in downstream pipe sizes, for example, may be enough to predict creation of a new problem. A Level 2 or 3 analysis will typically be required to verify the capacity of the system and determine whether 100-year flows can be safely conveyed.

Significance of Impacts to Existing Drainage Problems

The determination of whether additional onsite mitigation or other measures are needed to address an existing downstream drainage problem depends on the significance of the proposed project's predicted impact on that problem. For some identified problems, DDES will make the determination as to whether the project's impact is significant enough to require additional mitigation. For the three types of downstream drainage problems described on pages 1-24 and 1-25, this threshold of significant impact or aggravation is defined below.

For ***conveyance system nuisance problems***, the problem is considered significantly aggravated if there is any increase in the project's contribution to the frequency of occurrence and/or severity of the problem for runoff events less than or equal to the 10-year event. *Note: Increases in the project's contribution to this type of problem are considered to be prevented if sufficient onsite flow control and/or offsite improvements are provided as specified in Table 1.2.3.A (p. 1-36).*

For ***severe erosion problems***, the problem is considered significantly aggravated if there is any increase in the project's existing contribution to the *flow duration*[19] of peak flows ranging from 50% of the 2-year peak flow up to the full 50-year peak flow at the eroded area. *Note: Increases in the project's contribution to this type of problem are considered to be prevented if Level 2 flow control or offsite improvements are provided as specified in Table 1.2.3.A (p. 1-36).*

For ***severe building flooding problems***, the problem is considered significantly aggravated if there is any increase in the project's existing contribution[20] to the frequency, depth, or duration of the problem for runoff events less than or equal to the 100-year event.

For ***severe roadway flooding problems***, the problem is considered significantly aggravated if any of the following thresholds are exceeded and there is any increase in the project's existing contribution[20] to the frequency, depth, or duration of the problem for runoff events less than or equal to the 100-year event:

- The *existing flooding*[21] over all lanes of a **roadway** or overtopping the culverted section of a **sole access driveway** is predicted to increase in depth more than a quarter-inch or 10% (whichever is greater) for the 100-year runoff event.
- The existing flooding over all lanes of a **roadway** or severely impacting a **sole access driveway** is more than 6 inches deep or faster than 5 feet per second for runoff events less than or equal to the 100-year event. A **severely impacted sole access driveway** is one in which flooding overtops a culverted section of the driveway, posing a threat of washout or unsafe access conditions due to indiscernible driveway edges, or flooding is deeper than 6 inches on the driveway, posing a severe impediment to emergency access.
- The existing flooding over all lanes of a *sole access roadway*[22] is more than 3 inches deep or faster than 5 feet per second for runoff events less than or equal to the 100-year event, or is at any depth for runoff events less than or equal to the 10-year event.

---

[19] *Flow duration* means the aggregate time that peak flows are at or above a particular flow rate (e.g., the amount of time over the last 50 years that peak flows were at or above the 2-year flow rate). *Note: flow duration is not considered to be increased if it is within the tolerances specified in Chapter 3.*

[20] Increases in the project's contribution are considered to be prevented if sufficient onsite flow control and/or offsite improvements are provided as specified for ***severe flooding problems*** in Table 1.2.3.A (p. 1-36). For ***severe flooding problems*** located within the mapped 100-year floodplain of a ***major receiving water*** (see **Error! Reference source not found.**, p. 1-37) or the mapped 100-year floodplain of a major stream for which there is an adopted basin plan, increases in the project's contribution are considered negligible (zero) regardless of the flow control standard being applied, unless DDES determines there is a potential for increased flooding separate from that associated with the existing 100-year floodplain.

[21] *Existing flooding*, for the purposes of this definition, means flooding over all lanes of the roadway or driveway has occurred in the past and can be verified by County records, County personnel, photographs, or other physical evidence.

[22] *Sole access roadway* means there is no other flood-free route for emergency access to one or more dwelling units.

❑ DRAINAGE PROBLEM-SPECIFIC MITIGATION REQUIREMENTS

1. IF a proposed project or ***threshold discharge area*** within a project drains to one or more of the three types of downstream drainage problems described in Section 1.2.2.1 (pages 1-24 and 1-25) as identified through a downstream analysis, THEN the applicant must do one of the following:

   a) Submit a Level 2 or Level 3 downstream analysis per Section 2.3.1 demonstrating that the proposed project will not create or significantly aggravate the identified downstream drainage problem(s), OR

   b) Show that the ***natural discharge area*** or ***threshold discharge area*** draining to the identified problem(s) qualifies for an exemption from Core Requirement #3: Flow Control (Section 1.2.3, p. 1-34) or an exception from the applicable area-specific flow control facility requirement per Section 1.2.3.1 (p. 1-35), OR

   c) Document that the applicable area-specific flow control facility requirement specified in Core Requirement #3 is adequate to prevent creation or significant aggravation of the identified downstream drainage problem(s) as indicated in Table 1.2.3.A (p. 1-36) with the phrase, "No additional flow control needed," OR

   d) Provide additional onsite flow control necessary to prevent creation or significant aggravation of the downstream drainage problem(s) as specified in Table 1.2.3.A (p. 1-36) and further detailed in Section 3.3.5, OR

   e) Provide offsite improvements necessary to prevent creation or significant aggravation of the identified downstream drainage problem(s) as detailed in Chapter 3 unless identified as not necessary in Table 1.2.3.A (p. 1-36), OR

   f) Provide a combination of additional onsite flow control and offsite improvements sufficient to prevent creation or significant aggravation of the downstream drainage problem(s) as demonstrated by a Level 2 or Level 3 downstream analysis.

2. IF it is identified that the manner of discharge from a proposed project may create a significant adverse impact as described in Core Requirement #1, THEN DDES may require the applicant to implement additional measures or demonstrate that the impact will not occur.

3. IF it is identified through a critical area review per KCC 21A.24.100 that the quantity of surface and storm water runoff from a proposed project or ***threshold discharge area*** within a proposed project could significantly alter the hydrology of a wetland, THEN DDES may require the applicant to implement additional flow control or other measures to mitigate the adverse impacts of this alteration in accordance with the wetland hydrology protection guidelines in Reference Section 5.

Intent: To ensure provisions are made (if necessary) to prevent creation or significant aggravation of the three types of downstream drainage problems requiring special attention by this manual, and to ensure compliance with the discharge requirements of Core Requirement #1.

In addressing downstream drainage problems per Problem-Specific Mitigation Requirement 1 above, additional onsite flow control will often be the easiest provision to implement. This involves designing the required onsite flow control facility to meet an additional set of performance criteria targeted to prevent significant aggravation of specific downstream drainage problems. To save time and analysis, a set of predetermined flow control performance criteria corresponding to each of the three types of downstream drainage problems is provided in Table 1.2.3.A (p. 1-36) and described in more detail in Chapter 3.

Note that in some cases the area-specific flow control facility requirement applicable to the proposed project per Section 1.2.3.1 (p. 1-35) is already sufficient to prevent significant aggravation of many of the defined downstream drainage problem types. Such situations are noted in Table 1.2.3.A (p. 1-36) as not needing additional onsite flow control or offsite improvements. For example, if the project is located within a Conservation Flow Control Area subject to the Level 2 flow control standard per Section

1.2.3.1.B (p. 1-40), and a ***conveyance system nuisance problem*** is identified through offsite analysis per Core Requirement #2, no additional onsite flow control is needed, and no offsite improvements are necessary.

1.2.2.3 WATER QUALITY PROBLEM IMPACT MITIGATION

As stated in Section 1.2.2.1, the goal of this manual is to prevent creation and/or significant aggravation of water quality problems to the maximum extent practicable. This is accomplished through a number of mitigation requirements, including (1) the area-specific water quality facility requirement in Section 1.2.8.1, (2) any mitigation required by other adopted area-specific requirements per Special Requirement #1, Section 1.3.1, (3) the source controls required in Special Requirement #4, Section 1.3.4, (4) the oil control required in Special Requirement #5, Section 1.3.5, and (5) the water quality problem-specific mitigation requirements presented in this section. *Note that this manual does not require development proposals to fix or otherwise reduce the severity of existing downstream water quality problems, although doing so may be an acceptable mitigation.*

❑ WATER QUALITY PROBLEM-SPECIFIC MITIGATION REQUIREMENTS

IF a proposed project drains to one or more of the 7 types of downstream water quality problems defined in Section 1.2.2.1 as identified through a downstream analysis, THEN the applicant must comply with the following problem-specific mitigation requirements that apply. *Note that DDES may require additional measures if the opportunity exists to further mitigate the pollutants of concern associated with these types of problems.*

Bacteria Problem (Type 1)

IF the proposed project drains to a bacteria problem located within the quarter mile/15% distance downstream (or beyond as deemed necessary by DDES), THEN the following requirements must be met as applicable:

1. IF a water quality facility is required per Core Requirement #8, THEN a **sand filter** or **stormwater wetland** shall be used to meet the area-specific water quality facility requirement. Other treatment options for meeting the area-specific facility requirement may be used in lieu of a sand filter or stormwater wetland only if combined with an **emerging technology treatment method** that provides equivalent removal of fecal coliform as demonstrated through an experimental design adjustment per Section 1.4.
2. IF the proposed project is a residential subdivision, THEN **signage** shall be provided in the subdivision's public areas (i.e., recreation/open space areas and right-of-way) requesting that pet waste be picked up in order to protect downstream water quality. The extent and location of this signage shall be reviewed and approved by DDES.
3. IF the proposed project is a multifamily development with a recreation/open area or is a park improvement, THEN **signage** shall be provided requesting that pet waste be picked up in order to protect downstream water quality. The extent and location of this signage shall be reviewed and approved by DDES.

Dissolved Oxygen (DO) Problem (Type 2)

IF the proposed project drains to a DO problem located within the quarter mile/15% distance downstream (or beyond as deemed necessary by DDES), THEN the following requirements must be met as applicable:

1. IF the proposed project includes a wetpond or wetvault, THEN the **wetpool depth** shall not exceed 6 feet, AND the outflow system shall include a measure designed to **promote aeration** of the facility's discharges for 2-year runoff events and smaller. One way to do this is to create a drop in flow elevation within a manhole by placing the outlet invert of the incoming pipe a minimum of 12 inches above the 2-year headwater elevation of the outgoing pipe. Alternatively, if the outflow system discharges to an open channel, the same drop in flow elevation could be achieved by placing the

outlet invert a minimum of 12 inches above the 2-year tailwater elevation created by the channel. Other equivalent approaches may be used as approved by DDES.

2. IF the proposed project includes a wetvault, THEN the required **ventilation area** specified in Chapter 6 shall be doubled.
3. IF the DO problem is documented to be caused by **excessive nutrients** and a water quality facility is required per Core Requirement #8, THEN a treatment facility option from the **Sensitive Lake Protection menu** shall be a component of the required treatment system.

Temperature Problem (Type 3)

IF the proposed project drains to a temperature problem located within the quarter mile/15% distance downstream (or beyond as deemed necessary by DDES), THEN the following requirements must be met as applicable:

1. IF a water quality facility is required per Core Requirement #8, THEN use of a **wetpond is prohibited** unless it will be at least 50% shaded at midday in the summer or its discharges will flow through 200 feet or more of open channel that is at least 50% shaded at midday in the summer. DDES shall review and approve the extent and location of this shading.
2. IF the proposed project includes open drainage features, THEN vegetation or other means shall be used where practicable to **maximize shading** of the drainage features, except grass bioswales and filter strips. The extent and location of this shading shall be reviewed and approved by DDES.
3. IF the proposed project is subject to the Small Lot BMP Requirements is Section 5.2.1.1, THEN the required **flow control BMPs** shall be applied the same way they would be applied if the project was located within a ***critical aquifer recharge area***.

Metals Problem (Type 4)

IF the proposed project drains to a metals problem located within the quarter mile/15% distance downstream (or beyond as deemed necessary by DDES), THEN the following requirements must be met as applicable:

1. IF a water quality facility is required per Core Requirement #8, THEN a treatment facility option from the **Enhanced Basic WQ menu** shall be a component of the project's required treatment system.
2. IF the proposed project is a residential subdivision, THEN a **covenant** shall be recorded for each lot and common area tract prohibiting future use of **leachable metals** (e.g., galvanized metals) that will be exposed to the weather (use the covenant in Reference Section 8-Q).
3. IF the proposed project includes road right-of-way improvements, THEN use of **leachable metals** (e.g., galvanized metals) that will be exposed to the weather (e.g., **guard rails, street lights**, etc.) shall be avoided.

Phosphorus Problem (Type 5)

IF the proposed project drains to a phosphorus problem located within the quarter mile/15% distance downstream (or beyond as deemed necessary by DDES), THEN the following requirements must be met as applicable:

1. IF a water quality facility is required per Core Requirement #8, THEN the project shall be assumed to be located within a designated Sensitive Lake WQ Treatment Area for the purposes of applying the area-specific water quality treatment requirement in Section 1.2.8.1.
2. For the purposes of applying the Erosion and Sediment Control Standards in Appendix D, the project shall be assumed to be located within a designated Sensitive Lake WQ Treatment Area.

Turbidity Problem (Type 6)

IF the proposed project drains to a turbidity problem located within the quarter mile/15% distance downstream (or beyond as deemed necessary by DDES) AND the downstream flow path from the ***project site*** to the turbidity problem is through a landslide hazard area, steep slope hazard area, erosion hazard area or any actively eroding area, THEN the project shall provide a tightline system through the area in accordance with the same criteria and exceptions specified in Core Requirement #1, **Discharge Requirement 2** for projects located within a designated Landslide Hazard Drainage Area. Other means for safely conveying ***project site*** discharges through the area of concern for erosion may be proposed subject to approval by DDES.

High pH Problem (Type 7)

IF the proposed project drains to a pH problem located within the quarter mile/15% distance downstream (or beyond as deemed necessary by DDES) AND the proposed project includes a concrete vault structure for stormwater control purposes, THEN the vault's submerged surfaces shall be coated or otherwise treated to prevent alteration of pH, or the vault shall be followed by a StormFilter with CSF media, except in Sensitive Lake WQ Treatment Areas.

1.2.3 CORE REQUIREMENT #3: FLOW CONTROL

REQUIREMENT

All proposed projects, including ***redevelopment projects***, must provide onsite flow control facilities or flow control BMPs or both to mitigate the impacts of storm and surface water runoff generated by ***new impervious surface***, ***new pervious surface***, and ***replaced impervious surface*** targeted for flow mitigation as specified in the following sections. **Flow control facilities** must be provided and designed to perform as specified by the area-specific flow control facility requirement in Section 1.2.3.1 (p. 1-35) and in accordance with the applicable flow control facility implementation requirements in Section 1.2.3.2 (p. 1-45). **Flow control BMPs** must be provided as directed by the flow control BMPs requirement in Section 1.2.3.3 (p. 1-50) and applied as specified by the flow control BMP requirements in Section 5.2.

Intent: To ensure the minimum level of control needed to protect downstream properties and resources from increases in peak, duration, and volume of runoff generated by new development. The level of control varies depending on location and downstream conditions identified under Core Requirement #2.

❑ EXEMPTIONS FROM CORE REQUIREMENT #3

There are three possible exemptions from the flow control provisions of Core Requirement #3:

1. Basic Exemption

A proposed project is exempt if it meets all of the following criteria:

a) Less than 2,000 square feet of ***new*** plus ***replaced impervious surface*** will be created, AND

b) Less than 35,000 square feet of ***new pervious surface***[23] will be added.

2. Impervious Surface Exemption for Transportation Redevelopment Projects

A proposed ***transportation redevelopment project*** is exempt if it meets all of the following criteria:

a) Less than 2,000 square feet of ***new impervious surface*** will be added, AND

b) Less than 35,000 square feet of ***new pervious surface***[23] will be added, AND

c) The **total *new impervious surface*** within the project limits is less than 50% of the existing impervious surface.

3. Cost Exemption for Parcel Redevelopment Projects

A proposed ***redevelopment project*** on a single or multiple parcel ***site*** is exempt if it meets all of the following criteria:

a) Less than 2,000 square feet of ***new*** plus ***replaced impervious surface*** will be created, AND

b) Less than 35,000 square feet of ***new pervious surface***[23] will be added, AND

c) The **valuation** of the project's proposed improvements (including interior improvements and excluding required mitigation improvements) is less than 50% of the assessed value of the existing ***site*** improvements.

[23] Note: If the project's ***new pervious surface*** exceeds 7,000 square feet, the soil moisture holding capacity of the ***new pervious surface*** must be protected in accordance with KCC 16.82.100 (F) and (G). KCC 16.82.100(F) requires that the duff layer or native topsoil be retained to the maximum extent practicable. KCC 16.82.100(G) requires soil amendment to mitigate for lost moisture holding capacity where compaction or removal of some or all of the duff layer or underlying topsoil has occurred, except in areas subject to a state surface mine reclamation permit or that are incorporated into a drainage facility or engineered as structural fill or slope. The specifications for soil amendment can be found in Reference Section 4A.

1.2.3.1 AREA-SPECIFIC FLOW CONTROL FACILITY REQUIREMENT

REQMT

Projects subject to Core Requirement #3 must provide flow control facilities as specified by the area-specific facility requirements and exceptions for the **designated flow control area** in which the proposed project or ***threshold discharge area*** of the proposed project is located as described in Subsections A, B, and C below.

Guide to Applying the Area-Specific Flow Control Facility Requirement

The flow control facility requirement varies across the county landscape according to the *flow control area* within which the project or a ***threshold discharge area*** of the project is located. Flow control areas are designated by the county to target the level of flow control performance to the broad protection needs of specific basins or subbasins. There are currently three such flow control areas, which are depicted on the Flow Control Applications Map adopted with this manual (see map pocket on inside of back cover). These are the **Basic Flow Control Areas**, **Conservation Flow Control Areas**, and **Flood Problem Flow Control Areas**. Each flow control area has an area-specific set of minimum flow control facility performance criteria, design assumptions, surfaces that must be mitigated, and exceptions. These provisions all comprise what is referred to as the "area-specific flow control facility requirement."

Note that the minimum required performance of the facility as specified by this requirement may need to be increased to ensure that downstream drainage problems are not created or significantly aggravated as set forth in Section 1.2.2.2, "Drainage Problem-Specific Mitigation Requirements" (p. 1-30). Table 1.2.3.A (p. 1-36) provides a quick guide for selecting the flow control performance criteria necessary to meet both the area-specific flow control facility requirement and the problem-specific mitigation requirement. This is further explained in Step 4 below.

For efficient application of the flow control facility requirement, the following steps are recommended:

1. Check the Direct Discharge Exemption on Page 1-37 and the Impervious Surface Exemption on Page 1-38 to determine if and/or which portions of your project are exempt from the flow control facility requirement. If exempt from the flow control facility requirement, proceed to Step 6.
2. Use the Flow Control Applications Map to determine the flow control area in which your project is located. If this determination cannot be made from the map, a more detailed delineation of flow control areas is available on King County's Geographic Information System (GIS).
3. Consult the detailed requirement and exception language for the identified flow control area to determine if and how the flow control facility requirement applies to your project. This requirement and exception language is detailed on subsequent pages for each of the three flow control areas depicted on the Flow Control Applications Map. If a flow control facility is not applicable per the area-specific exceptions, proceed to Step 6.
4. If downstream drainage problems were identified through offsite analysis per Core Requirement #2 and are proposed to be addressed through onsite flow control, use Table 1.2.3.A (p. 1-36) to determine if and what additional flow control performance is necessary to mitigate impacts (i.e., to prevent creation or aggravation of the identified problems).
5. Use Section 1.2.3.2 (p. 1-45) to identify the applicable requirements for implementing the flow control facility requirement. These requirements cover facility siting, analysis and design, unusual situations, and other site-specific considerations.
6. Use Section 1.2.3.3 (p. 1-50) to identify the flow control BMPs that must be applied to your ***project site*** regardless of whether a flow control facility is required.

TABLE 1.2.3.A
SUMMARY OF FLOW CONTROL PERFORMANCE CRITERIA ACCEPTABLE FOR IMPACT MITIGATION[1]

IDENTIFIED PROBLEM DOWNSTREAM	AREA-SPECIFIC FLOW CONTROL FACILITY REQUIREMENT		
	Basic Flow Control (FC) Areas	**Conservation FC Areas**	**Flood Problem FC Areas**
No Problem Identified Apply the minimum area-specific flow control performance criteria.	Apply the Level 1 flow control standard, which matches ***existing site conditions*** 2- and 10-year peaks	Apply the ***historic site conditions*** Level 2 flow control standard, which matches historic durations for 50% of 2-yr through 50-year peaks AND matches historic 2- and 10-year peaks	Apply the ***existing*** or ***historic site conditions*** Level 2 flow control standard (whichever is appropriate based on downstream flow control area) AND match ***existing site conditions*** 100-year peaks
Type 1 Drainage Problem ***Conveyance System Nuisance Problem***	Additional Flow Control Hold 10-year peak to overflow T_r peak[2][3]	*No additional flow control or other mitigation is needed*	*No additional flow control or other mitigation is needed*
Type 2 Drainage Problem ***Severe Erosion Problem***	Additional Flow Control Apply the ***existing site conditions*** Level 2 flow control standard[3][4]	*No additional flow control is needed, but other mitigation may be required*[4]	*No additional flow control is needed, but other mitigation may be required*[4]
Type 3 Drainage Problem ***Severe Flooding Problem***	Additional Flow Control Apply the ***existing site conditions*** Level 3 flow control standard to peak flows above the overflow T_r peak. If flooding is from a closed depression, make design adjustments as needed to meet the "special provision for closed depressions"[3][5]	Additional Flow Control Apply the ***historic site conditions*** Level 3 flow control standard. If flooding is from a closed depression, make design adjustments as needed to meet the "special provision for closed depressions"[3][5]	Additional Flow Control If flooding is from a closed depression, make design adjustments as needed to meet the "special provision for closed depressions" [3][5]
Potential Impact to Wetland Hydrology as Determined through a Critical Area Review per KCC 21A.24.100	Additional Flow Control DDES may require design adjustments per the wetland hydrology protection guidelines in Reference Section 5	Additional Flow Control DDES may require design adjustments per the wetland hydrology protection guidelines in Reference Section 5	Additional Flow Control DDES may require design adjustments per the wetland hydrology protection guide-lines in Reference Section 5

Notes:

(1) More than one set of problem-specific performance criteria may apply if two or more downstream drainage problems are identified through offsite analysis per Core Requirement #2. If this happens, the performance goals of each applicable problem-specific criteria must be met. This can require extensive, time-consuming analysis to implement multiple sets of outflow performance criteria if additional onsite flow control is the only viable option for mitigating impacts to these problems. In these cases, it may be easier and more prudent to implement the ***historic site conditions*** Level 3 flow control standard in place of the otherwise required area-specific standard. Use of the historic Level 3 flow control standard satisfies the specified performance criteria for all the area-specific and problem-specific requirements except if adjustments are required per the special provision for closed depressions described below in Note 5.

(2) Overflow T_r is the return period of conveyance system overflow. To determine T_r requires a minimum Level 2 downstream analysis as detailed in Section 2.3.1.1. To avoid this analysis, a T_r of 2 years may be assumed.

(3) Offsite improvements may be implemented in lieu of or in combination with additional flow control as allowed in Section 1.2.2.2 (p. 1-28) and detailed in Section 3.3.5.

(4) A tightline system may be required regardless of the flow control standard being applied if needed to meet the discharge requirements of Core Requirement #1 (p. 1-21) or the outfall requirements of Core Requirement #4 (p. 1-54), or if deemed necessary by DDES where the risk of severe damage is high.

(5) **Special Provision for Closed Depressions with a Severe Flooding Problem:**
IF the proposed project discharges by overland flow or conveyance system to a closed depression experiencing a ***severe flooding problem*** AND the amount of ***new impervious surface*** area proposed by the project is greater than or equal to 10% of the 100-year water surface area of the closed depression, THEN use the "point of compliance analysis technique" described in Section 3.3.6 to verify that water surface levels are not increasing for the return frequencies at which flooding occurs, up to and including the 100-year frequency. If necessary, iteratively adjust onsite flow control performance to prevent increases. *Note: The point of compliance analysis relies on certain field measurements taken directly at the closed depression (e.g., soils tests, topography, etc.). If permission to enter private property for such measurements is denied, DDES may waive this provision and apply the* ***existing site conditions*** *Level 3 flow control standard with a mandatory 20% safety factor on the storage volume.*

❑ DIRECT DISCHARGE EXEMPTION

Any onsite **natural drainage area** is exempt from the flow control facility requirement if the area drains to one of the ***major receiving waters*** listed in Table 1.2.3.B at right, AND meets the following criteria for *direct discharge*[25] to that receiving water:

a) The **flowpath** from the ***project site*** discharge point to the edge of the 100-year floodplain of the major receiving water will be **no longer than a quarter mile**, except for discharges to Lake Sammamish, Lake Washington, and Puget Sound, AND

b) The conveyance system between the ***project site*** and the ***major receiving water*** will extend to the ordinary high water mark, and will be **comprised of manmade conveyance elements** (pipes, ditches, etc.) and will be within public right-of-way or a public or private drainage easement, AND

c) The conveyance system will have **adequate capacity**[26] per Core Requirement #4, Conveyance System, for the entire contributing drainage area, assuming **build-out conditions** to current zoning for the *equivalent area* portion (defined in Figure 1.2.3.A, below) and existing conditions for the remaining area, AND

d) The conveyance system will be adequately **stabilized to prevent erosion**, assuming the same basin conditions as assumed in Criteria (c) above, AND

e) The direct discharge proposal will not **divert flows** from or increase flows to an **existing wetland or stream** sufficient to cause a significant adverse impact.

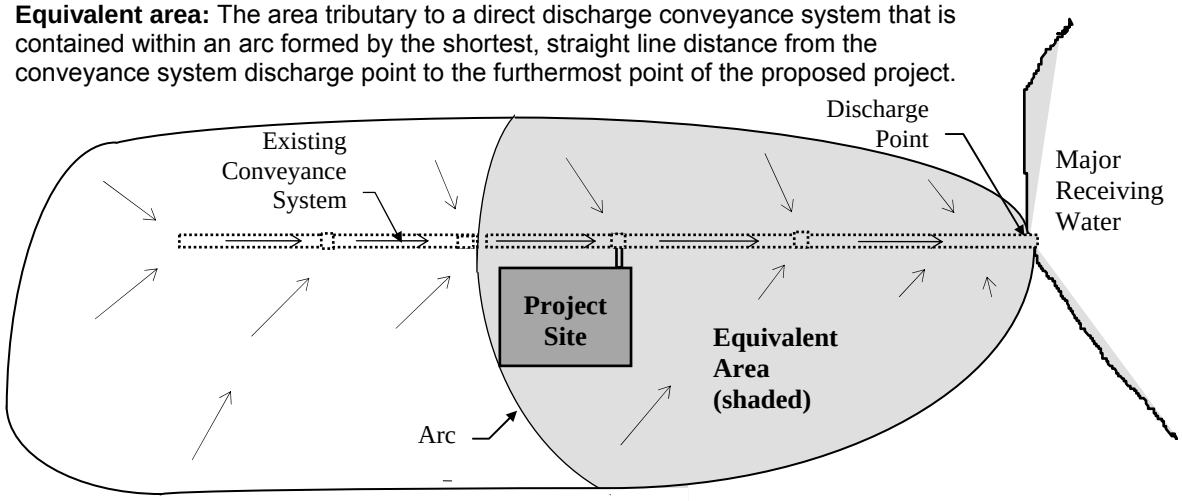
TABLE 1.2.3.B
MAJOR RECEIVING WATERS

- Cedar River downstream of Taylor Creek confluence
- Green/Duwamish River below River Mile 6 (S. Boeing Access Road)
- Snoqualmie River mainstem downstream of Middle Fork Snoqualmie River confluence
- Middle Fork Snoqualmie River downstream of Rainy Creek confluence
- Sammamish River24
- White/Stuck River downstream of Huckleberry Creek confluence
- South Fork Skykomish River downstream of Tye and Foss River confluences
- Lake Sammamish
- Lake Washington
- Puget Sound

*Note: The **major receiving waters** listed above do not include side adjacent or associated channels, spring- or groundwater-fed streams, or wetlands.*

FIGURE 1.2.3.A EQUIVALENT AREA DEFINITION AND ILLUSTRATION

Equivalent area: The area tributary to a direct discharge conveyance system that is contained within an arc formed by the shortest, straight line distance from the conveyance system discharge point to the furthermost point of the proposed project.



[24] *Projects discharging directly to the Sammamish River must infiltrate runoff to the extent feasible before discharge to the River.*

[25] *Direct discharge* means undetained discharge from a proposed project to a ***major receiving water***.

[26] *Note: If the conveyance system is an existing King County-owned system, the County may charge a special use fee.*

❑ IMPERVIOUS SURFACE PERCENTAGE EXEMPTION

Any onsite ***threshold discharge area*** is exempt from the flow control facility requirement if it meets all of the following conditions:

a) The amount of ***new impervious surface*** **plus existing impervious surface** that is **not** ***fully dispersed*** per the criteria on Page 1-46 must be no more than 4% of the ***threshold discharge area***, AND

b) The amount of ***new pervious surface*** must be no more than 15% of the natural drainage area, AND

c) Flow control BMPs must be applied to ***new impervious surface***s as specified in Section 1.2.3.3 (p. 1-50), AND

d) All impervious surface area, except 10,000 square feet of it, must be **set back** from its natural location of discharge from the ***site*** at least 100 feet for every 10,000 square feet of total impervious surface, AND

e) Increased runoff that is not ***fully dispersed*** from the ***new impervious surface*** and ***new pervious surface*** must not significantly impact a **critical area**, ***severe flooding problem***, or ***severe erosion problem***, AND

f) The **manner in which runoff is discharged** from the ***project site*** does not create a significant adverse impact per Core Requirement #1.

A. BASIC FLOW CONTROL AREAS

Basic Flow Control Areas are designated in two ways. Basic Flow Control Areas refer to areas that discharge to a closed conveyance system, which discharges eventually to water bodies that are designated as ***major receiving waters***. Basic Flow Control Areas are also designated by King County, with approval from the state Department of Ecology, where the County has determined that maintaining peak flows is sufficient to protect natural and constructed conveyance systems. The latter method is usually based on the findings of a plan or study that has determined that such conveyance systems are not sensitive to development-induced increases in runoff volume and durations. Basic Flow Control Areas are delineated on the Flow Control Applications Map adopted with this manual (see map pocket on inside of back cover). A more detailed delineation is available on the County's Geographic Information System.

Note: For projects located at or near the delineated boundary of the Basic Flow Control Area, ***site****-specific topography or drainage information may be needed to determine whether a project or any* ***threshold discharge area*** *of a project is indeed within the flow control area. Any* ***threshold discharge area*** *is considered to be within the Basic Flow Control Area if the* ***threshold discharge area*** *drains to a waterbody or drainage system that is clearly within the mapped Basic Flow Control Area.*

REQMT

Within Basic Flow Control Areas, required flow control facilities must comply with the following minimum requirements for facility performance and mitigation of targeted surfaces, except where such requirements or the facility requirement itself is waived or reduced by the area-specific exceptions at the end of this subsection.

Minimum Required Performance

Facilities **in Basic Flow Control Areas** must comply with the following flow control performance standards and assumptions unless modified by offsite analysis per Core Requirement #2 (see Table 1.2.3.A, p. 1-36):

Level 1 Flow Control: Match the developed peak discharge rates to ***existing site conditions*** peak discharge rates for 2- and 10-year return periods.

Reduced Level 1 Flow Control: A modified version of this standard, controlling only the 10-year frequency peak flow rate, is allowed if the applicant demonstrates both of the following:

- The proposed ***project site*** discharges to a conveyance system not subject to erosion that extends from the project discharge point to one of the ***major receiving waters*** listed on Page 1-37, AND
- There is no evidence of capacity problems along this conveyance system as determined by offsite analysis per Core Requirement #2, or such problems will be resolved prior to project construction.

Intent

The Level 1 flow control standard is intended to protect flow-carrying capacity and limit increased erosion within the downstream conveyance system for runoff events less than or equal to the 10-year event. Matching the 2- and 10-year peak flows is intended to prevent increases in return-frequency peak flows less than or equal to the 10-year peak flow down to the 2-year peak flow. This level of control is also intended to prevent creation of new ***conveyance system nuisance problems*** as described in Section1.2.2.1.

Effectiveness in Addressing Downstream Drainage Problems

While the Level 1 flow control standard provides reasonable protection from many development-induced conveyance problems (up to the 10-year event), it does not prevent increases in runoff volumes or flow durations that tend to aggravate the three types of downstream drainage problems described in Section 1.2.2.1. Consequently, if one or more of these problems are identified through offsite analysis per Core Requirement #2, additional onsite flow control and/or offsite improvements will likely be required (see "Drainage Problem-Specific Mitigation Requirements" in Section 1.2.2.2, p. 1-30).

Target Surfaces

Facilities **in Basic Flow Control Areas** must mitigate (either directly or in effect) the runoff from the following target surfaces within the ***threshold discharge area*** for which the facility is required:

1. ***New impervious surface*** that is **not *fully dispersed*** per the criteria on Page 1-46. For individual lots within residential subdivision projects, the extent of ***new impervious surface*** shall be assumed as specified in Chapter 3. *Note, any **new impervious surface** such as a bridge that spans the ordinary high water of a stream, pond, or lake may be excluded as a target surface if the runoff from such span is conveyed to the ordinary high water area in accordance with Criteria (b), (c), (d), and (e) of the "Direct Discharge Exemption" (p 1-37).*
2. ***New pervious surface*** that is **not *fully dispersed***. For individual lots within residential subdivision projects, the extent of ***new pervious surface*** shall be assumed to be the entire lot area, except the assumed impervious portion and any portion in which native conditions are preserved by covenant, tract, or easement. In addition, the ***new pervious surface*** on individual lots shall be assumed to be 100% grass if located within the Urban Growth Area (UGA) and 50% grass/50% pasture if located outside the UGA.

Exceptions

The following exceptions apply only **in Basic Flow Control Areas**:

1. The facility requirement in Basic Flow Control Areas is waived for any ***threshold discharge area*** in which the target surfaces subject to this requirement will generate no more than a **0.1-cfs increase** in the ***existing site conditions*** 100-year peak flow. *Note: for the purposes of this calculation, target surfaces served by flow control BMPs per Appendix C may be modeled in accordance with the flow control BMP facility sizing credits in Table 1.2.3.C (p. 1-47).*
2. The facility requirement in Basic Flow Control Areas may be waived for any ***threshold discharge area*** of a ***redevelopment project*** in which all of the following criteria are met:
   a) The target surfaces subject to the Basic Flow Control Areas facility requirement will generate no more than a **0.1-cfs increase** in the ***existing site conditions*** 100-year peak flow at any ***natural***

discharge location from the ***project site*** (*note: for the purposes of this calculation, target surfaces served by flow control BMPs per Appendix C may be modeled in accordance with the flow control BMP facility sizing credits in Table 1.2.3.C, p. 1-47)*, AND

b) The increased runoff from target surfaces will not significantly impact a critical area, ***severe flooding problem***, or ***severe erosion problem***.

B. CONSERVATION FLOW CONTROL AREAS

Conservation Flow Control Areas cover all of unincorporated King County except where the County has determined that control of flow durations and peaks to ***historic site conditions*** is not necessary to protect or allow for the restoration of water quality or habitat functions essential to salmonids. Conservation Flow Control Areas are the default designation until a County-approved plan or study has determined that natural and manmade conveyance systems within the area designated are not sensitive to development-induced increases in runoff volume and durations. Most Conservation Flow Control Areas are delineated on the Flow Control Applications Map adopted with this manual (see map pocket on inside of back cover). Any unincorporated areas of King County not shown on this map shall be assumed to be Conservation Flow Control Areas unless they drain entirely by non-erodible manmade conveyance to a ***major receiving water*** (listed on page 1-37), in which case they will be assumed to be Basic Flow Control Areas. A more detailed delineation of Conservation Flow Control Areas is available on the County's Geographic Information System.

Note: For projects located at or near the delineated boundary of the Conservation Flow Control Area, ***site-****specific topography or drainage information may be needed to verify that a project or any* ***threshold discharge area*** *of a project is within the flow control area. Any* ***threshold discharge area*** *is considered to be within the Conservation Flow Control Area if the* ***threshold discharge area*** *drains to a waterbody or drainage system that is clearly within the mapped Conservation Flow Control Area. However, any* ***threshold discharge area*** *that drains entirely by non-erodible manmade conveyance to a* ***major receiving water*** *(listed on page 1-37) may be assumed to be located within and subject to the facility requirements and exceptions of a Basic Flow Control Area.*

REQMT

Within Conservation Flow Control Areas, required flow control facilities must comply with the following minimum requirements for facility performance and mitigation of targeted surfaces, except where such requirements or the facility requirement itself is waived or reduced by the area-specific exceptions at the end of this subsection.

Minimum Required Performance

Facilities **in Conservation Flow Control Areas** must comply with the following flow control performance standard and assumptions unless modified by offsite analysis per Core Requirement #2 (see Table 1.2.3.A, p. 1-36):

Level 2 Flow Control: Match developed discharge durations to predeveloped durations for the range of predeveloped discharge rates from 50% of the 2-year peak flow up to the full 50-year peak flow. Also match developed peak discharge rates to predeveloped peak discharge rates for the 2- and 10-year return periods. Assume ***historic site conditions*** as the predeveloped condition.

Intent

The Level 2 flow control standard assuming ***historic site conditions*** is intended to limit the amount of time that erosive flows are at work generating erosion and sedimentation within natural and constructed drainage systems. Such control is effective in preventing development-induced increases in natural erosion rates and reducing existing erosion rates where they may have been increased by past development of the ***site***. This is accomplished by maintaining at historic predevelopment levels the aggregate time that developed flows exceed an erosion-causing threshold (i.e., 50% of the historic 2-year peak flow). Maintaining natural erosion rates within streams and their tributary areas is

important for preventing increases in stream channel erosion and sediment loading that are detrimental to salmonid habitat and production.

Effectiveness in Addressing Downstream Drainage Problems

While the Level 2 flow control standard assuming ***historic site conditions*** provides a reasonable level of protection for preventing most development-induced problems, it does not necessarily prevent increases in ***existing site conditions*** 100-year peak flows that can aggravate ***severe flooding problems*** as described in Core Requirement #2, nor does it necessarily prevent aggravation of all ***severe erosion problems***. Consequently, if one or more of these problems are identified through offsite analysis per Core Requirement #2, additional onsite flow control and/or offsite improvements will likely be required (see "Drainage Problem-Specific Mitigation Requirements" in Section 1.2.2.2, p. 1-30).

Target Surfaces

Facilities **in Conservation Flow Control Areas**[27] must mitigate (either directly or in effect) the runoff from the following target developed surfaces within the ***threshold discharge area*** for which the facility is required:

1. ***New impervious surface*** that is **not *fully dispersed*** per the criteria on Page 1-46. For individual lots within residential subdivision projects, the extent of ***new impervious surface*** shall be assumed as specified in Chapter 3. *Note, any **new impervious surface** such as a bridge that spans the ordinary high water of a stream, pond, or lake may be excluded as a target surface if the runoff from such span is conveyed to the ordinary high water area in accordance with Criteria (b), (c), (d), and (e) of the "Direct Discharge Exemption" (p 1-37).*
2. ***New pervious surface*** that is **not *fully dispersed***. For individual lots within residential subdivision projects, the extent of ***new pervious surface*** shall be assumed to be the entire lot area, except the assumed impervious portion and any portion in which native conditions are preserved by covenant, tract, or easement. In addition, the ***new pervious surface*** on individual lots shall be assumed to be 100% grass if located within the Urban Growth Area (UGA) and 50% grass/50% pasture if located outside the UGA.
3. **Existing impervious surface** added since January 8, 2001 that is **not *fully dispersed*** and not yet mitigated with a County-approved flow control facility or flow control BMP. *Note: January 8, 2001 is the effective date of the ESA 4(d) Rule for Puget Sound Chinook salmon.*
4. ***Replaced impervious surface*** that is **not *fully dispersed*** on a ***transportation redevelopment project*** in which ***new impervious surface*** is 5,000 square feet or more and totals 50% or more of the existing impervious surface within the project limits.
5. ***Replaced impervious surface*** that is **not *fully dispersed*** on a **parcel *redevelopment project*** in which the total of new plus ***replaced impervious surface*** is 5,000 square feet or more and whose valuation of proposed improvements (including interior improvements and excluding required mitigation improvements) exceeds 50% of the assessed value of the existing ***site*** improvements.

Exceptions

The following exceptions apply only **in Conservation Flow Control Areas**[27]:

1. The ***historic site conditions* assumption** for application of Level 2 flow control may be reduced through a basin plan or study approved by King County DNRP and the Washington State Department of Ecology. One possible reduction is to an assumption of 75% forest, 15% grass, and 10% impervious surface (75/15/10 conditions) or ***existing site conditions***, whichever generates the lowest 100-year peak flow. Another possible change that could be made through a County and Ecology approved basin

[27] *Note: Any **threshold discharge area** that appears to be located within a Conservation Flow Control Area according to the Flow Control Applications Map but drains entirely by non-erodible manmade conveyance to a **major receiving water** (listed on page 1-37) is considered to be located within a Basic Flow Control Area.*

plan or study is to the lowest peak flow (50% of the 2-year peak flow) above which discharge durations must be matched. This peak flow, known as the geomorphic threshold of bed load movement, may be changed based on the actual channel conditions necessary to protect or allow for restoration of water body beneficial uses and habitat functions essential to salmonids.

2. The facility requirement in Conservation Flow Control Areas is waived for any ***threshold discharge area*** in which there is **no more than a 0.1-cfs difference** in the sum of developed 100-year peak flows for those target surfaces subject to this requirement and the sum of ***historic site conditions*** 100-year peak flows for the same surface areas. *Note: for the purposes of this calculation, target surfaces served by flow control BMPs per Appendix C may be modeled in accordance with the flow control BMP facility sizing credits in Table 1.2.3.C (p. 1-47).*

3. The facility requirement in Conservation Flow Control Areas may be reduced or waived for any ***threshold discharge area*** where a **plan or study** approved by the County and Ecology shows that a lower standard (e.g., Level 1 flow control) is sufficient or no facility is necessary to protect or allow for restoration of water body beneficial uses and habitat functions essential to salmonids.

4. The facility requirement in Conservation Flow Control Areas as applied to ***replaced impervious surface*** may be waived if the County has adopted a plan and implementation schedule approved by state Department of Ecology for fulfilling this requirement in **regional facilities**.

5. The facility requirement in Conservation Flow Control Areas as applied to ***replaced impervious surface*** may be reduced by the DDES Land Use Services Division Manager/designee or Building Services Division Manager/designee using the procedures detailed in Sections 1.4.3 and 1.4.4 of the adjustment process, if the **cost of flow control facilities** to mitigate all target surfaces exceeds that necessary to mitigate only for ***new impervious surface*** plus ***new pervious surface*** and also exceeds $^1/_3$ of the valuation of proposed improvements (including interior improvements) or twice the cost of a facility to mitigate equivalent surfaces on a new ***development site***, whichever is less. The amount of reduction shall be limited such that the **cost of flow control facilities** is at least equal to that necessary to mitigate only for ***new impervious surface*** plus ***new pervious surface***, and beyond this amount, is no greater than $^1/_3$ of the valuation of proposed improvements (including interior improvements) or twice the cost of a facility to mitigate equivalent surfaces on a new ***development site***, whichever is less.

C. FLOOD PROBLEM FLOW CONTROL AREAS

Flood Problem Flow Control Areas are designated by King County where the County has determined that a higher average level of flow control is needed to prevent aggravation of existing documented flooding problems. Such areas are delineated on the Flow Control Applications Map (located inside the back cover of this manual), and are also listed on the map by name of lake, wetland code number (from the *King County Wetlands Inventory*), or approximate address. A more detailed delineation of Flood Problem Flow Control Areas is available on the County's Geographic Information System.

Note: For projects located at or near the delineated boundary of the Flood Problem Flow Control Area, ***site****-specific topography or drainage information may be needed to verify that a project or any* ***threshold discharge area*** *of a project is within the flow control area. Any* ***threshold discharge area*** *is considered to be within the Flood Problem Flow Control Area if the* ***threshold discharge area*** *drains to a waterbody or drainage system that is clearly within the mapped Flood Problem Flow Control Area.*

REQMT

Within Flood Problem Flow Control Areas, required flow control facilities must comply with the following minimum requirements for facility performance and mitigation of targeted surfaces, except where such requirements or the facility requirement itself is waived or reduced by the area-specific exceptions at the end of this subsection.

Minimum Required Performance

Facilities **in Flood Problem Flow Control Areas** must comply with the following flow control performance standard and assumptions unless modified by offsite analysis per Core Requirement #2 (see Table 1.2.3.A, p. 1-36):

Level 3 Flow Control: Apply the Level 2 flow control standard, AND match the developed 100-year peak discharge rate to the predeveloped 100-year peak discharge rate. If the Flood Problem Flow Control Area is located within a Conservation Flow Control Area and does not drain entirely by non-erodible manmade conveyance to a ***major receiving water*** (listed on page 1-37), then ***historic site conditions*** shall be assumed as the predeveloped condition except for the purposes of matching 100-year peak discharge rates. For all other situations and for the purposes of matching 100-year peak discharge rates, ***existing site conditions*** may be assumed.

Intent

The Level 3 flow control standard is intended to prevent significant increases in existing water surface levels for 2-year through 100-year return frequencies. Such increases are expected to occur as the volume of runoff discharging to the water body is increased by upstream development. Because inflow rates to these water bodies are typically much higher than the outflow rates, increased runoff volumes from upstream development are, in effect, stacked on top of existing volumes in the water body, resulting in higher water surface levels. The duration-matching and 100-year peak-matching criteria of the Level 3 flow control standard counteract this stacking effect by slowing the arrival of additional runoff volumes. Because it can prevent significant aggravation of existing flooding, the Level 3 standard is also applicable to other flow control areas where ***severe flooding problems*** have been identified per Core Requirement #2.

Effectiveness in Addressing Downstream Drainage Problems

If the Level 3 flow control standard is implemented onsite, no additional measures are required to prevent aggravation of the three types of downstream drainage problems described in Core Requirement #2. The one exception is for a wetland or lake that is a closed depression with a ***severe flooding problem***, and the proposed project is adding impervious surface area amounting to more than 10% of the 100-year water surface area of the closed depression. In this case, additional onsite flow control or offsite improvements may be necessary as determined by a "point of compliance analysis" (see "Special Provision for Closed Depressions" in Table 1.2.3.A (p. 1-36), and see Section 3.3.6, "Point of Compliance Analysis").

Target Surfaces

Facilities **in Flood Problem Flow Control Areas** must mitigate (either directly or in effect) the runoff from the following target developed surfaces within the ***threshold discharge area*** for which the facility is required:

1. If the Flood Problem Flow Control Area is **located within a Conservation Flow Control Area**, then the target surfaces are the same as those required for facilities in Conservation Flow Control Areas (see p. 1-40) unless otherwise allowed by the area-specific exceptions for Conservation Flow Control Areas. *Note: Any Flood Problem Flow Control Area that appears to be located within a Conservation Flow Control Area identified on the Flow Control Applications Map, but drains entirely by non-erodible manmade conveyance to a* ***major receiving water*** *(listed on page 1-37), is considered to be located within a Basic Flow Control Area*.
2. If the Flood Problem Flow Control Area is **located within a Basic Flow Control Area** or drains entirely by non-erodible manmade conveyance to a ***major receiving water***, then the target surfaces are the same as those required for facilities in Basic Flow Control Areas (see p. 1-38).

Exceptions

The following exceptions apply only **in Flood Problem Flow Control Areas**:

1. If the Flood Problem Flow Control Area **is located within a Conservation Flow Control Area**, then the facility requirement is waived for any ***threshold discharge area*** in which there is no more than a 0.1-cfs difference in the sum of developed 100-year peak flows for the target surfaces subject to this requirement and the sum of ***historic site conditions*** 100-year peak flows for the same surface areas. *Note: for the purposes of this calculation, target surfaces served by flow control BMPs per Appendix C may be modeled in accordance with the flow control BMP facility sizing credits in Table 1.2.3.C (p. 1-47). Also, any Flood Problem Flow Control Area that appears to be located within a Conservation Flow Control Area identified on the Flow Control Applications Map, but drains entirely by non-erodible manmade conveyance to a* ***major receiving water*** *(listed on page 1-37), is considered to be located within a Basic Flow Control Area.*

2. If the Flood Problem Flow Control Area **is located within a Basic Flow Control Area**, then the facility requirement is waived for any ***threshold discharge area*** in which the target surfaces subject to this requirement will generate no more than a 0.1-cfs increase in the ***existing site conditions*** 100-year peak flow. *Note: for the purposes of this calculation, target surfaces served by flow control BMPs per Appendix C may be modeled in accordance with the flow control BMP facility sizing credits in Table 1.2.3.C (p. 1-47).*

3. Any required application of the Flood Problem Flow Control Areas facility requirement to ***replaced impervious surface*** may be waived if the County has adopted a plan and implementation schedule approved by the state Department of Ecology for fulfilling this requirement with regional facilities.

4. Any required application of the Flood Problem Flow Control Areas facility requirement to ***replaced impervious surface*** may be reduced by the DDES Land Use Services Division Manager/designee or Building Services Division Manager/designee using the procedures detailed in Sections 1.4.3 and 1.4.4 of the adjustment process, if the **cost of flow control facilities** to mitigate all target surfaces exceeds that necessary to mitigate only for ***new impervious surface*** plus ***new pervious surface*** and also exceeds $^1/_3$ of the valuation of proposed improvements (including interior improvements) or twice the cost of a facility to mitigate the same surfaces on a new ***development site***, whichever is less. The amount of reduction allowed by this exception shall be limited such that the **cost of flow control facilities** is at least equal to that necessary to mitigate only for ***new impervious surface*** plus ***new pervious surface***, and beyond this amount, is no greater than $^1/_3$ of the valuation of proposed improvements (including interior improvements) or twice the cost of a facility to mitigate equivalent surfaces on a new ***development site***, whichever is less.

5. Any required application of the Flood Problem Flow Control Areas facility requirement to ***replaced impervious surface*** may assume ***existing site conditions*** as the predeveloped condition for the purposes of matching the developed 100-year peak discharge rate to the predeveloped 100-year peak discharge rate.

1.2.3.2 FLOW CONTROL FACILITY IMPLEMENTATION REQUIREMENTS

Flow control facilities shall be designed and implemented in accordance with the following requirements, allowances, and flexible compliance provisions:

A. ONSITE VS. OFFSITE IMPLEMENTATION

All required flow control facilities must be implemented onsite except where the requirements below can be met by direct discharge to a regional or shared facility constructed to provide flow control for the proposed project. Regional facilities are typically constructed as part of a County-approved plan or study (e.g., basin plan, stormwater compliance plan, or master drainage plan). Shared facilities may be constructed under a County-developed shared facility drainage plan or under an agreement between two or more private developers.

1. The regional or shared facility must be of adequate size and design to meet the **current** flow control requirements for the proposed project. *Note: the current flow control requirements are those specified by Core Requirement #3 of this manual unless superseded by other adopted area-specific flow control requirements per Special Requirement #1 (see Section 1.3.1).* In some cases where the current flow control requirements differ from those used to originally design the regional or shared facility, additional analysis and possible retrofitting of the facility may be required to ensure adequate size and design. In other cases where the current flow control requirements are not significantly different or are less stringent, adequate size and design may already be documented by an adopted King County basin plan or master drainage plan, an approved shared facility drainage plan, or a detailed drainage analysis approved by the County for a separate permitted development.
2. The regional or shared facility must be fully operational at the time of construction of the proposed project. In the case of a shared facility, the proposed project must comply with the terms and conditions of all contracts, agreements, and permits associated with the shared facility. If the offsite facility is an existing King County-owned facility, the County may charge a special use fee equal to or based on the property value of the detention capacity being used.
3. The conveyance system between the ***project site*** and the regional facility must meet the same criteria specified for direct discharge to a ***major receiving water*** except for Criterion (a) (see "Direct Discharge Exemption" on page 1-37). In the case of a shared facility, the criteria are the same, except the conveyance system need only have adequate capacity and erosion protection for buildout of the *participating portion*[28] of the contributing drainage area.

B. METHODS OF ANALYSIS AND DESIGN

Flow control facilities must be analyzed and designed using a continuous flow simulation method such as HSPF (Hydrologic Simulation Program FORTRAN) or the simplified HSPF-based runoff files method. Specifications for use of the runoff files method and associated computer program, KCRTS, are found in Chapter 3. Detailed design specifications for flow control facilities are found in Chapter 5.

C. SIZING CREDITS FOR FULLY DISPERSED SURFACES

A ***fully dispersed*** surface (either impervious or non-native pervious) is one that conforms to the BMP strategy for "full dispersion" detailed in Appendix C, Section C.2.1. This strategy calls for minimizing the area of onsite developed surface relative to ***native vegetated surface***, together with the application of dispersion techniques that utilize the natural retention/detention capacity of the ***native vegetated surface*** to mitigate the runoff effects of the developed surfaces. Developed surfaces conforming to this strategy are considered to have a negligible impact downstream, and therefore, may be modeled as forest and are not subject to the area-specific flow control facility requirement (Section 1.2.3.1) or the area-specific water quality facility requirement (Section 1.2.8.1). In order for developed surfaces to qualify as ***fully***

[28] The *participating portion* includes those properties that have agreements for use of the shared facility.

dispersed, they must meet the basic criteria listed below and further detailed in Appendix C, Section C.2.1.

Criteria for Fully Dispersed Surfaces

1. The **total area of impervious surface** being ***fully dispersed*** must be no more than 15% of the total area of ***native vegetated surface*** being preserved by a clearing limit per KCC 16.82 or by recorded tract, easement, or covenant within the same ***threshold discharge area***. The total area of impervious surface plus *non-native pervious surface*[29] being ***fully dispersed*** must be no more than 35% of a ***threshold discharge area***.

2. The runoff from a ***fully dispersed*** surface must be discharged using one of the following **dispersion devices** in accordance with the design specifications and maximum area of ***fully dispersed*** surface for each device set forth in Appendix C, Section C.2.1:

   a) **Splash blocks**

   b) **Rock pads**

   c) **Gravel filled trenches**

   d) **Sheet flow**

   *Note: The dispersion device must be situated so as to discharge within the same **threshold discharge area** of the surface it serves.*

3. A **native vegetated flowpath segment** of at least 100 feet in length (25 feet for sheet flow from a non-native pervious surface) must be available along the flowpath that runoff would follow upon discharge from a dispersion device listed in Minimum Requirement 2 above. The native vegetated flowpath segment **must meet all of the following criteria:**

   a) The flowpath segment must be over ***native vegetated surface***.

   b) The flowpath segment must be **onsite or an offsite tract or easement area** reserved for such dispersion.

   c) The **slope** of the flowpath segment must be **no steeper than 15%** for any 20-foot reach of the flowpath segment.

   d) The flowpath segment must be located **between the dispersion device and any downstream drainage feature** such as a pipe, ditch, stream, river, pond, lake, or wetland.

   e) The flowpath segments for adjacent dispersion devices must comply with the **minimum spacing requirements** in Appendix C, Section C.2.1. These requirements do not allow overlap of flowpath segments, except in the case where **sheet flow from a non-native pervious surface** overlaps with the flowpath of any dispersion device listed in Minimum Requirement 2 above. In this case, the longest of the two overlapping flowpath segments must be extended at least 1 foot for every 3 feet of distance along the most representative path that runoff would travel from the upstream end to the discharge end of the non-native pervious surface.

4. On ***sites* with septic systems**, the discharge of runoff from dispersion devices must not be upgradient of the drainfield. This requirement may be waived by DDES if ***site*** topography clearly prohibits flows from intersecting the drainfield.

5. The dispersion of runoff must not create **flooding or erosion impacts** as determined by DDES. If runoff is proposed to be discharged toward a ***landslide hazard area***, ***erosion hazard area***, ***or steep slope hazard area*** (i.e., slopes steeper than 20%), DDES may require the applicant to have the proposal evaluated by a geotechnical engineer, engineering geologist, or the DDES staff geologist.

[29] *Non-native pervious surface* means a pervious surface that does not meet the definition of a ***native vegetated surface***.

D. SIZING CREDITS FOR USE OF FLOW CONTROL BMPS

When sizing flow control facilities and assessing exceptions from the flow control facility requirement, target impervious surfaces served by a flow control BMP that meets the design specifications for that BMP in Appendix C and the requirements for use of BMP credits in Section 5.2.2 may be modeled as specified in Table 1.2.3.C below.

TABLE 1.2.3.C FLOW CONTROL BMP FACILITY SIZING CREDITS(1)

Flow Control BMP Type	Facility Sizing Credit
Full dispersion	Model fully dispersed surface as forest(2)
Full infiltration(3)	Subtract impervious area that is fully infiltrated
Limited infiltration	Model tributary impervious surface as 50% impervious, 50% grass
Basic dispersion	Model dispersed impervious surface as 50% impervious, 50% grass
Rain garden	Model tributary impervious surface as 50% impervious, 50% grass
Permeable pavement (non-grassed)	Model permeable pavement area as 50% impervious, 50% grass
Grassed modular grid pavement	Model permeable pavement as all grass
Rainwater harvesting	Subtract area that is fully controlled
Vegetated roof	Model vegetated roof area as 50% impervious, 50% till grass
Restricted footprint	Model footprint as restricted
Wheel strip driveways	Model credited area as 50% impervious, 50% grass
Minimum disturbance foundation	Model foundation area as 50% impervious, 50% grass
Open grid decking over pervious area	Model deck area as 50% impervious, 50% grass
Native growth retention credit	Model mitigated impervious area as 50% impervious, 50% grass
Perforated pipe connection	None

Notes:

(1) These credits do not apply when determining eligibility for exemptions from Core Requirement #3 or exceptions from the flow control facility requirement unless otherwise noted in the exemption or exception.

(2) Surface shall be modeled using the soil type found at that location on the site, except for vegetated roofs, where the soil shall be assumed to be till.

(3) For any project subject to Small Project Drainage Review, and for any single family residential project subject to Full or Large Project Drainage Review, the design requirements and specifications in Appendix C, Section C.2.2 may be used for design of full infiltration. For all other projects, full infiltration must be designed in accordance with infiltration facility standards in Section 5.4.

E. MITIGATION OF TARGET SURFACES THAT BYPASS FACILITY

On some ***sites***, topography may make it difficult or costly to collect all target surface runoff for discharge to the onsite flow control facility. Therefore, some project runoff subject to flow control may bypass required onsite flow control facilities provided that all of the following conditions are met:

1. The **point of convergence** for runoff discharged from the bypassed target surfaces and from the project's flow control facility must be within **a quarter-mile downstream**[30] of the facility's ***project site*** discharge point, AND
2. The increase in the ***existing site conditions*** **100-year peak discharge** from the area of bypassed target surfaces must not exceed 0.4 cfs, AND

[30] Note: DDES may allow this distance to be extended beyond a quarter mile to the point where the ***project site*** area constitutes less than 15% of the tributary area.

3. Runoff from the bypassed target surfaces **must not create a significant adverse impact** to downstream drainage systems, salmonid habitat, or properties as determined by DDES, AND
4. **Water quality requirements** applicable to the bypassed target surfaces must be met, AND
5. **Compensatory mitigation by a flow control facility** must be provided so that the net effect at the point of convergence downstream is the same with or without the bypass. This mitigation may be waived if the ***existing site conditions*** 100-year peak discharge from the area of bypassed target surfaces is increased by no more than 0.1 cfs and **flow control BMPs** as detailed in Appendix C are applied to all impervious surfaces within the area of bypassed target surfaces. One or combination of the following methods may be used to provide compensatory mitigation by a flow control facility subject to permission/approvals from other parties as deemed necessary by DDES:
   a) Design the project's flow control facility or retrofit an existing offsite flow control facility as needed to achieve the desired effect at the point of convergence, OR
   b) Design the project's flow control facility or provide/retrofit an offsite flow control facility to mitigate an existing developed area (either onsite or offsite) that has runoff characteristics (i.e., peak flow and volume) equivalent to those of the bypassed target surfaces but is currently not mitigated or required to be mitigated to the same flow control performance requirement as the bypassed target surfaces.

F. BYPASS OF RUNOFF FROM NON-TARGET SURFACES

The performance of flow control facilities can be compromised if the contributing area, beyond that which must be mitigated by the facility, is too large. Therefore, IF the existing 100-year peak flow rate from any upstream area (not targeted for mitigation) is greater than 50% of the 100-year developed peak flow rate (undetained) for the area that must be mitigated, THEN the runoff from the upstream area must bypass the facility. The bypass of upstream runoff must be designed so that all of the following conditions are met:

1. Any existing contribution of flows to an **onsite wetland** must be maintained, AND
2. Upstream flows that are **naturally attenuated** by natural detention on the ***project site*** under predeveloped conditions must remain attenuated, either by natural means or by providing additional onsite detention so that peak flows do not increase, AND
3. Upstream flows that are **dispersed or unconcentrated** on the ***project site*** under predeveloped conditions must be discharged in a safe manner as described in Core Requirement #1 under "Discharge Requirements" (p. 1-21).

G. MITIGATION TRADES

A project's flow control facility may be designed to mitigate an existing developed non-target surface area (either onsite or offsite) in trade for not mitigating part or all of the project's target surface area, provided that all of the following conditions are met:

1. The **existing developed non-target surface area** (i.e., an area of existing impervious surface and/or non-native pervious surface) must have runoff discharge characteristics (i.e., peak flow and volume) equivalent to those of the target surface area for which mitigation is being traded and must not be currently mitigated to the same flow control performance requirement as the target surface area, AND
2. Runoff from both the target surface area being traded and the flow control facility **must converge prior to discharge** of the runoff from the target surface area being traded onto private property without an easement or through any area subject to erosion, AND
3. The **net effect** in terms of flow control at the point of convergence downstream must be the same with or without the mitigation trade, AND
4. The undetained runoff from the target surface area being traded **must not create a significant adverse impact** to downstream drainage systems, salmonid habitat, or properties prior to convergence with runoff from the flow control facility.

H. MANIFOLD DETENTION FACILITIES

A *manifold detention facility* is a single detention facility designed to take the place of two or more otherwise required detention facilities. It combines the runoff from two or more onsite drainage areas having separate ***natural discharge locations***, and redistributes the runoff back to the ***natural discharge locations*** following detention. Because manifold detention facilities divert flows from one ***natural discharge location*** to another and then back, they are not allowed except by an approved adjustment (see Section 1.4).

I. FACILITY REQUIREMENT IN LANDSLIDE HAZARD DRAINAGE AREAS

Proposed projects subject to Discharge Requirement 2 in Core Requirement #1 (see p. 1-22) must provide a tightline system unless the 100-year runoff from the ***project site*** can be feasibly infiltrated or one of the other exceptions listed on page 1-22 apply. For infiltration to be used as an alternative to the tightline requirement, it must be feasible per the facility design requirements and limitations specified in Section 5.4. When evaluating the feasibility of infiltration, multiple facility locations scattered throughout the ***project site*** shall be considered and used where feasible and practical to avoid concentrating infiltrated water in one location. If multiple facilities are not feasible or practical, then a single infiltration facility meeting the minimum setback requirements in Section 5.4 may be used where feasible.

Where infiltration is not feasible, it is still possible for a proposed project to qualify for one of the other exceptions to the tightline requirement specified in Core Requirement #1 (p. 1-22). If such a project is subject to the flow control facility requirement in Core Requirement #3, the required facility must be a **detention pond** sized to meet, at minimum, the ***historic site conditions*** Level 2 flow control facility standard with a safety factor of 20% applied to the storage volume. The detention pond must be sited and designed so as to maximize the opportunity for infiltration in the pond. To accomplish this, all of the following design requirements must be met:

1. The detention pond must be preceded by either a water quality treatment facility per Core Requirement #8 or a presettling basin per Section 5.4, AND
2. All detention pond side slopes must be 3H:1V or flatter and must be earthen, AND
3. Detention pond liners that impede infiltration shall not be used, AND
4. The pond bottom shall be at or above the seasonal high groundwater table, AND
5. The detention pond outflow must meet the discharge dispersal requirements specified in Discharge Requirement 1 of Core Requirement #1 (p. 1-21).

1.2.3.3 FLOW CONTROL BMPS REQUIREMENT

REQMT

Projects subject to Core Requirement #3 must apply **flow control BMPs** to impervious surfaces as directed by this section to either supplement the flow mitigation provided by required flow control facilities or provide flow mitigation where flow control facilities are not required. Flow control BMPs must be selected and applied according to the basic requirements, procedures, and provisions detailed in Section 5.2 and the design specifications for each BMP in Appendix C, Section C.2.

Flow control BMPs are methods and designs for dispersing, infiltrating, or otherwise reducing or preventing development-related increases in runoff at or near the sources of those increases. Flow control BMPs include, but are not limited to, preservation and use of ***native vegetated surfaces*** to fully disperse runoff; use of other pervious surfaces to disperse runoff; roof downspout infiltration; permeable pavements; rainwater harvesting; vegetated roofs; and reduction of development footprint.

Intent: To provide mitigation of hydrologic impacts that are not possible/practical to mitigate with a flow control facility. Such impacts include increases in runoff volumes and flashiness and decreases in groundwater recharge. Increased runoff volume and flashiness leads to higher and more variable stream velocities at low flows and more frequent water level fluctuations in streams and wetlands. This causes wash-out and stranding of aquatic species, algal scour and washout of organic matter, loss of vegetation diversity and habitat quality, and disruption of cues for spawning, egg hatching, and migration. Decreased groundwater recharge reduces water supply for human use and summer base flows in streams, which is critical to water temperature, salmonid use of smaller streams, and the habitat quality of mainstem side channels and wetlands used for spawning, rearing, and flood refuge. Flow control BMPs seek to reduce runoff volumes and flashiness and increase groundwater recharge by reducing imperviousness and making use of the pervious portions of ***development sites*** to maximize infiltration and retention of stormwater onsite. Thus, the goal is to apply flow control BMPs to ***new*** and ***replaced impervious surfaces*** to the maximum extent practicable without causing flooding or erosion impacts. The minimum levels of application specified in Section 5.2 are considered by the County to be a maximum extent practicable level based on best available information regarding the effectiveness of these BMPs versus their cost.

❑ INFILTRATION FACILITY EXEMPTION

Any impervious surface served by an infiltration facility designed in accordance with the flow control facility requirement (Section 1.2.3.1), the facility implementation requirements (Section 1.2.3.2), and the design criteria for infiltration facilities (Section 5.4) is exempt from the flow control BMPs requirement.

❑ IMPLEMENTATION OF THIS REQUIREMENT

For **non-subdivision projects making improvements on an individual *site*/lot**, implementation of this requirement shall be in accordance with the "Individual Lot BMP Requirements" in Section 5.2.1, which specify the selection of BMPs and the extent of their application to the impervious surfaces of the ***site*/lot**. This required implementation of flow control BMPs must occur as part of the proposed project and provisions must be made for their future maintenance as specified in Section 5.2.1.

For **subdivision projects** or **projects within rights-of-way** (e.g., road improvements), implementation of this requirement is incentive-based. In other words, implementation is achieved by giving credits for the application of flow control BMPs per Table 1.2.3.C (p. 1-47). As allowed in Sections 1.2.3 and 1.2.8, these credits may be used to reduce the size of a required flow control facility, qualify for a flow control facility exception or bypass of target surfaces, or reduce the target surfaces subject to flow control or water quality facility requirements. To use these credits, flow control BMPs must be implemented as part of the proposed project and provisions must be made for their future maintenance as specified in Section 5.2.2. For subdivision projects proposing to take credit for future implementation of BMPs on individual lots, provisions must be made to assure their implementation as specified in Section 5.2.2.1.

1.2.4 CORE REQUIREMENT #4: CONVEYANCE SYSTEM

REQUIREMENT

All engineered conveyance system elements for proposed projects must be analyzed, designed, and constructed to provide a minimum level of protection against overtopping, flooding, erosion, and structural failure as specified in the following groups of requirements:

- "Conveyance Requirements for New Systems," Section 1.2.4.1 (below)
- "Conveyance Requirements for Existing Systems," Section 1.2.4.2 (p. 1-52)
- "Conveyance System Implementation Requirements," Section 1.2.4.3 (p. 1-53)

Intent: To ensure proper design and construction of engineered conveyance system elements. *Conveyance systems* are natural and engineered drainage facilities that collect, contain, and provide for the flow of surface and storm water. This core requirement applies to the engineered elements of conveyance systems—primarily pipes, culverts, and ditches/channels.

1.2.4.1 CONVEYANCE REQUIREMENTS FOR NEW SYSTEMS

All *new conveyance system elements*,[31] both onsite and offsite, shall be analyzed, designed, and constructed according to the following requirements. Also see Section 4.1 for route design and easement requirements.

Pipe Systems

1. New pipe systems shall be designed with sufficient capacity to convey and contain (at minimum) the 25-year peak flow, assuming developed conditions for onsite tributary areas and existing conditions for any offsite tributary areas.
2. Pipe system structures may overtop for runoff events that exceed the 25-year design capacity, provided the overflow from a 100-year runoff event does not create or aggravate a ***severe flooding problem*** or ***severe erosion problem*** as described in Core Requirement #2, Section 1.2.2 (p. 1-36). Any overflow occurring onsite for runoff events up to and including the 100-year event must discharge at the natural location for the ***project site***. In residential subdivisions, this overflow must be contained within an onsite drainage easement, tract, covenant, or public right-of-way.
3. The upstream end of a pipe system that receives runoff from an open drainage feature (pond, ditch, etc.) shall be analyzed and sized as a culvert as described below.

Culverts

1. New culverts shall be designed with sufficient capacity to meet the headwater requirements in Section 4.3.1 and convey (at minimum) the 25-year peak flow, assuming developed conditions for onsite tributary areas and existing conditions for any offsite tributary areas.
2. New culverts must also convey as much of the 100-year peak flow as is necessary to preclude creating or aggravating a ***severe flooding problem*** or ***severe erosion problem*** as described in Core Requirement #2, Section 1.2.2 (p. 1-36). Any overflow occurring onsite for runoff events up to and including the 100-year event must discharge at the natural location for the ***project site***. In residential subdivisions, this overflow must be contained within an onsite drainage easement, tract, covenant, or public right-of-way.
3. New culverts proposed in streams with salmonids shall be designed to provide for fish passage as detailed in Section 4.3.2. *Note: The County's critical areas regulations (KCC 21A.24) or the state Department of Fish and Wildlife may require a bridge to facilitate fish passage.*

[31] *New conveyance system elements* are those that are proposed to be constructed where there are no existing constructed conveyance elements.

Ditches/Channels

1. New ditches/channels shall be designed with sufficient capacity to convey and contain, at minimum, the 25-year peak flow, assuming developed conditions for onsite tributary areas and existing conditions for any offsite tributary areas.
2. New ditches/channels must also convey as much of the 100-year peak flow as is necessary to preclude creating or aggravating a ***severe flooding problem*** or ***severe erosion problem*** as described in Core Requirement 2, Section 1.2.2 (p. 1-36). Any overflow occurring onsite for runoff events up to and including the 100-year event must discharge at the natural location for the ***project site***. In residential subdivisions, such overflow must be contained within an onsite drainage easement, tract, covenant, or public right-of-way.

Tightline Systems Traversing Steep Slopes

New tightline conveyance systems traversing slopes that are steeper than 15% and greater than 20 feet in height, or are within a ***steep slope hazard area*** as defined in KCC 21A.06, shall be designed with sufficient capacity to convey and contain (at minimum) the 100-year peak flow, assuming *full build-out conditions*[32] for all tributary areas, both onsite and offsite. Tightline systems shall be designed as detailed in Section 4.2.2.

Bridges

New bridges shall be designed to accommodate the 100-year peak flow as specified in Section 4.3.3 and in accordance with the floodplain development standards in KCC 21A.24.

1.2.4.2 CONVEYANCE REQUIREMENTS FOR EXISTING SYSTEMS

The following conveyance requirements for existing systems are less rigorous than those for new systems to allow some salvaging of existing systems that are in useable condition. Existing systems may be utilized if they are capable of providing a minimum level of protection as-is or with minor modifications.

Existing Onsite Conveyance Systems

No Change in Flow Characteristics: Existing onsite conveyance systems that will not experience a change in flow characteristics (e.g., peak flows or volume of flows) as a result of the proposed project need not be analyzed for conveyance capacity.

Change in Flow Characteristics: Existing onsite conveyance systems that will experience a change in flow characteristics as a result of the proposed project must comply with the following conveyance requirements:

1. The existing system must be analyzed and shown to have sufficient capacity to convey and contain (at minimum) the 10-year peak flow assuming developed conditions for onsite tributary areas and existing conditions for any offsite tributary areas.
2. The applicant must demonstrate that the 100-year peak flow to the existing system will not create or aggravate a ***severe flooding problem*** or ***severe erosion problem*** as described in Core Requirement #2, Section 1.2.2 (p. 1-36).
3. Minor modifications may be made to the conveyance system to achieve the required capacity stated above. Examples of minor modifications include raising a catch-basin rim, replacing or relaying a section of pipe to match the capacity of other pipes in the system, improving a pipe inlet, or enlarging a short, constricted reach of ditch or channel.

[32] *Full build-out conditions* means the tributary area is developed to its full zoning potential except where there are existing sensitive areas, open space tracts, and/or native growth protection easements/covenants.

4. Modifications to an existing conveyance system or element that acts to attenuate peak flows, due to the presence of detention storage upstream, shall be made in a manner that does not significantly increase peak flows downstream. For example, if water is detained in a pond upstream of a restrictive road culvert, then installing an overflow system for the culvert should prevent overtopping of the road without significantly reducing existing detention storage.

Existing Offsite Conveyance Systems

1. Existing offsite conveyance systems need not be analyzed for conveyance capacity except as required by Core Requirement #2, or if offsite improvements or direct discharge are proposed per Core Requirement #3.
2. Improvements made to existing offsite conveyance systems to address the drainage problem-specific mitigation requirements in Section 1.2.2.2 (p. 1-30) need only change existing conveyance capacity sufficient to prevent aggravation of the drainage problem(s) being addressed.
3. Existing offsite conveyance systems proposed to be used for direct discharge to a ***major receiving water*** per Core Requirement #3 (p. 1-37) shall meet the same conveyance requirements specified in Section 1.2.4.1 (p. 1-51) for new systems.

1.2.4.3 CONVEYANCE SYSTEM IMPLEMENTATION REQUIREMENTS

Conveyance systems shall be designed and implemented in accordance with the following requirements, allowances, and flexible compliance provisions:

A. METHODS OF ANALYSIS AND DESIGN

Properly sized conveyance elements provide sufficient hydraulic capacity to convey peak flows of the return frequencies indicated in Sections 1.2.4.1 and 1.2.4.2. Conveyance capacity shall be demonstrated using the methods of analysis detailed in Chapter 4. Design flows for sizing conveyance systems shall be determined using the appropriate runoff computation method specified in Section 3.2.

B. COMPOSITION

Where feasible, conveyance systems shall be constructed of vegetation-lined channels, as opposed to pipe systems. Vegetative channels shall generally be considered feasible if all of the following conditions are present:

1. The channel gradient generally does not exceed 5 percent, AND
2. No modifications to currently adopted standard roadway cross sections in the *King County Road Standards* are necessitated by the channel, AND
3. The channel will be accessible for maintenance (see Section 1.2.6), AND
4. The channel will not be subject to erosion.

Exceptions: The following are exceptions to the requirement for vegetative channels*:*

- Conveyance systems proposed under roadways, driveways, or parking areas
- Conveyance systems proposed between houses in urban-zoned plats and short plats
- Conveyance systems conveying roof runoff only.

C. INTERFLOW AND INTERCEPTION

Interflow is near-surface groundwater that moves laterally through the soil horizon following the hydraulic gradient of underlying relatively impermeable soils. When interflow is expressed on the surface, it is termed a *spring* or *seepage*. Any significant springs or seepage areas that impact a roadway or structure

proposed by the project must be intercepted and directed into a conveyance system. Where roadways may impede the passage of interflow to downstream wetlands or streams, provision for passage of unconcentrated flows must be made.

D. PROVISION FOR LOT DRAINAGE WITHIN SUBDIVISIONS

Within *subdivision projects*,[33] provision must be made for the safe conveyance of runoff from the discharge location of each lot to the subdivision's main conveyance system or road drainage system. This may include, but is not limited to, **provisional stub-outs** from an enclosed roadway drainage system to the edge of the road right-of-way at each created lot, or lot-line pipes or ditches that collect lot drainage and convey it to the subdivision's main conveyance system or road drainage system.

E. OUTFALLS

An *outfall* is defined as a point where collected and concentrated surface and storm water runoff is discharged from a pipe system or culvert.

Energy Dissipation: At a minimum, rock erosion protection is required at outfalls from all drainage systems and elements except where DDES determines that erosion protection is being provided by other means or is not needed. Details on outfall structures are included in Section 4.2.2.

New Point Discharges Over Steep Slopes: Proposed outfalls that will discharge runoff in a location where the natural (existing) discharge is unconcentrated over a slope steeper than 15% and greater than 20 feet in height, or over a ***steep slope hazard area*** (as defined in KCC 21A.06), must meet the following criteria:

1. IF the 100-year peak discharge is less than or equal to 0.2 cfs[34] under existing conditions and will remain less than or equal to 0.2 cfs under developed conditions, THEN outfall runoff may be discharged onto a rock pad shaped to disperse flow. The outfall and rock pad must be located upstream from any ***landslide*** or ***steep slope hazard area*** buffer and no less than 50 feet from the top of a ***steep slope hazard area*** unless otherwise approved by DDES based on an evaluation/report by a geotechnical engineer.
2. IF the 100-year peak discharge is greater than 0.2 cfs but less than or equal to 0.5 cfs under existing conditions and will remain less than or equal to 0.5 cfs under developed conditions, THEN runoff must be conveyed to a dispersal trench or other dispersal system. The dispersal trench or system must be located upstream from any ***landslide*** or ***steep slope area*** buffer and no less than 50 feet from the top of a ***steep slope hazard area*** unless otherwise approved by DDES based on an evaluation/report by a geotechnical engineer.
3. IF the 100-year peak discharge is greater than 0.5 cfs for either existing or developed conditions, THEN a tightline conveyance system must be constructed to convey the runoff to the bottom of the slope unless other measures are approved by DDES based on an evaluation/report by a geotechnical engineer. Tightline systems must be designed so that existing baseflow conditions are not significantly changed and adequate energy dissipation is provided at the bottom of the slope.

F. OUTFALLS TO THE GREEN RIVER

New stormwater outfalls or modifications to existing stormwater outfalls discharging to the Green River between River Mile 6 (South Boeing Access Road) and SR 18 are **allowed only through the adjustment process**. These outfalls must comply with requirements of the *Green River Pump Operations Procedure Plan*, which establishes storage volumes and release rate criteria for developments proposing to ***construct or modify*** outfalls. Copies of the plan are available from DNRP.

[33] For purposes of this requirement, the term *subdivision project* refers to any project that creates a short plat, plat, or binding site plan.

[34] Peak discharges shall be as computed using KCRTS as detailed in Chapter 3.

G. SPILL CONTROL

Projects proposing to construct or replace onsite conveyance system elements that receive runoff from non-roof-top ***pollution-generating impervious surface*** must provide a spill control device as detailed in Section 4.2.1.1 prior to discharge from the ***site*** or into a *natural onsite drainage feature*.[35] More specifically, this requirement applies whenever a proposed project does either of the following:

- Constructs a new onsite conveyance system that receives runoff from non-roof-top ***pollution-generating impervious surface***, OR
- Removes and replaces an existing onsite conveyance system element that receives runoff from 5,000 square feet or more of non-roof-top ***pollution-generating impervious surface*** onsite.

The intent of this device is to temporarily detain oil or other floatable pollutants before they enter the downstream drainage system in the event of an accidental spill or illegal dumping. It may consist of a tee section in a manhole or catch basin, or an equivalent alternative as specified in Section 4.2.1.1. *Note that in addition to this spill control requirement to protect offsite and natural drainage systems, there are other spill control requirements in this manual for discharges to certain water quality treatment facilities and all infiltration facilities (see the design criteria for water quality facilities in Chapter 6 and the general requirements for infiltration facilities in Section 5.4). The application of these requirements must be such that all stated intents are satisfied.*

H. GROUNDWATER PROTECTION

Any reach of new ditch or channel proposed by a project in which the untreated runoff from 5,000 square feet or more of ***pollution-generating impervious surface*** comes into direct contact with an outwash soil must be lined with either a **low permeability liner** or a **treatment liner** consistent with the specifications for such liners in Section 6.2.4, except where it can be demonstrated that the soil has the following properties that reduce the risk of groundwater contamination:

1. The soil has a *measured infiltration rate*[36] of less than or equal to 9 inches per hour, except in ***groundwater protection areas*** where the measured rate must be less than or equal to 2.4 inches per hour, OR
2. The soil has a measured infiltration rate greater than 9 inches per hour, is not located within a ***groundwater protection area*** or within one-quarter-mile of a *sensitive lake*[37], and the first 2 feet of the soil beneath the ditch/channel must meet one of the following specifications for general protection of groundwater:
   a) The soil must have a *cation exchange capacity*[38] greater than 5 and an *organic content*[39] greater than 0.5%, OR
   b) The soil must be composed of less than 25% gravel by weight with at least 75% of the soil passing the #4 sieve, and the portion passing the #4 sieve must meet one of the following gradations:
      - At least 50% must pass the #40 sieve and at least 2% must pass the #100 sieve, OR
      - At least 25% must pass the #40 sieve and at least 5% must pass the #200 sieve.

[35] *Natural onsite drainage feature* means a natural swale, channel, stream, closed depression, wetland, or lake.

[36] *Measured infiltration rate* shall be as measured by the EPA method or the Double Ring Infiltrometer Method (ASTM D3385). For some soils, an infiltration rate of less than 9 inches per hour may be assumed based on a soil texture determination rather than a rate measurement. For more details, see the "Groundwater Protection" requirements in Section 5.4.1.

[37] *Sensitive lake* is a designation applied by the County to lakes that are particularly prone to eutrophication from development-induced increases in phosphorus loading. Such lakes are identified on the Water Quality Applications Map adopted with this manual (see map pocket on inside of back cover).

[38] *Cation exchange capacity* shall be tested using EPA Laboratory Method 9081.

[39] *Organic content* shall be measured on a dry weight basis using ASTM D2974.

The intent of this requirement is to reduce the likelihood that pollutants will be discharged to groundwater when untreated runoff is conveyed in ditches or channels constructed in soils with high infiltration rates.

I. PUMP SYSTEMS

Pump systems may be used to convey water from one location or elevation to another within the ***project site*** provided they meet the design criteria specified for such systems in Section 4.2.3 and will be privately owned and maintained.

Pump systems discharging flows from the ***project site*** that would not have discharged by gravity flow under ***existing site conditions*** will require an approved adjustment to Core Requirement #1 (see Section 1.4, "Adjustment Process"). These pump systems will be considered only when they are necessary to prevent creation or aggravation of a flooding or erosion problem as specified in Section 1.2.2. Pump systems discharging to the Green River between River Mile 6 (South Boeing Access Road) and SR 18 must also comply with the *Green River Pump Operations Procedure Plan*.

1.2.5 CORE REQUIREMENT #5: EROSION AND SEDIMENT CONTROL

REQUIREMENT

All proposed projects that will clear, grade, or otherwise disturb the ***site*** must provide erosion and sediment controls to prevent, to the maximum extent practicable, the transport of sediment from the ***project site*** to downstream drainage facilities, water resources, and adjacent properties. To prevent sediment transport as well as other impacts related to land-disturbing activities, **Erosion and Sediment Control (ESC)** measures that are appropriate to the ***project site*** must be applied as described in Section 1.2.5.1 and shall perform as described in Section 1.2.5.2. In addition, these measures, both temporary and permanent, shall be implemented consistent with the requirements in Section 0 that apply to the proposed project.

Intent: To prevent the transport of sediment and other impacts, like increased runoff, related to land disturbing activities. Erosion of disturbed areas on construction sites can result in excessive sediment transport to adjacent properties and to surface waters. This sediment can result in major adverse impacts, such as flooding from obstructed drainage ways, smothering of salmonid spawning beds, algal blooms in lakes, and exceedances of state water quality standards for turbidity. These impacts can also result from the increased runoff generated by land disturbing activities on construction sites.

1.2.5.1 ESC MEASURES

Each of the following categories of ESC measures must be considered for application to the ***project site*** as detailed in the King County *Erosion and Sediment Control (ESC) Standards*, adopted as Appendix D of this manual:

1. Clearing Limits
2. Cover Measures
3. Perimeter Protection
4. Traffic Area Stabilization
5. Sediment Retention
6. Surface Water Collection
7. Dewatering Control
8. Dust Control
9. Flow Control

1.2.5.2 ESC PERFORMANCE AND COMPLIANCE PROVISIONS

The changing conditions typical of construction sites call for frequent field adjustments of existing ESC measures or additional ESC measures in order to meet required performance. In some cases, strict adherence to specified measures may not be necessary or practicable based on ***site*** conditions or project type. In other cases, immediate action may be needed to avoid severe impacts. Therefore, careful attention must be paid to ESC performance and compliance in accordance with the following provisions:

A. ESC SUPERVISOR

For projects in Targeted, Full, or Large Project Drainage Review, the **applicant must designate an ESC supervisor** who shall be responsible for the performance, maintenance, and review of ESC measures and for compliance with all permit conditions relating to ESC as described in the *ESC Standards*. The applicant's selection of an ESC supervisor must be approved by King County. For projects that disturb one acre or more of land, the ESC supervisor must be a **Certified Professional in Erosion and Sediment**

Control (see www.cpesc.net for more information) or a **Certified Erosion and Sediment Control Lead** whose certification is recognized by King County.[40] King County may also require a certified ESC supervisor for sites smaller than one acre of disturbance if DDES determines that onsite ESC measures are inadequately installed, located, or maintained.

For larger, more sensitive sites, King County may require a certified ESC supervisor with several years of experience in construction supervision/inspection and a background in geology, soil science, or agronomy (See Appendix D, Section D.4.1 for more information).

B. MONITORING OF DISCHARGES

The ESC supervisor shall have a turbidity meter onsite and shall use it to monitor surface and storm water discharges from the ***project site*** and into onsite wetlands, streams, or lakes whenever runoff occurs from onsite activities and during storm events. If the ***project site*** is subject to a NPDES general permit for construction issued by the State Department of Ecology, then the project must comply with the monitoring requirements of that permit.

C. ESC PERFORMANCE

ESC measures shall be applied/installed and maintained to prevent, to the maximum extent practicable, the transport of sediment from the ***project site*** to downstream drainage systems or surface waters or into onsite wetlands, streams, or lakes or onto adjacent properties. This performance is intended to be achieved through proper selection, installation, and operation of the above ESC measures as detailed in the *ESC Standards* (detached Appendix D) and approved by the County. However, the ESC supervisor or the County may determine at any time during construction that the approved measures are not sufficient and that additional action is required based on one of the following criteria:

1. IF a turbidity test of surface and storm water discharges leaving the ***project site*** is greater than the benchmark value of 25 NTU (nephelometric turbidity units) set by the Washington State Department of Ecology, but less than 250 NTU, the ESC Supervisor shall do all of the following:
   a) Review the ESC plan for compliance and make appropriate revisions within 7 days of the discharge that exceeded the benchmark of 25 NTU, AND
   b) Fully implement and maintain appropriate ESC measures as soon as possible but no later than 10 days after the discharge that exceeded the benchmark, AND
   c) Document ESC implementation and maintenance in the ***site*** log book.
2. IF a turbidity test of surface or storm water entering onsite wetlands, streams, or lakes indicates a turbidity level greater than 5 NTU above background when the background turbidity is 50 NTU or less, or 10% above background when the background turbidity is greater than 50 NTU, then corrective actions and/or additional measures beyond those specified in Section 1.2.5.1 shall be implemented as deemed necessary by the County inspector or onsite ESC supervisor.
3. IF discharge turbidity is 250 NTU or greater, the ESC Supervisor shall do all of the following:
   a) Notify the County by telephone, AND
   b) Review the ESC plan for compliance and make appropriate revisions within 7 days of the discharge that exceeded the benchmark of 25 NTU, AND
   c) Fully implement and maintain appropriate ESC measures as soon as possible but no later than 10 days after the discharge that exceeded the benchmark, AND
   d) Document ESC implementation and maintenance in the ***site*** log book. AND

[40] King County recognition of certification means that the individual has taken a King County-approved third party training program and has passed the King County-approved test for that training program.

e) Continue to sample discharges until turbidity is 25 NTU or lower, or the turbidity is no more than 10% over background turbidity.

4. IF the County determines that the condition of the construction site poses a **hazard to adjacent property** or may **adversely impact drainage facilities or water resources**, THEN additional measures beyond those specified in Section 1.2.5.1 may be required by the County.

D. FLEXIBLE COMPLIANCE

Some projects may meet the intent of Core Requirement #5 while varying from specific ESC requirements contained here and in the *ESC Standards*. If a project is designed and constructed to meet the intent of this core requirement, the County may determine that strict adherence to a specific ESC requirement is unnecessary; an approved adjustment (see Section 1.4) is not required in these circumstances. Certain types of projects are particularly suited to this greater level of flexibility, for instance, projects on relatively flat, well drained soils, projects that are constructed in closed depressions, or projects that only disturb a small percentage of a forested site may meet the intent of this requirement with very few ESC measures. More information on intent and general ESC principles is contained in the *ESC Standards* in Appendix D.

E. ROADS AND UTILITIES

Road and utility projects often pose difficult erosion control challenges because they frequently cross surface waters and are long and narrow with limited area available to treat and store sediment-laden water. Because of these factors, road and utility projects are allowed greater flexibility in meeting the intent of Core Requirement #5 as described in the *ESC Standards*.

F. ALTERNATIVE AND EXPERIMENTAL MEASURES

All measures proposed for erosion and sediment control shall conform to the details and specifications in the *ESC Standards* unless an alternative is approved by King County, and if the alternative is a new technology, it must also be approved through the state Department of Ecology's CTAPE program (see "Alternative and Experimental Measures" in the *ESC Standards*, detached Appendix D).

1.2.5.3 IMPLEMENTATION REQUIREMENTS

Proposed projects must identify, install, and maintain required erosion and sediment control measures consistent with the following requirements:

A. ESC PLAN

As specified in Chapter 2, all proposed projects must submit an ESC plan for implementing ESC measures. The **ESC plan** must show the location and details of all ESC measures as specified in Chapter 2 and the *ESC Standards* and shall include an **ESC report**, which contains additional directions and supporting information like a detailed construction sequence as proposed by the design engineer and any calculations or information necessary to size ESC measures and demonstrate compliance with Core Requirement #5. The ESC plan shall also contain plan notes that outline specific permit conditions as outlined in Appendix D Section D.8.2 Standard ESC Plan Notes. The County may require large, complex projects to phase construction and to submit multiple ESC plans for the different stages of construction. New ESC plans are not required for changes that are necessary during construction, unless required by the County inspector. *Note that the ESC plan is a component of, or may comprise, the Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan, which in turn is a primary component of the engineering plans required for drainage review as specified in Chapter 2.*

B. WET SEASON CONSTRUCTION

During the wet season (October 1 to April 30) any ***site*** with exposed soils shall be subject to the "Wet Season Requirements" contained in the *ESC Standards*. In addition to the ESC cover measures, these provisions include covering any newly-seeded areas with mulch and seeding as much disturbed area as possible during the first week of October to provide grass cover for the wet season. Other ESC measures such as baker tanks and portable sand filters may be required for use during the wet season. A separate "Wet Season" ESC plan shall be submitted and approved by the County before continuing work on any ***site*** during the wet season.

C. CONSTRUCTION WITHIN CRITICAL AREAS AND BUFFERS

Any construction that will result in disturbed areas on or within a stream or associated buffer, within a wetland or associated buffer, or within 50 feet of a lake shall be subject to the "Critical Area Restrictions" contained in the *ESC Standards*. These provisions include phasing the project whenever possible so that construction in these areas is limited to the dry season.

D. MAINTENANCE

All ESC measures shall be maintained and reviewed on a regular basis as prescribed in the *ESC Standards*.

E. FINAL STABILIZATION

Prior to obtaining final construction approval, the ***site*** shall be stabilized, structural ESC measures (such as silt fences and sediment traps) shall be removed, and drainage facilities shall be cleaned as specified in the *ESC Standards*. A separate ESC plan describing final stabilization shall be submitted and approved by the County prior to implementation.

F. CONSIDERATION OF OTHER REQUIRED PERMITS

Consideration should be given to the requirements and conditions that may be applied by other agencies as part of other permits required for land-disturbing activities. In particular, the following permits may be required and should be considered when implementing ESC measures:

- A **Class IV Special Forest Practices Permit** is required by the Washington State Department of Natural Resources for projects that will clear more than two acres of forest or 5,000 board feet of timber. All such clearing is also subject to the State Environmental Policy Act (RCW 43.21C) and will require SEPA review. King County assumes lead agency status for Class IV permits, and the application may be consolidated with the associated King County development permit or approval.
- A **NPDES General Permit for Construction** (pursuant to the Washington State Department of Ecology's Baseline General Permit for Stormwater) is required for projects that will disturb one or more acres for purposes of constructing or allowing for construction of a development, or projects disturbing less than one acre that are part of a *larger common plan of sale*[41] that will ultimately disturb one or more acres.

[41] ***Common plan of development or sale*** means a site where multiple separate and distinct construction activities may take place at different times or on different schedules, but still under a single plan. Examples include: 1) phased projects and projects with multiple filings or lots, even if the separate phases or filings/lots will be constructed under separate contract or by separate owners (e.g. a development where lots are sold to separate builders); 2) a development plan that may be phased over multiple years, but is still under a consistent plan for long-term development; and 3) projects in a contiguous area that may be unrelated but still under the same contract, such as construction of a building extension and a new parking lot at the same facility.

1.2.6 CORE REQUIREMENT #6: MAINTENANCE AND OPERATIONS

REQMT

Maintenance and operation of all drainage facilities is the responsibility of the applicant or property owner, except those facilities for which King County assumes maintenance and operation as described below and in KCC 9.04.115 and KCC 9.04.120. Drainage facilities must be maintained and operated in accordance with the maintenance standards in Appendix A of this manual or other maintenance standards as approved by King County.

Intent: To ensure that the maintenance responsibility for drainage facilities is clearly assigned and that these facilities will be properly maintained and operated in perpetuity.

Drainage Facilities to be Maintained by King County

King County will assume maintenance and operation of the following drainage facilities[42] for any residential subdivision with two or more lots, and any similar development where at least two-thirds of the developed contributing area is from single family or townhouse residential structures on individual lots, except where King County grants an adjustment per Section 1.4, allowing the facilities to be maintained by the homeowners association:

- Flow control and water quality facilities within a tract or right-of-way dedicated to King County.
- Flow control BMP devices within a tract or right-of-way dedicated to King County.
- The conveyance system within improved public road right-of-way.

Note: King County may assume maintenance of facilities serving any mix of developments as part of a shared facilities plan. See Reference Section 4-D for further guidance regarding the County's assumption of maintenance responsibility for shared facilities.

King County **will assume maintenance** and operation of these facilities **two years after final construction approval** by DDES and an inspection by the County to ensure the facilities have been properly maintained and are operating as designed.

Flow control and water quality facilities and **flow control BMP devices** to be maintained and operated by King County must be located in a tract or right-of-way dedicated to King County. Access roads serving these facilities must also be located in the tract or right-of-way and must be connected to an improved public road right-of-way. Underground flow control or water quality facilities (tanks or vaults) may be allowed in private rights-of-way or roads if the easement includes provisions for facility access and maintenance.

Conveyance systems to be maintained and operated by King County must be located in a drainage easement, tract, or right-of-way granted to King County. *Note: King County does not normally assume maintenance responsibility for conveyance systems that are outside of improved public road right-of-way.*

Drainage Facilities to be Maintained by Private Parties

All drainage facilities maintained privately or by other public agencies, except flow control BMPs, must be maintained as specified in **Appendix A**, "Maintenance Requirements for Flow Control, Conveyance, and WQ Facilities," and as further prescribed in **Chapter 6** for water quality facilities, unless otherwise approved by King County DNRP. A copy of the **Operation and Maintenance Manual** submitted as part of the permit application (see Section 2.3.1) shall be retained on ***site*** and shall be transferred with the property to the new owner. A log of maintenance activity indicating when cleaning occurred and where waste was disposed of shall also be kept by the owner and be available for inspection by the County.

All privately maintained **flow control BMPs** must be maintained as specified in the ***site*/lot's** declaration of covenant and grant of easement per Section 5.2.1.

[42] *Note: King County does not assume maintenance of individual lot drainage systems or drainage stub-outs serving single family residential lot downspout, footing, or yard drains, nor does King County assume maintenance of the vegetated portions of water quality treatment facilities and flow control BMPs integrated into site landscaping.*

King County may inspect all privately maintained drainage facilities for compliance with these requirements. If the property owner(s) fails to maintain their facilities to the acceptable standards, the County may issue a written notice specifying the required remedial actions and requiring a schedule for timely completion of the actions. If these actions are not performed in a timely manner, the County may enter the property to perform the actions needed and bill the property owner(s) for the cost of the actions. If a hazard to public safety exists, the County may perform remedial actions without written notice.

If the proposed project is a commercial, industrial, or multifamily development or redevelopment, or a single family residential building permit, a **drainage facility declaration of covenant and grant of easement** (see Reference Section 8-J) must be recorded at the King County Office of Records and Elections prior to engineering plan approval. Whenever a flow control or water quality facility or flow control BMP is proposed to be located on a parcel separate from the parcel or parcels containing the target surfaces mitigated by the facility or BMP, provisions must be made to ensure that the owner or owners of the target surfaces have a perpetual right to operate and maintain the facility. This may be done either by recording an easement granting this right to the owner(s) of the target surfaces, or by conveying the land on which the facility sits (or an interest therein) to the owner(s) of target surfaces.

If the proposed project is a **residential subdivision development**, all privately maintained conveyance systems or other drainage facilities that convey flows through private property must be located in a **drainage easement dedicated to convey surface and storm water**. Individual owners of the properties containing these easements must maintain the drainage facilities through their property. The legal instrument creating drainage easements on private property must contain language that requires a private property owner to obtain written approval from King County prior to removing vegetation (except by routine mowing) from any drainage easement containing open, vegetated drainage facilities (such as swales, channels, ditches, ponds, etc.). See Reference Section 8-L, "Drainage Easement," for guidance.

1.2.7 CORE REQUIREMENT #7: FINANCIAL GUARANTEES AND LIABILITY

REQUIREMENT

All drainage facilities constructed or modified for projects (except flow control BMPs to be privately maintained) must comply with the financial guarantee requirements in King County Ordinance 12020 and the liability requirements of King County Code 9.04.100. There are **two types of financial guarantees** for projects constructing or modifying drainage facilities. These are as follows:

- The *drainage facilities restoration and site stabilization guarantee*
- The *drainage defect and maintenance guarantee*.

Intent: To ensure financial guarantees are posted to sufficiently cover the cost of correcting, if necessary, incomplete or substandard drainage facility construction work, and to warrant for two years the satisfactory performance and maintenance of those newly-constructed drainage facilities to be assumed by King County for maintenance and operation. Core Requirement #7 is also intended to ensure that a liability policy is provided that protects the proponent and the County from any damages relating to the construction or maintenance of required drainage facilities by private parties.

Drainage Facilities Restoration and Site Stabilization Financial Guarantee

Before starting construction, the applicant who must construct drainage facilities, pursuant to the drainage requirements in this manual and KCC 9.04.050, must post a drainage facilities restoration and site stabilization financial guarantee. This guarantee must be an amount sufficient to cover the cost of corrective work performed specifically for the given project on or off the ***site***. *Note: DDES may waive this guarantee on projects proposing only minor modifications or improvements to the drainage system (e.g., catch basin inserts, spill control devices, pipe replacements, etc.). In addition, this guarantee may be combined with other required guarantees as allowed in Ordinance 12020.*

Before King County will release the project's drainage facilities restoration and site stabilization financial guarantee, the applicant must do the following:

1. Construct the drainage facilities
2. Receive final construction approval from DDES
3. Pay all required fees.

Drainage Defect and Maintenance Financial Guarantee

For any constructed or modified drainage facilities to be maintained and operated by King County, the applicant must do the following:

1. Post a drainage defect and maintenance financial guarantee for a period of two years (see Reference Section 8-I, "Maintenance and Defect Agreement").
2. Maintain the drainage facilities (per the maintenance standards in Appendix A) during the two-year period following posting of the guarantee.

Before King County will release the drainage defect and maintenance financial guarantee and assume maintenance and operation of drainage facilities, the applicant must do the following:

1. For plats, record the final plat.
2. For tracts containing drainage facilities to be maintained by King County and not located within the final plat, deed the tract to King County and set property corners in conformance with state surveying standards.
3. For easements containing drainage facilities to be maintained by King County and not located within the final plat, provide easement documents and set temporary survey markers to delineate the easement location.
4. Receive a final County inspection to ensure the drainage facilities have been properly maintained and are operating as designed.
5. Correct any defects noted in the final inspection.

1.2.8 CORE REQUIREMENT #8: WATER QUALITY

REQMT

All proposed projects, including ***redevelopment projects***, must provide water quality (WQ) facilities to treat the runoff from those new and replaced ***pollution-generating impervious surfaces*** and new ***pollution-generating pervious surfaces*** targeted for treatment as specified in the following sections. These facilities shall be selected from a menu of treatment facility options specified by the area-specific facility requirements in Section 1.2.8.1 (p. 1-67) and implemented according to the applicable WQ implementation requirements in Section 1.2.8.2 (p. 1-75).

Intent: To require an efficient, cost-effective level of water quality treatment tailored to the sensitivities and resource protection needs of the downstream receiving water to which the ***project site*** drains, or, in the case of infiltration, protection of the receiving groundwater system.

Guide to Applying Core Requirement #8

Core Requirement #8 requires that WQ treatment facilities be provided to remove pollutants from runoff discharging from a ***project site*** in accordance with one of the three area-specific WQ facility requirements found in Section 1.2.8.1 (p. 1-67). Each area-specific facility requirement applies to one of three geographic areas of unincorporated King County, called "WQ treatment areas." Such areas are designated by King County to tailor the levels of treatment to the protection needs of specific waterbodies and resources. The three areas are **Basic WQ Treatment Areas**, **Sensitive Lake WQ Treatment Areas**, and **Sphagnum Bog WQ Treatment Areas**. They are depicted on the WQ Applications Map adopted with this manual (see the map pocket inside the back cover).

The facility requirement for each WQ treatment area includes an area-specific menu of treatment facility options, the types of surfaces from which runoff must be treated ("target surfaces"), and any exceptions to the menu and surfaces requirements.

For efficient application of Core Requirement #8, the following steps are recommended:

1. Check the exemption language on page 1-65 to determine if or which ***threshold discharge areas*** of the ***project site*** must provide WQ treatment facilities per Core Requirement #8.
2. Use the WQ Applications Map and any necessary ***site***-specific information to determine the WQ treatment area in which your project is located. If this determination can not be made from the WQ Applications Map, a more detailed delineation of WQ treatment areas is available on King County's Geographic Information System. Because the basin boundaries of Sphagnum Bog WQ Treatment Areas are not delineated on the WQ Applications Map, you may find that your project is located in one of these as well as another WQ treatment area. If this happens, the requirements of the Sphagnum Bog WQ Treatment Area take precedence.
3. Comply with the requirements specified in Section 1.2.8.1 (p. 1-67) for the WQ treatment area you identified above.
4. Consult Section 1.2.8.2 (p. 1-75) for other design requirements, allowances, and flexible compliance provisions related to implementing water quality treatment.

Other Important Information about Core Requirement #8

Core Requirement #8 is the primary component of an overall water quality protection strategy required by this manual. Other requirements include the following:

- Core Requirement #4: **Conveyance System, Spill Control Provisions**, Section 1.2.4 (p. 1-55)—This provision generally applies whenever a project constructs or replaces onsite conveyance system elements that receive runoff from ***pollution-generating impervious surfaces***. The provision requires that runoff from such impervious surfaces be routed through a spill control device prior to discharge from the ***project site*** or into a natural onsite drainage feature.

- Core Requirement #4: **Conveyance System, Groundwater Protection**, Section 1.2.4 (p. 1-55) — This provision requires that ditches/channels be lined as needed to reduce the risk of groundwater contamination when they convey runoff from ***pollution-generating impervious surfaces*** that comes into direct contact with an outwash soil.
- Special Requirement #4: **Source Control**, Section 1.3.4 (p. 1-81)—This requirement applies water quality source controls from the *King County Stormwater Pollution Prevention Manual* to commercial, industrial, and multifamily projects.
- Special Requirement #5: **Oil Control**, Section 1.3.5 (p. 1-82)—This requirement applies special oil controls to those projects proposing to develop or redevelop a ***high-use site***.

❑ EXEMPTIONS FROM CORE REQUIREMENT #8

There are five possible exemptions from the requirement to provide **a water quality treatment facility** per Core Requirement #8:

1. Surface Area Exemption

A proposed project or any ***threshold discharge area*** within the ***site*** of a project is exempt if it meets all of the following criteria:

a) Less than 5,000 square feet of ***new PGIS*** that is **not *fully dispersed*** will be added, AND

b) Less than 5,000 square feet of ***new*** **plus *replaced PGIS*** that is **not *fully dispersed*** will be created as part of a ***redevelopment project***, AND

c) Less than 35,000 square feet of ***new PGPS*** that is **not *fully dispersed*** will be added.

2. Impervious Surface Exemption for Transportation Redevelopment Projects

A proposed ***transportation redevelopment project*** or any ***threshold discharge area*** within the ***site*** of such a project is exempt if it meets all of the following criteria:

a) The **total *new impervious surface*** within the project limits is less than 50% of the existing impervious surface, AND

b) Less than 5,000 square feet of ***new PGIS*** that is **not *fully dispersed*** will be added, AND

c) Less than 35,000 square feet of ***new PGPS*** that is **not *fully dispersed*** will be added.

3. Cost Exemption for Parcel Redevelopment Projects

A proposed ***redevelopment project*** on a single or multiple parcel ***site*** or any ***threshold discharge area*** within the ***site*** of such a project is exempt if it meets all of the following criteria:

a) The **total valuation** of the project's proposed improvements (including interior improvements and excluding required mitigation improvements) is less than 50% of the assessed value of the existing ***site*** improvements, AND

b) Less than 5,000 square feet of ***new PGIS*** that is **not *fully dispersed*** will be added, AND

c) Less than 35,000 square feet of ***new PGPS*** that is **not *fully dispersed*** will be added.

4. Soil Treatment Exemption

A proposed project or any drainage area within a project is exempt if the runoff from ***pollution-generating impervious surfaces*** is infiltrated in soils that meet the "groundwater protection criteria" outlined below, except areas within one-quarter-mile of a *sensitive lake*.[43]

[43] *Sensitive lake* is a designation applied by the County to lakes that are particularly prone to eutrophication from development-induced increases in phosphorus loading. Such lakes are identified on the Water Quality Applications Map adopted with this manual (see map pocket on inside of back cover).

Groundwater Protection Criteria: The first 2 feet or more of the soil beneath an infiltration facility must have a *cation exchange capacity*[44] greater than 5 and an *organic content*[45] greater than 0.5%, AND must meet one of the following specifications for general protection of groundwater:

a) The soil must have a *measured infiltration rate*[46] of less than or equal to 9 inches per hour, except in ***groundwater protection areas*** where the measured rate must be less than or equal to 2.4 inches per hour, OR

b) The soil must be composed of less than 25% gravel by weight with at least 75% of the soil passing the #4 sieve, and the portion passing the #4 sieve must meet one of the following gradations:

- At least 50% must pass the #40 sieve and at least 2% must pass the #100 sieve, OR
- At least 25% must pass the #40 sieve and at least 5% must pass the #200 sieve.

[44] *Cation exchange capacity* shall be tested using EPA Laboratory Method 9081.

[45] *Organic content* shall be measured on a dry weight basis using ASTM D2974.

[46] *Measured infiltration rate* shall be as measured by the EPA method or the Double Ring Infiltrometer Method (ASTM D3385). For some soils, an infiltration rate of less than 9 inches per hour may be assumed based on a soil texture determination rather than a rate measurement. For more details, see the "Groundwater Protection" requirements in Section 5.4.1.

1.2.8.1 AREA-SPECIFIC WATER QUALITY FACILITY REQUIREMENT

REQUIREMENT

Projects subject to Core Requirement #8 must provide a water quality treatment facility selected from a menu of treatment facility options identified in the area-specific facility requirements and exceptions for the WQ treatment area in which the proposed project or ***threshold discharge area*** of the proposed project is located. These WQ treatment areas are listed below and their requirements and exceptions are detailed in the following subsections:

A. Basic WQ Treatment Areas

B. Sensitive Lake WQ Treatment Areas

C. Sphagnum Bog WQ Treatment Areas.

Intent: To apply an appropriate level of water quality treatment based on the sensitivities of receiving waters for the drainage area in which the project lies. These drainage areas are identified as WQ treatment areas on the WQ Applications Map adopted with this manual. In addition to a minimum basic standard, which applies broadly to most geographic areas, special menus are provided for land uses that generate the highest concentrations of metals in stormwater and for ***sites*** within the watersheds of sensitive lakes, and sphagnum bog wetlands.

A. BASIC WQ TREATMENT AREAS

Basic WQ Treatment Areas are designated by King County where a general, cost-effective level of treatment is sufficient for most land uses. Some land uses, however, will need an increased level of treatment because they generate high concentrations of metals in stormwater runoff and acute concentrations of metals in streams are toxic to fish. The treatment facility requirements for Basic WQ Treatment Areas provide for this increase in treatment. Basic WQ Treatment Areas are delineated on the WQ Applications Map adopted with this manual (see the map pocket inside the back cover). Any unincorporated areas of King County not shown on this map shall be assumed to be Basic WQ Treatment Areas. A more detailed delineation is available on the County's Geographic Information System.

*Note: For projects located at or near the delineated boundary of the Basic WQ Treatment Area, **site-**specific topography or drainage information may be needed to verify that the project or any **threshold discharge area** of the project is within the WQ treatment area. Any **threshold discharge area** is considered to be within the Basic WQ Treatment Area if the **threshold discharge area** drains to a waterbody or drainage system that is clearly within the mapped Basic WQ Treatment Area. The only **exception** to this is if the **threshold discharge area** also drains to a sphagnum bog wetland larger than 0.25 acres in size as described in Subsection C, "Sphagnum Bog WQ Treatment Areas" (p. 1-73). In this case, the **threshold discharge area** is considered to be located within a Sphagnum Bog WQ Treatment Area and is subject to the facility requirement of that area only (i.e., required treatment menu, target surfaces, and exceptions).*

Required Treatment Menu

REQUIREMENT

Within Basic WQ Treatment Areas, a treatment facility option from the **Basic WQ menu** shall be used to treat runoff from the surfaces listed under "Target Surfaces" below, except where such treatment is waived or reduced by the area-specific exceptions at the end of this subsection and except where the Enhanced Basic WQ menu is applicable as follows. If 50% or more of the runoff that drains to any proposed treatment facility is from one or more of the **following land uses**, then the **Enhanced Basic WQ menu** shall be used in place of the Basic WQ menu for the design of this facility, except if such treatment is waived or reduced by the area-specific exceptions at the end of this subsection:

1. Residential subdivision development in which the actual density of single family units is equal to or greater than 8 units per acre of developed area.

2. Commercial, industrial, or multifamily land use.

REQMT

3. A road with an expected average daily traffic (ADT) count of 2,000 or more vehicles or expected to serve 200 or more homes. *Note: those roads defined in the King County Road Standards as urban subaccess streets, rural subaccess streets, urban minor access streets – residential, rural minor access streets – residential, urban subcollectors, and rural subcollectors all serve less than 100 homes by definition.*

Treatment Goal and Options

The treatment goal for facility options in the **Basic WQ menu** is 80% removal of total suspended solids (TSS) for a typical rainfall year, assuming typical pollutant concentrations in urban runoff.[47] TSS is the general performance indicator for basic water quality protection because it is the most obvious pollutant of concern. The Basic WQ menu includes facilities such as wetponds, combined detention/wetponds, biofiltration swales, filter strips, and sand filters. See Chapter 6 for specific facility choices and design details.

The treatment goal for facility options in the **Enhanced Basic WQ menu** is 50% reduction of total zinc. Zinc is an indicator of a wider range of metals typically found in urban runoff that are potentially toxic to fish and other aquatic life. The Enhanced Basic WQ menu includes options for use of a basic-sized stormwater wetland, a large sand filter, or a combination of two facilities in series, one of which is either a sand filter or a Stormfilter™ (leaf compost filter). See Chapter 6 for specific facility options and designs.

Intent

The **Basic WQ menu** is intended to be applied to both stormwater discharges draining to surface waters and those infiltrating into soils that do not provide adequate groundwater protection (see Exemptions 4 and 5 from Core Requirement #8). Overall, the 80% TSS removal objective, in conjunction with special requirements for source control and ***high-use site*** controls, should result in good stormwater quality for all but the most sensitive water bodies. Increased water quality treatment is necessary for developments that generate the highest concentrations of metals and for developments that drain to sensitive lakes and sphagnum bog wetlands.

Facility options in the **Enhanced Basic WQ menu** are intended to remove more metals than expected from those in the Basic WQ menu. Lower metal concentrations reduce the risk to fish of exposure to both chronic and acutely toxic concentrations of metals such as copper and zinc. As the toxicity of metals depends on their concentration, this standard is most effective for ***project sites*** with a larger proportion of ***pollution-generating impervious surface*** like roadways and medium to high density subdivisions. The Enhanced Basic WQ menu is intended to apply to all such ***project sites*** that drain by surface flows to a fish-bearing stream. However, projects that drain entirely by pipe to the ***major receiving waters*** listed on page 1-37 are excused from the increased treatment and may revert to the Basic WQ menu because concentration effects are of less concern as the overall flow volume increases.

Target Surfaces

Facilities **in Basic WQ Treatment Areas** must treat (either directly or in effect) the runoff from the following target surfaces within the ***threshold discharge area*** for which the facility is required:

1. ***New PGIS*** that is **not *fully dispersed*** per the criteria on Page 1-46. For individual lots within residential subdivision projects, the extent of ***new PGIS*** shall be assumed based on expected driveway size as approved by DDES.
2. ***New PGPS*** that is **not *fully dispersed*** and from which there will be a concentrated surface discharge in a natural channel or man-made conveyance system from the ***site***. For individual lots within residential subdivision projects, the extent of ***new pervious surface*** shall be assumed to be the entire

[47] For evaluation purposes, typical concentrations of TSS in Seattle area runoff are between 30 and 100 mg/L (Table 1, "Water Quality Thresholds Decision Paper," King County Surface Water Management Division, April 1994).

lot area, except the assumed impervious portion as specified in Chapter 3 and any portion in which native conditions are preserved by covenant, tract, or easement.

3. **Existing impervious surface** added since January 8, 2001 that is **not *fully dispersed*** and not yet mitigated with a County-approved water quality facility or flow control BMP. *Note: January 8, 2001 is the effective date of the ESA 4(d) Rule for Puget Sound Chinook salmon.*
4. ***Replaced PGIS*** that is **not *fully dispersed*** on a ***transportation redevelopment project*** in which ***new impervious surface*** is 5,000 square feet or more and totals 50% or more of the existing impervious surface within the project limits.
5. ***Replaced PGIS*** that is **not *fully dispersed*** on a **parcel *redevelopment project*** in which the total of new plus ***replaced impervious surface*** is 5,000 square feet or more and whose valuation of proposed improvements (including interior improvements and excluding required mitigation improvements) exceeds 50% of the assessed value of the existing ***site*** improvements.

Exceptions

The following exceptions apply only **in Basic WQ Treatment Areas**:

1. The facility requirement **in Basic WQ Treatment Areas** as applied to **target *PGPS*** may be waived altogether if there is a good faith agreement with the King Conservation District to implement a farm management plan for agricultural uses, or DDES approves a *landscape management plan*[48] that controls solids, pesticides, and fertilizers leaving the ***site***.
2. The **Enhanced Basic WQ menu** as specified above for certain land uses may be reduced to the **Basic WQ menu** for treatment of any runoff that is infiltrated according to the standards in Section 5.4.
3. The **Enhanced Basic WQ menu** as specified above for certain land uses may be reduced to the **Basic WQ menu** for treatment of any runoff that is discharged directly, via a non-fish-bearing conveyance system, all the way to the ordinary high water mark of a stream with a mean annual flow of 1,000 cfs or more (at the discharge point of the conveyance system) or a lake that is 300 acres or larger.
4. The **Enhanced Basic WQ menu** as specified above for treating runoff from a commercial land use may be reduced to the **Basic WQ menu** if all of the following criteria are met:
   a) No leachable metals (e.g., galvanized metals) are currently used or proposed to be used in areas of the ***site*** exposed to the weather, AND
   b) A covenant is recorded that prohibits future such use of leachable metals on the ***site*** (use the covenant in Reference Section 8-Q), AND
   c) Less than 50% of the runoff draining to the proposed treatment facility is from any area of the ***site*** comprised of one or both of the following land uses:
      - Commercial land use with an expected ADT of 100 or more vehicles per 1,000 square feet of gross building area.
      - Commercial land use involved with vehicle repair, maintenance, or sales.
5. The facility requirement as applied to ***replaced PGIS*** may be waived if the County has adopted a plan and implementation schedule for fulfilling this requirement using **regional facilities**.

[48] *Landscape management plan* means a King County approved plan for defining the layout and long-term maintenance of landscaping features to minimize the use of pesticides and fertilizers, and to reduce the discharge of suspended solids and other pollutants. Guidelines for preparing landscape management plans can be found in Reference Section 4-A. Submittal requirements are detailed in Section 2.3.1.5.

B. SENSITIVE LAKE WQ TREATMENT AREAS

Sensitive Lake WQ Treatment Areas are designated by King County in the watersheds of lakes that have a combination of water quality characteristics and watershed development potential that makes them particularly prone to eutrophication induced by development. Such areas are delineated on the WQ Applications Map adopted with this manual (see the map pocket inside the back cover). A more detailed delineation is available on the County's Geographic Information System.

Note: For projects located at or near the delineated boundary of the Sensitive Lake WQ Treatment Area, ***site****-specific topography or drainage information may be needed to verify that the project or any* ***threshold discharge area*** *of the project is within the WQ treatment area. Any* ***threshold discharge area*** *is considered to be within the Sensitive Lake WQ Treatment Area if the* ***threshold discharge area*** *drains to the sensitive lake itself or to any waterbody or drainage system that is clearly within the mapped Sensitive Lake WQ Treatment Area. The only* ***exception*** *to this is if the* ***threshold discharge area*** *also drains to a sphagnum bog wetland larger than 0.25 acres in size as described in Subsection D, "Sphagnum Bog WQ Treatment Areas" (p. 1-73). In this case, the requirements of Sphagnum Bog WQ Treatment Areas (i.e., required treatment menu, target surfaces, and exceptions) shall apply to the* ***threshold discharge area****.*

Required Treatment Menu

REQUIREMENT

Within Sensitive Lake WQ Treatment Areas, a treatment facility option from the **Sensitive Lake Protection menu** shall be used to treat runoff from the surfaces listed under "Target Surfaces" below, except where such treatment is waived or reduced by the area-specific exceptions at the end of this subsection and except where the Enhanced Basic WQ menu is applicable as follows. If 50% or more of the runoff that drains to any proposed treatment facility is from one or more of the **following land uses**, then a treatment facility option common to both the **Sensitive Lake Protection menu and Enhanced Basic WQ menu** shall be used for the design of this facility, except if such treatment is waived or reduced by the area-specific exceptions at the end of this subsection:

1. Residential subdivision development in which the actual density of single family units is equal to or greater than 8 units per acre of developed area.
2. Commercial, industrial, or multifamily land use.
3. A road with an expected average daily traffic (ADT) count of 2,000 or more vehicles or expected to serve 200 or more homes. *Note: those roads defined in the King County Road Standards as urban subaccess streets, rural subaccess streets, urban minor access streets – residential, rural minor access streets – residential, urban subcollectors, and rural subcollectors all serve less than 100 homes by definition.*

Treatment Goal and Options

The treatment goal for facility options in the Sensitive Lake Protection menu is 50% annual average total phosphorus (TP) removal assuming typical pollutant concentrations in urban runoff.[49] This goal was chosen as a realistic and cost-effective level of phosphorus removal. The Sensitive Lake Protection menu includes options for using either Basic WQ facilities of larger size, combinations of two facilities in series,[50] or a single facility in combination with land use planning elements that reduce phosphorus. See Chapter 6 for specific facility options and design details.

On some developments or portions thereof that have surface uses that generate the highest concentrations of metals in stormwater runoff, the treatment goal is expanded to include 50% reduction of total zinc. This expanded goal requires use of a treatment facility option that is common to both the Sensitive Lake Protection menu and the Enhanced Basic menu.

[49] Phosphorus concentrations of between 0.10 and 0.50 mg/L are considered typical of Seattle area runoff (Table 1, "Water Quality Thresholds Decision paper," King County Surface Water Management Division, April 1994).

[50] *In series* means that the entire treatment water volume flows from one facility to the other in turn.

Intent

A project discharging runoff via surface flow contributes phosphorus loading to a sensitive lake regardless of distance from the lake. If discharge is via infiltration through coarse soils, it is also possible that phosphorus would be transported through the ground for some distance without attenuation. This groundwater transport distance is considered to be typically no more than one-quarter mile. Therefore, onsite treatment using the **Sensitive Lake Protection menu** is required prior to infiltration within one-quarter mile of a sensitive lake. Infiltration through finer soils is expected to provide significant attenuation of TP, so the general groundwater protection criteria specified on page 1-66 under "Soil Treatment Exemption" are considered sufficient for infiltration through finer soils.

Where the treatment goal is expanded to include 50% reduction of total zinc, the facility options common to both the Sensitive Lake Protection menu and the Enhanced Basic WQ menu should meet this goal as well as the lake protection goal of 50% removal of annual average total phosphorous. The intent behind the 50% reduction of total zinc goal and why it is applied is described on Page 1-68.

Target Surfaces

Facilities **in Sensitive Lake WQ Treatment Areas** must mitigate (either directly or in effect) the runoff from the following target surfaces within the ***threshold discharge area*** for which the facility is required:

1. ***New PGIS*** that is **not *fully dispersed*** per the criteria on Page 1-46. For individual lots within residential subdivision projects, the extent of ***new PGIS*** shall be assumed based on expected driveway size as approved by DDES.
2. ***New PGPS*** that is **not *fully dispersed*** and from which there will be a concentrated surface discharge in a natural channel or man-made conveyance system from the ***site***. For individual lots within residential subdivision projects, the extent of ***new pervious surface*** shall be assumed to be the entire lot area, except the assumed impervious portion as specified in Chapter 3 and any portion in which native conditions are preserved by covenant, tract, or easement. *Note: where the runoff from **target PGPS** is separated from the runoff from **target PGIS**, the Basic WQ menu may be used in place of the Sensitive Lake Protection menu for treatment of runoff from the **target PGPS** (see the area-specific exceptions at the end of this subsection).*
3. **Existing impervious surface** added since January 8, 2001 that is **not *fully dispersed*** and not yet mitigated with a County-approved water quality facility or flow control BMP. *Note: January 8, 2001 is the effective date of the ESA 4(d) Rule for Puget Sound Chinook salmon.*
4. ***Replaced PGIS*** that is **not *fully dispersed*** on a ***transportation redevelopment project*** in which ***new impervious surface*** is 5,000 square feet or more and totals 50% or more of the existing impervious surface within the project limits.
5. ***Replaced PGIS*** that is **not *fully dispersed*** on a **parcel *redevelopment project*** in which the total of new plus ***replaced impervious surface*** is 5,000 square feet or more and whose valuation of proposed improvements (including interior improvements and excluding required mitigation improvements) exceeds 50% of the assessed value of the existing ***site*** improvements.

Exceptions

The following exceptions apply only **in Sensitive Lake WQ Treatment Areas**:

1. The **Basic WQ menu** may be used in place of the **Sensitive Lake Protection menu** for treatment of any **runoff that is infiltrated** according to the standards in Section 5.4, provided the infiltration facility is not located in soils having *high infiltration rates*[51] within one-quarter-mile of the lake's

[51] *High infiltration rates* are those in excess of 9 inches per hour as measured by the EPA method or the Double Ring Infiltrometer method (ASTM D3385). These will typically be medium to coarse sand or gravel soil with low silt content. See Section 5.4.1 for information on measuring infiltration rates.

mean-high-water level. If the infiltration facility is located beyond the one-quarter-mile limit, the Basic WQ menu may be used regardless of the infiltration rate.

2. Application of the **Enhanced Basic WQ menu** as specified above for certain land uses may be waived for treatment of any runoff that is infiltrated according to the standards in Section 5.4.
3. Application of the **Enhanced Basic WQ menu** as specified above for certain land uses may be waived for treatment of any runoff that is discharged, via a non-fish-bearing conveyance system, all the way to the ordinary high water mark of a stream with a mean annual flow of 1,000 cfs or more (at the discharge point of the conveyance system) or a lake that is 300 acres or larger.
4. The **Enhanced Basic WQ menu** as specified above for treating runoff from a commercial land use may be waived if the all of the following criteria are met:
   a) No leachable metals (e.g., galvanized metals) are currently used or proposed to be used in areas of the ***site*** exposed to the weather, AND
   b) A covenant is recorded that prohibits future such use of leachable metals on the ***site*** (use the covenant in Reference Section 8-Q), AND
   c) Less than 50% of the runoff draining to the proposed treatment facility is from any area of the ***site*** comprised of one or both of the following land uses:
      - Commercial land use with an expected ADT of 100 or more vehicles per 1,000 square feet of gross building area.
      - Commercial land use involved with vehicle repair, maintenance, or sales.
5. The **Basic WQ menu** may be used for treatment of any runoff from **target *PGPS*** that is treated separately from the runoff from **target *PGIS***.
6. The facility requirement as applied to **target *PGPS*** may be waived altogether if there is a good faith agreement with the King Conservation District to implement a **farm management plan** for agricultural uses, or DDES approves a **landscape management plan** that controls solids, pesticides, and fertilizers leaving the ***site***.
7. The facility requirement as applied to ***replaced PGIS*** may be waived if the County has adopted a plan and implementation schedule for fulfilling this requirement using **regional facilities**.

Note: If a lake management plan has been prepared and adopted by King County, additional treatment and/or other water quality measures may be required as specified in the plan and pursuant to Special Requirement #1, Section 1.3.1 (p. 1-77).

C. SPHAGNUM BOG WQ TREATMENT AREAS

Sphagnum Bog WQ Treatment Areas are areas of King County from which runoff drains to or otherwise comes into contact with the vegetation of a ***sphagnum bog wetland***[52] **larger than 0.25 acres in *size*.**[53] These wetlands support unique vegetation communities, and they tend to develop in areas where water movement is minimized. Although sphagnum bog wetlands are typically isolated from significant sources of surface and ground water and receive their main water supply from rainfall, there are instances where they are components of larger wetlands and may be subject to inundation by those wetlands during high intensity or long duration runoff events. Sphagnum bog wetlands are generally uncommon in the Puget

[52] A *sphagnum bog wetland* is defined as a wetland dominated by sphagnum moss and which has an associated acid-loving plant community. Some of these include *ledum groenlandicum* (Labrador tea), *Kalmia occidentalis* (bog laurel), *Drosera rotundifolia* (sundew), and *Vaccinium oxycoccos* (cranberry). Stunted evergreen trees are also sometimes present. In addition to a distinctive plant community, the water chemistry of a sphagnum bog wetland is also unique. It is characterized by acidic waters (pH 3 to 5.5), low nutrient content, low alkalinity, and a buffering system composed predominantly of organic acids. See the "Definitions" section for more details on how King County defines a sphagnum bog wetland.

[53] The *size* of a sphagnum bog wetland is defined by the boundaries of the sphagnum bog plant community.

Sound area; of all the inventoried wetlands in King County, only a small percentage have sphagnum bog wetland components.[54]

Only a portion of all sphagnum bog wetlands have been identified and mapped by King County. Consequently, many of these wetlands and their contributing drainage areas must be identified during the wetland identification and delineation for a ***project site*** and during offsite analysis as required in Core Requirement #2. A list of identified sphagnum bog wetlands is included on the WQ Applications Map; however, if a wetland that meets the definition of a sphagnum bog wetland is found downstream of a ***project site*** and runoff from the ***project site*** drains to or otherwise comes into contact with the wetland's vegetation, the ***project site*** is considered to be within a Sphagnum Bog WQ Treatment Area whether the wetland is listed or not.

*Note: Any **threshold discharge area** from which runoff drains to or comes into contact with the vegetation of a sphagnum bog wetland larger than 0.25 acres in size is considered to be within a Sphagnum Bog WQ Treatment Area regardless of the WQ treatment area indicated by the WQ Applications Map.*

Required Treatment Menu

REQMT

A treatment option from the **Sphagnum Bog Protection menu** shall be used to treat runoff from the target surfaces specified below, except where this mitigation is waived or reduced by the area-specific exceptions at the end of this subsection.

Treatment Goals and Options

The treatment goals for protection of sphagnum bog wetlands include the control of nutrients, alkalinity, and pH. Although these goals may change as additional information about these wetlands becomes available, target pollutant removals for sphagnum bog protection are currently as follows:

- Total phosphorus reduction of 50%
- Nitrate + nitrite reduction of 40%
- pH below 6.5
- Alkalinity below 10 mg $CaCO_3$/L.

Facility options to meet these goals are limited; therefore, the County discourages developments from discharging runoff to sphagnum bog wetlands. Where infiltration of developed area runoff is not feasible or applicable per Section 5.4, treatment facility options include a *treatment train*[55] of two or three facilities in series. One of the facilities in the train must be a sand filter. The order of facilities in the treatment train is important; see Chapter 6 for specific facility options and design details.

Intent

Sphagnum bog wetlands support unique vegetation communities that are extremely sensitive to changes in alkalinity and nutrients from surface water inputs. The most effective way to prevent these changes is to infiltrate or redirect developed area runoff so it does not come into contact with the vegetation of a sphagnum bog wetland. However, this is not practicable for most development projects due to soil constraints precluding infiltration (see Section 5.4) and the onerous nature of bypassing runoff around a wetland. Therefore, where runoff contact with sphagnum bog vegetation cannot be avoided, the bog protection menu seeks to minimize certain changes in the chemistry of developed area runoff to protect this unique vegetation. This menu applies not only to runoff that drains directly to a sphagnum bog wetland but to runoff that otherwise comes into contact with the bog's vegetation, such as through inundation of the bog by an adjacent water body during high intensity or long duration runoff events.

[54] Approximately 3% of wetlands in the 1990 sensitive areas inventory are either sphagnum bog wetlands or include portions of a lake or wetland with sphagnum bog wetland characteristics.

[55] A *treatment train* is a combination of two or more treatment BMPs connected in series (i.e., the design water volume passes through each facility in turn).

While treatment facility options emphasize reduction of mineral elements (alkalinity) and nutrients in the runoff, little is known about their ability to reduce alkalinity or to actually protect sphagnum-based plant communities. In addition, the effect of frequent water level changes on the sphagnum plant community is also unknown but could be damaging. Hence, it is best to avoid discharge to sphagnum bog wetlands whenever possible.

Target Surfaces

Facilities **in Sphagnum Bog WQ Treatment Areas** must mitigate (either directly or in effect) the runoff from the following target surfaces within the ***threshold discharge area*** for which the facility is required:

1. ***New PGIS*** that is **not *fully dispersed*** per the criteria on Page 1-46. For individual lots within residential subdivision projects, the extent of ***new PGIS*** shall be assumed based on expected driveway size as approved by DDES.
2. ***New PGPS*** that is **not *fully dispersed*** and from which there will be a concentrated surface discharge in a natural channel or man-made conveyance system from the ***site***. For individual lots within residential subdivision projects, the extent of ***new pervious surface*** shall be assumed to be the entire lot area, except the assumed impervious portion as specified in Chapter 3 and any portion in which native conditions are preserved by covenant, tract, or easement.
3. **Existing impervious surface** added since January 8, 2001 that is **not *fully dispersed*** and not yet mitigated with a County-approved water quality facility or flow control BMP. *Note: January 8, 2001 is the effective date of the ESA 4(d) Rule for Puget Sound Chinook salmon.*
4. ***Replaced PGIS*** that is **not *fully dispersed*** on a ***transportation redevelopment project*** in which ***new impervious surface*** is 5,000 square feet or more and totals 50% or more of the existing impervious surface within the project limits.
5. ***Replaced PGIS*** that is **not *fully dispersed*** on a **parcel *redevelopment project*** in which the total of new plus ***replaced impervious surface*** is 5,000 square feet or more and whose valuation of proposed improvements (including interior improvements and excluding required mitigation improvements) exceeds 50% of the assessed value of the existing ***site*** improvements.

Exceptions

The following exceptions apply only **in Sphagnum Bog WQ Treatment Areas**:

1. The **Basic WQ menu** may be used in place of the Sphagnum Bog Protection menu for treatment of any **runoff that is infiltrated** provided the infiltration facility is not located in soils having *high infiltration rates*[56] within one-quarter-mile of the mean-high-water level of a sensitive lake intended to be protected by the Sensitive Lake WQ Treatment Area designation. If the infiltration facility is located in soils with high infiltration rates within the prescribed distance of a sensitive lake, then the Sensitive Lake Protection menu shall be used.
2. The facility requirement for Sphagnum Bog WQ Treatment Areas may be reduced to that of the surrounding WQ treatment area (i.e., either the Basic WQ Treatment Area or Sensitive Lake Treatment Area, whichever contains the Sphagnum Bog WQ Treatment Area) for treatment of any ***replaced PGIS*** **runoff**.

*Note: Unlike other WQ treatment areas, the facility requirement for Sphagnum Bog WQ Treatment Areas as applied to **target PGPS** may **not** be waived through a farm or landscape management plan.*

[56] *High infiltration rates* are those in excess of 9 inches per hour as measured by the EPA method or the Double Ring Infiltrometer method (ASTM D3385). These will typically be medium to coarse sand or gravel soil with low silt content. See Section 5.4.1 for information on measuring infiltration rates.

1.2.8.2 WATER QUALITY IMPLEMENTATION REQUIREMENTS

Water quality treatment facilities shall be designed and implemented in accordance with the following requirements, allowances, and flexible compliance provisions:

A. METHODS OF ANALYSIS AND DESIGN

Water quality treatment facilities shall be analyzed and designed as detailed in Chapter 6.

B. SITING OF TREATMENT FACILITIES

Required treatment facilities shall be located so as to treat the runoff from all target surfaces, except as allowed below under "Treatment Trades" and "Untreated Discharges."

Any other onsite or offsite runoff draining to a proposed treatment facility must be treated whether it is from a **target pollution-generating surface** or not and regardless of whether the runoff has already been treated by another facility. The facility must be sized for all flows/volumes entering the facility. This is because treatment effectiveness is determined in part by the total volume of runoff entering the facility.

C. TREATMENT TRADES

The runoff from **target pollution-generating surfaces** may be released untreated if an existing non-targeted pollution-generating surface of equivalent size and pollutant characteristics lying within the same watershed or stream reach tributary area is treated on the ***project site***. Such substitution is subject to the following restrictions:

1. The existing non-targeted pollution-generating surface is not currently being treated, is not required to be treated by any phase of the proposed project, is not subject to NPDES or other permit requirements, and is not under a compliance order or other regulatory action, AND
2. The proposal is reviewed and approved by DDES.

D. UNTREATED DISCHARGES

If ***site*** topographic constraints are such that runoff from a **target pollution-generating surface** must be pumped to be treated by the required water quality facility, then DDES may allow the area's runoff to be released untreated (except for those ***project sites*** draining to a sphagnum bog wetland) provided that all of the following conditions are met:

1. Treatment of the constrained area by filter strip, biofiltration, or a linear sand filter is not feasible, and a **treatment trade** as described above is not possible.
2. The untreated target surface is less than 5,000 square feet of ***new PGIS*** and is less than 5,000 square feet of new plus ***replaced PGIS*** on a ***redevelopment project***.
3. Any **target *PGPS*** within the area to be released untreated shall be addressed with a landscape management plan.

E. USE OF EXPERIMENTAL WATER QUALITY FACILITIES

Treatment facilities other than those identified in Chapter 6 are allowed on an experimental basis if it can be demonstrated that they are likely to meet the pollutant removal goal for the applicable receiving water. Use of such facilities requires an experimental design adjustment to be approved by King County according to Section 1.4, "Adjustment Process" (p. 1-85). In addition, any new treatment technologies must be approved through the state Department of Ecology's *TAPE program*[57] before the technology can be approved by King

[57] *TAPE* stands for Technology Assessment Protocol – Ecology. For more information, see Ecology's website at http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/newtech/index.html.

County. When sufficient data on performance has been collected and if performance is acceptable, the new facility will be added to the appropriate water quality menu for common use through a blanket adjustment or update of this manual.

F. OWNER RESPONSIBILITY FOR WATER QUALITY

Regardless of the means by which a property owner chooses to meet the water quality requirements of this manual – whether a treatment facility, a train of facilities, a treatment trade or an experimental treatment facility – it is the responsibility of the property owner to ensure that runoff from their ***site*** does not create water quality problems or degrade beneficial uses downstream. It is also the responsibility of the property owner to ensure that the discharge from their property is not in violation of state and federal laws.

1.3 SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS

This section details the following five special drainage requirements that may apply to the proposed project depending on its location or ***site***-specific characteristics:

- "Special Requirement #1: Other Adopted Area-Specific Requirements," Section 1.3.1
- "Special Requirement #2: Flood Hazard Area Delineation," Section 1.3.2 (p. 1-79)
- "Special Requirement #3: Flood Protection Facilities," Section 1.3.3 (p. 1-80)
- "Special Requirement #4: Source Control," Section 1.3.4 (p. 1-81)
- "Special Requirement #5: Oil Control," Section 1.3.5 (p. 1-82).

1.3.1 SPECIAL REQUIREMENT #1: OTHER ADOPTED AREA-SPECIFIC REQUIREMENTS

This manual is one of several adopted regulations in King County that apply requirements for controlling drainage on an area-specific basis. The areal clearing restrictions for RA-zoned parcels in KCC 16.82.150 (see Reference Section 3-A) is an example of zoning and land use restrictions used to reduce drainage impacts in certain areas of the County. Other adopted area-specific regulations include requirements that have a more direct bearing on the drainage design of a proposed project. These regulations include the following:

- **Critical Drainage Areas (CDAs):** DNRP establishes CDAs in areas where flooding and/or erosion conditions present an imminent likelihood of harm to the welfare and safety of the surrounding community. The special requirements in CDAs typically include more restrictive flow control and clearing standards. Maps showing CDA boundaries are available from DNRP or DDES.
- **Master Drainage Plans (MDPs):** MDPs are comprehensive drainage plans prepared for urban planned developments (UPDs) or other large, complex projects (described in Section 1.1.2.4). Projects covered by a MDP must meet any adopted requirements specific to that plan.
- **Basin Plans (BPs):** The King County Council adopts basin plans to provide for the comprehensive assessment of resources and to accommodate growth while controlling adverse impacts to the environment. A basin plan may recommend specific land uses, regional capital projects, and special drainage requirements for future development within the basin area it covers.
- **Salmon Conservation Plans (SCPs):** Salmon conservation plans are comprehensive, ecosystem-based plans intended to identify and assess the means to protect and restore salmon habitat through mechanisms such as habitat improvements, regulations, incentives, BMPs, land acquisition, and public education activities. These plans are developed in collaboration with other jurisdictions within a water resource inventory area (WRIA) designated by the state under WAC 173-500-040 and spanning several basins or subbasins.
- **Stormwater Compliance Plans (SWCPs):** Stormwater compliance plans are a subbasin or outfall specific assessment of the quantity and/or quality of King County's municipal separate storm sewer system discharges to determine actions necessary for compliance with the National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) General Municipal Stormwater Permit issued by the state Department of Ecology pursuant to the federal Clean Water Act. These plans/studies may recommend capital projects, flow control standards, water quality controls, public education activities, or other actions deemed necessary for compliance with the Clean Water Act and RCW 90.48, Water Pollution Control.
- **Lake Management Plans (LMPs):** The King County Council adopts lake management plans to provide for comprehensive assessment of resources and to accommodate growth while controlling

adverse impacts from nutrient loading to selected lakes. A lake management plan may recommend nutrient control through special drainage and source control requirements for proposed projects within the area it covers.

- **Flood Hazard Reduction Plan Updates (FHRPs):** The King County Flood Hazard Reduction Plan is a regional plan prepared in accordance with RCW 86.12.200 and in collaboration with cities for the purpose of reducing flood hazards. It includes (1) policies to guide floodplain land use and flood hazard reduction activities; (2) program and project recommendations, including capital improvement projects, maintenance, relocation and elevation of homes, flood warning improvements, and river planning activities; (3) implementation priorities for program and project recommendations; and (4) an analysis of major financing alternatives and issues. Future updates of the FHRP may contain additional flood hazard reduction requirements.
- **Shared Facility Drainage Plans (SFDPs):** SFDPs are approved by King County to allow two or more projects to share drainage facilities required by this manual. Projects covered by a SFDP must meet any specific requirements of that plan.

Threshold	Requirement
IF a proposed project is in a designated ***Critical Drainage Area*** or in an area included in an adopted master drainage plan, basin plan, salmon conservation plan, stormwater compliance plan, flood hazard reduction plan, lake management plan, or shared facility drainage plan . . .	THEN the proposed project shall comply with the drainage requirements of the ***Critical Drainage Area***, master drainage plan, basin plan, salmon conservation plan, stormwater compliance plan, flood hazard reduction plan, lake management plan, or shared facility drainage plan, respectively.

Application of this Requirement

The drainage requirements of adopted CDAs, MDPs, BPs, SCPs, SWCPs, FHRPs, LMPs, and SFDPs shall be applied in addition to the drainage requirements of this manual unless otherwise specified in the adopted regulation. Where conflicts occur between the two, the drainage requirements of the adopted area-specific regulation shall supersede those in this manual.

Examples of drainage requirements found in other adopted area-specific regulations include the following:

- More or less stringent flow control
- More extensive water quality controls
- Forest retention requirements
- Infiltration restrictions
- Groundwater recharge provisions
- Discharge to a constructed regional flow control or conveyance facility.

Adjustments to vary from the specific drainage requirements mandated by CDAs, BPs, SCPs, SWCPs, FHRPs, and LMPs may be pursued through the adjustment process described in Section 1.4 of this manual. Copies of all adopted CDAs, basin plans, SCPs, SWCPs, FHRPs, and lake management plans are available from DNRP or DDES.

Projects covered by SFDPs shall demonstrate that the shared facility will be available by the time the project is constructed and that all onsite requirements are met. Projects covered by a SFDP are still required to provide any onsite controls necessary to comply with drainage requirements not addressed by the shared facility.

1.3.2 SPECIAL REQUIREMENT #2: FLOOD HAZARD AREA DELINEATION

Flood hazard areas are composed of the 100-year floodplain, zero-rise flood fringe, zero-rise floodway, FEMA floodway, and channel migration zones as described in KCC 21A.24. If a proposed project contains or is adjacent to a ***flood hazard area*** as determined by DDES, this special requirement requires the project to determine those components that are applicable and delineate them on the project's site improvement plans and recorded maps.

Floodplains are subject to inundation during extreme events. The 100-year floodplain, and floodway if applicable, is delineated in order to minimize flooding impacts to new development and to prevent aggravation of existing flooding problems by new development. Regulations and restrictions concerning development within a 100-year floodplain are found in the critical areas code, KCC 21A.24.

Channel migration zones are areas within the lateral extent of likely stream channel movement that are subject to risk due to stream bank destabilization, rapid stream incision, stream bank erosion and shifts in the location of stream channels, as shown on King County's Channel Migration Zone maps. The channel migration zone includes two additional components, the *severe channel migration hazard area*, which includes the present channel width plus the area at greatest risk of lateral movement, and the *moderate channel migration hazard area*, which is the remaining portion of the channel migration zone. Regulations and restrictions concerning development within channel migration zones and their hazard area components are found in the critical areas code, KCC 21A.24.

Threshold	Requirement
IF a proposed project contains or is adjacent to a ***flood hazard area*** for a river, stream, lake, wetland, closed depression, marine shoreline, or a King County-mapped channel migration zone, or if other King County regulations require study of flood hazards related to the proposed project . . .	THEN the 100-year floodplain, and floodway if applicable, shall be determined and their boundaries, together with the boundaries of the severe and moderate channel migration hazard area (if applicable), shall be delineated on the site improvement plans and profiles, and on any final subdivision maps prepared for the proposed project.

Application of this Requirement

The applicant is required to use the best available floodplain/floodway data when delineating the 100-year floodplain and floodway boundaries on site improvement plans and profiles, and on any final subdivision maps. The **floodplain/floodway delineation** used by the applicant shall be in accordance with KCC 21A.24 and associated public rules. If floodplain/floodway data and delineation does not exist, then a floodplain/floodway analysis shall be prepared by the applicant as described in Section 4.4.2, "Floodplain/Floodway Analysis."

If the ***site*** is located within a **channel migration zone** mapped by King County, the proposed development must comply with KCC 21A.24 and associated public rules.

1.3.3 SPECIAL REQUIREMENT #3: FLOOD PROTECTION FACILITIES

Flood protection facilities, such as **levees** and **revetments** require a high level of confidence in their structural integrity and performance. Proper analysis, design, and construction are necessary to protect against the potentially catastrophic consequences if such facilities should fail.

Threshold	Requirement
IF a proposed project will: • rely on an existing flood protection facility (such as a levee or revetment) for protection against hazards posed by erosion or inundation, OR • modify or construct a new flood protection facility . . .	THEN the applicant shall demonstrate that the flood protection facility conforms with siting, structural stability, environmental, and all other relevant standards set forth in the following regulations and requirements: • Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) regulations (44 CFR), • Washington State *Integrated Streambank Protection Guidelines*, • Corps of Engineers *Manual for Design and Construction of Levees* (EM 1110-2-1913), • KCC 21A.24, and • Special Requirement #1 (specifically the King County Flood Hazard Reduction Plan); AND, flood containment levees intended to provide 100-year flood containment shall be certified per standards of the FEMA regulations (44 CFR).

Application of this Requirement

The applicant is required to demonstrate conformance with FEMA regulations using the methods specified in Section 4.4.2. If the flood protection facility is a 100-year flood containment levee, the facility must be certified by a ***civil engineer*** to comply with FEMA standards in CFR 44.

Conformance with the other regulations and requirements listed above shall be addressed in the Technical Information Report submitted with the project's engineering plans (see Section 2.3.1.1).

Conformance also requires that certain **easement requirements** (outlined in Section 4.1) be met in order to allow County access to the facility. If the proposed project contains an existing King County flood protection facility or proposes to rely on a King County flood protection facility, the applicant shall provide an easement to King County consistent with the river protection easement requirements outlined in Section 4.1.

1.3.4 SPECIAL REQUIREMENT #4: SOURCE CONTROLS

Water quality source controls prevent rainfall and runoff water from coming into contact with pollutants, thereby reducing the likelihood that pollutants will enter public waterways and violate water quality standards or County stormwater discharge permit limits. A *Stormwater Pollution Prevention Manual* was prepared for citizens, businesses, and industries to identify and implement source controls for activities that often pollute water bodies. King County provides advice about source control implementation upon request. The County may, however, require mandatory source controls at any time through formal code enforcement if complaints or studies reveal water quality violations or problems.

Threshold	Requirement
IF a proposed project requires a commercial building or commercial ***site*** development permit . . .	THEN water quality source controls applicable to the proposed project shall be applied as described below in accordance with the *King County Stormwater Pollution Prevention Manual* and King County Code 9.12.

Application of this Requirement

When applicable per the *Stormwater Pollution Prevention Manual*, **structural source control measures**, such as car wash pads or dumpster area roofing, shall be applied to the entire ***site*** containing the proposed project, not just the ***project site***. If the applicant is a tenant or lessee for only a portion of the ***site***, DDES may limit the entire ***site*** application of structural source controls to only that portion of the ***site*** occupied or leased by the applicant. All applicable structural source control measures shall be shown on the site improvement plans submitted for engineering review and approval. Other, **nonstructural source control measures**, such as covering storage piles with plastic or isolating areas where pollutants are used or stored, are to be implemented after occupancy and need not be addressed during the plan review process. All commercial, industrial, and multifamily projects (irrespective of size) undergoing drainage review are required to implement applicable source controls.

1.3.5 SPECIAL REQUIREMENT #5: OIL CONTROL

Projects proposing to develop or redevelop a ***high-use site*** must provide oil controls in addition to any other water quality controls required by this manual. Such ***sites*** typically generate high concentrations of oil due to high traffic turnover or the frequent transfer of oil.

The oil control requirement for ***high-use sites*** applies to all developments that generate high concentrations of oil, regardless of whether the project creates ***new impervious surface*** or makes ***site*** improvements to an existing ***high-use site***. The traffic threshold in the definition above focuses on vehicle turnover per square foot of building area (trip generation) rather than ADT alone because oil leakage is greatest when engines are idling or cooling. In general, all-day parking areas are not intended to be captured by these thresholds except those for diesel vehicles, which tend to leak oil more than non-diesel vehicles. The petroleum storage and transfer stipulation is intended to address regular transfer operations like service stations, not occasional filling of heating oil tanks.

Threshold	Requirement
IF a proposed project either: • develops a ***site*** that will have ***high-use site*** characteristics, OR • is a ***redevelopment project*** proposing $100,000 or more of improvements to an existing ***high-use site*** . . .	THEN the project must treat runoff from the high-use portion of the ***site*** using oil control treatment options from the High-Use menu (described below and detailed in Chapter 6).

High-Use Menu

High-use oil control options are selected to capture and detain oil and associated pollutants. The goal of this treatment is no visible sheen on runoff leaving the facility, or less than 10 mg/L total petroleum hydrocarbons (TPH) in the runoff, depending on the facility option used. Oil control options include facilities that are small, handle only a limited tributary area, and require frequent maintenance, as well as facilities that treat larger areas and generally have less frequent maintenance needs. Facility choices include catch basin inserts, linear sand filters, and oil/water separators. See Chapter 6 for specific facility choices and design details.

Application of this Requirement

For ***high-use sites*** located within a larger commercial center, only the impervious surface associated with the high-use portion of the ***site*** is subject to treatment requirements. If common parking for multiple businesses is provided, treatment shall be applied to the number of parking stalls required for the high-use business only. However, if the treatment collection area also receives runoff from other areas, the treatment facility must be sized to treat all water passing through it.

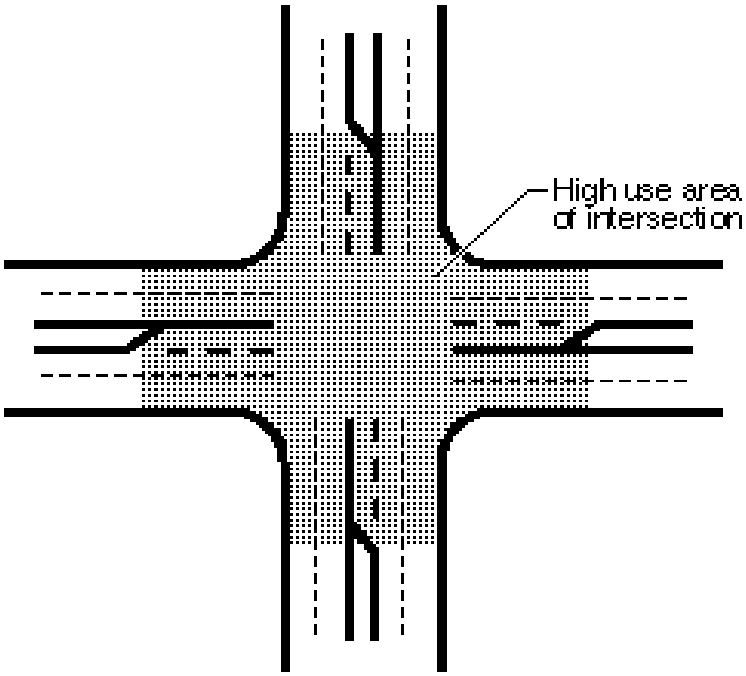
High-use roadway intersections shall treat lanes where vehicles accumulate during the signal cycle, including left and right turn lanes and through lanes, from the beginning of the left turn pocket (see Figure 1.3.5.A below). If no left turn pocket exists, the treatable area shall begin at a distance equal to three car-lengths from the stop line. If runoff from the intersection drains to more than two collection areas that do not combine within the intersection, treatment may be limited to any two of the collection areas.

Note: For oil control facilities to be located in public road right-of-way and maintained by King County, only coalescing plate or baffle oil/water separators shall be used unless otherwise approved through an adjustment.

Methods of Analysis

The traffic threshold for the High-Use menu shall be estimated using information from *Trip Generation*, published by the Institute of Transportation Engineers, or from a traffic study prepared by a professional engineer or transportation specialist with experience in traffic estimation.

FIGURE 1.3.5.A TREATABLE AREAS FOR HIGH-USE ROAD INTERSECTIONS



1.4 ADJUSTMENT PROCESS

For proposed projects subject to drainage review by the Department of Development and Environmental Services (DDES), this process is provided for the occasions when a project proponent desires to vary from one of the core or special requirements, or any other specific requirement or standard contained in this manual. Proposed adjustments should be approved prior to final permit approval, but they may be accepted up to the time King County approves final construction or accepts drainage facilities for maintenance. The adjustment application form (one standard form serves all types of adjustments) is included in Reference Section 8-F.

Types of Adjustments

To facilitate the adjustment process and timely review of adjustment proposals, the following types of adjustments are provided:

- **Standard Adjustments:** These are adjustments of the standards and requirements contained in the following chapters and sections of this manual:
  - * Chapter 2, "Drainage Plan Submittal"
  - * Chapter 4, "Conveyance System Analysis and Design"
  - * Chapter 5, "Flow Control Design"
  - * Appendix C, *Small Project Drainage Requirements* (detached)
  - * Appendix D, *Erosion and Sediment Control Standards* (detached).

  Requests for standard adjustments will be accepted only for permits pending approval or approved permits that have not yet expired.
- **Complex Adjustments:** Complex adjustments typically require more in-depth review because they deal with more complicated requirements or requirements that affect basic County policies or other agencies. These adjustments apply to the requirements contained in the following chapters and sections of this manual:
  - * Chapter 1, "Drainage Review and Requirements"
  - * Chapter 3, "Hydrologic Analysis and Design"
  - * Chapter 6, "Water Quality Design"
  - * Appendix A, "Maintenance Requirements for Flow Control, Conveyance, and WQ Facilities"
  - * Appendix B, "Master Drainage Plans."

  Requests for complex adjustments will be accepted only for permits pending approval or approved permits that have not yet expired.
- **Preapplication Adjustments:** This type of adjustment may be requested when the applicant needs an adjustment decision to determine if a project is feasible or when the results are needed to determine if a project is viable before funding a full application. The approval of preapplication adjustments is tied by condition to the project proposal presented at a preapplication meeting with DDES.
- **Experimental Design Adjustments:** This type of adjustment is used for proposing new designs or methods that are not covered in this manual, that are not uniquely ***site*** specific, and that do not have sufficient data to establish functional equivalence.
- **Blanket Adjustments:** This type of adjustment may be established by the County based on approval of any of the above-mentioned adjustments. Blanket adjustments are usually based on previously approved adjustments that can be applied routinely or globally to all projects where appropriate. Blanket adjustments are also used to effect minor changes or corrections to manual design requirements or to add new designs and methodologies to this manual.

1.4.1 ADJUSTMENT AUTHORITY

The Department of Development and Environmental Services (DDES) shall have full authority to determine if and what type of adjustment is required for any proposed project subject to drainage review by DDES. The authority to grant adjustments for such projects is distributed as follows:

- DDES shall have full authority to approve or deny standard, complex, and preapplication adjustments, except those involving outfalls or pump discharges to the Green River between River Mile 6 and SR 18 per Section 1.2.4.2.F and 1.2.4.2.I. DDES decisions on those adjustments are subject to approval by the King County Flood Control District.
- DNRP shall have full authority to approve or deny experimental design adjustments.
- Both DDES and DNRP must approve blanket adjustments.

At any time, this adjustment authority may be transferred between DDES and DNRP through a memorandum or an amendment to this manual. This memorandum or amendment must include specific guidelines for deferral of adjustment authority.

1.4.2 CRITERIA FOR GRANTING ADJUSTMENTS

Adjustments to the requirements in this manual may be granted provided that granting the adjustment will achieve the following:

1. Produce a compensating or comparable result that is in the public interest, AND
2. Meet the objectives of safety, function, appearance, environmental protection, and maintainability based on sound engineering judgment.

Also, the granting of any adjustment that would be in conflict with the requirements of any other King County department will require review and concurrence with that department.

Criteria Exception

If it can be demonstrated that meeting the above criteria for producing a compensating or comparable result will deny reasonable use of a property, approval of the adjustment will require an adjustment **criteria exception** to be approved by the director of DDES or DNRP (whoever is approving the adjustment). An adjustment that requires a criteria exception may be granted following legal public notice of the adjustment request, the director's proposed decision on the request, and a written finding of fact that documents the following:

1. There are special physical circumstances or conditions affecting the property such that strict application of the criteria for producing a compensating or comparable result would deprive the applicant of all reasonable use of the parcel of land in question, and every effort has been made to find creative ways to meet the intent of the requirement for which the adjustment is sought, AND
2. Granting the adjustment for the individual property in question will not create a significant adverse impact to public health, welfare, water quality, and properties downstream or nearby, AND
3. The adjustment requires the best practicable alternative for achieving the spirit and intent of the requirement in question.

In addition, the written finding of fact must include the following information as required by the state Department of Ecology per King County's 2007 NPDES General Municipal Stormwater Permit:

- The current (pre-project) use of the ***site***.
- How application of the requirement for which an adjustment is being requested denies reasonable use of the ***site*** compared to the restrictions that existed under the 2005 *Surface Water Design Manual*.
- The possible remaining uses of the ***site*** if the criteria exception were not granted.

- The uses of the ***site*** that would have been allowed under the 2005 *Surface Water Design Manual*.
- A comparison of the estimated amount and percentage of value loss as a result of the requirements of this manual versus the estimated amount and percentage of value loss as a result of requirements that existed under the 2005 *Surface Water Design Manual*.
- The feasibility for the owner to alter the project to apply the requirements of this manual.

Experimental Design Adjustments

Experimental design adjustments that request use of an experimental water quality facility or flow control facility will be approved by DNRP on a limited basis if, upon evaluation, DNRP agrees the following criteria are met:

Conditions for approval of experimental design adjustments may include a requirement for setting aside an extra area and posting a financial guarantee for construction of a conventional facility should the experimental facility fail. Once satisfactory operation of the experimental facility is verified, the set aside area could be developed and the financial guarantee released.

1.4.3 ADJUSTMENT APPLICATION PROCESS

Standard and Complex Adjustments

The application process for standard and complex adjustments is as follows:

- Requests for standard and complex adjustments will be accepted only for permits pending approval or approved permits that have not yet expired.
- The completed adjustment request application forms must be submitted to DDES along with sufficient engineering information (described in Chapter 2) to evaluate the request. The application shall note the specific requirement for which the adjustment is sought.
- If the adjustment request involves use of a previously unapproved construction material or construction practice, the applicant should submit documentation that includes, but is not limited to, a record of successful use by other agencies and/or evidence of meeting criteria for quality and performance, such as that for the American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) and the American Society of Testing and Materials (ASTM).
- If the adjustment requires a criteria exception, additional engineering or other information may be required by DDES to document that denial of reasonable use would occur, that every effort was made to achieve compliance, and that the best practicable alternative will not cause significant adverse impact.
- A fee reduction may be requested if it is demonstrated that the adjustment request requires little or no engineering review.

Preapplication Adjustments

The application process is the same as for standard and complex adjustments except that requests will be accepted prior to permit application, but only if:

- The applicant provides justification at a preapplication meeting with DDES that an adjustment decision is needed to determine the viability of the proposed project, AND
- Sufficient engineering information to evaluate the request is provided.

Experimental Design Adjustments

The application process is the same as for standard and complex adjustments except that requests will be accepted prior to permit application.

Blanket Adjustments

There is no application process for blanket adjustments because they are initiated and issued solely by the County.

1.4.4 ADJUSTMENT REVIEW PROCESS

All adjustments (a.k.a., variances from KCC 9.04) are classified as Type 1 land use decisions in King County Code, Title 20.20, and as such, are governed by the review procedures and time lines set forth in KCC 20.20. Consistent with these procedures, the general steps of the review process for specific types of adjustments are presented as follows.

Standard and Complex Adjustments

- DDES staff will review the adjustment request application forms and documentation for completeness and inform the applicant in writing as to whether additional information is required from the applicant in order to complete the review. The applicant will also be informed if DDES determines that special technical support is required from DNRP in cases where the adjustment involves a major policy issue or potentially impacts a DNRP drainage facility.
- The Land Use Services Division Manager/designee or Building Services Division Manager/designee of DDES will review and either approve or deny the adjustment request following DDES's determination that all necessary information has been received from the applicant.
- If a criteria exception is required for the adjustment, DDES will issue a legal public notice of the adjustment request that indicates the director's proposed decision on the request, including the written finding of fact specified in Section 1.4.2 (p. 1-86). The pubic notice will include a 15-working-day public comment period within which a request for reconsideration may be made to the DDES director as described in Section 1.4.5. Absent a request for reconsideration, the director's decision becomes final after the two week public comment period.
- Approvals of standard and complex adjustments will expire upon expiration of the permit to which they apply.

Preapplication Adjustments

The review process is the same as for standard and complex adjustments except that approvals will expire one year after the approval date, unless a complete permit application is submitted and accepted, in which case the adjustment will expire at the same time as the permit to which it applies.

Experimental Design Adjustments

- DDES staff will refer requests for experimental design adjustments to DNRP staff, along with any recommendations.
- DNRP staff will review the submitted material and any DDES staff recommendations, and inform the applicant as to whether additional information is required in order to complete the review. DNRP will also give the applicant an estimate of the time needed to complete the review.
- If a criteria exception is required for the adjustment, DDES will issue a legal public notice of the adjustment request that indicates the DNRP's proposed decision on the request, including the written finding of fact specified in Section 1.4.2 (p. 1-86). The pubic notice will include a 15-working-day public comment period within which a request for reconsideration may be made to the DNRP director as described in Section 1.4.5. Absent a request for reconsideration, the director's decision becomes final after the 15-working-day public comment period.
- The DNRP director or designee will review and either approve or deny the adjustment request in writing.

Blanket Adjustments

Blanket adjustments will each be established by memorandum between DDES and DNRP based on:

1. A previously approved standard, complex, preapplication, or experimental design adjustment and supporting documentation, AND
2. Information presenting the need for the blanket adjustment. Typically, blanket adjustments should apply globally to design or procedural requirements and be independent of ***site*** conditions.

Both DDES and DNRP must approve a blanket adjustment.

1.4.5 REQUEST FOR RECONSIDERATION PROCEDURE

Although adjustment decisions, classified as Type 1 land use decisions, are not appealable per KCC 20.20, the applicant may request reconsideration of the denial or conditions of approval of an adjustment request by submitting a formal letter to the director of the department in which the decision was made within 15 working days of the decision. This letter must include justification for reconsideration of the decision, along with a copy of the adjustment request with the conditions (if applicable) and a list of all previously submitted material. The department director shall respond to the applicant in writing within 15 working days. The director's decision on the reconsideration request shall be final. A per-hour review fee will be charged to the applicant for County review of a reconsideration request.

Criteria Exceptions

A criteria exception decision for an adjustment is also a Type 1 land use decision and thus, is not appealable per KCC 20.20. However, because the public is given an opportunity to comment on a criteria exception decision, they may request reconsideration of the decision by submitting a formal letter to the director of the department in which the decision was made within 15 working days of the legal public notice. This letter must include justification for reconsideration of the decision, along with any supporting information/documentation. The department director shall respond to the letter in writing within 15 working days. The director's decision on the reconsideration request shall be final.

CHAPTER 2

DRAINAGE PLAN SUBMITTAL

KING COUNTY, WASHINGTON

SURFACE WATER DESIGN MANUAL

Section 2.1	**Plans for Permits and Drainage Review**	**2-3**
Section 2.1.1	Plans Required for Permit Submittal	2-3
Section 2.1.2	Plans Required for Drainage Review	2-3
Section 2.2	**Plans Required with Initial Permit Application**	**2-5**
Section 2.2.1	Subdivision, UPD, and Binding Site Plans	2-5
Section 2.2.2	Short Subdivisions	2-6
Section 2.2.3	Commercial Site Development	2-6
Section 2.2.4	Single family Residential	2-6
Section 2.2.5	Other Permits	2-6
Section 2.3	**Drainage Review Plan Specifications**	**2-7**
Section 2.3.1	Engineering Plan Specifications	2-7
Section 2.3.2	Projects in Targeted Drainage Review	2-33
Section 2.4	**Plans Required After Drainage Review**	**2-35**
Section 2.4.1	Plan Changes After Permit Issuance	2-35
Section 2.4.2	Final Corrected Plan Submittal	2-35
Section 2.4.3	Final Plat, Short Plat, and Binding Site Plan Submittals	2-35

CHAPTER 2

DRAINAGE PLAN SUBMITTAL

This chapter details the drainage related submittal requirements for engineering design plans as part of a permit application to the Department of Development and Environmental Services (DDES). The intent of these requirements is to present consistent formats for design plans and the technical support data required to develop the plans. These conventions are necessary to review engineering designs for compliance with King County ordinances and regulations, and to ensure the intent of the plan is easily understood and implemented in the field. Properly drafted design plans and supporting information also facilitate the construction, operation, and maintenance of the proposed system long after its review and approval. When plans comply with the formats and specifications contained herein, they facilitate review and approval with a minimum of time-consuming corrections and resubmittals.

Note that this chapter primarily describes how to submit drainage plans for review—what must be submitted, in what formats, at what times and to what offices. The basic drainage requirements that these plans must address are contained in Chapter 1, "Drainage Review and Requirements." The specific design methods and criteria to be used are contained in Chapters 3, 4, 5, and 6.

Several key forms used in the plan review process are reproduced in Reference Section 8, "Forms and Worksheets." The drainage submittal requirements for different types of developments are contained in this chapter with the exception of Master Drainage Plans, which are contained in a separate publication titled *Master Drainage Planning for Large or Complex Site Developments*, available from the King County Department of Natural Resources and Parks (DNRP) or DDES. For information on general requirements for any permit type and on the appropriate submittal location, refer to the **customer information bulletins** prepared by DDES for this purpose.

Chapter Organization

The information presented in this chapter is organized into four main sections as follows:

- Section 2.1, "Plans for Permits and Drainage Review" (p. 2-3)
- Section 2.2, "Plans Required with Initial Permit Application" (p. 2-5)
- Section 2.3, "Drainage Review Plan Specifications" (p. 2-7)
- Section 2.4, "Plans Required After Drainage Review" (p. 2-35).

These sections begin on odd pages so the user can insert tabs if desired for quicker reference.

2.1 PLANS FOR PERMITS AND DRAINAGE REVIEW

DDES is responsible for the review of all engineering aspects of private development proposals. Drainage review is a primary concern of engineering design. This section describes the **types of engineered drainage plans** required for engineering review at various permit review stages. *Refer to the DDES customer information bulletins for other details or requirements, such as the submittal and expiration periods set for each type of permit application, review fees, right-of-way use requirements, and other code requirements.*

2.1.1 PLANS REQUIRED FOR PERMIT SUBMITTAL

Most projects require some degree of drainage plans or analysis to be submitted with the initial permit application (see Table 2.1.2.A, p. 2-4). Subdivisions, urban plan developments (UPDs), and binding site plans require engineered **preliminary plans** be submitted with the initial permit application. Short plats require **site plans** (may be engineered or non-engineered) to be submitted with the initial permit application. Preliminary plans and site plans provide general information on the proposal, including location of critical areas, road alignments and right-of-way, ***site*** topography, building locations, land use information, and lot dimensions. They are used to determine the appropriate drainage conditions and requirements to be applied to the proposal during the drainage review process.

Single family residential building permits and short plats with one undeveloped lot require only a **site plan** with the initial permit application. Commercial permits require full **engineering plans** (see below). Other permits may have project specific drainage requirements determined by DDES or described in DDES customer information bulletins.

2.1.2 PLANS REQUIRED FOR DRAINAGE REVIEW

For drainage review purposes, **engineering plans** consist of the following:

1. **Site improvement plans** (see Section 2.3.1.2, p. 2-19), which include all plans, profiles, details, notes, and specifications necessary to construct road, drainage, and off-street parking improvements.
2. A **construction stormwater pollution prevention plan (CSWPPP)**, which identifies the measures and BMPs required to prevent the discharge of sediment-laden water and other pollutants associated with construction/***land disturbing activities***. The CSWPPP includes two component plans: an **erosion and sediment control (ESC) plan** (see Section 2.3.1.3, p. 2-26), which addresses prevention of sediment-laden discharges; and a **stormwater pollution prevention and spill (SWPPS) plan** (see Section 2.3.1.4, p.2-29), which addresses prevention of other pollutant discharges.
3. A **technical information report (TIR)** (see Section 2.3.1.1, p. 2-8), which contains all the technical information and analysis necessary to develop the site improvement plan and CSWPPP.

Note: A landscape management plan is also included if applicable (see Section 2.3.1.5, p. 2-32).

Projects under Targeted Drainage Review usually require engineering plans, except that only certain sections of the technical information report are required to be completed and the site improvement plan may have a limited scope depending upon the characteristics of the proposed project. The scope of these plans should be confirmed during the **project predesign meeting** with DDES. For other permits, such as single family residential permits, the scope of the targeted engineering analysis is usually determined during DDES engineering review.

Projects without major drainage improvements may be approved to submit *a modified site improvement plan*. Major drainage improvements usually include water quality or flow control facilities, conveyance systems, bridges, and road right-of-way improvements. For projects requiring engineering plans for road construction, a **modified site improvement plan** is not allowed. See Section 2.3.1.2, (p. 2-19) for further information.

Plans Required for Small Project Drainage Review

Small project drainage plans are a simplified form of site improvement and ESC plans (without a TIR or a SWPPS plan) that may be prepared by a non-engineer from a set of pre-engineered design details. Small project drainage plans are only allowed for projects in Small Project Drainage Review but may be required for individual lots created by a subdivision project to show how required flow control BMPs and ESC measures will be applied to future lot construction.

For single family residential permits, the level and scope of drainage plan requirements are determined by DDES during drainage review. Some projects subject to Small Project Drainage Review may also require Targeted Drainage Review.

TABLE 2.1.2.A DRAINAGE PLAN SUBMITTALS

Type of Permit or Project	Plans Required with Initial Permit Application	Type of Drainage Review	Plans Required for Drainage Review
SUBDIVISIONS, UPDs, AND BINDING SITE PLANS	Plat Map(5) Preliminary Plans Level 1 Downstream Analysis	Full or Targeted Drainage Review(2)	• Preliminary Plans(5) • Engineering Plans(1)
		Large Project Drainage Review	• Preliminary Plans(5) • Master Drainage Plan(4) or Special Study • Engineering Plans(1)
SHORT PLATS	Site Plan(5)	Small Project Drainage Review	Small Project Drainage Plans(3)
	Site Plan(5) Level 1 Downstream Analysis	Small Project Drainage Review AND Targeted Drainage Review(2)	• Small Project Drainage Plans(3) • Engineering Plans(1)
		Full or Targeted Drainage Review(2)	Engineering Plans(1)
COMMERCIAL PERMITS	Engineering Plans(1),(2)	Full or Targeted Drainage Review	Engineering Plans(1)
SINGLE FAMILY RESIDENTIAL BUILDING PERMITS OR PERMITS FOR AGRICULTURAL PROJECTS	Site Plan(5) for Single Family Residential Building Permits Site Plan(5) or other project-specific plan as specified by DDES for ***agricultural projects***	Small Project Drainage Review	Small Project Drainage Plans(3)
		Small Project Drainage Review AND Targeted Drainage Review(2)	• Small Project Drainage Plans(3) • Engineering Plans(1)
		Full or Targeted Drainage Review(2)	Engineering Plans(1)
OTHER PROJECTS OR PERMITS	Project-specific (contact DDES or use DDES customer information bulletins)	Full or Targeted Drainage Review(2)	Engineering Plans(1)

Notes:

(1) Submittal specifications for **engineering plans** are detailed in Section 2.3.1 (p. 2-7).

(2) Submittal specifications for **Targeted Drainage Review** are found in Section 2.3.2 (p. 2-33).

(3) Specifications for submittal of **small project drainage plans** are found in Appendix C, *Small Project Drainage Requirements* (detached).

(4) Specifications for submittal of **master drainage plans or special studies** are found in the King County publication titled *Master Drainage Planning for Large or Complex Site Developments.*

(5) Submittal specifications for these plans are found in the application packages and in DDES Customer information Bulletins.

2.2 PLANS REQUIRED WITH INITIAL PERMIT APPLICATION

This section describes the submittal requirements for initial permit applications at DDES. The **timing for submittal** of engineering plans will vary depending on permit type. For subdivisions and short plats, this submittal usually follows the County's approval of preliminary plans. For commercial building permits, engineering plans must be submitted as part of the initial permit application. For other permit types the drainage plan requirements are determined during the permit review process.

Note: If engineering plans are required to be submitted with the initial permit application, they must be accompanied by the appropriate supporting documents (e.g., required application forms, an environmental checklist, etc.). For more details, see DDES's customer information bulletins.

Design Plan Certification

All preliminary plans and engineering plans must be stamped by a ***civil engineer***.

All land boundary surveys and legal descriptions used for preliminary and engineering plans must be stamped by a **land surveyor** licensed in the State of Washington. Topographic survey data and mapping prepared specifically for a proposed project may be performed by the ***civil engineer*** stamping the engineering plans as allowed by the Washington State Board of Registration for Professional Engineers and Land Surveyors.

2.2.1 SUBDIVISION, UPD, AND BINDING SITE PLANS

Applications for proposed subdivision, UPD, and binding site plan projects must include engineered **preliminary plans**, which are used to help determine engineering plan requirements to recommend to the Hearing Examiner. Preliminary plans shall include the following:

1. **A conceptual drainage plan** prepared, stamped, and signed by a ***civil engineer***. This plan must show the location and type of the following:

   a) Existing and proposed flow control facilities

   b) Existing and proposed water quality facilities

   c) Existing and proposed conveyance systems.

   The level of detail of the plan should correspond to the complexity of the project.

2. **A Level 1 Downstream Analysis** as required in Core Requirement #2 and outlined under "TIR Section 3, Offsite Analysis" (p. 2-9). This offsite analysis shall be submitted in order to assess potential offsite drainage and water quality impacts associated with development of the project, and to help propose appropriate mitigation of those impacts. A higher level of offsite analysis may be requested by DDES prior to preliminary approval, or as a condition of engineering plan submittal. The offsite analysis must be prepared, stamped, and signed by a ***civil engineer***.

3. **Survey/topographic information.** The submitted ***site*** plan and conceptual drainage plan shall include the following:

   a) Field topographic base map to accompany application (aerial topography allowed with DDES permission)

   b) Name and address of surveyor and surveyor's seal and signature

   c) Notation for field or aerial survey

   d) Datum and benchmark/location and basis of elevation

e) Location of all critical areas (include the King County designation number, or identify as undesignated)

f) Contour intervals per the following chart:

Zoning Designation	Contour Intervals
Densities of developed area of over 2 DU per acre	2 feet at less than 15% slope 5 feet at 15% slope or more
Densities of developed area of 2 DU or less per acre	5 feet

2.2.2 SHORT SUBDIVISIONS

Applications for proposed short plats[1] require a proposed **site plan** drawn to scale showing geographic features such as adjacent streets, existing buildings, and critical areas if any are known to be present; and a **Level 1 Downstream Analysis**. Site plans are usually engineered, except for projects exempt from drainage review or projects subject to Small Project Drainage Review for the entire project. The specifications for submittal of site plans are outlined in DDES customer information bulletins.

The Level 1 Downstream Analysis is required for all short plats except those meeting the exemptions outlined in Section 1.2.2 or those subject to Small Project Drainage Review for the entire project. A higher level of offsite analysis may be requested by DDES prior to preliminary approval, or as a condition of engineering plan submittal.

2.2.3 COMMERCIAL SITE DEVELOPMENT

Applications for commercial permits require that **engineering plans** be submitted as part of the initial permit application. Most commercial projects will go through Full Drainage Review and require complete engineering plans. Projects that qualify for limited scope engineering design should request Targeted Drainage Review during the preapplication meeting with DDES.

2.2.4 SINGLE FAMILY RESIDENTIAL

Applications for single family residential permits[1] require a non-engineered **site plan** to be submitted. The specifications for site plans are outlined in DDES customer information bulletins.

2.2.5 OTHER PERMITS

Other permit applications[1] will require project-specific information. Initial submittal requirements can be obtained by contacting DDES or consulting the DDES customer information bulletins.

[1] The specific level of required drainage analysis and design is usually determined during the preliminary drainage review of the plans submitted with the application. The overall plan review process may be expedited if the project is submitted with the appropriate level of detail.

2.3 DRAINAGE REVIEW PLAN SPECIFICATIONS

This section presents the specifications and contents required of plans to facilitate drainage review. Most projects subject to **Full Drainage Review** will require engineering plans that include a "technical information report (TIR)," "site improvement plans," and a "construction stormwater pollution prevention plan (CSWPPP)," which includes an "erosion and sediment control (ESC) plan" and a "stormwater pollution prevention and spill (SWPPS) plan." In addition, a "landscape management plan" may also be required to comply with Core Requirement #8 (see Section 1.2.8). For more information on the types of projects subject to Full Drainage Review, see Section 1.1.2.3.

Small projects with specific drainage concerns that are subject to **Targeted Drainage Review** also require engineering plans that include the same elements, except that the TIR may be of limited scope. The site improvement plans, ESC and CSWPP plans may also be of limited scope, but must meet all applicable specifications. For more information on the types of projects subject to Targeted Drainage Review, see Section 1.1.2.2.

Projects subject to **Small Project Drainage Review** may be required to submit "small project drainage plans." These are simplified drainage and erosion control plans that may be prepared by a non-engineer from a set of pre-engineered design details, and which do not require a TIR or a SWPPS plan. The *Small Project Drainage Requirements* booklet available at DDES and appended to this manual (detached Appendix C) contains the specifications for small project drainage plans and details on the Small Project Drainage Review process.

Note: Projects in Small Project Drainage Review may be required to submit engineering plans if they are also subject to Targeted Drainage Review as determined in Section 1.1.2.2 and Appendix C. Also, short plats in Small Project Drainage Review will be required to submit engineering plans if roadway construction is a condition of preliminary approval.

Design Plan Certification

All preliminary plans and engineering plans must be stamped by a ***civil engineer***.

All land boundary surveys, and legal descriptions used for preliminary and engineering plans must be stamped by a **land surveyor** licensed in the State of Washington. Topographic survey data and mapping prepared specifically for a proposed project may be performed by the ***civil engineer*** stamping the engineering plans as allowed by the Washington State Board of Registration for Professional Engineers and Land Surveyors.

2.3.1 ENGINEERING PLAN SPECIFICATIONS

For drainage review purposes, **engineering plans** must consist of the following:

1. A **TIR** as detailed in Section 2.3.1.1 (p. 2-8), AND
2. **Site improvement plans** as detailed in Section 2.3.1.2 (p. 2-19), AND
3. A **CSWPPP**, which includes an ESC plan as detailed in Section 2.3.1.3 (p. 2-26) and a SWPPS plan as detailed in Section 2.3.1.4 (p. 2-29).

Also, if applicable per Section 1.2.8, a **landscape management plan,** as detailed in Section 2.1.1.1 (p. 2-32), must be included.

Projects in Targeted Drainage Review require a limited scope TIR with site improvement plans and an ESC plan, as detailed in Section 2.3.2 (p. 2-33). DDES may allow a modified site improvement plan for some projects in Targeted Drainage Review (see Section 2.3.2, p. 2-33) or where major improvements (e.g., detention facilities, conveyance systems, bridges, road right-of-way improvements, etc.) are not proposed.

2.3.1.1 TECHNICAL INFORMATION REPORT (TIR)

The full TIR should be a comprehensive supplemental report containing all technical information and analysis necessary to develop the site improvement plan. This report should contain all calculations, conceptual design analysis, reports, and studies required and used to construct a complete site improvement plan based on sound engineering practices and careful geotechnical and hydrological design. The TIR must be stamped and dated by a ***civil engineer***.

The TIR shall contain the following **ten sections**, preceded by a table of contents:

1. Project Overview
2. Conditions and Requirements Summary
3. Offsite Analysis
4. Flow Control and Water Quality Facility Analysis and Design
5. Conveyance System Analysis and Design
6. Special Reports and Studies
7. Other Permits
8. CSWPPP Analysis and Design
9. Bond Quantities, Facility Summaries, and Declaration of Covenant
10. Operations and Maintenance Manual.

Every TIR must contain each of these sections; however, if a section does not apply, the applicant may simply mark "N/A" with a brief explanation. This standardized format allows a quicker, more efficient review of information required to supplement the site improvement plan.

The **table of contents** should include a list of the ten section headings and their respective page numbers, a list of tables with page numbers, and a list of numbered references, attachments, and appendices.

When the TIR package requires **revisions**, the revisions must be submitted in a complete TIR package.

❑ TIR SECTION 1 PROJECT OVERVIEW

The project overview must provide a general description of the proposal, predeveloped and developed ***site*** conditions, ***site*** and ***project site*** area, size of the improvements, and the disposition of stormwater runoff before and after development. The overview shall identify and discuss difficult ***site*** parameters, the natural drainage system, and drainage to and from adjacent property, including bypass flows.

The following figures are required:

Figure 1. TIR Worksheet

Include a copy of the TIR Worksheet (see Reference Section 8-A).

Figure 2. Site Location

Provide a map that shows the general location of the ***site***. Identify all roads that border the ***site*** and all significant geographic features and critical areas (lakes, streams, steep slopes, etc.).

Figure 3. Drainage Basins, Subbasins, and Site Characteristics

This figure shall display the following:

1. Show acreage of subbasins.
2. Identify all ***site*** characteristics.
3. Show existing discharge points to and from the ***site***.

4. Show routes of existing, construction, and future flows at all discharge points and downstream hydraulic structures.
5. Use a minimum USGS 1:2400 topographic map as a base for the figure.
6. Show (and cite) the length of travel from the farthest upstream end of a proposed storm system in the development to any proposed flow control facility.

Figure 4. Soils

Show the soils within the following areas:

1. The ***project site***
2. The area draining to the ***site***
3. The drainage system downstream of the ***site*** for the distance of the downstream analysis (see Section 1.2.2).

Copies of King County Soil Survey **maps** may be used; however, if the maps do not accurately represent the soils for a proposed project (including offsite areas of concern), it is the design engineer's responsibility to ensure that the actual soil types are properly mapped. Soil classification symbols that conform to the *SCS Soil Survey for King County* shall be used; and the equivalent KCRTS soil type (till, outwash, or wetlands) shall be indicated (see Table 3.2.2.B).

Subdivision projects may need to evaluate the soils on each lot for applicability of the full infiltration flow control BMP as specified in Section 5.2. This soils report, as well as geotechnical investigations necessary for proposed infiltration facilities, should be referenced in the TIR Overview and submitted under Special Reports and Studies, TIR Section VI. A figure in the required geotechnical report that meets the above requirements may be referenced to satisfy 1, 2, and 3 above.

❑ TIR SECTION 2
CONDITIONS AND REQUIREMENTS SUMMARY

The intent of this section is to ensure all preliminary approval conditions and applicable requirements pertaining to ***site*** engineering issues have been addressed in the site improvement plan. All conditions and requirements for the proposed project should be included.

In addition to the core requirements of this manual, adopted basin plans and other plans as listed in Special Requirement #1 should be reviewed and applicable requirements noted. Critical area requirements, conditions of plat approval, and conditions associated with development requirements (e.g., conditional use permits, rezones, variances and adjustments, SEPA mitigations, etc.) should also be included.

❑ TIR SECTION 3
OFFSITE ANALYSIS

All projects in engineering review shall complete, at a minimum, an Offsite Analysis, except for projects meeting the exemptions outlined in Section 1.2.2. The Offsite Analysis is usually completed as part of the initial permit application and review process, and is to be included in the TIR. *Note: If offsite conditions have been altered since the initial submittal, a new offsite analysis may be required.*

The primary component of the offsite analysis is the **downstream analysis** described in detail below. Upstream areas are included in this component to the extent they are expected to be affected by backwater effects from the proposed project. Other components of the offsite analysis could include, but are not limited to, evaluation of impacts to fish habitat, groundwater levels, groundwater quality, or other environmental features expected to be significantly impacted by the proposed project due to its size or proximity to such features.

Levels of Analysis

The offsite analysis report requirements vary depending on the specific ***site*** and downstream conditions. Each project submittal shall include at least a Level 1 downstream analysis. Upon review of the Level 1 analysis, DDES may require a Level 2 or Level 3 analysis. If conditions warrant, additional, more detailed analysis may be required. *Note: Potential impacts upstream of the proposal shall also be evaluated*.

Level 1 Analysis

The Level 1 analysis is a qualitative survey of each downstream system leaving a ***site***. This analysis is required for all proposed projects and shall be submitted with the initial permit application. Depending on the findings of the Level 1 analysis, a Level 2 or 3 analysis may need to be completed or additional information may be required. If further analysis is required, the applicant may schedule a meeting with DDES staff.

Level 2 or 3 Analysis

If drainage problems are identified in the Level 1 analysis, a Level 2 (rough quantitative) analysis or a Level 3 (more precise quantitative) analysis may be required to further evaluate proposed mitigation for the problem. DDES staff will determine whether a Level 2 or 3 analysis is required based on the evidence of existing or potential drainage problems identified in the Level 1 analysis and on the proposed design of onsite drainage facilities. The Level 3 analysis is required when results need to be as accurate as possible: for example, if the ***site*** is flat; if the system is affected by downstream controls; if minor changes in the drainage system could flood roads or buildings; or if the proposed project will contribute more than 15 percent of the total peak flow to the drainage problem location. The Level 2 or 3 analysis may not be required if DDES determines from the Level 1 analysis that adequate mitigation will be provided.

Additional Analysis

Additional, more detailed hydrologic analysis may be required if DDES determines that the downstream analysis has not been sufficient to accurately determine the impacts of a proposed project on an existing or potential drainage problem. This more detailed analysis may include a **point of compliance analysis** as detailed in Section 3.3.6.

Scope of Analysis

Regardless of the level of downstream analysis required, the applicant shall define and map the study area (Task 1), review resources (Task 2), inspect the study area (Task 3), describe the drainage system and problems (Task 4), and propose mitigation measures (Task 5) as described below.

Task 1. Study Area Definition and Maps

For the purposes of Task 2 below, the study area shall extend downstream one mile (minimum flowpath distance) from the proposed project discharge location and shall extend upstream as necessary to encompass the offsite drainage area tributary to the proposed ***project site***. **For the purposes of Tasks 3, 4, and 5,** the study area shall extend downstream to a point on the drainage system where the proposed ***project site*** constitutes less than 15 percent of the total tributary drainage area, but not less than one-quarter mile (minimum flowpath distance). The study area shall also extend upstream of the ***project site*** a distance sufficient to preclude any backwater effects from the proposed project.

The offsite analysis shall include a **site map** showing property lines, and the **best available topographical map** (e.g., from DDES, Department of Transportation map Counter, Sewer District, or at a minimum a USGS 1:24000 Quadrangle Topographic map) with the study area boundaries, ***site*** boundaries, downstream flowpath for a distance of one mile, and potential/existing problems (Task 4) shown. Other maps, diagrams, photographs and aerial photos may be helpful in describing the study area.

Task 2. Resource Review

To assist the design engineer in preparing an offsite analysis, King County has gathered information regarding existing and potential flooding, erosion, and water quality problems. For all levels of analysis, all of the resources described below shall be reviewed for existing/potential problems in the study area (*upstream and one mile downstream of the **project site***):

- Adopted **basin plans** available at DDES, DNRP, and the library. For areas where there is no adopted **basin plan**, **Basin Reconnaissance Summary Reports** may be useful.
- Floodplain/floodway (**FEMA**) **maps** available at DDES and the library.
- Other **offsite analysis reports** in the same subbasin, if available (check with DDES records staff).
- **Sensitive Areas Folio** available at DDES, DNRP, and the library (see also "Sensitive Areas" on the iMap website: http://www.kingcounty.gov/operations/gis/Maps/iMAP.aspx or its successor for critical areas) must be used to document the distance downstream from the proposed project to the nearest critical areas.
- DNRP **drainage complaints[2] and studies** available at DNRP Water and Land Resources Division. Call 206-296-1900 for information or to schedule an appointment. See also "Stormwater" on the iMap website: http://www.kingcounty.gov/operations/gis/Maps/iMAP.aspx.
- **Road drainage problems** (check with the KCDOT Roads Maintenance and Operations Division 206-296-8143).
- U.S. Department of Agriculture, ***King County Soils Survey*** available at DDES and the library.
- **Wetlands Inventory** maps available at DDES and DNRP.
- **Migrating river studies** available at DDES and the DNRP Water and Land Resources Division.
- Washington State Department of Ecology's latest published Clean Water Act **Section 303d list of polluted waters** posted at the following website: http://apps.ecy.wa.gov/wqawa/viewer.htm.
- **King County designated water quality problems** listed and documented in the latest version of Reference Section 10 posted on King County's *Surface Water Design Manual* website. See also "Stormwater" on the iMap website: http://www.kingcounty.gov/operations/gis/Maps/iMAP.aspx.
- Adopted **stormwater compliance plans** available at DNRP Water and Land Resources Division.

Potential/existing problems identified in the above documents shall be documented in the **Drainage System Table** (see Reference Section 8-B) as well as described in the text of the **Level 1 Downstream Analysis Report**. If a document is not available for the ***site***, note in the report that the information was not available as of a particular date. If necessary, additional resources are available from King County, the Washington State Department of Fisheries and Wildlife (WDFW), the State Department of Ecology (DOE), the United States Army Corps of Engineers (Corps), and the public works departments of other municipalities in the vicinity of the proposed ***project site***.

Task 3. Field Inspection

The design engineer shall physically inspect the existing on- and offsite drainage systems of the study area for each discharge location. Specifically, he/she shall investigate any evidence of the following existing or potential problems and drainage features:

Level 1 Inspection:

1. Investigate any problems reported or observed during the resource review.
2. Locate all existing/potential constrictions or lack of capacity in the existing drainage system.
3. Identify all existing/potential downstream drainage problems as defined in Section 1.2.2.1.

[2] *Note: drainage complaints that are more than 10 years old are not required for Level 1 downstream analysis.*

4. Identify existing/potential overtopping, scouring, bank sloughing, or sedimentation.
5. Identify significant destruction of aquatic habitat or organisms (e.g., severe siltation, bank erosion, or incision in a stream).
6. Collect qualitative data on features such as land use, impervious surfaces, topography, and soil types.
7. Collect information on pipe sizes, channel characteristics, drainage structures, and relevant critical areas (e.g., wetlands, streams, steep slopes).
8. Verify tributary basins delineated in Task 1.
9. Contact neighboring property owners or residents in the area about past or existing drainage problems, and describe these in the report (optional).
10. Note the date and weather conditions at the time of the inspection.

Level 2 or 3 Inspection:

1. Perform a Level 1 Inspection.
2. Document ***existing site conditions*** (approved drainage systems or pre-1979 aerial photographs) as defined in Core Requirement #3.
3. Collect quantitative field data. For Level 2, conduct rough field survey using hand tape, hand level, and rod; for Level 3, collect field survey profile and cross-section topographic data prepared by an experienced surveyor.

Task 4. Drainage System Description and Problem Descriptions

Each drainage system component and problem shall be addressed in the offsite analysis report in three places: on a map (Task 1), in the narrative (Task 4), and in the *Offsite Analysis Drainage System Table* (see Reference Section 8-B).

Drainage System Descriptions: The following information about drainage system components such as pipes, culverts, bridges, outfalls, ponds, tanks, and vaults shall be included in the report:

1. Location (corresponding map label and distance downstream/upstream from ***site*** discharge)
2. Physical description (type, size, length, slope, vegetation, and land cover)
3. Problems including copies of any relevant drainage complaints
4. Field observations.

Problem Descriptions: All existing or potential drainage and water quality problems (e.g., ponding water, high/low flows, siltation, erosion, listed water bodies, etc.) identified in the resource review or field inspection shall be described in the offsite analysis. These descriptions will help in determining if such problems require special attention per Core Requirement #2 (see Section 1.2.2.1) because they are one of three defined drainage problem types or one of seven defined water quality problem types. Special attention may include more analysis, additional flow control, or other onsite or offsite mitigation measures as specified by the problem-specific mitigation requirements set forth in Sections 1.2.2.2 and 1.2.2.3.

The following information shall be provided for each existing or potential **drainage problem**:

1. Description of the problem (ponding water, high or low flows, siltation, erosion, slides, etc.).
2. Magnitude of or damage caused by the drainage problem (siltation of ponds, dried-up ornamental ponds, road inundation, flooded property, flooded building, flooded septic system, significant destruction of aquatic habitat or organisms).
3. General frequency and duration of drainage problem (dates and times the problem occurred, if available).

4. Return frequency of storm or flow (cfs) of the water when the problem occurs (optional for Level 1 and required for Levels 2 and 3). *Note: A Level 2 or 3 analysis may be required to accurately identify the return frequency of a particular downstream problem; see Section 3.3.3.*
5. Water surface elevation when the problem occurs (e.g., elevation of building foundation, crest of roadway, elevation of septic drainfields, or wetland/stream high water mark).
6. Names and concerns of involved parties (optional for all levels of analysis).
7. Current mitigation of the drainage problem.
8. Possible cause of the drainage problem.
9. Whether the proposed project is likely to aggravate (increase the frequency or severity of) the existing drainage problem or create a new one based on the above information. For example, an existing erosion problem should **not** be aggravated if Level 2 flow control is already required in the region for the design of onsite flow control facilities. Conversely, a downstream flooding problem inundating a home every 2 to 5 years will likely be aggravated if only Level 1 flow control is being applied in the region. See Section 1.2.3.1 for more details on the effectiveness of flow control standards in addressing downstream problems.

The following information shall be provided for each existing or potential **water quality problem**:

1. Description of the problem as documented by the State or County in the problem's listing. This should include the pollutant or pollutants of concern, the nature or category of the listing, and any other background information provided in the listing.
2. Flow path distance downstream of the ***project site*** and percentage of area draining to the problem that the ***project site*** occupies.
3. Possible or probable cause of the water quality problem.
4. Any current mitigation of the water quality problem.

Task 5. Mitigation of Existing or Potential Problems

For any existing or potential offsite **drainage problem** determined to be one of the three defined problem types in Section 1.2.2.1, the design engineer must demonstrate that the proposed project neither aggravates (if existing) nor creates the problem as specified in the drainage problem-specific mitigation requirements set forth in Section 1.2.2.2. The engineer must review each relevant drainage complaint found and include a narrative explaining how each complaint problems is addressed or mitigated. Actual copies of the relevant complaints must be included in the Analysis. To meet these requirements, the proposed project may need to provide additional onsite flow control as specified in Table 1.2.3.A (see also Section 3.3.5), or other onsite or offsite mitigation measures as described in Section 3.3.5.

For any existing or potential **water quality problem** determined to be one of the seven defined water quality problem types in Section 1.2.2.1, the design engineer must document how the applicable water quality problem-specific mitigation requirement in Section 1.2.2.3 will be met.

❑ TIR SECTION 4
FLOW CONTROL AND WATER QUALITY FACILITY ANALYSIS AND DESIGN

Existing Site Hydrology (Part A)

This section of the TIR should include a discussion of assumptions and ***site*** parameters used in analyzing the existing ***site*** hydrology.

The acreage, soil types, and land covers used to determine existing flow characteristics, along with basin maps, graphics, and exhibits for each subbasin affected by the development, should be included.

The following information must be provided on a topographical map:

1. Delineation and acreage of areas contributing runoff to the ***site***
2. Flow control facility location
3. Outfall
4. Overflow route.

The scale of the map and the contour intervals must be sufficient to determine the basin and subbasin boundaries accurately. The direction of flow, the acreage of areas contributing drainage, and the limits of development should all be indicated on the map.

Each subbasin contained within or flowing through the ***site*** should be individually labeled and KCRTS parameters referenced to that subbasin.

All natural streams and drainage features, including wetlands and depressions, must be shown. Rivers, closed depressions, streams, lakes, and wetlands must have the 100-year floodplain (and floodway where applicable) delineated as required in Special Requirement #2 (see Section 1.3.2) and by the critical areas requirements in KCC 21A.24.

Developed Site Hydrology (Part B)

This section should provide narrative, mathematical, and graphical presentations of parameters selected and values used for the developed ***site*** conditions, including acreage, soil types and land covers, roadway layouts, and all constructed drainage facilities and any required flow control BMPs.

Developed subbasin areas and flows should be clearly depicted on a map and cross-referenced to computer printouts or calculation sheets. Relevant portions of the calculations should be highlighted and tabulated in a listing of all developed subbasin flows.

All maps, exhibits, graphics, and references used to determine developed ***site*** hydrology must be included, maintaining the same subbasin labeling as used for the existing ***site*** hydrology whenever possible. If the boundaries of the subbasin have been modified under the developed condition, the labeling should be modified accordingly (e.g., Subbasin "Am" is a modified version of existing Subbasin "A").

Performance Standards (Part C)

The design engineer shall include brief discussions of the following:

- The applicable **area-specific flow control facility standard** determined from the Flow Control Applications Map per Section 1.2.3.1, any modifications to the standard to address onsite or offsite drainage conditions, and applicable **flow control BMP requirements** determined from Sections 1.2.3.3 and 5.2;
- The applicable **conveyance system capacity standards** per Section 1.2.4; and
- The applicable **area-specific water quality treatment menu** determined from the Water Quality Applications Map per Section 1.2.8.1, and any applicable special requirements for **source control** or **oil control** determined from Sections 1.3.4 and 1.3.5.

Flow Control System (Part D)

This section requires an **illustrative sketch** of the flow control facility (or facilities), required flow control BMPs, and appurtenances. The facility sketch (or sketches) must show basic measurements necessary to calculate the storage volumes available from zero to the maximum head, all orifice/restrictor sizes and head relationships, control structure/restrictor orientation to the facility, and facility orientation on the ***site***. The flow control BMP sketch (or sketches) must show basic measurements and dimensions, orientation on the ***site***, flowpath lengths, etc.

The applicant should include all **supporting documentation** such as computer printouts, calculations, equations, references, storage/volume tables, graphs, and any other aides necessary to clearly show results and methodology used to determine the storage facility volumes. KCRTS facility documentation files, "Compare Flow Durations" files, peaks files, return frequency or duration curves, etc., should be included to verify the facility meets the performance standards indicated in Part C. The volumetric safety factor

used in the design should be clearly identified, as well as the reasoning used by the design engineer in selecting the safety factor for this project. If **flow control BMP credits** are used as allowed in Section 5.2.2, documentation must be provided, explaining how the credits will be used and how the criteria for use of credits will be met. If the flow control system is an infiltration facility, the soils data, groundwater mounding analysis, or other calculations used to determine the **design infiltration rate** shall be provided.

Water Quality System (Part E)

This section provides an **illustrative sketch** of the proposed water quality facility (or facilities), source controls, oil controls, and appurtenances. This sketch (or sketches) of the facility, source controls, and oil controls must show basic measurements and dimensions, orientation on the ***site***, location of inflow, bypass, and discharge systems, etc.

The applicant should include all **supporting documentation** such as computer printouts, calculations, equations, references, and graphs necessary to show the facility was designed and sized in accordance with the specifications and requirements in Chapter 6. If the **water quality credit option** is used as allowed in Section 6.1.2, documentation must be provided, identifying the actions that will be taken to acquire the requisite credits.

❑ TIR SECTION 5
CONVEYANCE SYSTEM ANALYSIS AND DESIGN

This section should present a detailed analysis of any existing conveyance systems, and the analysis and design of the proposed stormwater collection and conveyance system for the development. This section would also include any analysis required for the design of bridges to convey flows and pass sediments and debris per Section 4.4.3. Analysis information should be presented in a clear, concise manner that can be easily followed, checked, and verified. All pipes, culverts, catch basins, channels, swales, and other stormwater conveyance appurtenances must be clearly labeled and correspond directly to the engineering plans.

The **minimum information** included shall be pipe flow tables, flow profile computation tables, nomographs, charts, graphs, detail drawings, and other tabular or graphic aides used to design and confirm performance of the conveyance system.

Verification of capacity and performance must be provided for each element of the conveyance system. The analysis must show design velocities and flows for all drainage facilities within the development, as well as those offsite that are affected by the development. If the final design results are on a computer printout, a separate summary tabulation of conveyance system performance should also be provided.

❑ TIR SECTION 6
SPECIAL REPORTS AND STUDIES

Some ***site*** characteristics, such as steep slopes or wetlands, pose unique road and drainage design problems that are particularly sensitive to stormwater runoff. As a result, King County may require the preparation of special reports and studies that further address the ***site*** characteristics, the potential for impacts associated with the development, and the measures that would be implemented to mitigate impacts. Special reports shall be prepared by people with expertise in the particular area of analysis. **Topics of special reports** may include any of the following:

- Floodplain delineation in accordance with Section 1.3.2
- Flood protection facility conformance in accordance with Section 1.3.3
- Critical areas analysis and delineation
- Geotechnical/soils
- Groundwater
- Slope protection/stability
- Erosion and deposition

- Geology
- Hydrology
- Fluvial geomorphology
- Anadromous fisheries impacts
- Water quality
- Structural design
- Structural fill.

❑ TIR SECTION 7 OTHER PERMITS

Construction of road and drainage facilities may require additional permits from other agencies for some projects. These additional permits may contain more restrictive drainage plan requirements. This section of the TIR should provide the titles of any other permits, the agencies requiring the other permits, and the permit requirements that affect the drainage plan. Examples of other permits are listed in Section 1.1.3. If a UIC well registration is required, a copy must be provided.

❑ TIR SECTION 8 CSWPPP ANALYSIS AND DESIGN

This section of the TIR should include the analysis and design information used to prepare the required **construction stormwater pollution prevention plan**. This information should be presented in two parts associated with the CSWPPP's two component plans, the erosion sediment control (ESC) plan (Part A) and the stormwater pollution prevention and spill (SWPPS) plan (Part B). See Sections 2.3.1.3 and 2.3.1.4 for plan specifications and contents. This CSWPPP is intended to be equivalent to and may be more stringent than that required for the NPDES Stormwater Construction Permit issued by State DOE.

ESC Plan Analysis and Design (Part A)

This section must include all hydrologic and hydraulic information used to analyze and design the erosion and sediment control measures, including final ***site*** stabilization measures. The TIR shall explain how proposed ESC measures comply with the *Erosion and Sediment Control Standards* (detached Appendix D) and show compliance with the implementation requirements of Core Requirement #5, Section 1.2.5.

Part A must include the following:

1. Provide sufficient information to **justify** the overall ESC plan and the choice of individual ESC measures. At a minimum, there shall be a discussion of each of the measures specified in Section 1.2.5 and their applicability to the proposed project.
2. Include all **hydrologic and hydraulic information** used to analyze and size the ESC facilities shown in the engineering plans. Describe the methodology, and attach any graphics or sketches used to size the facilities.
3. Identify areas with a particularly **high susceptibility to erosion** because of slopes or soils. Discuss any special measures taken to protect these areas as well as any special measures proposed to protect water resources on or near the ***site***.
4. Identify any ESC recommendations in any of the **special reports** prepared for the project. If these recommendations are not included in the ESC plan, provide justification.
5. If proposing **exceptions or modifications** to the standards detailed in the *Erosion and Sediment Control Standards* (detached Appendix D), clearly present the rationale. If proposing techniques or products different from those detailed in the *ESC Standards*, provide supporting documentation so the County can determine if the proposed alternatives provide similar protection.

SWPPS Plan Design (Part B)

The **stormwater pollution prevention and spill plan** must identify all activities that could contribute pollutants to surface and storm water during construction. This section of the TIR must provide sufficient information to justify the selection of specific stormwater pollution prevention BMPs proposed to be applied to the pollution-generating activities that will occur with construction of the proposed project. BMPs applicable to such activities are found in the *King County Stormwater Pollution Prevention Manual* adopted pursuant to KCC 9.12.

At a minimum, there shall be a discussion of each anticipated pollution-generating activity and the pollution prevention BMPs selected to address it. If there are any **calculations** required for the selected BMP, include those in the discussion. If an **alternative BMP** or major modification to one of the County's standard BMPs will be used, a written request must be submitted for review and approval, detailing how the alternative will work. An "Alternative BMP Request Form" is available in the *Stormwater Pollution Prevention Manual*.

Updates or revisions to the SWPPS plan may be requested by King County at any time during project construction if the County determines that pollutants generated on the construction site have the potential to contaminate surface, storm, or ground water.

The SWPPS plan shall also **discuss the receiving waters**, especially if the receiving water body is listed on the **303d list**. Information must be provided that shows the plan meets **TMDL requirements**. Discuss the 303(d) listed pollutant generated or used onsite and any special handling requirements or BMPs.

❑ TIR SECTION 9
BOND QUANTITIES, FACILITY SUMMARIES, AND DECLARATION OF COVENANT

Bond Quantities Worksheet

Each plan submittal requires a construction quantity summary to establish appropriate bond amounts. Using the *Bond Quantities Worksheet* furnished by DDES (see Reference 8-H), the design engineer shall separate existing right-of-way and erosion control quantities from other onsite improvements. In addition, the design engineer shall total the amounts based on the unit prices listed on the form.

Drainage facilities for single family residential building permits, which are normally not bonded, shall be constructed and approved prior to granting the certificate of occupancy.

Flow Control and Water Quality Facility Summary Sheet and Sketch

Following approval of the plans, a *Flow Control and Water Quality Facility Summary Sheet and Sketch* (see Reference 8-D) shall be submitted along with an $8^1/_2$" x 11" plan sketch for each facility proposed for construction. The plan shall show a north arrow, the tract, the facility access road, the extent of the facility, and the control structure location. The approximate street address shall be noted.

Declaration of Covenant for Privately Maintained Flow Control and WQ Facilities

Any declaration of covenant and grant of easement required for proposed flow control and water quality facilities per Section 1.2.6 must be included here for review and approval before recording. After approval by DDES, the declaration of covenant and grant of easement must be signed and recorded at the office of King County Records and Elections before any permit is approved.

Declaration of Covenant for Privately Maintained Flow Control BMPs

Any declarations of covenant and grant of easement required for proposed flow control BMPs per Section 5.2 must be included here for review and approval before recording. After approval by DDES, all such documents must be signed and recorded at the office of King County Records and Elections before any permit is approved.

❑ TIR SECTION 10
OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL

For each flow control and water quality facility that is to be privately maintained, and for those that have special non-standard features, the design engineer shall prepare an operations and maintenance manual. The manual should be simply written and should contain a brief description of the facility, what it does, and how it works. In addition, the manual shall include a copy of the *Maintenance Requirements for Flow Control, Conveyance, and WQ Facilities* (see Appendix A) and provide an outline of maintenance tasks and the recommended frequency each task should be performed. This is especially important for water quality facilities where proper maintenance is critical to facility performance. For this reason, most of the water facility designs in Chapter 6 include "maintenance considerations" important to the performance of each facility.

2.3.1.2 SITE IMPROVEMENT PLAN

Site improvement plans shall portray design concepts in a clear and concise manner. The plans must present all the information necessary for persons trained in engineering to review the plans, as well as those persons skilled in construction work to build the project according to the design engineer's intent. Supporting documentation for the site improvement plans must also be presented in an orderly and concise format that can be systematically reviewed and understood by others.

The **vertical datum** on which all engineering plans, plats, binding site plans, and short plats are to be based must be the KCAS, and the datum must be tied to at least one King County Survey Control Network benchmark. The benchmark(s) shall be shown or referenced on the plans. If a King County Control Network benchmark does not exist within $^1/_2$ mile of the subject property, or if 250 feet or greater of total vertical difference exists between the starting benchmark and the project, an assumed or alternate vertical datum may be used. Datum correlations can be found in Table 4.4.2.B.

Horizontal control for all plats, binding site plans, and short plats shall reference the North American Datum of 1983/91 as the coordinate base and basis of bearings. All horizontal control for these projects must be referenced to a minimum of two King County Survey Horizontal Control monuments. If two horizontal control monuments do not exist within one mile of the project, an assumed or alternate coordinate base and basis of bearings may be used. Horizontal control monument and benchmark information is available from the King County Survey Department.

The site improvement plans consist of all the plans, profiles, details, notes, and specifications necessary to construct road, drainage structure, and off-street parking improvements. Site improvement plans include the following:

- A **base map** (described on page 2-22), and
- ***Site* plan and profiles** (beginning on page 2-23).

Note: Site improvement plans must also include grading plans if onsite grading extends beyond the roadway.

Modified Site Improvement Plan

DDES may allow a modified site improvement plan for some projects in Targeted Drainage Review (see Section 2.3.2, p. 2-33) or where major improvements (e.g., detention facilities, conveyance systems, bridges, road right-of-way improvements, etc.) are not proposed. The modified site improvement plan must:

1. Be drawn on a 11" x 17" or larger sheet,
2. Accurately locate structure(s) and access, showing observance of the setback requirements given in this manual, the critical areas code (KCC 21A.24), or other applicable documents,
3. Provide enough information (datum, topography, details, notes, etc.) to address issues as determined by DDES.

❑ GENERAL PLAN FORMAT

Site improvement plans should use *King County Roads Standard Map Symbols* as appropriate, and must include *Standard Plan Notes* (see Reference Section 7). Each plan must follow the general format detailed below:

1. Plan sheets and profile sheets, or combined **plan and profile sheets**, specifications, and detail sheets as required shall be on "D-size" sheets (24" x 36"). "E-size" sheets (36" x 42") are also acceptable for commercial proposals, except that associated right-of-way improvements must be on "D-size" sheets (24" x 36"). Original sheets shall be archive quality reproducibles, Mylar, or equal.
2. **Drafting details** shall generally conform to *King County Standard Map Symbols* (see Reference Section 7-A) with lettering size (before reduction) no smaller than Leroy 80 (Leroy 100 is preferred). Existing features shall be shown with dashed lines or as half-toned (screened) in order to clearly distinguish existing features from proposed improvements.

3. Each submittal shall contain a **project information/cover sheet** with the following:
   a) Title: Project name and DDES file number
   b) Table of contents (if more than three pages)
   c) Vicinity map
   d) Name and phone number of utility field contacts (e.g., water, sanitary sewer, gas, power, telephone, and TV) and the One-Call number (1-800-424-5555)
   e) King County's preconstruction/inspection notification requirements
   f) Name and phone number of the erosion control supervisor
   g) Name and phone number of the surveyor
   h) Name and phone number of the owner/agent
   i) Name and phone number of the applicant
   j) Legal description
   k) Plan approval signature block for DDES
   l) Name and phone number of the engineering firm preparing the plans (company logos acceptable)
   m) Fire Marshal's approval stamp (if required)
   n) Statement that mailbox locations have been designated or approved by the U.S. Postal Service (where required)
   o) List of conditions of preliminary approval on all ***site*** improvements.
4. An **overall site plan** shall be included if more than three plan sheets are used. The overall plan shall be indexed to the detail plan sheets and include the following:
   a) The complete property area development
   b) Right-of-way information
   c) Street names and road classification
   d) All project phasing and proposed division boundaries
   e) All natural and proposed drainage collection and conveyance systems with catch basin numbers shown.
5. Each sheet of the plan set shall be stamped, signed, and dated by a ***civil engineer***. At least one sheet showing all boundary survey information must be provided and stamped by a **land surveyor** licensed in the State of Washington.
6. **Detail sheets** shall provide sufficient information to construct complex elements of the plan. Details may be provided on plan and profile sheets if space allows.
7. A **title block** shall be provided on each plan sheet. At a minimum, the title block shall list the following:
   a) Development title
   b) Name, address, and phone number of the firm or individual preparing the plan
   c) A revision block
   d) Page (of pages) numbering
   e) Sheet title (e.g., road and drainage, grading, erosion and sediment control).
8. A blank **approval block** (4" high x 6" wide) shall be provided on each plan sheet. Two such blocks shall be provided on the first sheet of a plan set.

9. The **location and label** for each section or other detail shall be provided.
10. **Critical areas**, critical area buffers, and critical area building setbacks as required by KCC 21A.24 shall be delineated and labeled.
11. All **match lines** with matched sheet number shall be provided.
12. All division or phase lines and the **proposed limits of construction** under the permit application shall be indicated.
13. **Wetlands** shall be labeled with the number from the County's wetland inventory, or shall be labeled as "uninventoried" if not listed on the wetland inventory.
14. The **standard plan notes** that apply to the project shall be provided on the plans (see Reference Section 7-B).
15. Commercial building permit applications shall include the **designated zoning** for all properties adjacent to the development ***site***(s).

❑ BASE MAP

A site improvement plan **base map** provides a common base and reference in the development and design of any project. A base map helps ensure that the engineering plans, grading plans, and ESC plans are all developed from the same background information. This base map shall include the information listed in Table 2.3.1.A.

TABLE 2.3.1.A BASE MAP REQUIREMENTS

Feature	Requirements
Ground Surface Topography	Provide topography within the ***site*** and extending beyond the property lines. Contour lines must be shown as described in "Plan View: Site Plan and Roadway Elements" (p. 2-23).
Surface Water Discharge	Provide ground surface elevations for a reasonable "fan" around points of discharge extending at least 50 feet downstream of all point discharge outlets.
Hydrologic Features	Provide spot elevations in addition to contour lines to aid in delineating the boundaries and depth of all existing floodplains, wetlands, channels, swales, streams, storm drainage systems, roads (low spots), bogs, depressions, springs, seeps, swales, ditches, pipes, groundwater, and seasonal standing water.
Other Natural Features	Show the location and relative sizes of other natural features such as rock outcroppings, existing vegetation, and trees 12 inches in diameter and greater that could be disturbed by the project improvements and construction activities (within tree canopy), noting species.
Flows	Provide arrows that indicate the direction of surface flow on all public and private property and for all existing conveyance systems.
Floodplains/ Floodways	Show the floodplain/floodways as required by the flood hazard portion of the critical areas code (KCC 21A.24) and Section 4.4.2.
General Background Information	Show the location and limits of all existing: • Property boundaries • Structures • Easements (including dimensions) • Total property (including dimensions) • Roads and right-of-way • Sanitary sewers and water utilities • Common open space • Public dedications • Other manmade features affecting existing topography/proposed improvements.
Development Limitations	Delineate limitations to the development that may occur as identified on the TIR worksheet, Part 11 (see Reference 8-A).

❑ SITE PLAN AND PROFILES

The design engineer shall provide plans and profiles for all construction, including but not limited to the following information:

Plan View: Site Plan and Roadway Elements

1. Provide **property lines**, **right-of-way lines**, and widths for proposed roads and intersecting roads. *Note: the condition of all public right-of-way and the right to use it as proposed must be verified.*
2. Provide all existing and proposed **roadway features**, such as centerlines, edges of pavement and shoulders, ditchlines, curbs, and sidewalks. In addition, show points of access to abutting properties and roadway continuations.
3. Show existing and proposed **topography contours** at 2-foot intervals (5-foot intervals for slopes greater than 15 percent, 10-foot intervals for slopes greater than 40 percent). Contours may be extrapolated from USGS mapping, aerial photos, or other topography map resources. However, contours shall be field verified for roadway and stream centerlines, steep slopes, floodplains, drainage tracts easements, and conveyance systems. Contours shall extend 50 feet beyond property lines to resolve questions of setback, cut and fill slopes, drainage swales, ditches, and access or drainage to adjacent property.
4. Show the location of all existing **utilities** and proposed utilities (except those designed by the utility and not currently available) to the extent that these will be affected by the proposed project. Clearly identify all existing **utility poles**.
5. Identify all roads and adjoining subdivisions.
6. Show **right-of-way** for all proposed roadways, using sufficient dimensioning to clearly show exact locations on all sections of existing and proposed dedicated public roadway.
7. Clearly differentiate areas of **existing pavement** and areas of **new pavement**. If the project is a ***redevelopment project***, delineate areas of ***replaced impervious surface***.
8. For subdivision projects, generally use **drawing scales** of 1"=50'; however, 1"=100' is optional for development of lots one acre or larger. For commercial, multi-family, or other projects, generally use scales of 1"=20'; however, 1"=10', 1" = 30', 1"=40' and 1"=50' are acceptable. Show details for clarification, including those for intersections and existing driveways, on a larger scale.

Plan View: Drainage Conveyance

1. Sequentially **number all catch basins and curb inlets** starting with the structure farthest downstream.
2. Represent **existing storm drainage facilities** in dashed lines and label with "Existing."
3. Clearly label existing storm drainage **facilities to be removed** with "Existing to be removed."
4. Show the length, diameter, and material for all **pipes**, **culverts**, and **stub-outs**. Include the slope if not provided on the profile view. Material may be noted in the plan notes.
5. Clearly label **catch basins** as to size and type (or indicate in the plan notes).
6. Clearly label **stub-out locations** for footing drains and other lot-specific connections to the storm drainage system. Locate all stub-outs to allow gravity flow from the lowest corner of the lot to the connecting catch basin.
7. Show **datum**, **benchmark locations**, and **elevations** on each plan sheet.
8. Clearly label all stub-out locations for any **future pipe connections**.
9. Clearly show on the plans all drainage **easements, tracts**, access easements, Native Growth Retention Areas, Critical Area Tracts, Critical Area Setback Areas, and building setback lines. Show dimensions, type of restriction, and use.
10. Using arrows, indicate the **drainage direction** of hydraulic conveyance systems.

Plan View: Other

1. Show the location, identification, and dimensions of all **buildings**, **property lines**, **streets**, **alleys**, and **easements**.
2. Show the locations of **structures on abutting properties** within 50 feet of the proposed ***project site***.
3. Show the location of all proposed **drainage facility fencing**, together with a typical section view of each fencing type.
4. Provide section details of all **retaining walls and rockeries**, including sections through critical portions of the rockeries or retaining walls.
5. Show all existing and proposed **buildings with projections and overhangs**.
6. Show the location of all **wells** on ***site*** and within 100 feet of the ***site***. Note wells to be abandoned.
7. Show the location and dimensions of proposed **flow control BMP** devices, features, pathways, limits, and set-asides.
8. Show the location and dimensions of structural **source control BMPs** required by the *King County Stormwater Pollution Prevention Manual*.

Profiles: Roadway and Drainage

1. Provide **existing centerline ground profile** at 50-foot stations and at significant ground breaks and topographic features, with average accuracy to within 0.1 feet on unpaved surface and 0.02 feet on paved surface.
2. For publicly maintained roadways, provide **final road and storm drain profile** with the same stationing as the horizontal plan, to show stationing of points of curve, tangent, and intersection of vertical curves, with elevation of 0.01 feet. Include tie-in with intersecting pipe runs.
3. On a grid of numbered lines, provide a continuous plot of **vertical positioning against horizontal**.
4. Show finished **road grade and vertical curve data** (road data measured at centerline or edge of pavement). Include stopping sight distance.
5. Show all **roadway drainage**, including drainage facilities that are within the right-of-way or easement.
6. On the profile, show slope, length, size, and type (in plan notes or on a detail sheet) for all **pipes and detention tanks** in public right-of-way.
7. Indicate the **inverts** of all pipes and culverts and the elevations of catch basin grates or lids. It is also desirable, but not required, to show invert elevations and grate elevations on plan sheets.
8. For pipes that are proposed to be within 2.0 feet of finished grade, indicate the **minimum cover dimensions**.
9. Indicate **roadway stationing** and offset for all catch basins.
10. Indicate **vertical and horizontal scale**.
11. Clearly label all profiles with respective street names and plan sheet reference numbers, and indicate all profile sheet reference numbers on plan sheets, if drawn on separate sheets.
12. Locate **match points with existing pavements**, and show elevations.
13. Show all **property boundaries**.
14. Label all **match line locations**.
15. Provide profiles for all **12-inch and larger pipes** and for **channels** (that are not roadside ditches).
16. Show the location of all existing and proposed (if available or critical for clearance) **gas**, **water**, and **sanitary sewer crossings**.
17. Show **energy dissipater locations**.

18. Identify **datum** used and all **benchmarks** (may be shown on plan view instead). Datum and benchmarks must refer to established control when available.
19. Use a **vertical scale** of 1"=5'. As an exception, vertical scale shall be 1"=10' if the optional 1"=100' horizontal scale is used on projects with lots one acre or larger. Clarifying details, including those for intersections and existing driveways, should use a larger scale.
20. **Split sheets**, with the profile aligned underneath the plan view, are preferred but not required.

❑ DETAILS

The design engineer shall provide details for all construction, including but not limited to the following.

Flow Control, Water Quality, and Infiltration Facility Details

1. Provide a scaled drawing of each detention pond or vault and water quality facility, including the tract boundaries.
2. Show predeveloped and finished grade **contours** at 2-foot intervals. Show and label **maximum design water elevation**.
3. Dimension all **berm widths**.
4. Show and label at least two **cross sections** through a pond or water quality facility. One cross section must include the restrictor.
5. Specify **soils and compaction requirements** for pond construction.
6. Show the location and detail of **emergency overflows**, **spillways**, and **bypasses**.
7. Specify **rock protection/energy dissipation** requirements and details.
8. Provide **inverts** of all pipes, grates, inlets, tanks, and vaults, and **spot elevations** of the pond bottom.
9. Show the location of **access roads** to control manholes and pond/forebay bottoms.
10. Provide plan and section views of all **energy dissipaters**, including **rock splash pads**. Specify the size of rock and thickness.
11. Show **bollard locations** on plans. Typically, bollards are located at the entrance to drainage facility access roads.
12. On the pond or water quality facility detail, show the size, type (or in plan notes), slope, and length of all **pipes**.
13. Show to scale the section and plan view of **restrictor and control structures**. The plan view must show the location and orientation of all inlet pipes, outlet pipes, and flow restrictors.
14. Draw details at one of the following **scales**: 1"=1', 1"=2', 1"=4', 1"=5', 1"=10', or 1"=20'.

Structural Plan Details

Any submittal that proposes a structure (e.g., bridge crossing, reinforced concrete footings, walls, or vaults) shall include plan sheets that include complete working drawings showing dimensions, steel placement, and specifications for construction. Structures may require a design prepared and **stamped by a professional structural engineer** licensed in the State of Washington, and an application for a separate commercial building permit.

2.3.1.3 EROSION AND SEDIMENT CONTROL (ESC) PLAN

This section details the specifications and contents for ESC plans. Note that an ESC plan includes the plan's drawings plus an ESC report, which provides all supporting information and any additional direction necessary for implementing ESC measures and meeting ESC implementation requirements. The ESC plan's drawings may be simplified by the use of the symbols and codes provided for each ESC measure in the *Erosion and Sediment Control Standards* (detached Appendix D). In general, the ESC plan's drawings shall be submitted as a separate plan sheet(s). However, there may be some relatively simple projects where providing separate grading and ESC plan drawings is unnecessary.

❑ GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS

The **site improvement plan** shall be used as the base of the ESC plan. Certain detailed information that is not relevant (e.g., pipe/catch basin size, stub-out locations, etc.) may be omitted to make the ESC plan easier to read. At a minimum, the ESC plan shall include all of the information required for the base map (see Table 2.3.1.A, p. 2-22), as well as existing and proposed roads, driveways, parking areas, buildings, drainage facilities, utility corridors not associated with roadways, *relevant critical areas*[3] and critical area buffers, and proposed final topography. A smaller scale may be used to provide better comprehension and understanding.

The ESC plan shall generally be designed for proposed topography, not existing topography, since rough grading is usually the first step in ***site*** disturbance. The ESC plan shall **address all phases of construction** (e.g., clearing, grading, installation of utilities, surfacing, and final stabilization). If construction is being phased, separate ESC plans may need to be prepared to address the specific needs for each phase of construction.

The ESC plan outlines the minimum requirements for anticipated ***site*** conditions. During construction, **ESC plans shall be revised as necessary** by the ESC supervisor or as directed by King County to address changing ***site*** conditions, unexpected storm events, or non-compliance with the ESC performance criteria in Core Requirement #5.

The **ESC plan** shall be consistent with the information provided in Section 8 of the TIR and **shall address the following:**

1. Identify areas with a high susceptibility to erosion.
2. Provide all details necessary to clearly illustrate the intent of the ESC design.
3. Include ESC measures for all on- and offsite utility construction included in the project.
4. Specify the construction sequence. The construction sequence shall be specifically written for the proposed project. An example construction sequence is provided in Appendix D.
5. Include ESC standard plan notes (see Reference Section 7-B).
6. Include an inspection and maintenance program for ESC measures, including designation of a certified ESC supervisor and identification of phone numbers for 24-hour contact.
7. Include the basis and calculations for selection and sizing of ESC measures.

❑ MEASURE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION

ESC plan drawings must include the following information specific to applicable ESC measures and implementation requirements. As noted above, this information may need to be updated or revised during the life of the project by the ESC supervisor or as directed by King County.

Clearing Limits

1. **Delineate** clearing limits.

[3] *Relevant critical areas*, for the purposes of drainage review, include aquatic areas, wetlands, ***flood hazard areas***, ***erosion hazard areas***, ***landslide hazard areas***, ***steep slope hazard areas***, and ***critical aquifer recharge areas***.

2. Provide **details** sufficient to install and maintain the clearing limits.

Cover Measures

1. Specify the type and location of **temporary cover measures** to be used onsite.
2. If **more than one type** of cover measure is to be used onsite, indicate the areas where the different measures will be used, including steep cut and fill slopes.
3. If the type of cover measures to be used will vary depending on the time of year, soil type, gradient, or some other factor, specify the **conditions that control the use of the different measures**.
4. Specify the nature and location of **permanent cover measures**. If a landscaping plan is prepared, this may not be necessary.
5. Specify the approximate amount of cover measures necessary to cover all disturbed areas.
6. If **netting, blankets, or plastic sheeting** are specified, provide typical detail sufficient for installation and maintenance.
7. Specify the **mulch types**, **seed mixes**, **fertilizers**, and **soil amendments** to be used, as well as the application rate for each item.
8. For **surface roughening**, describe methods, equipment and areas where surface roughening will be use.
9. If **PAM** is used, show location(s) and describe application method.
10. When **compost blankets** are used, show location, application rates, and the name of the supplier to document that compost meets WAC 173-350-22 standards and meets Grade A quality specifications.

Perimeter Protection

1. Specify the **location and type** of perimeter protection to be used.
2. Provide **typical details** sufficient to install and maintain the perimeter protection.
3. If **silt fence** is to be used, specify the type of fabric to be used.
4. If **compost berms or socks** are used, documentation must be provide to assure the supplier meets the criteria under WAC 173-350-220 and compost meets Grade A quality standards.

Traffic Area Stabilization

1. Locate the **construction entrance**(s).
2. Provide **typical details** sufficient to install and maintain the construction entrance.
3. Locate the **construction roads and parking areas**.
4. Specify the measure(s) that will be used to create **stabilized construction roads and parking areas**. Provide sufficient detail to install and maintain.
5. If a **wheel wash** or **tire bath system** will be installed, provide location, typical details for installation and maintenance.
6. Provide a list of **dust control** products that will be used onsite and the location of potential application areas.

Sediment Retention

1. Show the **locations** of all sediment ponds and traps.
2. Dimension pond **berm widths** and all inside and outside pond slopes.
3. Indicate the **trap/pond storage** required and the depth, length, and width dimensions.
4. Provide typical **section views** through pond and outlet structures.
5. If **chemical or electrocoagulation treatment** of sediment-laden waters will be used, approval documentation from DOE must be included.

6. Provide details for **disposal of contaminated or chemically treated waters** (e.g., where Chitosan or CO2 have been used).
7. Include appropriate **approval documentation from local sewer districts** if contaminated or chemically treated water will be discharged to the sanitary sewer.
8. Provide typical details of the **control structure** and **dewatering mechanism**.
9. Detail **stabilization techniques** for outlet/inlet protection.
10. Provide details sufficient to install **cell dividers**.
11. Specify mulch or recommended **cover of berms and slopes**.
12. Indicate the **required depth gage** with a prominent mark at 1-foot depth for sediment removal.
13. Indicate **catch basins** that are to be protected.
14. Provide **details of the catch basin protection** sufficient to install and maintain.

Surface Water Control

1. **Locate** all pipes, ditches, interceptor ditches, dikes, and swales that will be used to convey stormwater.
2. Provide **details** sufficient to install and maintain all **conveyances**.
3. Indicate locations of **outlet protection** and provide detail of protections.
4. Indicate locations and outlets of any possible **dewatering systems**. Provide details of alternative discharge methods from dewatering systems if adequate infiltration rates cannot be achieved.
5. Indicate the location of any **level spreaders** and provide details sufficient to install and maintain.
6. Show all **temporary pipe inverts**.
7. Provide location and specifications for the **interception of runoff from disturbed areas** and the conveyance of the runoff to a non-erosive discharge point.
8. Provide **locations** of **rock check dams**.
9. Provide **details**, including front and side sections, of typical **rock check dams**.

Wet Season Requirements

1. Provide a **list** of all applicable wet season requirements.
2. Clearly identify that from October 1st through April 30th, no soils shall be exposed for more than two consecutive working days. Also note that this **two-day requirement** may be applied at other times of the year if storm events warrant more conservative measures.
3. Clearly identify that **exposed soils shall be stabilized** at the end of the workday prior to a weekend, holiday, or predicted rain event.

Critical Areas Restrictions

1. **Delineate and label** the following critical areas, and any applicable buffers, that are on or adjacent to the ***project site***: aquatic areas, wetlands, ***flood hazard areas***, ***erosion hazard areas***, ***landslide hazard areas***, ***steep slope hazard areas***, and ***critical aquifer recharge areas***.
2. If construction creates disturbed areas within any of the above listed critical areas or associated buffers, specify the type, locations, and details of any measures or other provisions necessary to **comply with the critical area restrictions** in Appendix D and protect surface waters and steep slopes.

2.3.1.4 STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION AND SPILL (SWPPS) PLAN

This section details the specifications and contents for SWPPS plans, which together with ESC plans, comprise the construction stormwater pollution prevention plan (CSWPPP) that must be submitted as part of the engineering plans required for drainage review.

The SWPPS plan must be kept on ***site*** during all phases of construction and shall **address the construction-related pollution-generating activities outlined in Subsection A below**. The plan must include a description of the methods the general contractor will use to ensure sub-contractors are aware of the SWPPS plan. A **form or record** must be provided that states all sub-contractors have read and agree to the SWPPS plan.

A SWPPS plan consists of the following three elements, which are further described in Subsections B, C, and D below:

1. A **site plan** showing the location and description of BMPs required to prevent pollution and control spills from construction activities and from chemicals and other materials used and stored on the construction site. See Subsection B below for more specifics on the SWPSS site plan.
2. A **pollution prevention report** listing the potential sources of pollution and identifying the operational, source control, and treatment BMPs necessary to prevent/mitigate pollution from these sources. See Subsection C below for more specifics on the SWPSS pollution prevention report.
3. A **spill prevention and cleanup report** describing the procedures and BMPs for spill prevention and including provisions for cleanup of spills should they occur. See Subsection D below for more specifics on the SWPSS spill prevention and cleanup report.

A. ACTIVITY-SPECIFIC INFORMATION REQUIRED

At a minimum, the SWPPS plan shall address, if applicable, the following pollution-generating activities typically associated with construction and include the information specified below for each activity. If other pollution-generating activities associated with construction of the proposed project are identified, the SWPPS plan must address those activities in a similar manner.

Storage and Handling of Liquids

1. Identify liquids that will be handled or stored onsite, including but not limited to **petroleum products, fuel, solvents, detergents, paint, pesticides, concrete admixtures, and form oils**.
2. Specify **types and sizes of containers** of liquids that will be stored/handled onsite. Show locations on the SWPPS site plan.
3. Describe **secondary containment methods** adequately sized to provide containment for all liquids stored onsite. Show the locations of containment areas on the SWPPS site plan.

Storage and Stockpiling of Construction Materials and Wastes

1. **Identify** construction materials and wastes that may be generated or stockpiled onsite. Show the **locations** where these materials and wastes will be generated and stockpiled on the SWPPS site plan.
2. Specify type of **cover measures** to be used to keep rainwater from contacting construction materials and wastes that can contribute pollutants to storm, surface, and ground water.
3. If wastes are kept in **containers**, describe how rainwater will be kept out of the containers.

Fueling

1. Specify **method of onsite fueling** for construction equipment (i.e. stationary tanks, truck mounted tanks, wet hosing, etc.). If stationary tanks will be used, show their location on the SWPPS site plan.
2. Describe **type and size of tanks**.

3. Describe **containment methods for fuel spills** and make reference to the SWPPS site plan for location information.
4. If fueling occurs **during evening hours**, describe lighting and signage plan. Make reference to the SWPPS site plan for location information.

Maintenance, Repairs, and Storage of Vehicles and Equipment

1. Identify **maintenance and repair areas** and show their locations on the SWPPS site plan. Use of drip pans or plastic beneath vehicles is required. A note to this effect must be shown on the SWPPS site plan.
2. Describe method for collection, storage, and disposal of **vehicle fluids**.
3. If an area is designated for vehicle maintenance, **signs must be posted** that state no vehicle washing may occur in the area. A note to this effect must be shown on the SWPPS site plan.

Concrete Saw Cutting, Slurry, and Washwater Disposal

1. Identify **truck washout areas** to assure such areas are not within a ***critical aquifer recharge area***. If they are, the washout area must be lined with an impervious membrane. Show location information on the SWPPS site plan.
2. Specify **size of sumps** needed to collect and contain slurry and washwater. Show location information on the SWPPS site plan.
3. Identify **areas for rinsing hand tools** including but not limited to screeds, shovels, rakes, floats and trowels. Show the locations of these areas on the SWPPS site plan.
4. Describe **methods for collecting, treating, and disposal** of waste water from exposed aggregate processes, concrete grinding and saw cutting, and new concrete washing and curing water.

Handling of pH Elevated Water

New concrete vaults/structures may cause collected water to have an elevated pH. This water cannot be discharged to storm or surface water until neutralized.

1. Provide details on **treating/neutralizing water** when pH is not within neutral parameters.
2. Provide details on **disposal of water** with elevated pH or of the treated water.

Application of Chemicals including Pesticides and Fertilizers

1. Provide a **list of chemicals** that may be used on the ***project site*** and the application rates.
2. Describe **where and how chemicals will be applied**. Show location information on the SWPPS site plan.
3. Describe **where and how chemicals will be stored**. Show location information on the SWPPS site plan.

B. SWPPS SITE PLAN

The ***site*** plan element of the SWPPS plan shall include all of the information required for the base map (see Table 2.3.1.A, p. 2-22), as well as existing and proposed roads, driveways, parking areas, buildings, drainage facilities, utility corridors not associated with roadways, *relevant critical areas*[4] and associated buffers, and proposed final topography. A smaller scale may be used to provide more comprehensive details on specific locations of each activity and specific prevention measure. In addition to this information, the following items, at a minimum, shall be provided as applicable:

[4] *Relevant critical areas*, for the purposes of drainage review, include aquatic areas, wetlands, ***flood hazard areas***, ***erosion hazard areas***, ***landslide hazard areas***, ***steep slope hazard areas***, and ***critical aquifer recharge areas***.

1. Identify locations where **liquids will be stored** and delineate secondary containment areas that will be provided.
2. Identify locations where **construction materials and wastes** will be generated and stockpiled.
3. Identify location of **fueling for vehicles and equipment** if stationary tanks will be used.
4. Delineate **containment areas** for fuel spills.
5. Show location of **lighting and signage** for fueling during evening hours.
6. Delineate **maintenance and repair areas** and clearly note that drip pans or plastic shall be used beneath vehicles. Also, clearly note that signs must be posted that state no **vehicle washing** may occur in the area.
7. Delineate **truck washout areas** and identify the location of **slurry/washwater sumps and rinsing areas** for tools.
8. Delineate where **chemicals** will be applied and identify where they will be stored.
9. Identify where **spill response materials** will be stored.

C. POLLUTION PREVENTION REPORT

This report provides the specifics on pollution prevention and must include the following information in addition to the activity-specific information specified in Subsection A above:

1. List the possible **sources of pollution** per Subsection A above and identify the BMPs to be used for each source to prevent pollution. Include any **supporting information** (site conditions, calculations, etc.) for the selection and sizing of pollution prevention BMPs.
2. Identify the **personnel** responsible for pollution prevention and clearly list the responsibilities of each person identified. **Contact information** for these personnel must be clearly identified in the report and on the SWPPS site plan.
3. Describe the **procedures** to be used for monitoring pollution prevention BMPs and for responding to a BMP that needs attention, including keeping records/reports of all inspections of pollution prevent BMPs (see Reference Section 8-E for examples of worksheets that may be used).

D. SPILL PREVENTION AND CLEANUP REPORT

This report provides the specifics on spill prevention and cleanup and must include the following information in addition to any activity-specific information in Subsection A above related to spill prevention:

1. List the possible **sources of a spill** and identify the BMPs to be used for each source to prevent a spill.
2. Identify **personnel** responsible for spill prevention and cleanup and clearly list the responsibilities of each person identified. **Contact information** for these personnel must be clearly identified in the report and on the SWPPS site plan.
3. Describe the **procedures** to be used for monitoring spill prevention BMPs and for responding to a spill incident, including keeping records/reports of all inspections and spills (see Reference Section 8-E for examples of worksheets that may be used).
4. Identify where **spill response materials** will be stored. Make reference to the SWPSS site plan for location information.
5. Identify **disposal methods** for contaminated water and soil after a spill.

2.3.1.5 LANDSCAPE MANAGEMENT PLANS (IF APPLICABLE)

Approved landscape management plans are allowed to be used as an alternative to the requirement to formally treat (with a facility) the runoff from pollution generating pervious surfaces subject to Core Requirement #8 (see Section 1.2.8). A *landscape management plan* is a King County approved plan for defining the layout and long-term maintenance of landscaping features to minimize the use of pesticides and fertilizers, and reduce the discharge of suspended solids and other pollutants. **General guidance for preparing landscape management plans** is provided in Reference Section 4-C.

If a landscape management plan is proposed, it must be submitted with the engineering plans for the proposed project. The elements listed below are required for evaluation of landscape management plans.

1. Provide a ***site* vicinity map** with topography.
2. Provide a **site plan** with topography. Indicate areas with saturated soils or high water tables.
3. Provide a **plant list** (provide both common and scientific names) that includes the following information:
   a) Indicate any drought-tolerant plants, disease resistant varieties, species for attracting beneficial insects (if any) and native plants.
   b) For shrubs and groundcovers, indicate the proposed spacing.
   c) For turf areas, indicate the grass mix or mixes planned. Indicate sun/shade tolerance, disease susceptibility, drought tolerance and tolerance of wet soil conditions.
4. Provide a **landscape plan**. Indicate placement of landscape features, lawn areas, trees, and planting groups (forbes, herbs, groundcovers, etc.) on the ***site***.
5. Include information on **soil preparation** and fertility requirements.
6. Provide information on the design of the **irrigation method** (installed sprinkler system, drip irrigation system, manual, etc.)
7. Provide a **landscape maintenance plan**, including the following:
   a) Physical care methods, such as thatch removal or aeration, and mowing height and frequency
   b) Type of fertilizer (including N-P-K strength) and fertilization schedule or criteria
   c) Type of chemicals to be used for common pests such as crane fly larvae, and the criteria or schedule for application
   d) Any biocontrol methods.
8. Provide information about the **storage of pesticides or other chemicals**, and **disposal measures** that will be used.
   a) If applicable, indicate how the chemicals will be stored on the ***site*** between applications to prevent contact with stormwater or spills into the storm drainage system.
   b) Indicate how excess quantities of fertilizers or chemicals will be handled for individual applications.
9. Provide an **implementation plan** (see Reference Section 4-C for guidance on preparing the implementation plan).

2.3.2 PROJECTS IN TARGETED DRAINAGE REVIEW (TDR)

This section outlines the specifications and contents of limited scope engineering plans allowed for projects in Targeted Drainage Review. Table 2.3.2.A specifies the minimum required elements of the targeted technical information report based on the type of permit or project, and on the three categories of project characteristics subject to Targeted Drainage Review per Section 1.1.2.2.

TABLE 2.3.2.A MINIMUM ENGINEERING PLAN ELEMENTS(1) FOR PROJECTS IN TARGETED DRAINAGE REVIEW

Type of Permit or Project	Drainage Review Type	Project Category 1(2) Projects in TDR that contain or are adjacent to a ***flood***, ***erosion***, or ***steep slope hazard area***; or are within a ***CDA*** or LHDA; or propose ≥7,000 sf of ***land disturbing activity*** (3 ac if in Small Project DR).	Project Category 2(2) Projects in TDR that propose to ***construct or modify*** a 12" or larger pipe/ditch, or receive runoff from a 12" or larger pipe/ditch	Project Category 3(2) ***Redevelopment projects*** in TDR that propose $100,000 or more of improvements to an existing ***high-use site***
SINGLE FAMILY RESIDENTIAL (SFR) BUILDING PERMITS SHORT PLATS PERMITS FOR AGRICULTURAL PROJECTS	Targeted Drainage Review ONLY	• TIR Sections 1, 2, and 6 (minimum) • Small Project ESC Plan(3) and CSWPPP • Site Improvement Plan(5),	• TIR Sections 1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, and 8 (minimum) • Small Project ESC Plan(3) and CSWPPP • ESC Plan(4) for conveyance work • Site Improvement Plan(5)	N/A
	Targeted Drainage Review COMBINED WITH Small Project Drainage Review	• TIR Sections 1, 2, and 6 (minimum) • Small Project ESC Plan(3) and CSWPPP • Site Improvement Plan(5)	• TIR Sections 1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, and 8 (minimum) • Small Project ESC Plan(3) and CSWPPP • ESC Plan(4) for conveyance work • Site Improvement Plan(5)	N/A
OTHER PROJECTS OR PERMITS	Targeted Drainage Review ONLY	• TIR Sections 1, 2, 6, and 8 (minimum) • ESC Plan(4) and CSWPPP for any site disturbance work • Site Improvement Plan(5)	• TIR Sections 1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, and 8 (minimum) • ESC Plan(4) and CSWPPP for any site disturbance work • Site Improvement Plan(5)	• TIR Sections 1, 2, 4, 8, and 10 (minimum) • ESC Plan(4) and CSWPPP or any site disturbance work • Site Improvement Plan(5)

Notes:

(1) The above plan elements are considered the recommended minimum for most development cases in Targeted Drainage Review. DDES may add to these elements if deemed necessary for proper drainage review. *Predesign meetings with DDES are recommended to identify all required elements*.

(2) For more detailed descriptions of project categories, see Section 1.1.2.2. *If the proposed project has the characteristics of more than one category, the plan elements under each applicable category shall apply.*

(3) Small site ESC plans are an element of the small project drainage plan as explained in the *Small Project Drainage Requirements* booklet (detached Appendix C).

(4) ESC plans shall meet the applicable specifications detailed in Section 2.3.1.3 (p. 2-26)

(5) Site improvement plans shall meet the applicable specifications detailed in Section 2.3.1.2 (p. 2-19). DDES may allow modified site improvement plans as described in Section 2.3.1.2.

2.4 PLANS REQUIRED AFTER DRAINAGE REVIEW

This section includes the specifications and contents required of those plans submitted at the end of the permit review process or after a permit has been issued.

2.4.1 PLAN CHANGES AFTER PERMIT ISSUANCE

If changes or revisions to the originally approved engineering plans require additional review, the revised plans shall be submitted to DDES for approval prior to construction. The plan change submittals shall include all of the following:

1. The appropriate Plan Change Order form(s)
2. One copy of the revised TIR or addendum
3. Three sets of the engineering plans
4. Other information needed for review.

2.4.2 FINAL CORRECTED PLAN SUBMITTAL

During the course of construction, changes to the approved engineering plans are often required to address unforeseen field conditions or design improvements. Once construction is completed, it is the applicant's responsibility to submit to DDES a **final corrected plan**. These corrected drawings must be professionally drafted revisions applied to the original approved plan, excluding the CSWPP plan, and must include all changes made during the course of construction. This plan need not be a precisely surveyed as-built drawing but should show what was finally constructed in terms of drainage system elements. The final corrected plan must be stamped, signed, and dated by a ***civil engineer***. A CAD drawing file (.dwg) of the final corrected plan must be submitted along with paper copies. The CAD file must contain all the pages of the plan set for road and drainage infrastructure, but need not contain other sheets. An electronic copy of the TIR must be submitted with the final corrected plan, which may be in .pdf or other approved format.

Disposition of Approved Engineering Plans for Subdivisions

Upon engineering plan approval of any subdivision (including PUDs, binding site plans, and short plats), DDES will make a set of reproducible mylars (cost to be paid by the applicant) and return the original set to the applicant's engineer. DDES will retain this reproducible set, utilizing it to make copies for public inspection, distribution, and base reference as required. At the time the development is accepted for maintenance by King County, the DDES set of reproducibles shall be replaced by the corrected original set for permanent public records at the Department of Transportation Map Counter, 1st floor, King Street Center Building, 201 South Jackson Street, Seattle, Washington.

2.4.3 FINAL PLAT, SHORT PLAT, AND BINDING SITE PLAN SUBMITTALS

Any subdivision to be finalized, thereby completing the subdivision process and legally forming new lots, requires a **final submittal for approval and recording**. Binding site plans and short plats also require a final submittal for approval and recording. The final plat or map page shall contain the elements summarized and specified in detail in DDES customer information bulletins. Submittals shall be accompanied by appropriate fees as prescribed by King County Code. Final submittals will be allowed only after the approval of preliminary plans (for subdivisions only) and any required engineering plans, and after the construction of any required drainage facilities.

All final map sheets and pages shall be prepared by a **land surveyor** licensed in the State of Washington and shall conform to all state and local statutes.

The final submittal for recording only applies to **subdivisions** (plats), **binding site plans**, and **short plats**. This plan is required by state and local statutes.

In addition to the requirements described in the DDES customer information bulletins, submittals for final recording of subdivisions, short plats, and binding site plans **must include the following information:**

1. Indicate **dimensions** of all easements, tracts, building setbacks, tops of slopes, wetland boundaries, and floodplains.
2. Include **pertinent restrictions** as they apply to easements, tracts, and building setback lines.
3. Include the **dedication and indemnification clause** as provided in Reference Section 8-G.
4. State the **maximum amount of added impervious surface** and **proposed clearing per lot** as determined through engineering review. The maximum amount of impervious surface may be expressed in terms of percentage of lot coverage or square feet.
5. Include a recorded **declaration of covenant and grant of easement** for each lot on which flow control BMPs are installed or stipulated per Section 5.2.2.1, and each lot for which flow control BMPs are installed in a separate dedicated tract per Section 5.2.2.1.

CHAPTER 3

HYDROLOGIC ANALYSIS & DESIGN

KING COUNTY, WASHINGTON

SURFACE WATER DESIGN MANUAL

Section 3.1	**Hydrologic Design Standards and Principles**	**3-3**
Section 3.1.1	Hydrologic Impacts and Mitigation	3-3
Section 3.1.2	Flow Control Standards	3-5
Section 3.1.3	Hydrologic Analysis Using Continuous Models	3-6
Section 3.2	**Runoff Computation and Analysis Methods**	**3-9**
Section 3.2.1	Rational Method	3-11
Section 3.2.2	KCRTS/Runoff Files Method	3-19
Section 3.2.3	HSPF Model	3-34
Section 3.2.4	Storage Routing/Water Level Analysis Methods	3-35
Section 3.3	**Hydrologic Design Procedures and Considerations**	**3-39**
Section 3.3.1	General Hydrologic Design Process	3-39
Section 3.3.2	Flow Control Design with KCRTS	3-41
Section 3.3.3	Conveyance System Design with KCRTS	3-44
Section 3.3.4	Safety Factors in Hydrologic Design	3-45
Section 3.3.5	Design Options for Addressing Downstream Drainage Problems	3-46
Section 3.3.6	Point of Compliance Analysis	3-49
Section 3.3.7	Onsite Closed Depressions and Ponding Areas	3-52

CHAPTER 3

HYDROLOGIC ANALYSIS & DESIGN

This chapter presents the concepts and rationale for the surface water controls and designs required by this manual, the acceptable methods for estimating the quantity and characteristics of surface water runoff, and the assumptions and data requirements of the methods. These methods are used to analyze existing and to design proposed drainage systems and facilities. Specifically, hydrologic tools and methodologies are presented for the following tasks:

- Calculating runoff time series and flow statistics
- Designing detention and infiltration facilities
- Sizing conveyance facilities
- Analyzing conveyance capacities.

Chapter Organization

The information presented in this chapter is organized into three main sections:

- Section 3.1, "Hydrologic Design Standards and Principles" (p. 3-3)
- Section 3.2, "Runoff Computation and Analysis Methods" (p. 3-9)
- Section 3.3, "Hydrologic Design Procedures and Considerations" (p. 3-39).

These sections begin on odd pages so the user can insert tabs if desired for quicker reference.

Other Supporting Information

For specific guidance on the mechanics of using the KCRTS software for hydrologic analysis and design, refer to the *KCRTS Computer Software Reference Manual*.

3.1 HYDROLOGIC DESIGN STANDARDS AND PRINCIPLES

This section presents the rationale for and approach to hydrologic analysis and design in King County. Topics covered include the following:

- "Hydrologic Impacts and Mitigation," Section 3.1.1
- "Flow Control Standards," Section 3.1.2 (p. 3-5)
- "Hydrologic Analysis Using Continuous Models," Section 3.1.3 (p. 3-6)

3.1.1 HYDROLOGIC IMPACTS AND MITIGATION

Hydrologic Effects of Urbanization

The hydrologic effects of development can cause a multitude of problems, including minor nuisance flooding, degradation of public resources, diminished fish production, and significant flooding endangering life and property. Increased stormwater flows expand floodplains, bringing flooding to locations where it did not occur before and worsening flood problems in areas already flood-prone. Increased stormwater flows also hasten channel erosion, alter channel structure, and degrade fish habitat.

Human alteration of the landscape, including clearing, grading, paving, building construction, and landscaping, changes the physical and biological features that affect hydrologic processes. Soil compaction and paving reduce the infiltration and storage capacity of soils. This leads to a runoff process called *Horton overland flow* whereby the rainfall rate exceeds the infiltration rate, and the excess precipitation flows downhill over the soil surface. This type of flow rapidly transmits rainfall to the stream or conveyance system, causing much higher peak flow rates than would occur in the unaltered landscape.

Horton overland flow is almost nonexistent in densely vegetated areas, such as forest or shrub land, where the vast majority of rainfall infiltrates into the soil. Some of this infiltrated water is used by plants, and depending on soil conditions, some of it percolates until it reaches the groundwater table. Sometimes the percolating soil water will encounter a low-permeability soil or rock layer. In this case, it flows laterally as interflow over the low-permeability layer until it reaches a stream channel. Generally, forested lands deliver water to streams by subsurface pathways, which are much slower than the runoff pathways from cleared and landscaped lands. Therefore, urbanization of forest and pasture land leads to increased stormwater flow volumes and higher peak flow rates.

Land development increases not only peak flow rates but also changes annual and seasonal runoff volumes. *In forested basins in King County, about 55% of the rain that falls each year eventually appears as streamflow*. This percentage is called the *yield of a basin*. The remaining 45% of the rain evaporates and returns to the atmosphere. As trees are cleared and the soil is graded to make way for lawns and pastures, and as part of the land is covered with asphalt or concrete, the basin yield increases. More of the rain becomes streamflow, and less evaporates. In lowland King County, the yield of a basin covered with landscaped lawns would be about 65%, while the yield of an impervious basin would be about 85 to 90%.

For these reasons, development without mitigation increases peak stormwater rates, stormwater volumes, and annual basin yields. Furthermore, the reduction of groundwater recharge decreases summer base flows.

In summary, the following are the hydrologic impacts of unmitigated development:

- Increased peak flows
- Increased durations of high flows
- Increased stormwater runoff volumes

- Decreased groundwater recharge and base flows
- Seasonal flow volume shifts
- Altered wetland hydroperiods.

The resulting economic and ecological consequences of these hydrologic changes include the following:

- Increased flooding
- Increased stream erosion
- Degraded aquatic habitat
- Changes to wetland species composition.

Mitigation of Hydrologic Effects of Urbanization

Engineered facilities can mitigate many of the hydrologic changes associated with development. Detention facilities can maintain the rates and/or durations of high flows at predevelopment levels. Infiltration facilities can control flow volumes and increase groundwater recharge as well as control flow rates and durations. Conveyance problems can be avoided through analysis and appropriate sizing and design of conveyance facilities. Engineered mitigation of the hydrologic impacts of development include the following:

- Managing peak flow rates with detention facilities
- Managing high flow durations with detention facilities
- Reducing flow volumes and maintaining or enhancing groundwater recharge with infiltration facilities
- Avoiding flooding problems with appropriately sized and designed conveyance systems
- Bypassing erosion problems with tightlines.

Engineered facilities cannot mitigate all of the hydrologic impacts of development. Detention facilities do not mitigate seasonal volume shifts, wetland water level fluctuations, groundwater recharge reductions, or base flow changes. Such impacts can be further reduced through the use of Low Impact Development (LID) techniques, beginning with careful ***site*** planning. For instance, clustering of units to reduce impervious cover while maintaining ***site*** density is an effective way to limit hydrologic change. Preserving native vegetation and minimizing soil disturbance or compaction in pervious areas also reduces hydrologic change. Such non-engineered mitigation measures are encouraged by the County and are discussed in Chapter 5 of this manual and are referred to as Flow Control BMPs.

Other LID stormwater management approaches, such as permeable pavements, bioretention, green roofs, and rainwater harvesting can be effective in reducing increases in surface water volumes. The incorporation of these concepts in the design of the project is required, as detailed in Chapter 5 and Appendix C. Many of these approaches will result in a reduction in flow control facility size, so the flow control BMP requirements in Chapter 5 should be carefully considered and applied to maximize the benefits of this approach.

Detention Facility Concepts

The basic concept of a *detention facility* is simple: water is collected from developed areas and released at a slower rate than it enters the collection system. The excess of inflow over outflow is temporarily stored in a pond or a vault and is typically released over a few hours or a few days. The volume of storage needed is determined by (1) how much stormwater enters the facility (determined by the size and density of the contributing area), (2) how rapidly water is allowed to leave the facility, and (3) the level of hydrologic control the facility is designed to achieve.

To prevent increases in the frequency of flooding due to new development, detention facilities are often designed to **maintain peak flow rates at their predevelopment levels** for recurrence intervals of concern (e.g., 2- and 10-year). Such mitigation can prevent increases in the frequency of downstream flooding.

Facilities that control only peak flow rates, however, usually allow the duration of high flows to increase, which may cause increased erosion of the downstream system. For example, the magnitude of a 2-year flow may not increase, but the amount of time that flow rate occurs may double. Therefore, stream systems, including those with salmonid habitat, which require protection from erosion warrant detention systems that **control the durations of geomorphically significant flows** (flows capable of moving sediment). Such detention systems employ lower release rates and are therefore larger in volume.

3.1.2 FLOW CONTROL STANDARDS

Core Requirement #3 requires that flow control facilities be designed to one of three primary flow control standards or various modifications of these standards based on the protection needs of the downstream system. The three primary standards include Level 1 flow control, a peak matching standard; Level 2 flow control, a duration-matching standard; and Level 3 flow control, a duration-matching standard with an extreme peak-matching element added.

Level 1 Flow Control

Level 1 flow control is designed to control flood flows at their current levels and to maintain peak flows within the capacity of the conveyance system for most storm events. Specifically, Level 1 flow control requires **maintaining the predevelopment peak flow rates** for the 2-year and 10-year runoff events. This standard may be modified under certain conditions to only match the 10-year peak flow as allowed in Section 1.2.3.1A.

The Level 1 flow control standard is typically applied to basins where studies have shown that additional flow attenuation provides no significant benefit to the receiving waters.

Level 2 Flow Control

Level 2 flow control is designed to control the durations of geomorphically significant flows and thereby maintain or, in some applications, reduce existing channel and streambank erosion rates. A geomorphically significant flow is one that moves channel bedload sediments. The flow that initiates transport of channel sediments varies from channel to channel, but one-half of the 2-year flow is considered a good general estimate of the erosion-initiating flow. More specifically, Level 2 flow control requires **maintaining the durations of high flows** at their predevelopment levels for all flows greater than one-half of the 2-year peak flow up to the 50-year peak flow. The predevelopment peak flow rates for the 2-year and 10-year runoff events are also intended to be maintained when applying Level 2 flow control. The **predevelopment condition** to be assumed for matching durations varies depending on the County's conservation/protection goals for the downstream drainage system. One of three different predevelopment conditions will be applied as specified in Section 1.2.3.1. They include ***existing site conditions***, ***historic site conditions*** (forested), and 75/15/10 conditions (i.e., 75% forest, 15% grass, and 10% impervious surface). In most locations of the County, ***historic site conditions*** will apply.

The use of ***historic site conditions*** is intended to provide a hydrologic regime that more closely matches the conditions to which local aquatic species have adapted.

Level 3 Flow Control

Level 3 flow control is **intended to mitigate water level changes** in certain volume-sensitive water bodies such as lakes, wetlands, closed depressions where ***severe flooding problems*** have been documented. It is the most stringent standard applied in this manual (see Section 1.2.3.1). Because such water bodies act as natural flow dampeners, it is difficult to detain collected stormwater beyond the natural residence time of these systems. Therefore, the increased volume of runoff from new development inevitably increases the water level fluctuations of these water bodies. The Level 3 flow control standard provides additional storage and increases the detention time to minimize these downstream impacts.

This standard requires **maintaining the durations of high flows** at their predevelopment levels for all flows greater than one-half of the 2-year flow up to the 50-year flow and **holding the 100-year peak flow**

rate at its predevelopment level. The predevelopment peak flow rates for the 2-year and 10-year runoff events are also intended to be maintained when applying Level 3 flow control. As with the Level 2 standard, the **predevelopment condition** to be assumed for matching durations varies depending on the County's conservation/protection goals for the downstream drainage system.

This standard is primarily applied in the contributing areas of specific water bodies with ***severe flooding problems***, and which are known to be sensitive to flow volume changes.

3.1.3 HYDROLOGIC ANALYSIS USING CONTINUOUS MODELS

The Need for Continuous Hydrologic Modeling

This manual prescribes the use of a **continuous hydrologic model** for most hydrologic analyses rather than an event model. Event models such as the Santa Barbara Urban Hydrograph (SBUH) and the Soil Conservation Service (SCS) method were used in previous versions of this manual for all hydrologic analyses. A continuous model was chosen because hydrologic problems in western Washington are associated with the high volumes of flow from sequential winter storms rather than high peak flows from short duration, high intensity rainfall events. The continuous hydrologic analysis tool prescribed in this manual is the **King County Runoff Time Series (KCRTS)**, which is a variant of the Hydrologic Simulation Program-FORTRAN (HSPF) model.

Continuous models are well suited to accounting for the climatological conditions in the lowland Puget Sound area. Continuous models include algorithms that maintain a continuous water balance for a catchment to account for soil moisture and hydraulic conditions antecedent to each storm event (Linsley, Kohler, Paulhus, 1982), whereas event models assume initial conditions and only address single hypothetical storm events. As a result, continuous hydrologic models are more appropriate for evaluating runoff during the extended wet winters typical of the Puget Sound area.

The **drawbacks of event models** are summarized as follows:

- Event methods inherently overestimate peak flows from undeveloped land cover conditions. The overestimation is due, in part, to the assumption that runoff from forest and pasture land covers flows across the ground surface. In actuality, the runoff from forests and pastures, on till soils, is dominated by shallow subsurface flows (interflow) which have hydrologic response times much longer than those used in event methods. This leads to an over estimation of predeveloped peak flows, which results in detention facility release rates being overestimated and storage requirements being underestimated.
- A single event cannot represent the sequential storm characteristics of Puget Sound winters.
- Event models assume detention facilities are empty at the start of a design event, whereas actual detention facilities may be partially full as a result of preceding storms.
- Testing of event-designed detention facilities with calibrated, long-term continuous hydrologic simulations demonstrates that these facilities do not achieve desired performance goals.
- Event methods do not allow analysis of flow durations or water level fluctuations.

The **benefits of continuous hydrologic modeling** are summarized as follows:

- A continuous model accounts for the long duration and high precipitation volume of winter wet periods characterized by sequential, low-intensity rainfall events. Continuous simulation uses continuous long-term records of observed rainfall rather than short periods of data representing hypothetical storm events. As a result, continuous simulation explicitly accounts for the long duration rainfall events typically experienced in the Pacific Northwest as well as the effects of rainfall antecedent to major storm events.
- HSPF has been shown to more accurately simulate runoff from basins with a wide range of sizes and land covers using the regional parameters developed by the United States Geologic Survey (USGS).

- Continuous simulation allows direct examination of flow duration data for assessing the impacts of development on stream erosion and morphology. An event model, whether using a 1-day or a 7-day storm, cannot provide such information.
- A continuous model allows water level analysis for wetlands, lakes, and closed depressions whose water level regime is often dependent on seasonal runoff rather than on 1-day or 7-day event runoff.
- Continuous models produce flow control facilities that more accurately and effectively achieve desired performance goals.

The importance of continuous modeling in the Puget Sound area is illustrated in Figure 3.1.3.A (p. 3-8), which shows a small basin's runoff response to a series of winter storms and the outflow from a detention pond designed to control the peak annual flows from this basin. Note that the largest outflow from the detention pond corresponds not to the peak inflow on 11/6/86, but rather to the high volume of flow from the sequential storms beginning on 11/19/86. This demonstrates a key difference between continuous and event based models.

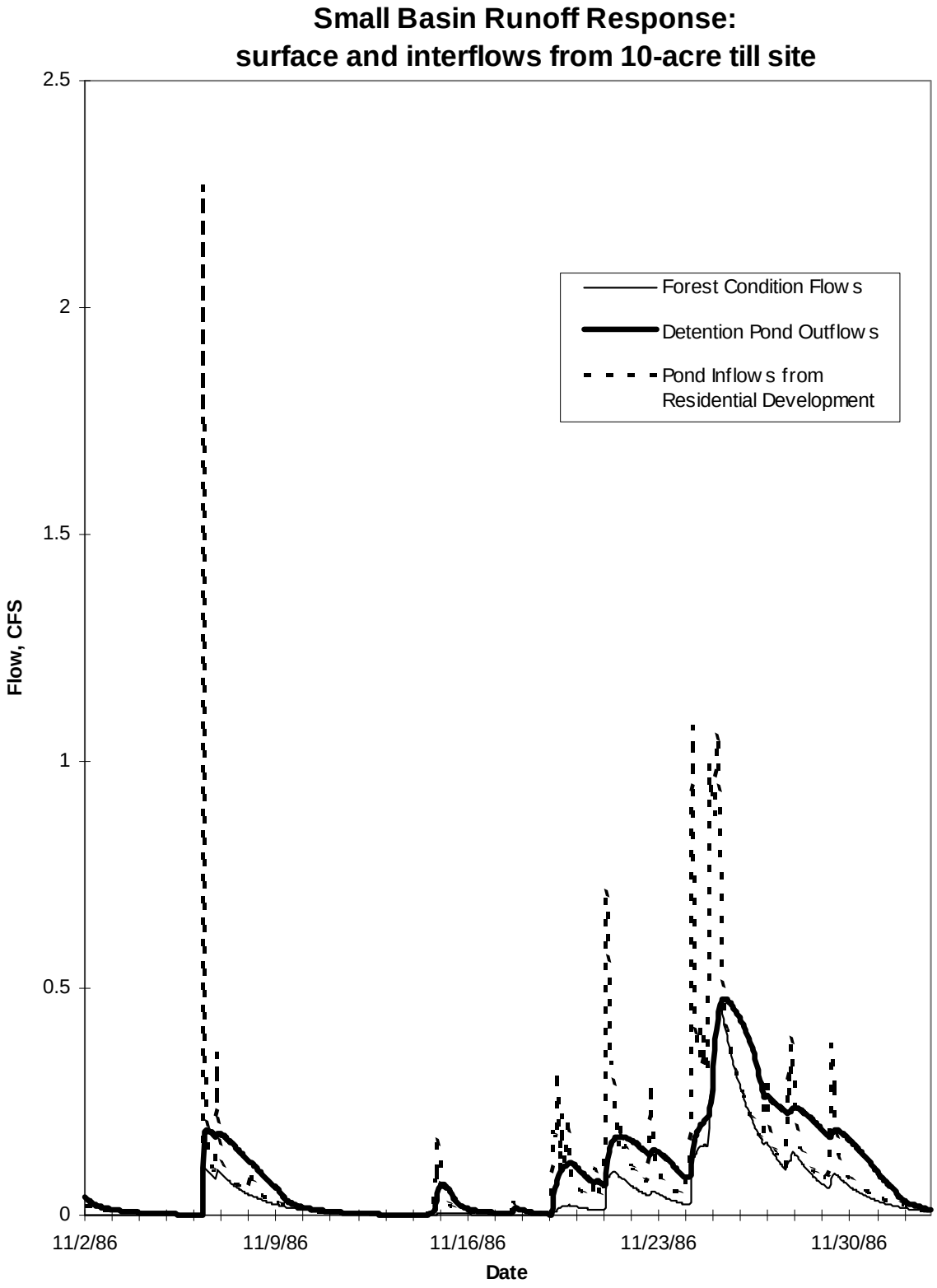
With an event model, designers are accustomed to working with a single design storm event (e.g., 10-year), which by definition has the same return period once routed through a reservoir (10-year inflow will always generate 10-year outflow). With a continuous model, flow recurrence estimates are based on annual peak flow rates, with each time series being analyzed independently. Events that generate annual peak inflows to a reservoir may not generate annual peak discharges from the reservoir. In other words, the runoff event containing the 10-year inflow peak, when routed, may not create the 10-year outflow peak. This is due to natural variability of storm peaks and volumes (e.g., high intensity/short duration thunderstorms as compared to moderate intensity/long duration winter storms) contained within a continuous record.

Requirements of Continuous Hydrologic Modeling

For the entire period of simulation, a continuous hydrologic model requires a continuous record of precipitation and evaporation at discrete time steps small enough to capture the temporal variability of hydrologic response, and it provides a continuous record of simulated flows at the same time step. The quicker a basin responds hydrologically (e.g., due to small size, land cover, or lack of detention), the smaller the time step should be. Time steps of 15 minutes or one hour are sufficient for most basins in the Puget Sound area.

The continuous hydrologic model must include mathematical representations of hydrologic processes to determine the fate and movement of rainfall. For example, a good continuous hydrologic model must include representations of infiltration processes to determine how much water infiltrates the soil and how much runs off the surface. It must represent shallow and deep soil storage as well as the release of subsurface water to streams via interflow and groundwater flow, and it must also account for the loss of soil water to the atmosphere via evapotranspiration between rainfall events. The benefit of all this computation is a complete hydrologic assessment including information on peak flow rates, flow durations, storm volumes, seasonal volumes, annual volumes, and water levels of receiving bodies.

FIGURE 3.1.3.A EFFECTS OF SEQUENTIAL STORMS ON DETENTION PERFORMANCE



3.2 RUNOFF COMPUTATION AND ANALYSIS METHODS

This section presents the following four runoff computation methods accepted for hydrologic analysis and design in King County:

- The **Rational Method** described below and detailed in Section 3.2.1 (p. 3-11)
- The **TR-55 or SBUH methods** described below.
- The **King County Runoff Time Series (KCRTS)/Runoff Files method** described below and detailed in Section 3.2.2 (p. 3-19)
- The **Hydrologic Simulation Program-FORTRAN (HSPF) model** described below and detailed in Section 3.2.3 (p. 3-34).

Methods for analysis and design of detention storage and water levels are also presented in "Storage Routing/Water Level Analysis Methods," Section 3.2.4 (p. 3-35).

❑ ACCEPTABLE USES OF RUNOFF COMPUTATION METHODS

Acceptable uses of the four runoff computation methods are summarized below and in Table 3.2 (p. 3-10):

- Rational Method: This method is most appropriate for sizing new conveyance systems that drain smaller, quickly responding tributary areas (i.e., less than 10 acres) where very short, intense storms tend to generate the highest peak flows. The Rational Method may also be used for conveyance sizing in any size basin if the attenuation effects of existing storage features within the basin are ignored.
- TR-55/SBUH Methods: The Soil Conservation Service (SCS) TR-55 method or the SBUH method of the 1990 King County *Surface Water Design Manual* may be used for conveyance sizing where tributary areas are greater than or equal to 10 acres and if storage features are ignored. The peak flows from these single-event models are considered conservative for larger tributary areas if the flows are not routed through existing storage features. These methods are not detailed in this manual; refer to SCS Publication 210-VI-TR-55, Second Edition (June 1986) or the 1990 *SWDM*.
- KCRTS/Runoff Files Method: This method is the most versatile for quickly performing many of the computations summarized in Table 3.2 (p. 3-10). For conveyance sizing and analysis, the peak flows from KCRTS are most accurate where tributary areas are greater than or equal to 10 acres and when the shortest possible time step (15 minutes) is used with flowpath adjustments made to reflect the hydrologic responsiveness of the tributary area (see Section 3.3.3). KCRTS may also be used for tributary areas less than 10 acres where there is a significant storage feature(s). For sizing and analysis of storage features and volume-based water quality facilities, KCRTS works equally well when using hourly time steps for determination of predevelopment discharges and for routing purposes (see Sections 3.3.1 and 3.3.2). King County requires hourly time steps for sizing of all flow control facilities to provide consistent management of surface water and protect against cumulative increases in peak flows on a basin-wide basis. *Note: The KCRTS runoff files were developed using local historical precipitation and evaporation data, so application of the King County data outside the King County vicinity is discouraged. Contact DNRP for information on generating runoff files for other gage locations. An HSPF-level of historical meteorological data is required.*
- HSPF Model: For projects in Large Project Drainage Review (see Section 1.1.2.4), the County may require HSPF modeling for formulating a Master Drainage Plan (see *Master Drainage Planning for Large Site Developments - Process and Requirement Guidelines* available from DNRP or DDES). The County also generally encourages use of HSPF for tributary areas larger than 200 acres. The model can be used wherever KCRTS is allowed for sizing and analysis of conveyance systems, flow control facilities, and water quality facilities. For such projects draining to a wetland or potentially impacting groundwater resources or stream base flows, the County may require the collection of actual rainfall and runoff data to be used in developing and calibrating the HSPF model.

TABLE 3.2 ACCEPTABLE USES OF RUNOFF COMPUTATION METHODS

TYPE OF COMPUTATION	APPLIED TO	Rational Method	TR 55/SBUH	KCRTS	HSPF
PEAK FLOW CONVEYANCE SIZING INC. TESC[1] (DESIGN FLOWS) (See Chapter 4 for hydraulic analysis procedures)	**Tributary Areas < 10 ac** (measured to individual conveyance elements)	REQUIRED for undetained areas,[2] and OKAY for detained areas if no storage routing[3] is performed		OKAY if majority of tributary area is detained[4] and 15-minute time steps with flowpath adjustments[5] are used	OKAY if majority of tributary area is detained[4] and 15-minute time steps with flowpath adjustments[5] are used
	Tributary Areas ≥ 10 ac	OKAY if no storage routing[3] is performed	OKAY if no storage routing[3] is performed	OKAY if using 15-minute time steps with flowpath adjustments[5] (storage routing is allowed)	OKAY if using 15-minute time steps with flowpath adjustments[5] (storage routing is allowed)
LEVEL-POOL ROUTING FLOW CONTROL (NEW/EXIST.) & WQ FACILITY SIZING AND ANALYSIS	**Projects in Full Drainage Review**			OKAY (must use 1-hour time steps)	OKAY (must use 1-hour time steps)
	Projects in Large Project Drainage Review			MAY BE ALLOWED[6] (must use 1-hour time steps)	MAY BE REQUIRED[6] (must use 1-hour time steps)
DOWNSTREAM ANALYSIS	**Projects in Full or Targeted Drainage Review**	OKAY if no storage routing[3] is performed	OKAY for tributary areas ≥ 10 ac. if no storage routing[3] is performed	OKAY if using 15-minute time steps with flowpath adjustments[5]	OKAY if using 15-minute time steps with flowpath adjustments[5]
	Projects in Large Project Drainage Review	MAY BE ALLOWED[6] if used as described in the box above	MAY BE ALLOWED[6] if as described in the box above	MAY BE ALLOWED[6] if used as described in the box above	
PEAK FLOWS FOR APPLYING EXEMPTIONS & THRESHOLDS	**All Projects**			OKAY (must use 1-hour time steps)	OKAY (must use 1-hour time steps)

Notes:

(1) Water quality design flow rates are determined as described in Section 6.2.1 (p. 6-17).

(2) *Undetained areas* are those upstream of detention facilities or other storage features.

(3) *Storage routing* uses the Level Pool Routing technique (described in Section 3.2.4) or other similar method to account for the attenuation of peak flows passing through a detention facility or other storage feature.

(4) The majority of the tributary area is considered *detained* if the runoff from more than 50% of the tributary area is detained by a detention facility or other storage facility.

(5) See Section 3.3.3 (p. 3-44) for details on *flowpath adjustments*.

(6) For projects in Large Project Drainage Review, the selection of methodology for detention sizing and/or downstream analysis becomes a site-specific or basin-specific decision that is usually made by DDES during the scoping process for master drainage plans. Guidelines for selecting KCRTS, HSPF, or calibrated HSPF are found in the King County publication *Master Drainage Planning for Large or Complex Site Developments*, available from DNRP or DDES.

3.2.1 RATIONAL METHOD

The Rational Method is a simple, conservative method for analyzing and sizing conveyance elements serving small drainage subbasins, subject to the following specific **limitations**:

- Only for use in predicting peak flow rates for sizing conveyance elements
- Drainage subbasin area A cannot exceed 10 acres for a single peak flow calculation
- The time of concentration T_c must be computed using the method described below and cannot exceed 100 minutes. It is also set equal to 6.3 minutes when computed to be less than 6.3 minutes.
  Note: Unlike other methods of computing times of concentration, the 6.3 minutes is not an initial collection time to be added to the total computed time of concentration.

❑ RATIONAL METHOD EQUATION

The following is the traditional Rational Method equation:

$$Q_R = CI_RA \tag{3-1}$$

where Q_R = peak flow (cfs) for a storm of return frequency R
C = estimated runoff coefficient (ratio of rainfall that becomes runoff)
I_R = peak rainfall intensity (inches/hour) for a storm of return frequency R
A = drainage subbasin area (acres)

"*C*" Values

The allowable runoff coefficients to be used in this method are shown in Table 3.2.1.A (p. 3-13) by type of land cover. These values were selected following a review of the values previously accepted by King County for use in the Rational Method and as described in several engineering handbooks. The values for single family residential areas were computed as composite values (as illustrated in the following equation) based on the estimated percentage of coverage by roads, roofs, yards, and unimproved areas for each density. For drainage basins containing several land cover types, the following formula may be used to compute a composite runoff coefficient, C_c:

$$C_c = (C_1A_1 + C_2A_2 + ... + C_nA_n)/A_t \tag{3-2}$$

where A_t = total area (acres)
$A_{1,2,...n}$ = areas of land cover types (acres)
$C_{1,2,...n}$ = runoff coefficients for each area land cover type

"I_R" Peak Rainfall Intensity

The peak rainfall intensity I_R for the specified design storm of return frequency R is determined using a unit peak rainfall intensity factor i_R in the following equation:

$$I_R = (P_R)(i_R) \tag{3-3}$$

where P_R = the total precipitation at the ***project site*** for the 24-hour duration storm event for the given return frequency. Total precipitation is found on the Isopluvial Maps in Figure 3.2.1.A through Figure 3.2.1.D beginning on page 3-14.
i_R = the unit peak rainfall intensity factor

The unit peak rainfall intensity factor i_R is determined by the following equation:

$$i_R = (a_R)(T_c)^{(-b_R)} \quad (3\text{-}4)$$

where T_c = time of concentration (minutes), calculated using the method described below and subject to equation limitations ($6.3 \le T_c \le 100$)

a_R, b_R = coefficients from Table 3.2.1.B (p. 3-13) used to adjust the equation for the design storm return frequency R

This "i_R" equation was developed by DNRP from equations originally created by Ron Mayo, P.E. It is based on the original **Renton/Seattle Intensity/Duration/Frequency (I.D.F.) curves**. Rather than requiring a family of curves for various locations in King County, this equation adjusts proportionally the Renton/Seattle I.D.F. curve data by using the 24-hour duration total precipitation isopluvial maps. This adjustment is based on the assumption that the localized geo-climatic conditions that control the total volume of precipitation at a specific location also control the peak intensities proportionally.

Note: Due to the mathematical limits of the equation coefficients, values of T_c less than 6.3 minutes or greater than 100 minutes cannot be used. Therefore, real values of T_c less than 6.3 minutes must be assumed to be equal to 6.3 minutes, and values greater than 100 minutes must be assumed to be equal to 100 minutes.

"T_c" Time of Concentration

The time of concentration is defined as the time it takes runoff to travel overland (from the onset of precipitation) from the most hydraulically distant location in the drainage basin to the point of discharge. *Note: When C_c (see Equation* 3-2*) of a drainage basin exceeds 0.60, it may be important to compute T_c and peak rate of flow from the impervious area separately.* The computed peak rate of flow for the impervious surface alone may exceed that for the entire drainage basin using the value at T_c for the total drainage basin. The higher of the two peak flow rates shall then be used to size the conveyance element.

T_c is computed by summation of the travel times T_t of overland flow across separate flowpath segments defined by the six categories of land cover listed in Table 3.2.1.C (p. 3-13), which were derived from a chart published by the Soil Conservation Service in 1975. The equation for time of concentration is:

$$T_c = T_1 + T_2 + \ldots + T_n \quad (3\text{-}5)$$

where $T_{1,2,\ldots n}$ = travel time for consecutive flowpath segments with different land cover categories or flowpath slope

Travel time for each segment t is computed using the following equation:

$$T_t = \frac{L}{60V} \quad (3\text{-}6)$$

where T_t = travel time (minutes) *Note: T_t through an open water body (such as a pond) shall be assumed to be zero with this method*

L = the distance of flow across a given segment (feet)

V = average velocity (fps) across the land cover = $k_R \sqrt{s_o}$

where k_R = time of concentration velocity factor; see Table 3.2.1.C

s_o = slope of flowpath (feet/feet)

TABLE 3.2.1.A RUNOFF COEFFICIENTS - "*C*" VALUES FOR THE RATIONAL METHOD

General Land Covers		Single Family Residential Areas*	
Land Cover	*C*	Land Cover Density	*C*
Dense forest	0.10	0.20 DU/GA (1 unit per 5 ac.)	0.17
Light forest	0.15	0.40 DU/GA (1 unit per 2.5 ac.)	0.20
Pasture	0.20	0.80 DU/GA (1 unit per 1.25 ac.)	0.27
Lawns	0.25	1.00 DU/GA	0.30
Playgrounds	0.30	1.50 DU/GA	0.33
Gravel areas	0.80	2.00 DU/GA	0.36
Pavement and roofs	0.90	2.50 DU/GA	0.39
Open water (pond, lakes, wetlands)	1.00	3.00 DU/GA	0.42
		3.50 DU/GA	0.45
		4.00 DU/GA	0.48
		4.50 DU/GA	0.51
		5.00 DU/GA	0.54
		5.50 DU/GA	0.57
		6.00 DU/GA	0.60

* Based on average 2,500 square feet per lot of impervious coverage.
For combinations of land covers listed above, an area-weighted "C_c:x A_t" sum should be computed based on the equation C_c: x A_t = (C_1 x A_1) + (C_2 x A_2) + ...+(C_n x A_n), where A_s = (A_1 + A_2 + ...+A_n), the total drainage basin area.

TABLE 3.2.1.B COEFFICIENTS FOR THE RATIONAL METHOD "i_R" EQUATION

Design Storm Return Frequency	a_R	b_R
2 years	1.58	0.58
5 years	2.33	0.63
10 years	2.44	0.64
25 years	2.66	0.65
50 years	2.75	0.65
100 years	2.61	0.63

TABLE 3.2.1.C k_R VALUES FOR T_t USING THE RATIONAL METHOD

Land Cover Category	k_R
Forest with heavy ground litter and meadow	2.5
Fallow or minimum tillage cultivation	4.7
Short grass pasture and lawns	7.0
Nearly bare ground	10.1
Grassed waterway	15.0
Paved area (sheet flow) and shallow gutter flow	20.0

FIGURE 3.2.1.A 2-YEAR 24-HOUR ISOPLUVIALS

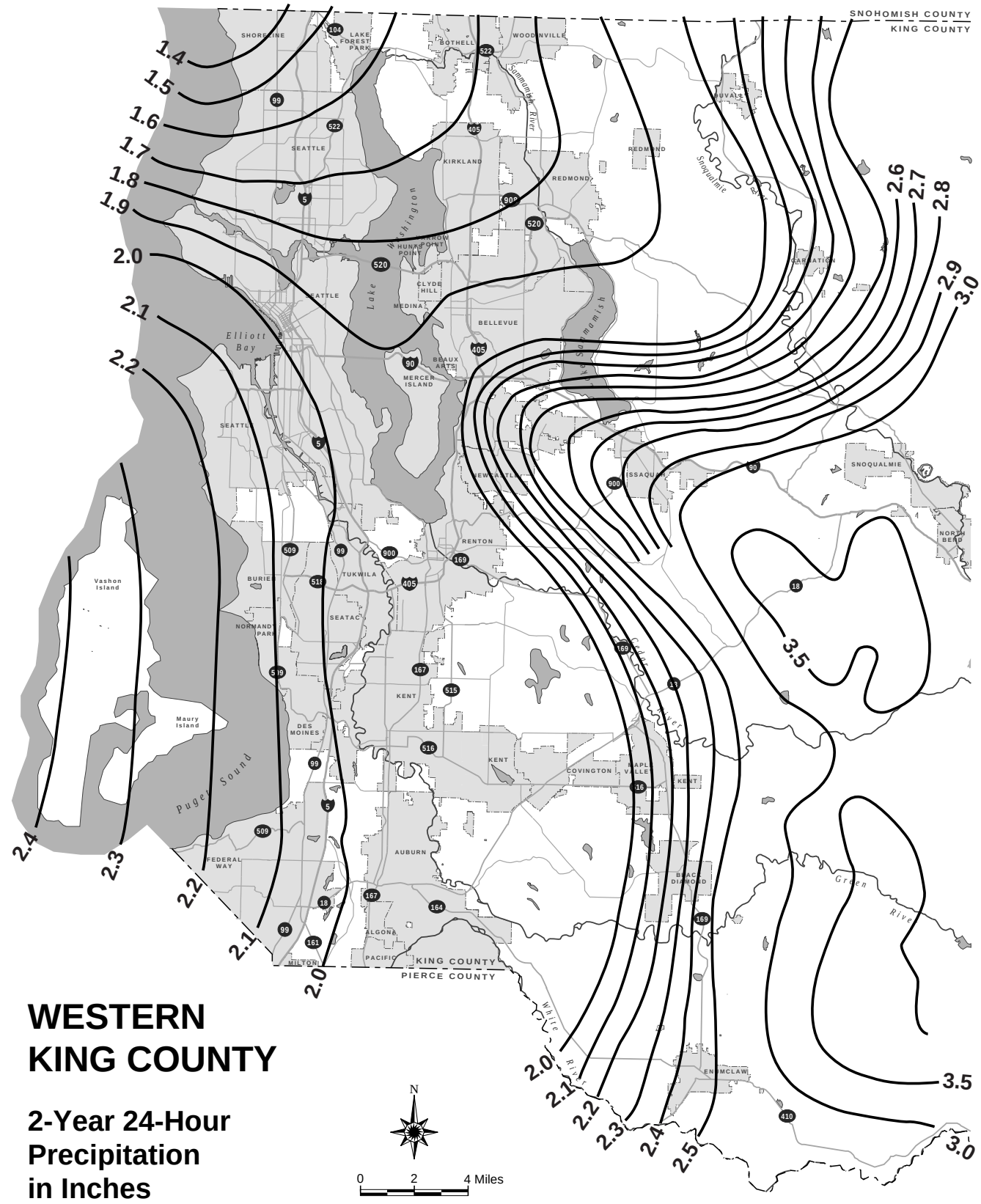


FIGURE 3.2.1.B 10-YEAR 24-HOUR ISOPLUVIALS

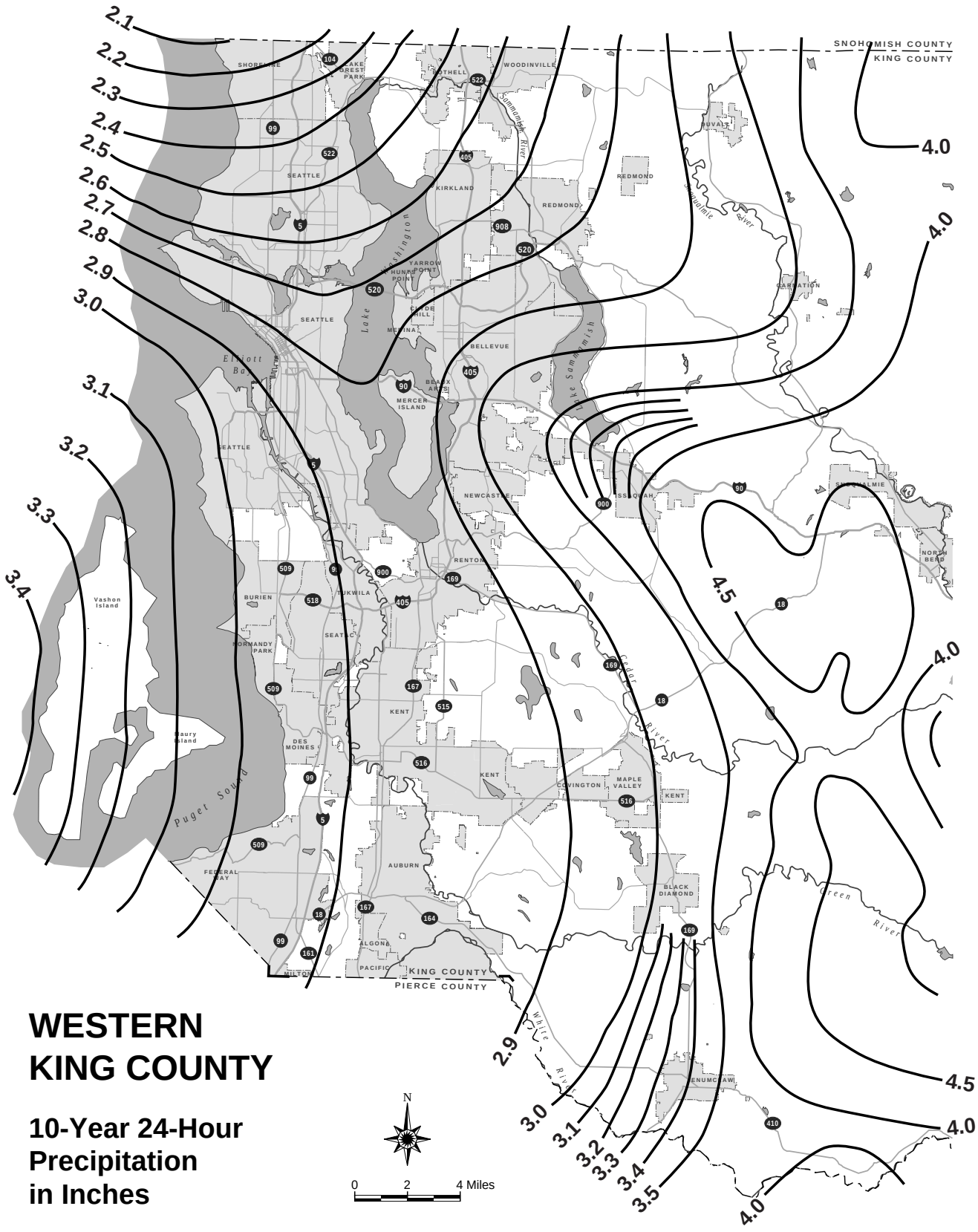


FIGURE 3.2.1.C 25-YEAR 24-HOUR ISOPLUVIALS

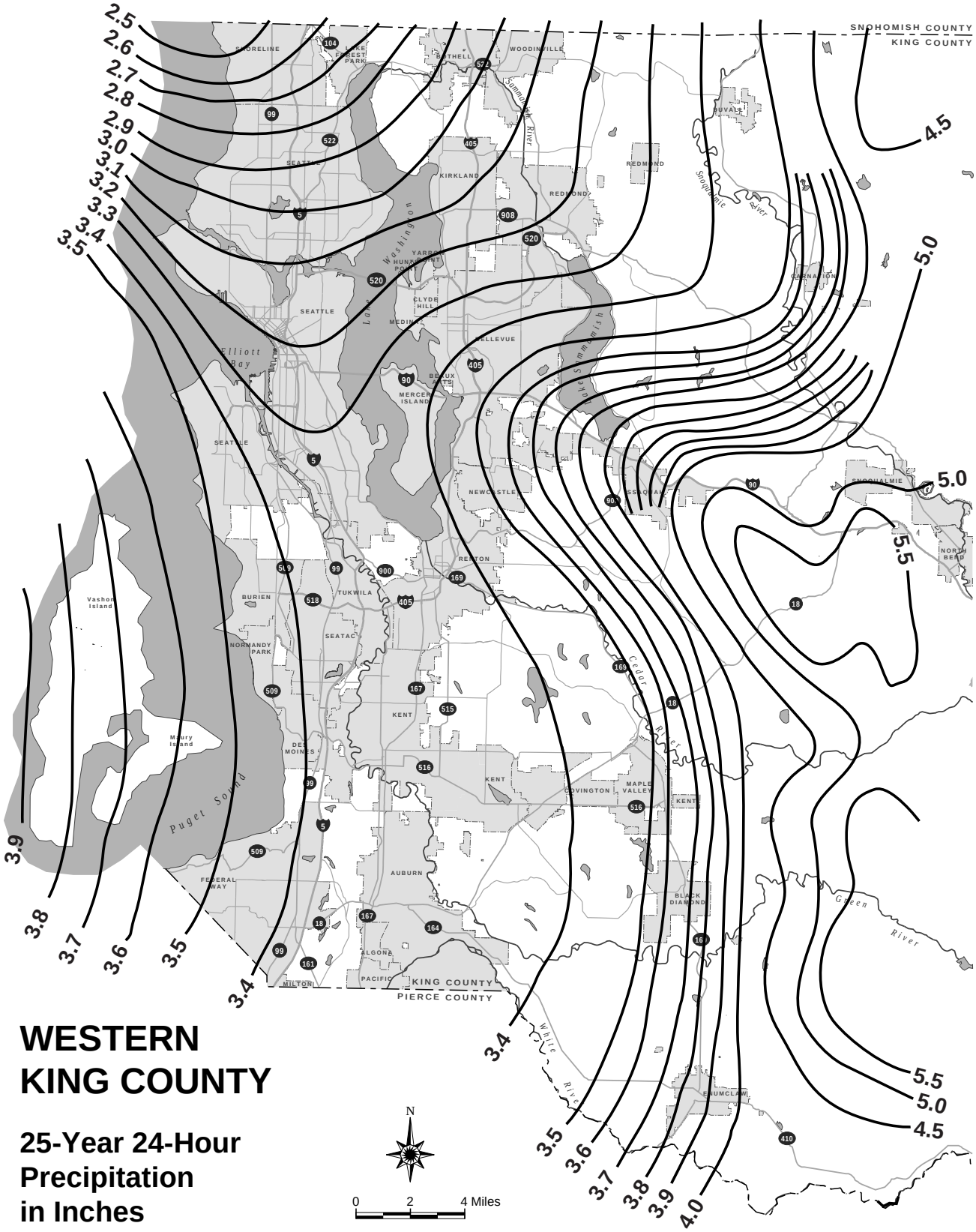
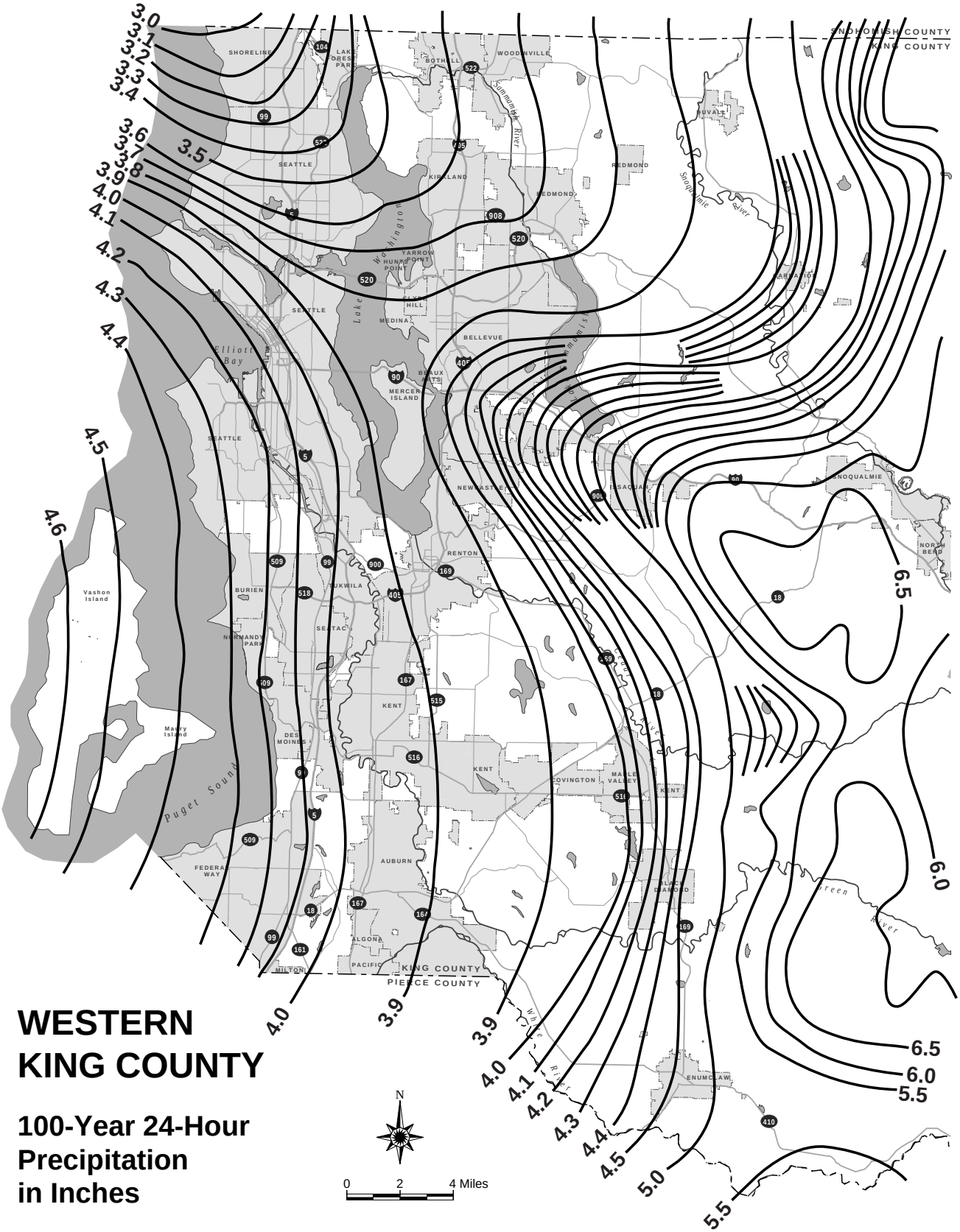


FIGURE 3.2.1.D 100-YEAR 24-HOUR ISOPLUVIALS



❑ RATIONAL METHOD EXAMPLE

Compute the peak flow Q_{25} to size a new roadway cross culvert for a 9.8-acre drainage basin east of Kent, P_{25} = 3.42 inches.

Given: AREAS

A_1 = 4.3 acres of single family residential area at 3.8 DU/GA
A_2 = 2.3 acres of light forest
A_3 = 3.2 acres of pasture
A_t = 9.8 total acres

DESCRIPTION OF FLOWPATH SEGMENTS FOR T_c

L_1	=	300 feet	s_1	=	0.08	forest land cover	k_R = 2.5
L_2	=	200 feet	s_2	=	0.03	meadow	k_R = 2.5
L_3	=	1000 feet	s_3	=	0.015	grassed waterway (ditch)	k_R = 15.0

Compute: COMPOSITE RUNOFF COEFFICIENT C_c

A_1: C_1 = From Table 3.2.1.A (p. 3-13), C for 4.00 DU/GA = 0.48, C for 3.50 DU/GA = 0.45. Therefore, C_1 for 3.80 DU/GA = 0.47 by visual interpolation.
A_2: C_2 = 0.15
A_3: C_3 = 0.20

C_c = $[(C_1 \times A_1) + (C_2 \times A_2) + (C_3 \times A_3)]/A_t$
= $[(0.47 \times 4.3) + (0.15 \times 2.3) + (0.20 \times 3.2)]/9.8$ = <u>0.31</u>

PEAK RAINFALL INTENSITY I_R

First, compute T_c:

$$T_1 = \frac{L_1}{60V_1} = \frac{L_1}{60(k_R\sqrt{s_1})} = \frac{300}{60(2.5\sqrt{0.08})}$$

$$= \underline{7 \text{ minutes}}$$

$$T_2 = \frac{L_2}{60V_2} = \frac{L_2}{60(k_R\sqrt{s_2})} = \frac{200}{60(2.5\sqrt{0.03})}$$

$$= \underline{8 \text{ minutes}}$$

$$T_3 = \frac{L_3}{60V_3} = \frac{L_3}{60(k_R\sqrt{s_3})} = \frac{1000}{60(15\sqrt{0.015})}$$

$$= \underline{9 \text{ minutes}}$$

$$T_c = T_1 + T_2 + T_3 = 7 + 8 + 9 = \underline{24 \text{ minutes}}$$

Second, compute i_R for R = 25:

$$i_{25} = (a_R)(T_c)^{(-b_R)} = (2.66)(24)^{-(0.65)} = \underline{0.34}$$

Third, compute I_R for R = 25:

$$I_{25} = (P_{25})(i_{25}) = (3.42)(0.34) = \underline{1.16}$$

PEAK RUNOFF RATE

$Q_{25} = C\, I_{25}\, A = C_c\, I_{25}\, A = (0.31)(1.16)(9.8) =$ <u>3.5 cfs</u>

3.2.2 KCRTS/RUNOFF FILES METHOD

The KCRTS/runoff files implementation of HSPF was developed as a tool that has the accuracy and versatility of HSPF but is much simpler to use and provides a framework for efficient design of onsite stormwater detention facilities. This section describes the Runoff Files Method and KCRTS software. The term *runoff files* refers to a database of continuous flows presimulated by HSPF. The KCRTS software package is a tool for using this flow database.

The Runoff Files method was developed as a hydrologic modeling tool for western King County to produce results (design flows, detention pond sizing, etc.) comparable to those obtained with the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency's HSPF model but with significantly less effort. This is achieved by providing the user with a set of 15-minute and hourly time series files of unit area land surface runoff ("runoff files") presimulated with HSPF for a range of land cover conditions and soil types within King County. The design flows are estimated and detention facilities are designed by directly accessing and manipulating the runoff file data by means of the KCRTS software.

At present, the basic capabilities of the KCRTS software include:

- Estimating time series of flows for a specified land use and location within King County
- Analyzing flow frequency and duration
- Analyzing water surface frequency and duration
- Plotting analysis results
- Sizing detention facilities.

❑ DEVELOPMENT OF THE RUNOFF FILES

To compile the runoff files, the land surface hydrologic response (represented by a time series of unit area land surface runoff) was generated by HSPF with regional parameters for a variety of land use classifications and for two long-term (50-year) hourly rainfall stations, one representing the western lowlands of King County (Sea-Tac Airport) and the other representing the eastern foothills (Landsburg). Runoff time series were generated with data from these stations for the following **eight soil/land cover types:**

- Impervious
- Till forest
- Till pasture
- Till grass
- Outwash forest
- Outwash pasture
- Outwash grass
- Wetland.

While HSPF simulates surface runoff, interflow, and groundwater flow**, only the surface and interflow components of runoff are included in the runoff files**. The large majority of developments are relatively small, and it is often not appropriate to include groundwater flows in estimates of the surface or near-surface runoff from a ***site***. For example, in designing detention facilities for a small development on till soils, the total surface or near-surface runoff from the ***site*** would usually consist of surface runoff plus interflow. Groundwater generated on the ***site*** would seep through the underlying till and may reappear (in springs or seeps) some considerable distance from the ***site***. **An interflow component of runoff is not computed for outwash soils** because there is assumed to be no low-permeability subsurface layer. Runoff files for onsite detention facility design were thus generated with the following components:

- Till soils → surface flow + interflow
- Outwash soils → surface flow
- Wetland soils → surface flow + interflow
- Impervious surfaces → surface flow.

The higher elevation eastern portions of King County have a temperature variable hydrologic cycle. **Snowmelt is not accounted for** in either the Sea-Tac or Landsburg runoff files. Additional work may be done to develop snowmelt-based runoff files for use in these areas. In the absence of additional information, analysis will be performed using the Landsburg runoff files scaled by 1.2 for all points east of the 1.2 isoline in Figure 3.2.2.A (p. 3-22).

3.2.2.1 GENERATING TIME SERIES

Most hydrologic analyses will require time series of flows for different land use conditions. For example, to size a Level 1 flow control detention facility, 2- and 10-year peaks from the facility discharge time series must be compared with 2- and 10-year peaks from the predevelopment time series. To generate a flow time series with KCRTS, the KCRTS user needs to specify the following:

1. The **rainfall region** of the county within which the project lies (i.e., determine the rainfall station—Sea-Tac or Landsburg—used in the analysis; see Figure 3.2.2.A, p. 3-22).
2. A multiplier or **regional scale factor** applied to the runoff files to account for variations in rainfall volumes between the ***project site*** and the rainfall station (see Figure 3.2.2.A, p. 3-22).
3. The **time step** to be used in the analysis:
   - Hourly — Used for detention sizing and volume analysis
   - 15 minutes — Used for peak flow analysis of conveyance systems; requires length and slope of the longest unconcentrated surface flowpath for each developed land cover type.
4. The **record type** used in the analysis:
   - Reduced 8-year record, OR
   - Historical — complete historical runoff record may be used.
5. The **amount of land** (acreage) of each soil/cover group for the subbasin under study.
6. The **percentage of impervious area** that is effectively connected to the drainage system.

Generating a new time series is simply a matter of entering the above data into KCRTS under the **"Create New Time Series" routine**. The KCRTS software will then access the appropriate runoff files (representing unit area runoff), scale those files to reflect the location of the ***project site***, scale the files again according to the area of each soil/cover group contained on the ***project site*** or subbasin in question, and then sum the scaled files to produce a time series of simulated flows from the ***site***.

❑ SELECTION OF PRECIPITATION RECORD AND REGIONAL SCALE FACTOR

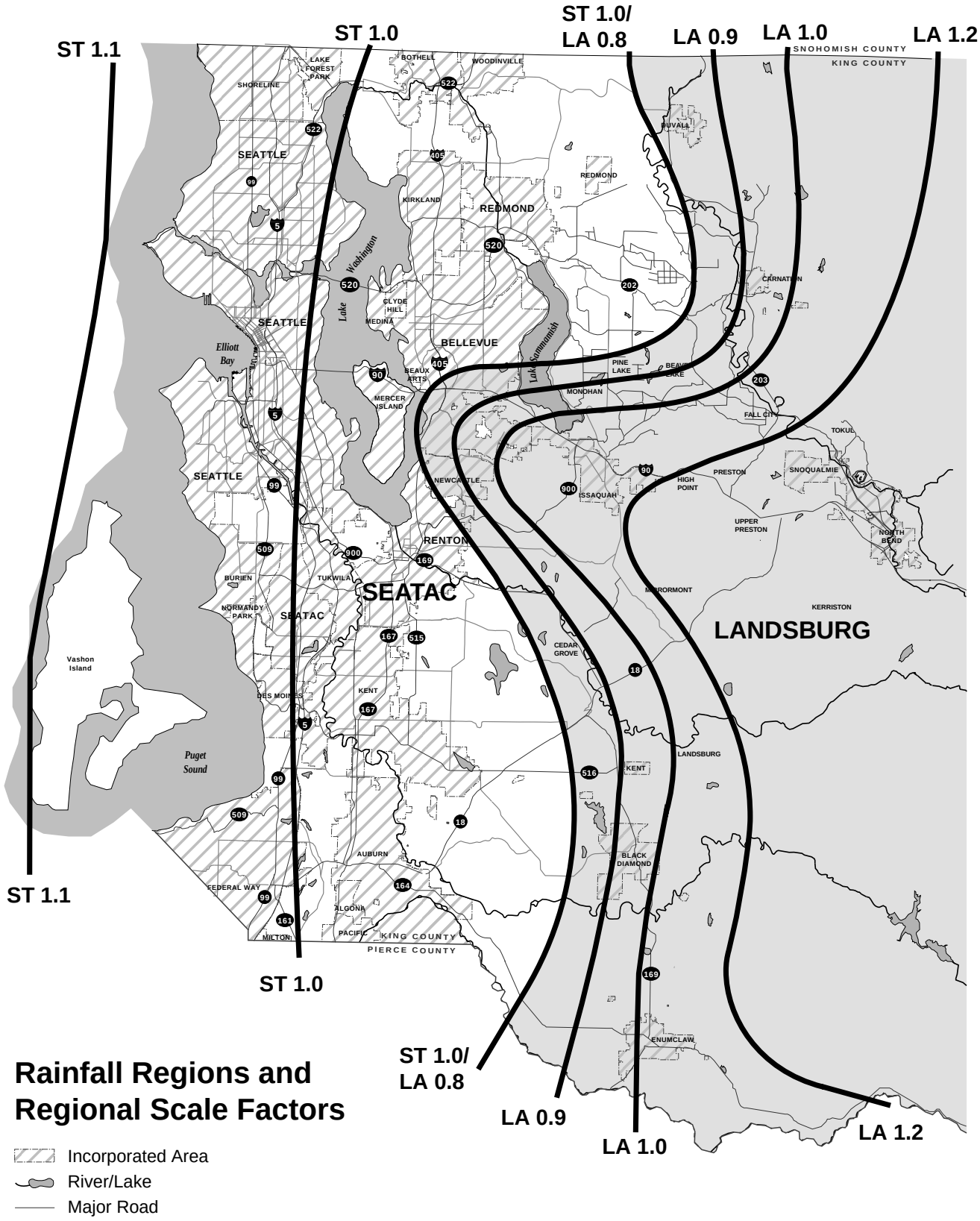
As noted in the previous section, runoff files for KCRTS were developed using data from two rainfall stations, Sea-Tac Airport and Landsburg. The regions within King County to which data from the two stations apply are shown in Figure 3.2.2.A (p. 3-22). These regions were delineated such that data from Sea-Tac Airport is applied to the drier western part of the county, while data from Landsburg is applied to the wetter eastern part of the county, including developable areas in the Cascade foothills. The line separating the two regions was based on daily rainfall depths.

The *regional scale factor* is a geographically variable multiplier applied to the flow time series to account for the considerable variations in rainfall amounts, and hence runoff, within the two regions, especially in

the eastern region represented by rainfall data from Landsburg. Values of the scaling factor are interpolated from Figure 3.2.2.A (p. 3-22). A regional scale factor of 1.0 should be used for the area between the two ST 1.0 isolines.

A factor of 1.2 is applied to the Landsburg runoff files for all points east of the 1.2 isoline on Figure 3.2.2.A. While there is considerably greater variation in runoff in eastern King County than implied by the 1.2 multiplier, there is insufficient data to justify further refinement.

FIGURE 3.2.2.A RAINFALL REGIONS AND REGIONAL SCALE FACTORS



❑ SELECTION OF RUNOFF FILE TIME STEPS AND RECORD TYPES

KCRTS runoff files are provided in both hourly and 15-minute time steps. The 15-minute time series were generated from the original historical hourly precipitation records, which were synthetically disaggregated into 15-minute time steps using 15-minute rainfall records from hydrologically similar gages.

The length of the runoff file records is periodically changed to include new data. As of January 1, 2005, the KCRTS historical record for SeaTac contains 50 years of simulated flow data. Application of the time steps and record types are shown in Table 3.2.2.A below.

TABLE 3.2.2.A SELECTION OF RUNOFF FILE TIME STEPS AND RECORD TYPES

Analysis Type	Hourly Time Steps	15-Minute Time Steps	Runoff File Record Type[1]
Flow Control Analysis			
• Existing Conditions (target release rates)	Required[2]		Reduced or Full Historical
• Developed Conditions (facility inflows)	Acceptable	Acceptable	Reduced or Full Historical
Water Quality Design Flow			
• Preceding Detention (60% 2-year rate)		Required	Reduced or Full Historical
• Following Detention (full 2-year rate)	Acceptable	Acceptable	Reduced or Full Historical
Sand Filter Volume	Acceptable	Acceptable	Reduced or Full Historical
Conveyance/Overflow Features		Required	Reduced or Full Historical
Level 2, 3 Offsite Analyses	Acceptable for volume analysis	Required for peak flow analysis	Reduced or Full Historical
Closed Depression with Severe Flooding Problem[3]	Acceptable	Acceptable	Full Historical

Notes:

(1) The runoff files do not contain a groundwater component. Therefore, KCRTS should be applied with caution where sources of groundwater express themselves as surface runoff, and the program should not be used to determine summer low-flow conditions in a stream. However, most analyses in this manual are of peak flow conditions where the groundwater contribution is usually small.

(2) Hourly time steps are used to determine predeveloped (target) release rates for all projects to provide for consistent control and protection against cumulative increases in peak flows. If 15-minute time steps were used, the predeveloped discharge rates from more quickly responding sites would be higher, and the onsite detention facilities under developed conditions would extend these rates for several hours. This extension of higher flow rates increases the chances that they will occur simultaneously with the peak flows from slower responding sites to create higher overall peaks in the downstream drainage system.

(3) See Section 3.3.6 (p. 3-49).

❑ CATEGORIZATION OF SOIL TYPES AND LAND COVER

The Runoff Files method with KCRTS currently supports eight land use classifications: till forest, till pasture, till grass, outwash forest, outwash pasture, outwash grass, wetland, and impervious. These classifications incorporate both the effects of soil type and land cover. In the SCS method, four different hydrologic soil groups are defined (A, B, C, and D) based on soil type as mapped by the SCS. The SCS also defines hydrologic response for about a dozen different land use or cover types. The SCS method therefore allows the user a considerably greater degree of flexibility in defining land cover and soil types than does KCRTS. However, the flexibility and apparent detail available with the SCS method cannot be supported on the basis of the data used to develop that method. The Runoff Files method minimizes the number of land use classifications, thereby simplifying both the analysis and review of development proposals.

KCRTS Soil Groups

Under KCRTS, three soil groups are currently defined: till, outwash, and wetland.

Till Soils

Till soils are underlain at shallow depths by relatively impermeable glacial till. The principal SCS soil group within King County classified as a till soil is the Alderwood series (SCS hydrological soil group C), which is the most common soil type throughout the western part of the county. The hydrologic response of till soils in an undeveloped, forested state is characterized by relatively slight surface runoff, substantial interflow occurring along the interface between the till soil and the underlying glacial till, and slight groundwater seepage into the glacial till.

Also included in the KCRTS till soil group are bedrock soils, primarily Beausite and Ovall soils, which are underlain by either sandstone or andesite bedrock, and a large group of alluvial soils.

Alluvial soils are found in valley bottoms. These are generally fine-grained and often have a high seasonal water table. There has been relatively little experience in calibrating the HSPF model to runoff from these soils, so in the absence of better information, these soils have been grouped as till soils. Most alluvial soils are classified by the SCS in hydrologic soil groups C and D.

Outwash Soils

Outwash soils are formed from highly permeable sands and gravels. The principal SCS soil group classified as an outwash soil is the Everett series. Where outwash soils are underlain at shallow depths (less than 5 feet) by glacial till or where outwash soils are saturated, they should be treated as till soils for the purpose of KCRTS application.

Wetland Soils

Wetland soils have a high water content, are poorly drained, and are seasonally saturated. For the purposes of applying KCRTS, wetland soils can be assumed to coincide with wetlands as defined in the critical areas code (KCC 21A.24).

The approximate correspondence between SCS soil types and the appropriate KCRTS soil group is given in Table 3.2.2.B (p. 3-25). If the soils underlying a proposed project have not been mapped, or if existing soils maps are in error or not of sufficient resolution, then a soils analysis and report shall be prepared and stamped by a ***civil engineer*** with expertise in soils to verify underlying soil conditions.

TABLE 3.2.2.B EQUIVALENCE BETWEEN SCS SOIL TYPES AND KCRTS SOIL TYPES

SCS Soil Type	SCS Hydrologic Soil Group	KCRTS Soil Group	Notes
Alderwood (AgB, AgC, AgD)	C	Till	
Arents, Alderwood Material (AmB, AmC)	C	Till	
Arents, Everett Material (An)	B	Outwash	1
Beausite (BeC, BeD, BeF)	C	Till	2
Bellingham (Bh)	D	Till	3
Briscot (Br)	D	Till	3
Buckley (Bu)	D	Till	4
Earlmont (Ea)	D	Till	3
Edgewick (Ed)	C	Till	3
Everett (EvB, EvC, EvD, EwC)	A/B	Outwash	1
Indianola (InC, InA, InD)	A	Outwash	1
Kitsap (KpB, KpC, KpD)	C	Till	
Klaus (KsC)	C	Outwash	1
Neilton (NeC)	A	Outwash	1
Newberg (Ng)	B	Till	3
Nooksack (Nk)	C	Till	3
Norma (No)	D	Till	3
Orcas (Or)	D	Wetland	
Oridia (Os)	D	Till	3
Ovall (OvC, OvD, OvF)	C	Till	2
Pilchuck (Pc)	C	Till	3
Puget (Pu)	D	Till	3
Puyallup (Py)	B	Till	3
Ragnar (RaC, RaD, RaC, RaE)	B	Outwash	1
Renton (Re)	D	Till	3
Salal (Sa)	C	Till	3
Sammamish (Sh)	D	Till	3
Seattle (Sk)	D	Wetland	
Shalcar (Sm)	D	Till	3
Si (Sn)	C	Till	3
Snohomish (So, Sr)	D	Till	3
Sultan (Su)	C	Till	3
Tukwila (Tu)	D	Till	3
Woodinville (Wo)	D	Till	3

Notes:

1. Where outwash soils are saturated or underlain at shallow depth (<5 feet) by glacial till, they should be treated as till soils.
2. These are bedrock soils, but calibration of HSPF by King County DNRP shows bedrock soils to have similar hydrologic response to till soils.
3. These are alluvial soils, some of which are underlain by glacial till or have a seasonally high water table. In the absence of detailed study, these soils should be treated as till soils.
4. Buckley soils are formed on the low-permeability Osceola mudflow. Hydrologic response is assumed to be similar to that of till soils.

KCRTS Land Cover Types

KCRTS supports four land cover types: forest, pasture, grass, and impervious. These cover types shall be applied in accordance with Core Requirement #3 and as specified in Table 3.2.2.C. Predevelopment land cover types are determined by whether the project is in a Basic or Conservation Flow Control Area and whether the area in question is a target surface, as defined in Section 1.2.3.1. Target surfaces within Basic Flow Control Areas and non-target surfaces are modeled as ***existing site conditions***; for target surfaces in Conservation Flow Control Areas the predeveloped condition is assumed to be ***historic site conditions***.

TABLE 3.2.2.C KCRTS COVER GROUPS AND AREAS OF APPLICATION

KCRTS Cover Group	APPLICATION	
	Predevelopment	**Post-Development**
Forest	All forest/shrub cover, irrespective of age.	All permanent (e.g., protected by covenant or CAO designation) onsite forest/shrub cover, irrespective of age, planted at densities sufficient to ensure 80%+ canopy cover within 5 years.
Pasture	All grassland, pasture land, lawns, and cultivated or cleared areas, except for lawns in redevelopment areas with predevelopment densities in excess of 4 DU/GA.	Unprotected forest in rural residential development shall be considered half pasture, half grass. Pasture areas to be retained on large rural residential lots (10 acres or greater) may be modeled as half pasture, half grass.
Grass	Lawns in redevelopment areas with predevelopment densities in excess of 4 DU/GA.	All post-development grassland and landscaping and all onsite forested land not protected by covenant or SASA designation (except in rural areas as noted above). Pervious areas that include underdrain collection systems (e.g., grass or synthetic turf sport fields) should be modeled as 75% grass and 25% effective impervious.
Wetland	All delineated wetland areas (except cultivated/drained farmland).	All delineated wetland areas (except cultivated/drained farmland).
Impervious(1)	All impervious surfaces, including heavily compacted gravel and dirt roads, parking areas, etc., and open water bodies (ponds and lakes).	All impervious surfaces, including compacted gravel and dirt roads, parking areas, etc., and open water bodies, including onsite detention and water quality ponds.(2)

(1) Impervious acreage used in KCRTS computations should be the **effective impervious area (EIA)**. This is the gross impervious area multiplied by the effective impervious fraction (see Table 3.2.2.E, p. 3-29). Non-effective impervious areas are considered the same as the surrounding pervious land cover.

(2) To avoid iterations in the facility sizing process, the "assumed size" of the facility need only be within 80% of the final facility size when modeling its contribution of runoff from direct rainfall.

The following four factors were considered in specifying the above land cover types to be used in hydrologic analysis with KCRTS:

- Cover types are applied to anticipate ultimate land use conditions. For example, probable clearing of woodland after development is nominally complete suggests that the post-development land use be specified as grassland (either pasture or grass) unless the forest cover is protected by covenant.
- In areas of redevelopment, there are often significant changes between the predevelopment and post-development efficiencies of the drainage system. For example, in conversion of low density residential areas to higher density land use, impervious areas prior to redevelopment may not be efficiently connected to a drainage system (e.g., downspouts draining to splash blocks, ditched instead of piped roadway systems). These problems are addressed by defining an "effective impervious fraction" for existing impervious areas and by generally requiring predevelopment grasslands to be modeled as pasture land.
- All onsite, predevelopment forest/shrub cover and all offsite forest/shrub cover is defined as "forest," irrespective of age. Post-development onsite land use is defined as forested only if forested areas are in a critical area buffer or are otherwise protected and will have a minimum 80% canopy cover within 5 years. In urban areas, unprotected onsite forest cover should be treated as grass in the post-development analysis. In rural areas, unprotected forest cover should be assumed 50% grass, 50% pasture.
- The HSPF grass parameters were developed by the USGS study of regional hydrology and have generally been interpreted as providing the hydrologic response for "urban" grasslands (lawns, etc.), which have relatively low infiltration rates and are drained effectively. The HSPF "pasture" parameters were developed by King County DNRP to provide a hydrologic response intermediate to the USGS forest and grass parameters, as might be typified by ungrazed or lightly grazed pasture with good grass cover. Because it is impossible to adequately control grassland management after development, all **post-development grassland should be modeled as "grass"** (with the exception of unprotected forest, and pasture areas on large lots, in rural development as noted above). All **predevelopment grassland should be modeled as "pasture"** except for redevelopment of areas with predevelopment land use densities of 4 DU/GA or greater (which are modeled as grass).

❑ CALCULATION OF IMPERVIOUS AREA

Total Impervious Coverage

Table 3.2.2.D (p. 3-28) lists percent impervious coverage for use in KCRTS analysis of **existing** residential areas. The tabulated figures are useful in offsite analysis that includes large developed residential areas, making a detailed survey of impervious coverage impractical.

Impervious coverage for **proposed** residential and commercial development must be estimated for each specific proposal. Impervious coverage of streets, sidewalks, hard surface trails, etc., shall be taken from layouts of the proposal. House/driveway or building coverage shall be as follows:

- For urban residential development, the assumed impervious coverage shall not be less than 4,000 square feet per lot or the maximum impervious coverage permitted by code (K.C.C. 21A.12.030), whichever is less.
- For rural residential development, the assumed impervious coverage shall not be less than 8,000 square feet per lot or the maximum impervious coverage permitted by code, whichever is less.
- For commercial or multi-family development, impervious coverage shall be estimated from layouts of the proposal.

Effective Impervious Area

The net hydrologic response of an impervious area depends on whether that area is effectively connected (usually by pipes or a channel) to a storm drainage system. The impervious area that the user inputs to

KCRTS is the "Effective Impervious Area" (EIA), the total impervious area multiplied by the **effective impervious fraction**. See Table 3.2.2.E, p. 3-29 for effective impervious fractions that apply to standard impervious surfaces. Table 1.2.3.C lists effective impervious factions for alternative materials and approaches.

Non-effective impervious area (i.e., total impervious area less EIA) is assumed to have the same hydrologic response as the immediately surrounding pervious area. For example, for existing residential areas with rooftops draining to splash pads on lawns or landscaping, the non-effective portion of the roof areas would be treated as pasture for predevelopment conditions (if DU/GA < 4.0) and grass for post-development conditions. *Note: Credits for infiltration/dispersion of downspouts on individual lots in proposed single family residential subdivisions are applied separately on a site-specific basis (see Note 3,* Table 3.2.2.E*).*

The effective impervious fraction can be selected from Table 3.2.2.E or determined from detailed ***site*** surveys. With the exception of figures for compacted gravel and dirt roads and parking lots, the figures in Table 3.2.2.E are average figures cited by the USGS (Dinicola, 1990).

TABLE 3.2.2.D PERCENT IMPERVIOUS COVERAGE FOR EXISTING RESIDENTIAL AREAS

Dwelling Units/Gross Acre	% Impervious[1]	Dwelling Units/Gross Acre	% Impervious
1.0 DU/GA	15[2]	4.5 DU/GA	46
1.5 DU/GA	20	5.0 DU/GA	48
2.0 DU/GA	25	5.5 DU/GA	50
2.5 DU/GA	30	6.0 DU/GA	52
3.0 DU/GA	34	6.5 DU/GA	54
3.5 DU/GA	38	7.0 DU/GA	56
4.0 DU/GA	42	7.5 DU/GA	58
For PUDs, condominiums, apartments, commercial businesses, and industrial areas, percent impervious coverage must be computed.			

Notes:

(1) Includes streets and sidewalks.

(2) These figures should be adjusted by the effective impervious fraction given in Table 3.2.2.E, if applicable. Values from Table 3.2.2.E may be interpolated as necessary.

TABLE 3.2.2.E EFFECTIVE IMPERVIOUS FRACTION[1]		
Land Use	**Predevelopment**	**Post-Development**
Commercial, Industrial, or Roads with Collection System	0.95	1.00
Multi-Family or High Density Single Family[2] (>4 DU/GA)	0.80	1.00[3]
Medium Density Single Family[2] (4 DU/GA)	0.66	1.00[3]
Low Density Single Family[2] (1 DU/GA)	0.50	1.00[3]
Rural[2] (< 1 DU/GA)	0.40	1.00[3]
Gravel/Dirt Roads and Parking Lots, Roads without Collection System	0.50	0.50

Notes:

(1) The *effective impervious fraction* is the fraction of actual total impervious area connected to the drainage system. These figures should be used in the absence of detailed surveys or physical inspection (e.g., via pipe, channel, or short sheet flowpath).

(2) Figures for residential areas include roadways.

(3) Section 5.2 outlines where the use of Flow Control BMPs may be used to reduce the effective impervious area of the project

Example

Determining the KCRTS land use data for an existing 20-acre residential area, with an average lot size of 9600 square feet (4.5 DU/GA), surrounding a 5-acre forested open space tract would entail the following calculations:

From Table 3.2.2.D, the portion of basin assumed impervious at 4.5 DU/GA

Total Impervious = 0.46 x 20 acres = 9.2 acres
Existing Pervious (grass) = 20 acres - 9.2 acres = 10.8 acres
Existing Pervious (forest) = 5 acres

From Table 3.2.2.E, the effective impervious area

Effective Impervious Fraction = 0.8 (at 4.5 DU/GA)
Effective Impervious Area = 0.8 x 9.2 acres = 7.36 acres
Non-Effective Impervious Area = 9.2 acres - 7.36 acres = 1.84 acres

Add the non-effective impervious area to the area of the surrounding pervious land cover.

Total Grass Area = 10.8 acres + 1.84 acres = 12.64 acres
Total Forest Area = 5 acres
Effective Impervious Area = 7.36 acres

These are the acreages that would be input into the KCRTS model when creating the time series.

3.2.2.2 TIME SERIES STATISTICAL ANALYSIS

When using KCRTS to size flow control, water quality, and conveyance facilities, design flows and durations must be determined through statistical analysis of time series data generated by KCRTS. KCRTS provides for statistical analysis of both **flow frequency** and **flow duration** as described in this section. *Flow frequency analysis* is used for determining design peak flows while *flow duration analysis* is used for determining durations of flow exceedance.

❑ FLOW FREQUENCY ANALYSIS

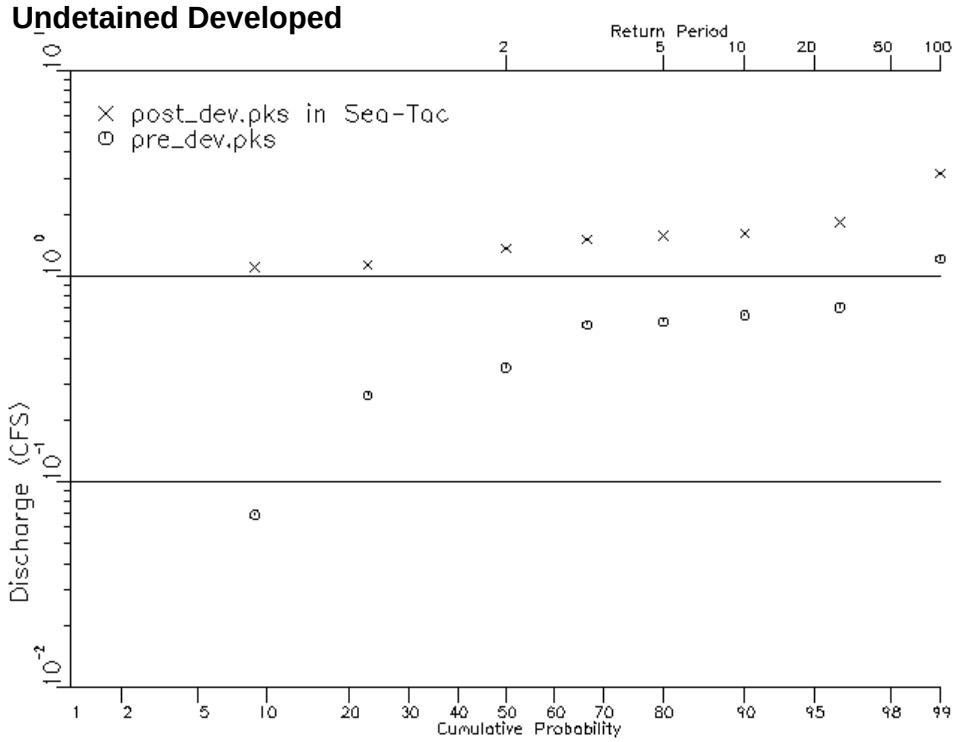
Flow frequency is a commonly used but often misunderstood concept. The *frequency of a given flow* is the average return interval for flows equal to or greater than the given flow. The *flow frequency* is actually the inverse of the probability that the flow will be equaled or exceeded in any given year (the *exceedance probability*). For example, if the exceedance probability is 0.01, or 1 in 100, that flow is referred to as the 100-year flow. Assuming no underlying changes in local climate, one would expect to see about 10 peak annual flows equal to or greater than the 100-year flow in a 1,000-year period. Similarly, the 2-year flow is the flow with a probability of 0.5, or 1 in 2, of being equaled or exceeded in any given year. In a 100-year period, one would expect to observe 50 peak annual flows greater than or equal to the 2-year flow. The number of peak annual flows actually equal to the 2-year flow may be zero, since peak annual flows come from a continuous spectrum.

There are many **methods for estimating exceedance probabilities** and therefore flow frequencies. The *USGS Bulletin 17B* methods are commonly used, as are graphical methods using the Gringorten, Cunane, or Weibull plotting schemes (Maidment, 1993). Graphical methods for flow frequency estimation involve assigning exceedance probabilities, and therefore return intervals, to each annual peak in a series of annual peak observations, and then plotting the peak flows against their assigned return periods. This plot is known as a *flow-frequency curve*, and it is a very useful tool for analyzing flood probabilities. Examples of flow-frequency curves for a small basin under various conditions are shown in Figure 3.2.2.B (p. 3-31).

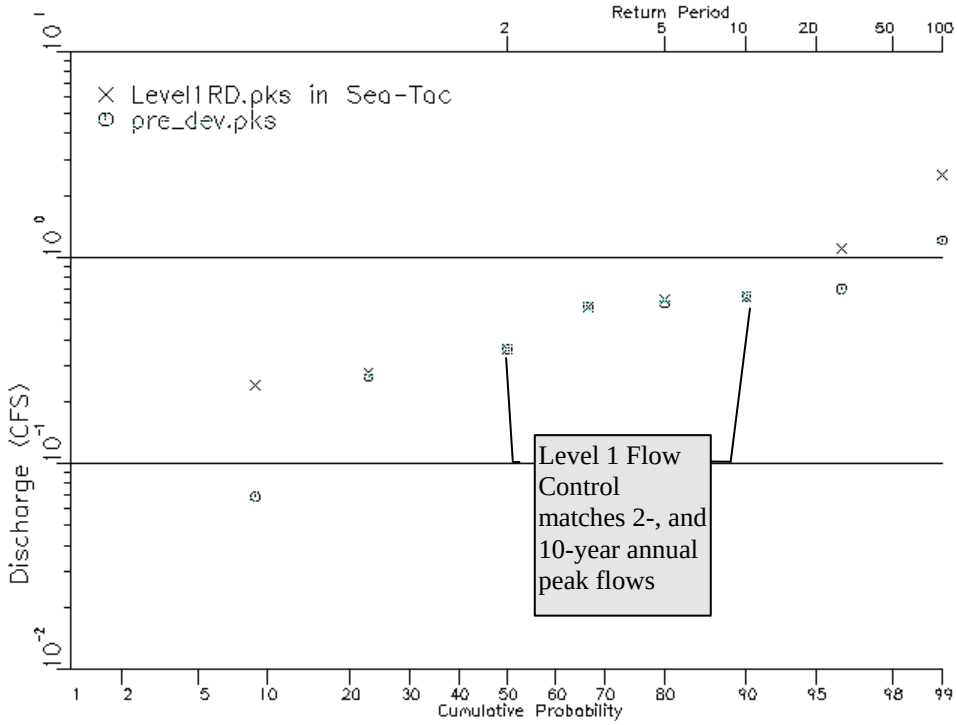
Flow-frequency curves are used in continuous flow simulations to determine the effect of land use change and assess the effectiveness of detention facilities. Using continuous methodology to design detention facilities to control peak flows, the analyst must match the post-development (detained) and predevelopment flow-frequency curves at the frequencies of interest, as shown in Figure 3.2.2.B (p. 3-31), rather than match specific design events as when using an event model. KCRTS provides flow-frequency estimates and graphs flow-frequency curves from time series of either flow rates or water levels.

FIGURE 3.2.2.B EXAMPLE FLOW FREQUENCY ANALYSIS

Undetained Developed



Detained Developed



Flow frequency information is derived from the time series flow file by plotting the peak annual events in the runoff file and calculating runoff frequencies using a Log Pearson distribution. The **return periods calculated in KCRTS** are: 100-year, 25-year, 10-year, 5-year, 3-year, 2-year, 1.3-year and 1.1-year. The 50-year return event is an interpolated value using the 25-year and 100-year return events

❑ FLOW DURATION ANALYSIS

Flow durations are important because they show the change in duration of all high flows rather than the change in frequency of the peak annual flows. Channel scour and bank erosion rates rise proportionally with increases in flow durations. Flow duration analysis can only be conducted with continuous flow models or from gage records.

A *flow duration curve* is simply a plot of flow rate against the percentage of time that the flow rate is exceeded. In a continuous flow model, the *percent exceedance* of a given flow is determined by counting the number of time steps during which that flow is equaled or exceeded and dividing that number by the total number of time steps in the simulation period. Flow duration curves are usually plotted with a linear flow scale versus a log scale of percent exceedance. The log scale for exceedance percentage is used because geomorphically significant flows (flows capable of moving sediment) and flows that exceed the 2-year flow typically occur less than one percent of the total time.

Durations for Flow Control Standards

The **Level 2 flow control standard** described in Section 3.1.2 (p. 3-5) requires matching predevelopment and post-development flow duration curves for all flows greater than one-half of the 2-year flow up to the 50-year flow.

KCRTS provides flow duration curves for either flows or water levels. To support facility design, KCRTS will create a *"target" predevelopment duration curve* for the range of flows being analyzed. To simplify design, **brief excursions**[1] above the target predevelopment duration curve are allowed for flows greater than 50 percent of the predevelopment 2-year. These excursions shall not increase the discharge by more than 10% at any duration level and must be strictly below the target curve at the low end of the range of control from 50% of the 2-year peak flow to the 2-year peak flow. This allows efficient design using only two orifices for most applications; see the *KCRTS Computer Software Reference Manual* for a detailed example. An example of a flow duration analysis is shown in Figure 3.2.2.C (p. 3-33).

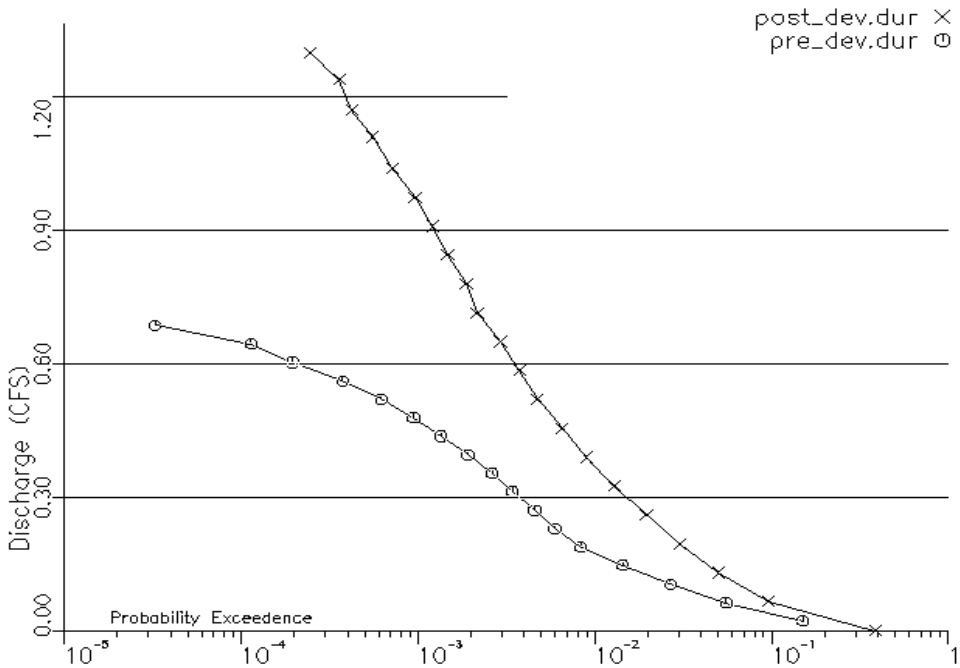
The **Level 3 flow control standard** matches predevelopment and post-development flow durations over the same range of predevelopment flows as the Level 2 flow control standard. In addition, the 100-year post-development peak flow must be contained within the facility and controlled to predevelopment levels. This standard provides additional storage volume over the Level 2 flow control facility, which substantially mitigates the impacts of increased volumes of surface runoff on downstream, volume-sensitive flooding problems.

The **Level 1 flow control standard** does not require flow duration analysis because it addresses peak flows only.

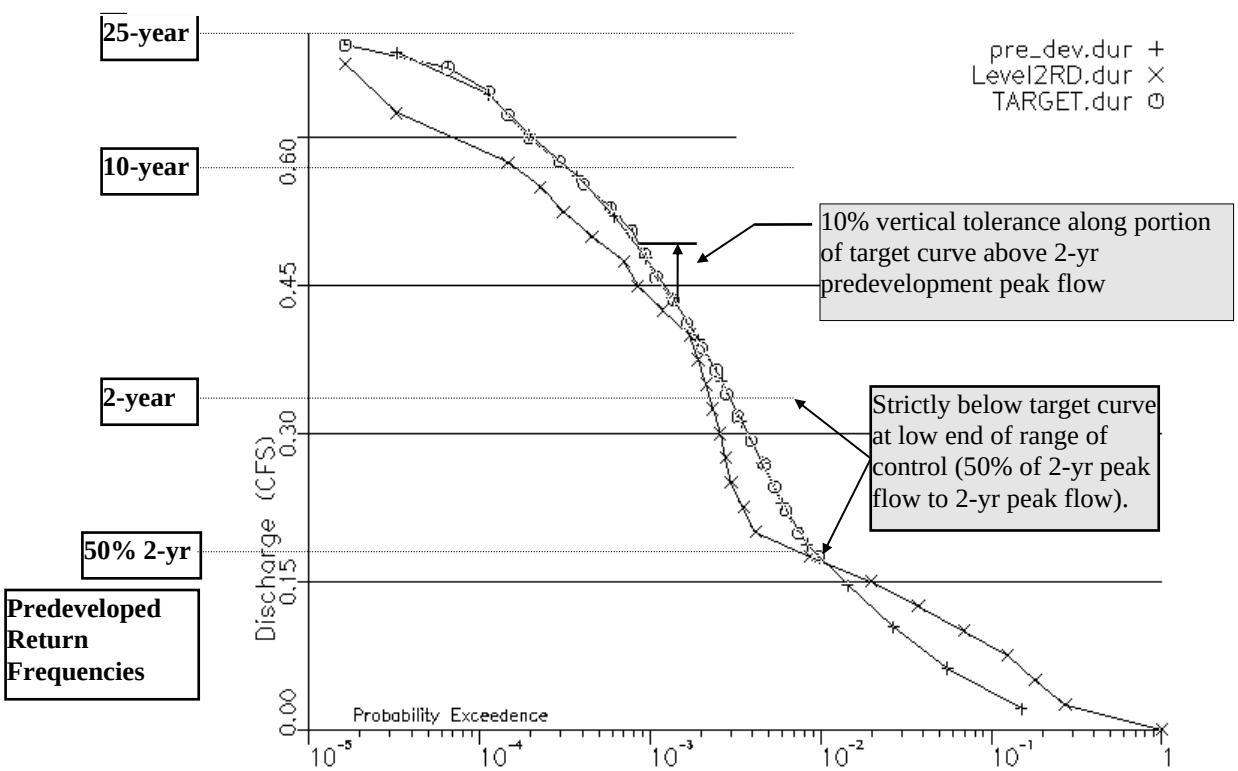
[1] Brief excursions may not result in more than 50% of the target duration curve being exceeded.

FIGURE 3.2.2.C EXAMPLE FLOW DURATION ANALYSIS

Undetained Developed



Detained Developed



3.2.3 HSPF MODEL

HSPF is the parent model from which the KCRTS Runoff Files method is built. It is a very versatile continuous hydrologic/hydraulic model that allows for a complete range of hydrologic analysis. This model has been extensively used in King, Snohomish, and Thurston counties and found to be an accurate tool for representing hydrologic conditions in this area. The USGS has developed **regional parameters** to describe the common soil/cover combinations found in this area. In many cases, these regional parameters can be used to represent rainfall/runoff relationships in lieu of ***site***-specific calibration parameters.

Unfortunately, the HSPF model is very difficult to use. Design engineers using HSPF should study this model in detail and obtain training before using it on a project. For these reasons, the HSPF model is recommended only for large and complex projects where the capabilities of KCRTS are too limited.

The strengths of HSPF relative to KCRTS are as follows:

1. HSPF can be calibrated to local conditions.
2. HSPF can model, link, and route many separate subbasins.
3. HSPF includes the groundwater component of streamflow.
4. HSPF can address groundwater connections and perform low-flow analysis.
5. HSPF can handle more complex hydrologic routing (e.g., evaporation, seasonal infiltration, etc.).

*The HSPF model is generally recommended for large **sites** where these additional features are required for comprehensive hydrologic and/or hydraulic analysis.* Anyone planning a project that is large enough to require Large Project Drainage Review and submittal of a Master Drainage Plan (MDP) per Section 1.1.2.4 should meet with DDES MDP review staff regarding appropriate hydrologic analysis prior to initiating such analysis. If a project subject to Large Project Drainage Review drains to a wetland, a salmonid stream with low-flow sensitivities, or a ***critical aquifer recharge area***, it is likely that the County will require a calibrated HSPF model. If such a project drains to erosion-sensitive streams or has features with complex hydraulics, the County may recommend or require an HSPF model using the USGS regional parameters. Smaller or less sensitive subbasins within a MDP area can be analyzed with KCRTS.

Additional data is required to develop an HSPF model. At a minimum, development of an HSPF model requires collection of onsite rainfall data for a period from seven to twelve months. This data is used to determine which regional long-term rainfall record is most appropriate for modeling the ***site*** and for determining transposition factors for the long-term records. If calibration is required, the onsite rainfall data is used. Calibration also requires the installation of flow gages and the collection of flow data against which simulated flows can be compared. HSPF analysis is based on simulations with long-term rainfall records (greater than 30 years). Long-term precipitation records in HSPF format can be obtained from the County for the Sea-Tac, Landsburg, and Carnation gages.

Land surface representation with HSPF follows the same procedures and classification as used with KCRTS.

Conceptually, the outputs required from an HSPF analysis are consistent with those required from a KCRTS analysis, including frequency and durational analysis. Flow and/or water level frequencies shall be estimated using the full set of annual peaks from the long-term simulations using the *USGS Bulletin 17B* methods as well as the Gringorten or Cunane graphical methods. Durational analyses can be produced from the HSPF model and the results presented graphically. If a wetland is modeled, water level analyses may be required. Monthly, seasonal, and annual water balance and flow information, if appropriate, can be calculated with the HSPF model.

3.2.4 STORAGE ROUTING/WATER LEVEL ANALYSIS METHODS

This section presents the methods used for sizing and analyzing detention storage and determining water levels for ponding water bodies. It begins with an introduction to the *level pool routing technique* (the basic method of storage routing used in King County) and then describes how this technique is used by KCRTS for storage routing of runoff time series and assessment of water levels.

❑ INTRODUCTION TO LEVEL POOL ROUTING

The level pool routing technique is one of the simplest and most commonly used routing methods. It is described in the *Handbook of Applied Hydrology* (Chow, Ven Te, 1964) and elsewhere, and it is based on the continuity equation:

Inflow - Outflow = Change in storage

$$\left[\left(\frac{I_1 + I_2}{2}\right) - \left(\frac{O_1 + O_2}{2}\right)\right] = \frac{\Delta S}{\Delta t} = S_2 - S_1 \qquad (3\text{-}7)$$

where I = inflow at time 1 and time 2
O = outflow at time 1 and time 2
S = storage at time 1 and time 2
Δt = time interval, t_2 - t_1

The time interval, Δt, must be consistent with the time interval of the inflow hydrograph or time series. As indicated in Section 3.2.2, the time interval used for sizing and analyzing flow control facilities can be either 15 minutes or 60 minutes as specified in Table 3.2.2.A (p. 3-23). The Δt variable can be eliminated by dividing it into the storage variables to obtain the following rearranged equation:

$$I_1 + I_2 + 2S_1 - O_1 = O_2 + 2S_2 \qquad (3\text{-}8)$$

If the time interval, Δt, is in minutes, the units of storage S are now [cf/min] which can be approximated to cfs by multiplying by 1 min/60 sec.

The terms on the left-hand side of the equation are known from the inflow time series and from the storage and outflow values of the previous time step. The unknowns O_2 and S_2 can be solved using the stage-storage and stage-discharge relationships for the storage facility being analyzed or sized. The level pool routing procedure calls for this calculation to be made for each time step of the inflow time series in order to generate the outflow time series for the facility. Because of the repetitive nature of this procedure, it is best performed using a computer.

The KCRTS program includes a routine, described later in this section, for executing the level pool routing procedure. Level pool routing using KCRTS requires that the stage-storage and stage-discharge relationships be determined as explained below.

Developing the Stage-Storage Relationship

The following methods and equations are used for determining the stage-storage relationships of various facility types:

Facilities with Vertical Sides

For vertical-sided facilities such as vaults, the stored volume is simply the bottom area times the height.

Ponds with 3:1 Side Slopes

For ponds with 3:1 side slopes, the stored volume can be approximated by averaging the pond surface area with the bottom area. The following equation was derived based on this assumption and for a square pond but provides a reasonable trial estimation for typical ponds of other shapes.

$$S(H) = 12\,H^3 + 6\sqrt{A_b}\,H^2 + A_b H \qquad (3\text{-}9)$$

where H = stage height (ft) or water depth above pond bottom
A_b = area of pond bottom (sf)
$S(H)$ = storage (cf) at stage height H

Note: Actual pond volumes and surface areas should be computed based on the methods outlined in Reference Section 6-B, or the following equation:

$$V = \frac{h}{3}\left(A_t + A_b + \sqrt{A_t A_b}\right) \qquad (3\text{-}10)$$

where h = *depth*
A_t = *area of top*
A_b = *area of the bottom*

Irregularly Shaped Storage Areas

The stage-storage relationship for irregularly shaped storage areas may be developed as follows:

1. Obtain topographic contours of an existing or proposed storage facility location and determine (with a planimeter or otherwise) the area enclosed by each contour. For example, in Figure 3.2.4.A (p. 3-37) each contour represents a one-foot interval. Contour 71 is the lowest portion of the facility location and represents zero storage. Contour 76 represents a potential stage of 5 feet above the bottom the facility.
2. Calculate the average end area within each set of contours. For the example in Figure 3.2.4.A, the average end area between contours 71 and 72 would be:

$$\frac{600 + 4400}{2} = 2500 \text{ sf}$$

3. Calculate the volume between each set of contours by multiplying the average end area within each set of contours by the difference in elevation. To illustrate, the volume between contours 71 and 72 would be:

$$(2500 \text{ sf})(1 \text{ ft}) = 2500 \text{ cf}$$

Similarly,

Area 72-73 = 6550 cf
Area 73-74 = 10,050 cf
Area 74-75 = 12,950 cf
Area 75-76 = 16,750 cf

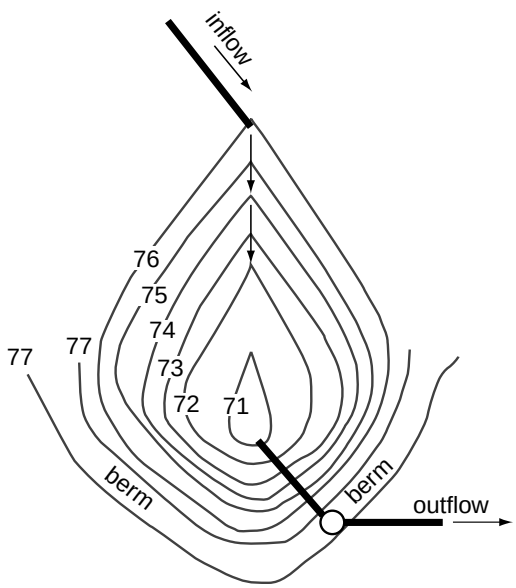
4. Define the total storage below each contour. This is just the sum of the volumes computed in the previous step up to the contour in question. For example, there is no storage below contour 71, 2500 cf below contour 72, and (6550 + 2500) = 9050 cf below contour 73.

In summary,

Contours	Stage	Sum of Volumes	Total Volume
Contours 71-72	1	0 + 2500	= 2500 cf
Contours 72-73	2	2500+ 6500	= 9050 cf
Contours 73-74	3	9050+ 10,050	= 19,100 cf
Contours 74-75	4	19,100 + 12,950	= 32,050 cf
Contours 75-76	5	32,050 + 16,750	= 48,800 cf

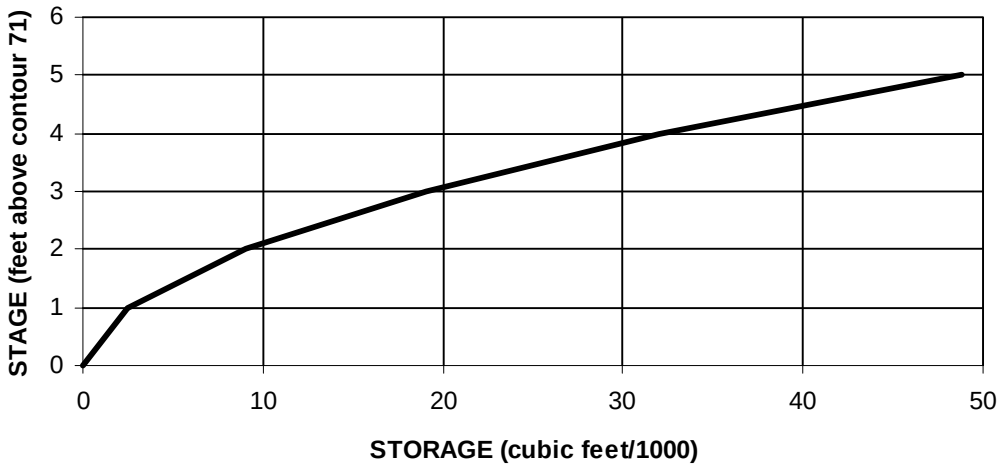
Figure 3.2.4.B below is a plot of the stage-storage relationship for this example.

FIGURE 3.2.4.A STORAGE AREA CONTOURS AT ONE-FOOT INTERVALS



Area within each contour	
71	600 sq. ft.
72	4400 sq. ft.
73	8700 sq. ft.
74	11,400 sq. ft.
75	14,500 sq. ft.
76	19,000 sq. ft.

FIGURE 3.2.4.B STAGE-STORAGE RELATIONSHIP



Developing the Stage-Discharge Relationship

The stage-discharge relationship is determined by computing the peak discharge rate for each stage height used in the stage-storage relationship. Peak discharge rates are computed using the appropriate flow equation(s) or headwater data corresponding to the type of outlet present or proposed.

❑ LEVEL POOL ROUTING USING KCRTS

KCRTS supports level pool routing of time series as described in the preceding pages. To analyze an existing storage facility, the stage-storage and stage-discharge relationships are defined as explained above and input into KCRTS as "routing data." When sizing a new facility, KCRTS will automatically define these relationships. In addition to surface discharges, the user may define a stage variable permeable area and a constant infiltration rate for a storage feature. Infiltrated runoff is not saved to an outflow time series. Infiltration rates for most soils in King County under saturated conditions are slow, and permeable areas and infiltration rates are usually set to zero for simplicity. See Section 5.4 for considerations on the use of infiltration.

Routing is performed with the **Route-1 Outlet (single discharge), Route-2 Outlet (dual discharge-"flow splitter"), and Facility routines of KCRTS** as described in the program documentation. Whenever a time series is routed through a storage feature, KCRTS automatically generates an outflow time series containing both flow and stage records. In addition to normal applications as a flow time series, the time series can be analyzed for water levels in the storage feature.

❑ ASSESSING WATER LEVEL STATISTICS WITH KCRTS

KCRTS allows analysis of time series for water level statistics in the same manner as with flow statistics. Using the outflow time series, KCRTS can plot stages over a one-month time period, estimate return frequencies for various stages, plot a **stage-frequency curve**, and conduct **stage duration analysis**. The only water level analysis specifically required by this manual is **stage frequency analysis**. Other water level analysis capabilities are supported by KCRTS, but are not required anywhere in this manual.

Stage frequency analysis consists of estimating and plotting recurrence estimates for water levels within a storage feature in the same manner as flow frequency analysis is conducted for discharges. Stage frequency analysis is required for assessing runoff impacts to offsite closed depressions and ponding areas as required under Core Requirements 2 and 3, and as discussed Section 3.3.6, "Point of Compliance Analysis" (p. 3-49).

❑ ASSESSING ANNUAL AVERAGE RUNOFF VOLUMES WITH KCRTS

The Compute Volume routine, in the KCRTS Analysis Tools menu, can be used to compute the volume of runoff (surface + interflow) of a time series. For the reduced runoff files, the analysis is performed over the first 7 years (10/01/00 - 09/30/07); for the historical runoff files, the entire period of record is used. The total volume is divided by the number of full water years being analyzed to determine the annual average runoff volume.

3.3 HYDROLOGIC DESIGN PROCEDURES AND CONSIDERATIONS

This section presents the design procedures and considerations for sizing flow control facilities to meet the required hydrologic performance specified in Core Requirement #3, Section 1.2.3. It includes the following procedures and special considerations for proper hydrologic design:

- "General Hydrologic Design Process," Section 3.3.1
- "Flow Control Design with KCRTS," Section 3.3.2 (p. 3-41)
- "Conveyance System Design with KCRTS," Section 3.3.3 (p. 3-44)
- "Safety Factors in Hydrologic Design," Section 3.3.4 (p. 3-45)
- "Design Options for Addressing Downstream Drainage Problems," Section 3.3.5 (p. 3-46)
- "Point of Compliance Analysis," Section 3.3.6 (p. 3-49)
- "Onsite Closed Depressions and Ponding Areas," Section 3.3.7 (p. 3-52).

3.3.1 GENERAL HYDROLOGIC DESIGN PROCESS

This section presents the general process involved in conducting a hydrologic analysis using the runoff computation and analysis methods in Section 3.2 to design flow control facilities for a project. The process is described as follows:

1. Review the **core and special requirements** in Chapter 1 to determine all requirements that will apply to the proposed project.
   a) Determine the applicable flow control standard (outflow performance criteria and land cover assumptions).
   b) If downstream drainage problems are identified through offsite analysis per Core Requirement #2, determine if they will necessitate additional onsite flow control or other measures as described in Section 3.3.5 (p. 3-46).
2. Determine and demonstrate in the Technical Information Report (see Section 2.3) the **predeveloped conditions** per Core Requirement #3, Flow Control (see Section 1.2.3).
3. Identify and delineate the drainage basin for each ***natural discharge location*** from the ***project site***.
   a) Identify **existing drainage features** such as streams, conveyance systems, detention facilities, ponding areas, depressions, wetlands, etc.
   b) Identify existing land uses.
   c) Identify soil types using SCS soil survey or onsite evaluation.
   d) Convert SCS soil types to KCRTS soil classifications.
4. Select and delineate **appropriate subbasins**, including subbasins tributary to major drainage features and important conveyance points, and subbasins for separate computation of onsite flows and offsite flows.
5. Determine **hydrologic parameters** for each subbasin under predeveloped conditions.
   a) Determine appropriate rainfall region and regional scale factor.
   b) Categorize soil types and land cover per Table 3.2.2.B (p. 3-25) and Table 3.2.2.C (p. 3-26).
   c) Determine total impervious areas and effective impervious areas within each subbasin.
   d) Determine areas for each soil/cover type in each subbasin.

6. Determine the **runoff time series** for predeveloped conditions at each ***natural discharge location***.
   a) Compute the predeveloped condition runoff time series for each subbasin using hourly time steps.
   b) **For subbasins that drain to a drainage feature with significant detention storage** (e.g., existing detention facilities, ponding areas, closed depressions), route the runoff time series through the feature per the storage routing methods in Section 3.2.4 (p. 3-35). This will yield an attenuated flow series, which becomes the effective runoff time series for that subbasin.
   c) Sum the appropriate subbasin runoff time series to obtain the total runoff time series for each ***natural discharge location***.
   d) Determine the 100-year peak flow for each ***natural discharge location***.
7. Repeat Steps 4 through 6 for the proposed post-development condition.
8. Compare the **100-year peak flows** for the appropriate predeveloped and post-development conditions at each ***natural discharge location***.
   a) Check the "**Discharge Requirements**" criteria in Core Requirement #1 to determine the acceptable manner of discharge from the ***project site*** (using **existing conditions**).
   b) Check the **flow control exemptions** in Core Requirement #3 to determine if a flow control facility is required (using ***existing site*** or ***historic site conditions***, as specified in Core Requirement #3).
   c) Check the requirement for **bypass of runoff from non-target surfaces** in Core Requirement #3 to determine if runoff from non-target surfaces must be conveyed around onsite flow control facilities (using **existing conditions**).
9. If flow control facilities are required, determine their location and make any necessary adjustments to the developed condition subbasins.
10. **Design and size each flow control facility** using the methods described in Section 3.2 and the KCRTS design procedure in Section 3.3.2.
    a) Analyze the appropriate predeveloped condition runoff time series to determine target release rates for the proposed facility. *Note: If the target release rates are zero, an infiltration facility will be required.*
    b) Compute the post-development runoff time series for the proposed facility.
    c) Use the post-development runoff time series and an iterative process to size the facility to meet the required level of performance set forth in Core Requirement #3. See the *KCRTS User's Guide* for procedures in sizing flow control facilities using continuous flow series.
11. **Design required onsite conveyance systems** using the appropriate runoff computation method (either the Rational method or KCRTS/Runoff Files method with 15-minute time steps) as specified in Section 3.2 (p. 3-9).

3.3.2 FLOW CONTROL DESIGN WITH KCRTS

Flow control facility design using the KCRTS *Size a R/D Facility* routine involves four basic steps:

1. Determining the statistical characteristics (peaks or durations) of predevelopment hourly flows which set the targets for the facility release rates,
2. Developing preliminary facility volume and orifice configuration using the Test Inflow Hydrograph List,
3. Routing post-development flow time series through the preliminary facility to check performance, and
4. Iteratively revising the facility and checking performance until the target flow conditions are achieved.

Instead of using individual design rainfall events as in an event model, the design of the facility is based on simulation of the facility's performance using the 8-year time series record of simulated post-development flows, and on comparison of the outflow record to characteristics of the predevelopment flow record. The design engineer uses several month-long test hydrographs for preliminary facility sizing and orifice adjustment, but final design is not achieved until the full 8-year outflow time series meets the target flow specifications.

Detention facility design with a continuous model is based on aggregate flow statistics, not upon individual storms. *When designing detention facilities with a continuous model like KCRTS, the return period of the peak flow leaving the facility for a particular event may not have the same return period as the peak flow entering the facility during the same event.* Unlike event models, continuous models have natural variability in the ratio of storm peak and volume. This lack of correspondence in the return periods of peak inflows and outflows in continuous models means that facility design using KCRTS is more complicated than with an event method and in general has to be done on an iterative trial-and-error basis to obtain an optimal (i.e., least volume) design.

The effect of detention facilities in controlling peak flows is dependent on both the volume and peak of the inflowing hydrograph. *Generally, it is high volume storms rather than high intensity storms that cause detention facilities to fill and overtop.* KCRTS-produced hydrographs, based on historical rainfall data, show considerable variability in the relationships between peak flows and storm volumes. For example, one event produced by high rainfall intensities in a relatively short duration storm may produce high peak flows with a relatively small hydrograph volume. By contrast, a second rainfall event may have relatively low intensities but long duration, producing a runoff hydrograph with large volumes and relatively small peak. Due to this natural variability, the peak annual outflows from a detention facility may not correspond in time to the annual peaks of the inflow record.

Similarly, the predevelopment peak annual flows may not occur during the same storm as the peak annual flows for the post-development flow series. This is because the types of storms that produce high flows from undeveloped land covers are different from those that produce high flows from impervious surfaces. Forests generate high streamflows in response to long-duration, high-volume rainfall events that soak the soil profile, whereas impervious surfaces produce the highest flow rates in response to high precipitation intensity. This is another reason why detention facility design with a continuous flow model is based on aggregate flow statistics, not upon individual storm hydrographs.

The following is a recommended procedure for hydrologic design of detention/infiltration facilities using KCRTS. Specific guidance for conducting hydrologic analysis and design with KCRTS is provided in the *KCRTS Computer Software Reference Manual*.

1. **Create time series** of flows from the predevelopment area using predevelopment land cover, the post-development area tributary to the facility, any onsite post-development bypass area, and any offsite flow-through areas.
2. **Add any offsite flow-through time series** to the predevelopment flow time series to produce a time series of total predevelopment outflows from the ***project site***. Similarly, add the same offsite flow-

through time series to the time series of post-development flows tributary to the facility to produce a time series of total post-development inflows to the facility.

3. Generate **peak annual flow estimates** and **flow frequency curves** for pre- and post-development time series. If applicable, generate flow duration curves for predevelopment time series.

4. Enter the **Size a Facility routine** in KCRTS and specify initial facility specifications for the type of facility proposed. Use of two orifices is usually sufficient for most designs. If designing an infiltration facility, the bottom orifice may be elevated or zero orifices may be specified. Set the Test Inflow Hydrograph list using the post-development inflow time series.

5. Specify the **Primary Design Hydrograph (PDH).** The event specified as the PDH must have a target release rate specified. *Usually, control of only one test hydrograph in addition to the PDH is necessary for either flow frequency or flow duration control.* These test hydrographs are used as design storms to develop a preliminary facility design and simplify the revision process. The hydrographs and flow targets listed in Table 3.3.2.A below are suggested for preliminary pond and orifice sizing.

TABLE 3.3.2.A
HYDROGRAPHS AND FLOW TARGETS FOR PRELIMINARY POND & ORIFICE SIZING

	Flow Frequency Control		**Flow Duration Control**	
	Outflow Recurrence Interval	Target Pre-Development Flow Rate	Outflow Recurrence Interval	Target Pre-Development Flow Rate
Primary Design Hydrograph	10-year	10-year	50-year[(1)]	50-year[(1)]
Test Hydrograph Rank	3	--	2	
Additional Test Hydrograph	2-year	2-year	2-year	one-half the 2-year
Test Hydrograph Rank	6[(2)]	--	6[(2)]	

[(1)] With the reduced (8-year) runoff files, use the largest time step of the first seven water years.

[(2)] With the full historic runoff files, test hydrograph #7 is the event closest to a 2-year return period.

The initial **Test Inflow Hydrograph** list setup will include the storm events generating the highest annual peaks from the inflow time series. The final design is accomplished by controlling the events generating the annual peak flows from the outflow time series. It is recommended that the automatic **Event Date Notification/Update option** be used, which will notify the user of needed updates to the hydrograph event dates when the full time series is routed; see the *KCRTS Computer Software Reference Manual* for further information.

6. **Iterate the PDH** and save the designed facility.

7. Set up the **Auto-Analysis options** to execute the analysis tools needed to assess facility performance. To evaluate flow frequencies for application of the Level 1 flow control standard, the Compute Peaks and the Event Date Notification options should be turned on.

8. **Route** the complete pond inflow time series through the facility. The outflow time series is automatically saved and the analysis tools performed. Frequent routing of the full time series is necessary while adjusting the facility in order to keep the hydrograph list consistent with the events generating the highest outflows. *Note: In KCRTS version 4.0 and later, this process has been automated when using the Automatic Iteration function.*

9. **Adjust orifice configuration and iterate the PDH until desired performance is achieved.** The calculated outflow peaks for the test hydrograph list should remain in descending order. Repeat Step 8 if the relative rank of the test hydrographs changes.

10. **Verify the pond performance** by routing the complete time series of inflows and checking the post-development peak flows and/or durations at the ***project site*** boundary against the target flows and/or durations (see the criteria for "Evaluating Flow Control Performance" provided below). Update the test inflow hydrograph dates as needed to keep the test hydrographs event dates current with the annual peaks of the post-development time series at the ***project site*** boundary. Repeat Steps 8-10 as necessary to achieve the desired performance and to produce an optimal design.

Evaluating Flow Control Performance

Evaluating the performance of facility designs intended to provide **flow frequency control** is comparatively straightforward: the post-development facility annual peak flows should be strictly less than or equal to predevelopment annual peak flows at each of the specified return periods.

Evaluating the design performance of detention facilities providing **flow duration control**, however, generally requires several iterations. In fact, considerable time could be spent attempting to match predevelopment and post-development duration curves. Some flexibility in assessing the adequacy of fit is clearly needed to expedite both design and review. Therefore, flow duration designs will be accepted as meeting performance standards when the following conditions are met:

1. The post-development **flow duration curve** lies strictly on or below the predevelopment curve at the **lower limit of the range of control** (between 50% of the 2-year and the 2-year).[2]

2. **At any duration within the range of control**, the post-development flow is less than 1.1 times the predevelopment flow.

3. The **target duration curve** may not be exceeded along more than 50% of the range of control.

4. The **peak flow at the upper end of the range of control** (reduced, 25-year; historical, 50-year) may not exceed predeveloped levels by more than 10%.

[2] For small projects, the lower limit of the range of control is considered met with a minimum diameter (0.5 inches) lower orifice in a low head facility (maximum effective storage depth of 3 feet) where full duration control cannot be achieved at the lower limit. Predeveloped flow durations, within allowed tolerances, must be met for all flows above the best achievable lower limit.

3.3.3 CONVEYANCE SYSTEM DESIGN WITH KCRTS

This section provides guidance for use of the KCRTS/Runoff Files method in determining peak flows for the design and analysis of conveyance elements, overflow structures, and other peak flow sensitive drainage features. KCRTS should not be used to determine peak flows for areas less than 10 acres in size unless there are significant storage features (see Section 3.2).

Rainfall events that create the highest rates of runoff from developed areas are typically shorter in duration and are characterized by brief periods of high intensity rainfall. To simulate the runoff from higher intensity, shorter duration rainfall events, **a 15-minute time series is used** and **flowpath adjustments** are made to the time series to account for the specific hydrologic response of the catchment.

To make flowpath adjustments to a time series, the user specifies the length and slope of the longest unconcentrated drainage pathway for the impervious and grass land cover types. Runoff is unconcentrated until collected into a drainage facility such as an open channel, catch basin, pond, depression, etc. Drainage pathways are measured from the farthest point in the catchment to the collection point and are aligned perpendicular to topographic contours.

The flowpath adjustments of 15-minute time series are accomplished by accessing a different set of runoff files containing the rainfall excess values for the impervious and grass land cover types. The *rainfall excess* is the portion of the total rainfall that is available as surface runoff but has not been routed across the landscape to the collection point of the drainage system. KCRTS utilizes standard routing equations to perform the surface routing along the user-defined flowpath.

The following is a recommended **procedure for hydrologic design and analysis of conveyance facilities using KCRTS:**

1. Select and delineate **appropriate subbasins**.
   a) Select separate subbasins for major drainage features and important conveyance points.
   b) Identify existing land covers offsite and post-development land covers onsite.
   c) Identify soil types by using the SCS soil survey or by directly evaluating the ***site***.
   d) Convert SCS soil types to KCRTS soil classifications.
2. Determine **hydrologic parameters** for each subbasin.
   a) Determine appropriate rainfall region and regional scale factor.
   b) Categorize soil types and land cover per Table 3.2.2.B (p. 3-25) and Table 3.2.2.C (p. 3-26).
   c) Determine total impervious areas and effective impervious areas within each subbasin.
   d) Determine areas for each soil/cover type in each subbasin.
   e) Identify the longest flowpath for each land cover type.
   f) Determine the length and slope of the longest unconcentrated flowpath for each post-development land-use type. *Note: The forest, pasture, and wetlands land covers are not as sensitive to variations in surface flowpath. Therefore, KCRTS will not prompt for lengths and slopes from these land covers, and will access the normal (regionally calibrated) runoff files without* ***site****-specific calibration to surface flowpaths.*
3. Determine **peak flows** for the conveyance element being analyzed.
   a) Compute the runoff time series for each subbasin, using 15-minute time steps and specifying the flowpath data for the post-development land covers.
   b) Sum the appropriate subbasin runoff time series, accounting for travel time lags, to obtain the total runoff time series tributary to the drainage feature being analyzed.

c) Conduct a **flow frequency analysis** on the total runoff time series. From this analysis the 10-year, 25-year, and 100-year peak flows can be determined. These design flows can then be used to size or assess the capacity of pipe systems, culverts, channels, spillways, and overflow structures.

3.3.4 SAFETY FACTORS IN HYDROLOGIC DESIGN

It is often appropriate to apply safety factors to detention volumes or conveyance design flows. This manual does not require safety factors for detention or conveyance design, but it does recommend the use of safety factors when the designer believes the results of KCRTS are not sufficiently conservative given local conditions. *The KCRTS methodology does not include inherent safety factors as it is meant to account for "average" conditions. On a particular **site**, KCRTS may overestimate or underestimate flow rates and detention volumes.*

Within any soil/cover group, there is a range of hydrologic response dependent on local soil and geologic conditions for which the KCRTS methodology does not account. The USGS regional parameters for HSPF that were used to create the runoff files produce "average" runoff time series that overestimate peak flows in some basins and underestimate them in others. Similarly, the detention volumes designed with KCRTS for a given conversion type are in the middle of the range of volumes that would be created if exact local hydrologic conditions were known for every project of that type. Therefore, some of the detention facilities designed with KCRTS are oversized and some are undersized, depending on variable ***site*** conditions.

Because of the uncertainty in local hydrologic response, King County recommends, but does not require, that a volume safety factor of 10% be applied to all detention facilities. If downstream resources are especially sensitive, or if the designer believes that KCRTS significantly overestimates predevelopment flows or underestimates post-development flows, a volume safety factor of up to 20% may be appropriate. If a volume safety factor is applied to a detention facility, the volume should be increased by the given percentage at each one-foot stage increment. Safety factors for conveyance systems should be evaluated with respect to the potential damages and costs of failures due to backwatering, overtopping, etc. Applications of safety factors fall strictly within a professional engineer's judgment and accountability for design. Section 4 of the Technical Information Report should state what safety factor was applied to the design of the flow control facility.

3.3.5 DESIGN OPTIONS FOR ADDRESSING DOWNSTREAM DRAINAGE PROBLEMS

This section explains the rationale behind the problem-specific mitigation criteria summarized in Chapter 1, Table 1.2.3.A, and it presents acceptable options for addressing the three primary types of downstream drainage problems defined in Core Requirement #2.

1. ***Conveyance system nuisance problems***
2. ***Severe erosion problems***
3. ***Severe flooding problems***.

If one or more of these problems is identified through offsite analysis per Core Requirement #2, the applicant must demonstrate that the proposed project will not create or significantly aggravate the problem. This may require additional analysis, onsite flow control, and/or offsite improvements sufficient to ensure no aggravation of these problems. To reduce the need for extra analysis and to aid in the selection of measures to prevent aggravation, a set of options corresponding to each of the three types of downstream drainage problems is explained in this section. Each option details the extent to which additional measures are needed to prevent aggravation based on the flow control standard being applied to the ***project site***.

❑ OPTIONS FOR ADDRESSING CONVEYANCE SYSTEM NUISANCE PROBLEMS

Problem Description: Overflow from a downstream conveyance system has or is predicted to cause nuisance flooding/erosion of a yard, a pasture, or one side of a roadway for runoff events less than or equal to the 10-year event.

The two options detailed below are acceptable measures for preventing the creation or aggravation of this problem. A combination of these two options may also be used if demonstrated to meet the same performance goals. Other options may be possible through a more rigorous design procedure using the **point of compliance analysis** technique described in Section 3.3.6 (p. 3-49).

The extent of additional onsite flow control or offsite improvements needed depends on the minimum area-specific flow control standard already being applied to the proposed project per Section 1.2.3.1.

Option 1—Additional Onsite Flow Control

- **If Level 1 is the area-specific flow control standard** per Section 1.2.3.1, then expand its performance criteria to match the post-development discharge rate for the 10-year return period to the ***existing site conditions*** discharge rate for the return period T_r at which the conveyance system overflows. *Note: Determining T_r requires a minimum Level 2 downstream analysis as detailed in Chapter 2. To avoid this analysis, a T_r of 2 years may be assumed.*

  Intent: This criteria is intended to prevent creation or aggravation of the problem for runoff events less than or equal to the 10-year event by eliminating the ***project site's*** contribution to conveyance system overflows during these events.

- **If the Level 2 or Level 3 flow control standard** is being applied onsite, no additional flow control is needed. The duration-matching criteria of these standards already prevent aggravating increases in overflow volume by maintaining, or in some cases reducing, the discharge volumes of ***existing site conditions*** for peak flows greater than 50% of the 2-year peak flow.

Option 2—Offsite Improvements

- **If the Level 1 flow control standard** is being applied onsite, then make improvements to the existing conveyance system per Core Requirement #4 (see Section 1.2.4).

- **If the Level 2 or Level 3 flow control standard** is being applied onsite, no offsite improvements are necessary.

❑ OPTIONS FOR ADDRESSING SEVERE EROSION PROBLEMS

Problem Description: A downstream channel, ravine, or slope area has or is predicted to experience severe erosion and/or incision that poses a sedimentation hazard to downstream conveyance systems or poses a landslide hazard by undercutting a steep slope.

The two options detailed below are considered acceptable measures for preventing aggravation of this problem.

The extent of additional onsite flow control or offsite improvements needed depends on the minimum area-specific flow control standard already being applied to the proposed project per Section 1.2.3.1.

Option 1—Additional Onsite Flow Control

- **If Level 1 is the area-specific flow control standard**, then **apply Level 2 instead**, assuming ***existing site conditions*** as the predevelopment condition per Section 1.2.3.1. This standard prevents aggravating increases in the durations of flow exceedance that contribute to erosion.
- **If the Level 2 or Level 3 flow control standard** is being applied onsite, no additional flow control is needed. The duration-matching criteria of these standards prevent aggravating increases in the durations of flow exceedance that contribute to erosion.

Note: If the proposed project's discharge is such that previously unconcentrated flows will be concentrated onto a highly erodible area, DDES may require a tightline system through the area regardless of the level of onsite flow control being provided. This should be addressed with DDES in a predesign meeting.

Option 2—Offsite Improvements

- **If the Level 1 flow control standard** is being applied onsite, then make tightline, channel armoring, or bioengineered improvements to safely convey discharge from the ***project site*** through the severely eroded area.
- **If Level 2 is the required area-specific flow control standard**, offsite tightline or channel armoring improvements may, in some cases, be used to reduce this standard if those improvements drain by non-erodible manmade conveyance to a ***major receiving water*** listed in Section 1.2.3.1. In some cases, DDES may require a tightline if the risk of damage is high.
- **If Level 3 is the required area-specific flow control standard**, offsite tightline or channel armoring improvements may, in some cases, be required by DDES where the risk of damage is high.

❑ OPTIONS FOR ADDRESSING SEVERE FLOODING PROBLEMS

Problem Description: Overflow from a downstream conveyance system, or the elevated water surface of a downstream pond, lake, wetland, or closed depression, has or is predicted to cause a ***severe building flooding problem*** or a ***severe roadway flooding problem***. Such problems, by definition, occur during runoff events less than or equal to the 100-year event. See Section 1.2.2.1 for a more detailed description of severe building and roadway flooding problems.

The two options detailed below are acceptable measures for preventing the creation or significant aggravation of this problem. A combination of these two options may also be used if demonstrated to meet the same performance goals. Other options may be possible through a more rigorous design procedure using the **point of compliance analysis** technique described in Section 3.3.6 (p. 3-49).

The extent of additional onsite flow control or offsite improvements needed depends on the minimum area-specific flow control standard already being applied to the proposed project per Section 1.2.3.1.

Option 1—Additional Onsite Flow Control

- **If Level 1 is the area-specific flow control standard**, then **apply Level 3 instead**, assuming ***existing site conditions*** as the predevelopment condition AND comply with the special provision for closed depressions stated below, if applicable. Also, if the problem is caused by conveyance system overflows, the duration-matching criteria of **Level 3 may be modified** to match post-development discharge durations to predevelopment discharge durations for the range of predevelopment discharge rates between that which corresponds to the return period T_r of conveyance system overflow and the 50-year peak flow, assuming ***existing site conditions*** for the predevelopment condition. *Note: Determining T_r requires a minimum Level 2 downstream analysis as detailed in Chapter 2. To avoid this analysis, a T_r of 2 years may be assumed.*

  Intent: The intent behind Level 3 flow control is described in Section 1.2.3.1. The modified version of Level 3 is intended to prevent aggravating increases in overflow volume, duration, and peak flow for runoff events less than or equal to the 100-year event.

- **If Level 2 is the area-specific flow control standard** (i.e., the project is within a Conservation Flow Control Area), then **apply Level 3 instead**, assuming ***historic site conditions*** as the predevelopment condition AND comply with the special provision for closed depressions stated below, if applicable.

- **If Level 3 is the area-specific flow control standard**, then comply with the special provision for closed depressions stated below, if applicable.

Special Provision for Closed Depressions

If the amount of impervious surface area proposed by the project is greater than or equal to 10% of the 100-year water surface area of the closed depression, then use the **point of compliance analysis** technique described in Section 3.3.6 (p. 3-49) to verify that water surface levels are not increasing for the return frequencies at which flooding occurs, up to and including the 100-year frequency. If necessary, iteratively adjust onsite flow control performance to prevent increases.

Intent: This provision is intended to be applied to those developments that are large enough to have a significant impact on the water surface levels of a closed depression. For such developments, the provision is intended to more closely examine the hydrologic characteristics of the depression to ensure no significant aggravation of the flooding problem. Characteristics such as the infiltration rate or the influence of groundwater fluctuations can be highly variable and difficult to measure, which may entail wet season monitoring for proper analysis.

Option 2—Offsite Improvements

- **If the Level 1 or Level 2 flow control standard** is being applied onsite and the problem is caused by conveyance system overflows, then make improvements to the existing conveyance system sufficient to prevent the ***severe flooding problem***. If the problem is caused by the elevated water surface of a pond, lake, wetland, or closed depression, then make improvements to the live storage volume or discharge characteristics of the water body in question such that water surface levels for the frequencies at which flooding occurs are not increased, OR make improvements to elevate the flooding building or roadway above the 100-year water surface.

- **If the Level 3 flow control standard** is being applied onsite and the special provision for closed depressions is applicable, then make improvements as described above for the Level 1 and Level 2 flow control standards. Otherwise, offsite improvements are not required.

3.3.6 POINT OF COMPLIANCE ANALYSIS

The *point of compliance* is the location where flow control performance standards are evaluated. In most cases, the point of compliance is the outlet of a proposed detention facility where, for example, 2- and 10-year discharges must match predevelopment 2- and 10-year peak flow rates.

The point of compliance for hydrologic control moves downstream of the detention facility outlet or the property boundary under the following circumstances:

1. The proposed project discharges to an **offsite closed depression with a *severe flooding problem*** per Section 1.2.2, and the project adds impervious surface greater than or equal to 10% of the 100-year water surface area of the closed depression (see Table 1.2.3.A). In these cases, the closed depression becomes the point of compliance, and the engineer must ensure that ***project site*** runoff does not aggravate the flooding problem (or create a new flooding problem).
2. The proposed project includes an **onsite runoff bypass,** a small developed area that bypasses the flow control facility (see Section 1.2.3.2). In such cases, runoff from the remainder of the ***project site*** is overdetained so that the sum of the detained and undetained flows meets the required flow control performance standard. The point of compliance for such projects is where the onsite bypass flows join the detained flows.
3. The proposed project **bypasses offsite flows** around an onsite closed depression, ponding area, or wetland (see Section 3.3.7, p. 3-52). As with onsite bypasses, the point of compliance in this case is where detained flows converge with the bypassed flows.

The **Facility Sizing routine within KCRTS** allows the user to analyze the facility performance at a downstream point of compliance through the Automatic Analysis routine.

*Note: When controlling flow durations at a downstream point of compliance to demonstrate no adverse impact, the 10% tolerance specified for Level 2 performance (p. 3-32) may **not** be used. Predevelopment condition flow durations should be matched to the extent feasible for all flows above the level of concern. The resultant facility should also be checked to verify that the minimum onsite performance standard (e.g., Level 1, Level 2, or Level 3 per Section 1.2.3.1) has also been met.*

❑ OFFSITE CLOSED DEPRESSIONS

If a project drains to an offsite closed depression with existing or potential flooding problems, then the water surface levels of the closed depression must not be allowed to increase for return frequencies at which flooding occurs, up to and including the 100-year frequency. This section describes the point of compliance analysis necessary to size detention facilities discharging to such a closed depression.

The closed depression is first modeled (using the ***site's*** predevelopment condition) to determine the return frequency at which flooding currently occurs and the water levels associated with return frequencies in excess of this frequency. These flooding levels and their probabilities dictate the detention performance for the proposed development. The proposed detention facility is then iteratively sized such that discharge from the ***site's*** post-development condition does not increase water surface levels for the frequencies at which flooding occurs—that is, after development, water level frequency curves must match for all frequencies equal to or greater than the frequency at which flooding occurs (up to the 100-year water level).

The infiltration rate must be determined in order to accurately model the closed depression. *In the case of a closed depression with an existing flooding problem, the infiltration rate is most realistically depicted by calibrating the model to known flooding events.* This should be done using the full historical runoff files (available on request from DNRP) and setting the closed depression outflow (infiltration) such that recorded or anecdotal levels of flooding occur during the same storm events in the historical record.

Where a flooding problem might be created by discharge of post-development flows to a closed depression, and in the absence of information on dates and water surface levels in the closed depression during past runoff events, infiltration rates must be determined through testing as follows:

- For a closed depression without standing water, two or more **test pits** should be dug in the bottom of the closed depression to a depth of 10 feet or to the water table, whichever is reached first. The test pits shall be dug under the supervision of a geotechnical engineer, and a test pit log shall be kept. Evidence of high water table shall be noted.
- If the test pit reveals deep homogeneous permeable material with no evidence of a high water table, then infiltration tests shall be performed in the bottom of the closed depression at locations of similar elevation and on opposite sides of the bottom area (as feasible). **Surface infiltration rates** shall be determined using the methods for assessing measured infiltration rates included in Section 5.4. The measured rates should be used directly, without applying correction factors.
- If the closed depression has standing water or is a SAO-defined wetland, or if test pits show evidence of a high water table or underlying impermeable material, then procedures for determining infiltration rates will be established on a case-by-case basis in coordination with DDES geologists.
- In the event that a closed depression with a documented ***severe flooding problem*** is located on private property and all reasonable attempts to gain **access to the closed depression** have been **denied**, the Level 3 flow control standard shall be applied with a 20% factor of safety on the storage volume.

❑ ONSITE RUNOFF BYPASS

It is sometimes impractical to collect and detain runoff from an entire project area, so provisions are made to allow undetained discharge from onsite bypass areas (see Section 1.2.3.2) while overdetaining the remainder of the runoff to compensate for unmitigated flows. A schematic of an onsite runoff bypass is shown in Figure 3.3.6.A (next page).

For projects employing onsite runoff bypass, flow control performance standards are evaluated at the point of compliance, the point where detained and undetained flows from the ***project site*** are combined.

Point of Compliance Analysis for Onsite Bypass Areas

1. Create a **predeveloped condition runoff time series** for the entire project area including the predevelopment detained area and the predevelopment bypass area. Determine **flow targets** (either flow frequencies or durations, depending on the applicable design standard) from the predeveloped condition runoff time series.
2. Create separate **developed condition runoff time series** for the detained area and the bypass area.
3. Ensure that the flow characteristics of the developed runoff time series for the bypass area do not exceed the targets determined in Step 1 or the 0.4 cfs threshold in Core Requirement #3. If the bypass area flows exceed the targets or threshold, then the bypass is not feasible.
4. Estimate **allowable release rates** from the detention facility for each return period of interest with the following equation:

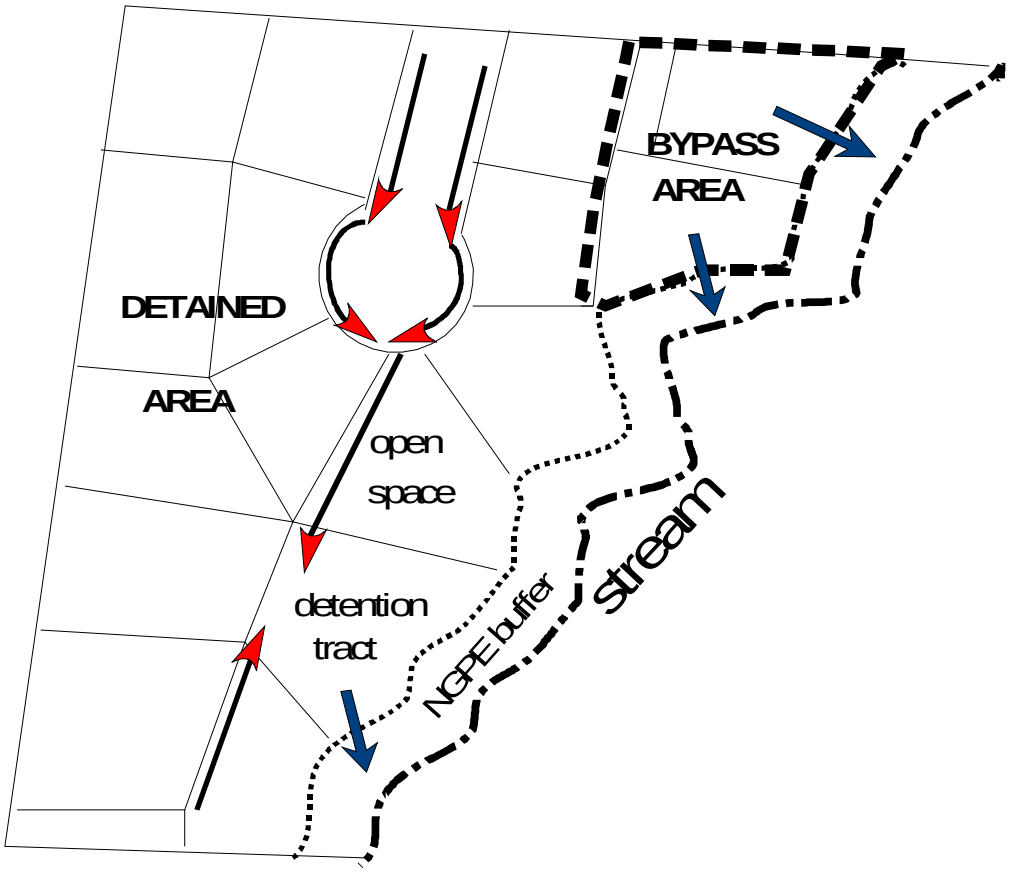
$$\text{Allowable release} = (\text{Total Project Area Flow})_{\text{predeveloped cond.}} - (\text{Bypass Area Flow})_{\text{developed cond.}}$$

Note: KCRTS version 4.0 and later supports the direct sizing of onsite detention facilities based on the results at a downstream point-of-compliance. See the KCRTS Software Documentation for further details.

5. Develop a **preliminary design of the flow control facility** based on the estimated release rate.
6. **Route** post-development flows from the detained area through the detention facility, and create a detention facility outflow time series.
7. Determine the **total project post-development outflow** by adding the detention facility outflow runoff time series to the post-development runoff time series from the bypass area.

8. Check characteristics of the total project post-development outflow against the targets determined in Step 1.
9. If compliance is not achieved (e.g., 2- and 10-year post-development flows exceed 2- and 10-year predevelopment flows), repeat Steps 6 through 8. *Steps 6 through 8 have been automated for facility sizing by using the point of compliance option of the KCRTS (version 4.0 and later) Automatic Iteration and Automatic Analysis routines.*

FIGURE 3.3.6.A SCHEMATIC OF AN ONSITE RUNOFF BYPASS



3.3.7 ONSITE CLOSED DEPRESSIONS AND PONDING AREAS

Onsite closed depressions, ponding areas, and wetlands require special consideration when determining detention performance targets; if altered, they can shift the point of compliance downstream. However, the critical areas code (KCC 21A.24) regulates wetlands (*note that most closed depressions and ponding areas are wetlands by definition*) and generally does not permit alteration through either filling or gross hydrologic changes such as bypassing offsite flows. *Note: Post-development discharges to offsite closed depressions, ponding areas, or wetlands (with the exception of those in Flood Problem Flow Control Areas per the Flow Control Applications Map or those discussed in Section 3.3.6) are normally not required to meet special performance standards unless there is a* ***severe flooding problem*** *as defined in Section 1.2.2.*

❑ GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

The following general requirements apply to **onsite closed depressions, ponding areas, and wetlands** (referred to below as "features"):

1. **Flow attenuation** provided by onsite wetlands and ponding areas, and storage provided by onsite closed depressions must be accounted for when computing both existing onsite and offsite flows.
   - **Existing onsite flows** must be routed through onsite wetlands and ponding areas to provide accurate target release rates for the developed ***site***. *Note: Closed depressions will have no outflow for some portions of the* ***site*** *for some events, although overflow may occur during extreme events.*
   - **Existing offsite flows** will increase at the project boundary if the feature is filled or if the offsite flows are bypassed around the feature. To compensate, post-development onsite flows must be overdetained, and the point of compliance will shift downstream to where the detained flows converge with the bypassed offsite flows.
2. **If the onsite feature is used for detention**, the 100-year floodplain must be delineated considering developed onsite and existing offsite flows to the feature. *Note: Additional storage volume may be necessary within the feature, and the point of compliance is the discharge point from the feature.*
3. **If the detention facility for the proposed project discharges to an onsite wetland, ponding area, or closed depression that is not altered[3] by the proposed project, AND Level 2 or Level 3 flow control is provided**, the point of compliance is the discharge point of the detention facility, not the outlet of the onsite feature. If Level 1 flow control is being provided, the point of compliance is the outlet of the onsite feature.

❑ FLOODPLAIN DELINEATION FOR LAKES, WETLANDS, CLOSED DEPRESSIONS, AND PONDING AREAS

A minor floodplain analysis is required for onsite or adjacent lakes, wetlands, and closed depressions that do not have an approved floodplain or flood hazard study (see Section 4.4.2; note the exceptions). Minor floodplain studies establish an assumed base flood elevation below which development is not allowed.

The following are guidelines for minor floodplain analysis of volume sensitive water bodies:

1. **Create time series** representing tributary flows to the feature from the entire tributary area. Where the feature is contained entirely onsite and where no offsite flows exist, use the tributary area for the proposed developed condition.
2. **Use the full historical runoff files** (available from DNRP) to create the runoff time series.

[3] *Not altered* means existing on- and offsite flows to the feature will remain unchanged and the feature will not be excavated or filled.

3. Where the feature is only partially onsite, or where there are offsite flows to the feature, **assume the entire tributary area is fully built out under current zoning**, accounting for required open space and protected critical areas in the basin as well as impervious surfaces and grass.
4. **For potential future development, assume detention standards per Section 1.2.3.1. For simplicity the proposed detention may be simulated with a single assumed detention pond just upstream of the feature.** This pond should be sized to the appropriate detention standard and predevelopment condition assumption as noted in Section 1.2.3.1 and will require generating a predevelopment time series for the basin. Large water bodies may provide significant floodwater storage and may also be included in the analysis. Most existing detention in the basin, with exception of that providing duration control, will have little effect on the analysis and should be discounted.
5. Sum all subbasin time series to create a **single composite time series** for the drainage feature.
6. Develop **routing curves** for the feature. As appropriate, consider infiltration as an outflow for closed depressions.
7. **Route the time series** through the storage feature, generate water surface frequency curves, and note the 100-year water surface elevation.

CHAPTER 4

CONVEYANCE SYSTEM ANALYSIS & DESIGN

KING COUNTY, WASHINGTON

SURFACE WATER DESIGN MANUAL

Section 4.1	**Route Design and Easement Requirements**	**4-3**
Section 4.1.1	Route Design	4-3
Section 4.1.2	Easement and Setback Requirements	4-3
Section 4.2	**Pipes, Outfalls, and Pumps**	**4-7**
Section 4.2.1	Pipe Systems	4-7
Section 4.2.2	Outfall Systems	4-29
Section 4.2.3	Pump Systems	4-36
Section 4.3	**Culverts and Bridges**	**4-37**
Section 4.3.1	Culverts	4-37
Section 4.3.2	Culverts Providing for Fish Passage/Migration	4-51
Section 4.3.3	Bridges	4-53
Section 4.4	**Open Channels, Floodplains, and Floodways**	**4-55**
Section 4.4.1	Open Channels	4-55
Section 4.4.2	Floodplain/Floodway Analysis	4-71

CHAPTER 4

CONVEYANCE SYSTEM ANALYSIS & DESIGN

This chapter presents King County approved methods for the hydraulic analysis and design of conveyance systems. A *conveyance system* includes all portions of the surface water system, either natural or man-made, that transports surface and storm water runoff.

This chapter contains the detailed design criteria, methods of analysis, and standard details for all components of the conveyance system. In some cases, reference is made to other adopted or accepted design standards and criteria such as the *King County Road Standards (KCRS)*, the *Washington State Department of Transportation/APWA (WSDOT/APWA) Standard Specifications for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction* (most recent edition), and a King County supplement to the WSDOT/APWA standards called the *General Special Provisions*.

Chapter Organization

The information presented in this chapter is organized into four main sections:

- Section 4.1, "Route Design and Easement Requirements" (p. 4-3)
- Section 4.2, "Pipes, Outfalls, and Pumps" (p. 4-7)
- Section 4.3, "Culverts and Bridges" (p. 4-37)
- Section 4.4, "Open Channels, Floodplains, and Floodways" (p. 4-51).

These sections begin on odd pages so the user can insert tabs if desired for quicker reference.

Required vs. Recommended Design Criteria

Both required and recommended design criteria are presented in this chapter. Criteria stated using "shall" or "must" are mandatory, to be followed unless there is a good reason to deviate as allowed by the adjustment process (see Section 1.4). These criteria are **required design criteria** and generally affect facility performance or critical maintenance factors.

Sometimes options are stated as part of the required design criteria using the language "should" or "may." These criteria are really **recommended design criteria**, but are so closely related to the required criteria that they are placed with it.

4.1 ROUTE DESIGN AND EASEMENT REQUIREMENTS

This section presents the general requirements for aligning conveyance systems and providing easements and setbacks to allow for proper maintenance and inspection of all conveyance system elements.

4.1.1 ROUTE DESIGN

The most efficient route selected for new conveyance systems will result from careful consideration of the topography of the area to be traversed, the legal property boundaries, and access for inspection and maintenance. The general requirements for route design are as follows:

1. Proposed new conveyance systems should be aligned to **emulate the natural conveyance system** to the extent feasible. Inflow to the system and discharge from the system should occur at the natural drainage points as determined by topography and existing drainage patterns.

2. New conveyance system alignments in **residential subdivisions** should be located **adjacent and parallel to property lines** so that required drainage easements can be situated along property lines. Drainage easements should be located entirely on one property and not split between adjacent properties.

   Exception: Streams and natural drainage channels shall not be relocated to meet this requirement.

3. Aesthetic considerations and traffic routes may dictate the placement and **alignment of open channels**. Appropriate vehicular and pedestrian traffic crossings must be provided in the design.

4.1.2 EASEMENT AND SETBACK REQUIREMENTS

Proposed projects must comply with the following easement and setback requirements unless otherwise approved by DDES:

1. Any **onsite** conveyance system element constructed as part of **subdivision project** shall be located in a dedicated drainage easement, tract, or right-of-way that preserves the system's route and conveyance capacity and grants King County right of access for inspection, maintenance, and repair.

   Exception: Roof downspout, minor yard, and footing drains do not require easements, tracts, or right-of-way. If easements are provided for these minor drains (or for other utilities such as power, gas, or telephone), they need not comply with the requirements of this section.

   Note: except for those facilities that have been formally accepted for maintenance by King County, maintenance and repair of drainage facilities on private property is the responsibility of the property owner. Except for the inflow pipe and discharge pipe of a County-accepted flow control or water quality facility, King County does not normally accept maintenance of conveyance systems constructed through private property.

2. Any **onsite** conveyance system element constructed under a **commercial building or commercial development permit** shall be covered by the drainage facility declaration of covenant and grant of easement in Reference Section 8-J (or equivalent) that provides King County right of access for inspection, maintenance, and repair. *Note: except for those facilities that have been formally accepted for maintenance by King County, maintenance and repair of drainage facilities on private property is the responsibility of the property owner.*

3. Any **offsite** conveyance system element constructed through private property as part of a proposed project shall be located in a drainage easement per Reference Section 8-L (or equivalent). If an offsite conveyance system through private property is proposed by a project to convey runoff diverted from the ***natural discharge location***, DDES may require a drainage release covenant per Reference Section 8-K as a condition of approval of the adjustment required in Section 1.2.1.

4. A **river protection easement** per Reference Section 8-P (or equivalent) shall be required for all properties adjoining or including *major rivers*[1] as described in Table 4.1 (p. 4-5).
5. Table 4.1 (p. 4-5) lists the required **widths and building setback lines for drainage easements**. For all pipes or any channels or constructed swales greater than 30 feet wide, facilities must be placed in the center of the easement. For channels or constructed swales less than or equal to 30 feet wide, the easement extends to only one side of the facility.
6. Any portion of a conveyance system drainage easement (shown in Table 4.1) shall not be located within an **adjacent property or right-of-way**. Building setback lines may cross into adjacent property.
7. The distance between the easement line and building or other structure footings shall be no less than the **building setback line (BSBL) distance** shown in Table 4.1.

   Exception: The BSBL may be measured from the edge of a pipe in the easement plus 2 feet if all of the following conditions are met:

   a) As-builts showing the location of the pipe are submitted

   b) A geotechnical/structure analysis demonstrates stability of the proposed structure

   c) Access for maintenance/replacement remains unobstructed.

[1] *Major rivers* are defined in the King County Flood Hazard Reduction Plan.

TABLE 4.1 EASEMENT WIDTHS AND BUILDING SETBACK LINES

For Pipes: [1] **Inside Diameter (ID)**	**Easement Width**	**BSBL (From Easement)**
ID ≤ 36"	depth to invert < 8': 10 feet[2] depth to invert > 8': 15 feet	5 feet
36" < ID ≤ 60"	depth to invert < 8': 10 feet[2] depth to invert > 8': 15 feet	7.5 feet
ID > 60"	ID plus 10 feet	10 feet
For Channels and Swales: **Top Width of Channel (W)**	**Easement Width**	**BSBL (From Easement)**
W ≤ 10 feet	W plus 10 feet on one side W if no access required[3]	5 feet
10 feet < W ≤ 30 feet	W plus 15 feet on one side	5 feet
W > 30 feet	W plus 15 feet on both sides	5 feet
For Major Rivers	**Easement Width**	**BSBL (From Easement)**
See the *King County Flood Hazard Reduction Plan* for a list of the major rivers	Varies per ***site*** conditions Minimum 30 feet from stable top of bank[4]	5 feet

Notes:

(1) Pipes installed deeper than 10 feet require one of the following actions:

- Increase the BSBL such that the distance from the BSBL to the centerline of the pipe is at least 1.5 times the depth to pipe invert, or
- Place a restriction on adjacent lots that the footings be placed at a specific elevation, deep enough that the closest horizontal distance from the footing to the pipe centerline is 1.5 times the difference in elevation of the footing and pipe invert, or
- Place a restriction on adjacent lots that the footings be designed by a geotechnical engineer or licensed engineering geologist, such that excavation of the pipe may be performed without necessitating shoring of adjacent structures.

(2) Fifteen-foot easement width is required for maintenance access to all manholes, inlets, and culverts.

(3) Access is not required for small channels if the channel gradient is greater than 5% (assumes steep channels will be self-cleaning).

(4) Stable top of bank shall be as determined by King County.

4.2 PIPES, OUTFALLS, AND PUMPS

This section presents the methods, criteria, and details for analysis and design of pipe systems, outfalls, and pump-dependent conveyance systems. The information presented is organized as follows:

Section 4.2.1, "Pipe Systems"
"Design Criteria," Section 4.2.1.1
"Methods of Analysis," Section 4.2.1.2 (p. 4-19)

Section 4.2.2, "Outfall Systems"
"Design Criteria," Section 4.2.2.1 (p. 4-29)

Section 4.2.3, "Pump Systems"
"Design Criteria," Section 4.2.3.1 (p. 4-36)
"Methods of Analysis," Section 4.2.3.2 (p. 4-36)

4.2.1 PIPE SYSTEMS

Pipe systems are networks of storm drain pipes, catch basins, manholes, inlets, and outfalls designed and constructed to convey surface water. The hydraulic analysis of flow in storm drain pipes typically is limited to gravity flow; however, in analyzing existing systems it may be necessary to address pressurized conditions. A properly designed pipe system will maximize hydraulic efficiency by utilizing proper material, slope, and pipe size.

4.2.1.1 DESIGN CRITERIA

General

All pipe material, joints, protective treatment, and construction workmanship shall be in accordance with *WSDOT/APWA Standard Specifications* as modified by the *King County Road Standards*, and AASHTO and ASTM treatment as noted below under "Allowable Pipe Materials."

Note: The pipe materials and specifications included in this section are for conveyance systems installed according to engineering plans required for King County permits/approvals. Other pipe materials and specifications may be used by private property owners for drainage systems they construct and maintain when such systems are not required by or granted to King County.

Acceptable Pipe Sizes

The following pipe sizes shall be used for **pipe systems to be maintained by King County**: 8-inch (generally for use only in privately maintained systems or in special cases within road right-of-way; see *KCRS*), 12-inch, 15-inch, 18-inch, 21-inch, 24-inch, and 30-inch. For pipes larger than 30-inch diameter, increasing increments of 6-inch intervals shall be used (36-inch, 42-inch, 48-inch, etc.).

Allowable Pipe Materials

The following pipe materials are allowed for use in meeting the requirements of this manual. Refer to WSDOT/APWA 7-02, 7-03 and 7-04 for detailed specifications for acceptable pipe materials. Refer to the *King County Road Standards (KCRS)* for pipe materials allowed in King County road right-of-way.

1. Plain and reinforced concrete pipe
2. Corrugated or spiral rib aluminum pipe

3. Corrugated steel pipe, Aluminized or Galvanized[2] with treatments 1 through 6
4. Spiral rib steel pipe, Aluminized or Galvanized with treatments 1 through 6
5. Ductile iron (water supply, Class 50 or 52)
6. Lined corrugated polyethylene pipe (LCPE)[3]
7. Corrugated polyethylene pipe (CPE)[4] that is single wall and fully corrugated
8. Polyvinyl chloride (PVC)[5] pipe
9. Solid wall polyethylene pipe (SWPE; also known as HDPE pipe or HDPP)[6]

Allowable Pipe Joints

1. Concrete pipe shall be rubber gasketed.
2. CMP shall be rubber gasketed and securely banded.
3. Spiral rib pipe shall be "hat-banded" with neoprene gaskets.
4. Ductile pipe joints shall be flanged, bell and spigot, or restrained mechanical joints.
5. LCPE pipe joints shall conform to the current *WSDOT/APWA Standard Specifications*.
6. CPE single wall, fully corrugated pipe joints shall conform to the current *WSDOT/APWA Standard Specifications*.
7. PVC pipe shall be installed following procedures outlined in ASTM D2321; joints shall conform to ASTM D3212, and gaskets shall conform to ASTM F477.
8. SWPE pipe shall be jointed by butt fusion methods or flanged according to the *KCRS*.

Pipe Alignment

1. Pipes must be laid true to line and grade with no curves, bends, or deflections in any direction.

   Exception: Vertical deflections in SWPE and ductile iron pipe with flanged restrained mechanical joint bends (not greater than 30°) on steep slopes, provided the pipe drains.

2. A **break in grade** or alignment, or changes in pipe material shall occur only at catch basins or manholes.

---

[2] Galvanized metals leach zinc into the environment, especially in standing water situations. High zinc concentrations, sometimes in the range that can be toxic to aquatic life, have been observed in the region. Therefore, use of galvanized materials should be avoided. Where other metals, such as aluminum or stainless steel, or plastics are available, they shall be used. If these materials are not available, asphalt coated galvanized materials may then be used.

[3] LCPE pipe and fittings shall be manufactured from high density polyethylene resin which shall meet or exceed the requirements of Type 111, Category 3, 4 or 5, Grade P23, P33 or P34, Class C per ASTM D1248. In addition, the pipe shall comply with all material and stiffness requirements of AASHTO M294.

[4] CPE pipe (single wall, fully corrugated) is allowed only for use in private storm sewer systems such as downspout, footing, or yard drain collectors on private property (smooth interior required in road right-of-way for drainage stub-outs or perforated as subgrade drain per *KCRS*).

[5] PVC pipe is allowed only for use in privately maintained drainage systems or as allowed in road right-of-way per *KCRS*. PVC pipe must be SDR 35 or thicker and meet the requirements of ASTM D3034.

[6] SWPE pipe is normally used outside of King County right-of-way, such as on steep slope installations (see Section 4.2.2, p. 4-29). Connections to King County road drainage systems are allowed for pipe diameters of 12" or greater. SWPE pipe shall comply with the requirements of Type III C5P34 as tabulated in ASTM D1248, shall have the PPI recommended designation of PE3408, and shall have an ASTM D3350 cell classification of 345534C. The pipe shall have a manufacturer's recommended hydrostatic design stress rating of 800 psi based on a material with a 1600 psi design basis determined in accordance with ASTM D2837-69. The pipe shall have a suggested design working pressure of 50 psi at 73.4^{o} F and SDR of 32.5.

Maximum Pipe Slopes and Velocities

Table 4.2.1.A presents maximum pipe slopes and velocities by pipe material.

TABLE 4.2.1.A MAXIMUM PIPE SLOPES AND VELOCITIES

Pipe Material	Pipe Slope above which Pipe Anchors Required and Minimum Anchor Spacing	Maximum Slope Allowed	Maximum Velocity at Full Flow
CMP, Spiral Rib, PVC, CPE(1)	20% (1 anchor per 100 LF of pipe)	30%(3)	30 fps
Concrete or LCPE(1)	10% (1 anchor per 50 LF of pipe)	20%(3)	30 fps
Ductile Iron(2)	20% (1 anchor per pipe section)	None	None
SWPE(2)	20% (1 anchor per 100 LF of pipe, cross-slope installations only)	None	None

Notes:

(1) These materials are not allowed in ***landslide hazard areas***.

(2) Butt-fused or flanged pipe joints are required; above ground installation is recommended on slopes greater than 40%.

(3) A maximum slope of 200% is allowed for these pipe materials with no joints (one section), with structures at each end, and with proper grouting.

Changes in Pipe Size

1. Increase or decreases in pipe size are **allowed only at junctions and structures**. *Exceptions may be allowed per Section 7.04C of the KCRS.*
2. When **connecting pipes at structures**, match any of the following (in descending order of preference): crowns, 80% diameters,[7] or inverts of pipes. Side lateral connections[8], 12 inches and smaller, are exempt from this requirement.
3. **Drop manholes** may be used for energy dissipation when pipe velocities exceed 10 feet per second. External drop manholes are preferred where maintenance access to the upstream pipe is preserved by use of a tee section. Internal drop structures may be approved only if adequate scour protection is provided for the manhole walls. Drop structures must be individually engineered to account for design variations, such as flow rates, velocities, scour potential, and tipping forces.
4. **Downsizing** pipes larger than 12 inches may be allowed provided pipe capacity is adequate for design flows.

Note: The above criteria do not apply to detention tanks.

[7] Match point is at 80% of the pipe diameter, measured from the invert of the respective pipes.

[8] Side laterals include any 8-inch or smaller pipe connected to the main conveyance system at a catch basin, or manhole, as allowed under this manual and/or the King County Road Standards. In addition, 12-inch and smaller pipes that serve a single inlet point (e.g., roadway simple inlets, footing drains, and lot stubouts including manifold systems serving multiple residential lots) are also included. Excluded from this definition are inlet pipes which contribute 30% or more of the total flow into a catch basin, or which collect or convey flows from a continuous source.

Structures

Table 4.2.1.B lists typical drainage structures with corresponding maximum allowable pipe sizes.

1. Catch basin (or manhole) diameter shall be determined by pipe orientation at the junction structure. A **plan view of the junction structure**, drawn to scale, will be required when more than four pipes enter the structure on the same plane, or if angles of approach and clearance between pipes is of concern. The plan view (and sections if necessary) must ensure a minimum distance (of solid concrete wall) between pipe openings of 8 inches for 48-inch and 54-inch catch basins, and 12 inches for 72-inch and 96-inch catch basins.
2. Evaluation of the structural integrity for **H-20 loading,** or as required by the *King County Road Standards*, may be required for multiple junction catch basins and other structures.
3. Catch basins shall be provided within 50 feet of the **entrance to a pipe system** to provide for silt and debris removal.
4. **All SWPE pipe systems** (including buried SWPE pipe) must be secured at the upstream end. The downstream end shall be placed in a 4-foot section of the next larger pipe size. This sliding sleeve connection allows for the high thermal expansion/contraction coefficient of this pipe material.
5. The **maximum slope of the ground surface** for a radius of 5 feet around a catch basin grate or solid lid should be 5:1 to facilitate maintenance access. Where not physically feasible, a maximum slope of 3:1 (H:V) shall be provided around at least 50% of the catch basin circumference.

TABLE 4.2.1.B ALLOWABLE STRUCTURES AND PIPE SIZES

	Maximum Pipe Diameter	
Catch Basin Type[1]	**CMP, Spiral Rib, CPE, SWPE, PVC, and Ductile Iron[2]**	**Concrete LCPE**
Inlet[4]	12"	12"
Type 1[3]	18"	12"
Type 1L[3]	24"	18"
Type 2 - 48-inch dia.	30"	24"
Type 2 - 54-inch dia.	36"	30"
Type 2 - 72-inch dia.	54"	48"
Type 2 - 96-inch dia.	72"	72"

Notes:

(1) Catch basins (including manhole steps, ladder, and handholds) shall conform to *King County Road Standards.*

(2) Generally these pipe materials will be one size larger than concrete due to smaller wall thickness. However, for angled connections or those with several pipes on the same plane, this will not apply.

(3) A maximum of 5 vertical feet is allowed between finished grade and invert elevation.

(4) Inlets are normally allowed only for use in privately maintained drainage systems and must discharge to a catch basin immediately downstream.

Pipe Cover

1. Pipe cover, measured from the finished grade elevation to the top of the outside surface of the pipe, shall be **2 feet minimum** unless otherwise specified or allowed below. Under drainage easements, driveways, parking stalls, or other areas subject to light vehicular loading, pipe cover may be reduced to 1 foot minimum if the design considers expected vehicular loading and the cover is consistent with pipe manufacturer's recommendations. Pipe cover in areas not subject to vehicular loads, such as landscape planters and yards, may be reduced to 1 foot minimum.
2. Pipe cover over storm pipes in King County **road right-of-way** shall comply with the *KCRS*. Pipe **cover over concrete pipe** shall comply with Table 4.2.1.C (p. 4-11). For other pipe types, the manufacturer's specifications or other documentation shall be provided for proposed cover in excess of 30 feet. *Caution: Additional precautions to protect against crushing during construction may be needed under roadways if the road bed is included to meet minimum cover requirements. Damaged pipe shall be replaced.*
3. For proposed **pipe arches**, the manufacturer's specifications or other documentation shall be provided for proposed cover in excess of 8 feet.
4. Pipe cover over **PVC SDR 35** shall be 3 feet minimum and 30 feet maximum.

TABLE 4.2.1.C MAXIMUM COVER (FEET) FOR CONCRETE PIPE COMPACTION DESIGN A

Pipe Diameter (inches)	Plain	Class II	Class III	Class IV	Class V
12	18	10	14	21	26
18	18	11	14	22	28
24	16	11	15	22	28
30		11	15	23	29
36		11	15	23	29
48		12	15	23	29
60		12	16	24	30
72		12	16	24	30
84		12	16	24	30
96		12	16	24	30
108		12	16	24	30

Note: Compaction Design A refers to Figure 4.2.1.A (p. 4-14).

Pipe Clearances

A minimum of 6 inches vertical and 3 feet horizontal clearance (outside surfaces) shall be provided between storm drain pipes and other utility pipes and conduits. **Clearances** within King County right-of-way shall comply with the *KCRS*. When crossing sanitary sewer lines, the Washington Department of Ecology criteria shall apply. When crossing swale easements, minimum specified cover shall be increased by 6 inches.

Pipe Compaction and Backfill

Pipe compaction and backfill shall be in accordance with Figure 4.2.1.A (p. 4-14). Where pipes pass through flood containment structures, these standards shall be supplemented and modified as necessary in

accordance with standards set forth in *Corps of Engineers Manual for Design and Construction of Levees* (EM 1110-2-1913).

Pipe System Connections

Connections to a pipe system shall be made only at catch basins or manholes. No wyes or tees are allowed except on roof/footing/yard drain systems on pipes 8 inches in diameter or less, with clean-outs upstream of each wye or tee. Additional exceptions may be made in accordance with Section 7.03D of the *KCRS* and for steep slope applications of SWPE pipe, as deemed prudent by geotechnical review.

Pipe Anchors

Table 4.2.1.A (p. 4-9) presents the requirements, by pipe material, for anchoring pipe systems. Figure 4.2.1.B (p. 4-15) and Figure 4.2.1.C (p. 4-16) show typical details of pipe anchors.

Spill Control

Where spill control is required as specified in Section 1.2.4.3.G, allowable options are as follows:

a) A **tee section** (see Figure 5.3.4.A) in or subsequent to the last catch basin or manhole that collects runoff from non-roof-top ***pollution-generating impervious surface*** prior to discharge from the ***site*** or into an onsite *natural drainage feature*.[9] The tee section typically provided in a wetvault or detention facility may be used to meet the intent of this requirement. Unless otherwise specified, the riser top of the tee section shall be at or above the headwater elevation for the 10-year design flow and a minimum of 6 inches below the ceiling of the catch basin or manhole. The bottom end of the tee section shall be as illustrated in Figure 5.3.4.A.

b) An **elbow section** but only if allowed by DDES because a tee section as specified above will not fit within an existing conveyance system. If an elbow section is used, a safe overflow path must be identified for the structure.

c) A **wall section** or other device as approved by DDES that provides spill control equivalent to that of the tee section specified in a) above.

d) A **baffle or coalescing plate oil/water separator** at or subsequent to the last catch basin or manhole that collects runoff from non-roof-top ***pollution-generating impervious surface*** prior to discharge from the ***site*** or into an onsite natural drainage feature.

e) An **active spill control plan.** To use this option, the spill control plan and summary of an existing or proposed training schedule must be submitted as part of the drainage review submittal. At a minimum, such plans must include the following:

- Instructions for isolating the ***site*** to prevent spills from moving downstream (shutoff valves, blocking catch basins, etc.)
- Onsite location of spill clean-up materials
- Phone numbers to call for emergency response
- Phone numbers of company officials to notify
- Special safety precautions, if applicable.

Debris Barriers

Debris barriers (trash racks) are required on all pipes 18 to 36 inches in diameter entering a closed pipe system. Debris barriers shall have a bar spacing of 6 inches. See Figure 4.2.1.D (p. 4-17) for required debris barriers on pipe ends outside of roadways. See Figure 4.2.1.E (p. 4-18) and Section 4.3 (p. 4-37) for requirements on pipe ends (culverts) projecting from driveway or roadway side slopes.

[9] *Natural onsite drainage feature* means a natural swale, channel, stream, closed depression, wetland, or lake.

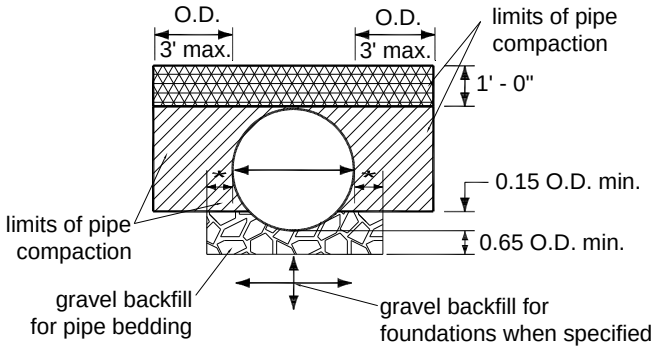
Outfalls

Outfalls shall be designed as detailed in Section 4.2.2 (p. 4-29).

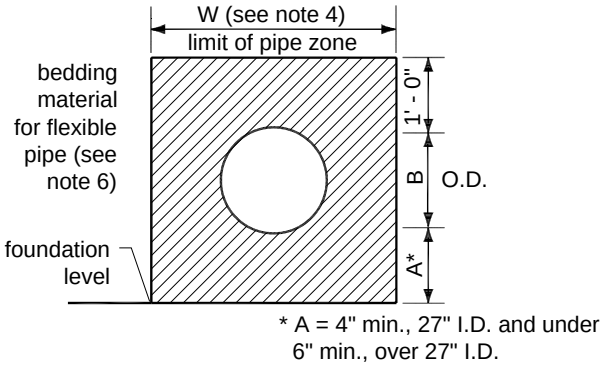
Other Details

In addition to the details shown in Figure 4.2.1.A (p. 4-14) through Figure 4.2.1.E (p. 4-18), Standard Construction Details are available in the *King County Road Standards* and *APWA/WSDOT Standard Plans for Road, Bridge and Municipal Construction*. Commonly used details include field tapping of concrete pipe, catch basins and catch basin details, manholes and manhole details, curb inlets, frames, grates, and covers.

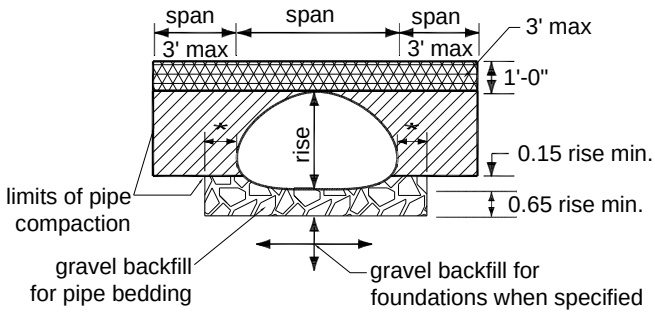
FIGURE 4.2.1.A PIPE COMPACTION DESIGNS AND BACKFILL



A. Metal and Concrete Pipe



Bedding for Flexible Pipe



B. Pipe - Installation

Rigid Pipe NOTES:

1. Pipe compaction limits shown on this plan are for pipe construction in an embankment. For pipe construction in a trench, the horizontal limits of the pipe compaction zone shall be the walls of the trench.
2. All steel and aluminum pipe and pipe-arches shall be installed in accordance with design A.
3. Concrete pipe with elliptical reinforcement shall be installed in accordance with design A.
4. Concrete pipe, plain or with circular reinforcement, shall be installed with design A.
5. O.D. is equal to the outside diameter of a pipe or the outside span of pipe-arch. The dimensions shown as O.D. with 3' maximum shall be O.D. until O.D. equals 3'; at which point 3' shall be used.

* 1'-0" for diameters 12" through 42" and spans through 50". 2'-0" for diameters greater than 42" and spans greater than 50".

Flexible Pipe NOTES:

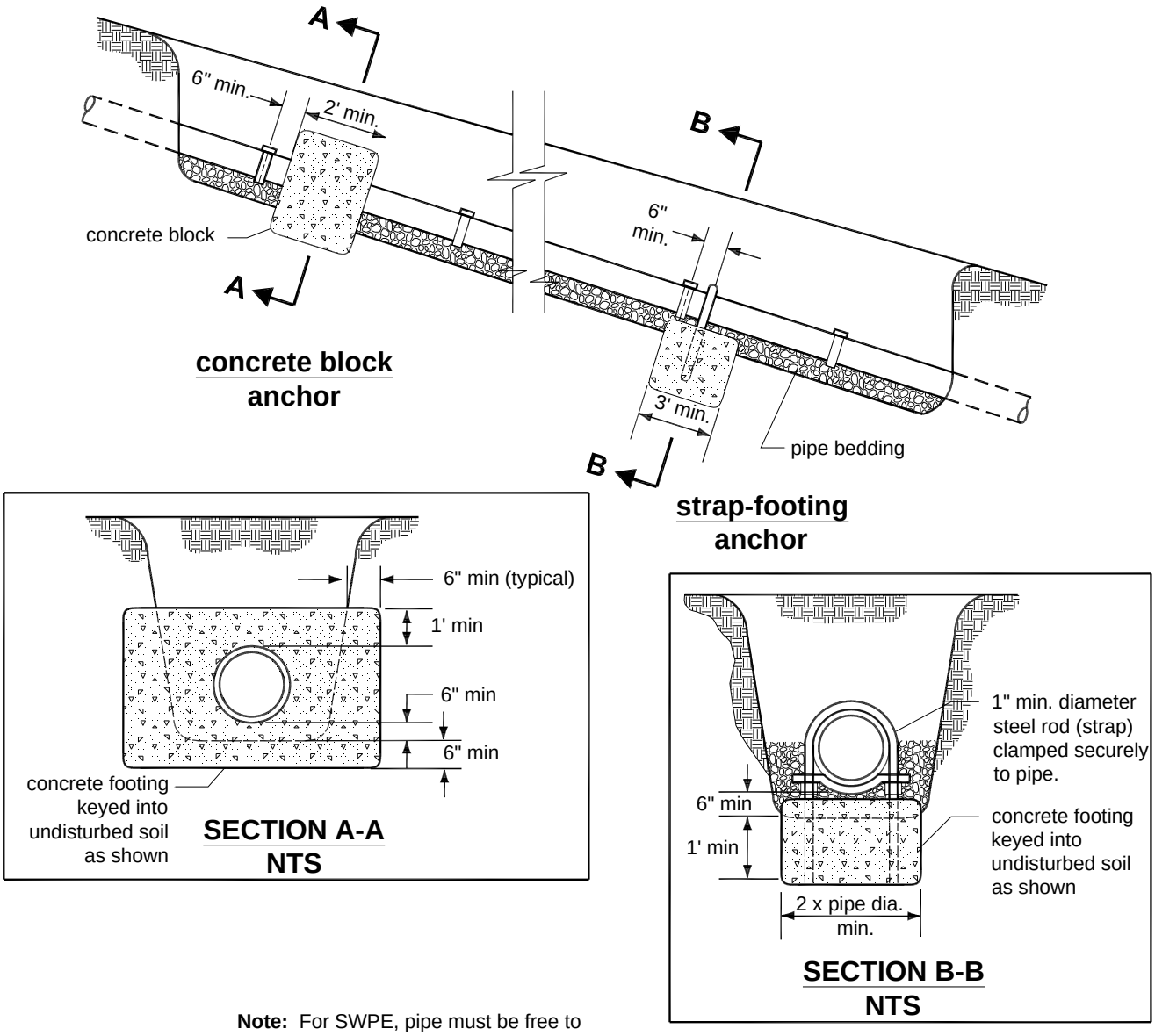
1. Provide uniform support under barrels.
2. Hand tamp under haunches.
3. Compact bedding material to 95% max. density; directly over pipe, hand tamp only.
4. See "Excavation and Preparation of Trench" in sanitary sewers section of the standard WSDOT/APWA specifications for trench width "W" and trenching options. The pipe zone will be the actual trench width. The minimum concrete width shall be $1\frac{1}{2}$ I.D. + 18".
5. Trench backfill shall conform to "Backfilling Sewer Trenches" in the sanitary sewers section of the WSDOT/APWA standard specifications, except that rocks or lumps larger than 1" per foot of pipe diameter shall not be used in the backfill material.
6. See "Bedding Material for Flexible Pipe" in aggregates section of the WSDOT/APWA standard specifications for the material specifications.

Backfill material placed in 0.5' loose layers and compacted to 95% maximum density.

Method B or C compaction (WSDOT/APWA) standard specifications.)

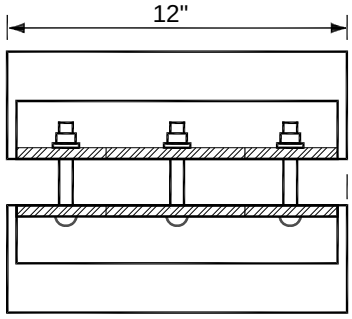
Pipe	Size	Min. dist. between barrels
circular pipe conc., LCPE, CMP (diameter)	12" to 24"	12"
	30" to 96"	diam. / 2
	102" to 180"	48"
pipe - arch metal only (span)	18" to 36"	12"
	43" to 142"	span / 3
	148" to 199"	48"

FIGURE 4.2.1.B PIPE ANCHOR DETAIL



Note: For SWPE, pipe must be free to slide inside a 4' long section of pipe one size diameter larger.

FIGURE 4.2.1.C CORRUGATED METAL PIPE COUPLING AND/OR GENERAL PIPE ANCHOR ASSEMBLY



Smooth Coupling Band for Smooth Pipe

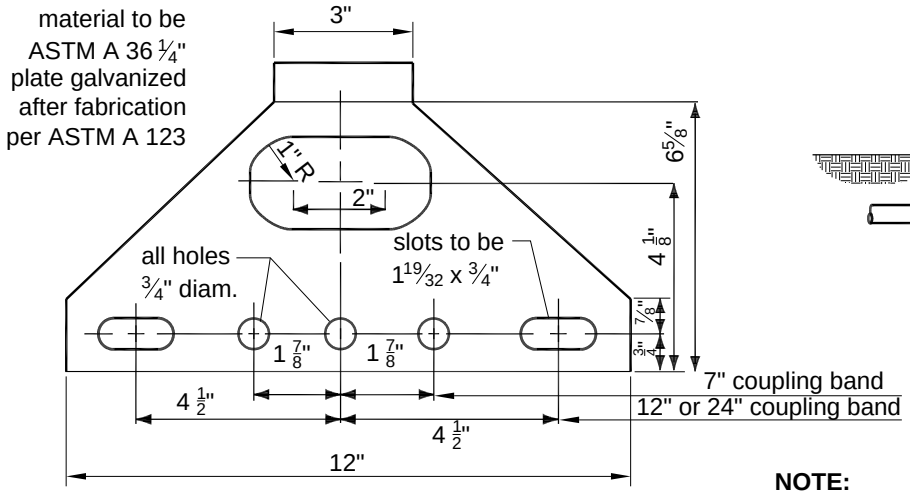
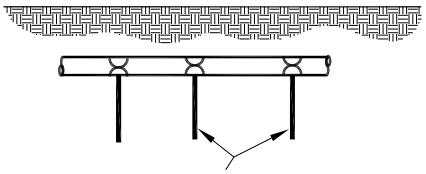
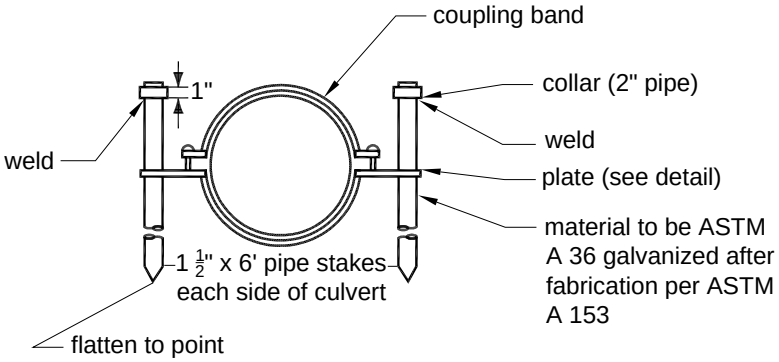


Plate Detail



pipe stakes



Anchor Assembly Corrugated Metal Pipe

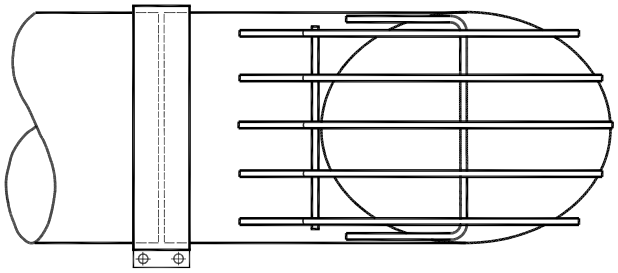
NOTE:

1. The smooth coupling band shall be used in combination with concrete pipe.
2. Concrete pipe without ball and spigot shall not be installed on grades in excess of 20%.
3. The first anchor shall be installed on the first section of the lower end of the pipe and remaining anchors evenly spaced throughout the installation.
4. If the pipe being installed has a manhole or catch basin on the lower end of the pipe, the first pipe anchor may be eliminated.
5. When CMP is used, the anchors may be attached to the coupling bands used to join the pipe as long as the specified spacing is not exceeded.
6. All pipe anchors shall be securely installed before backfilling around the pipe.

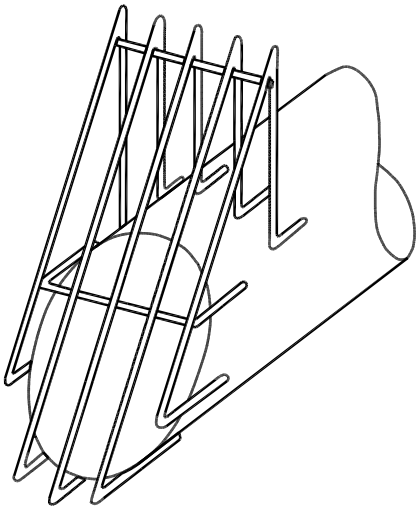
FIGURE 4.2.1.D DEBRIS BARRIER (OFF-ROAD RIGHT-OF-WAY)

NOTE:

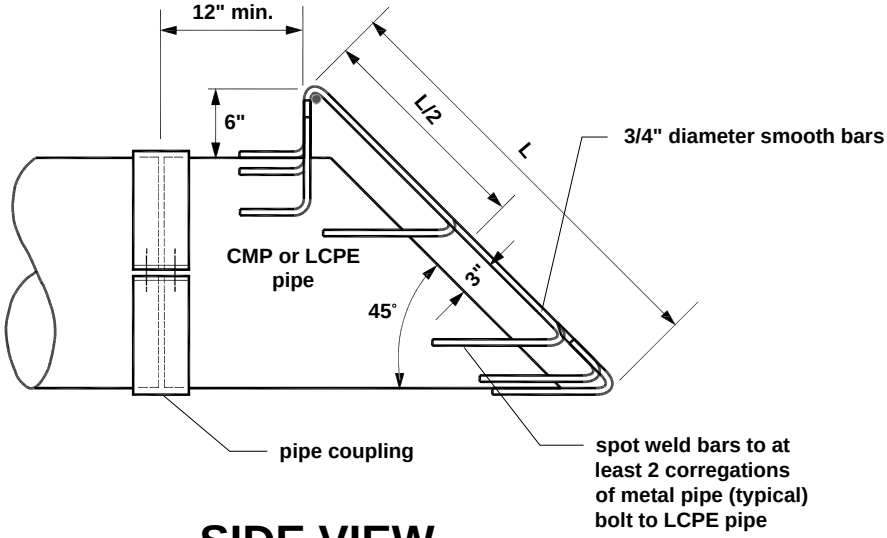
1. This debris barrier is for use outside roadways on pipes 36" dia. and smaller. See Figure 4.2.1.E for debris barriers on pipes projecting from driveway or roadway sideslopes.
2. All steel parts must be galvanized and asphalt coated (treatment 1 or better).
3. LCPE pipe requires bolts to secure debris barrier to pipe.



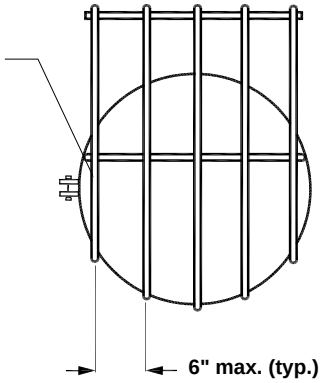
PLAN
NTS



ISOMETRIC
NTS



SIDE VIEW
NTS

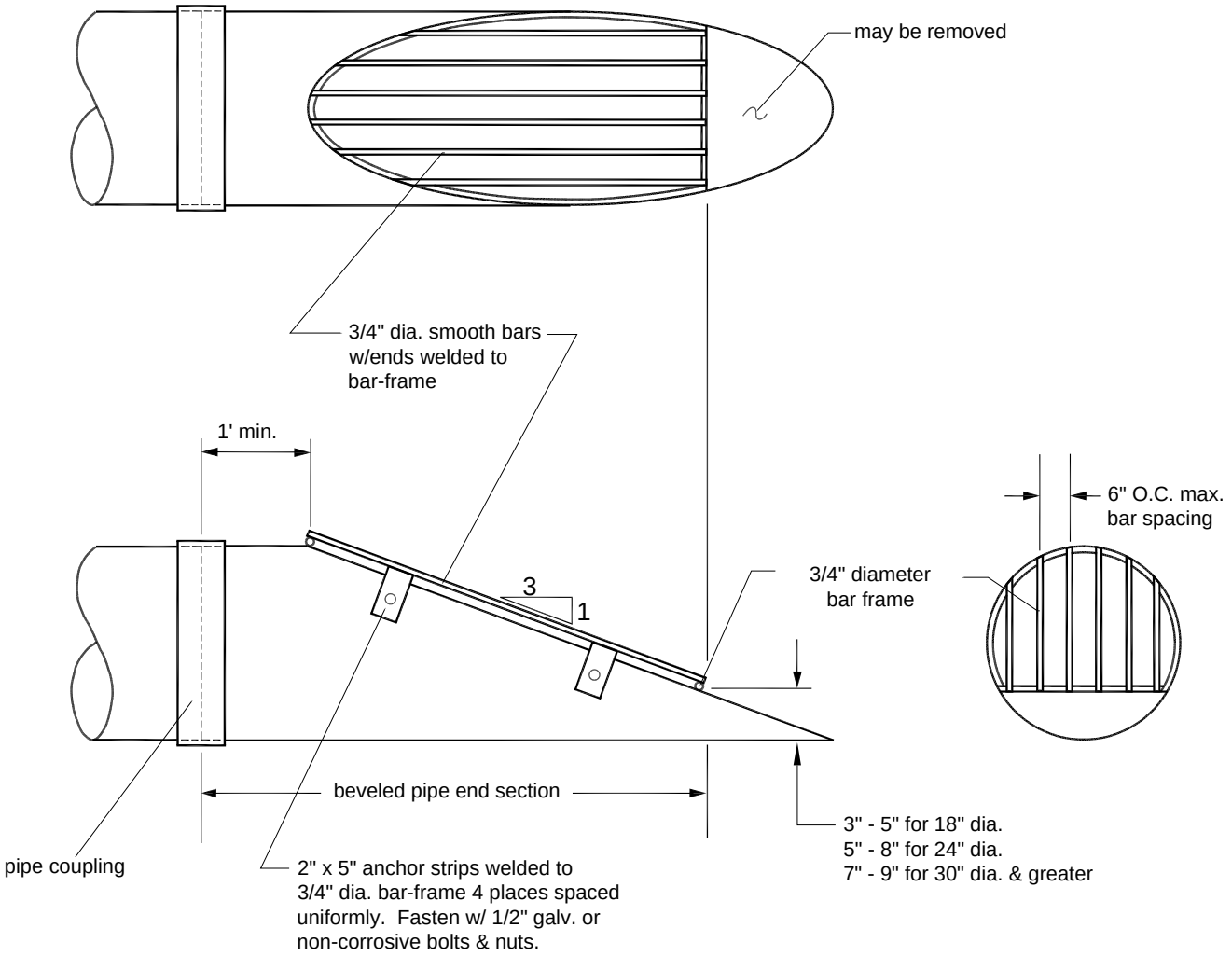


END VIEW
NTS

FIGURE 4.2.1.E DEBRIS BARRIER (IN ROAD RIGHT-OF-WAY)

NOTES:

1. CMP or LCPE pipe end-section shown; for concrete pipe beveled end section, see KCRS drawing No. 2-001.
2. All steel parts must be galvanized and asphalt coated (treatment 1 or better).



4.2.1.2 METHODS OF ANALYSIS

This section presents the methods of analysis for designing new or evaluating existing **pipe systems** for compliance with the conveyance capacity requirements set forth in Section 1.2.4, "Core Requirement #4: Conveyance System."

❑ DESIGN FLOWS

Design flows for sizing or assessing the capacity of pipe systems shall be determined using the hydrologic analysis methods described in Chapter 3.

❑ INLET GRATE CAPACITY

The methods described in Chapter 5, Sections 4 and 5, of the *Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) Hydraulics Manual* may be used in determining the capacity of inlet grates when capacity is of concern, with the following exceptions:

1. Use design flows as required in Section 1.2.4 of this manual.
2. Assume grate areas on slopes are 80% free of debris; "vaned" grates, 95% free.
3. Assume grate areas in sags or low spots are 50% free of debris; "vaned" grates, 75% free.

❑ CONVEYANCE CAPACITY

Two methods of hydraulic analysis using Manning's equation are used sequentially for the design and analysis of pipe systems. First, the **Uniform Flow Analysis method** is used for the preliminary design of new pipe systems. Second, the **Backwater Analysis method** is used to analyze both proposed and existing pipe systems to verify adequate capacity. See Core Requirement #4, Section 1.2.4, for sizing requirements of pipe systems.

Note: Use of the Uniform Flow Analysis method to determine preliminary pipe sizes is only suggested as a first step in the design process and is not required. Results of the Backwater Analysis method determine final pipe sizes in all cases.

Uniform Flow Analysis Method

This method is used for **preliminary sizing** of new pipe systems to convey the *design flow* (i.e., the 10-year or 25-year peak flow rate as specified in Core Requirement #4, Section 1.2.4).

Assumptions:

- Flow is uniform in each pipe (i.e., depth and velocity remain constant throughout the pipe for a given flow).
- Friction head loss in the pipe barrel alone controls capacity. Other head losses (e.g., entrance, exit, junction, etc.) and any backwater effects or inlet control conditions are not specifically addressed.

Each pipe within the system is sized and sloped such that its **barrel capacity at normal full flow** (computed by Manning's equation) is equal to or greater than the design flow. The nomograph in Figure 4.2.1.F (p. 4-22) may be used for an approximate solution of Manning's equation. For more precise results, or for partial pipe full conditions, solve Manning's equation directly:

$$V = \frac{1.49}{n} R^{2/3} S^{1/2} \tag{4-1}$$

or use the continuity equation, $Q = AV$, such that:

$$Q = \frac{1.49}{n} A R^{2/3} S^{1/2} \tag{4-2}$$

where
- Q = discharge (cfs)
- V = velocity (fps)
- A = area (sf)
- n = Manning's roughness coefficient; see Table 4.2.1.D below
- R = hydraulic radius = area/wetted perimeter (ft)
- S = slope of the energy grade line (ft/ft)

For **pipes flowing partially full**, the actual velocity may be estimated from the hydraulic properties shown in Figure 4.2.1.G by calculating Q_{full} and V_{full} and using the ratio Q_{design}/Q_{full} to find V and d (depth of flow).

Table 4.2.1.D provides the recommended **Manning's "n" values for preliminary design** using the Uniform Flow Analysis method for pipe systems. *Note: The "n" values for this method are 15% higher in order to account for entrance, exit, junction, and bend head losses.*

TABLE 4.2.1.D MANNING'S "*n*" VALUES FOR PIPES

Type of Pipe Material	Analysis Method	
	Uniform Flow (Preliminary design)	Backwater Flow (Capacity Verification)
A. Concrete pipe and LCPE pipe	0.014	0.012
B. Annular Corrugated Metal Pipe or Pipe Arch:		
1. 2-$^2/_3$" x $^1/_2$" corrugation (riveted):		
a. plain or fully coated	0.028	0.024
b. paved invert (40% of circumference paved):		
1) flow at full depth	0.021	0.018
2) flow at 80% full depth	0.018	0.016
3) flow at 60% full depth	0.015	0.013
c. treatment 5	0.015	0.013
2. 3" x 1" corrugation	0.031	0.027
3. 6" x 2" corrugation (field bolted)	0.035	0.030
C. Helical 2-$^2/_3$" x $^1/_2$" corrugation and CPE pipe	0.028	0.024
D. Spiral rib metal pipe and PVC pipe	0.013	0.011
E. Ductile iron pipe cement lined	0.014	0.012
F. SWPE pipe (butt fused only)	0.009	0.009

Backwater Analysis Method

This method is used to analyze the capacity of both new and existing pipe systems to convey the required design flow (i.e., either the 10-year or 25-year peak flow, whichever is specified in Core Requirement #4, Section 1.2.4). In either case, pipe system structures must be demonstrated to contain the **headwater surface** (hydraulic grade line) for the specified peak flow rate. Structures may overtop for the 100-year peak flow as allowed by Core Requirement #4. When this occurs, the additional flow over the ground surface is analyzed using the methods for open channels described in Section 4.4.1.2 (p. 4-61) and added to the flow capacity of the pipe system.

This method is used to compute a **simple backwater profile** (hydraulic grade line) through a proposed or existing pipe system for the purposes of verifying adequate capacity. It incorporates a re-arranged form of Manning's equation expressed in terms of *friction slope* (slope of the energy grade line in ft/ft). The friction slope is used to determine the head loss in each pipe segment due to barrel friction, which can then be combined with other head losses to obtain water surface elevations at all structures along the pipe system.

The backwater analysis begins at the downstream end of the pipe system and is computed back through each pipe segment and structure upstream. The friction, entrance, and exit head losses computed for each pipe segment are added to that segment's tailwater elevation (the water surface elevation at the pipe's outlet) to obtain its **outlet control** headwater elevation. This elevation is then compared with the **inlet control** headwater elevation, computed assuming the pipe's inlet alone is controlling capacity using the methods for inlet control presented in Section 4.3.1.2 (p. 4-39). The condition that creates the highest headwater elevation determines the pipe's capacity. The approach velocity head is then subtracted from the controlling headwater elevation, and the junction and bend head losses are added to compute the total headwater elevation, which is then used as the tailwater elevation for the upstream pipe segment.

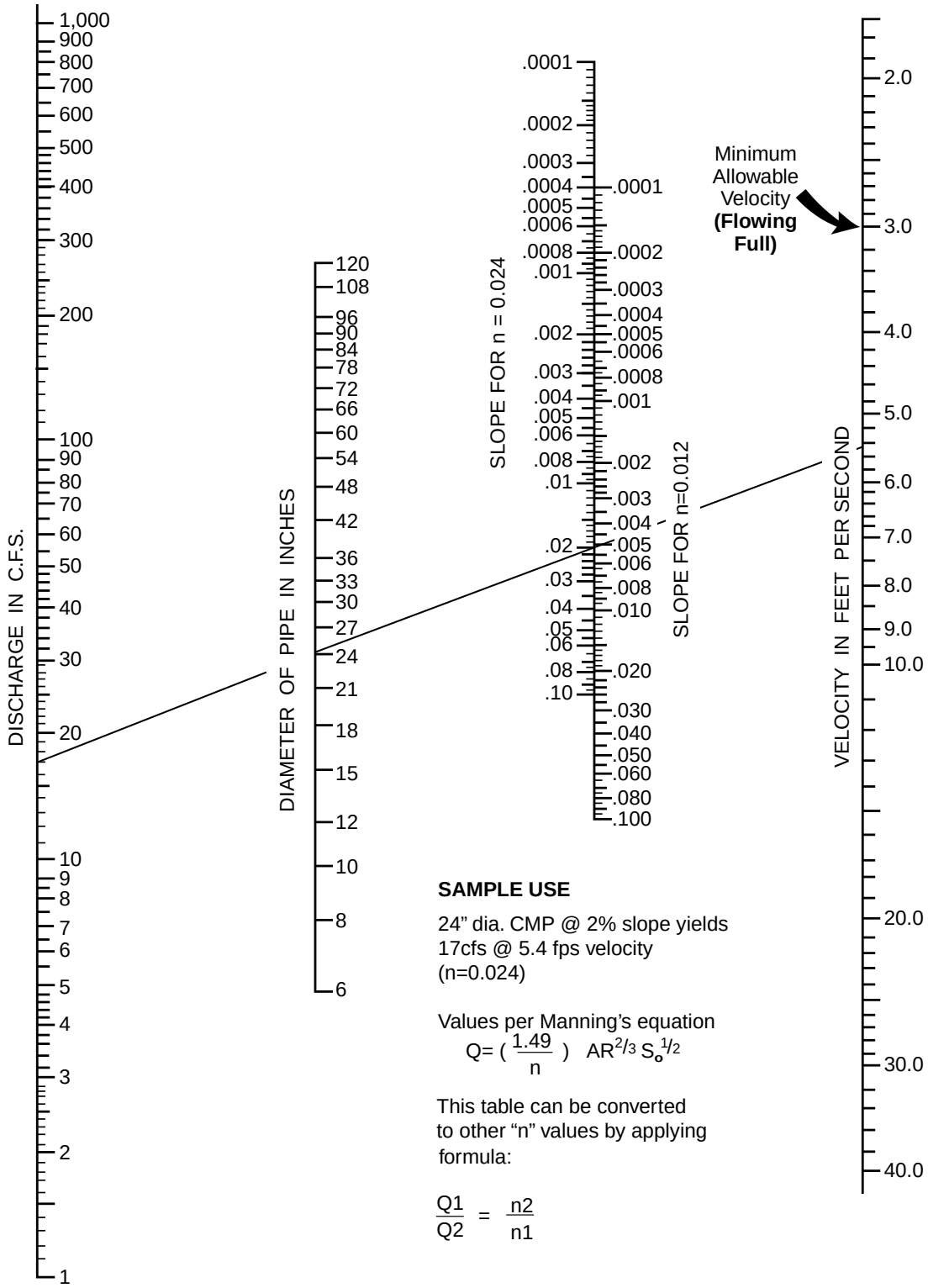
The **Backwater Calculation Sheet** in Figure 4.2.1.H (p. 4-24) may be used to compile the head losses and headwater elevations for each pipe segment. The numbered columns on this sheet are described in Figure 4.2.1.I (p. 4-25). An example calculation is performed in Figure 4.2.1.J (p. 4-26).

Note: This method should not be used to compute stage/discharge curves for level pool routing purposes. Instead, a more sophisticated backwater analysis using the computer software provided with this manual is recommended as described below.

Computer Applications

The **King County Backwater (KCBW) computer program** includes a subroutine **BWPIPE,** which may be used to quickly compute a family of backwater profiles for a given range of flows through a proposed or existing pipe system. A schematic description of the nomenclature used in this program is provided in Figure 4.3.1.G (p. 4-50). Program documentation providing instructions on the use of this and the other KCBW subroutines is available from DNRP.

FIGURE 4.2.1.F NOMOGRAPH FOR SIZING CIRCULAR DRAINS FLOWING FULL



SAMPLE USE

24" dia. CMP @ 2% slope yields 17cfs @ 5.4 fps velocity (n=0.024)

Values per Manning's equation

$$Q = \left(\frac{1.49}{n}\right) AR^{2/3} S_o^{1/2}$$

This table can be converted to other "n" values by applying formula:

$$\frac{Q1}{Q2} = \frac{n2}{n1}$$

FIGURE 4.2.1.G CIRCULAR CHANNEL RATIOS

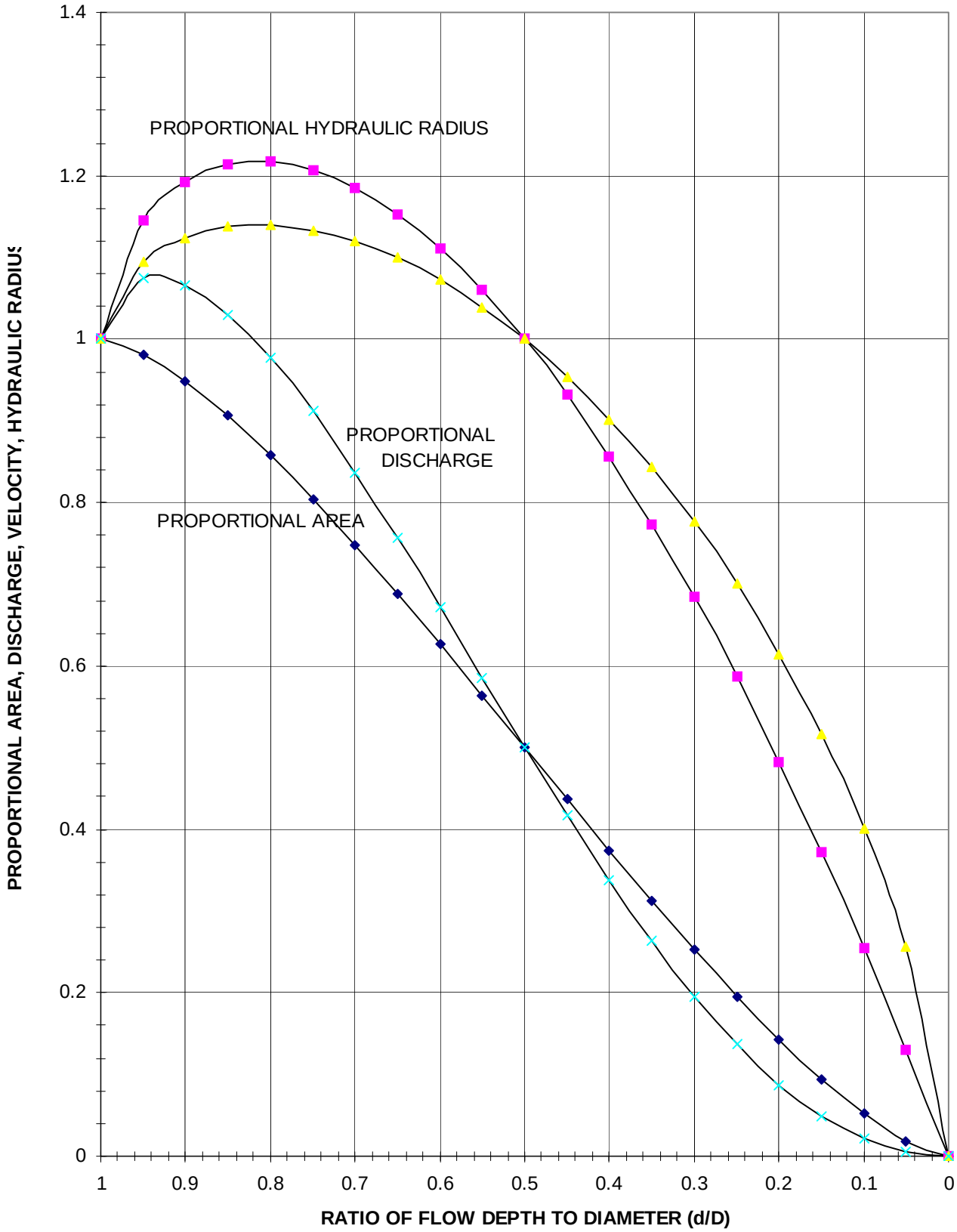


FIGURE 4.2.1.H BACKWATER CALCULATION SHEET

Pipe Segment CB to CB	(1) Q (cfs)	(2) Lngth (ft)	(3) Pipe Size	(4) "n" Value	(5) Outlet Elev (ft)	(6) Inlet Elev (ft)	(7) Barrel Area (sq. ft)	(8) Barrel Vel (fps)	(9) Barrel Vel Head (ft)	(10) TW Elev (ft)	(11) Fric-tion Loss (ft)	(12) Entr HGL Elev (ft)	(13) Entr Head Loss (ft)	(14) Exit Head Loss (ft)	(15) Outlt Cntrl Elev (ft)	(16) Inlet Cntrl Elev (ft)	(17) Appr Vel Head (ft)	(18) Bend Head Loss (ft)	(19) Junc Head Loss (ft)	(20) HW Elev (ft)

FIGURE 4.2.1.I BACKWATER CALCULATION SHEET NOTES

Column (1) - Design flow to be conveyed by pipe segment.
Column (2) - Length of pipe segment.

Column (3) - Pipe Size; indicate pipe diameter or span x rise.

Column (4) - Manning's "*n*" value.

Column (5) - Outlet Elevation of pipe segment.

Column (6) - Inlet Elevation of pipe segment.

Column (7) - Barrel Area; this is the full cross-sectional area of the pipe.

Column (8) - Barrel Velocity; this is the full velocity in the pipe as determined by:

$V = Q/A$ or Col.(8) = Col.(1) / Col.(7)

Column (9) - Barrel Velocity Head = $V^2/2g$ or $(\text{Col.}(8))^2/2g$

where $g = 32.2$ ft/sec^2 (acceleration due to gravity)

Column (10) - Tailwater (*TW*) Elevation; this is the water surface elevation at the outlet of the pipe segment. If the pipe's outlet is not submerged by the *TW* and the *TW* depth is less than $(D+d_c)/2$, set TW equal to $(D+d_c)/2$ to keep the analysis simple and still obtain reasonable results (D = pipe barrel height and d_c = critical depth, both in feet. See Figure 4.3.1.F (p. 4-49) for determination of d_c).

Column (11) - Friction Loss = $S_f \times L$ [or $S_f \times$ Col.(2)]
where S_f is the friction slope or head loss per linear foot of pipe as determined by Manning's equation expressed in the form:

$S_f = (nV)^2/2.22\,R^{1.33}$

Column (12) - Hydraulic Grade Line (HGL) Elevation just inside the entrance of the pipe barrel; this is determined by adding the friction loss to the *TW* elevation:

Col.(12) = Col.(11) + Col.(10)

If this elevation falls below the pipe's inlet crown, it no longer represents the true HGL when computed in this manner. The true HGL will fall somewhere between the pipe's crown and either normal flow depth or critical flow depth, whichever is greater. To keep the analysis simple and still obtain reasonable results (i.e., erring on the conservative side), set the HGL elevation equal to the crown elevation.

Column (13) - Entrance Head Loss = $K_e \times V^2/2g$ [or $K_e \times$ Col.(9)]
where K_e = Entrance Loss Coefficient (from Table 4.3.1.B, p. 4-42). This is the head lost due to flow contractions at the pipe entrance.

Column (14) - Exit Head Loss = $1.0 \times V^2/2g$ or $1.0 \times$ Col.(9)

This is the velocity head lost or transferred downstream.

Column (15) - Outlet Control Elevation = Col.(12) + Col.(13) + Col.(14)

This is the maximum headwater elevation assuming the pipe's barrel and inlet/outlet characteristics are controlling capacity. It does not include structure losses or approach velocity considerations.

Column (16) - Inlet Control Elevation (see Section 4.3.1.2, page 4-39, for computation of inlet control on culverts); this is the maximum headwater elevation assuming the pipe's inlet is controlling capacity. It does not include structure losses or approach velocity considerations.

Column (17) - Approach Velocity Head; this is the amount of head/energy being supplied by the discharge from an upstream pipe or channel section, which serves to reduce the headwater elevation. If the discharge is from a pipe, the approach velocity head is equal to the barrel velocity head computed for the upstream pipe. If the upstream pipe outlet is significantly higher in elevation (as in a drop manhole) or lower in elevation such that its discharge energy would be dissipated, an approach velocity head of zero should be assumed.

Column (18) - Bend Head Loss = $K_b \times V^2/2g$ [or $K_b \times$ Col.(17)]
where K_b = Bend Loss Coefficient (from Figure 4.2.1.K, p. 4-27). This is the loss of head/energy required to change direction of flow in an access structure.

Column (19) - Junction Head Loss. This is the loss in head/energy that results from the turbulence created when two or more streams are merged into one within the access structure. Figure 4.2.1.L (p. 4-28) may be used to determine this loss, or it may be computed using the following equations derived from Figure 4.2.1.L:

Junction Head Loss = $K_j \times V^2/2g$ [or $K_j \times$ Col.(17)]

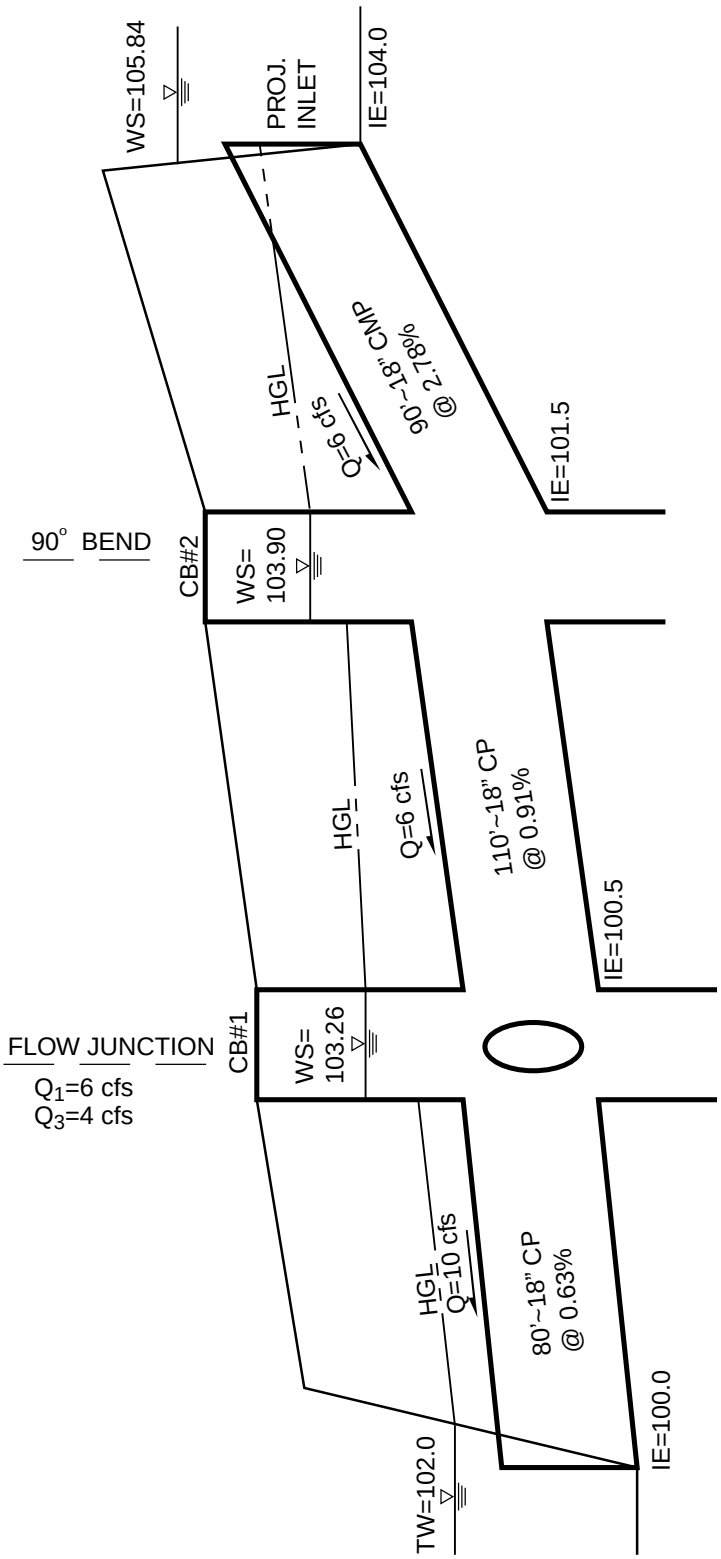
where K_j is the Junction Loss Coefficient determined by:

$K_j = (Q_3/Q_1)/(1.18 + 0.63(Q_3/Q_1))$

Column (20) - Headwater (HW) Elevation; this is determined by combining the energy heads in Columns 17, 18, and 19 with the highest control elevation in either Column 15 or 16, as follows:

Col.(20) = Col.(15 or 16) - Col.(17) + Col.(18) + Col.(19)

FIGURE 4.2.1.J BACKWATER PIPE CALCULATION EXAMPLE



B A C K W A T E R C A L C U L A T I O N S H E E T

Select the greater elevation

Pipe Segment CB to CB	(1) Q (cfs)	(2) Length (ft)	(3) Pipe Size	(4) "n" Value	(5) Outlet Elev (ft)	(6) Intlet Elev (ft)	(7) Barrel Area (sqft)	(8) Barrel Vel (fps)	(9) Barrel Vel Head (ft)	(10) TW Elev (ft)	(11) Fric-tion Loss (ft)	(12) Entr HGL Elev (ft)	(13) Entr Head Loss (ft)	(14) Exit Head Loss (ft)	(15) Outlt Contr Elev (ft)	(16) Inlet Contr Elev (ft)	(17) Appr Vel Head (ft)	(18) Bend Head Loss (ft)	(19) Junc Head Loss (ft)	(20) HW Elev (ft)
Out fall	1	80	18"	0.012	100.00	100.50	1.77	5.65	0.50	102.00	0.62	102.62	0.25	0.50	103.37	102.75	-0.18	0.002	0.07	103.26
1	2	110	18"	0.012	100.50	101.50	1.77	3.39	0.18	103.26	0.31	103.57	0.09	0.18	103.84	102.95	-0.18	0.24	0.0	103.90
2	Inlet	90	18"	0.024	101.50	104.00	1.77	3.39	0.18	103.90	1.00	(104.9) 105.5	0.16	0.18	105.84	105.80	-0.0	0.0	0.0	105.84

FIGURE 4.2.1.K BEND HEAD LOSSES IN STRUCTURES

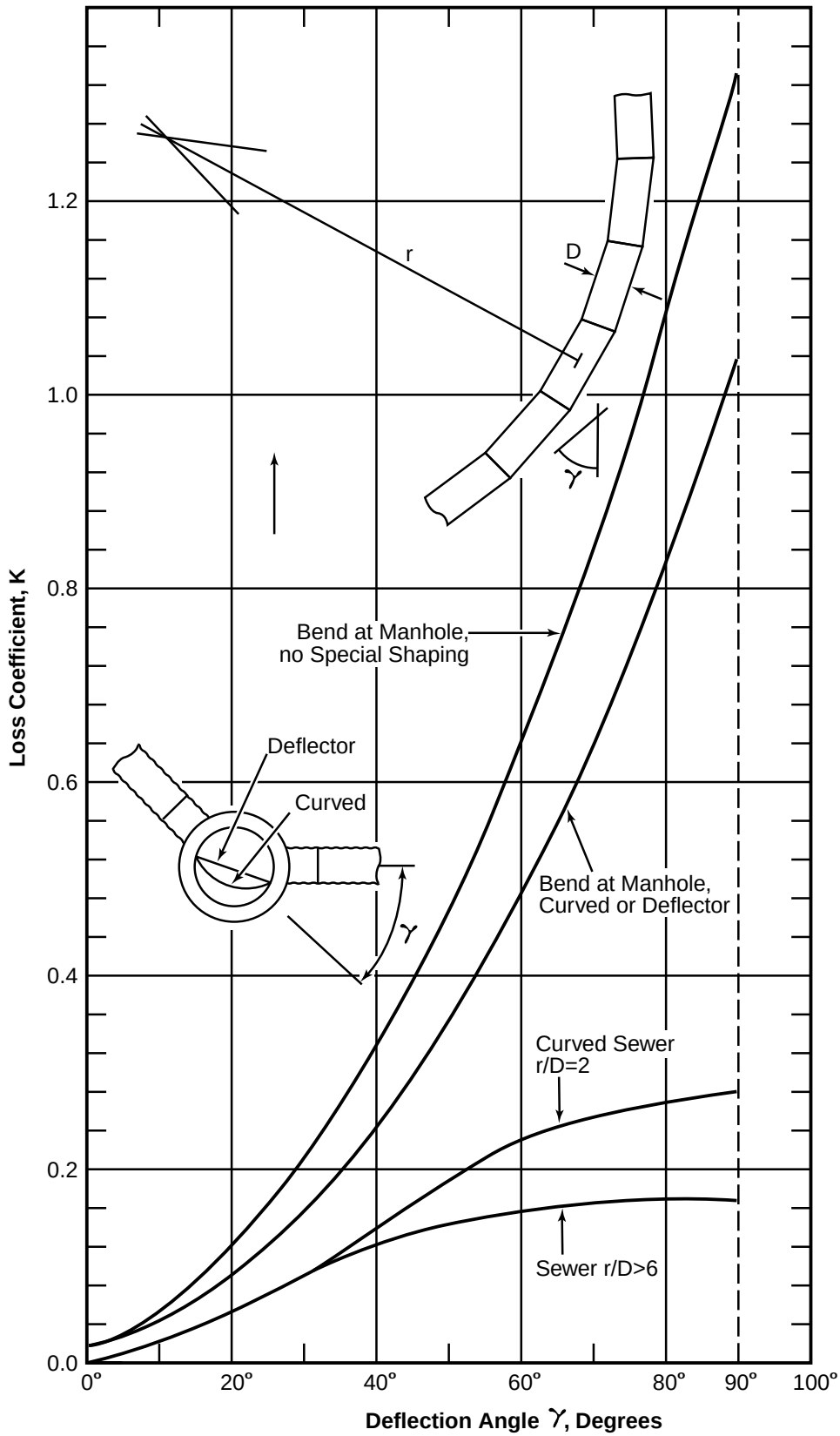
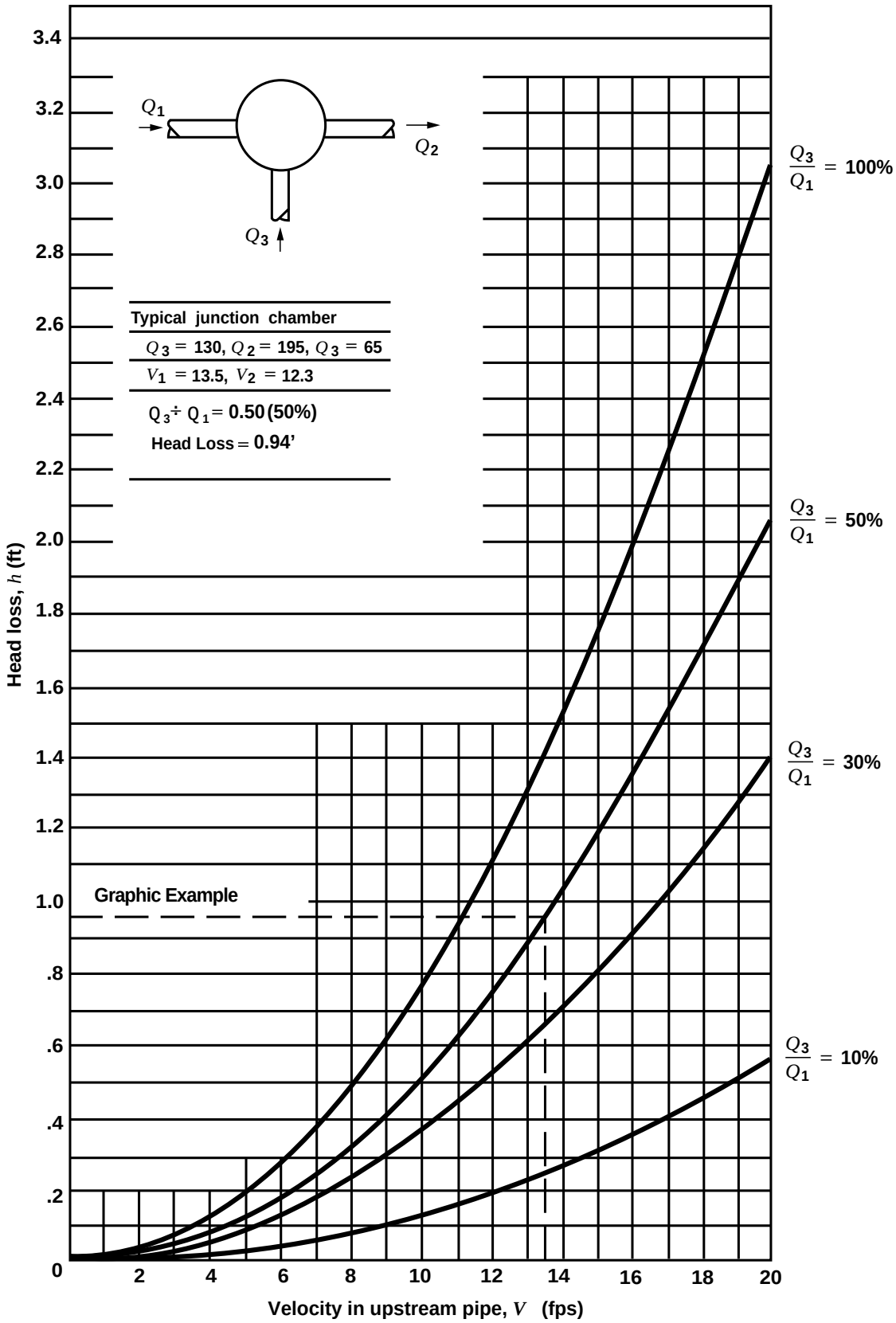


FIGURE 4.2.1.L JUNCTION HEAD LOSS IN STRUCTURES



4.2.2 OUTFALL SYSTEMS

Properly designed outfalls are critical to ensuring no adverse impacts occur as the result of concentrated discharges from pipe systems and culverts, both onsite and downstream. *Outfall systems* include rock splash pads, flow dispersal trenches, gabion or other energy dissipaters, and tightline systems. A *tightline system* is typically a continuous length of pipe used to convey flows down a steep or sensitive slope with appropriate energy dissipation at the discharge end. In general, it is recommended that conveyance systems be designed to reduce velocity above outfalls to the extent feasible.

4.2.2.1 DESIGN CRITERIA

General

At a minimum, all outfalls shall be provided with a **rock splash pad** (see Figure 4.2.2., p. 4-32) except as specified below and in Table 4.2.2.A (p. 4-31):

1. The **flow dispersal trench** shown in Figure 4.2.2. (p. 4-33) shall only be used as an outfall as described in Core Requirement #1, Section 1.2.1.
2. For outfalls with a velocity at design flow greater than 10 fps, a **gabion dissipater** or **engineered energy dissipater** shall be required. Note the gabion outfall detail shown in Figure 4.2.2. (p. 4-35) is illustrative only; a design engineered to specific ***site*** conditions is required. Gabions shall conform to WDSOT/APWA specifications.
3. **Engineered energy dissipaters**, including stilling basins, drop pools, hydraulic jump basins, baffled aprons, and bucket aprons, are required for outfalls with velocity at design flow greater than 20 fps. These should be designed using published or commonly known techniques found in such references as *Hydraulic Design of Energy Dissipaters for Culverts and Channels*, published by the Federal Highway Administration of the United States Department of Transportation; *Open Channel Flow*, by V.T. Chow; *Hydraulic Design of Stilling Basins and Energy Dissipaters*, EM 25, Bureau of Reclamation (1978); and other publications, such as those prepared by the Soil Conservation Service (now Natural Resource Conservation Service). **Alternate mechanisms,** such as bubble-up structures (which will eventually drain) and structures fitted with reinforced concrete posts, may require an approved adjustment and must be designed using sound hydraulic principles and considering constructability and ease of maintenance.
4. **Tightline systems** shall be used when required by the discharge requirements of Core Requirement #1 or the outfall requirements of Core Requirement #4. Tightline systems may also be used to prevent aggravation or creation of a downstream erosion problem.
5. **Flood closure devices** shall be provided on new outfalls passing through existing levees or other features that contain floodwaters. Such structures shall be designed to the *Corps of Engineers Manual for Design and Construction of Levees* (EM 1110-2-1913).
6. **Backup (secondary gate) closure devices** shall be required for new outfalls through flood containment levees unless this requirement is specifically waived by the King County Water and Land Resources Division.
7. New **outfalls through levees along the Green River** between River Mile 6 and State Route 18 shall comply with the terms of the adopted *Lower Green River Pump Operation Procedures Plan*.

Tightline Systems

1. Outfall tightlines may be installed in trenches with standard bedding on **slopes up to 40%**. In order to minimize disturbance to **slopes greater than 40%**, it is recommended that tightlines be placed at grade with proper pipe anchorage and support.

2. SWPE tightlines must be designed to address the material limitations, particularly **thermal expansion and contraction** and pressure design, as specified by the manufacturer. The coefficient of thermal expansion and contraction for SWPE is on the order of 0.001 inch per foot per Fahrenheit degree. **Sliding sleeve connections** shall be used to address this thermal expansion and contraction. These sleeve connections consist of a section of the appropriate length of the next larger size diameter of pipe into which the outfall pipe is fitted. These sleeve connections must be located as close to the discharge end of the outfall system as is practical.

3. SWPE tightlines shall be designed and sized using the applicable design criteria and methods of analysis specified for pipe systems in Section 4.2.1, beginning on page 4-7.

4. Due to the ability of SWPE tightlines to transmit flows of very high energy, special consideration for **energy dissipation** must be made. Details of a sample "gabion mattress energy dissipater" have been provided as Figure 4.2.2. (p. 4-35). Flows of very high energy will require a specifically engineered energy dissipater structure, as described above in General Criterion #3. *Caution, the in-stream sample gabion mattress energy dissipater may not be acceptable within the ordinary high water mark of fish-bearing waters or where gabions will be subject to abrasion from upstream channel sediments. A four-sided gabion basket located outside the ordinary high water mark should be considered for these applications.*

TABLE 4.2.2.A ROCK PROTECTION AT OUTFALLS

Discharge Velocity at Design Flow (fps)		REQUIRED PROTECTION				
Greater than	Less than or equal to	Minimum Dimensions[1]				
		Type	Thickness	Width	Length	Height
0	5	Rock lining[2]	1 foot	Diameter + 6 feet	8 feet or 4 x diameter, whichever is greater	Crown + 1 foot
5	10	Riprap[3]	2 feet	Diameter + 6 feet or 3 x diameter, whichever is greater	12 feet or 4 x diameter, whichever is greater	Crown + 1 foot
10	20	Gabion outfall	As required	As required	As required	Crown + 1 foot
20	N/A	Engineered energy dissipater required				

(1) These sizes assume that erosion is dominated by outfall energy. In many cases sizing will be governed by conditions in the receiving waters.

(2) **Rock lining** shall be quarry spalls with gradation as follows:

Passing 8-inch square sieve:	100%
Passing 3-inch square sieve:	40 to 60% maximum
Passing $^3/_4$-inch square sieve:	0 to 10% maximum

(3) **Riprap** shall be reasonably well graded with gradation as follows:

Maximum stone size:	24 inches (nominal diameter)
Median stone size:	16 inches
Minimum stone size:	4 inches

Note: Riprap sizing governed by side slopes on outlet channel is assumed to be approximately 3:1.

FIGURE 4.2.2.A PIPE/CULVERT DISCHARGE PROTECTION

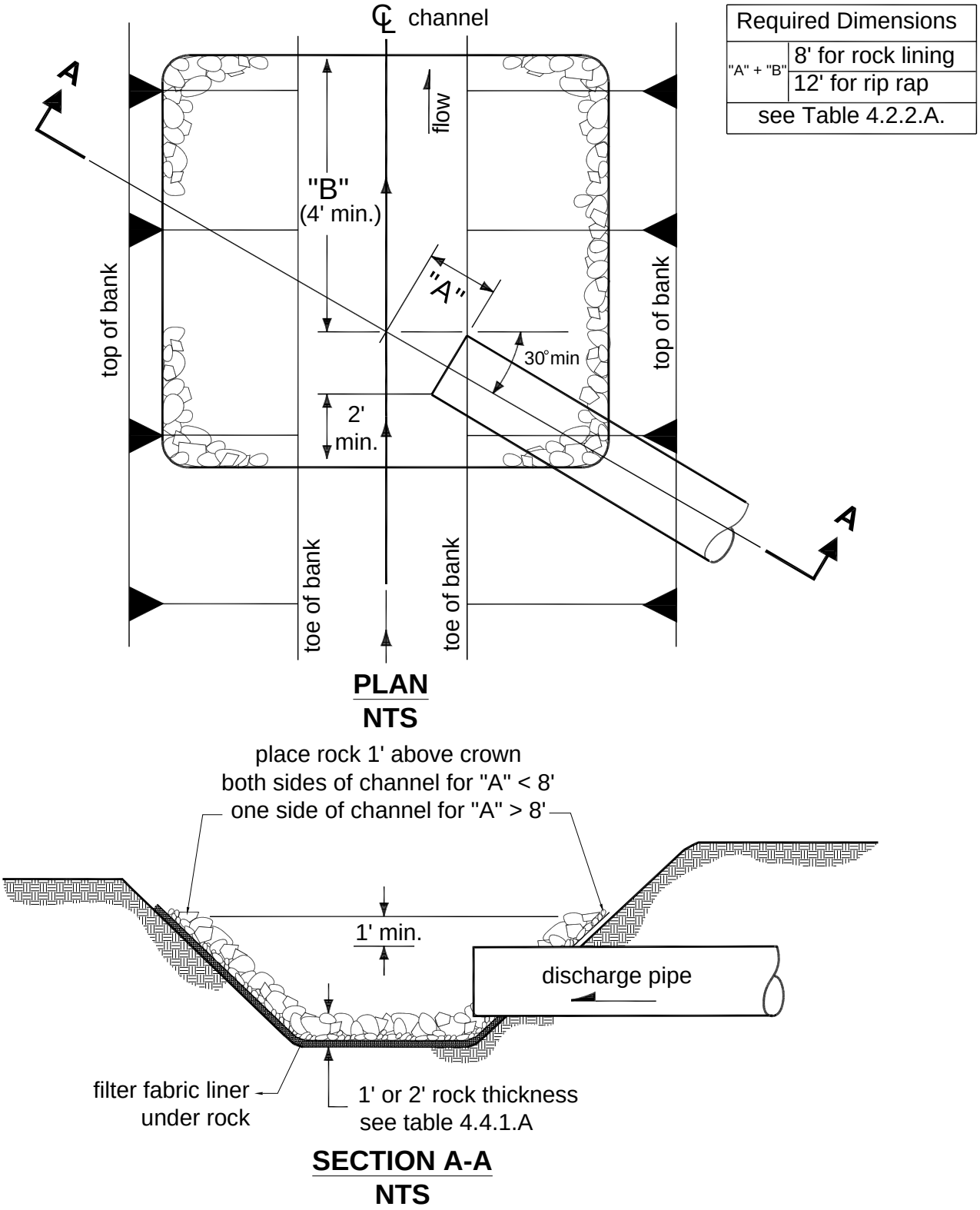
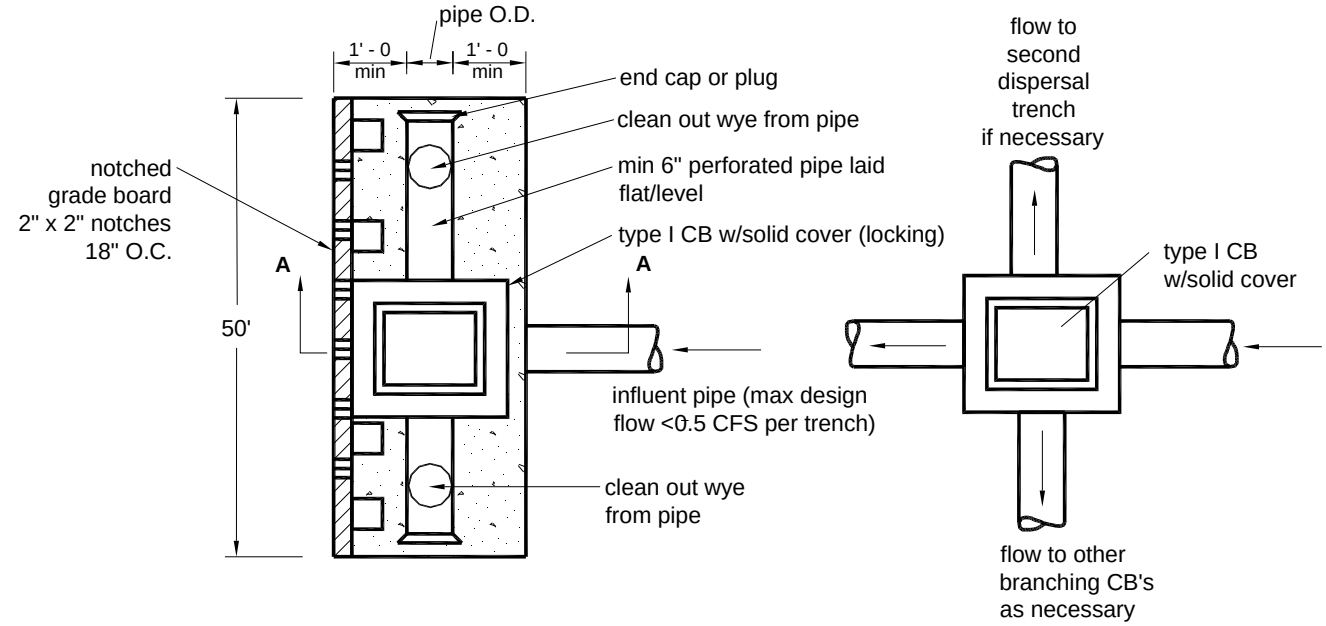
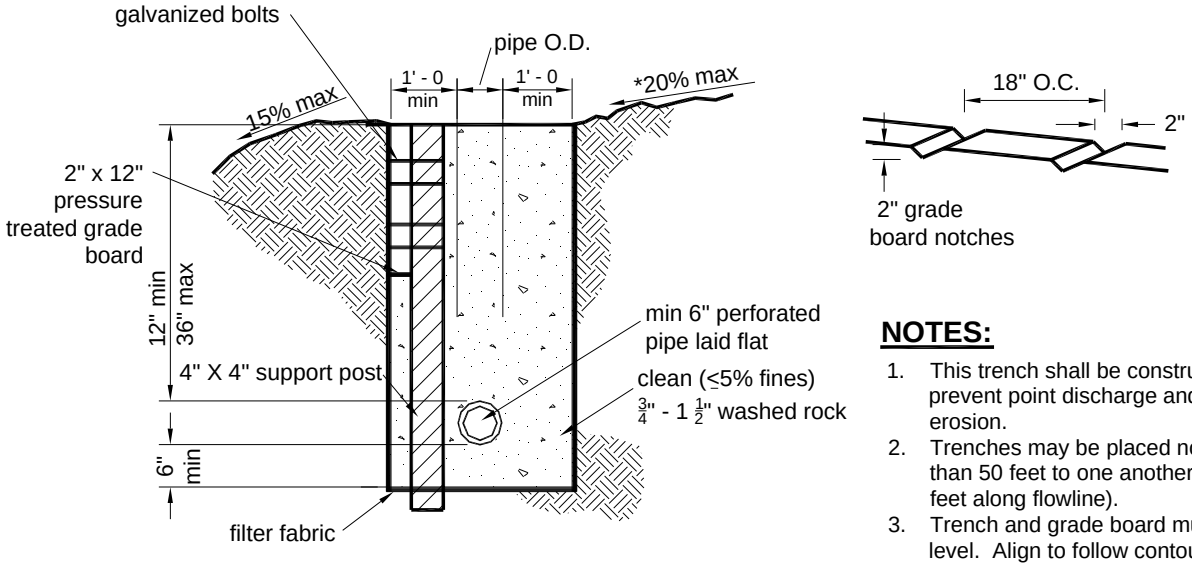


FIGURE 4.2.2.B FLOW DISPERSAL TRENCH



PLAN
NTS



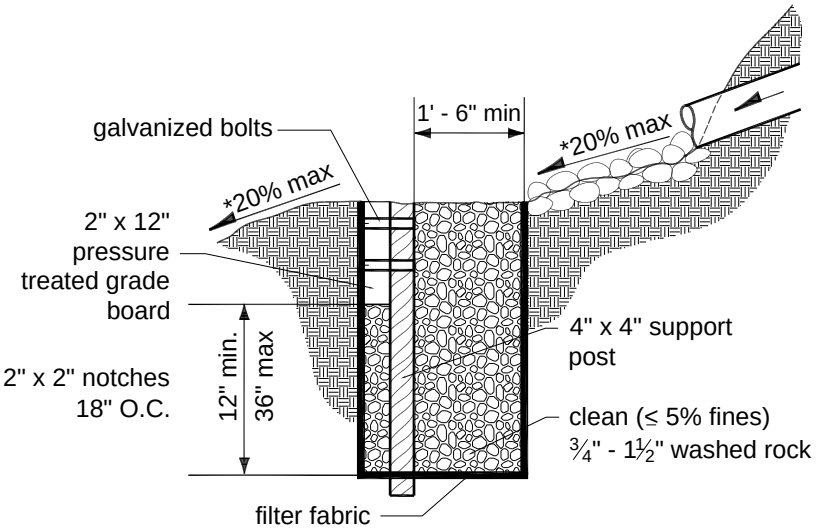
*15% max for flow control/water quality treatment in rural areas.

SECTION A-A
NTS

NOTES:

1. This trench shall be constructed to prevent point discharge and/or erosion.
2. Trenches may be placed no closer than 50 feet to one another (100 feet along flowline).
3. Trench and grade board must be level. Align to follow contours of site.
4. Support post spacing as required by soil conditions to ensure grade board remains level.

FIGURE 4.2.2.C ALTERNATIVE FLOW DISPERSAL TRENCH



*15% max for flow control/water quality treatment in rural areas

SECTION A-A
NTS

NOTES:

1. This trench shall be constructed to prevent point discharge and /or erosion.
2. Trenches may be placed no closer than 50 feet to one another (100 feet along flowline).
3. Trench and grade board must be level. Align to follow contours of site.
4. Support post spacing as required by soil conditions to ensure grade board remains level.

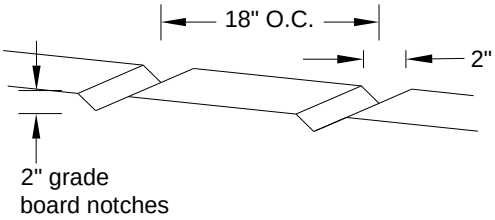
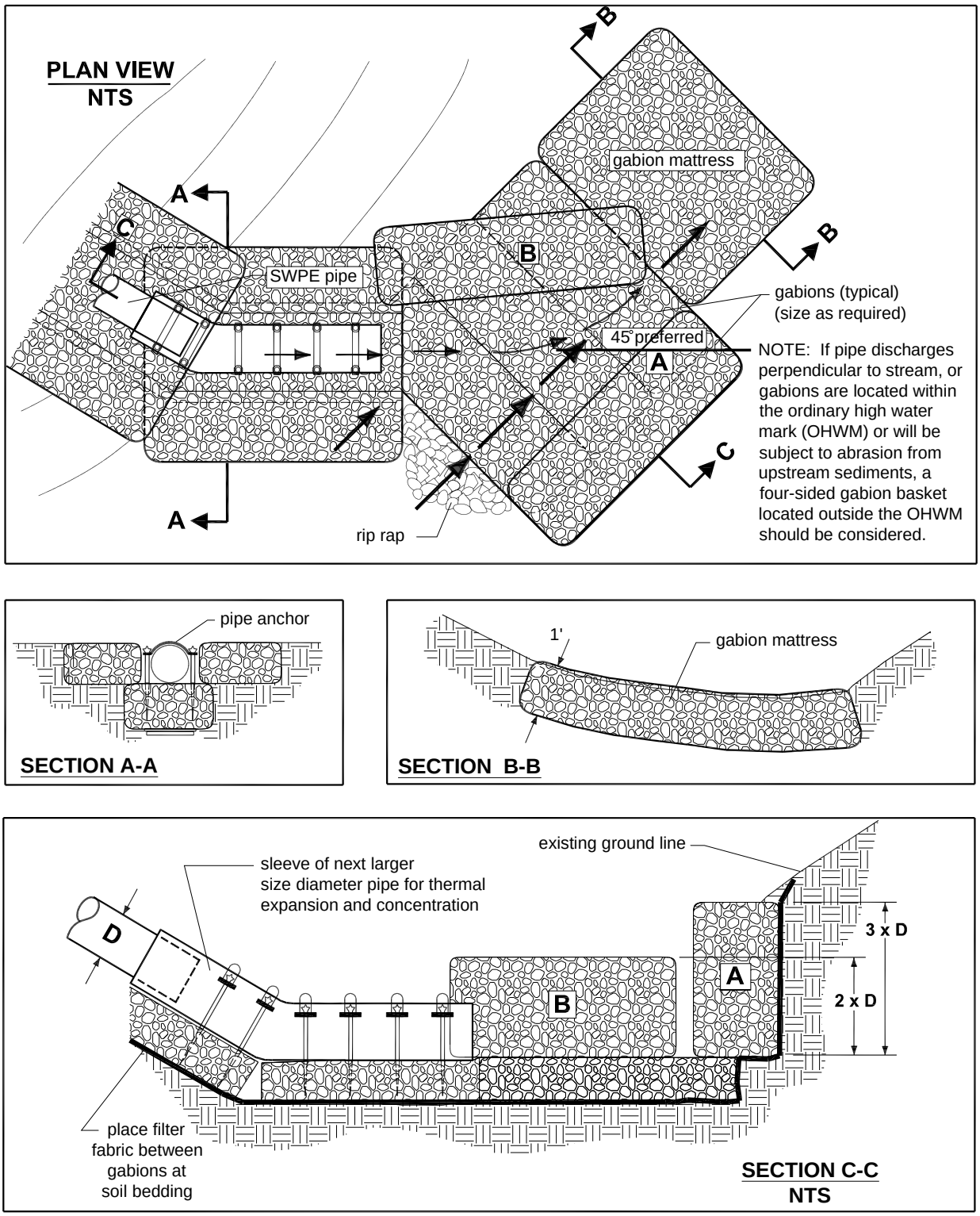


FIGURE 4.2.2.D GABION MATTRESS ENERGY DISSIPATOR DETAIL



4.2.3 PUMP SYSTEMS

As allowed in Core Requirement #4, Section 1.2.4.3, pump systems may be used for conveyance of flows internal to a ***site*** if located on private property and privately maintained. Pump systems discharging to the Green river between River Mile 6 and State Route 18 (within the Green River Flood Control Zone District) shall comply with the standards of the adopted *Green River Pump Operation Procedures Plan*.

4.2.3.1 DESIGN CRITERIA

Proposed pump systems must meet the following minimum requirements:

1. The pump system must be **privately owned and maintained**.
2. The pump system shall be used to convey water from one location or elevation to another within the ***site***.
3. The pump system must have a dual pump (alternating) equipped with an external alarm system.
4. The pump system shall not be used to circumvent any other King County drainage requirements, and construction and operation of the pump system shall not violate any other King County requirements.
5. The gravity-flow components of the drainage system to and from the pump system must be designed so that pump failure does not result in flooding of a building or emergency access, or overflow to a location other than the ***natural discharge point*** for the ***site***.

4.2.3.2 METHODS OF ANALYSIS

Pump systems must be sized in accordance with the conveyance capacity requirements for pipe systems set forth in Section 1.2.4, "Core Requirement #4: Conveyance System."

4.3 CULVERTS AND BRIDGES

This section presents the methods, criteria, and details for hydraulic analysis and design of culverts and bridges. The information presented is organized as follows:

Section 4.3.1, "Culverts"
"Design Criteria," Section 4.3.1.1 (p. 4-37)
"Methods of Analysis," Section 4.3.1.2 (p. 4-39)

Section 4.3.2, "Culverts Providing for Fish Passage/Migration"
"Design Criteria," Section 4.3.2.1 (p. 4-51)
"Methods of Analysis," Section 4.3.2.2 (p. 4-52)

Section 4.3.3, "Bridges"
"Design Criteria," Section 4.3.3.1 (p. 4-53)
"Methods of Analysis," Section 4.3.3.2 (p. 4-54).

4.3.1 CULVERTS

Culverts are relatively short segments of pipe of circular, elliptical, rectangular, or arch cross section. They are usually placed under road embankments or driveways to convey surface water flow safely under the embankment. They may be used to convey flow from constructed or natural channels including streams. The Critical Areas Code (KCC 21A.24) contains definitions of streams (termed "aquatic areas") and requirements for crossing of streams. In addition to those requirements and the design criteria described below, other agencies such as the Washington State Department of Fish and Wildlife (WDFW) may have additional requirements affecting the design of proposed culverts.

4.3.1.1 DESIGN CRITERIA

General

1. All **circular pipe culverts** shall conform to any applicable design criteria specified for pipe systems in Section 4.2.1.
2. All **other types** of culverts shall conform to manufacturer's specifications. See the *King County Road Standards* and *General Special Provisions* for types of culverts allowed in King County right-of-way.

Headwater

1. For **culverts 18-inch diameter or less**, the maximum allowable headwater elevation (measured from the inlet invert) shall not exceed 2 times the pipe diameter or arch-culvert-rise at *design flow* (i.e., the 10-year or 25-year peak flow rate as specified in Core Requirement #4, Section 1.2.4).
2. For **culverts larger than 18-inch diameter,** the maximum allowable design flow headwater elevation (measured from the inlet invert) shall not exceed 1.5 times the pipe diameter or arch-culvert-rise at design flow.
3. The **maximum headwater elevation** at design flow shall be below any road or parking lot subgrade.

Inlets and Outlets

1. All inlets and outlets in or near roadway embankments must be flush with and conforming to the slope of the embankment.

2. For culverts 18-inch diameter and larger, the embankment around the culvert inlet shall be protected from erosion by **rock lining or riprap** as specified in Table 4.2.2.A (p. 4-31), except the length shall extend at least 5 feet upstream of the culvert, and the height shall be at or above the design headwater elevation.

   Inlet structures, such as concrete headwalls, may provide a more economical design by allowing the use of smaller entrance coefficients and, hence, smaller diameter culverts. When properly designed, they will also protect the embankment from erosion and eliminate the need for rock lining.

3. In order to maintain the stability of roadway embankments, concrete headwalls, wingwalls, or tapered inlets and outlets may be required if **right-of-way or easement constraints** prohibit the culvert from extending to the toe of the embankment slopes. All inlet structures or headwalls installed in or near roadway embankments must be flush with and conforming to the slope of the embankment.

4. **Debris barriers (trash racks)** are required on the inlets of all culverts that are over 60 feet in length and are 18 to 36 inches in diameter. Debris barriers shall have a bar spacing of 6 inches. This requirement also applies to the inlets of pipe systems. See Figure 4.2.1.D (p. 4-17) and Figure 4.2.1.E (p. 4-18) for debris barrier details.

5. For culverts 18-inch diameter and larger, the receiving channel of the outlet shall be protected from erosion by **rock lining** specified in Table 4.2.2.A (p. 4-31), except the height shall be one foot above maximum tailwater elevation or one foot above the crown, whichever is higher (See Figure 4.2.2., p. 4-32).

4.3.1.2 METHODS OF ANALYSIS

This section presents the methods of analysis for designing new or evaluating existing **culverts** for compliance with the conveyance capacity requirements set forth in Section 1.2.4, "Core Requirement #4: Conveyance System."

❑ DESIGN FLOWS

Design flows for sizing or assessing the capacity of culverts shall be determined using the hydrologic analysis methods described in Chapter 3.

❑ CONVEYANCE CAPACITY

The theoretical analysis of culvert capacity can be extremely complex because of the wide range of possible flow conditions that can occur due to various combinations of inlet and outlet submergence and flow regime within the culvert barrel. An exact analysis usually involves detailed backwater calculations, energy and momentum balance, and application of the results of hydraulic model studies.

However, simple procedures have been developed where the various flow conditions are classified and analyzed on the basis of a control section. A *control section* is a location where there is a unique relationship between the flow rate and the upstream water surface elevation. Many different flow conditions exist over time, but at any given time the flow is either governed by the culvert's inlet geometry (*inlet control*) or by a combination of inlet geometry, barrel characteristics, and tailwater elevation (*outlet control*). Figure 4.3.1.A (p. 4-44) illustrates typical conditions of inlet and outlet control. The procedures presented in this section provide for the analysis of both inlet and outlet control conditions to determine which governs.

Inlet Control Analysis

Nomographs such as those provided in Figure 4.3.1.B (p. 4-45) and Figure 4.3.1.C (p. 4-46) may be used to determine the **inlet control headwater depth** at design flow for various types of culverts and inlet configurations. These nomographs were originally developed by the Bureau of Public Roads—now the Federal Highway Administration (FHWA)—based on their studies of culvert hydraulics. These and other nomographs can be found in the FHWA publication *Hydraulic Design of Highway Culverts, HDS No. #5 (Report No. FHWA-IP-85-15)*, September 1985; or the *WSDOT Hydraulic Manual*.

Also available in the FHWA publication, are the design equations used to develop the inlet control nomographs. These equations are presented below.

For **unsubmerged** inlet conditions (defined by $Q/AD^{0.5} \leq 3.5$);

Form 1*: $$HW/D = H_c/D + K(Q/AD^{0.5})^M - 0.5S^{**} \quad (4\text{-}3)$$

Form 2*: $$HW/D = K(Q/AD^{0.5})^M \quad (4\text{-}4)$$

For **submerged** inlet conditions (defined by $Q/AD^{0.5} \geq 4.0$);

$$HW/D = c(Q/AD^{0.5})^2 + Y - 0.5S^{**} \quad (4\text{-}5)$$

where
- HW = headwater depth above inlet invert (ft)
- D = interior height of culvert barrel (ft)
- H_c = specific head (ft) at critical depth ($dc + Vc_2/2g$)
- Q = flow (cfs)
- A = full cross-sectional area of culvert barrel (sf)

S = culvert barrel slope (ft/ft)
K,M,c,Y = constants from Table 4.3.1.A.

The specified head H_c is determined by the following equation:

$$H_c = d_c + V_c^2/2g \qquad (4\text{-}6)$$

where d_c = critical depth (ft); see Figure 4.3.1.F (p. 4-49)
V_c = flow velocity at critical depth (fps)
g = acceleration due to gravity (32.2 ft/sec^2).

* The appropriate equation form for various inlet types is specified in Table 4.3.1.A (p. 4-40

** For mitered inlets, use +0.7*S* instead of -0.5*S*.

Note: Between the unsubmerged and submerged conditions, there is a transition zone ($3.5 < Q/AD^{0.5} < 4.0$) for which there is only limited hydraulic study information. The transition zone is defined empirically by drawing a curve between and tangent to the curves defined by the unsubmerged and submerged equations. In most cases, the transition zone is short and the curve is easily constructed.

TABLE 4.3.1.A CONSTANTS FOR INLET CONTROL EQUATIONS*

Shape and Material	Inlet Edge Description	Unsubmerged			Submerged	
		Equation Form	*K*	*M*	*c*	*Y*
Circular Concrete	Square edge with headwall	1	0.0098	2.0	0.0398	0.67
	Groove end with headwall		0.0078	2.0	0.0292	0.74
	Groove end projecting		0.0045	2.0	0.0317	0.69
Circular CMP	Headwall	1	0.0078	2.0	0.0379	0.69
	Mitered to slope		0.0210	1.33	0.0463	0.75
	Projecting		0.0340	1.50	0.0553	0.54
Rectangular Box	30° to 75° wingwall flares	1	0.026	1.0	0.0385	0.81
	90° and 15° wingwall flares		0.061	0.75	0.0400	0.80
	0° wingwall flares		0.061	0.75	0.0423	0.82
CM Boxes	90° headwall	1	0.0083	2.0	0.0379	0.69
	Thick wall projecting		0.0145	1.75	0.0419	0.64
	Thin wall projecting		0.0340	1.5	0.0496	0.57
Arch CMP	90° headwall	1	0.0083	2.0	0.0496	0.57
	Mitered to slope		0.0300	1.0	0.0463	0.75
	Projecting		0.0340	1.5	0.0496	0.53
Bottomless Arch CMP	90° headwall	1	0.0083	2.0	0.0379	0.69
	Mitered to slope		0.0300	2.0	0.0463	0.75
	Thin wall projecting		0.0340	1.5	0.0496	0.57
Circular with Tapered Inlet	Smooth tapered inlet throat	2	0.534	0.333	0.0196	0.89
	Rough tapered inlet throat		0.519	0.64	0.0289	0.90

* Source: *FHWA HDS No. 5*

Outlet Control Analysis

Nomographs such as those provided in Figure 4.3.1.D (p. 4-47) and Figure 4.3.1.E (p. 4-48) may be used to determine the **outlet control headwater depth** at design flow for various types of culverts and inlets. Outlet control nomographs other than those provided can be found in *FHWA HDS No.5* or the *WSDOT Hydraulic Manual*.

The outlet control headwater depth may also be determined using the simple Backwater Analysis method presented in Section 4.2.1.2 (p. 4-21) for analyzing pipe system capacity. This procedure is summarized as follows for culverts:

$$HW = H + TW - LS \qquad (4\text{-}7)$$

where $H = H_f + H_e + H_{ex}$

H_f = friction loss (ft) = $(V^2 n^2 L)/(2.22R^{1.33})$
Note: If (Hf+TW-LS) < D, adjust Hf such that (Hf+TW-LS) = D. This will keep the analysis simple and still yield reasonable results (erring on the conservative side).

H_e = entrance head loss (ft) = $K_e(V^2/2g)$

H_{ex} = exit head loss (ft) = $V^2/2g$

TW = tailwater depth above invert of culvert outlet (ft)
Note: If $TW < (D+d_c)/2$, set $TW = (D+d_c)/2$. This will keep the analysis simple and still yield reasonable results.

L = length of culvert (ft)

S = slope of culvert barrel (ft/ft)

D = interior height of culvert barrel (ft)

V = barrel velocity (fps)

n = Manning's roughness coefficient from Table 4.2.1.D (p. 4-20)

R = hydraulic radius (ft)

K_e = entrance loss coefficient (from Table 4.3.1.B, p. 4-42)

g = acceleration due to gravity (32.2 ft/sec^2)

d_c = critical depth (ft); see Figure 4.3.1.F (p. 4-49)

Note: The above procedure should not be used to develop stage/discharge curves for level pool routing purposes because its results are not precise for flow conditions where the hydraulic grade line falls significantly below the culvert crown (i.e., less than full flow conditions).

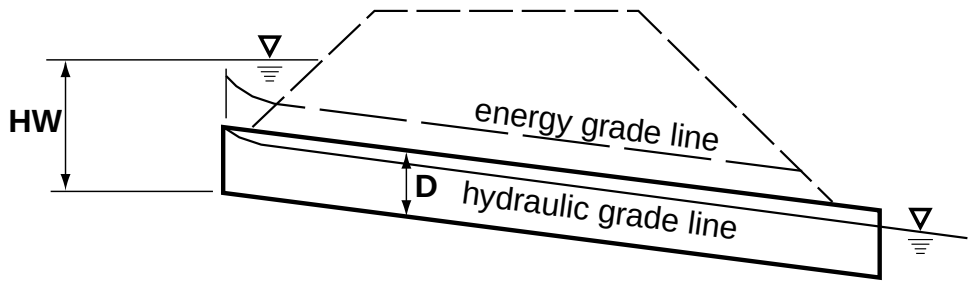
TABLE 4.3.1.B ENTRANCE LOSS COEFFICIENTS	
Type of Structure and Design Entrance	**Coefficient, K_e**
Pipe, Concrete, PVC, Spiral Rib, DI, and LCPE	
Projecting from fill, socket (bell) end	0.2
Projecting from fill, square cut end	0.5
Headwall, or headwall and wingwalls	
Socket end of pipe (groove-end)	0.2
Square-edge	0.5
Rounded (radius = $^1/_{12}$D)	0.2
Mitered to conform to fill slope	0.7
End section conforming to fill slope*	0.5
Beveled edges, 33.7^o or 45° bevels	0.2
Side- or slope-tapered inlet	0.2
Pipe, or Pipe-Arch, Corrugated Metal and Other Non-Concrete or D.I.	
Projecting from fill (no headwall)	0.9
Headwall, or headwall and wingwalls (square-edge)	0.5
Mitered to conform to fill slope (paved or unpaved slope)	0.7
End section conforming to fill slope*	0.5
Beveled edges, 33.7^o or 45° bevels	0.2
Side- or slope-tapered inlet	0.2
Box, Reinforced Concrete	
Headwall parallel to embankment (no wingwalls)	
Square-edged on 3 edges	0.5
Rounded on 3 edges to radius of $^1/_{12}$ barrel dimension or beveled edges on 3 sides	0.2
Wingwalls at 30° to 75° to barrel	
Square-edged at crown	0.4
Crown edge rounded to radius of $^1/_{12}$ barrel dimension or beveled top edge	0.2
Wingwall at 10° to 25° to barrel	
Square-edged at crown	0.5
Wingwalls parallel (extension of sides)	
Square-edged at crown	0.7
Side- or slope-tapered inlet	0.2

* *Note: "End section conforming to fill slope" are the sections commonly available from manufacturers. From limited hydraulic tests they are equivalent in operation to a headwall in both* ***inlet and outlet control****. Some end sections incorporating a* ***closed taper*** *in their design have a superior hydraulic performance.*

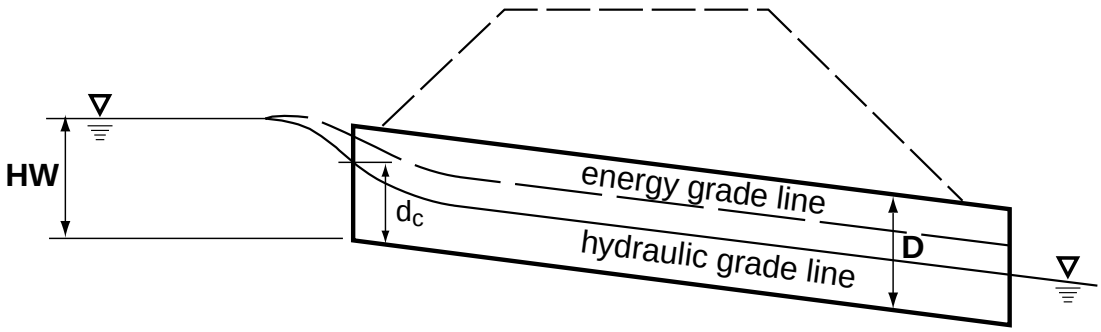
Computer Applications

The "King County Backwater" (KCBW) computer program available with this manual contains two subroutines (**BWPIPE** and **BWCULV**) that may be used to analyze culvert capacity and develop stage/discharge curves for level pool routing purposes. A schematic description of the nomenclature used in these subroutines is provided in Figure 4.3.1.G (p. 4-50). The KCBW program documentation available from DNRP includes more detailed descriptions of program features.

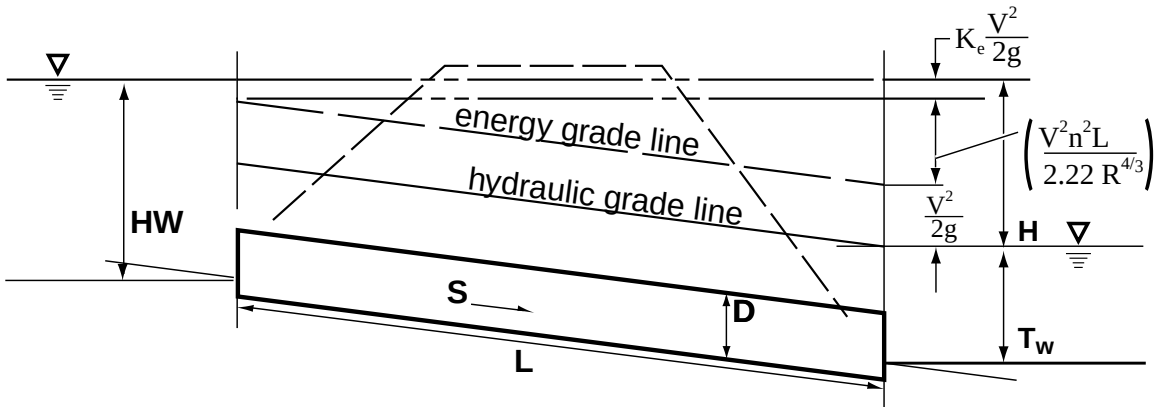
FIGURE 4.3.1.A INLET/OUTLET CONTROL CONDITIONS



Inlet Control - Submerged Inlet



Inlet Control - Unsubmerged Inlet



Outlet Control - Submerged Inlet and Outlet

NOTE: See FHWA no. 5 for other possible conditions

FIGURE 4.3.1.B
HEADWATER DEPTH FOR SMOOTH INTERIOR PIPE CULVERTS WITH INLET CONTROL

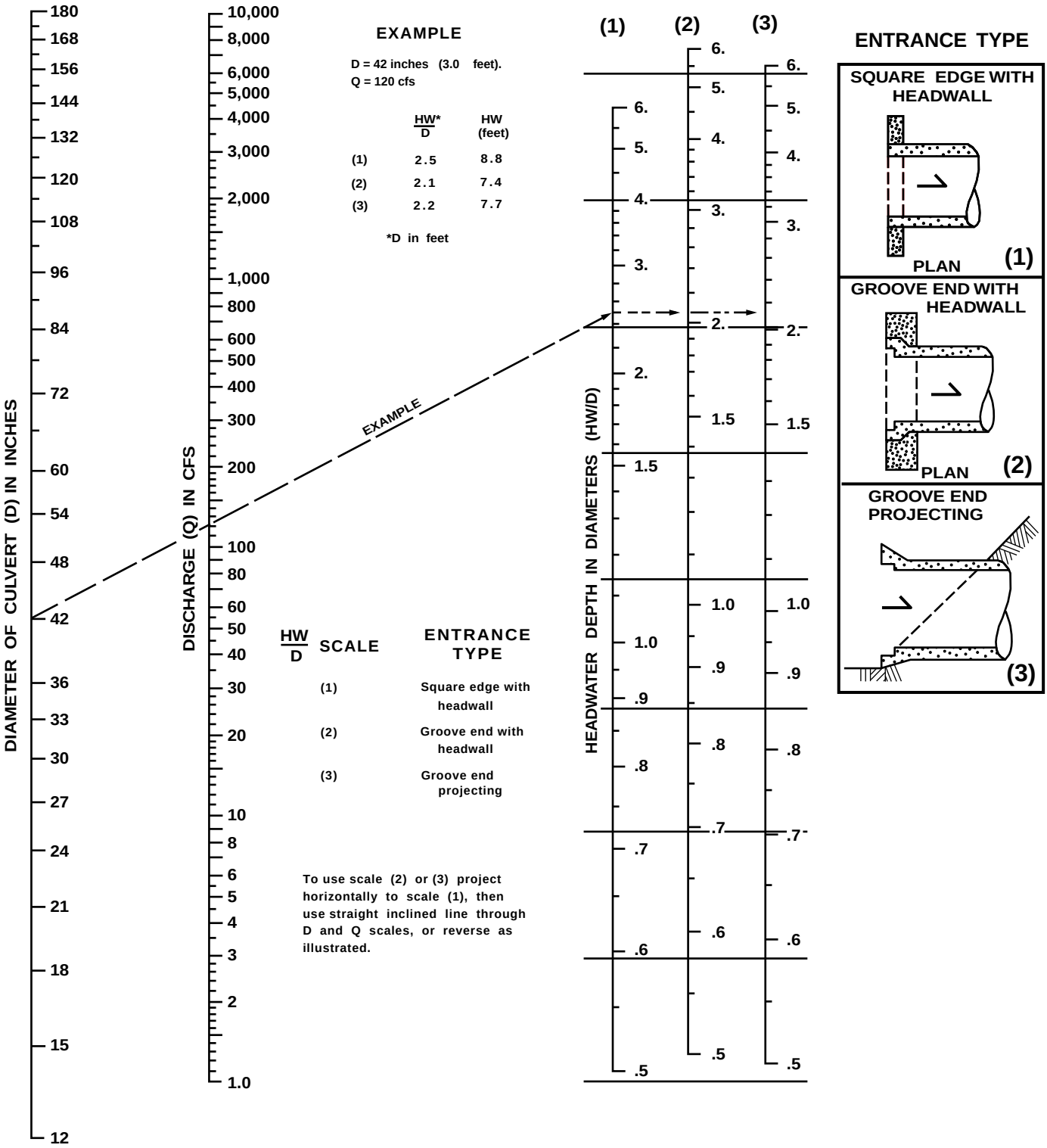


FIGURE 4.3.1.C HEADWATER DEPTH FOR CORRUGATED PIPE CULVERTS WITH INLET CONTROL

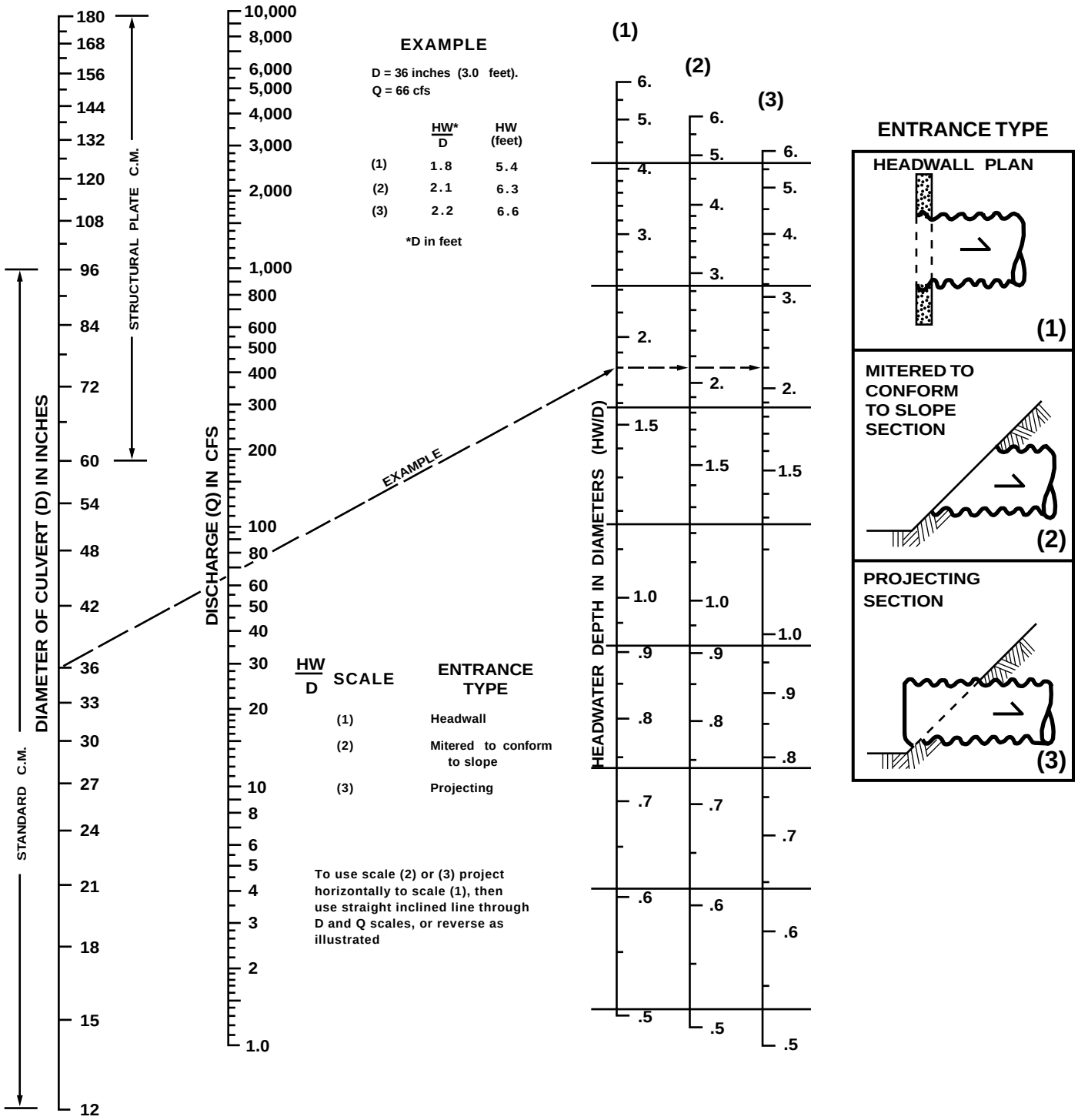


FIGURE 4.3.1.D HEAD FOR CULVERTS (PIPE W/"*n*"= 0.012) FLOWING FULL WITH OUTLET CONTROL

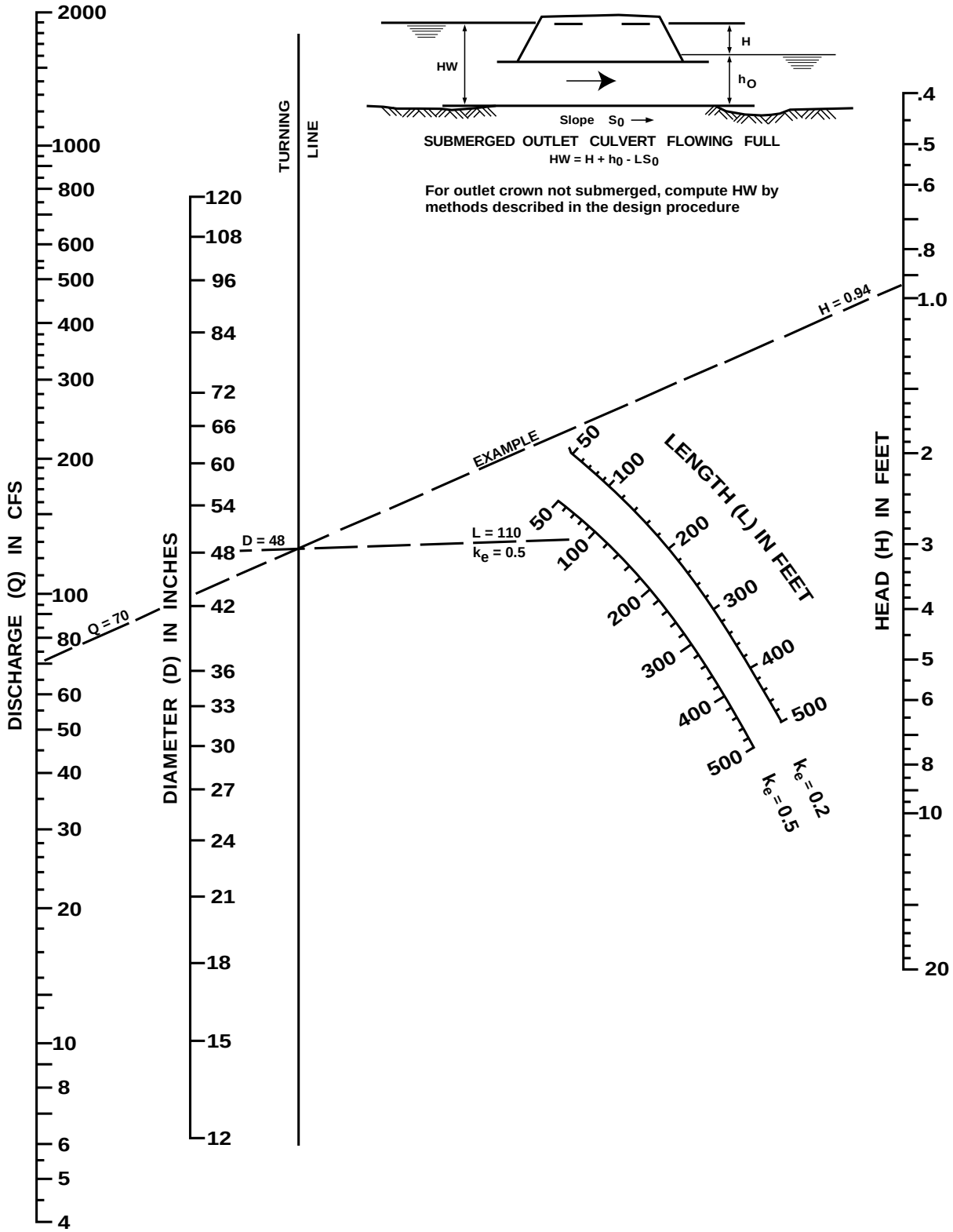


FIGURE 4.3.1.E HEAD FOR CULVERTS (PIPE W/"*n*"= 0.024) FLOWING FULL WITH OUTLET CONTROL

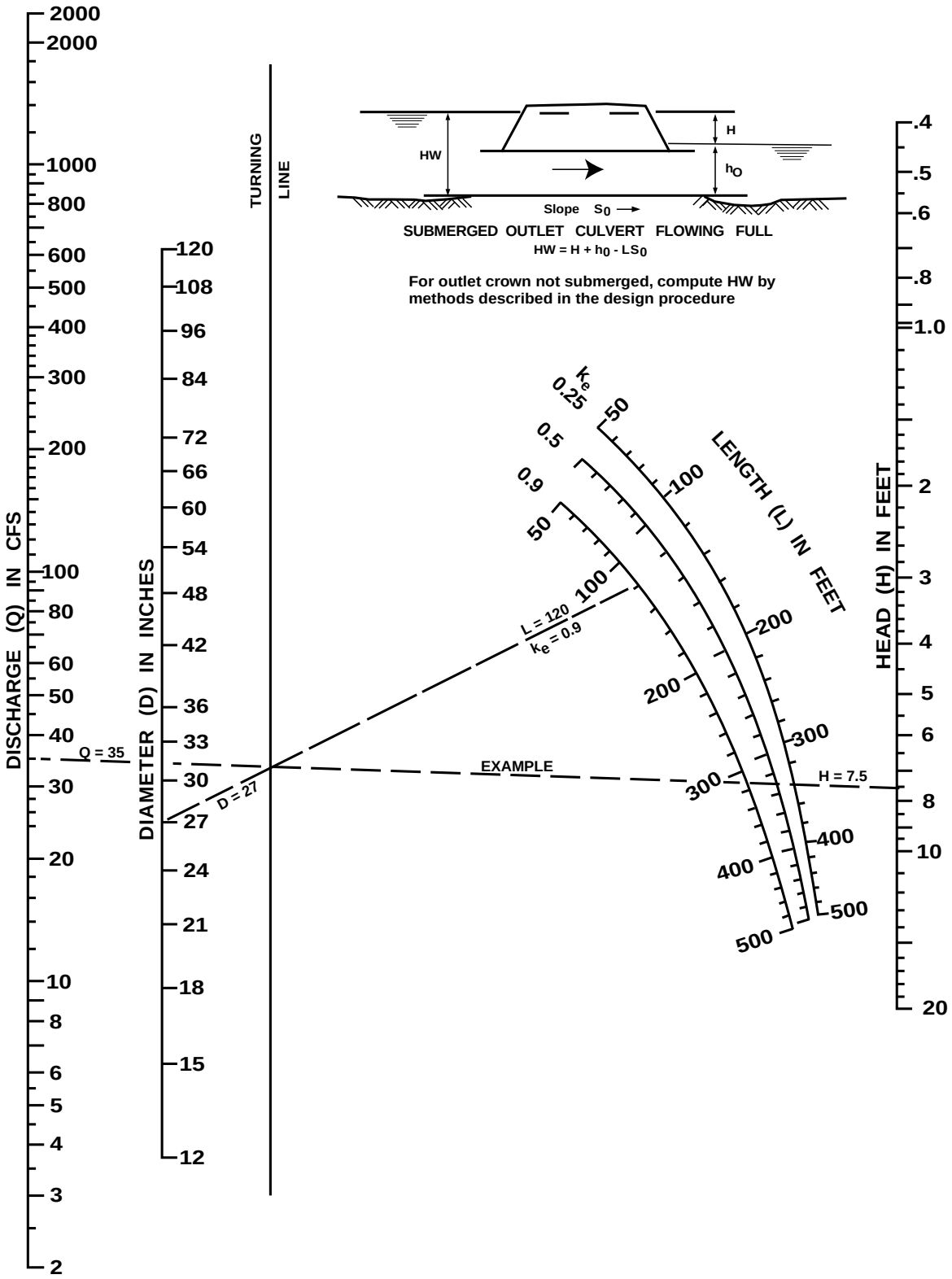
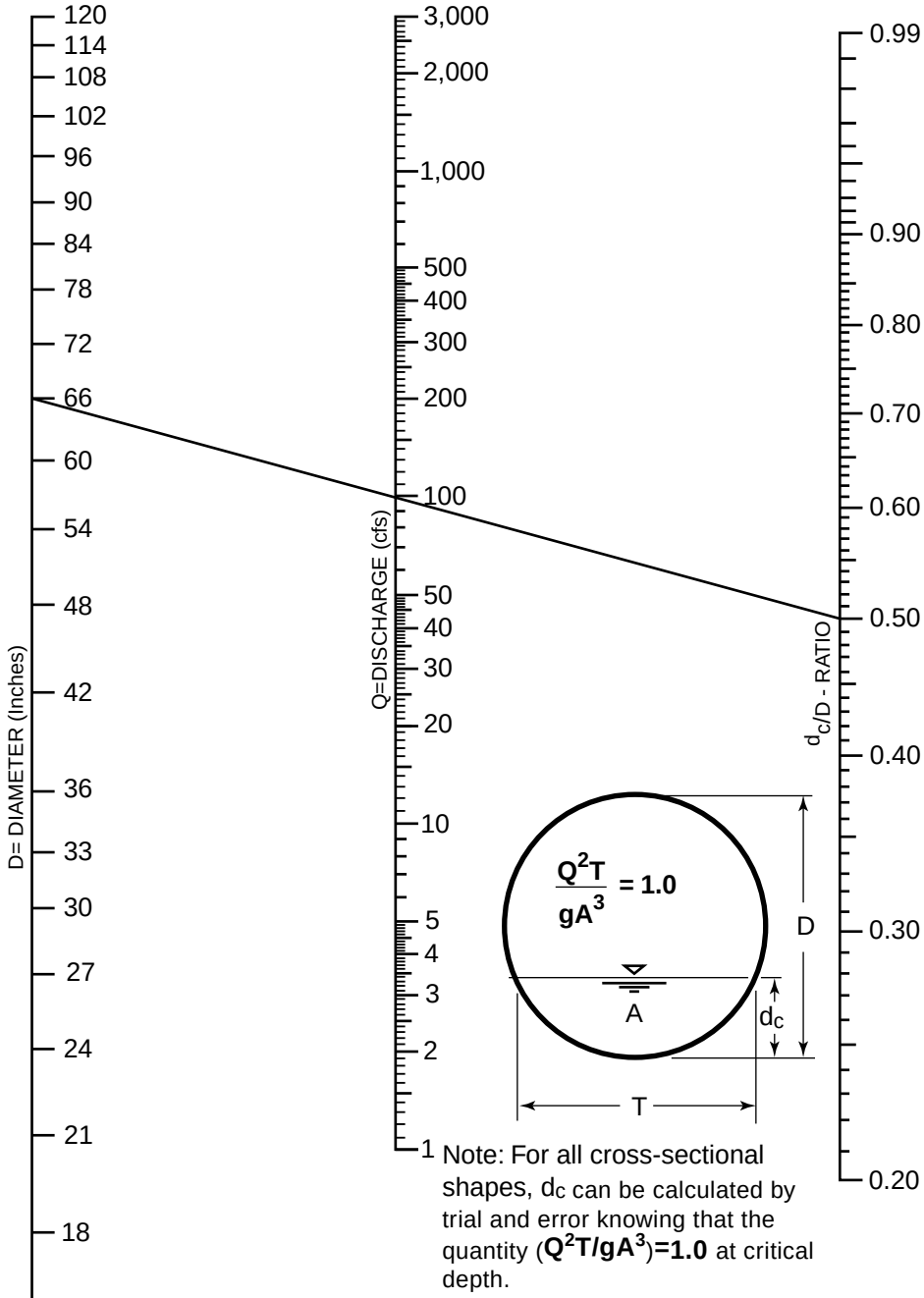


FIGURE 4.3.1.F CRITICAL DEPTH OF FLOW FOR CIRCULAR CULVERTS



Note: For all cross-sectional shapes, d_c can be calculated by trial and error knowing that the quantity (Q^2T/gA^3)=**1.0** at critical depth.

EXAMPLE

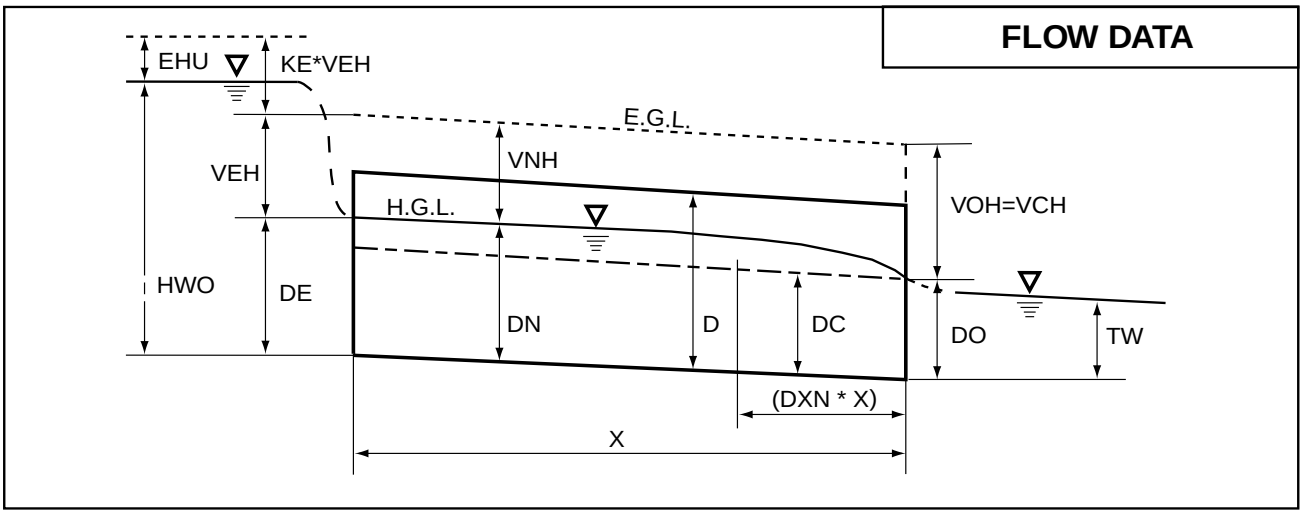
D = 66 inches, Q = 100cfs

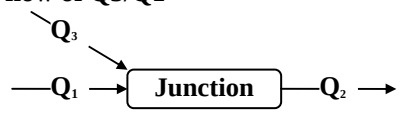
d_c/D - Ratio = 0.50

d_c = (0.50)(66 inches)= 33 inches ÷ (12 inches/ft)

d_c= 2.75 feet

FIGURE 4.3.1.G COMPUTER SUBROUTINES BWPIPE AND BWCULV: VARIABLE DEFINITIONS



FLOW DATA	COEFFICIENTS/INLET DATA
DC -Critical Depth (ft)	**KE -Entrance Coefficient under Outlet Control**
DN -Normal Depth (ft)	**KB -Bend Loss Coefficient**
TW -Tailwater Depth (ft)	**KJ -Junction Loss Coefficient**
DO -Outlet Depth (ft)	**K -Inlet Control Equation parameter (See** Table 4.3.1.A)
DE -Entrance Depth (ft)	**M -Inlet Control Equation parameter (See** Table 4.3.1.A**)**
HWO -Headwater (ft) assuming Outlet Control	**C -Inlet Control Equation parameter (See** Table 4.3.1.A)
HWI -Headwater (ft) assuming Inlet Control	**Y -Inlet Control Equation parameter (See** Table 4.3.1.A)
DXN -Distance (expressed as a fraction of the pipe length) from the outlet to where the flow profile intersects with normal depth. DXN will equal one under full-flow conditions and will equal zero when a hydraulic jump occurs at the outlet or when normal depth equals zero (normal depth will equal zero when the pipe grade is flat or reversed).	**Q-Ratio Ratio of tributary flow to main upstream flow of Q3/Q1** 
VBH -Barrel Velocity Head (ft) based on the average velocity determined by V=Q/Afull	
VUH -Upstream Velocity Head (ft) based on an inputted velocity.	
EHU -Upstream Energy Head (ft) available after bend losses and junction losses have been subtracted from VUH.	
VCH -Critical Depth Velocity Head (ft)	
VNH -Normal Depth Velocity Head (ft)	
VEH -Entrance Depth Velocity Head (ft)	
VOH -Outlet Depth Velocity Head (ft)	

4.3.2 CULVERTS PROVIDING FOR FISH PASSAGE/MIGRATION

In fish-bearing waters, water-crossing structures must usually provide for fish passage as required for Washington State Department of Fish and Wildlife (WDFW) Hydraulic Project Approval or as a condition of permitting under the critical areas code (KCC 21A.24). Culverts designed for fish passage must also meet the requirements of Section 1.2.4, "Core Requirement #4: Conveyance System."

Fish passage can generally be ensured by providing structures that do not confine the streambed—that is, a structure wide enough so that the stream can maintain its natural channel within the culvert. Bridges, bottomless arch culverts, arch culverts, and rectangular box culverts ("utility vaults") can often be used to accommodate stream channels.

Where it is unfeasible to construct these types of structures, round pipe culverts may be used if high flow velocities are minimized and low flow depths are maximized. The Hydraulic Code Rules (Title 220 WAC) detail requirements for WDFW Hydraulic Project Approval. See the WDFW manual “Design of Road Culverts for Fish Passage" for detailed design methodologies.

Materials

Galvanized metals leach zinc into the environment, especially in standing water situations. High zinc concentrations, sometimes in the range that can be toxic to aquatic life, have been observed in the region. Therefore, use of galvanized materials in stormwater facilities and conveyance systems is discouraged. Where other metals, such as aluminum or stainless steel, or plastics are available, they should be used.

4.3.2.1 DESIGN CRITERIA

Table 4.3.2.A (from Title 220 WAC) lists allowable velocities, flow depths, and hydraulic drops for culverts in fish-bearing streams. Velocities are for the **high flow design discharge**; water depths are for the **low flow design discharge.** The *hydraulic drop* (a vertical drop in the water surface profile at any point within culvert influence) is for all flows between the high and low flow design discharges.

TABLE 4.3.2.A FISH PASSAGE DESIGN CRITERIA

	Adult Trout	Adult Pink, Chum Salmon	Adult Chinook, Coho, Sockeye, Steelhead
1. Max Velocity (fps)			
Culvert Length:			
10-60 ft	4.0	5.0	6.0
60-100 ft	4.0	4.0	5.0
100-200 ft	3.0	3.0	4.0
2. Min Flow Depth (ft)	0.8	0.8	1.0
3. Max Hydraulic Drop (ft)	0.8	0.8	1.0

4.3.2.2 METHODS OF ANALYSIS

High Flow Design Discharge

For **gaged streams**, the high flow design discharge shall be estimated by the 10% exceedance flow for October through April inclusive, proportioned by tributary area to the culvert using the technique described in Section 4.4.2.3 under "Flood Flows from Stream Gage Data" (p. 4-75).

For **ungaged streams,** the high flow design discharge shall be estimated by one of the following:

- The 10% exceedance flow for October through April inclusive for the nearest hydrologically similar gaged stream, proportioned by tributary area
- The 5% exceedance flow determined through duration analysis with the KCRTS model
- The 10% exceedance flow for October through April inclusive determined with the HSPF model or the KCRTS model using the full historical record.

Low Flow Design Discharge

For **gaged streams**, the low flow design discharge shall be estimated by the 95% exceedance flow for October through April inclusive, proportioned by tributary area.

For **ungaged streams**, the low flow design discharge shall be estimated by one of the following:

- The 95% exceedance flow for October through April inclusive for the nearest hydrologically similar gaged stream, proportioned by tributary area
- The 95% exceedance flow for October through April inclusive, determined by the HSPF model or the KCRTS model using the full historical record
- One of the following equations, using KCRTS input data:

  For the Sea-Tac rainfall region:

$$Q_l = f_r (0.46A_{tf} + 0.56A_{tp} + 0.46A_{tg} + 0.72A_{of} + 0.96A_{op} + 1.10A_{og}) / 1000 \quad (4\text{-}8)$$

  For the Landsburg rainfall region:

$$Q_l = f_r (0.65A_{tf} + 0.90A_{tp} + 0.70A_{tg} + 1.10A_{of} + 1.45A_{op} + 1.70A_{og} + 0.25A_{wl}) / 1000 \quad (4\text{-}9)$$

where
Q_l = low flow design discharge (cfs)
f_r = regional rainfall scale factor from Figure 3.2.2.A
A_{tf} = area of till forest (acres)
A_{tp} = area of till pasture (acres)
A_{tg} = area of till grass (acres)
A_{of} = area of outwash forest (acres)
A_{op} = area of outwash pasture (acres)
A_{og} = area of outwash grass (acres)

Note: Minimum depths may also be met by providing an "installed no-flow depth," per Title 220 WAC, where the static water surface level meets minimum flow depth criteria.

4.3.3 BRIDGES

Bridges over waterways are considered conveyance structures and are generally constructed to allow the continuation of a thoroughfare (such as a road). They generally consist of foundation abutments and/or piers that support a deck spanning the waterway. In addition to the **design criteria for conveyance** described below, bridge designs must meet the requirements of the King County Road Standards, Chapter 6, the critical areas code (KCC 21A.24), Shoreline Management (KCC Title 25), and the Clearing and Grading Code (KCC 16.82) as well as the requirements of other agencies such as the Washington State Department of Fish and Wildlife (WDFW).

4.3.3.1 DESIGN CRITERIA

Bridges shall be designed to convey flows and pass sediments and debris for runoff events up to and including the 100-year event in a manner that does not increase the potential for flooding or erosion to properties and structures near or adjacent to the bridge, or cause bridge failure. Inadequate conveyance capacity may cause flooding to increase by restricting flow through the hydraulic openings, by placing approach fill or abutments in floodplains, by causing changes in channel gradient and alignment or by trapping debris. A common mode of bridge failure involving debris is the resultant scour and undermining of piers or abutments where debris accumulates.

Openings between the structural elements of the bridge and the bottom of the channel or floodplain ground surface must be large enough to allow for passage of water, sediment, and debris. The horizontal openings are defined by the bridge span, the horizontal distances between piers or abutments.

Bridge clearance is the vertical distance between the 100-year water surface and the low chord of the bridge. **Bridge clearance requirements** are contained in the *King County Road Standards*. *Evaluation of adequate conveyance capacity, referred to in King County Roads Standards, Section 6.02.G., shall consider the following factors.*

Hydraulic Capacity

Bridge and approach roads must **pass the 100-year flow** without creating hydraulic restrictions that cause or increase flooding. Design of bridge and approach roads shall demonstrate compliance with zero-rise and compensatory storage provisions of KCC chapter 21A.24. Of necessity, bridge and approach roads are sometimes constructed within 100-year floodplains. In some cases, approach roads will be inundated and the bridge will not be accessible during extreme events. In other cases, both the bridge and approach roads will be inundated by the 100-year flood. In these cases, the bridge shall be designed to withstand the expected condition while inundated. The design shall employ means to facilitate flow over the bridge and to minimize the potential for erosion of the roadway fill in the approach roads.

Bed Aggradation

Where bed aggradation is probable, the analysis of hydraulic capacity shall assume the bed raised by an amount expected during a suitable **design life** (40 years minimum) of the bridge. Aggradation estimates shall be based on a sediment transport analysis that, where possible, is calibrated to direct cross-section comparisons over time. This analysis shall extend upstream and downstream a sufficient distance to adequately characterize bed aggradation that may affect the hydraulic capacity at the bridge location.

Bed aggradation is frequently associated with channel migration. The location and design of bridges and approach roads shall consider **channel migration hazards**, as mapped by King County.

Debris Passage

Since debris can pass through an opening either partly or totally submerged, the total vertical clearance from the bottom of the structure to the streambed needs to be considered. Required clearance for debris shall include an assessment of the maximum material size available, the ability of the stream to transport

it, and the proximity of debris sources. The **following factors also must be considered**: history of debris problems in the river reaches upstream and downstream of the proposed bridge location, history of debris accumulations on an existing bridge structure or nearby structures upstream and downstream from the proposed bridge location, mapped channel migration hazard and channel migration history of the reach of stream, and skew of the bridge alignment such that piers in floodplain may be in the path of the debris. For a detailed qualitative analysis of debris accumulation on bridges, see the *U.S. Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration Publication FHWA-RD-97-028, Potential Drift Accumulation at Bridges*, by Timothy H. Diehl (1997).

Safety Margin

When designing bridges to convey flows and pass sediments and debris, a safety margin **shall be considered** by the design engineer to account for uncertainties in flow rates, debris hazards, water surface elevations, aggradation, and channel migration over time. The safety margin should be increased when the surrounding community is especially susceptible to flood damages that could be exacerbated by a debris jam at the bridge. Section 5 of the Technical Information Report submitted with the project's engineering plans shall include a discussion of the need for a safety margin and the rationale for its selection.

Bridges and Levees

Where bridge structures and approach roads intersect flood containment levees, the bridge structure and approach roads shall be designed and constructed to preserve existing levels of flood containment provided by the existing levee.

Where the existing levee currently provides containment of the 100-year flood, the bridge structure and approach roads shall be designed and constructed to meet FEMA levee and structural performance standards, including sufficient freeboard on the levee in the bridge vicinity, as provided for in 44 CFR.

Bridge Piers and Abutments

Bridge pier and abutment locations are governed by provisions of the King County critical areas code, KCC 21A.24.

4.3.3.2 METHODS OF ANALYSIS

The following methods are acceptable for hydraulic analysis of **bridges** and approach roads:

1. The **Direct Step backwater method** described on page 4-62 shall be used to analyze the hydraulic impacts of bridge piers, abutments, and approach roads to the water surface profile.
2. The Army Corps of Engineers Hydraulic Engineering Center publishes **technical papers on methods** used to address the hydraulic effects of bridge piers, abutments, and approach roads. The book *Open Channel Hydraulics* by V.T. Chow also contains techniques for analyzing hydraulic effects.

4.4 OPEN CHANNELS, FLOODPLAINS, AND FLOODWAYS

This section presents the methods, criteria, and details for hydraulic analysis and design of open channels, and the determination and analysis of floodplains and floodways. The information presented is organized as follows:

Section 4.4.1, "Open Channels"
"Design Criteria," Section 4.4.1.1 (p. 4-56)
"Methods of Analysis," Section 4.4.1.2 (p. 4-61)

Section 4.4.2, "Floodplain/Floodway Analysis"
"No Floodplain Study Required," Section 4.4.2.1 (p. 4-72)
"Approximate Floodplain Study," Section 4.4.2.2 (p. 4-72)
"Minor Floodplain Study," Section 4.4.2.3 (p. 4-73)
"Major Floodplain/Floodway Study," Section 4.4.2.4 (p. 4-73)

4.4.1 OPEN CHANNELS

Open channels may be classified as either natural or constructed. Natural channels are generally referred to as rivers, streams, creeks, or swales, while constructed channels are most often called ditches, or simply channels. The Critical Areas, Shorelines, and Clearing and Grading Codes as well as Chapter 1 of this manual should be reviewed for requirements related to streams.

Natural Channels

Natural channels are defined as those that have occurred naturally due to the flow of surface waters, or those that, although originally constructed by human activity, have taken on the appearance of a natural channel including a stable route and biological community. They may vary hydraulically along each channel reach and should be left in their natural condition, wherever feasible or required, in order to maintain natural hydrologic functions and wildlife habitat benefits from established vegetation.

Constructed Channels

Constructed channels are those constructed or maintained by human activity and include bank stabilization of natural channels. Constructed channels shall be either vegetation-lined, rock-lined, or lined with appropriately bioengineered vegetation.

- **Vegetation-lined channels** are the most desirable of the constructed channels when properly designed and constructed. The vegetation stabilizes the slopes of the channel, controls erosion of the channel surface, and removes pollutants. The channel storage, low velocities, water quality benefits, and greenbelt multiple-use benefits create significant advantages over other constructed channels. The presence of vegetation in channels creates turbulence that results in loss of energy and increased flow retardation; therefore, the design engineer must consider sediment deposition and scour, as well as flow capacity, when designing the channel.
- **Rock-lined channels** are necessary where a vegetative lining will not provide adequate protection from erosive velocities. They may be constructed with riprap, gabions, or slope mattress linings. The rock lining increases the turbulence, resulting in a loss of energy and increased flow retardation. Rock lining also permits a higher design velocity and therefore a steeper design slope than in grass-lined channels. Rock linings are also used for erosion control at culvert and storm drain outlets, sharp channel bends, channel confluences, and locally steepened channel sections.
- **Bioengineered vegetation lining** is a desirable alternative to the conventional methods of rock armoring. *Soil bioengineering* is a highly specialized science that uses living plants and plant parts to

stabilize eroded or damaged land. Properly bioengineered systems are capable of providing a measure of immediate soil protection and mechanical reinforcement. As the plants grow they produce a vegetative protective cover and a root reinforcing matrix in the soil mantle. This root reinforcement serves several purposes:

a) The developed anchor roots provide both shear and tensile strength to the soil, thereby providing protection from the frictional shear and tensile velocity components to the soil mantle during the time when flows are receding and pore pressure is high in the saturated bank.

b) The root mat provides a living filter in the soil mantle that allows for the natural release of water after the high flows have receded.

c) The combined root system exhibits active friction transfer along the length of the living roots. This consolidates soil particles in the bank and serves to protect the soil structure from collapsing and the stabilization measures from failing.

The vegetative cover of bioengineered systems provides immediate protection during high flows by laying flat against the bank and covering the soil like a blanket. It also reduces pore pressure in saturated banks through transpiration by acting as a natural "pump" to "pull" the water out of the banks after flows have receded.

The King County publication *Guidelines for Bank Stabilization Projects* primarily focuses on projects on larger rivers and streams, but the concepts it contains may be used in conjunction with other natural resource information for stabilization projects on smaller systems. The *WDFW Integrated Streambank Protection Guidelines* is another useful reference.

4.4.1.1 DESIGN CRITERIA

General

1. **Open channels** shall be designed to provide required conveyance capacity and bank stability while allowing for aesthetics, habitat preservation, and enhancement. Open channels shall be consistent with the *WDFW Integrated Streambank Protection Guidelines*.

2. An **access easement for maintenance** is required along all constructed channels located on private property. Required easement widths and building setback lines vary with channel top width as shown in Table 4.1 (p. 4-5).

3. **Channel cross-section geometry** shall be trapezoidal, triangular, parabolic, or segmental as shown in Figure 4.4.1.C (p. 4-65) through Figure 4.4.1.E (p. 4-67). **Side slopes** shall be no steeper than 3:1 for vegetation-lined channels and 2:1 for rock-lined channels. *Note: Roadside ditches shall comply with King County Road Standards.*

4. **Vegetation-lined channels** shall have **bottom slope gradients** of 6% or less and a **maximum velocity** at design flow of 5 fps (see Table 4.4.1.A, p. 4-57).

5. **Rock-lined channels or bank stabilization of natural channels** shall be used when design flow velocities exceed 5 feet per second. Rock stabilization shall be in accordance with Table 4.4.1.A (p. 4-57) or stabilized with bioengineering methods as described above in "Constructed Channels (p. 4-55).

TABLE 4.4.1.A CHANNEL PROTECTION

Velocity at Design Flow (fps)		REQUIRED PROTECTION		
Greater than	**Less than or equal to**	**Type of Protection**	**Thickness**	**Minimum Height Above Design Water Surface**
0	5	Grass lining Or Bioengineered lining	N/A	
5	8	Rock lining(1) Or Bioengineered lining	1 foot	1 foot
8	12	Riprap(2)	2 feet	2 feet
12	20	Slope mattress gabion, etc.	Varies	2 feet

(1) Rock Lining shall be reasonably well graded as follows:

Maximum stone size: 12 inches
Median stone size: 8 inches
Minimum stone size: 2 inches

(2) Riprap shall be reasonably well graded as follows:

Maximum stone size: 24 inches
Median stone size: 16 inches
Minimum stone size: 4 inches

Note: Riprap sizing is governed by side slopes on channel, assumed to be approximately 3:1.

Riprap Design[10]

When riprap is set, stones are placed on the channel sides and bottom to protect the underlying material from being eroded. Proper riprap design requires the determination of the median size of stone, the thickness of the riprap layer, the gradation of stone sizes, and the selection of angular stones that will interlock when placed. Research by the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers has provided criteria for selecting the **median stone weight**, $\boldsymbol{W_{50}}$ (Figure 4.4.1.A, p. 4-59). If the riprap is to be used in a highly turbulent zone (such as at a culvert outfall, downstream of a stilling basin, at sharp changes in channel geometry, etc.), the median stone W_{50} should be increased from 200% to 600% depending on the severity of the locally high turbulence. The thickness of the riprap layer should generally be twice the **median stone diameter** ($\boldsymbol{D_{50}}$) or at least that of the maximum stone. The riprap should have a reasonably well graded assortment of stone sizes within the following gradation:

$$1.25 \leq D_{max}/D_{50} \leq 1.50$$

$$D_{15}/D_{50} = 0.50$$

$$D_{min}/D_{50} = 0.25$$

Detailed design methodology may be found in the Corps publication EM 1110-02-1601, Engineering and Design – Hydraulic Design of Flood Control Channels. For a more detailed analysis and design procedure

[10] From a paper prepared by M. Schaefer, Dam Safety Section, Washington State Department of Ecology.

for riprap requiring water surface profiles and estimates of tractive force, refer to the paper by Maynord et al in *Journal of Hydraulic Engineering (A.S.C.E.)*, July 1989.

Riprap Filter Design

Riprap should be underlain by a sand and gravel filter (or filter fabric) to keep the fine materials in the underlying channel bed from being washed through the voids in the riprap. Likewise, the filter material must be selected so that it is not washed through the voids in the riprap. Adequate filters can usually be provided by a reasonably well graded sand and gravel material where:

$$D_{15} < 5d_{85}$$

The variable d_{85} refers to the sieve opening through which 85% of the material being protected will pass, and D_{15} has the same interpretation for the filter material. A filter material with a D_{50} of 0.5 mm will protect any finer material including clay. Where very large riprap is used, it is sometimes necessary to use two filter layers between the material being protected and the riprap.

Example:

What embedded riprap design should be used to protect a streambank at a level culvert outfall where the outfall velocities in the vicinity of the downstream toe are expected to be about 8 fps?

From Figure 4.4.1.A (p. 4-59), W_{50} = 6.5 lbs, but since the downstream area below the outfall will be subjected to severe turbulence, increase W_{50} by 400% so that:

W_{50} = 26 lbs, D_{50} = 8.0 inches

The gradation of the riprap is shown in Figure 4.4.1.B (p. 4-60), and the minimum thickness would be 1 foot (from Table 4.4.1.A, p. 4-57); however, 16 inches to 24 inches of riprap thickness would provide some additional insurance that the riprap will function properly in this highly turbulent area.

Figure 4.4.1.B (p. 4-60) shows that the gradation curve for ASTM C33, size number 57 coarse aggregate (used in concrete mixes), would meet the filter criteria. Applying the filter criteria to the coarse aggregate demonstrates that any underlying material whose gradation was coarser than that of a concrete sand would be protected.

FIGURE 4.4.1.A
MEAN CHANNEL VELOCITY VS. MEDIUM STONE WEIGHT (W_{50}) AND EQUIVALENT STONE DIAMETER

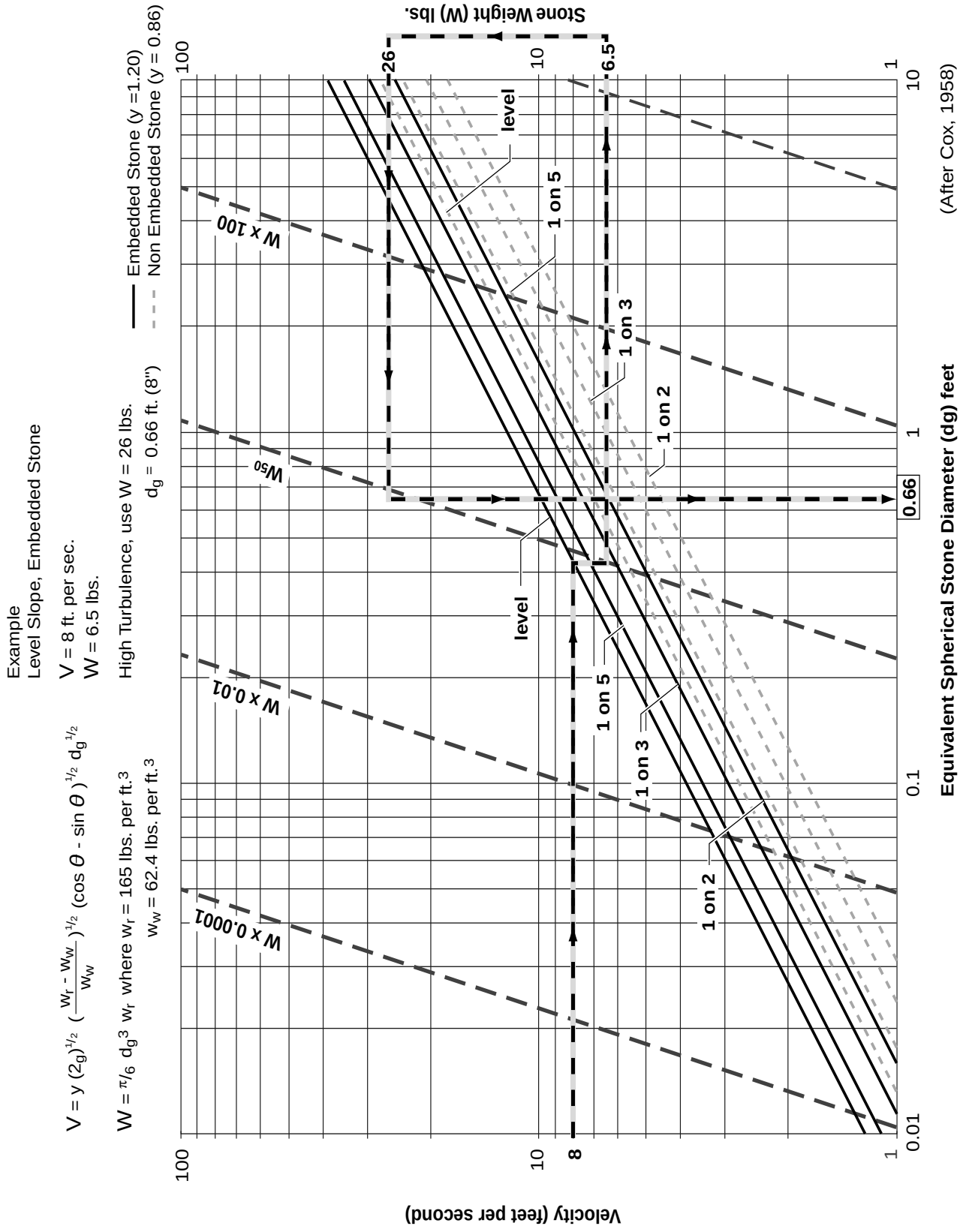
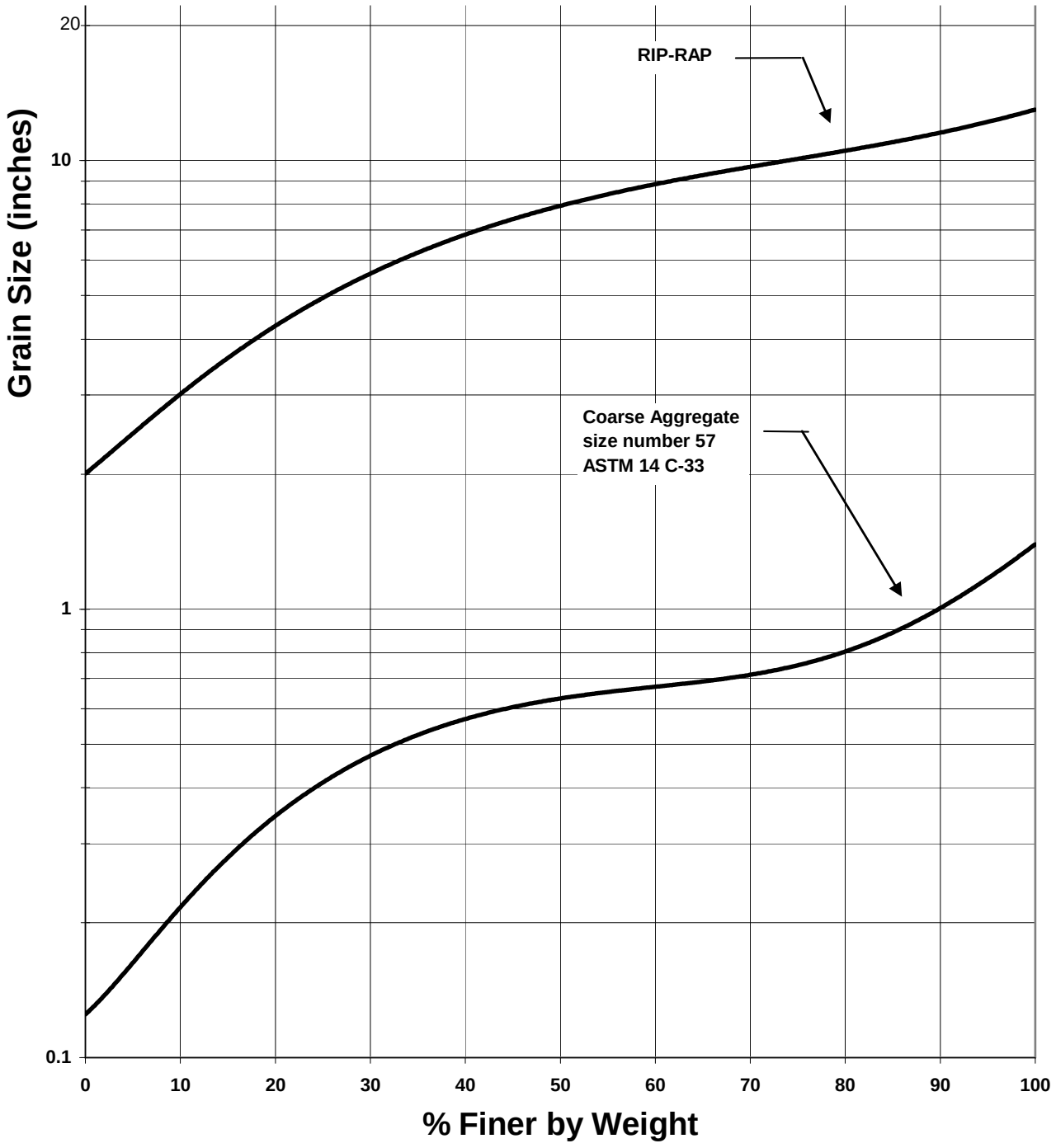


FIGURE 4.4.1.B RIPRAP/FILTER EXAMPLE GRADATION CURVE



4.4.1.2 METHODS OF ANALYSIS

This section presents the methods of analysis **for designing new or evaluating existing open channels** for compliance with the conveyance capacity requirements set forth in Section 1.2.4, "Core Requirement #4: Conveyance System."

❑ DESIGN FLOWS

Design flows for sizing and assessing the capacity of open channels shall be determined using the hydrologic analysis methods described in Chapter 3.

❑ CONVEYANCE CAPACITY

There are three acceptable methods of analysis for sizing and analyzing the capacity of open channels:

1. Manning's equation for preliminary sizing
2. Direct Step backwater method
3. Standard Step backwater method.

Manning's Equation for Preliminary Sizing

Manning's equation is used for preliminary sizing of open channel reaches of uniform cross section and slope (i.e., prismatic channels) and uniform roughness. This method assumes the flow depth (or normal depth) and flow velocity remain constant throughout the channel reach for a given flow.

The charts in Figure 4.4.1.C (p. 4-65) and Figure 4.4.1.D (p. 4-66) may be used to obtain graphic solutions of Manning's equation for common ditch sections. For conditions outside the range of these charts or for more precise results, Manning's equation can be solved directly from its classic forms shown in Equations (4-1) and (4-2) on page 4-20.

Table 4.4.1.B (p. 4-62) provides a reference for selecting the appropriate "*n*" values for open channels. A number of engineering reference books, such as *Open-Channel Hydraulics* by V.T. Chow, may also be used as guides to select "*n*" values. Figure 4.4.1.E (p. 4-67) contains the geometric elements of common channel sections useful in determining area *A*, wetted perimeter *WP*, and hydraulic radius ($R = A/WP$).

If flow restrictions occur that raise the water level above normal depth within a given channel reach, a *backwater condition* (or subcritical flow) is said to exist. This condition can result from flow restrictions created by a downstream culvert, bridge, dam, pond, lake, etc., and even a downstream channel reach having a higher flow depth. If backwater conditions are found to exist for the design flow, a backwater profile must be computed to verify that the channel's capacity is still adequate as designed. The Direct Step or Standard Step backwater methods presented in this section may be used for this purpose.

TABLE 4.4.1.B VALUES OF ROUGHNESS COEFFICIENT "*n*" FOR OPEN CHANNELS

Type of Channel and Description	Manning's "*n*"* (Normal)
A. Constructed Channels	
a. Earth, straight and uniform	
1. Clean, recently completed	0.018
2. Gravel, uniform section, clean	0.025
3. With short grass, few weeds	0.027
b. Earth, winding and sluggish	
1. No vegetation	0.025
2. Grass, some weeds	0.030
3. Dense weeds or aquatic plants in deep channels	0.035
4. Earth bottom and rubble sides	0.030
5. Stony bottom and weedy banks	0.035
6. Cobble bottom and clean sides	0.040
c. Rock lined	
1. Smooth and uniform	0.035
2. Jagged and irregular	0.040
d. Channels not maintained, weeds and brush uncut	
1. Dense weeds, high as flow depth	0.080
2. Clean bottom, brush on sides	0.050
3. Same as #2, highest stage of flow	0.070
4. Dense brush, high stage	0.100
B. Natural Streams	
B-1 Minor streams (top width at flood stage < 100 ft.)	
a. Streams on plain	0.030
1. Clean, straight, full stage no rifts or deep pools	0.035
2. Same as #1, but more stones and weeds	0.040
3. Clean, winding, some pools and shoals	0.040
4. Same as #3, but some weeds	0.050
5. Same as #4, but more stones	
6. Sluggish reaches, weedy deep pools	0.070
7. Very weedy reaches, deep pools, or floodways with heavy stand of timber and underbrush	0.100
b. Mountain streams, no vegetation in channel, banks usually steep, trees and brush along banks submerged at high stages	
1. Bottom: gravel, cobbles, and few boulders	0.040
2. Bottom: cobbles with large boulders	0.050
B-2 Floodplains	
a. Pasture, no brush	
1. Short grass	0.030
2. High grass	0.035
b. Cultivated areas	
1. No crop	0.030
2. Mature row crops	0.035
3. Mature field crops	0.040
c. Brush	
1. Scattered brush, heavy weeds	0.050
2. Light brush and trees	0.060
3. Medium to dense brush	0.070
4. Heavy, dense brush	0.100
d. Trees	
1. Dense willows, straight	0.150
2. Cleared land with tree stumps, no sprouts	0.040
3. Same as #2, but with heavy growth of sprouts	0.060
4. Heavy stand of timber, a few down trees, little undergrowth, flood stage below branches	0.100
5. Same as #4, but with flood stage reaching branches	0.120

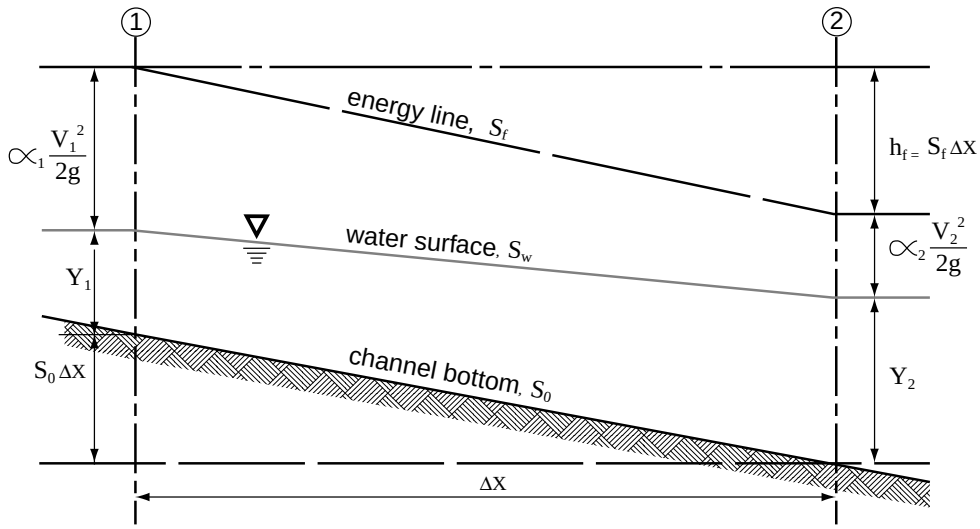
* *Note: These "n" values are "normal" values for use in analysis of channels. For conservative design of channel capacity, the maximum values listed in other references should be considered. For channel bank stability, the minimum values should be considered.*

Direct Step Backwater Method

The Direct Step backwater method may be used to compute backwater profiles on prismatic channel reaches (i.e., reaches having uniform cross section and slope) where a backwater condition or restriction to normal flow is known to exist. The method may be applied to a series of prismatic channel reaches in secession beginning at the downstream end of the channel and computing the profile upstream.

Calculating the coordinates of the water surface profile using this method is an iterative process achieved by choosing a range of flow depths, beginning at the downstream end, and proceeding incrementally up to the point of interest or to the point of normal flow depth. This is best accomplished by the use of a table (see Figure 4.4.1.G, p. 4-69) or computer programs (as discussed on page 4-64, "Computer Applications").

To illustrate analysis of a single reach, consider the following diagram:



Equating the total head at cross sections 1 and 2, the following equation may be written:

$$S_o \Delta x + y_1 + \alpha_1 \frac{V_1^2}{2g} = y_2 + \alpha_2 \frac{V_2^2}{2g} + S_f \Delta x \tag{4-10}$$

where,
- Δx = distance between cross sections (ft)
- y_1, y_2 = depth of flow (ft) at cross sections 1 and 2
- V_1, V_2 = velocity (fps) at cross sections 1 and 2
- α_1, α_2 = energy coefficient at cross sections 1 and 2
- S_o = bottom slope (ft/ft)
- S_f = friction slope = $(n^2V^2)/(2.21R^{1.33})$
- g = acceleration due to gravity, (32.2 ft/sec^2)

If the specific energy E at any one cross section is defined as follows:

$$E = y + \alpha \frac{V^2}{2g} \tag{4-11}$$

and assuming $\alpha = \alpha_1 = \alpha_2$ where α is the energy coefficient that corrects for the non-uniform distribution of velocity over the channel cross section, Equations (4-10) and (4-11) can be combined and rearranged to solve for Δx as follows:

$$\Delta x = (E_2 - E_1)/(S_o - S_f) = \Delta E/(S_o - S_f) \tag{4-12}$$

Typical values of the energy coefficient α are as follows:

Channels, regular section	1.15
Natural streams	1.3
Shallow vegetated flood fringes (includes channel)	1.75

For a given flow, channel slope, Manning's "*n*," and energy coefficient α, together with a beginning water surface elevation y_2, the values of Δx may be calculated for arbitrarily chosen values of y_1. The coordinates defining the water surface profile are obtained from the cumulative sum of Δx and corresponding values of y.

The **normal flow depth**, $\boldsymbol{y_n}$, should first be calculated from Manning's equation to establish the upper limit of the backwater effect.

Standard Step Backwater Method

The Standard Step Backwater Method is a variation of the Direct Step Backwater Method and may be used to compute backwater profiles on both prismatic and non-prismatic channels. In this method, stations are established along the channel where cross section data is known or has been determined through field survey. The computation is carried out in steps from station to station rather than throughout a given channel reach as is done in the Direct Step method. As a result, the analysis involves significantly more trial-and-error calculation in order to determine the flow depth at each station.

Computer Applications

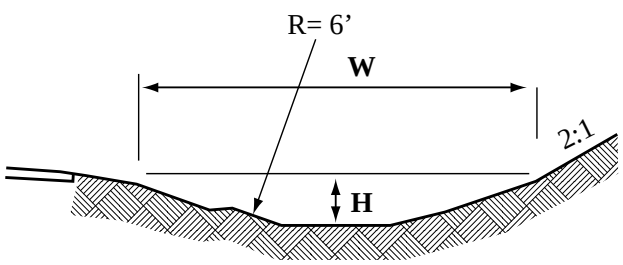
Because of the iterative calculations involved, use of a computer to perform the analysis is recommended. The **King County Backwater (KCBW) computer program** included in the software package available with this manual includes a subroutine, **BWCHAN**, based on the Standard Step backwater method, which may be used for all channel capacity analysis. It can also be combined with the **BWPIPE** and **BWCULV** subroutines to analyze an entire drainage conveyance system. A schematic description of the nomenclature used in the **BWCHAN** subroutine is provided in Figure 4.4.1.H (p. 4-70). See the KCBW program documentation for further information.

There are a number of commercial software programs for use on personal computers that use variations of the Standard Step backwater method for determining water surface profiles. The most common and widely accepted program is called HEC-RAS, published and supported by the United States Army Corps of Engineers Hydraulic Engineering Center. It is one of the models accepted by FEMA for use in performing flood hazard studies for preparing flood insurance maps.

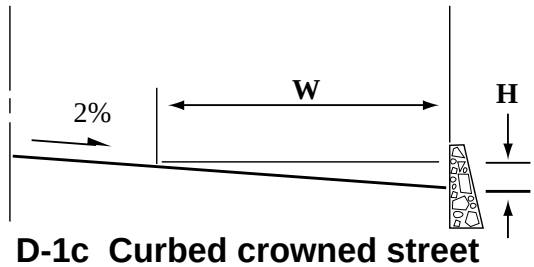
FIGURE 4.4.1.C DITCHES — COMMON SECTIONS

PROPERTIES OF DITCHES

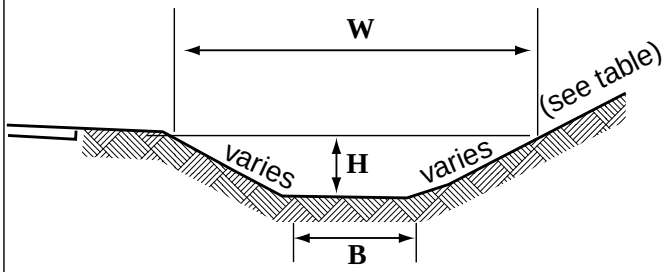
	DIMENSIONS				HYDRAULICS			
NO.	Side Slopes	B	H	W	A	WP	R	$R^{(2/3)}$
D-1	--	--	6.5"	5'-0"	1.84	5.16	0.356	0.502
D-1C	--	--	6"	25'-0"	6.25	25.50	0.245	0.392
D-2A	1.5:1	2'-0"	1'-0"	5'-0"	3.50	5.61	0.624	0.731
B	2:1	2'-0"	1'-0"	6'-0"	4.00	6.47	0.618	0.726
C	3:1	2'-0"	1'-0"	8'-0"	5.00	8.32	0.601	0.712
D-3A	1.5:1	3'-0"	1'-6"	7'-6"	7.88	8.41	0.937	0.957
B	2:1	3'-0"	1'-6"	9'-0"	9.00	9.71	0.927	0.951
C	3:1	3'-0"	1'-6"	12'-0"	11.25	12.49	0.901	0.933
D-4A	1.5:1	3'-0"	2'-0"	9'-0"	12.00	10.21	1.175	1.114
B	2:1	3'-0"	2'-0"	11'-0"	14.00	11.94	1.172	1.112
C	3:1	3'-0"	2'-0"	15'-0"	18.00	15.65	1.150	1.098
D-5A	1.5:1	4'-0"	3'-0"	13'-0"	25.50	13.82	1.846	1.505
B	2:1	4'-0"	3'-0"	16'-0"	30.00	16.42	1.827	1.495
C	3:1	4'-0"	3'-0"	22'-0"	39.00	21.97	1.775	1.466
D-6A	2:1	--	1'-0"	4'-0"	2.00	4.47	0.447	0.585
B	3:1	--	1'-0"	6'-0"	3.00	6.32	0.474	0.608
D-7A	2:1	--	2'-0"	8'-0"	8.00	8.94	0.894	0.928
B	3:1	--	2'-0"	12'-0"	12.00	12.65	0.949	0.965
D-8A	2:1	--	3'-0"	12'-0"	18.00	13.42	1.342	1.216
B	3:1	--	3'-0"	18'-0"	27.00	18.97	1.423	1.265
D-9	7:1	--	1'-0"	14'-0"	7.00	14.14	0.495	0.626
D-10	7:1	--	2'-0"	28'-0"	28.00	28.28	0.990	0.993
D-11	7:1	--	3'-0"	42'-0"	63.00	42.43	1.485	1.302



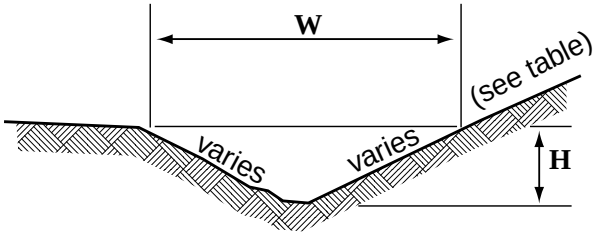
D-1 Segmental (parabolic)



D-1c Curbed crowned street



D-2, D-3, D-4, D-5 Trapezoidal



Isosceles triangular D-6 through D-11

FIGURE 4.4.1.D DRAINAGE DITCHES — COMMON SECTIONS

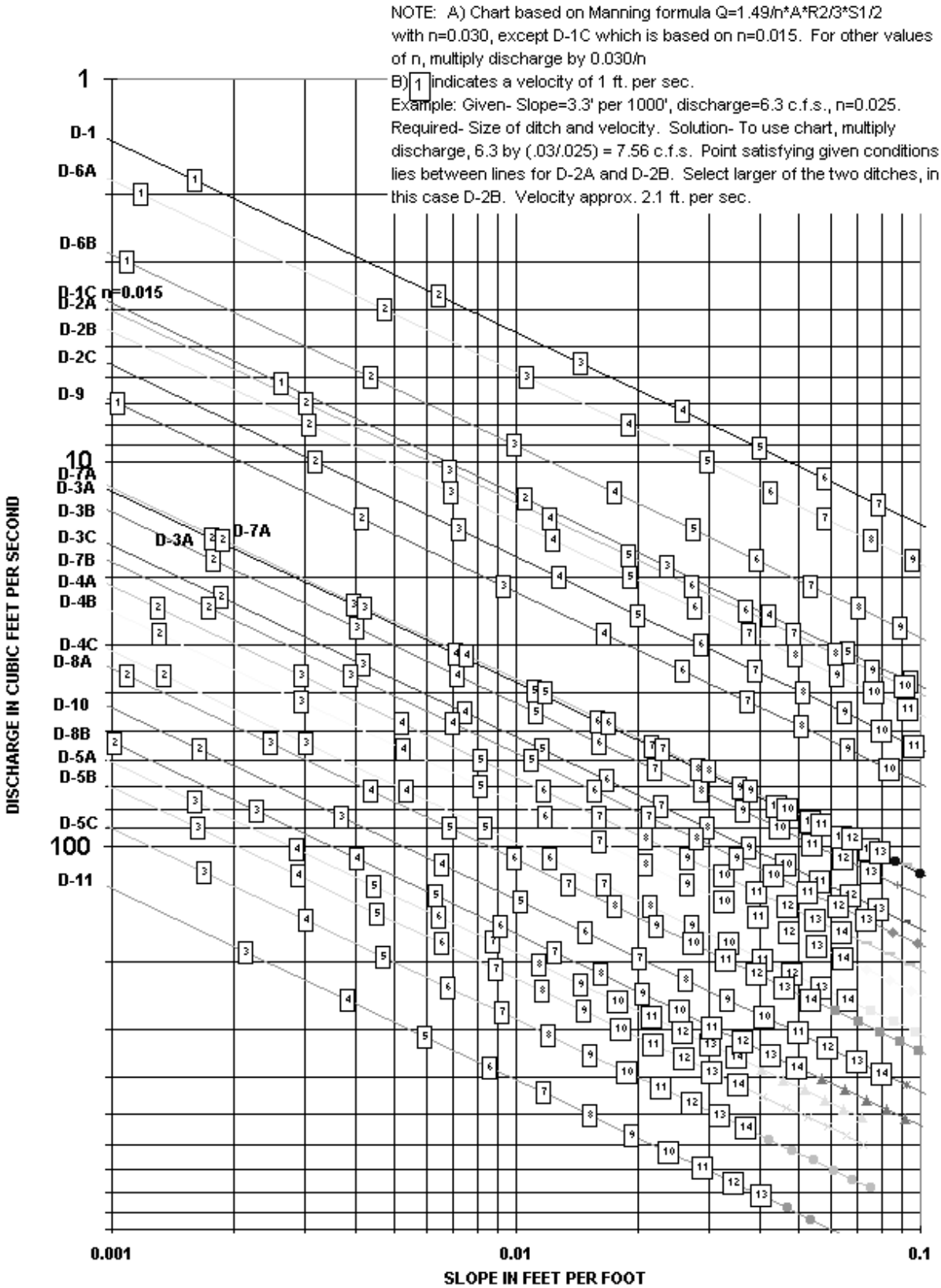
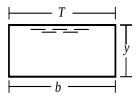
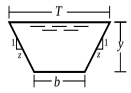
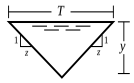
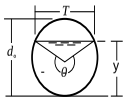
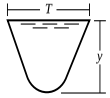
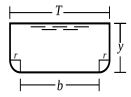
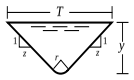


FIGURE 4.4.1.E GEOMETRIC ELEMENTS OF COMMON SECTIONS

Section	Area A	Wetted perimeter P	Hydraulic radius R	Top width W	Hydraulic depth D	Section factor Z
 Rectangle	by	$b + 2y$	$\frac{by}{b + 2y}$	b	y	$by^{1.5}$
 Trapezoid	$(b + zy)y$	$b + 2y\sqrt{1 + z^2}$	$\frac{(b + zy)y}{b + 2y\sqrt{1 + z^2}}$	$b + 2zy$	$\frac{(b + zy)y}{b + 2zy}$	$\frac{[(b + zy)y]^{1.5}}{\sqrt{b + 2zy}}$
 Triangle	zy^2	$2y\sqrt{1 + z^2}$	$\frac{zy}{2\sqrt{1 + z^2}}$	$2zy$	$^1/_2 y$	$\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} zy^{2.5}$
 Circle	$^1/_8(\theta - \sin\theta)d_\circ^2$	$^1/_2\theta d_\circ$	$^1/_4(1 - \frac{\sin\theta}{\theta})d_\circ$	$(\sin(^1/_2\theta)d_\circ)$ or $2\sqrt{y(d_\circ - y)}$	$^1/_8\left(\frac{\theta - \sin\theta}{\sin {}^1/_2\theta}\right)d_\circ$	$\frac{\sqrt{2}}{32}\frac{(\theta - \sin\theta)^{1.5}}{(\sin {}^1/_2\theta)^{0.5}} d_\circ^{2.5}$
 Parabola	$^2/_3 Ty$	$T + \frac{8y^2}{3T}$ *	$\frac{2T^2 y}{3T^2 + 8y^2}$ *	$\frac{3A}{2y}$	$^2/_3 y$	$^2/_9\sqrt{6}Ty^{1.5}$
 Round-cornered Rectangle ($y>r$)	$(\frac{\pi}{2} - 2)r^2 + (b + 2r)y$	$(\pi - 2)r + b + 2y$	$\frac{(\frac{\pi}{2} - 2)r^2 + (b + 2r)y}{(\pi - 2)r + b + 2y}$	$b + 2r$	$\frac{(\frac{\pi}{2} - 2)r^2}{(b + 2r)} + y$	$\frac{[(\frac{\pi}{2} - 2)r^2 + (b + 2r)y]^{1.5}}{\sqrt{b + 2y}}$
 Round-bottomed Triangle	$\frac{T^2}{4z} - \frac{r^2}{z}(1 - z\cot^{-1}z)$	$\frac{T}{z}\sqrt{1 + z^2} - \frac{2r}{z}(1 - z\cot^{-1} z)$	$\frac{A}{P}$	$2[z(y - r) + r\sqrt{1 + z^2}]$	$\frac{A}{T}$	$A\sqrt{\frac{A}{T}}$

*Satisfactory approximation for the interval 0<x≤1, where x=4y/T. When x>1, use the exact expression $P = (^T/_2)\left[\sqrt{1 + x^2} + {}^1/_x \ln\left(x + \sqrt{1 + x^2}\right)\right]$

FIGURE 4.4.1.F OPEN CHANNEL FLOW PROFILE COMPUTATION

Q = _____ n = _____ S_o = _____ α = _____ Y_n = _____

y (1)	A (2)	R (3)	$R^{4/3}$ (4)	V (5)	$\alpha V^2/2g$ (6)	E (7)	ΔE (8)	S_f (9)	$\bar{S}_f$ (10)	$S_o - \bar{S}_f$ (11)	Δx (12)	x (13)

FIGURE 4.4.1.G DIRECT STEP BACKWATER METHOD - EXAMPLE

y (1)	A (2)	R (3)	$R^{4/3}$ (4)	V (5)	$\alpha V^2/2g$ (6)	E (7)	ΔE (8)	S_f (9)	$\bar{S}_f$ (10)	$S_o - \bar{S}_f$ (11)	Δx (12)	x (13)
6.0	72.0	2.68	3.72	0.42	0.0031	6.0031	-	0.00002	-	-	-	-
5.5	60.5	2.46	3.31	0.50	0.0040	5.5040	0.4990	0.00003	0.000025	0.00698	71.50	71.5
5.0	50.0	2.24	2.92	0.60	0.0064	5.0064	0.4976	0.00005	0.000040	0.00696	71.49	142.99
4.5	40.5	2.01	2.54	0.74	0.0098	4.5098	0.4966	0.00009	0.000070	0.00693	71.64	214.63
4.0	32.0	1.79	2.17	0.94	0.0157	4.0157	0.4941	0.00016	0.000127	0.00687	71.89	286.52
3.5	24.5	1.57	1.82	1.22	0.0268	3.5268	0.4889	0.00033	0.000246	0.00675	72.38	358.90
3.0	18.0	1.34	1.48	1.67	0.0496	3.0496	0.4772	0.00076	0.000547	0.00645	73.95	432.85
2.5	12.5	1.12	1.16	2.40	0.1029	2.6029	0.4467	0.00201	0.001387	0.00561	79.58	512.43
2.0	8.0	0.89	0.86	3.75	0.2511	2.2511	0.3518	0.00663	0.004320	0.00268	131.27	643.70

The step computations are carried out as shown in the above table. The values in each column of the table are explained as follows:

Col. 1. Depth of flow (ft) assigned from 6 to 2 feet

Col. 2. Water area (ft^2) corresponding to depth y in Col. 1

Col. 3 Hydraulic radius (ft) corresponding to y in Col. 1

Col. 4. Four-thirds power of the hydraulic radius

Col. 5. Mean velocity (fps) obtained by dividing Q (30 cfs) by the water area in Col. 2

Col. 6. Velocity head (ft)

Col. 7. Specific energy (ft) obtained by adding the velocity head in Col. 6 to depth of flow in Col. 1

Col. 8. Change of specific energy (ft) equal to the difference between the E value in Col. 7 and that of the previous step.

Col. 9. Friction slope S_f, computed from V as given in Col. 5 and $R^{4/3}$ in Col. 4

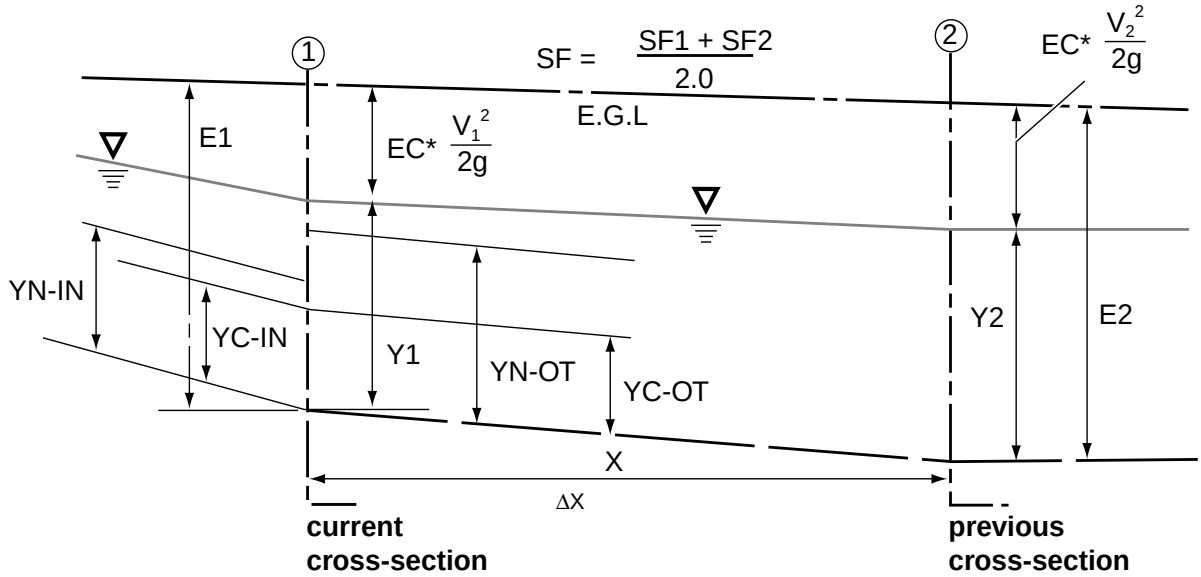
Col.10. Average friction slope between the steps, equal to the arithmetic mean of the friction slope just computed in Col. 9 and that of the previous step

Col.11. Difference between the bottom slope, S_o, and the average friction slope, S_f

Col.12. Length of the reach (ft) between the consecutive steps;
Computed by $\Delta x = \Delta E/(S_o - S_f)$ or by dividing the value in Col. 8 by the value in Col. 11

Col.13. Distance from the beginning point to the section under consideration. This is equal to the cumulative sum of the values in Col. 12 computed for previous steps.

FIGURE 4.4.1.H BWCHAN COMPUTER SUBROUTINE - VARIABLE DEFINITIONS



	BWCHAN – VARIABLE DEFINITIONS
YC-IN	Critical Depth (ft) at current section based on ***incoming*** flow rate.
YC-OUT	Critical Depth (ft) at current section based on ***outgoing*** flow rate.
YN-IN	Normal Depth (ft) at current section based on ***incoming*** flow rate/channel grade.
YN-OUT	Normal Depth (ft) at current section based on ***outgoing*** flow rate/channel grade.
Y1	Final Water Depth (ft) at current cross section
N-Y1	Composite n-factor of current section for final depth, Y1.
A-Y1	Cross-sectional Area of current section for final depth, Y1.
WP-Y1	Wetted Perimeter (ft) of current section for final depth, Y1.
V-Y1	Average Velocity (fps) of current section for final depth, Y1.
E1	Total Energy Head (ft) at current section $\left(Y1 + EC * V_1^2 / 2g\right)$
E2	Total Energy Head (ft) at pervious or downstream section.
SF1	Friction Slope of current section.
SF2	Friction Slope of previous or downstream section.
DXY	Distance (expressed as a fraction of the current reach length) from the previous or downstream section to where the flow profile would intersect the final water depth, Y1, assuming Y1 were to remain constant
EC	Energy Coefficient "α"
Q-TW	The flow rate used to determine Tailwater Height from an inputted HW/TW Data File.
TW-HT	Tailwater Height.
Q-Y1	Flow rate (cfs) in channel at current section, for depth, Y1
VU-Y1	Upstream Velocity (fps) at current section for depth, Y1 ("Adjust" option).
V1-HD	Channel Velocity Head (ft) at current section.
VU-HD	Upstream Velocity Head (ft) at current section.

4.4.2 FLOODPLAIN/FLOODWAY ANALYSIS

This section describes the floodplain/floodway studies required by Special Requirement #2, Flood Hazard Area Delineation, in Section 1.3.2. Floodplain/floodway studies, as required by this manual, establish base flood elevations and delineate floodplains and/or floodways when DDES determines that a proposed project contains or is adjacent to a ***flood hazard area*** for a river, stream, lake, wetland, closed depression, marine shoreline, or other water feature. Furthermore, when development is proposed within the floodplain, the floodplain/floodway study is used to show compliance with the critical areas code (KCC 21A.24) ***flood hazard area*** regulations.

There are four conditions affecting the requirements for floodplain/floodway studies. Each condition is considered a threshold for determining the type of studies required and the documentation needed to meet the study requirements. Each study threshold and related study requirements are shown in the table below, and described further in this section.

TABLE 4.4.2.A FLOODPLAIN/FLOODWAY STUDY THRESHOLDS AND REQUIREMENTS

Threshold	Study	Requirements
The ***project site*** is on land that is outside of an already delineated floodplain and above the floodplain's base flood elevation based on best available floodplain data determined in accordance with KCC 21A.24 and associated public rule.	No floodplain study required	• Show delineation of floodplain on the site improvement plan and indicate base flood elevation • Record a notice on title See Section 4.4.2.1 for more details
The ***project site*** is on land that is at least 10 feet above the ordinary high water mark or 2 feet above the downstream overflow elevation of a water feature for which a floodplain has not been determined in accordance with KCC 21A.24.	Approximate Floodplain Study per Section 4.4.2.2	• Submit an engineering plan with approximate base flood elevation • Record a notice on title See Section 4.4.2.2 for more details
The ***project site*** does not meet the above thresholds and is either on land that is outside of an already delineated Zone A floodplain (i.e., without base flood elevations determined), or is adjacent to a water feature for which a floodplain has not been determined in accordance with KCC 21A.24.	Minor Floodplain Study per Section 4.4.2.3	• Backwater model • Submit an engineering plan with determined base flood elevation[1] • Record a notice on title See Section 4.4.2.3 for more details
The ***project site*** is on land that is partially or fully within an already delineated floodplain of a river or stream, or is determined by a Minor Floodplain Study to be partially or fully within the floodplain of a river or stream.	Major Floodplain/Floodway Study per Section 4.4.2.4.	• Show mapped floodplain/floodway on the site improvement plan and indicate base flood elevation • Record a notice on title • See further requirements in Section 4.4.2.4.

[1] For marine shorelines, refer to the FEMA *Guidelines and Specifications for Flood Hazard Mapping Partners*.

4.4.2.1 NO FLOODPLAIN STUDY REQUIRED

IF the proposed ***project site*** is on land that is outside of an already delineated floodplain and is above the already determined base flood elevation for that floodplain, based on best available floodplain data determined in accordance with KCC 21A.24 and associated public rule, THEN no floodplain study is required.

In this situation, if the already determined floodplain covers any portion of the ***site***, the boundary of that floodplain and its base flood elevation must be shown on the project's site improvement plan. In addition, a **notice on title** in accordance with KCC 21A.24 (and associated public rule) must be recorded for the ***site***, alerting future property owners of the presence of a ***flood hazard area*** on the ***site*** and its base flood elevation. The notice on title requirement may be waived if the floodplain is not on any portion of the ***site***.

4.4.2.2 APPROXIMATE FLOODPLAIN STUDY

If the proposed ***project site*** is on land that is at least 10 feet above the ordinary high water mark or 2 feet above the downstream overflow elevation of a water feature for which the floodplain has not been delineated in accordance with KCC 21A.24, then an Approximate Floodplain Study may be used to determine an approximate floodplain and base flood elevation.

The **intent** of the Approximate Floodplain Study is to reduce required analysis in those situations where the ***project site*** is adjacent to a ***flood hazard area***, but by virtue of significant topographical relief, is clearly in no danger of flooding. The minimum 10 feet of separation from ordinary high water reduces the level of required analysis for those projects adjacent to streams confined to deep channels or ravines, or near lakes or wetlands. The minimum 2 feet clearance above the downstream overflow elevation is intended to avoid flood hazard areas created by a downstream impoundment of water behind a road fill or in a lake, wetland, or closed depression.

Use of the Approximate Floodplain Study requires submittal of an *engineering plan*[11] showing the proposed ***project site*** is at least 10 feet above the ordinary high water elevation of the water feature in question, or at least 2 feet above the downstream overflow elevation of the water feature, whichever is less, subject to the following conditions:

1. The design engineer preparing the engineering plan shall determine an **approximate base flood elevation** and include a narrative describing his/her level of confidence in the approximate base flood elevation. The **narrative** must include, but is not limited to, an assessment of potential backwater effects (such as might result from nearby river flooding, for example); observations and/or anecdotal information on water surface elevations during previous flood events; and an assessment of potential for significantly higher future flows at basin build out. *Note: Many of these issues will have been addressed in a Level 1 downstream analysis, if required.* Acceptance of the approximate base flood elevation shall be at the sole discretion of King County. If the approximate base flood elevation is not acceptable, a Minor Floodplain Study or Major Floodplain/Floodway Study may be required.
2. That portion of the ***site*** that is at or below the assumed base flood elevation must be delineated and designated as a floodplain on the engineering plan, and a **notice on title** in accordance with KCC 21A.24 (and associated rule) must be recorded for the ***site***, notifying future property owners of the approximate floodplain and base flood elevation.

[11] *Engineering plan* means a site improvement plan, including supporting documentation, stamped by a ***licensed civil engineer***. In some instances, DDES engineering review staff may determine that the proposed project is sufficiently above the clearances specified in this exception and may not require an engineering plan. Typically, this is done for projects in Small Project Drainage Review that clearly exceed minimum clearances and otherwise would not require engineering design.

4.4.2.3 MINOR FLOODPLAIN STUDY

IF the proposed ***project site*** does not meet the conditions for "no floodplain study required" per Section 4.4.2.1 or for use of the Approximate Floodplain Study per Section 4.4.2.2, AND the ***project site*** is either on land that is outside of an already delineated Zone A floodplain (i.e., without base flood elevations determined) or is adjacent to a water feature for which a floodplain has not been determined in accordance with KCC 21A.24, THEN a Minor Floodplain Study may be used to determine the floodplain. However, if the Minor Floodplain Study determines that all or a portion of the ***project site*** is at or below the base flood elevation of a river or stream and thus within the floodplain, then the applicant must either redesign the ***project site*** to be out of the floodplain or complete a Major Floodplain/Floodway Study per Section 4.4.2.4.

Use of the Minor Floodplain Study requires submittal of an engineering plan and supporting calculations. That portion of the ***site*** that is at or below the determined base flood elevation must be delineated and designated as a floodplain on the engineering plan, and a **notice on title** in accordance with KCC 21A.24 (and associated rule) must be recorded for the ***site***, notifying future property owners of the floodplain and base flood elevation.

Methods of Analysis

For **streams** without a floodplain or flood hazard study, or for **drainage ditches or culvert headwaters**, the base flood elevation and extent of the floodplain shall be determined using the Direct Step backwater method, Standard Step backwater method, or the King County Backwater computer program, as described in Section 4.4.1.2.

For **lakes, wetlands, and closed depressions** without an approved floodplain or flood hazard study, the base flood elevation and the extent of the floodplain shall be determined using the "point of compliance technique" described in Section 3.3.6.

4.4.2.4 MAJOR FLOODPLAIN/FLOODWAY STUDY

IF the proposed ***project site*** is on land that is partially or fully within an already delineated floodplain of a **river or stream**, or determined by a Minor Floodplain Study to be partially or fully within the floodplain of a river or stream, THEN a Major Floodplain/Floodway Study is required to determine the floodplain, floodway, and base flood elevation in accordance with the methods and procedures presented in this section. This information will be used by DDES to evaluate the project's compliance with the regulations specified in KCC 21A.24 for development or improvements within the floodplain.

Major Floodplain/Floodway Studies must conform to FEMA regulations described in Part 65 of 44 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR). In addition, the following information must be provided and procedures performed.

❑ INFORMATION REQUIRED

The applicant shall submit the following information for review of a floodplain/floodway analysis in addition to that required for the drainage plan of a proposed project. This analysis shall extend upstream and downstream a sufficient distance to adequately include all backwater conditions that may affect flooding at the ***site*** and all reaches that may be affected by alterations to the ***site***.

Floodplain/Floodway Map

A Major Floodplain/Floodway Study requires submittal of five copies of a separate floodplain/floodway map **stamped by a *licensed civil engineer*** and a **professional land surveyor** registered in the State of Washington (for the base survey). The map must accurately locate any proposed development with respect to the floodplain and floodway, the channel of the stream, and existing development in the floodplain; it must also supply all pertinent information such as the nature of any proposed project, legal

description of the property on which the project would be located, fill quantity, limits and elevation, the building floor elevations, flood-proofing measures, and any use of compensatory storage.

The map must show elevation contours at a minimum of 2-foot vertical intervals and shall comply with survey and map guidelines published in the FEMA publication *Guidelines and Specifications for Flood Hazard Mapping Partners*. The map must **show the following**:

- Existing elevations and ground contours;
- Locations, elevations and dimensions of existing structures, and fills;
- Size, location, elevation, and spatial arrangement of all proposed structures, fills and excavations, including proposed compensatory storage areas, with final grades on the ***site***;
- Location and elevations of roadways, water supply lines, and sanitary sewer facilities, both existing and proposed.

Study Report

A Major Floodplain/Floodway Study also requires submittal of two copies of a study report, **stamped by a *licensed civil engineer***, which must include calculations or any computer analysis input and output information as well as the following additional information:

1. Valley **cross sections** showing the channel of the river or stream, the floodplain adjoining each side of the channel, the computed FEMA floodway, the cross-sectional area to be occupied by any proposed development, and all historic high water information.
2. **Profiles** showing the bottom of the channel, the top of both left and right banks, and existing and proposed base flood water surfaces.
3. Plans and specifications for **flood-proofing** any structures and fills, construction areas, materials storage areas, water supply, and sanitary facilities within the floodplain.
4. Complete **printout** of input and output (including any error messages) for **HEC-RAS**. Liberal use of comments will assist in understanding model logic and prevent review delays.
5. One **ready-to-run digital copy** of the **HEC-RAS** input file used in the study. Data shall be submitted on a disk in Windows format.
6. The applicant shall prepare a **written summary** describing the model development calibration, hydraulic analysis, and floodway delineation. The summary shall also include an explanation of modeling assumptions and any key uncertainties.

❑ DETERMINING FLOOD FLOWS

The **three techniques** used to determine the flows used in the analysis depend on whether gage data is available or whether a basin plan has been adopted. The first technique is for basins in adopted basin plan areas. The second technique is used if a gage station exists on the stream. The third technique is used on ungaged catchments or those with an insufficient length of record. In all cases, the design engineer shall be responsible for assuring that the hydrologic methods used are technically reasonable and conservative, conform to the *Guidelines and Specifications for Flood Hazard Mapping Partners*, and are acceptable by FEMA.

Flood Flows from Adopted Basin Plan Information

For those areas where King County has adopted a basin plan since 1986, flood flows may be determined using information from the adopted basin plan. The hydrologic model used in the basin plan shall be updated to include the latest changes in zoning, or any additional information regarding the basin that has been acquired since the adoption of the basin plan.

Flood Flows from Stream Gage Data

Flood flows from stream gage data may be determined using HEC-FFA, which uses the Log-Pearson Type III distribution method as described in *Guidelines for Determining Flood Flow Frequency*, Bulletin 17B of the Hydrology Committee, prepared by the Interagency Advisory Committee on Water Data (1982). Refer to the FEMA *Guidelines and Specifications for Flood Hazard Mapping Partners* to verify the most current requirements. Use of HEC-FFA is subject to the following requirements:

1. This technique may be used only if data from a gage station in the basin is available for a period of at least ten years that is representative of the current basin conditions.
2. If the difference in the drainage area on the stream at the study location and the drainage area to a gage station on the stream at a different location in the same basin is less than or equal to 50 percent, the flow at the study location shall be determined by transferring the calculated flow at the gage to the study location using a drainage area ratio raised to the 0.86 power, as in the following equation:

$$Q_{SS} = Q_G \left(A_{SS}/A_G\right)^{0.86} \qquad (4\text{-}13)$$

where Q_{SS} = estimated flow for the given return frequency on the stream at the study location
Q_G = flow for the given return frequency on the stream at the gage location
A_{SS} = drainage area tributary to the stream at the study location
A_G = drainage area tributary to the stream at the gage location

3. If the difference in the drainage area at the study location and the drainage area at a gage station in the basin is more than 50 percent and a basin plan has not been prepared, a continuous model shall be used as described below to determine flood flows at the study location.
4. In all cases where dams or reservoirs, floodplain development, or land use upstream may have altered the storage capacity or runoff characteristics of the basin so as to affect the validity of this technique, a continuous model shall be used to determine flood flows at the study location.

Flood Flows from a Calibrated Continuous Model

Flood flows may be determined by utilizing a continuous flow simulation model such as HSPF. Where flood elevations or stream gage data are available, the model shall be calibrated; otherwise, regional parameters[12] may be used.

❑ DETERMINING FLOOD ELEVATIONS, PROFILES, AND FLOODWAYS

Reconnaissance

The applicant's design engineer is responsible for the collection of all existing data with regard to flooding in the study area. This shall include a literature search of all published reports in the study area and adjacent communities, and an information search to obtain all unpublished information on flooding in the immediate and adjacent areas from federal, state, and local units of government. This search shall include specific information on past flooding in the area, drainage structures such as bridges and culverts that affect flooding in the area, available topographic maps, available flood insurance rate maps, photographs of past flood events, and general flooding problems within the study area. A field reconnaissance shall be made by the applicant's design engineer to determine hydraulic conditions of the study area, including type and number of structures, locations of cross sections, and other parameters, including the roughness values necessary for the hydraulic analysis.

[12] Dinacola, 1990. U.S.G.S., Characterization and Simulation of Rainfall-Runoff Relations for Headwater Basins in Western King and Snohomish Counties, Washington.

Base Data

Cross sections used in the hydraulic analysis shall be representative of current channel and floodplain conditions obtained by surveying. When cross-sections data is obtained from other studies, the data shall be confirmed to represent current channel and floodplain conditions, or new channel cross-section data shall be obtained by field survey. Topographic information obtained from aerial photographs may be used in combination with surveyed cross sections in the hydraulic analysis. The **elevation datum** of all information used in the hydraulic analysis shall be specified. All information shall be referenced directly to **NAVD 1988** (and include local correlation to NGVD 1929) unless otherwise approved by King County. See Table 4.4.2.B (p. 4-78) for correlations of other datum to NAVD 1988.

Methodology

Flood profiles and floodway studies shall be calculated using the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers' HEC-RAS computer model (or subsequent revisions).

Floodway Determination

King County recognizes two distinct floodway definitions. The *FEMA floodway* describes the limit to which encroachment into the natural conveyance channel can cause one foot or less rise in water surface elevation. The *zero-rise floodway* is based upon the limit to which encroachment can occur without any measurable increase in water surface elevation or energy grade line. Floodway determinations/studies are subject to the following requirements:

1. **FEMA floodways** are determined through the procedures outlined in the FEMA publication *Guidelines and Specifications for Flood Hazard Mapping Partners* using the 1-foot maximum allowable rise criteria.
2. **Transitions** shall take into account obstructions to flow such as road approach grades, bridges, piers, or other restrictions. General guidelines for transitions may be found in *FEMA Guidelines and Specifications for Flood Hazard Mapping Partners*, and the *HEC-RAS User's Manual, Hydraulic Reference Manual and Applications Guidelines*.
3. **Zero-rise floodways** are assumed to include the entire 100-year floodplain unless King County approves a detailed study that defines a zero-rise floodway.
4. Zero-rise means no measurable increase in **water surface elevation** or **energy grade line**. For changes between the unencroached condition and encroachment to the zero-rise floodway, HEC-RAS must report 0.00 as both the change in water surface elevation and the change in energy grade. HEC-RAS must further report the exact same elevations for both the computed water surface and energy grade line.
5. Floodway studies must reflect the transitions mentioned in Requirement 2 above. FEMA floodway boundaries are to follow stream lines, and should **reasonably balance the rights of property owners** on either side of the floodway. Use of the "automatic equal conveyance encroachment options" in the HEC-RAS program will be considered equitable. Where HEC-RAS automatic options are otherwise not appropriate, the floodway must be placed to minimize the top width of the floodway.
6. **Submittal of floodway studies** for King County review must include an electronic copy of the HEC-RAS input and output files, printouts of these files, and a detailed written description of the modeling approach and findings.

Previous Floodplain Studies

If differences exist between a study previously approved by the County and the applicant's design engineer's calculated hydraulic floodways or flood profiles, the design engineer shall provide justification and obtain County approval for these differences.

Zero-Rise Calculation

For a zero-rise analysis, the flow profile for the existing and proposed ***site*** conditions shall be computed and reported to the nearest 0.01 foot. A zero-rise analysis requires only comparisons of the computed water surface elevations and energy grade lines for the existing and proposed conditions. Such comparisons are independent of natural dynamics and are not limited by the accuracy of the model's absolute water surface predictions.

Adequacy of Hydraulic Model

At a minimum, **King County considers the following factors** when determining the adequacy of the hydraulic model and flow profiles for use in floodway analysis:

1. Cross section spacing
2. Differences in energy grade

   Note: Significant differences in the energy grade from cross section to cross section are an indication that cross sections should be more closely spaced or that other inaccuracies exist in the hydraulic model.
3. Methods for analyzing the hydraulics of structures such as bridges and culverts
4. Lack of flow continuity
5. Use of a gradually-varied flow model

   Note: In certain circumstances (such as weir flow over a levee or dike, flow through the spillway of a dam, or special applications of bridge flow), rapidly-varied flow techniques shall be used in combination with a gradually-varied flow model.
6. Manning's "*n*" values
7. Calibration of the hydraulic model with past flood events
8. Special applications. In some cases, HEC-RAS alone may not be sufficient for preparing the floodplain/floodway analysis. This may occur where sediment transport, two-dimensional flow, or other unique hydraulic circumstances affect the accuracy of the HEC-RAS hydraulic model. In these cases, the applicant shall obtain County approval of other methods proposed for estimating the water surface profiles.

TABLE 4.4.2.B DATUM CORRELATIONS

Correlation From → To	(Snoq. Valley) **NAVD 1988***	**KCAS**	**U.S. Engineers**	**City of Seattle**	**NGVD, USGS & USC & GS 1947**	**Seattle Area Tide Tables & Navigation Charts 1954 & Later**
NAVD 1988* (Upper Snoqualmie Valley)	--	-3.58	3.44	-9.54	-3.49	2.98
KCAS	3.58	--	7.02	-5.96	0.09	6.56
U.S. Engineers	-3.44	-7.02	--	-12.98	-6.93	-0.46
City of Seattle	9.54	5.96	12.98	--	6.05	12.52
-NGVD, USGS & USC& GS 1947 (adjusted to the 1929 datum)	3.49	-0.09	6.93	-6.05	--	6.47
Seattle Area Tide Tables & Navigation Charts 1954 & Later (based on epoch 1924-1942)	-2.98	-6.56	0.46	-12.52	-6.47	--
Design Tidal Tailwater Elevation	12.08	8.50	15.52	2.54	8.59	15.06
Mean Higher High Water (MHHW)	8.34	4.76	11.78	-1.20	4.85	11.32
Mean High Water (MHW)	7.49	3.91	10.93	-2.05	4.00	10.47
Mean Low Water (MLW)	-0.16	-3.74	3.28	-9.70	-3.65	2.82
Mean Lower Low Water (MLLW)	-2.98	-6.56	0.46	-12.52	-6.47	0.00

**Varies, contact the King County Department of Transportation (KC-DOT) Survey Division for datum correlation for this and other areas.*

KCAS datum = Sea Level Datum 1929 (a.k.a. NGVD 1929)

CHAPTER 5

FLOW CONTROL DESIGN

KING COUNTY, WASHINGTON
SURFACE WATER DESIGN MANUAL

Section 5.1	**Low Impact Design**	**5-3**
Section 5.1.1	Site Design Concepts	5-3
Section 5.1.2	Use of Materials	5-4
Section 5.2	**Flow Control BMP Requirements**	**5-5**
Section 5.2.1	Individual Lot BMP Requirements	5-6
Section 5.2.2	Requirements for Use of BMP Credits	5-13
Section 5.3	**Detention Facilities**	**5-17**
Section 5.3.1	Detention Ponds	5-17
Section 5.3.2	Detention Tanks	5-31
Section 5.3.3	Detention Vaults	5-35
Section 5.3.4	Control Structures	5-38
Section 5.3.5	Parking Lot Detention	5-48
Section 5.3.6	Roof Detention	5-48
Section 5.3.7	Simple Detention Pond for Cleared Areas	5-49
Section 5.4	**Infiltration Facilities**	**5-57**
Section 5.4.1	General Requirements for Infiltration Facilities	5-57
Section 5.4.2	Infiltration Ponds	5-65
Section 5.4.3	Infiltration Tanks	5-68
Section 5.4.4	Infiltration Vaults	5-71
Section 5.4.5	Infiltration Trenches	5-73
Section 5.4.6	Alternative Infiltration Systems	5-76
Section 5.4.7	Small Infiltration Basins	5-76

CHAPTER 5

FLOW CONTROL DESIGN

This chapter presents the King County approved methods, criteria, and details for hydraulic analysis and design of flow control facilities and flow control Best Management Practices (BMPs) pursuant to Core Requirement #3, "Flow Control" (see Section 1.2.3). *Flow control facilities*, as described in this manual, are detention or infiltration facilities engineered to meet a specified discharge performance. Four terms are commonly used to describe flow control facilities in King County: detention facilities, retention facilities, infiltration facilities, and R/D (Retention/Detention) facilities. A *detention facility*, by definition, temporarily stores surface water runoff and discharges it at a reduced rate. A *retention facility* stores water longer and effectively has no surface outflow (outflow occurs by evaporation or soaking into the ground). *Infiltration facilities* are retention facilities that rely entirely on the soaking of collected surface water into the ground. The term *R/D facility* has been used in previous versions of this manual to generally refer to all flow control facilities.

Flow control BMPs, also known as low impact development BMPs, are methods and designs for dispersing, infiltrating, or otherwise reducing or preventing development-related increases in runoff at or near the sources of those increases. Flow control BMPs include, but are not limited to, preservation and use of ***native vegetated surfaces*** to fully disperse runoff; use of other pervious surfaces to disperse runoff; roof downspout infiltration; permeable pavements; rainwater harvesting; vegetated roofs; and reduction of development footprint.

Chapter Organization

The information in this chapter is organized into the following four main sections:

- Section 5.1, "Low Impact Design" (p. 5-3)
- Section 5.2, "Flow Control BMP Requirements" (p. 5-5)
- Section 5.3, "Detention Facilities" (p. 5-17)
- Section 5.4, "Infiltration Facilities" (p. 5-57).

These sections begin on odd pages so the user can insert tabs if desired for quicker reference.

Required vs. Recommended Design Criteria

Both required and recommended design criteria are presented in this chapter. Criteria stated using "shall" or "must" are mandatory, to be followed unless there is a good reason to deviate as allowed by the adjustment process (see Section 1.4). These criteria are **required design criteria** and generally affect facility performance or critical maintenance factors. Sometimes options are stated as part of the required design criteria using the language "should" or "may." These criteria are really **recommended design criteria**, but are so closely related to the required criteria that they are placed with it.

5.1 LOW IMPACT DESIGN

This section introduces the concept of reducing stormwater quantity and quality impacts through low impact design techniques, including how the development ***site*** is designed and which materials are used in facilities.

5.1.1 SITE DESIGN CONCEPTS

As discussed in Chapter 3, development causes complex changes to the ***site*** hydrology that can be very difficult to mitigate. On some ***sites*** in King County, it is possible to infiltrate all stormwater, which eliminates impacts from surface water leaving the ***site***. On these ***sites***, further mitigation of stormwater impacts is usually not required. Soils that do not drain well typify most King County ***sites***, and on these ***sites***, mitigating the impact of the increased runoff volume is much more difficult. The more there is disturbance to natural soils and vegetation, the more difficult matching predeveloped hydrology becomes. Minimizing changes to ***site*** hydrology by careful site design can make mitigating these changes much easier. The use of low impact development (LID) concepts is a good approach to site design that helps control increases in stormwater runoff volume and loss of groundwater recharge.

There are numerous manuals and guidance documents from around the country for using LID that utilize somewhat different standards and approaches than what is required in King County. The most useful and locally relevant is the Puget Sound Water Quality Action Team's *Low Impact Development Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound*. The following principles of low impact development are borrowed from the Puget Sound Manual are recommended to limit post-development hydrologic changes:

- Maximize retention of native forest cover and restore disturbed vegetation to intercept, evaporate, and transpire precipitation.
- Preserve permeable, native soil and enhance disturbed soils to store and infiltrate storm flows.
- Retain and incorporate topographic features that slow, store, and infiltrate stormwater.
- Retain and incorporate natural drainage features and patterns.
- Locate buildings and roads away from critical areas and soils that provide effective infiltration.
- Minimize total impervious area and eliminate effective impervious surfaces.
- Manage stormwater as close to its origin as possible by utilizing small scale, distributed hydrologic controls.
- Create a hydrologically rough landscape that slows storm flows and increases the time of concentration.
- Increase reliability of the stormwater management system by providing multiple or redundant points of control.
- Integrate stormwater controls into the development design and utilize the controls as amenities—create a multifunctional landscape.
- Utilize a multidisciplinary approach that incorporates planners, engineers, landscape architects and architects at the initial phases of the project.
- Reduce the reliance on traditional conveyance and facility technologies.
- Provide community education and promote community participation in the protection of LID systems and receiving waters.

While the intent of low impact development is to more effectively manage stormwater, LID can and should address other livability issues including:

- Road design that promotes walking and biking as alternative transportation methods, and reduced traffic speeds;
- Development at appropriate densities that meets Growth Management Act goals, and increases access to, and connection between, public transportation modes; and
- Subdivision layout and building design that promote interaction between neighbors and the connection to open space and recreation.

Perhaps the most challenging issue is designing a development that provides the needed housing units or commercial space while minimizing impervious surface and meeting all code requirements. Innovative thinking and a willingness to seek variances to some code requirements are keys to limiting impervious surface.

While the use of LID is strongly encouraged, there is a lack of experience with designing and constructing projects that rely extensively on LID techniques. This edition of the Surface Water Design Manual along with the clearing and grading code requires limited use of these techniques in urban-zoned areas and more extensive use in the rural area where they are more easily applied. These requirements, referred to in this manual as flow control BMPs, are presented in Section 5.2 of this chapter.

5.1.2 USE OF MATERIALS

Galvanized metals leach zinc into the environment, especially in standing water situations. High zinc concentrations, sometimes in the range that can be toxic to aquatic life, have been observed in the region.[1] Therefore, use of galvanized materials in flow control facilities and BMPs should be avoided. Where other metals, such as aluminum or stainless steel, or plastics are available, they shall be used. If these materials are not available, asphalt coated galvanized materials shall be used if available.

[1] Finlayson, 1990. Unpublished data from reconnaissance of Metro Park and Ride lot stormwater characteristics.

5.2 FLOW CONTROL BMP REQUIREMENTS

As specified in the Flow Control BMPs Requirement in Section 1.2.3.3, projects or portions of projects that are subject to Core Requirement #3 and will not be served by infiltration facilities per Section 5.4 (p. 5-57) must apply **flow control BMPs** to either supplement the flow mitigation provided by required flow control facilities or provide flow mitigation where flow control facilities are not required. All such flow control BMPs are detailed in Appendix C of this manual.

Since flow control BMPs seek to control runoff at or near its source and often utilize pervious areas to manage runoff, implementation of this requirement is focused primarily on **individual *site*/lot developments** as opposed to subdivision projects or projects located within road right-of-way. Incentives are provided, however, for implementation on projects other than individual ***site*/lot** developments. Thus, **two kinds of implementation** for this requirement are described in this section as follows:

1. For **non-subdivision projects making improvements on an individual *site*/lot**, implementation of this requirement shall be in accordance with the "Individual Lot BMP Requirements" in Section 5.2.1, which specify the selection of BMPs and the extent of their application to the impervious surfaces of the ***site*/lot**. This required implementation of flow control BMPs must occur as part of the proposed project and provisions must be made for their future maintenance as specified in Section 5.2.1.
2. For **subdivision projects** or **projects within rights-of-way** (e.g., road improvements), implementation of this requirement is **incentive-based**. In other words, implementation is achieved by giving credits for the application of flow control BMPs per Table 5.2.2.A (p. 5-13). As allowed in Sections 1.2.3 and 1.2.8, these credits may be used to reduce the size of a required flow control facility, qualify for a flow control facility exception, or reduce the target surfaces subject to flow control or water quality facility requirements. To use these credits, flow control BMPs must be implemented as part of the proposed project and provisions must be made for their future maintenance as specified in Section 5.2.2 (p. 5-13). For subdivision projects proposing to take credit for future implementation of BMPs on the individual lots, provisions must be made to assure their implementation as specified in Section 5.2.2.1, (p. 5-13).

The information presented in this section is organized as follows:

Section 5.2.1, "Individual Lot BMP Requirements"

"Small Lot BMP Requirements," Section 5.2.1.1 (p. 5-6)

"Large Lot Low Impervious BMP Requirements," Section 5.2.1.2 (p. 5-7)

"Large Lot High Impervious BMP Requirements," Section 5.2.1.3 (p. 5-9)

"Implementation Requirements for Individual Lot BMPs," Section 5.2.1.4 (p. 5-10)

Section 5.2.2, "Requirements for Use of BMP Credits"

"Use of Credits by Subdivision Projects," Section 5.2.2.1 (p. 5-13)

"Use of Credits by Projects within Rights-of-Way," Section 5.2.2.2 (p. 5-16)

5.2.1 INDIVIDUAL LOT BMP REQUIREMENTS

For projects on individual ***sites*/lots**, flow control BMPs must be selected and applied according to the individual lot BMP requirements in this section. For purposes of applying flow control BMPs to individual ***sites*/lots**, three categories of requirements have been established based on the size of ***site*/lot** subject to improvements by the project and on the extent of impervious surface coverage resulting from the project on the ***site*/lot**. These categories of requirements are as follows:

- Small Lot BMP Requirements (for ***sites*/lots** <22,000 square feet)
- Large Lot Low Impervious BMP Requirements (for ***sites*/lots** ≥22,000 square feet and ≤45% impervious)
- Large Lot High Impervious BMP Requirements (for ***sites*/lots** ≥22,000 square feet and >45% impervious)

Flow control BMPs must be applied in the order of preference and to the extent specified for the category of individual lot requirements applicable to the proposed project as described in the following subsections and illustrated by the flow chart in Figure 5.2.1.A (p. 5-12). *Note: for lots created by a previous subdivision, some or all of these requirements may have been addressed by flow control BMPs installed on the lots or within common areas, tracts, or road right-of-way. In some cases, the type of BMPs required for a subdivision lot have already been established by a recorded covenant on the lot. See Section 5.2.2.1 (p. 5-13) for more information on pre-installed or pre-determined BMPs in subdivisions.*

5.2.1.1 SMALL LOT BMP REQUIREMENTS

IF the proposed project is on a ***site*/lot smaller than 22,000 square feet**, THEN flow control BMPs must be applied as specified in the requirements below. Projects on small lots are typically single family residential improvements (e.g., homes, outbuildings, etc.) but could be a small commercial development.

1. The feasibility and applicability of full dispersion as detailed in Appendix C, Section C.2.1 must be evaluated for the **roof area** (or an impervious area of equivalent size) on the ***site*/lot**. If feasible and applicable, **full dispersion of roof runoff** must be implemented as part of the proposed project. Typically, small lot full dispersion will be applicable only in subdivisions where enough forest was preserved by tract, easement, or covenant to meet the minimum requirements for full dispersion in Appendix C, Section C.2.1.1. If this first requirement is met for the ***site*/lot**, no other flow control BMPs are required, and the remaining requirements below are optional.
2. Where full dispersion of **roof runoff** (or equivalent) is not feasible or applicable, or will cause flooding or erosion impacts, the feasibility and applicability of full infiltration as detailed in Appendix C, Section C.2.2 must be evaluated for roof runoff (*note, this will require a soils report for the **site/lot***). If feasible and applicable, **full infiltration of roof runoff** must be implemented as part of the proposed project. If this requirement or the full dispersion requirement above is met for the ***site*/lot**, no other flow control BMPs are required, and the remaining requirements below are optional.
3. Where full dispersion or full infiltration of **roof runoff** as specified in Requirements 1 and 2 above is not feasible or applicable, or will cause flooding or erosion impacts, **one or more of the following BMPs** must be applied to (or used to mitigate for) an impervious area equal to at least 10% of the ***site*/lot** for ***site*/lot sizes up to 11,000 square feet** and at least 20% of the ***site*/lot** for ***site*/lot sizes between 11,000 and 22,000 square feet**. For projects located in ***critical aquifer recharge areas***, these impervious area amounts must be doubled. The BMPs listed below may be located anywhere on the ***site*/lot** subject to the limitations and design specifications for each BMP. These BMPs must be implemented as part of the proposed project.
   - **Limited Infiltration** per Appendix C, Section C.2.3,
   - **Basic Dispersion** per Appendix C, Section C.2.4,

- **Rain Garden** per Appendix C, Section C.2.5,
- **Permeable Pavement** per Appendix C, Section C.2.6,
- **Rainwater Harvesting** see Appendix C, Section C.2.7,
- **Vegetated Roof** per Appendix C, Section C.2.8,
- **Reduced Impervious Surface Credit** per Appendix C, Section C.2.9,
- **Native Growth Retention Credit** per Appendix C, Section C.2.10.

4. Any proposed connection of roof downspouts to the *local drainage system*[2] must be via a **perforated pipe connection** as detailed in Appendix C, Section C.2.11.

5.2.1.2 LARGE LOT LOW IMPERVIOUS BMP REQUIREMENTS

IF the proposed project is on a ***site*/lot** that is **22,000 square feet or larger** and will result in an **impervious surface coverage of 45% or less** of the ***site*/lot**, THEN flow control BMPs must be applied as specified in the requirements below. Examples of projects on large lots with low impervious surface coverage include: single family residential improvements (e.g., homes, outbuildings, etc.), ***agricultural projects***, churches, schools, parks, golf courses, cemeteries, and light commercial developments.

1. The feasibility and applicability of **full dispersion** as detailed in Appendix C, Section C.2.1 must be evaluated for all ***target impervious surface***.[3] If feasible and applicable, full dispersion must be implemented as part of the proposed project. Typically, full dispersion will be applicable only to ***sites*/lots** or portions of ***sites*/lots** where enough forest is preserved by a clearing limit per KCC 16.82 or by recorded tract, easement, or covenant to meet the minimum requirements for full dispersion in Appendix C, Section C.2.1.1. If this requirement for full dispersion is met for all ***target impervious surface*** of the project, no other flow control BMPs are required.
2. For that portion of ***target impervious surface*** where full dispersion is not feasible or applicable, or will cause flooding or erosion impacts, the feasibility and applicability of **full infiltration of roof runoff** must be evaluated in accordance with Appendix C, Section C.2.2, or Section 5.4, whichever is applicable based on the type of project.[4] If feasible and applicable, full infiltration of roof runoff must be implemented as part of the proposed project.
3. For that portion of ***target impervious surface*** not addressed by Requirements 1 and 2 above, **one or more of the following BMPs** must be implemented as part of the proposed project:
   - **Full Infiltration** per Appendix C, Section C.2.2, or per Section 5.4, whichever is applicable,[4]
   - **Limited Infiltration** per Appendix C, Section C.2.3,
   - **Basic Dispersion** per Appendix C, Section C.2.4,
   - **Rain Garden** per Appendix C, Section C.2.5,

[2] *Local drainage system* means any natural or constructed drainage feature that collects and concentrates runoff from the ***site*** and discharges it downstream.

[3] ***Target impervious surface*** means that portion of a ***site's*** impervious surface from which runoff impacts are required to be mitigated by a particular set of drainage requirements—in this case, flow control BMP requirements. For projects on **small lots** less than 22,000 square feet, the type and amount of impervious surface that must be served by flow control BMPs as specified in Section 5.2.1.1 is considered the target impervious surface. For projects **on large lots with low impervious surface coverage** and **large lots with high impervious surface coverage**, target impervious surface shall include all ***new impervious surface*** together with any existing impervious surface added on or after January 8, 2001 (the effective date of the Endangered Species Act "take prohibition" issued by the federal government to protect Puget Sound Chinook salmon). *Note: any impervious surface on the **site** other than target impervious surface may be mitigated by flow control BMPs in trade for not mitigating an equivalent-sized area of target impervious surface.*

[4] For projects subject to Small Project Drainage Review, and for any ***single family residential project*** subject to Full or Large Project Drainage Review, the design requirements and specifications in Appendix C, Section C.2.2 may be used for evaluation and design of full infiltration on individual lots. For all other projects, full infiltration must be evaluated and designed in accordance with the infiltration facility standards in Section 5.4.

- **Permeable Pavement** per Appendix C, Section C.2.6,
- **Rainwater Harvesting** per Appendix C, Section C.2.7,
- **Vegetated Roof** per Appendix C, Section C.2.8,
- **Reduced Impervious Surface Credit** per Appendix C, Section C.2.9,
- **Native Growth Retention Credit** per Appendix C, Section C.2.10.

4. Any proposed pipe connection of roof downspouts to the local drainage system must be via a **perforated pipe connection** as detailed in Appendix C, Section C.2.11.

5.2.1.3 LARGE LOT HIGH IMPERVIOUS BMP REQUIREMENTS

IF the proposed project is on a ***site*/lot** that is **22,000 square feet or larger** and will result in an **impervious surface coverage of more than 45%** of the ***site*/lot**, THEN flow control BMPs must be applied as specified in the requirements below. Examples of projects on large lots with high impervious surface coverage include typical urban area commercial, multifamily, and industrial developments.

1. The feasibility and applicability of **full dispersion** as detailed in Appendix C, Section C.2.1 must be evaluated for all ***target impervious surface***. If feasible and applicable for any such surface, then full dispersion must be applied to that surface and implemented as part of the proposed project. Typically, full dispersion will be applicable only on the largest ***sites*/lots** where there may be enough forest area available within a ***threshold discharge area*** to meet the 15% ratio of ***fully dispersed*** impervious area to ***native vegetated surface***. If this requirement is met for a ***target impervious surface*** area equal to or exceeding 45% of the ***site*/lot**, no other flow control BMPs are required, and the remaining requirements below are optional.

2. For that portion of ***target impervious surface*** where full dispersion as specified in Requirement 1 above is not feasible or applicable, or will cause flooding or erosion impacts, one or more of the BMPs below must be implemented as needed to achieve application of flow control BMPs to a practicable amount of the ***site's*** impervious surface. This practicable amount is defined as follows. For projects that will result in an impervious surface coverage of more than 45% up to 65%, flow control BMPs must be applied to an impervious area equal to at least 20% of the ***site*/lot** area or 40% of the ***target impervious surface***, whichever is less. For projects that will result in an impervious surface coverage of more than 65%, flow control BMPs must be applied to an impervious area equal to at least 10% of the ***site*/lot** or 20% of the ***target impervious surface***, whichever is less.

   - **Full Infiltration** per Section 5.4,
   - **Limited Infiltration** per Appendix C, Section C.2.3,
   - **Basic Dispersion** per Appendix C, Section C.2.4,
   - **Rain Garden** per Appendix C, Section C.2.5,
   - **Permeable Pavement** per Appendix C, Section C.2.6,
   - **Rainwater Harvesting** per Appendix C, Section C.2.7,
   - **Vegetated Roof** per Appendix C, Section C.2.8,
   - **Reduced Impervious Surface Credit** per Appendix C, Section C.2.9,
   - **Native Growth Retention Credit** per Appendix C, Section C.2.10.

3. Any proposed connection of roof downspouts to the drainage system must be via a **perforated pipe connection** as detailed in Appendix C, Section C.2.11.

5.2.1.4 IMPLEMENTATION REQUIREMENTS FOR INDIVIDUAL LOT BMPS

The flow control BMPs required in Sections 5.2.1.1, 5.2.1.2, or 5.2.1.3 above must be implemented in accordance with the following requirements:

1. **Implementation Responsibility.** All flow control BMPs required for the ***site*/lot** must be implemented (installed) by the applicant as part of the proposed project unless they have already implemented as part of a subdivision project that created the lot per Section 5.2.2.1.

2. **Maintenance Responsibility.** Maintenance of all required flow control BMPs is the responsibility of the owner of the ***site*/lot** served by these BMPs. The responsibility for such maintenance must be clearly assigned to the current and future owners of the ***site*/lot** through a "declaration of covenant and grant of easement" as described in Requirement 3 below.

3. **Declaration of Covenant and Grant of Easement.** To ensure future maintenance of flow control BMPs and allow for County inspection of BMPs, a declaration of covenant and grant of easement must be recorded for each ***site*/lot** that contains flow control BMPs. A draft of the proposed covenant must be reviewed and approved by DDES prior to recording. All required covenants must be recorded prior to final construction approval for the proposed project. If the individual ***site*/lot** contains or will contain flow control or water quality facilities, then the drainage facility covenant in Reference Section 8-J (or equivalent) must be used. Otherwise, the flow control BMP covenant in Reference Section 8-M (or equivalent) must be used, and is designed to achieve the following:

   a) Provide **notice** to future owners of the presence of flow control BMPs on the lot and the responsibility of the owner to retain, uphold, and protect the flow control BMP devices, features, pathways, limits, and restrictions.

   b) Include as an **exhibit**, a *recordable version*[5] of the following drainage plan information:

      - The **flow control BMP site plan** showing all developed surfaces (impervious and pervious) and the location and dimensions of flow control BMP devices, features, flowpaths (if applicable), and limits of native growth retention areas (if applicable). This plan(s) must be to scale and include ***site*** topography in accordance with the specifications for such plans in Appendix C, Section C.4.2. *Note: DDES may waive this element if, for example, the only flow control BMP proposed is a limit on impervious surface (reduced footprint).*

      - The **flow control BMP design and maintenance details** for each flow control BMP per Appendix C, Section C.4.3. This includes a diagram (if applicable) of each flow control BMP device or feature and written maintenance and operation instructions and restrictions for each device, feature, flowpath (if applicable), native growth retention area (if applicable) and impervious surface coverage (if applicable).

   c) Require that each flow control BMP be operated and **maintained at the owner's expense** in accordance with the above exhibit.

   d) Grant King County or its successor the **right to enter** the property at reasonable times for purposes of inspecting the flow control BMPs and to perform any corrective maintenance, repair, restoration, or mitigation work on the flow control BMPs that has not been performed by the property owner within a reasonable time set by DNRP, and to charge the property owner for the cost of any maintenance, repair, restoration, or mitigation work performed by King County.

   e) Prohibit any **modification or removal** of flow control BMPs without written approval from King County. In cases where the modification or removal is done under a King County development

[5] *Recordable version* means one that meets King County's "Standard Formatting Requirements for Recording Documents" pursuant to RCW 36.18.010 and 65.04.045, available online at http://your.kingcounty.gov/recelec/records/docs/formatting_requirements.pdf or from the King County Recorder's Office. These requirements include specifications for such things as page size ($8^1/_2$" x 14" or smaller), font size (at least 8-point), and margin width (1" on all sides of every page if there is a standard cover sheet).

permit, the approval must be obtained from DDES (or its successor) and a covenant must be recorded to reflect the changes. In all other cases, the approval must be obtained from DNRP (or its successor) and a covenant must be recorded to reflect the changes. Approval will be granted only if equivalent protection in terms of hydrologic performance is provided by other means.

4. **Timing of Implementation.** All required flow control BMPs must be installed prior to final inspection approval of constructed improvements. For BMPs that rely on vegetation, the vegetation must be planted and starting to grow prior to final construction approval.

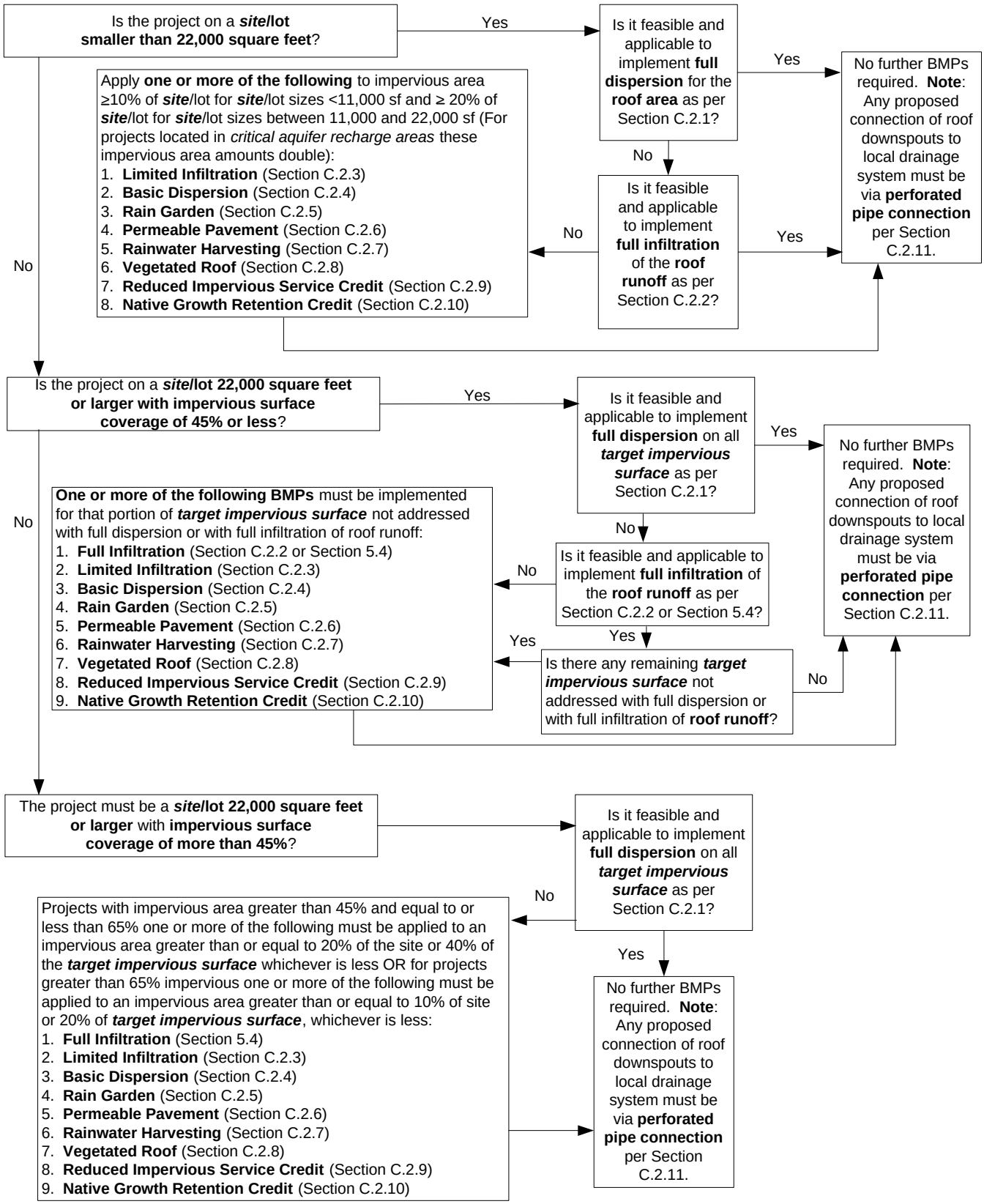
5. **Acceptance standards.** Flow control BMPs may be inspected during and/or following construction. Approval of the constructed BMPs will be based on verification that the materials and placement appear to meet the specifications and that the BMPs appear to function as designed. Onsite observations may be used to verify that materials are as specified and material receipts checked. Performance may be evaluated by a ***site*** visit while it is raining or by testing with a bucket of water or garden hose to check pavement permeability or proper connection to BMP devices/features, etc.

6. **Drainage concerns.** If DDES determines that there is a potential for drainage impacts to a neighboring property, then additional measures may be required. Some flow control BMPs may not be appropriate in certain situations, and will not be allowed by DDES where they may cause drainage problems.

7. **Geotechnical concerns.** A geotechnical engineer, engineering geologist, or DDES staff geologist must evaluate flow control BMPs proposed on slopes steeper than 15%. In addition, DDES may require review by a geotechnical engineer or engineering geologist of any proposed BMP within 50 feet of a slope steeper than 15%. DDES may also require some projects to route flows down or around such slopes using non-perforated pipes. Some flow control BMPs may not be appropriate for these locations, and will not be allowed by DDES where flows may cause erosion problems.

8. **Sewage system concerns.** If DDES determines that there is a potential conflict between onsite sewage systems and flow control BMPs, additional measures may be required. Some projects may need to route flows past onsite sewage systems using non-perforated pipes. Also, some flow control BMPs may not be appropriate for these ***sites***, and will not be allowed where sewage systems may be impacted.

FIGURE 5.2.1.A FLOW CHART FOR DETERMING INDIVIDUAL LOT BMP REQUIREMENTS



5.2.2 REQUIREMENTS FOR USE OF BMP CREDITS

Projects that implement flow control BMPs, whether required or optional, may use the flow control BMP credits described in this section subject to the requirements in Sections 5.2.2.1 and 5.2.2.2.

Two kinds of credits are available. First, any impervious surface served by a flow control BMP that meets the design specifications for that BMP in Appendix C may be modeled as indicated in Table 5.2.2.A (below). Such credits may be used in the following situations:

1. To compute post-development runoff time series when sizing required flow control facilities.
2. To compute post-development 100-year peak flows when assessing any of the 0.1-cfs exceptions from the area-specific flow control facility requirement in Sections 1.2.3.1A, B, and C.

Second, any impervious or non-native pervious surface that is ***fully dispersed*** per the full dispersion criteria in Section 1.2.3.2C is **not** considered a target surface of the area-specific flow control facility requirement (Section 1.2.3.1) or the area-specific water quality facility requirement (Section 1.2.8.1).

TABLE 5.2.2.A FLOW CONTROL BMP FACILITY SIZING CREDITS(1)

Flow Control BMP Type	Facility Sizing Credit
Full dispersion	Model fully dispersed surface as forest(2)
Full infiltration(3)	Subtract impervious area that is fully infiltrated
Limited infiltration	Model tributary impervious surface as 50% impervious, 50% grass
Basic dispersion	Model dispersed impervious surface as 50% impervious, 50% grass
Rain garden	Model tributary impervious surface as 50% impervious, 50% grass
Permeable pavement (non-grassed)	Model permeable pavement area as 50% impervious, 50% grass
Grassed modular grid pavement	Model permeable pavement as all grass
Rainwater harvesting	Subtract area that is fully controlled
Vegetated roof	Model vegetated roof area as 50% impervious, 50% grass
Restricted footprint	Model footprint as restricted
Wheel strip driveways	Model credited area as 50% impervious, 50% grass
Minimum disturbance foundation	Model foundation area as 50% impervious, 50% grass
Open grid decking over pervious area	Model deck area as 50% impervious, 50% grass
Native growth retention credit	Model credited impervious area as 50% impervious, 50% grass
Perforated pipe connection	None

Notes:

(1) These credits do not apply when determining eligibility for exemptions from Core Requirement #3 or exceptions from the flow control facility requirement unless otherwise noted in the exemption or exception.

(2) Surface shall be modeled using the soil type found at that location on the site, except for vegetated roofs, where the soil shall be assumed to be till.

(3) For any project subject to Small Project Drainage Review, and for any single family residential project subject to Full or Large Project Drainage Review, the design requirements and specifications in Appendix C, Section C.2.2 may be used for design of full infiltration. For all other projects, full infiltration must be designed in accordance with infiltration facility standards in Section 5.4.

5.2.2.1 USE OF CREDITS BY SUBDIVISION PROJECTS

If a proposed project is a *subdivision project*,[6] implementation of flow control BMPs on the individual lots of the subdivision may be deferred until a permit is obtained for construction on each lot. Therefore,

[6] For purposes of applying flow control BMPs, the term *subdivision* or *subdivision project* refers to any project that is a short plat, plat, or binding site plan.

implementation of flow control BMPs as part of the subdivision project is optional. However, if the applicant wishes to implement or make provision for implementation of BMPs as part of the subdivision project for purposes of receiving the BMP credits noted above, the following requirements must be met depending on where the BMPs are located on the ***site***.

A. SUBDIVISION IMPLEMENTATION OF BMPS WITHIN ROAD RIGHT-OF-WAY

These are flow control BMPs installed within public or private road right-of-way as part of the construction of street and drainage improvements for the subdivision. Such BMPs may include **Basic Dispersion** (i.e., a reversed sloped sidewalk per Appendix C, Section C.2.4.5), a linear-shaped **Rain Garden** (see Appendix C, Section C.2.5), or a **Permeable Pavement** (see Appendix C, Section C.2.6). To receive credit for these BMPs, the subdivision project must meet all of the following requirements:

1. The BMPs must serve impervious surface located only within the road right-of-way.
2. The BMPs must be shown on the **site improvement plans** submitted with the engineering plans for the proposed project as specified in Section 2.3.1.2.
3. If the road right-of-way will be maintained by King County, the BMPs must be approved by the King County Department of Transportation through a **road variance** prior to engineering plan approval.
4. If the road right-of-way will be privately maintained, provision must be made for future **maintenance** of the BMPs in accordance with Core Requirement #6, Section 1.2.6. As specified in Core Requirement #6, King County will assume maintenance of such BMPs in certain cases.
5. If King County will be assuming maintenance of the BMPs, the BMPs must comply with the drainage facility **financial guarantee and liability requirements** in Core Requirement #7, Section 1.2.7.

B. SUBDIVISION IMPLEMENTATION OF BMPS WITHIN DEDICATED TRACTS

These are flow control BMPs installed on or associated with the features (e.g., forest) of common area tracts dedicated by the subdivision. Such BMPs may serve future improvements on lots, common area improvements, or road right-of-way improvements. To receive credit for these BMPs, the subdivision project must meet all of the following requirements:

1. The BMPs must be shown on the **site improvement plans** submitted with the engineering plans for the proposed project as specified in Section 2.3.1.2.
2. Provision must be made for future **maintenance** of the BMPs in accordance with Core Requirement #6, Section 1.2.6. When maintenance by King County is specified by Core Requirement #6, King County will assume maintenance of only BMP devices (e.g., dispersion trenches) and only those that are within a tract dedicated to King County for drainage purposes. In other words, King County will not assume maintenance of BMP devices located in common areas dedicated for purposes other than just drainage (e.g., play areas, parks, etc.).
3. BMPs to be maintained by King County in accordance with Core Requirement #6 must comply with the drainage facility **financial guarantee and liability requirements** in Core Requirement #7, Section 1.2.7.
4. If the BMPs installed within a dedicated tract satisfy some or all of the BMP requirements for individual lots per Section 5.2.1, then a **note** must be placed on the **recorded documents** for the subdivision indicating those lots for which BMPs have been provided.

C. SUBDIVISION IMPLEMENTATION OF BMPS ON INDIVIDUAL LOTS

These are flow control BMPs installed on a subdivision's proposed lots as part of the subdivision project. For example, the subdivision developer may elect to pre-install some or all of the flow control BMPs required by the individual lot BMP requirements in Section 5.2.1. This may include installation of a **rain garden** or **rainwater harvesting** storage tank, for example, on some or all lots as part of the subdivision

project. To receive credits for these BMPs, the subdivision project must meet all of the following requirements:

1. The flow control BMPs must be installed and implemented in accordance with the individual lot BMP requirements in Section 5.2.1. This includes recording a **declaration of covenant and grant of easement** for each lot with BMPs as specified in Implementation Requirement 3 of Section 5.2.1.4 (p. 5-10). If not all of the required BMPs are installed on a lot as part of the subdivision project, language must be included in the covenant notifying the future lot owner of additional required BMPs.
2. BMPs to be installed on individual lots as part of the subdivision project must be shown on the **site improvement plans** submitted with the engineering plans for the proposed project as specified in Section 2.3.1.2.

D. SUBDIVISION FUTURE IMPLEMENTATION OF BMPS ON INDIVIDUAL LOTS

These are flow control BMPs stipulated to be installed on some or all of a subdivision's proposed lots by a declaration of covenant recorded for each such lot. To receive credits for these BMPs, the subdivision project must meet all of the following requirements:

1. Demonstrate through a lot-specific assessment that the flow control BMPs stipulated for each lot are **feasible and applicable** according to the individual lot BMP requirements in Section 5.2.1 and the BMP design specifications in Appendix C. This lot-specific assessment must be included in the TIR submitted with engineering plans for the subdivision. The assessment shall include any soils reports, calculations, or other information necessary to select and properly apply BMPs.
2. Record a **declaration of covenant and grant of easement** for each lot stipulating the type or types of BMP being proposed for credit. This covenant must be as specified in Implementation Requirement 3 of Section 5.2.1.4 (p. 5-10), except as follows:
   a) The **FCBMP site plan**(s) may be waived depending on the BMPs proposed or may be conceptual, showing only the information necessary to stipulate the type or types of BMP being proposed for credit. For example, if the BMP is full dispersion, the approximate location of future impervious surface and the limits of the "native vegetated flowpath segment" (see Appendix C, Section C.2.1) must be shown. If the BMP is full infiltration, the approximate location of future impervious surface, septic drain field (if applicable), and infiltration devices must be shown. For all other BMPs, the "design and maintenance details" (see Item b below) for each proposed BMP per Appendix C may be sufficient as determined by DDES.
   b) The **FCBMP design and maintenance details** must include the dimensions of all proposed devices, features, and flowpaths, expressed as unit amounts per square foot of impervious surface served or as a percentage of the lot size or impervious surface created.
   c) The **notice** to future lot owners must indicate that they are responsible to install the flow control BMP or BMPs stipulated for the lot prior to final inspection approval of constructed lot improvements. Alternative BMPs that provide equivalent performance may be proposed at the time of permit application for proposed lot improvements. In any case, a revised covenant will need to be recorded to reflect the final approved BMPs and site improvement plan(s).
3. If **single family residential lots** are being created, a **note** must be placed on the **recorded documents** for the subdivision indicating the following:

   "Single family residences and other improvements constructed on the lots created by this subdivision must implement the flow control best management practices (BMPs) stipulated in the drainage plan declaration of covenant and grant of easement recorded for each lot. Compliance with this stipulation must be addressed in the small project drainage plan submitted for drainage review when application is made for a single family residential building permit for the lot."

4. If **commercial lots** are being created, a **note** must be placed on the **recorded documents** for the subdivision indicating the following:

   "Improvements constructed on the lots created by this subdivision must implement the flow control best management practices (BMPs) stipulated in the drainage plan declaration of covenant and grant of easement recorded for each lot. Compliance with this stipulation must be addressed in the engineering plans submitted for drainage review when application is made for a permit to make improvements to the lot."

5. If a **binding site plan** is being created, a **note** must be placed on the **recorded documents** for the subdivision indicating the following:

   "Improvements constructed on the lots created by this binding site plan must implement the flow control best management practices (BMPs) stipulated in the drainage plan declaration of covenant and grant of easement recorded for each lot. Compliance with this stipulation must be addressed in the engineering plans submitted for drainage review when application is made for a permit to make improvements to the lot."

5.2.2.2 USE OF CREDITS BY PROJECTS WITHIN RIGHTS-OF-WAY

If a proposed project is located primarily within an established public or private right-of-way, implementation of flow control BMPs is optional. However, the applicant for such a project may wish to implement flow control BMPs within the right-of-way for the purposes of receiving BMP credits as described in Section 5.2.2 (p. 5-13). Since right-of-way is typically linear in shape (e.g., roads, railroads, trails, etc.), appropriate BMPs may include, but are not limited to, **Basic Dispersion** (e.g., a reversed sloped sidewalk per Appendix C, Section C.2.4.5), linear-shaped **Rain Gardens** (see Appendix C, Section C.2.5), or a **Permeable Pavement** (see Appendix C, Section C.2.6). To receive credit for these BMPs, the project must meet all of the following requirements:

1. The BMPs must serve **impervious surface** located only within the right-of-way.
2. If the right-of-way is **road right-of-way** that will be maintained by King County, the BMPs must be approved by the King County Department of Transportation through a **road variance** prior to engineering plan approval.
3. If the right-of-way will be privately maintained, provision must be made for future **maintenance** of the BMPs in accordance with Core Requirement #6, Section 1.2.6. As specified in Core Requirement #6, King County will assume maintenance of such BMPs in certain cases.
4. If King County will be assuming maintenance of the BMPs, the BMPs must comply with the drainage facility **financial guarantee and liability requirements** in Core Requirement #7, Section 1.2.7.

5.3 DETENTION FACILITIES

This section presents the methods, criteria, and details for design and analysis of detention facilities. These facilities provide for the temporary storage of increased surface water runoff resulting from development pursuant to the performance standards set forth in Core Requirement #3, "Flow Control" (see Section 1.2.3).

There are three primary types of detention facilities described in this section: detention ponds, tanks, and vaults. The information presented in this section is organized as follows:

Section 5.3.1, "Detention Ponds"
"Design Criteria," Section 5.3.1.1 (p. 5-18)
"Methods of Analysis," Section 5.3.1.2 (p. 5-30)

Section 5.3.2, "Detention Tanks"
"Design Criteria," Section 5.3.2.1 (p. 5-31)
"Methods of Analysis," Section 5.3.2.2 (p. 5-32)

Section 5.3.3, "Detention Vaults"
"Design Criteria," Section 5.3.3.1 (p. 5-35)
"Methods of Analysis," Section 5.3.3.2 (p. 5-36)

Section 5.3.4, "Control Structures"
"Design Criteria," Section 5.3.4.1 (p. 5-38)
"Methods of Analysis," Section 5.3.4.2 (p. 5-42)

Section 5.3.5, "Parking Lot Detention"

Section 5.3.6, "Roof Detention"

Section 5.3.7, "Simple Detention Pond for Cleared Areas"
"Design Criteria," Section 5.3.7.1 (p. 5-49)
"Methods of Analysis," Section 5.3.7.2 (p. 5-53)

5.3.1 DETENTION PONDS

Open ponds are the most desirable detention facilities for controlling runoff from developed areas. The design criteria in Section 5.3.1.1 are for detention ponds. However, many of the criteria also apply to infiltration ponds (Section 5.4.2), and water quality wetponds and combined detention/wetponds (Section 6.4).

Dam Safety Compliance

Detention ponds and other open impoundment facilities must comply with requirements for dam safety (WAC 173-175). Under current regulations (as of September 1998), if the impoundment has a storage capacity (including both water and sediment storage volumes) greater than 10 acre-feet above natural ground level and a dam height of more than 6 feet, then dam safety design and review are required by the Washington State Department of Ecology (WDOE). If the storage capacity is less than 10 acre-feet above natural ground level, then the facility is exempt from WDOE review. If the dam height is less than 6 feet but capacity is greater than 10 acre-feet, then WDOE reviews on a case-by-case-basis to determine the hazard potential downstream in the event of a failure.

5.3.1.1 DESIGN CRITERIA

Standard details for **detention ponds** are shown in Figure 5.3.1.A (p. 5-26) through Figure 5.3.1.D (p. 5-29). Control structure details are shown in Section 5.3.4 beginning on page 5-39.

General

1. Ponds must be designed as **flow-through systems** (however, parking lot storage may be utilized through a back-up system; see Section 5.3.5, p. 5-48). Developed flows must enter through a conveyance system separate from the control structure and outflow conveyance system. Maximizing distance between the inlet and outlet is encouraged to promote sedimentation.
2. **Pond bottoms shall be level** and be located a minimum of 0.5 feet below the inlet and outlet to provide sediment storage.
3. Outflow **control structures** shall be designed as specified in Section 5.3.4 (p. 5-38).
4. A **geotechnical analysis** and report may be required on slopes over 15%, or if located within 200 feet of the top of a ***steep slope hazard area*** or ***landslide hazard area***.

Side Slopes

1. For facilities to be maintained by King County, **interior side slopes** up to the emergency overflow water surface shall be no steeper than 3H:1V unless a fence is provided (see "Fencing," p. 5-20). See Section 6.4.4 for side slope requirements for internal berms in combined ponds and wetponds.
2. **Exterior side slopes** shall be no steeper than 2H:1V unless analyzed for stability by a geotechnical engineer.
3. **Pond walls** may be vertical retaining walls, provided: (a) they are constructed of reinforced concrete per Section 5.3.3 (p. 5-35); (b) a fence is provided along the top of the wall; (c) at least 25% of the pond perimeter will be a vegetated soil slope not steeper than 3H:1V; and (d) the design is stamped by a licensed structural civil engineer.
4. For **privately owned and maintained facilities**, the entire pond perimeter may be retaining walls, and building foundations may serve as one or more of the pond walls.

Embankments

1. Pond berm embankments higher than 6 feet shall require **design by a geotechnical engineer**.
2. For berm embankments 6 feet or less, the **minimum top width** shall be 6 feet, or as recommended by a geotechnical engineer.
3. Pond berm embankments must be **constructed on native consolidated soil** (or adequately compacted and stable fill soils analyzed by a geotechnical engineer) free of loose surface soil materials, roots, and other organic debris.
4. Pond berm embankments greater than 4 feet in height must be **constructed by excavating a key** equal to 50% of the berm embankment cross-sectional height and width. This requirement may be waived if specifically recommended by a geotechnical engineer.
5. The berm embankment shall be **constructed of soil** placed in 6-inch lifts **compacted** to at least 95% of maximum dry density, within 2 percentage points of the optimum moisture content, modified proctor method ASTM D1557. Density tests shall be performed for each lift to confirm compliance with this specification. The soil used for construction shall have the following soil characteristics: a minimum of 20% silt and clay, a maximum of 60% sand, a maximum of 60% silt and clay, with nominal gravel and cobble content. *Note: In general, excavated glacial till is well suited for berm embankment material*.

6. **Anti-seepage collars** must be placed on outflow pipes in berm embankments impounding water greater than 8 feet in depth at the design water surface.

Overflow

1. In all ponds, tanks, and vaults, a **primary overflow** (usually a riser pipe within the control structure; see Section 5.3.4.2, p. 5-42) must be provided to bypass the 100-year, 15-minute developed peak flow over or around the restrictor system. This assumes the facility will be full due to plugged orifices or high inflows; the primary overflow is intended to protect against breaching of a pond embankment (or overflows of the upstream conveyance system, in the case of a detention tank or vault). The design must provide controlled discharge directly into the downstream conveyance system or another acceptable discharge point.
2. A **secondary inlet** to the control structure must be provided in ponds as additional protection against overtopping should the inlet pipe to the control structure become plugged. A grated opening ("jailhouse window") in the control structure manhole functions as a weir (see Figure 5.3.1.B, p. 5-27) when used as a secondary inlet. *Note: The maximum circumferential length of this opening shall not exceed one-half the control structure circumference*. The "birdcage" overflow structure as shown in Figure 5.3.1.C (p. 5-28) may also be used as a secondary inlet.

Emergency Overflow Spillway

1. In addition to the above overflow requirements, ponds must have an emergency overflow spillway **sized to pass the 100-year, 15-minute developed peak flow** in the event of total control structure failure (e.g., blockage of the control structure outlet pipe) or extreme inflows. Emergency overflow spillways are intended to control the location of pond overtopping and direct overflows back into the downstream conveyance system or other acceptable discharge point.
2. Emergency overflow spillways must be provided for **ponds with constructed berms over 2 feet in height,** or for **ponds located on grades in excess of 5%.** As an option for ponds with berms less than 2 feet in height and located at grades less than 5%, emergency overflow may be provided by an **emergency overflow structure**, such as a Type II manhole fitted with a birdcage as shown in Figure 5.3.1.C (p. 5-28). The emergency overflow structure must be designed to pass the 100-year developed peak flow, with a minimum 6 inches of freeboard, directly to the downstream conveyance system or another acceptable discharge point. Where an emergency overflow spillway would discharge to a slope steeper than 15%, consideration should be given to providing an emergency overflow structure *in addition to* the spillway.
3. The emergency overflow spillway shall be **armored with riprap** in conformance with Table 4.2.2.A. The spillway shall be armored full width, beginning at a point midway across the berm embankment and extending downstream to where emergency overflows re-enter the conveyance system (see Figure 5.3.1.B, p. 5-27).
4. Design of emergency overflow spillways requires the analysis of a broad-crested trapezoidal weir as described in Section 5.3.1.2 (p. 5-30). Either one of the weir sections shown in Figure 5.3.1.B (p. 5-27) may be used.

Access Requirements

1. **Maintenance access road(s)** shall be provided to the control structure and other drainage structures associated with the pond (e.g., inlet, emergency overflow or bypass structures). Manhole and catch basin lids must be in or at the edge of the access road and at least three feet from a property line. Rims shall be set at the access road grade.
2. An **access ramp** is required for removal of sediment with a trackhoe and truck. The ramp must extend to the pond bottom if the pond bottom is greater than 1500 square feet (measured without the ramp) and it may end at an elevation 4 feet above the pond bottom, if the pond bottom is less than 1,500 square feet (measured without the ramp), provided the pond side slopes are 3:1 or flatter.

Intent: On large, deep ponds, truck access to the pond bottom via an access ramp is necessary so loading can be done in the pond bottom. On small deep ponds, the truck can remain on the ramp for loading. On small shallow ponds, a ramp to the bottom may not be required if the trackhoe can load a truck parked at the pond edge or on the internal berm of a wetpond or combined pond (trackhoes can negotiate interior pond side slopes).

3. The **internal berm** of a wetpond or combined detention and wetpond may be used for access if it is no more than 4 feet above the first wetpool cell, if the first wetpool cell is less than 1500 square feet (bottom area measured without the ramp), and if it is designed to support a loaded truck, considering the berm is normally submerged and saturated.
4. **Access ramps** shall meet the requirements for design and construction of access roads specified below.
5. All control structures shall have round, solid **locking lids** with $^5/_8$-inch diameter Allen head cap screws (see *KCRS* Drawing No. 7-022 and 7-023).
6. Access shall be limited by a double-posted gate if a fence is required, or by **bollards**. Bollards shall be designed in accordance with the KCRS.

Design of Access Roads

Access roads shall meet the following design criteria:

1. **Maximum grade** shall be 15% for asphalt paving and 12% for gravel or modular grid paving.
2. Outside **turning radius** shall be 40 feet, minimum.
3. **Fence gates** shall be located only on straight sections of road.
4. Access roads shall be 15 feet in **width** on curves and 12 feet on straight sections.
5. A **paved apron** shall be provided where access roads connect to paved public roadways. The apron shall be consistent with driveway details in *KCRS*.

Construction of Access Roads

Access roads shall be constructed with an asphalt, concrete or gravel surface, or modular grid pavement. Access roads must conform to King County road design and construction standards for residential minor access streets. Modular grid pavement shall meet manufacturer's specifications.

Fencing

1. A fence is **required** at the emergency overflow water surface elevation, or higher, **where a pond interior side slope is steeper than 3H:1V,** or where the impoundment is a wall greater than 24 inches in height. The fence need only be constructed for those slopes steeper than 3H:1V.

   Intent: To discourage access to portions of a pond where steep side slopes (steeper than 3:1) increase the potential for slipping into the pond, and to guide those who have fallen into a pond to side slopes that are flat enough (flatter than 3:1 and unfenced) to allow for easy escape.
2. For **privately owned and maintained facilities**, fences are recommended, but not required, for slopes steeper than 3:1. Note, however, that other regulations such as the Uniform Building Code may require fencing of vertical walls. Fence material and construction specifications outlined below do not apply to private facilities.
3. Fences shall be 6 feet in **height**. For example designs, see WSDOT Standard Plan L-2, Type 1 or Type 3 chain link fence.

   Exception: The fence may be a minimum of 4 feet in height if the depth of the impoundment (measured from the lowest elevation in the bottom of the impoundment, directly adjacent to the

bottom of the fenced slope, up to the emergency overflow water surface) is 5 feet or less. For example designs, see WSDOT Standard Plan L-2, Type 4 or Type 6 chain link fence.

4. **Access road gates** shall be 16 feet in width consisting of two swinging sections 8 feet in width. Additional vehicular access gates may be required as needed to facilitate maintenance access.
5. **Pedestrian access gates** (if needed) shall be 4 feet in width.
6. For fences to be maintained by the County, **fence material** shall be vertical metal balusters or 9 gauge galvanized steel fabric with bonded vinyl coating. For steel fabric fences, the following apply:
   a) **Vinyl coating** shall be compatible with the surrounding environment (e.g., green in open, grassy areas and black or brown in wooded areas). All posts, cross bars, and gates shall be painted or coated the same color as the vinyl clad fence fabric.
   b) **Fence posts and rails** shall conform to WSDOT Standard Plan L-2 for Types 1, 3, or 4 chain link fence.
7. For **metal baluster fences**, Uniform Building Code standards shall apply.
8. **Wood fences are allowed** in subdivisions where the fence will be maintained by homeowners associations or adjacent lot owners. Fence maintenance requirements shall be a condition of subdivision approval, and a statement detailing maintenance responsibilities and requirements must be recorded with the plat.
9. Wood fences shall have **pressure treated posts** (ground contact rated) either set in 24-inch deep concrete footings or attached to footings by galvanized brackets. Rails and fence boards shall be cedar or pressure-treated fir or hemlock.
10. Where only **short stretches of the pond perimeter** (< 10%) have side slopes steeper than 3:1, split rail fences (3-foot minimum height) or densely planted thorned hedges (e.g., barberry, holly, etc.) may be used in place of a standard fence.

Signage

Detention ponds, infiltration ponds, wetponds, and combined ponds to be maintained by King County shall have a sign placed for maximum visibility from adjacent streets, sidewalks, and paths. The sign shall meet the design and installation requirements illustrated in Figure 5.3.1.D (p. 5-29).

Right-of-Way

1. Open detention ponds shall not be located in dedicated public road right-of-way.
2. Detention ponds to be maintained by King County shall be in a tract dedicated to King County (see Section 1.2.6). Any tract not abutting public right-of-way will require a 15-foot wide extension of the tract to an acceptable access location.

Setbacks

1. A setback of 5 feet from the **toe of the exterior slope**, retaining walls and rockeries to the tract or property line is required for County-maintained ponds and recommended for privately maintained ponds.
2. The tract or property line on a detention pond cut slope shall be setback 5 feet from the **emergency overflow water surface**.
3. The detention pond water surface at the pond outlet invert elevation shall be setback 100 feet from **proposed or existing septic system drainfields**. This setback may be reduced with written approval of the Seattle-King County Department of Public Health.

Seeps and Springs

Intermittent seeps along cut slopes are typically fed by a shallow groundwater source (interflow) flowing along a relatively impermeable soil stratum. These flows are storm driven and should discontinue after a few weeks of dry weather. The KCRTS model accounts for this shallow groundwater component, and no special provisions are needed when directing these flows through the flow control facility. However, more continuous seeps and springs, which extend through longer dry periods, are likely from a deeper groundwater source. When continuous flows are intercepted and directed through flow control facilities, adjustments to the approved facility design may be required to account for the additional base flow (unless already considered in design). If uncertain at the time of construction, the situation may be monitored while the facility is under maintenance and defect financial guarantee. Adjustments to the facility may be required prior to the release of the financial guarantee.

Planting Requirements

Exposed earth on the pond bottom and interior side slopes shall be sodded or seeded with an appropriate seed mixture. All remaining areas of the tract must either be planted with grass, or be landscaped in accordance with the standards below and mulched with a 4-inch cover of hog fuel or shredded wood mulch.[7]

Landscaping

Landscaping for aesthetic purposes is encouraged, but not required, for most stormwater tract areas containing ponds maintained by King County (see below for areas not to be landscaped). However, if provided, landscaping must adhere to the criteria that follow so as not to hinder maintenance operations. Landscaped stormwater tracts may, in some instances, be used to satisfy requirements for recreational space. In other instances, "naturalistic" stormwater facilities may be placed in open space tracts. For more information, see page 5-25.

If landscaping is proposed in the stormwater tract of a County-maintained pond, the following requirements shall apply:

1. **No trees or shrubs may be planted within 10 feet of inlet or outlet pipes** or manmade drainage structures such as catch basins, spillways or flow spreaders. Species with roots that seek water, such as willow or poplar, should be avoided within 50 feet of pipes or manmade structures.

2. **Planting is restricted on berms that impound water** either permanently or temporarily during storms. *Note: This restriction does not apply to cut slopes that form pond banks, only to berms.*

   a) Trees or shrubs may not be planted on portions of water-impounding berms taller than four feet high. Only grasses may be planted on berms taller than four feet.

      Intent: Grasses allow unobstructed visibility of berm slopes for detecting potential dam safety problems such as animal burrows, slumping, or fractures in the berm.

   b) Trees planted on portions of water-impounding berms less than 4 feet high must be small, not higher than 20 feet mature height, and have a fibrous root system. Table 5.3.1.A gives some examples of trees with these characteristics.

      Intent: These trees reduce the likelihood of blow-down trees, or the possibility of channeling or piping of water through the root system, which may contribute to dam failure on berms that retain water.

3. All landscape material, including grass, must be **planted in good topsoil**. Native underlying soils may be made suitable for planting if amended with 2 inches of well-rotted compost tilled into the top six inches of soil. Compost used should meet Ecology publication 94-38 specifications for Grade A compost quality.

[7] Shredded wood mulch is made from shredded tree trimmings, usually from trees cleared onsite. It must be free of garbage and weeds and may not contain excessive resin, tannin, or other material detrimental to plant growth.

4. Soil in which **trees or shrubs** are planted may require additional enrichment or additional compost top-dressing. Consult a nurseryman, landscape professional, or arborist for site-specific recommendations.
5. For a naturalistic effect as well as ease of maintenance, trees or shrubs must be **planted in clumps** to form "*landscape islands*" rather than evenly spaced.
6. The **landscaped islands** must be planted above the 100-year water surface and must be a minimum of six feet apart, and if set back from fences or other barriers, the setback distance must also be a minimum of six feet. Where tree foliage extends low to the ground, the six feet of setback should be counted from the outer drip line of the trees (estimated at maturity).

   Intent: This landscape design must allow a 6-foot wide mower to pass around and between clumps.
7. Evergreen trees and trees that produce relatively little leaf-fall such as Oregon ash, mimosa, or locust are preferred. Large-leaf deciduous trees may not be planted where branches could extend over interior pond slopes.
8. All trees shall be set back so branches do not extend over the 100-year water surface of the pond to prevent leaf-drop into the water.
9. Drought tolerant species are recommended.
10. Landscape areas within the tracts of County-maintained ponds in residential subdivision developments shall be designated "to be maintained by the homeowner's association."

TABLE 5.3.1.A SMALL TREES AND SHRUBS WITH FIBROUS ROOTS

Small Trees / High Shrubs	Low Shrubs
*Red twig dogwood (*Cornus stolonifera*)	*Snowberry (*Symphoricarpus albus*)
*Serviceberry (*Amelanchier alnifolia*)	*Salmonberry (*Rubus spectabilis*)
Strawberry tree (*Arbutus unedo*)	*Rosa rugosa* (avoid spreading varieties)
Highbush cranberry (*Vaccinium opulus*)	Rock rose (*Cistus* spp.)
Blueberry (*Vaccinium* spp.)	Ceanothus spp. (choose hardier varieties)
*Filbert (*Corylus cornuta*, others)	New Zealand flax (*Phormium penax*)
Fruit trees on dwarf rootstock	
Rhododendron (native and ornamental varieties)	Ornamental grasses (e.g., *Miscanthis*, *Pennisetum)*

* *Native species*

Guidelines for Naturalistic Planting

Stormwater facilities may sometimes be located within open space tracts if "natural appearing" (see page 5-25 for details). Two generic kinds of naturalistic planting are outlined below, but other options are also possible. A booklet discussing stormwater ponds and landscaping possibilities is available at the Water and Land Resources Division; when completed, it should be consulted for additional ideas. Native vegetation is preferred in naturalistic plantings.

Note: These landscaping criteria must be followed unless a landscape professional judges that long-term quality of the open space would be improved by deviating from the criteria, AND that if the facility is maintained by the County, maintenance would not be made more difficult by the deviations.

Open Woodland

In addition to the general landscaping criteria above, the following requirements must be met:

1. Landscaped islands (when mature) should cover a minimum of 30% or more of the tract, exclusive of the pond area.
2. Tree clumps should be underplanted with shade-tolerant shrubs and groundcover plants. The goal is to provide a dense understory that need not be weeded or mowed.
3. Landscaped islands should be placed at several elevations rather than "ring" the pond, and the size of clumps should vary from small to large to create variety.
4. Not all islands need have trees. Shrub or groundcover clumps are acceptable, but lack of shade should be considered in selecting vegetation.

Note: Landscaped islands are best combined with the use of hog fuel or shredded wood mulch for erosion control (only for slopes above the flow control water surface). It is often difficult to sustain a low-maintenance understory if the area was previously hydroseeded.

Northwest Savannah or Meadow

In addition to the general landscape criteria above, the following requirements must be met:

1. Landscape islands (when mature) should cover 10% or more of the tract, exclusive of the pond area.
2. Planting groundcovers and understory shrubs is encouraged to eliminate the need for mowing under the trees when they are young.
3. Landscape islands should be placed at several elevations rather than "ring" the pond.
4. The remaining tract area should be planted with an appropriate grass seed mix, which may include northwest meadow or wildflower species. Native or dwarf grass mixes are preferred. Table 5.3.1.B below gives one acceptable dwarf grass mix. Grass seed should be applied at 2.5 to 3 pounds per 1000 square feet. *Note: Amended soil or good topsoil is required for all plantings.*
5. Creation of areas of emergent vegetation in shallow areas of the pond is recommended. Native wetland plants, such as sedges (*Carex* sp.), bulrush (*Scirpus* sp.), water plantain (*Alisma* sp.), and burreed (*Sparganium sp.*) are recommended. If the pond does not hold standing water, a clump of wet-tolerant, non-invasive shrubs, such as salmonberry or snowberry, is recommended below the detention design water surface.

Note: This landscape style is best combined with the use of grass or sod for site stabilization and erosion control.

TABLE 5.3.1.B STORMWATER TRACT "LOW-GROW" SEED MIX

Seed Name	Percentage of Mix
Dwarf tall fescue	40%
Dwarf perennial rye "Barclay" *	30%
Red fescue	25%
Colonial bentgrass	5%

* If wildflowers are used and sowing is done before Labor Day, the amount of dwarf perennial rye may be reduced proportionately to the amount of wildflower seed used.

Detention Ponds in Recreational Tracts

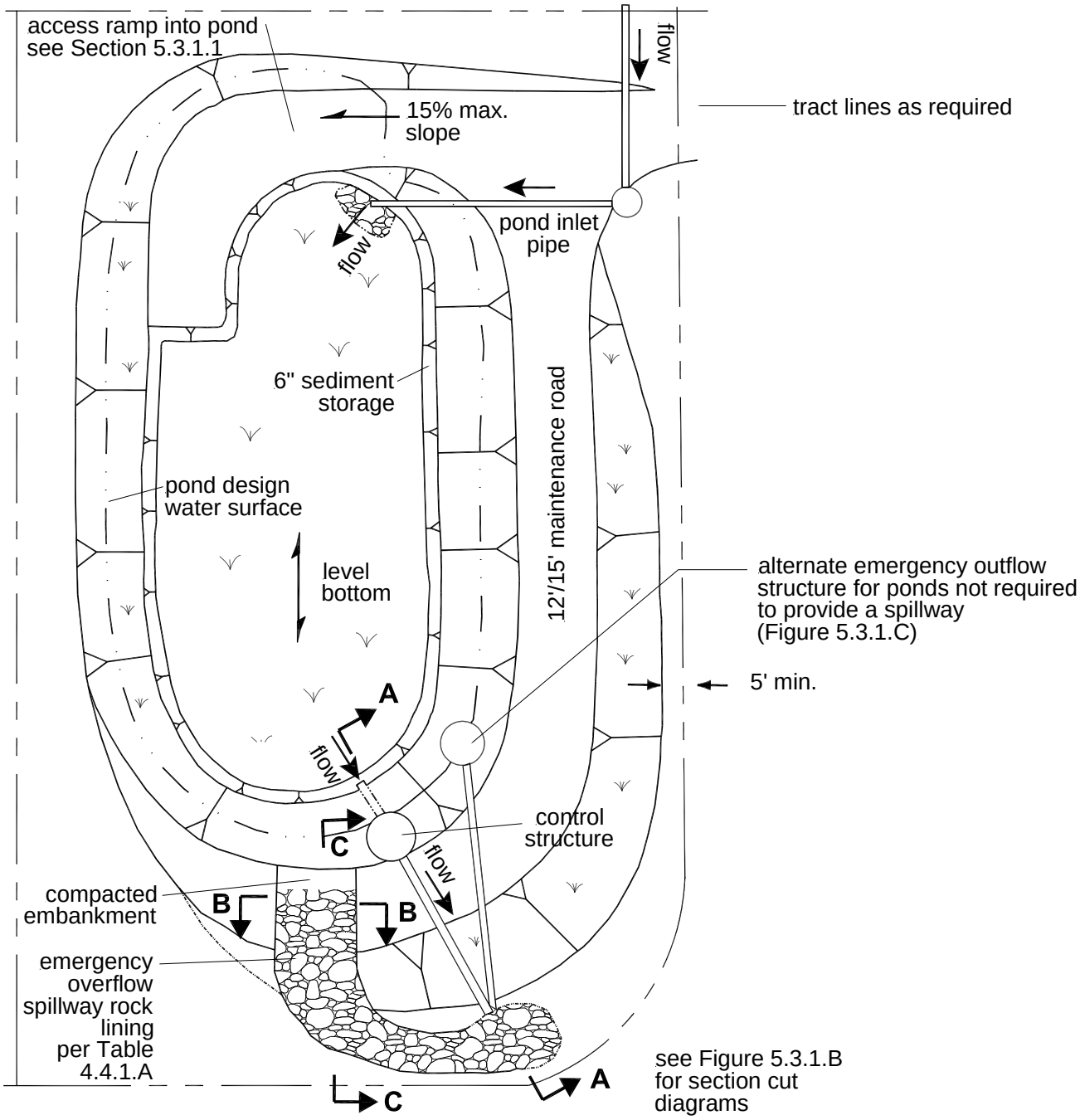
Projects required to provide onsite recreational space per KCC 21A.14.180 may combine the detention pond tract with the recreation space tract to receive a 50% reduction in required onsite recreational space. To receive the 50% credit, the following criteria must be met as required by KCC 21A.14.180.D:

1. The proposed stormwater tract must be dedicated or reserved as a part of a recreational space tract.
2. The stormwater pond must be constructed to meet the following requirements:
   a) Side slopes shall not exceed 33 percent unless they are existing, natural, and covered with vegetation.
   b) A bypass system or an emergency overflow pathway shall be designed to handle flow exceeding the facility design and located so that it does not pass through active recreation areas or present a safety hazard.
   c) The stormwater pond shall be landscaped in a manner to enhance passive recreational opportunities such as trails and aesthetic viewing.
   d) The stormwater pond shall be designed so that it does not require fencing per the fencing requirements on page 5-20.
3. Where a tract is jointly used for recreational space and King County maintained drainage facilities, the County is only responsible for maintenance of the drainage facilities, and an access easement shall be provided for that purpose.

Detention Ponds in Open Space

Open space areas reserved through the **four-to-one program** may be used to site "natural appearing" stormwater facilities if they are found to be compatible with the open space value and functions, and if they are located on a "small portion of the open space" (Amended policy I-204, King County Comprehensive Plan). Conscientious application of the "Guidelines for Naturalistic Plantings" (p. 5-23) typically will produce natural-appearing stormwater facilities. A site-specific assessment is needed, however, to determine whether the stormwater tract would be compatible with the open space value and functions.

FIGURE 5.3.1.A TYPICAL DETENTION POND



NOTE:

This detail is a schematic representation only. Actual configuration will vary depending on specific site constraints and applicable design criteria.

FIGURE 5.3.1.B TYPICAL DETENTION POND SECTIONS

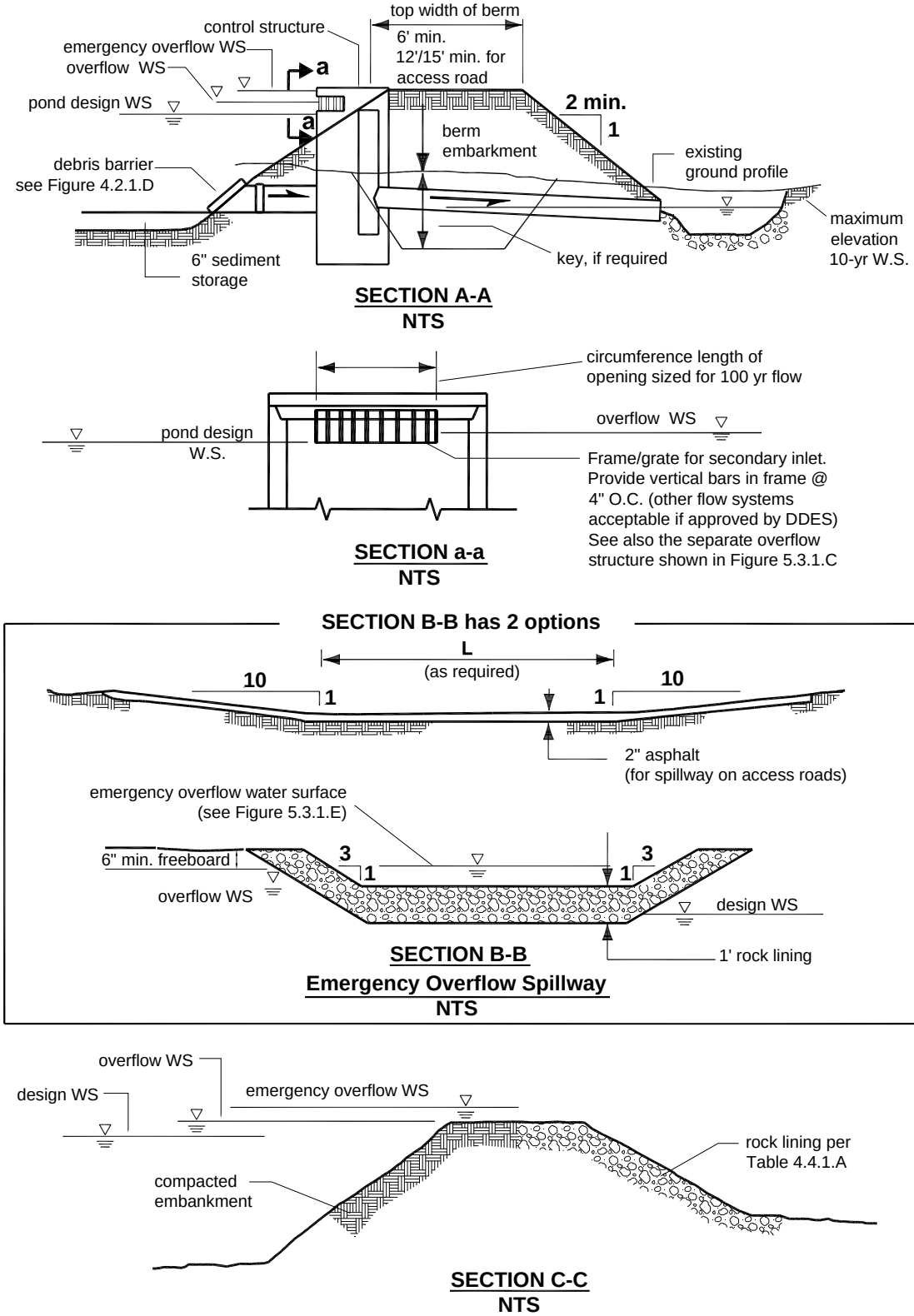
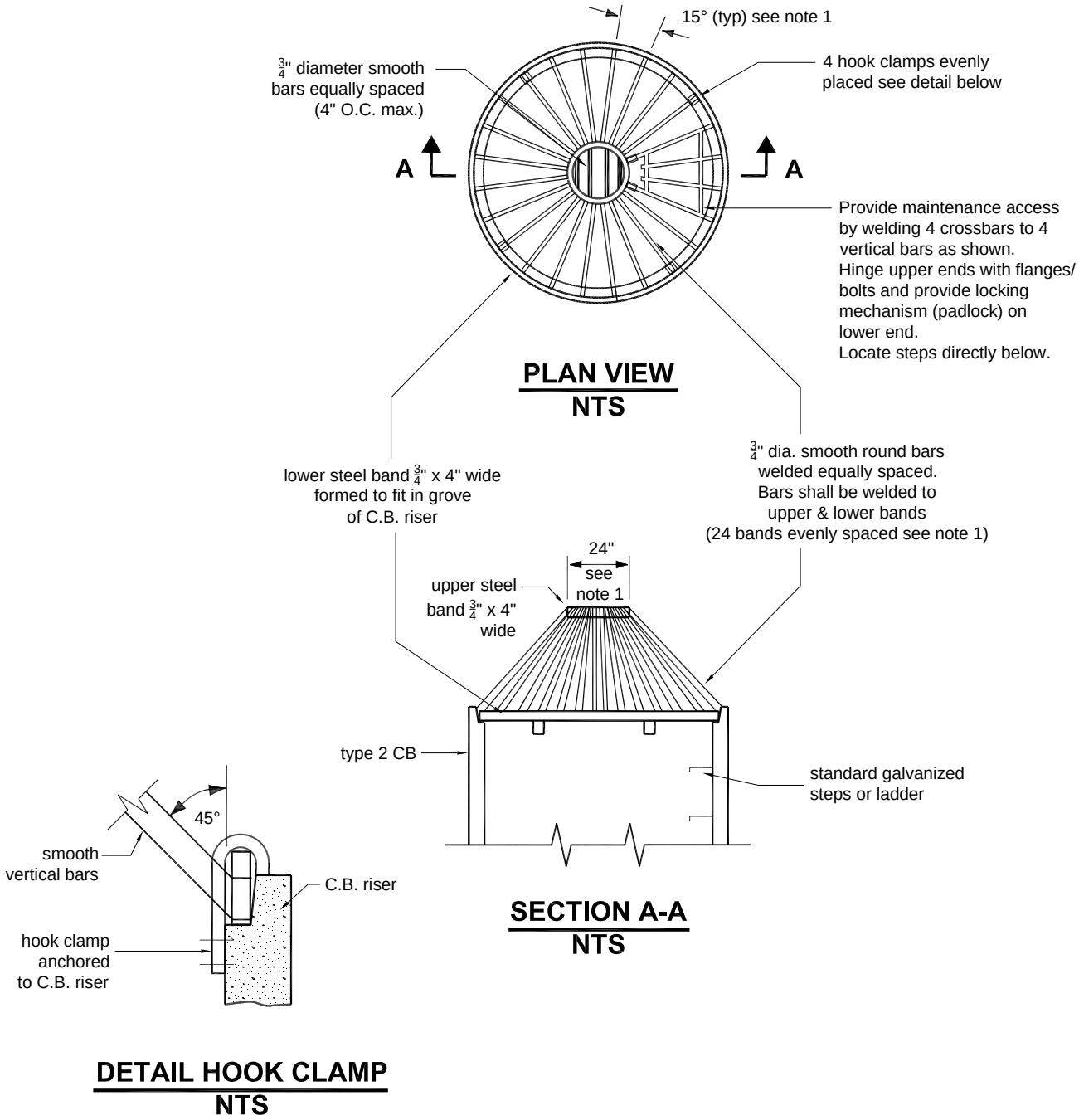


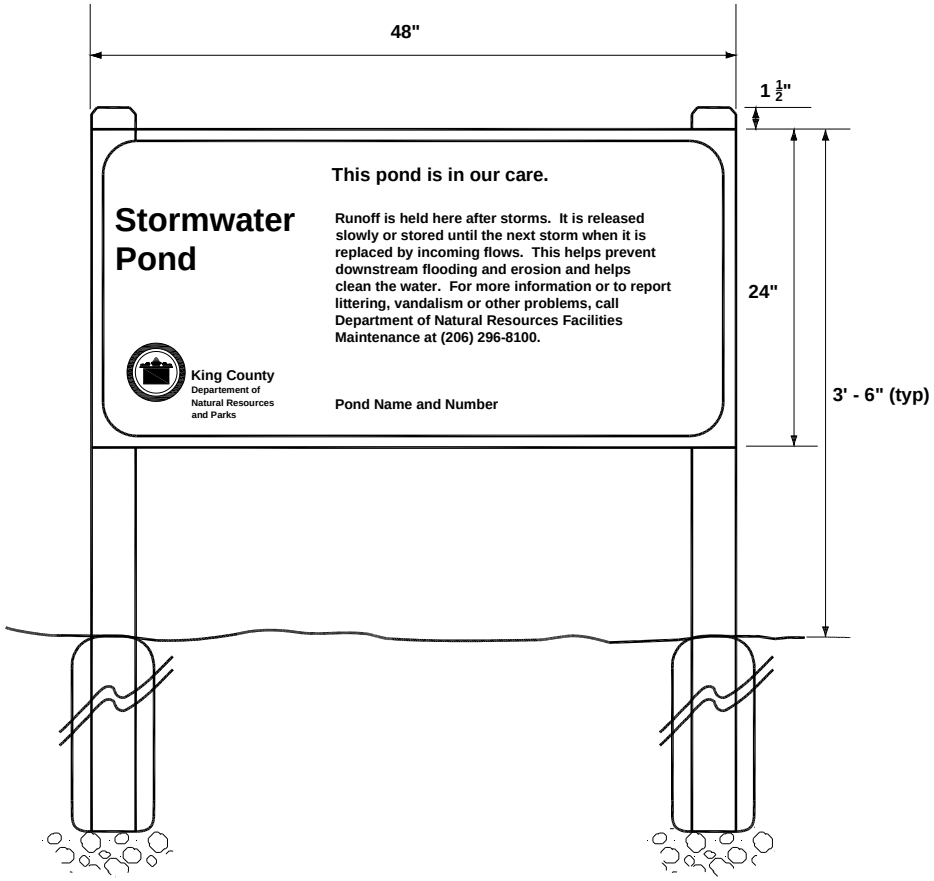
FIGURE 5.3.1.C OVERFLOW STRUCTURE



NOTES:

1. Dimensions are for illustration on 54" diameter CB. For different diameter CB's adjust to maintain 45° angle on "vertical" bars and 7" o.c. maximum spacing of bars around lower steel band.
2. Metal parts must be corrosion resistant; steel bars must be galvanized.
3. This debris barrier is also recommended for use on the inlet to roadway cross-culverts with high potential for debris collection (except on type 2 streams).
4. This debris barrier is for use outside of road right-of-way only. For debris cages within road right-of-way, see KCRS Drawing No. 7-028.

FIGURE 5.3.1.D PERMANENT SURFACE WATER CONTROL POND SIGN



SPECIFICATIONS:

Size: 48 inches by 24 inches

Material: 0.125-gauge aluminum

Face: Non-reflective vinyl or 3 coats outdoor enamel (sprayed).

Lettering: Silk screen enamel where possible, or vinyl letters.

Colors: Beige background, teal letters.

Type face: Helvetica condensed. Title: 3 inch; Sub-Title: $1^1/_2$-inch; Text: 1 inch; Outer border: $^1/_8$ inch border distance from edge: $^1/_4$-inch; all text $1^3/_4$-inch from border.

Posts: Pressure treated, beveled tops, $1^1/_2$-inch higher than sign.

Installation: Secure to chain link fence if available. Otherwise install on two 4"x4" posts, pressure treated, mounted atop a gravel bed, installed in 30-inch concrete filled post holes (8-inch minimum diameter), with the top of sign no higher than 42 inches from ground surface.

Placement: Face sign in direction of primary visual or physical access. Do not block any access road. Do not place within 6 feet of structural facilities (e.g. manholes, spillways, pipe inlets).

Note: If the facility has a liner to restrict infiltration of stormwater, the following note must be added to the face of the sign: "This facility is lined to protect groundwater quality." In addition, specific information about the liner must be added to the back of the sign as specified in Section 6.2.4.

5.3.1.2 METHODS OF ANALYSIS

Detention Volume and Outflow

The volume and outflow design for detention ponds shall be in accordance with the performance requirements in Chapter 1 and the hydrologic analysis and design methods in Chapter 3. Restrictor orifice structure design shall comply with Section 5.3.4 (p. 5-38). *Note: The **design water surface elevation** is the highest elevation that occurs in order to meet the required outflow performance for the pond.*

Detention Ponds in Infiltrative Soils

Detention ponds may occasionally be sited on till soils that otherwise meet the basic criteria of "**sufficient permeable soil**" for a properly functioning infiltration system (see Section 5.4.1, p. 5-57). These detention ponds have a surface discharge and may also utilize infiltration as a second pond outflow. Detention ponds sized with infiltration as a second outflow must meet all the requirements of Section 5.4 for infiltration ponds, including a soils report, performance testing, groundwater protection, presettling, and construction techniques.

Emergency Overflow Spillway Capacity

The emergency overflow spillway weir section shall be designed to pass the 100-year runoff event for developed conditions assuming a broad-crested weir. The **broad-crested weir equation** for the spillway section in Figure 5.3.1.E, for example, would be:

$$Q_{100} = C\,(2g)^{1/2}\,[{}^{2}/_{3}\,LH^{3/2} + {}^{8}/_{15}\,(\text{Tan}\,\theta)\,H^{5/2}] \qquad (5\text{-}1)$$

where
- Q_{100} = peak flow for the 100-year runoff event (fps)
- C = discharge coefficient (0.6)
- g = gravity (32.2 ft/sec^2)
- L = length of weir (ft)
- H = height of water over weir (ft)
- θ = angle of side slopes

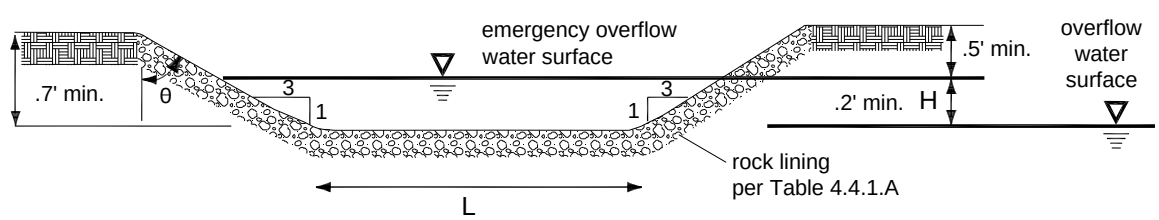
Assuming C = 0.6 and Tan θ = 3 (for 3:1 slopes), the equation becomes:

$$Q_{100} = 3.21\,(LH^{3/2} + 2.4\,H^{5/2}) \qquad (5\text{-}2)$$

To find width L for the weir section, the equation is rearranged to use the computed Q_{100} and trial values of H (0.2 feet minimum):

$$L = [Q_{100} / (3.21\,H^{3/2})] - 2.4\,H \quad \text{or} \quad 6 \text{ feet minimum} \qquad (5\text{-}3)$$

FIGURE 5.3.1.E WEIR SECTION FOR EMERGENCY OVERFLOW SPILLWAY



5.3.2 DETENTION TANKS

Detention tanks are underground storage facilities typically constructed with large diameter corrugated metal pipe. Standard detention tank details are shown in Figure 5.3.2.A (p. 5-33) and Figure 5.3.2.B (p. 5-34). Control structure details are shown in Section 5.3.4 beginning on page 5-38.

5.3.2.1 DESIGN CRITERIA

General

1. Tanks shall be designed as **flow-through systems with manholes in line** (see Figure 5.3.2.A, p. 5-33) to promote sediment removal and facilitate maintenance.

   Exception: Tanks may be designed as **back-up systems** if preceded by water quality facilities since little sediment should reach the inlet/control structure and low head losses can be expected because of the proximity of the inlet/control structure to the tank.

2. The detention tank bottom shall be located 0.5 feet below the inlet and outlet to provide dead storage for sediment.

3. The **minimum pipe diameter** allowed for a detention tank is 36 inches.

4. Tanks larger than 36 inches may be connected to each adjoining structure with a short section (2-foot maximum length) of 36-inch minimum diameter pipe.

5. Outflow **control structures** shall be as detailed in Section 5.3.4 (p. 5-38). *Note: Control and access manholes shall have additional ladder rungs to allow ready access to all tank access pipes when the catch basin sump is filled with water (see Figure 5.3.4.A, plan view, p. 5-39).*

Materials

Pipe material, joints, and protective treatment for tanks shall be in accordance with Sections 7.04 and 9.05 of the *WSDOT/APWA Standard Specification* as modified by the *King County Road Standards* and AASHTO designations. Such materials include the following:

- Lined corrugated polyethylene pipe (LCPE)
- Aluminized Type 2 corrugated steel pipe and pipe arch (meets AASHTO designations M274 and M36)
- Corrugated or spiral rib aluminum pipe and pipe arch
- Reinforced concrete pipe
- Narrow concrete vaults (see Section 5.3.3, p. 5-35).
- Corrugated steel pipe and pipe arch, Aluminized or Galvanized[8] with treatments 1 through 6
- Spiral rib steel pipe, Aluminized or Galvanized with treatments 1 through 6
- Structural plate pipe and pipe arch, Aluminized or Galvanized with treatments 1 through 6

Structural Stability

Tanks shall meet structural requirements for overburden support and traffic loading if appropriate. H-20 live loads must be accommodated for tanks lying under parking areas and access roads. The *King County Roads Standards* may have different live load requirements for structures located under roadways. Metal

[8] Galvanized metals leach zinc into the environment, especially in standing water situations. High zinc concentrations, sometimes in the range that can be toxic to aquatic life, have been observed in the region. Therefore, use of galvanized materials should be avoided. Where other metals, such as aluminum or stainless steel, or plastics are available, they shall be used. If these materials are not available, asphalt coated galvanized materials may then be used.

tank end plates must be designed for structural stability at maximum hydrostatic loading conditions. Flat end plates generally require thicker gage material than the pipe and/or require reinforcing ribs.

Tanks shall be placed on stable, well consolidated native material with a suitable bedding. Backfill shall be placed and compacted in accordance with the pipe specifications in Chapter 4. Tanks made of LCPE require inspection for deformation prior to installation as well as continuous inspection of backfilling to one foot above the top of the tank. Tanks shall not be allowed in fill slopes, unless analyzed in a geotechnical report for stability and constructability.

Buoyancy

In moderately pervious soils where seasonal groundwater may induce flotation, buoyancy tendencies must be balanced either by ballasting with backfill or concrete backfill, providing concrete anchors, increasing the total weight, or providing subsurface drains to permanently lower the groundwater table. Calculations must be submitted that demonstrate stability.

Access Requirements

1. The **maximum depth** from finished grade to tank invert shall be 20 feet.
2. **Access openings** shall be positioned a maximum of 50 feet from any location within the tank.
3. All tank access openings shall have round, solid **locking lids** with $^{5}/_{8}$-inch diameter Allen head cap screws (see *KCRS* Drawing No. 7-022 and 7-023).
4. Thirty-six-inch minimum diameter **CMP riser-type manholes** (Figure 5.3.2.B, p. 5-34) of the same gage as the tank material may be used for access along the length of the tank and at the upstream terminus of the tank if a backup system. The top slab is separated (1-inch minimum gap) from the top of the riser to allow for deflections from vehicle loadings without damaging the riser tank.
5. All tank access openings must be readily **accessible by maintenance vehicles**.

Access Roads

Access roads are required to all detention tank control structures and risers. The access roads shall be designed and constructed **as specified for detention ponds** in Section 5.3.1 (p. 5-20).

Right-of-Way

Detention tanks to be maintained by King County but not located in King County right-of-way shall be in a tract dedicated to King County. Any tract not abutting public right-of-way will require a 15-foot wide extension of the tract to accommodate an access road to the facility.

Setbacks

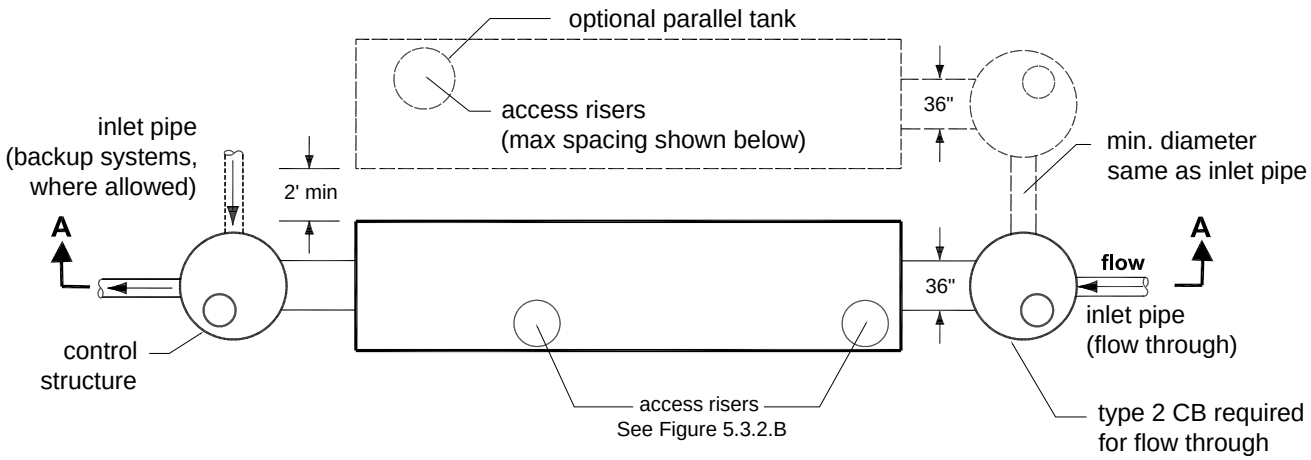
Setbacks (easement/tract width) and building setback lines (BSBLs) for tanks shall be the same as for pipes (see Section 4.1).

5.3.2.2 METHODS OF ANALYSIS

Detention Volume and Outflow

The volume and outflow design for **detention tanks** shall be in accordance with the performance requirements in Chapter 1 and the hydrologic analysis and design methods in Chapter 3. Restrictor and orifice design shall be according to Section 5.3.4 (p. 5-38).

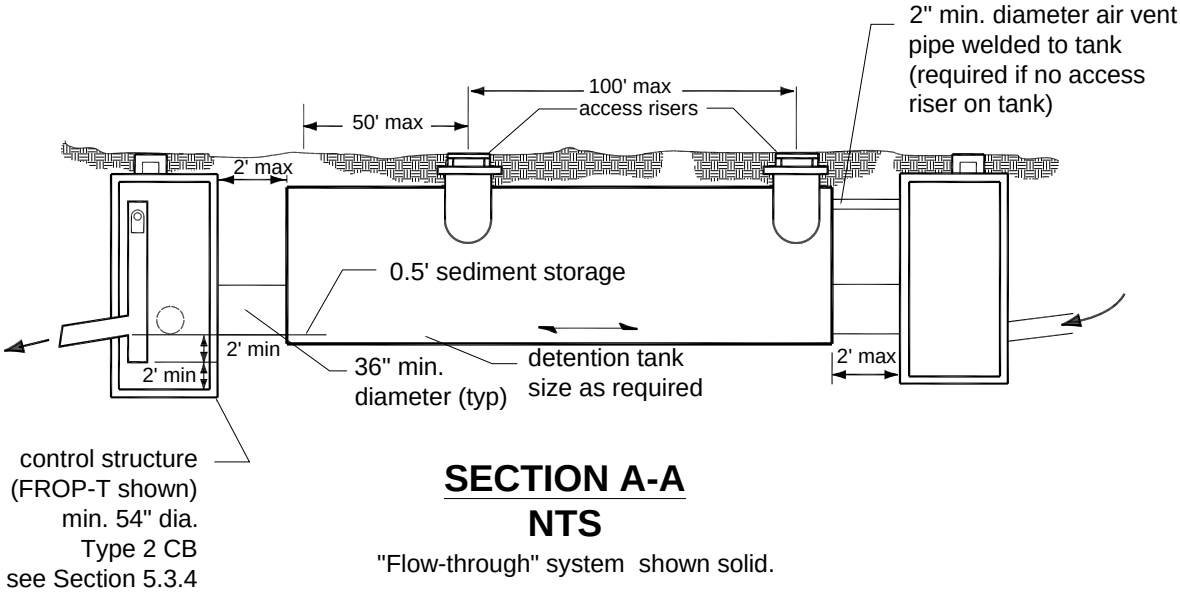
FIGURE 5.3.2.A TYPICAL DETENTION TANK



PLAN VIEW

NTS

"Flow-through" system shown solid.
Designs for "flow backup" system and
parallel tanks shown dashed



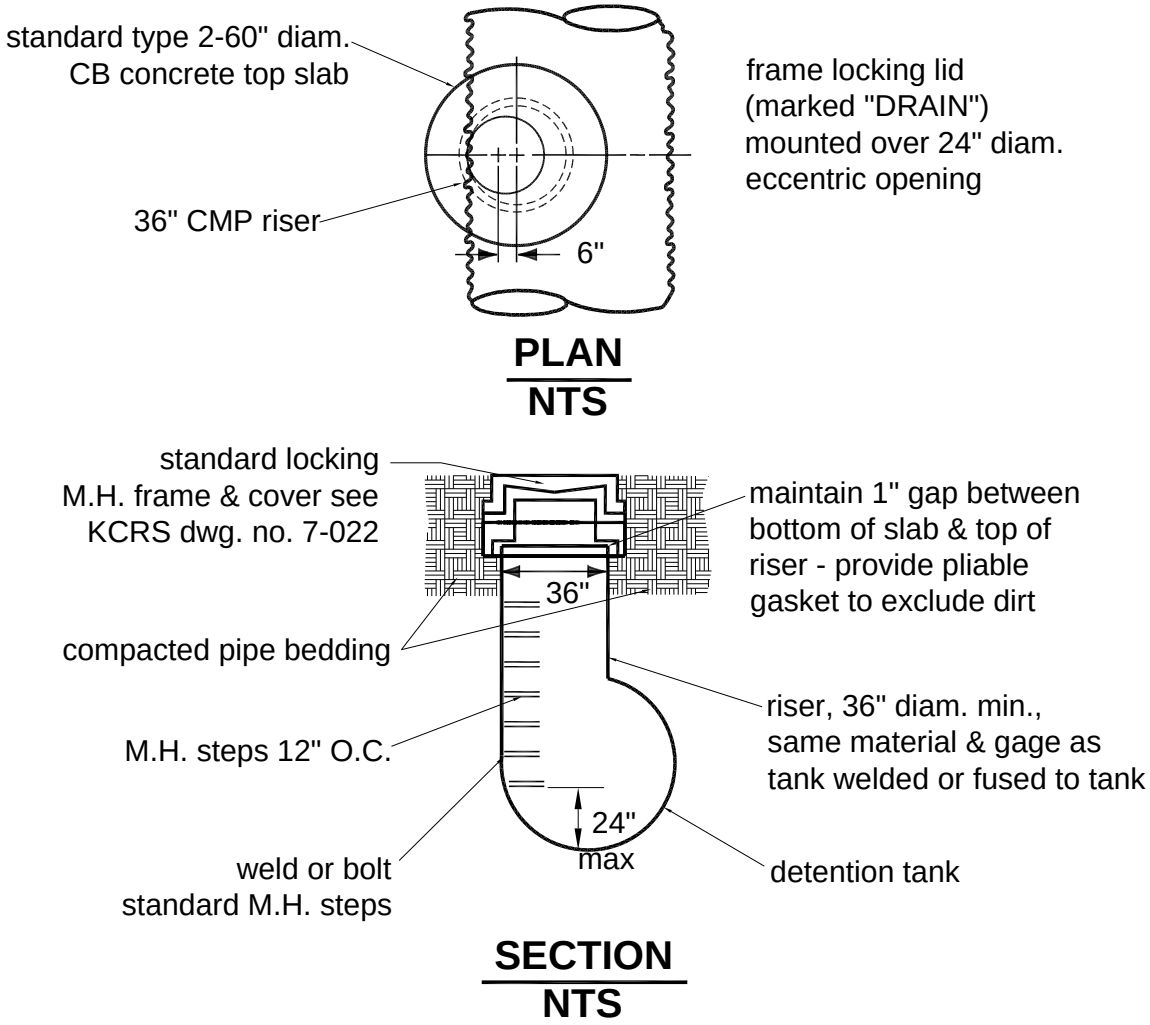
SECTION A-A

NTS

"Flow-through" system shown solid.

NOTE:
All metal parts corrosion resistant.
Steel parts galvanized and asphalt
coated (Treatment 1 or better)

FIGURE 5.3.2.B DETENTION TANK ACCESS DETAIL



NOTES:

1. Use adjusting blocks as required to bring frame to guide.
2. All materials to be aluminum or galvanized and asphalt coated (Treament 1 or better).
3. Must be located for access by maintenance vehicles.
4. May substitute WSDOT special Type IV manhole (RCP only).

5.3.3 DETENTION VAULTS

Detention vaults are box-shaped underground storage facilities typically constructed with reinforced concrete. A standard detention vault detail is shown in Figure 5.3.3.A (p. 5-37). Control structure details are shown in Section 5.3.4 beginning on page 5-38.

5.3.3.1 DESIGN CRITERIA

General

1. Detention vaults shall be designed as **flow-through systems** with bottoms level (longitudinally) or sloped toward the inlet to facilitate sediment removal. Distance between the inlet and outlet shall be maximized (as feasible).
2. The detention **vault bottom** shall slope at least 5% from each side towards the center, forming a broad "v" to facilitate sediment removal. *Note: More than one "v" may be used to minimize vault depth*.

   Exception: The vault bottom may be flat if **removable panels** are provided over the entire vault. Removable panels shall be at grade, have stainless steel lifting eyes, and weigh no more than 5 tons per panel.
3. The **invert elevation of the outlet** shall be elevated above the bottom of the vault to provide an average 6 inches of sediment storage over the entire bottom. The outlet must also be elevated a minimum of 2 feet above the orifice to retain oil within the vault.
4. The outflow system and restrictor device shall be designed according to the applicable requirements specified for **control structures** in Section 5.3.4 (p. 5-38).

Materials

Minimum 3,000 psi structural reinforced concrete must be used for all detention vaults. All construction joints must be provided with water stops.

Structural Stability

All vaults shall meet structural requirements for overburden support and H-20 traffic loading. Vaults located under roadways must meet the live load requirements of the *King County Road Standards*. Cast-in-place wall sections shall be designed as retaining walls. Structural designs for vaults must be stamped by a licensed structural engineer unless otherwise approved by DDES. Vaults shall be placed on stable, well-consolidated native material with suitable bedding. Vaults shall not be allowed in fill slopes, unless analyzed in a geotechnical report for stability and constructability.

Access Requirements

1. **Access** consisting of a frame and locking cover shall be provided over the inlet pipe and outlet structure (see KCRS Drawing No. 7-022 and 7-023). Access openings shall be positioned a maximum of 50 feet from any location within the vault; additional access points may be required on large vaults. If more than one "v" is provided in the vault floor, access to each "v" must be provided.
2. For vaults with **greater than 1250 square feet of floor area**, a 5' by 10' removable, locking panel shall be provided. Alternatively, a separate access vault may be provided as shown in Figure 5.3.3.A (p. 5-37).
3. For **vaults under roadways**, the removable panel must be located outside the travel lanes. Alternatively, multiple standard locking manhole covers (see KCRS Drawing No. 7-022 and 7-023) may be provided. Spacing of manhole covers shall be 12 feet, measured on center, to facilitate removal of sediment. Ladders and hand-holds need only be provided at the outlet pipe and inlet pipe,

and as needed to meet OSHA confined space requirements. Vaults providing manhole access at 12-foot spacing need not provide corner ventilation pipes as specified in Item 10 below.

4. All **access openings**, except those covered by removable panels, shall have round, solid **locking covers** (see *KCRS* Drawing Nos. 7-022 and 7-023), or 3-foot square, locking diamond plate covers. For raised openings where the depth from the iron cover to the top of the vault exceeds 24 inches, an access structure equivalent to a Type 2 catch basin or Type 1 manhole shall be used (see KCRS Drawing Nos. 7-005 and 7-007). The opening in the vault lid need not exceed 24 inches in diameter.
5. Vaults with widths 10 feet or less must have **removable lids**.
6. The **maximum depth** from finished grade to the vault invert shall be 20 feet.
7. **Internal structural walls** of large vaults shall be provided with openings sufficient for maintenance access between cells. The openings shall be sized and situated to allow access to the maintenance "v" in the vault floor.
8. The **minimum internal height** shall be 7 feet from the highest point of the vault floor (not sump), and the **minimum width** shall be 4 feet.

   Exceptions:

   - Concrete vaults may be a minimum 3 feet in height and width **if used as tanks** with access manholes at each end, and if the width is no larger than the height.
   - The minimum internal height requirement may be waived for any areas covered by removable panels.
9. **Ventilation pipes** (minimum 12-inch diameter or equivalent) shall be provided in all four corners of vaults to allow for artificial ventilation prior to entry of maintenance personnel into the vault.

Access Roads

Access roads are required to the access panel (if applicable), the control structure, and at least one access point per cell, and they shall be designed and constructed **as specified for detention ponds** in Section 5.3.1 (p. 5-20).

Right-of-Way

Detention vaults to be maintained by King County but not located in King County right-of-way shall be in a tract dedicated to King County. Any tract not abutting public right-of-way will require a 15-foot wide extension of the tract to accommodate an access road to the vault.

Setbacks

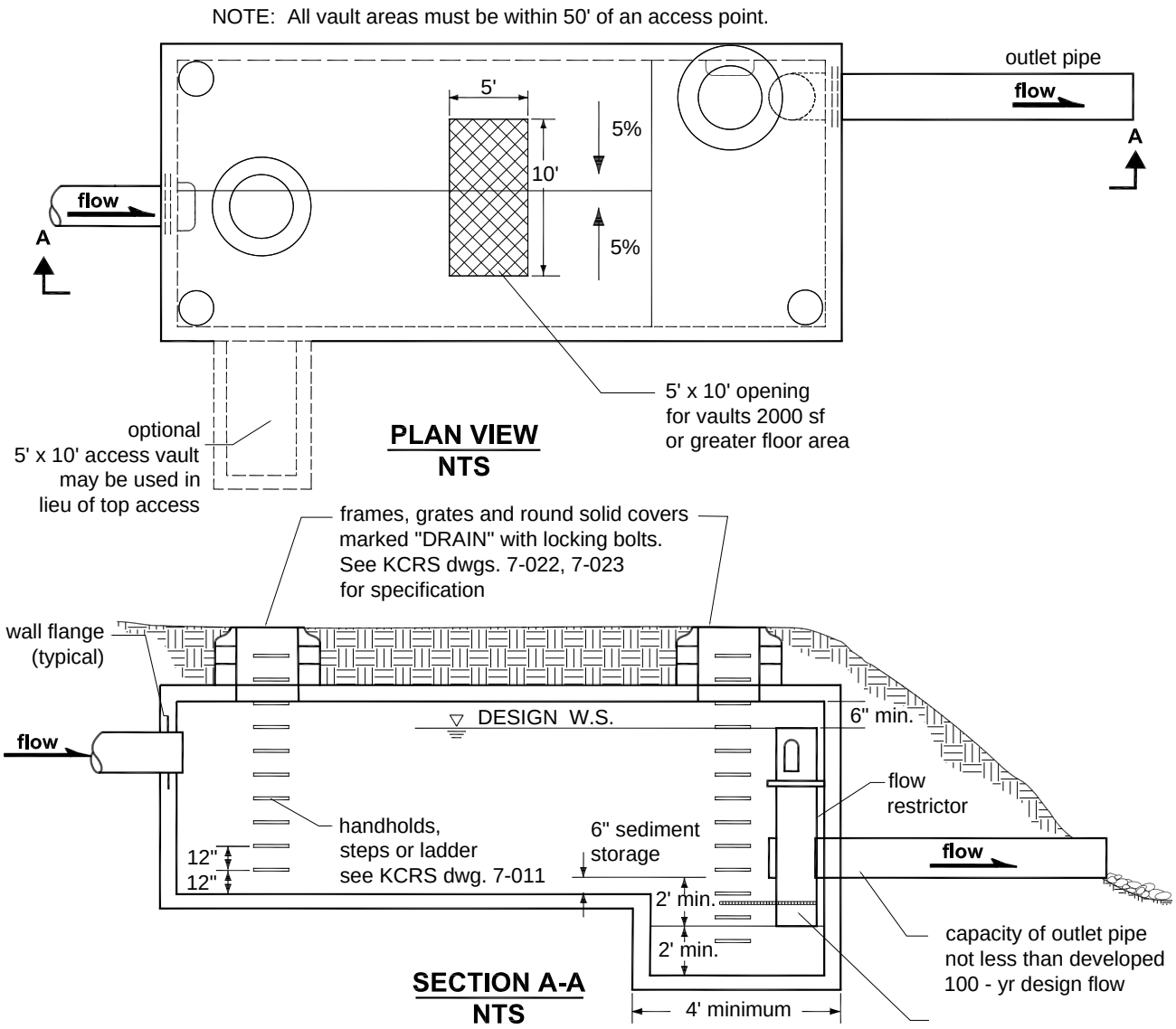
Setbacks to tract/easement lines for vaults shall be 5 feet; adjacent building setback lines shall be 10 feet. For privately owned and maintained vaults, building foundations may serve as one or more of the vault walls.

5.3.3.2 METHODS OF ANALYSIS

Detention Volume and Outflow

The volume and outflow design for detention vaults shall be in accordance with the performance requirements in Chapter 1 and the hydrologic analysis and routing/design methods in Chapter 3. Restrictor and orifice design shall be according to Section 5.3.4 (p. 5-38).

FIGURE 5.3.3.A TYPICAL DETENTION VAULT



NOTES:

1. All metal parts must be corrosion resistant. Steel parts must be galvanized and asphalt coated (Treatment 1 or better).
2. Provide water stop at all cast-in-place construction joints. Preceast vaults shall have approved rubber gasket system.
3. Vaults ≤10' wide must use removable lids.
4. Prefabricated vault sections may require structural modifications to support 5' x 10' opening over main vault. Alternatively, access can be provided via a side vestibule as shown.

5.3.4 CONTROL STRUCTURES

Control structures are catch basins or manholes with a restrictor device for controlling outflow from a facility to meet the desired performance. The restrictor device is typically a tee section with an orifice plate welded to the bottom (called a "FROP-T"). To meet performance requirements, one or more elbow sections with orifice plates may need to be mounted on the side of the tee section. The restrictor device may also be a weir section sized to meet performance requirements.

Standard control structure details are shown in Figure 5.3.4.A (p. 5-39) through Figure 5.3.4.C (p. 5-41).

5.3.4.1 DESIGN CRITERIA

Multiple Orifice Restrictor

In most cases, control structures need only two orifices: one at the bottom and one near the top of the riser, although additional orifices may best utilize detention storage volume. Several orifices may be located at the same elevation if necessary to meet performance requirements.

1. **Minimum orifice diameter is 0.25 inches**. *Note: In some instances, a 0.25-inch bottom orifice may be too large to meet target release rates, even with minimal head. In these cases, the live storage depth need not be reduced to less than 3 feet to meet performance.*
2. Orifices shall be constructed on a **tee section** as shown in Figure 5.3.4.A (p. 5-39) or on a baffle as shown in Figure 5.3.4.B (p. 5-40).
3. In some cases, performance requirements may require the **top orifice/elbow** to be located too high on the riser to be physically constructed (e.g., a 13-inch diameter orifice positioned 0.5 feet from the top of the riser). In these cases, a notch weir in the riser pipe may be used to meet performance requirements (see Figure 5.3.4.E, p. 5-43).
4. Consideration shall be given to the backwater effect of water surface elevations in the downstream conveyance system. **High tailwater elevations** may affect performance of the restrictor system and reduce live storage volumes. *Note: The KCRTS program, version 4.0 and later, supports the design of a partially tailwatered control structure by using a headwater/tailwater (HW/TW) data file generated using the KCBW program. The user can specify the use of a HW/TW file within the "Point of Compliance Setup," located within the "Edit Facility" menu screen.*

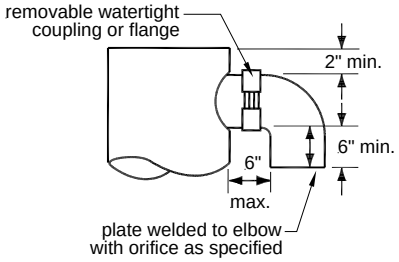
Riser and Weir Restrictor

1. Properly designed **weirs may be used as flow restrictors** (see Figure 5.3.4.C and Figure 5.3.4.E through Figure 5.3.4.F). However, they must be designed to provide for primary overflow of the developed 100-year peak flow discharging to the detention facility.
2. The combined orifice and riser (or weir) overflow may be used to meet performance requirements; however, the design must still provide for primary overflow of the developed 100-year peak flow assuming all orifices are plugged. Figure 5.3.4.H (p. 5-47) may be used to calculate the head in feet above a riser of given diameter and flow.

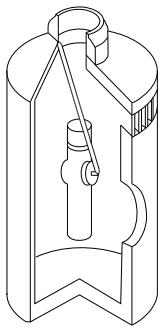
Access Requirements

1. An **access road** to the control structure is required for inspection and maintenance, and shall be designed and constructed **as specified for detention ponds** in Section 5.3.1 (p. 5-20).
2. **Manhole and catch basin lids** for control structures shall be **locking**, and rim elevations shall match proposed finish grade.

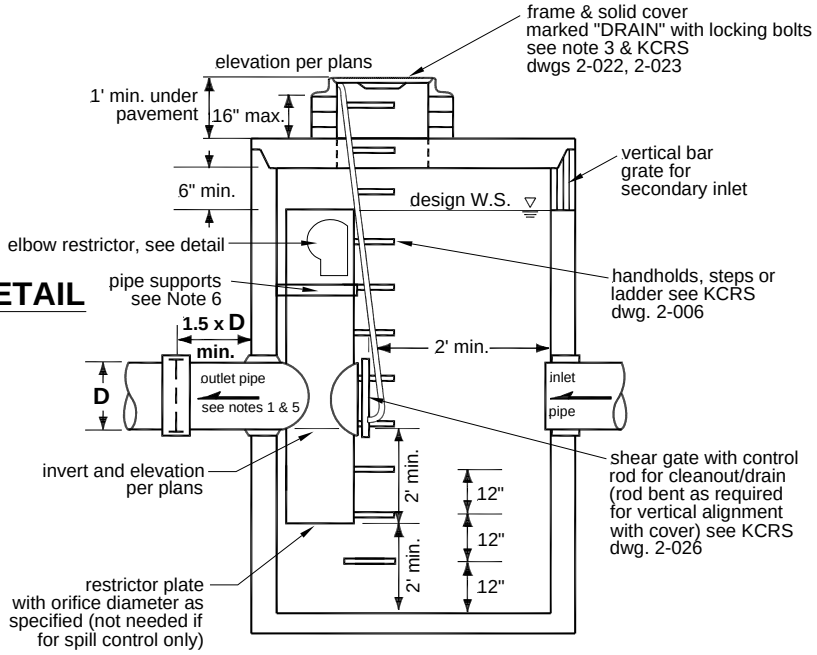
FIGURE 5.3.4.A FLOW RESTRICTOR (TEE)



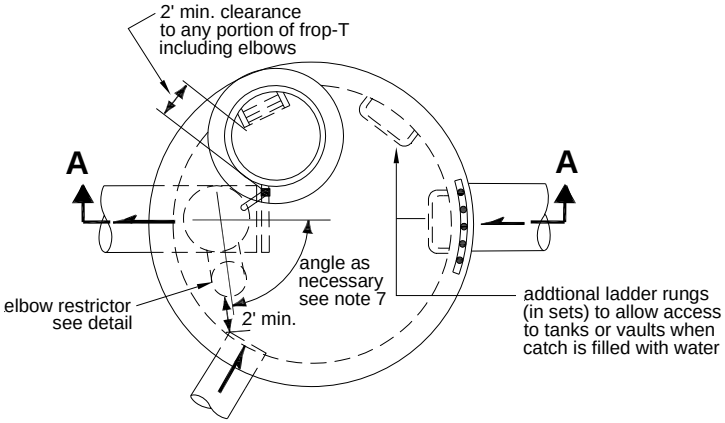
ELBOW RESTRICTOR DETAIL
NTS



ISOMETRIC
NTS



SECTION A-A
NTS

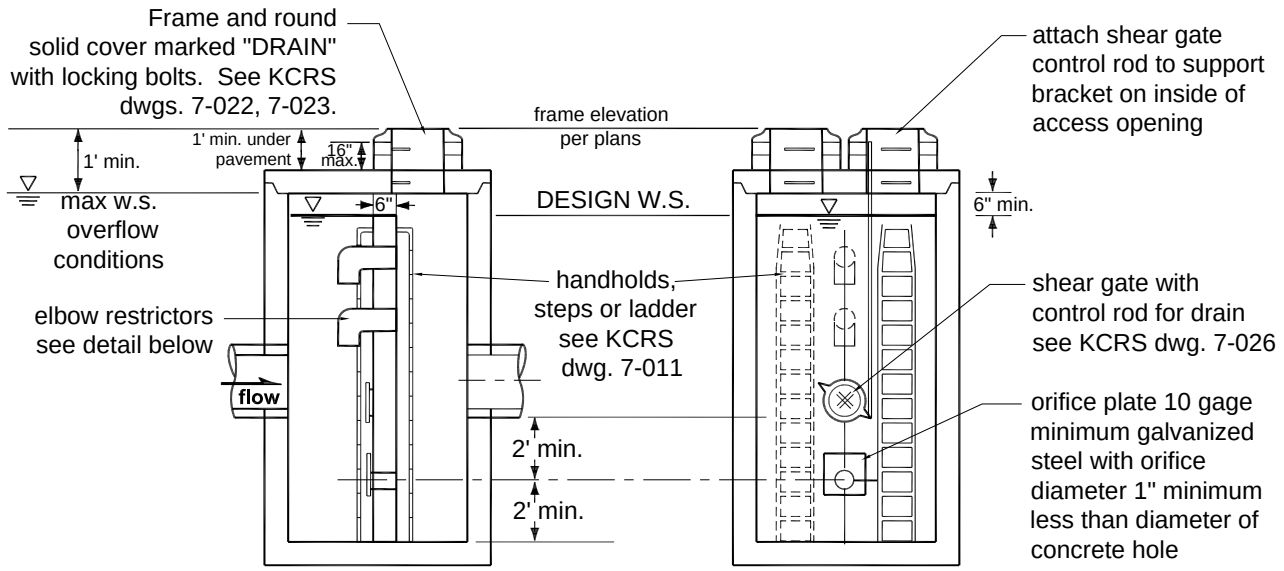


PLAN VIEW
NTS

NOTES:

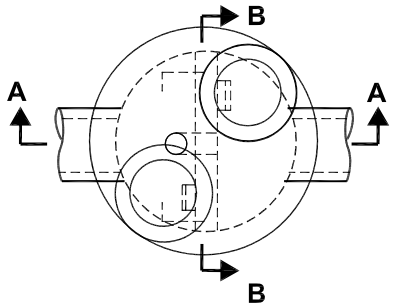
1. Use a mimimum of a 54" diameter type 2 catch basin.
2. Outlet Capacity: 100-Year developed peak flow.
3. Metal Parts: Corrosion resistant. Non-Galvanized parts perferred. Galvanized pipe parts to have asphalt treatment 1.
4. Frame and ladder or steps offset so:
   A. Cleanout gate is visible from top.
   B. Climb-down space is clear of riser and cleanout gate.
   C. Frame is clear of curb.
5. If metal outlet pipe connects to cement concrete pipe: outlet pipe to have smooth O.D. equal to concrete pipe I.D. less $\frac{1}{4}$".
6. Provide at least one 3" X .090 gage support bracket anchored to concrete wall. (maximum 3'-0" vertical spacing)
7. Locate elbow restrictor(s) as necessary to provide minimum clearance as shown.
8. Locate additional ladder rungs in structures used as access to tanks and vaults to allow access when catch basin is filled with water.
9. Tee shall be constructed of aluminum CMP or aluminized steel CMP meeting WSDOT/APWA standards.

FIGURE 5.3.4.B FLOW RESTRICTOR (BAFFLE)

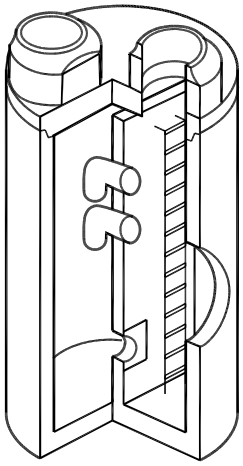


SECTION A-A
NTS

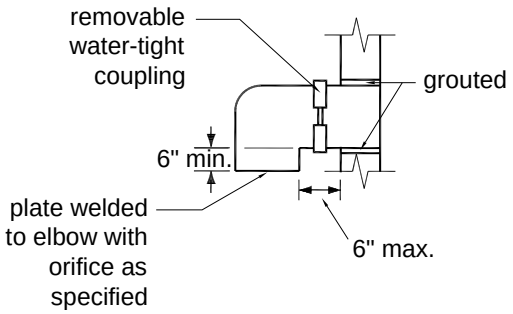
SECTION B-B
NTS



PLAN VIEW
NTS



ISOMETRIC
NTS

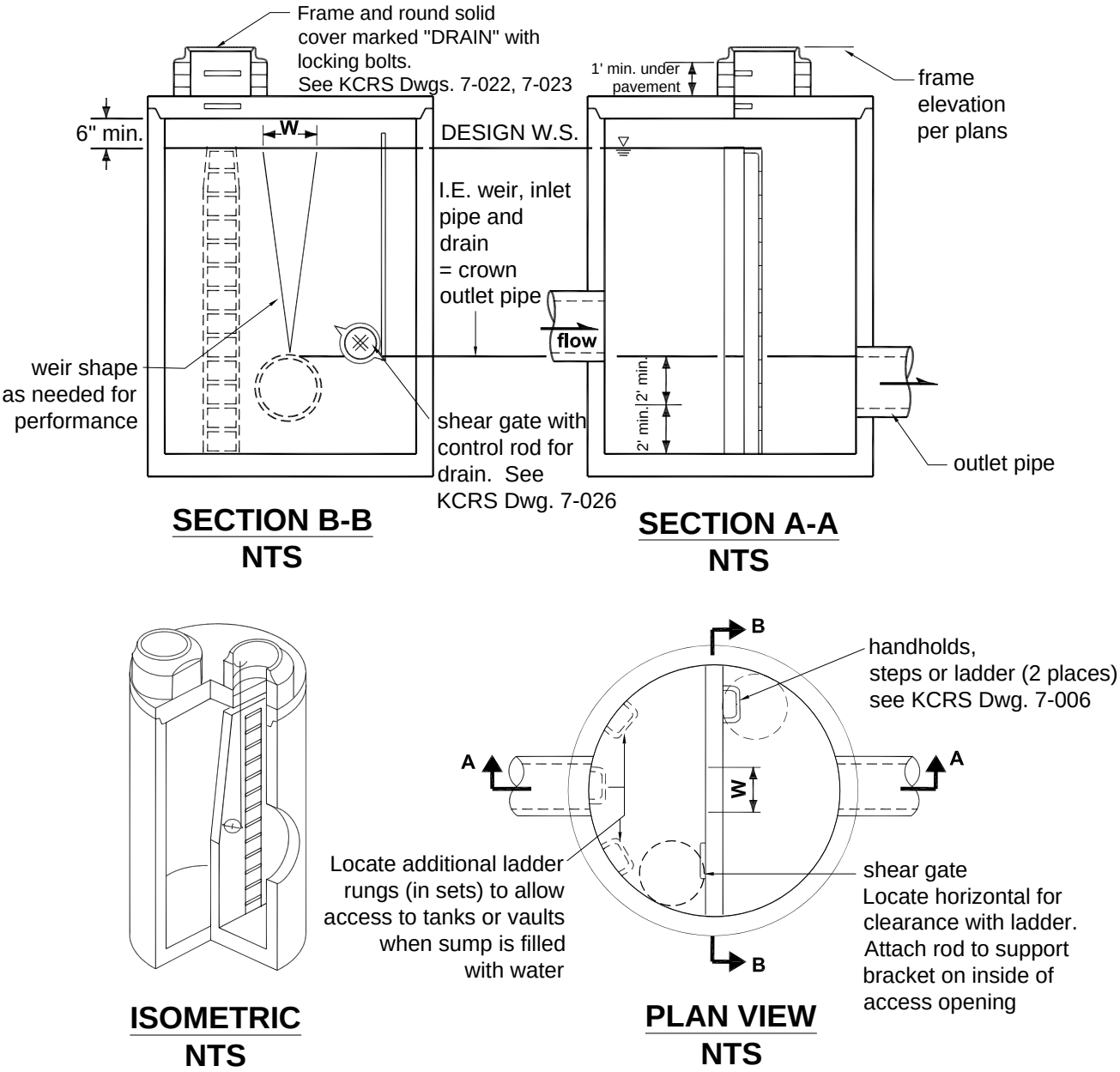


ELBOW RESTRICTOR DETAIL
NTS

NOTES:

outlet capacity: 100 year developed peak flow
metal parts: corrosion resistant steel parts galvanized and asphalt coated
catch basin: type 2 minimum 72" diameter to be constructed in accordance with KCRS dwg. 7-005 and AASHTO M-199 unless otherwise spedified
orifices: sized and located as required with lowest orifice a minimum of 2' from base

FIGURE 5.3.4.C FLOW RESTRICTOR (WEIR)



NOTES:

Outlet Capacity: 100-year developed peak flow.
Metal Parts: corrosion resistant steel parts galvanized and asphalt coated.
Catch Basin: type 2 Min. 72" diameter to be constructed in accordance with KCRS Dwg 7-005 and AASHTO M-199 unless otherwise specified.
Baffle Wall: to be designed with concrete reinforcing as required.
Spill Control Requirements: see Section 4.2.

5.3.4.2 METHODS OF ANALYSIS

This section presents the methods and equations for design of **control structure restrictor devices**. Included are details for the design of orifices, rectangular sharp-crested weirs, v-notch weirs, sutro weirs, and overflow risers.

Orifices

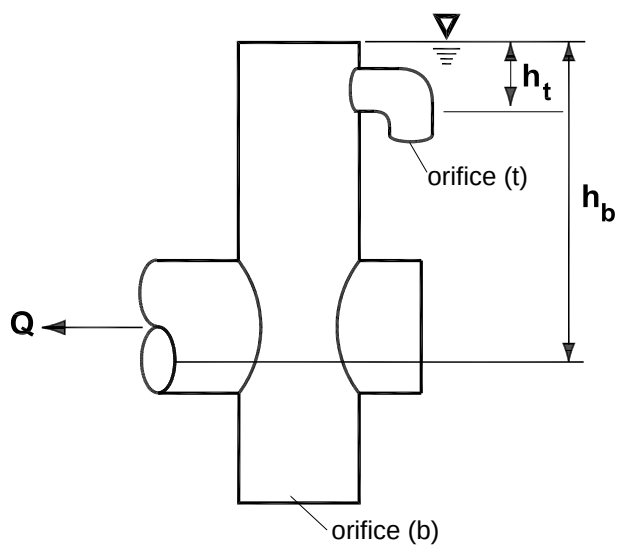
Flow through orifice plates in the standard tee section or turn-down elbow may be approximated by the general equation:

$$Q = CA\sqrt{2gh} \tag{5-4}$$

where
- Q = flow (cfs)
- C = coefficient of discharge (0.62 for plate orifice)
- A = area of orifice (sf)
- h = hydraulic head (ft)
- g = gravity (32.2 ft/sec^2)

Figure 5.3.4.D illustrates a simplified application of the orifice equation, assuming a water surface at the top of the riser and that the 2-year water surface represents the head in the outlet pipe.

FIGURE 5.3.4.D SIMPLE ORIFICE



$$Q = CA_b\sqrt{2gh} + CA_t\sqrt{2gh}$$
$$= C\sqrt{2g}\,(A_b\sqrt{h_b} + A_t\sqrt{h_t})$$

h_b = distance from hydraulic grade line at the 2-year flow of the outflow pipe to the overflow elevation.

The diameter of the orifice is calculated from the flow. The orifice equation is often useful when expressed as the orifice diameter in inches:

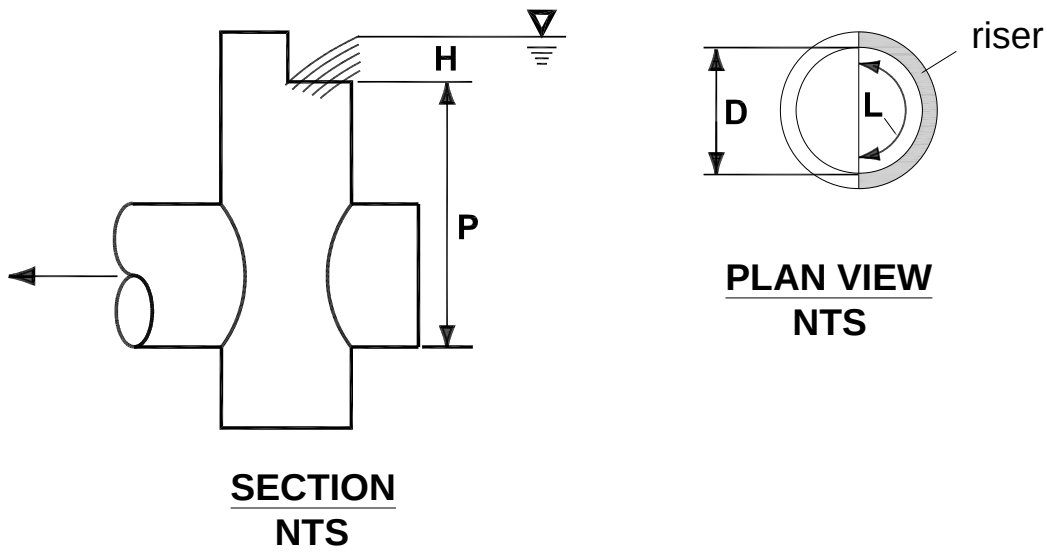
$$d = \sqrt{\frac{36.88Q}{\sqrt{h}}} \tag{5-5}$$

where
- d = orifice diameter (inches)
- Q = flow (cfs)
- h = hydraulic head (ft)

Rectangular, Sharp-Crested Weir

The rectangular, sharp-crested weir design shown in Figure 5.3.4.E may be analyzed using standard weir equations for the fully contracted condition.

FIGURE 5.3.4.E RECTANGULAR, SHARP-CRESTED WEIR



$$Q = C\,(L - 0.2H)H^{3/2} \qquad (5\text{-}6)$$

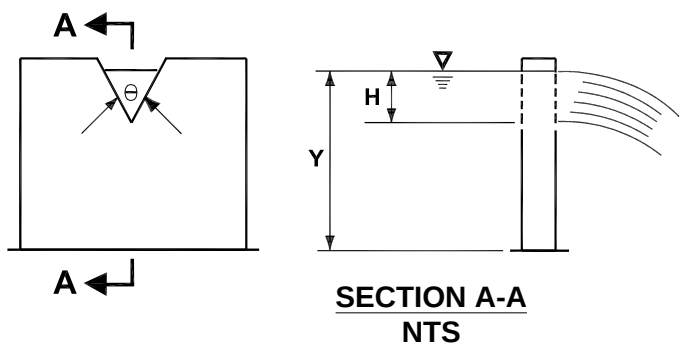
where Q = flow (cfs)
C = 3.27 + 0.40 H/P (ft)
H,P are as shown above
L = length (ft) of the portion of the riser circumference as necessary not to exceed 50% of the circumference
D = inside riser diameter (ft)

Note that this equation accounts for side contractions by subtracting 0.1H from L for each side of the notch weir.

V-Notch, Sharp-Crested Weir

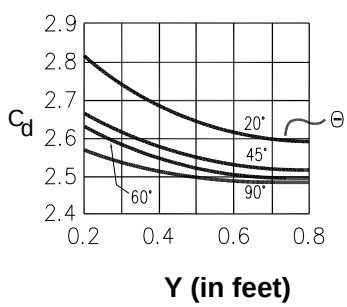
V-notch weirs, as shown in Figure 5.3.4.F, may be analyzed using standard equations for the fully contracted condition.

FIGURE 5.3.4.F V-NOTCH, SHARP-CRESTED WEIR



$$Q = C_d(\text{Tan } \theta / 2)Y^{\frac{5}{2}}, \text{ in cfs}$$

Where values of C_d may be taken from the following chart:

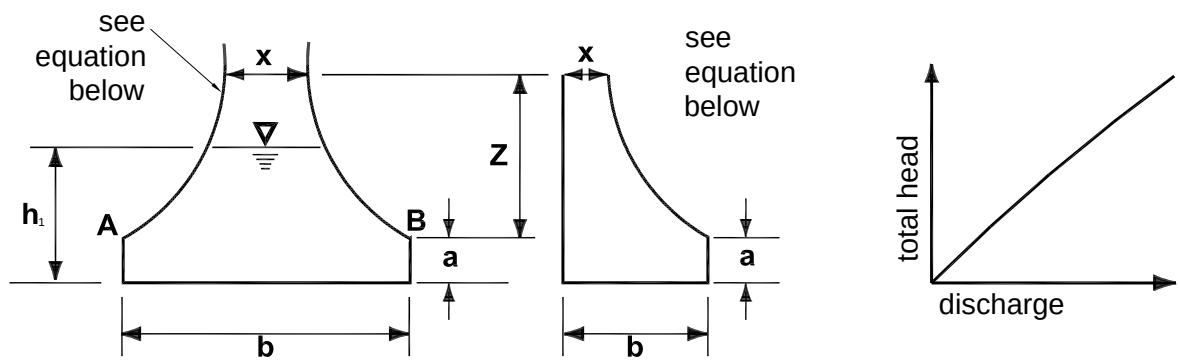


Proportional or Sutro Weir

Sutro weirs are designed so that the discharge is proportional to the total head. This design may be useful in some cases to meet performance requirements.

The sutro weir consists of a rectangular section joined to a curved portion that provides proportionality for all heads above the line A-B (see Figure 5.3.4.G). The weir may be symmetrical or non-symmetrical.

FIGURE 5.3.4.G SUTRO WEIR



For this type of weir, the curved portion is defined by the following equation (calculated in radians):

$$\frac{x}{b} = 1 - \frac{2}{\pi} \operatorname{Tan}^{-1} \sqrt{\frac{Z}{a}} \tag{5-7}$$

where *a*, *b*, *x* and *Z* are as shown in Figure 5.3.4.G. The head-discharge relationship is:

$$Q = C_d\, b\, Q = C_d\, b \sqrt{2ag} \left(h_1 - \frac{a}{3} \right) \tag{5-8}$$

Values of C_d for both symmetrical and non-symmetrical sutro weirs are summarized in Table 5.3.4.A (p. 5-46).

Note: When b > 1.50 or a > 0.30, use C_d = 0.6.

TABLE 5.3.4.A VALUES OF C_d FOR SUTRO WEIRS

C_d Values, Symmetrical

a (ft)	*b* (ft)				
	0.50	0.75	1.0	1.25	1.50
0.02	0.608	0.613	0.617	0.6185	0.619
0.05	0.606	0.611	0.615	0.617	0.6175
0.10	0.603	0.608	0.612	0.6135	0.614
0.15	0.601	0.6055	0.610	0.6115	0.612
0.20	0.599	0.604	0.608	0.6095	0.610
0.25	0.598	0.6025	0.6065	0.608	0.6085
0.30	0.597	0.602	0.606	0.6075	0.608

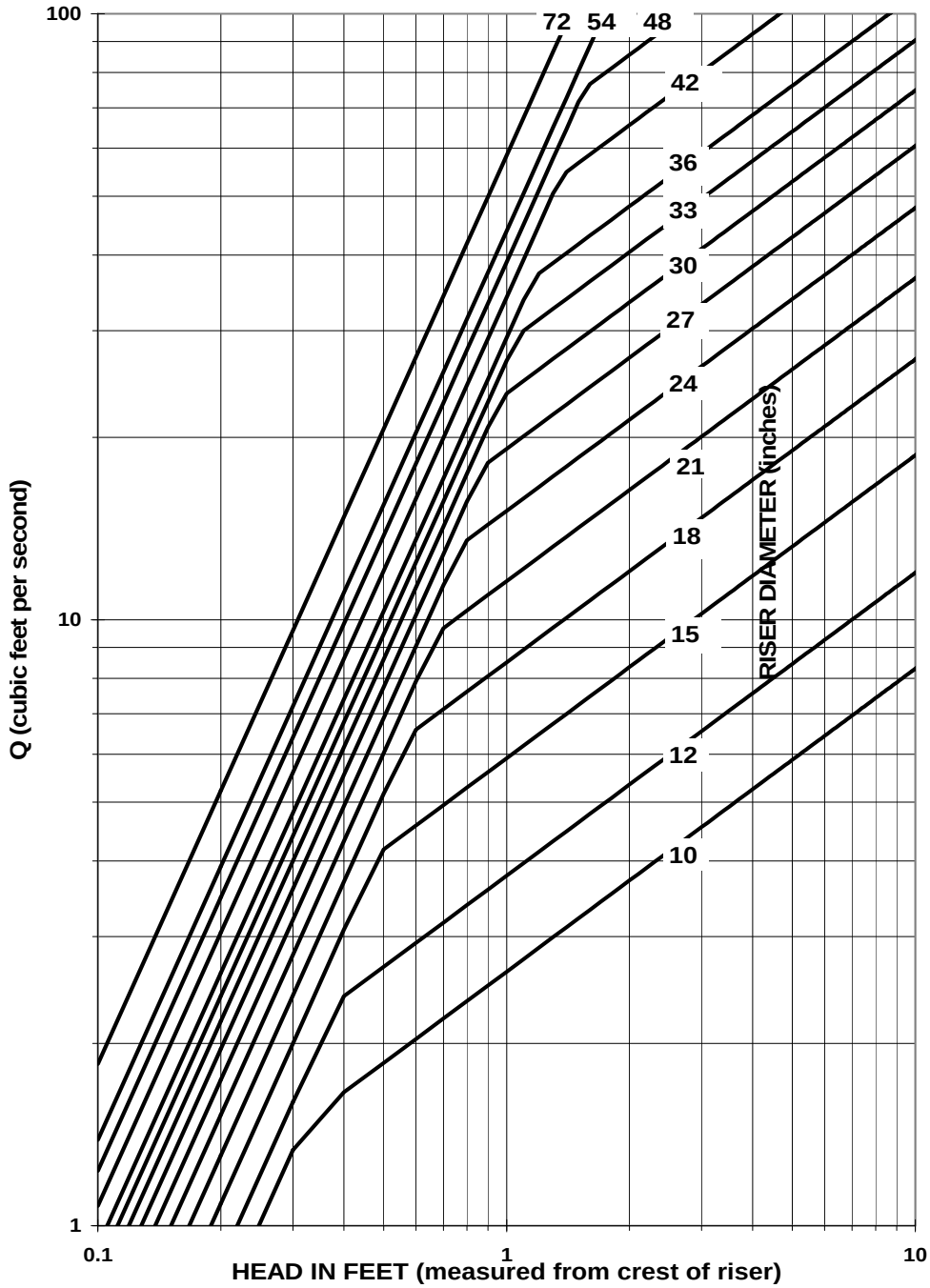
C_d Values, Non-Symmetrical

a (ft)	*b* (ft)				
	0.50	0.75	1.0	1.25	1.50
0.02	0.614	0.619	0.623	0.6245	0.625
0.05	0.612	0.617	0.621	0.623	0.6235
0.10	0.609	0.614	0.618	0.6195	0.620
0.15	0.607	0.6115	0.616	0.6175	0.618
0.20	0.605	0.610	0.614	0.6155	0.616
0.25	0.604	0.6085	0.6125	0.614	0.6145
0.30	0.603	0.608	0.612	0.6135	0.614

Riser Overflow

The nomograph in Figure 5.3.4.H may be used to determine the head (in feet) above a riser of given diameter and for a given flow (usually the 100-year peak flow for developed conditions).

FIGURE 5.3.4.H RISER INFLOW CURVES



$Q_{weir}=9.739\ DH^{3/2}$

$Q_{orifice}=3.782\ D^2H^{1/2}$

Q in cfs, D and H in feet

Slope change occurs at weir-orifice transition

5.3.5 PARKING LOT DETENTION

Private parking lots may be used to provide additional detention volume for runoff events greater than the 2-year runoff event provided all of the following conditions are met:

1. The depth of water detained does not exceed 1 foot at any location in the parking lot for runoff events up to and including the 100-year event.
2. The gradient of the parking lot area subject to ponding is 1 percent or greater.
3. The emergency overflow path is identified and noted on the engineering plan, and the path complies with Core Requirements #1 and #2 (see Sections 1.2.1 and 1.2.2).
4. Fire lanes used for emergency equipment are free of ponding water for all runoff events up to and including the 100-year event.

Note: Flows may be backed up into parking lots by the control structure (i.e., the parking lot need not function as a flow-through detention pond).

5.3.6 ROOF DETENTION

Detention ponding on roofs of structures may be used to meet flow control requirements provided all of the following conditions are met:

1. The roof support structure is analyzed by a structural engineer to address the weight of ponded water.
2. The roof area subject to ponding is sufficiently waterproofed to achieve a minimum service life of 30 years.
3. The minimum pitch of the roof area subject to ponding is $^1/_4$-inch per foot.
4. An overflow system is included in the design to safely convey the 100-year peak flow from the roof.
5. A mechanism is included in the design to allow the ponding area to be drained for maintenance purposes or in the event the restrictor device is plugged.

5.3.7 SIMPLE DETENTION POND FOR CLEARED AREAS

This simplified alternative to the standard detention pond (Section 5.3.1) may be used to satisfy the flow control facility requirement only for a conversion of forest to pasture or grass, provided that **all of the following conditions are met**:

1. The **total area draining to any one pond** must be no larger than 3 acres and must consist primarily of vegetated land (e.g., forest, meadow, pasture, grass, garden, crops, etc.) free of impervious surface. If more than 3 acres of cleared area (i.e., area converted from forest to pasture/grass) is proposed to be served, multiple simple detention ponds must be used.
2. The area served by the pond must not be located within a **Flood Problem Flow Control Area** as determined in Section 1.2.3.1.
3. The pond must not drain to a ***severe erosion problem*** or a ***severe flooding problem*** as defined in Section 1.2.2, Core Requirement #2.
4. The pond must be constructed in accordance with the **design criteria** and **methods of analysis** specified in this section.

5.3.7.1 DESIGN CRITERIA

Typical details of the simple detention pond are shown in Figure 5.3.7.A (p. 5-51) and Figure 5.3.7.B (p. 5-52).

General

1. The **dispersal trench** at the outlet from the storage pond may not be placed closer than 50 feet from the top of slopes, 20% or greater.
2. The pond, berm, and dispersal trench must be **fenced** to prevent livestock disturbance.
3. **Runoff discharge toward *landslide hazard areas*** must be evaluated by a geotechnical engineer or a qualified geologist. The discharge point may not be placed on or above slopes greater than 20% or above ***erosion hazard areas*** without evaluation by a geotechnical engineer or qualified geologist and DDES approval.

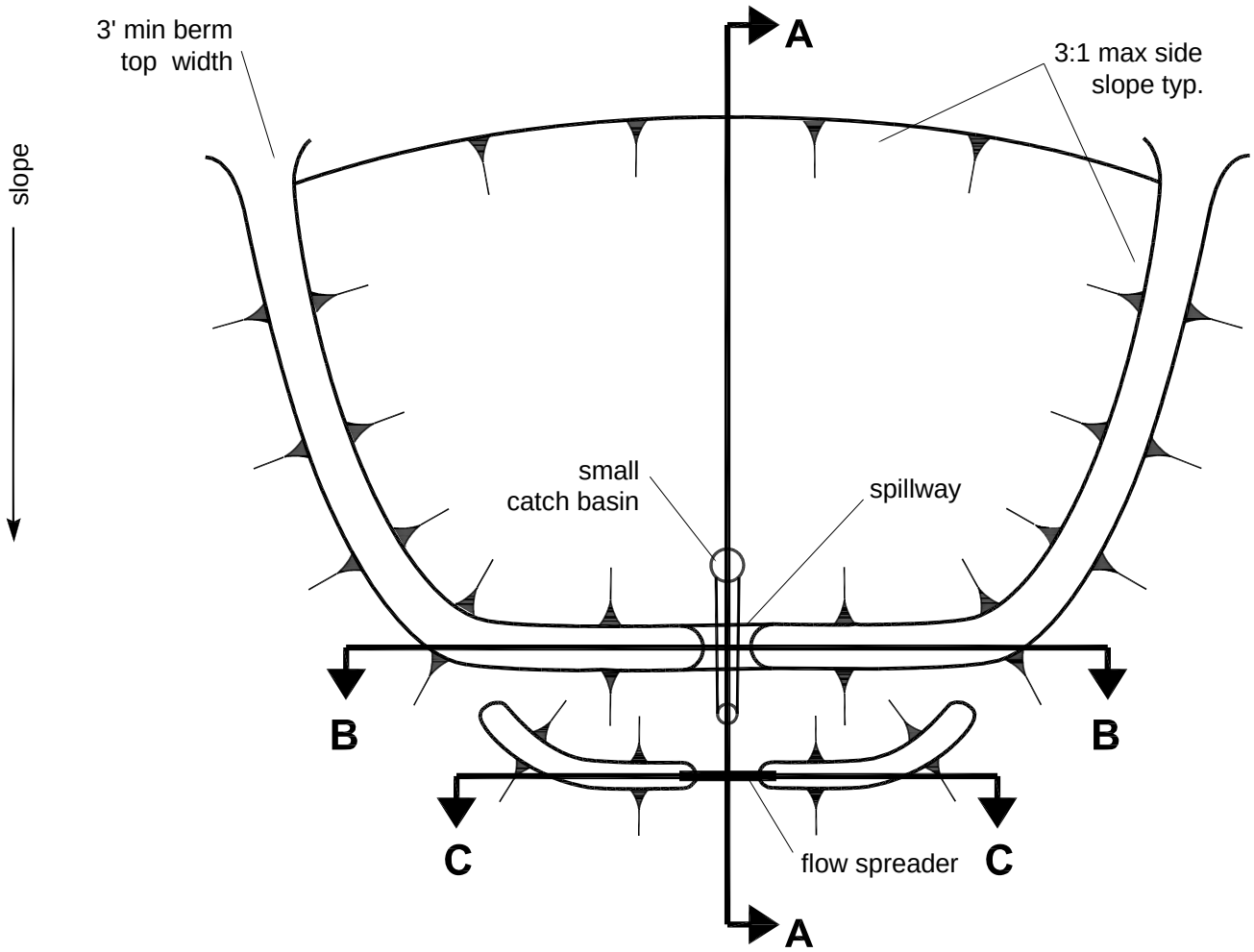
Berming and Excavation

1. To the extent feasible, the pond shall be excavated into the ground with **minimal berming** on the downslope (outlet) end of the pond. An excavated pond is easier to construct and maintain and is less likely to cause problems during severe storm events.
2. Where berms are used, the **top of berm** shall be a minimum of 3 feet wide. The soil shall be **well compacted** and planted with an erosion-control seed mix as soon as possible.
3. Whether created by excavation or berming, all pond **side-slopes shall be gently sloped**, no steeper than 3 feet horizontal per 1 foot of vertical drop.
4. Prior to constructing the berm, the **underlying ground** shall be scrapped clean of organic material.
5. At a minimum, a **hand-level** shall be used to ensure the berm and outlet structure are constructed at the correct relative elevations.
6. The bottom 6 inches of the pond shall retain standing water in the pond between storms to create a **permanent pool**. The volume of the permanent pool is not counted towards the required detention volume, which is above the permanent pool.
7. The **water depth of required detention volume** above the permanent pool should average about 18 inches and must be no deeper than 24 inches.

Simple Outlet Control Structure

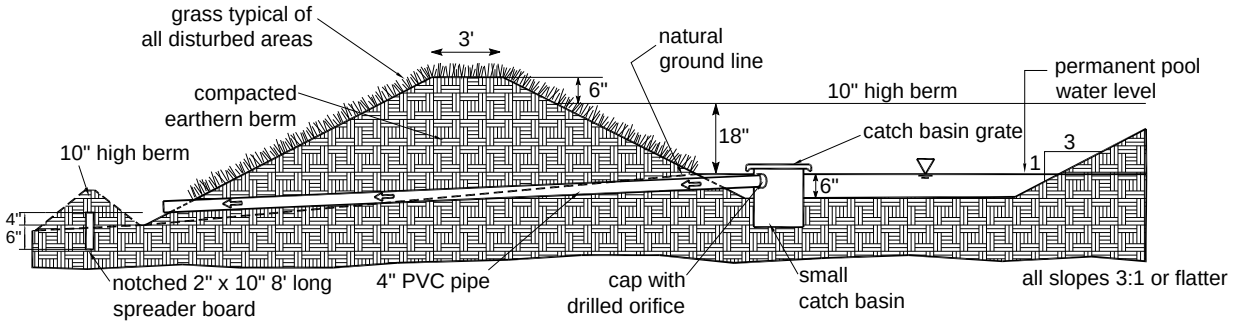
1. **Materials Required:**
   a) PVC pipe, 4 inch diameter or greater as needed.
   b) PVC pipe cap.
   c) Small plastic or concrete catch basin with grate, minimum 12-inch width.
2. **Construction Method:**
   a) Drill or cut a hole just below the rim of the catch basin, sized to connect the PVC pipe.
   b) Install the catch basin into the bottom of the pond. The catch basin should be located within a few feet of the berm at the downslope end of the pond. The top of catch basin must be a minimum of 6 inches above the bottom of the pond to create the permanent pool. Align the hole in the downslope direction of discharge.
   c) Dig a trench for the pipe from the catch basin to the location of the flow spreader.
   d) Connect the PVC pipe to the catch basin. PVC pipe should extend about 4 inches into the basin.
   e) Drill the appropriate size hole into the PVC cap. Clean hole to remove burrs, without increasing the size of the opening.
   f) Connect the drilled cap to the end of the PVC pipe extending into the catch basin.
   g) Extend the PVC pipe to the location of the flow spreader. The pipe shall be laid with a slight slope towards the flow spreader. A slope of ¼ inch per foot of pipe is recommended and should not exceed 2 inches per foot.
   h) Backfill the trench over the PVC pipe and compact well. Avoid placing large and/or sharp rocks in the trench to minimize potential for damaging the pipe during compaction.

FIGURE 5.3.7.A SIMPLE DETENTION POND - PLAN VIEW

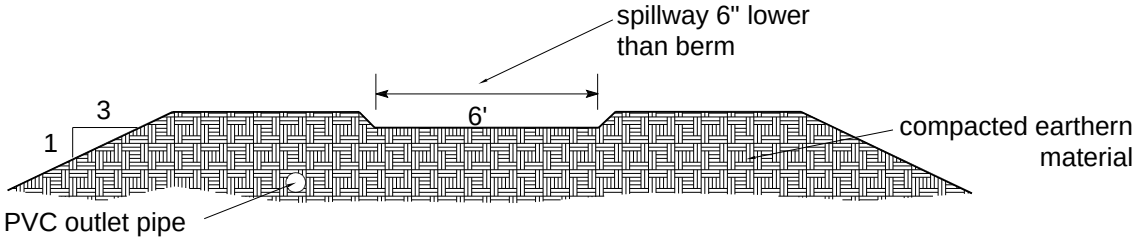


PLAN VIEW
NTS

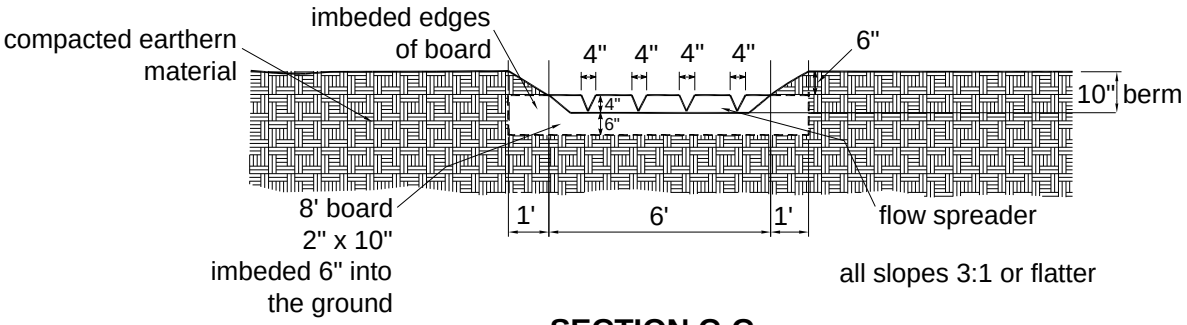
FIGURE 5.3.7.B SIMPLE DETENTION POND – SECTION VIEWS



SECTION A-A
NTS



SECTION B-B
NTS



SECTION C-C
NTS

5.3.7.2 METHODS OF ANALYSIS

The detention volume and orifice sizing for the **simple detention pond** shall be determined as described in this section. This determination is based on where the pond is located within the County and how much cleared area (i.e., area of forest converted to pasture or grass) is served by the pond.

Detention Volume

The map in Figure 5.3.7.C (p. 5-54) provides the minimum pond volume required based on 10,000 square feet of cleared area. To determine the total pond volume required, locate the ***project site*** on the map and multiply the number from the map by the amount of cleared area that will be served by the pond (if the cleared area is measured in units of square feet, remember to divide the actual area by 10,000 before multiplying with map value). If the ***project site*** is located between the lines shown on the map, select the closest line to the ***project site***. If located midway between two lines, the average value may be used.

To determine if the constructed pond has adequate storage, the pond area must be determined by field measurements. If all side slopes are at 3H:1V or flatter, the pond's bottom area may be used to determine the pond volume, V_t, above the permanent pool using the following equation. The resulting volume, V_t, must be equal to or greater than the required volume determined from Figure 5.3.7.C.

$$V_t = 1.5\, A_b + 3.4\, P \qquad (5\text{-}9)$$

where V_t = total pond volume available (cu ft)
A_b = bottom area of pond (sq ft)
P = bottom perimeter of pond (ft)

A more accurate volume determination can be made with field measurements and area calculations taken at two elevations. The first elevation at which the pond area is measured is at the top of the permanent pool. The second area measurement is taken at the overflow spillway elevation.

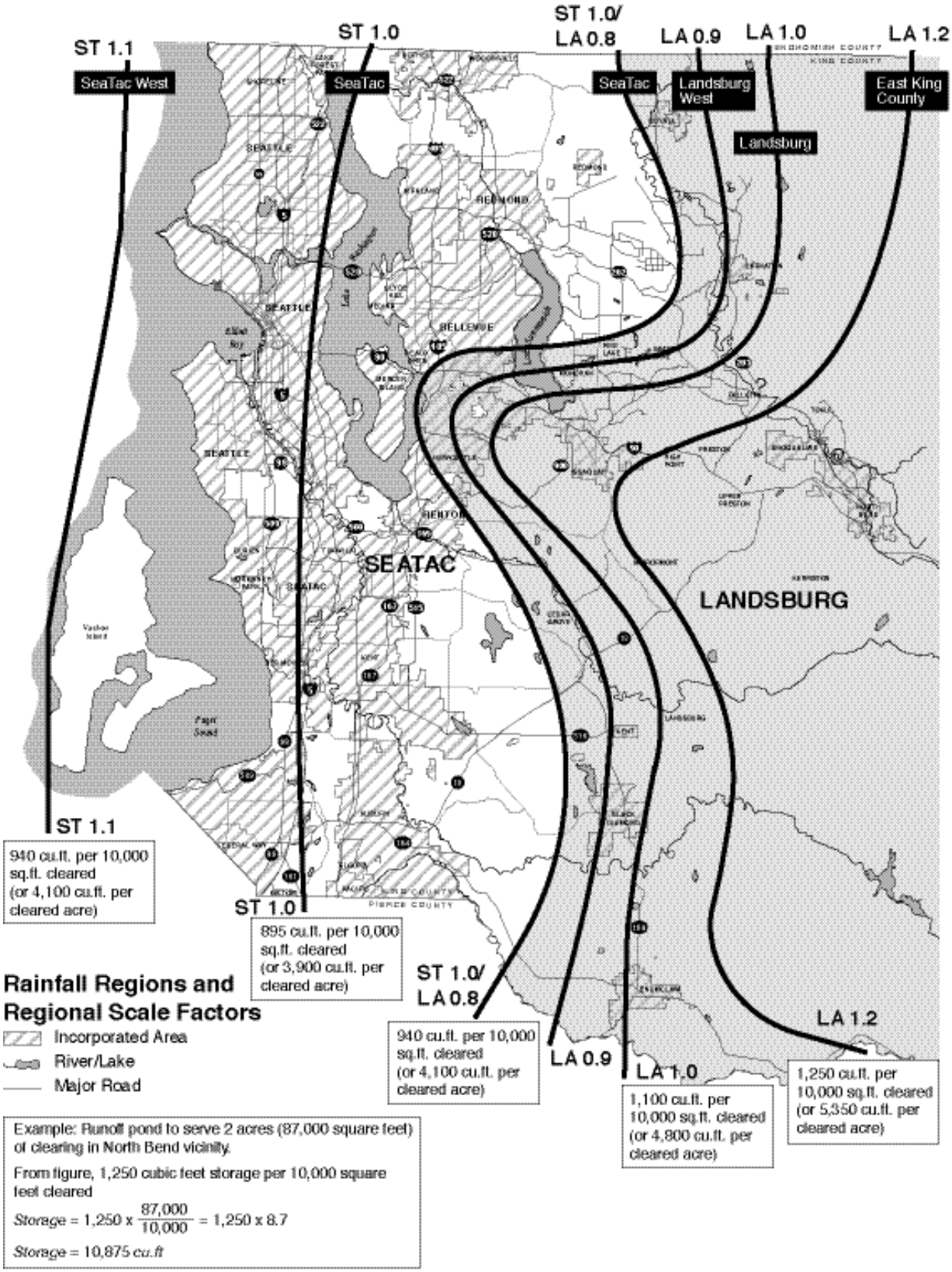
$$V_t = d\,\frac{(A_w + A_b)}{2} \qquad (5\text{-}10)$$

where V_t = total pond volume available (cu ft)
A_w = area of pond (sq ft) measured at the lowest elevation of the overflow spillway (A_b)
A_b = area of pond (sq ft) measured at the top of the permanent pool
d = depth of reservoir (ft) = 1.5 feet

Orifice Sizing

Figure 5.3.7.D provides the orifice diameter to be drilled into the PVC cap. If the orifice diameter matches the PVC pipe diameter, no cap is required. Otherwise, the PVC pipe diameter must be greater than the required orifice diameter. If the ***project site*** is located between the lines shown on the map, either select the closest line to the ***project site*** or interpolate between the two values.

FIGURE 5.3.7.C SIMPLE DETENTION POND - MINIMUM VOLUME



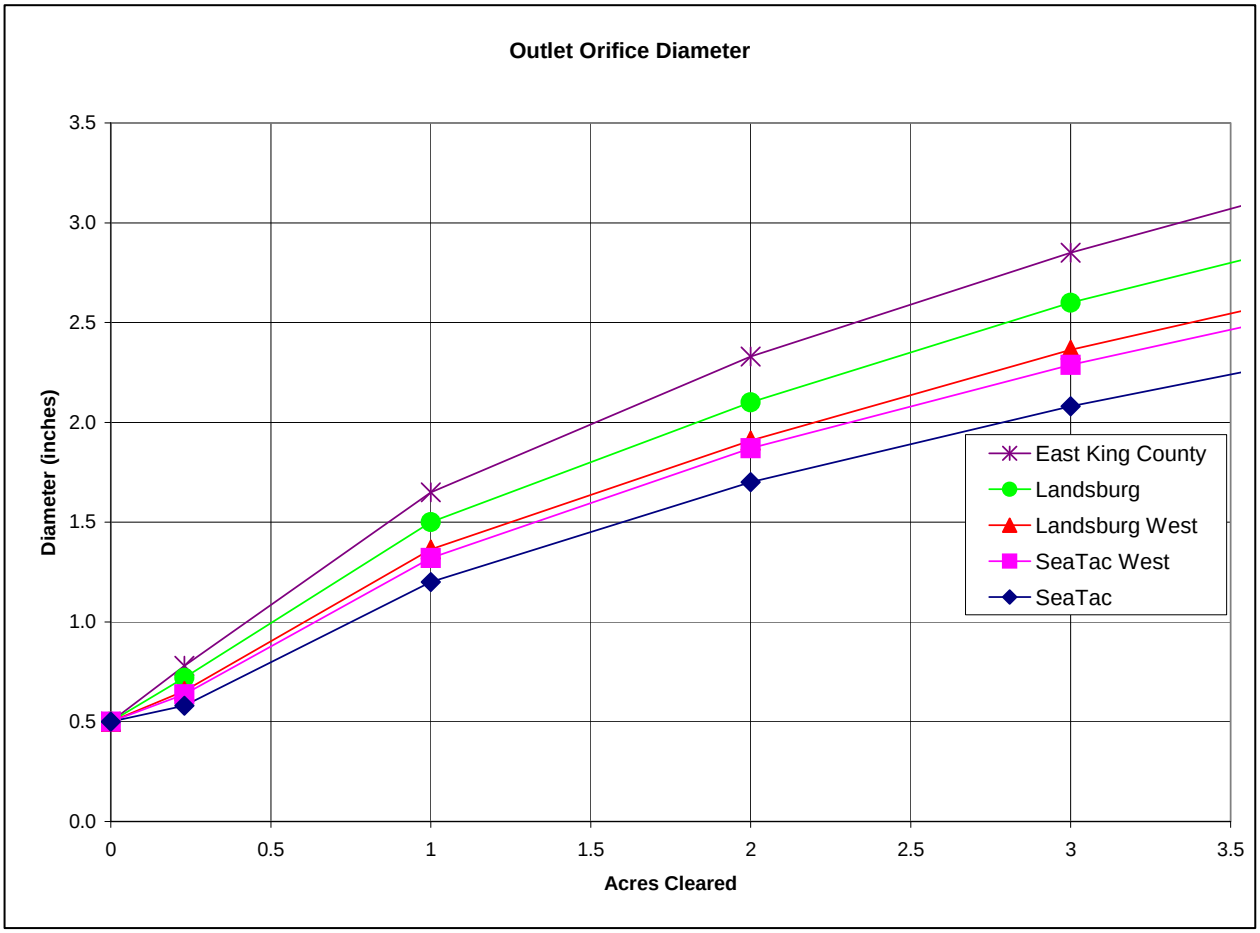
Example: Runoff pond to serve 2 acres (87,000 square feet) of clearing in North Bend vicinity.

From figure, 1,250 cubic feet storage per 10,000 square feet cleared

$$Storage = 1{,}250 \times \frac{87{,}000}{10{,}000} = 1{,}250 \times 8.7$$

Storage = 10,875 *cu.ft*

FIGURE 5.3.7.D SIMPLE DETENTION POND - ORIFICE SIZE



5.4 INFILTRATION FACILITIES

This section presents the methods, criteria, and details for design and analysis of infiltration facilities. These facilities are used where soils are suitable for soaking the increased runoff from development into the ground. Such facilities usually have a detention volume component to allow for temporary storage of runoff while it is being infiltrated. This detention volume is typically dependent on the infiltration capacity of the soils and the required facility performance.

There are five types of infiltration facilities allowed for use in complying with Core Requirement #3, "Flow Control": infiltration ponds, infiltration tanks, infiltration vaults, infiltration trenches, and small infiltration basins. In general, ponds are preferred because of the ease of maintenance and the water quality treatment that surface soil and vegetation provide. Tanks and trenches are useful where site constraints prevent use of a pond, and small infiltration basins are simple to design but have limited uses.

The information presented in this section is organized as follows:

Section 5.4.1, "General Requirements for Infiltration Facilities"

Section 5.4.2, "Infiltration Ponds"
"Design Criteria," Section 5.4.2.1 (p. 5-65)
"Methods of Analysis," Section 5.4.2.2 (p. 5-66)

Section 5.4.3, "Infiltration Tanks"
"Design Criteria," Section 5.4.3.1 (p. 5-68)
"Methods of Analysis," Section 5.4.3.2 (p. 5-69)

Section 5.4.4, "Infiltration Vaults"
"Design Criteria," Section 5.4.4.1 (p. 5-71)
"Methods of Analysis," Section 5.4.4.2 (p. 5-72)

Section 5.4.5, "Infiltration Trenches"
"Design Criteria," Section 5.4.5.1 (p. 5-73)
"Methods of Analysis," Section 5.4.5.2 (p. 5-73)

Section 5.4.7, "Small Infiltration Basins"
"Design Criteria," Section 5.4.7.1 (p. 5-76).

5.4.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR INFILTRATION FACILITIES

This section presents the design requirements generally applicable to all infiltration facilities. Included are the general requirements for determining acceptable soil conditions, determining infiltration rates, and providing overflow protection, spill control, presettling, groundwater protection, protection from upstream erosion, and construction.

❑ SOILS

The applicant must demonstrate through infiltration testing, soil logs, and the written opinion of a geotechnical engineer that sufficient permeable soil exists at the proposed facility location to allow construction of a properly functioning infiltration facility.

The basic requirement is a minimum of 3 feet of permeable soil below the bottom of the facility (bottom of pond or excavation for tank) and at least 3 feet between the bottom of the facility and the maximum wet-season water table. Test pits or borings shall extend at least 5 feet below the bottom of the infiltration

facility, and at least one test hole should reach the water table. If the water table is very deep, the test hole need not extend more than one-fourth the maximum width of the pond below the bottom of a pond, or more than 5 feet below the bottom of a tank. If there is any question about the actual wet-season water table elevation, measurements shall be made during the period when the water level is expected to be at a maximum.

Any requirements associated with impacts to an ***erosion hazard area***, ***steep slope hazard area***, or ***landslide hazard area*** should also be addressed in the soil study.

The geotechnical engineer shall provide a report stating whether the location is suitable for the proposed infiltration facility, and shall recommend a design infiltration rate (see "Design Infiltration Rate" below).

❑ MEASURED INFILTRATION RATES

Infiltration rate tests are used to help estimate the maximum sub-surface vertical infiltration rate of the soil below a proposed infiltration facility (e.g., pond or tank) or a closed depression. The tests are intended to simulate the physical process that will occur when the facility is in operation; therefore, a saturation period is required to approximate the soil moisture conditions that may exist prior to the onset of a major winter runoff event.

Testing Procedure

1. Excavations shall be made to the bottom elevation of the proposed infiltration facility. The measured infiltration rate of the underlying soil shall be determined using either the **EPA falling head percolation test procedure** (*Onsite Wastewater Treatment and Disposal Systems*, EPA, 1980; see Reference Section 6-A), the **double ring infiltrometer test** (ASTM D3385), a single ring at least 3 feet in diameter, or large scale Pilot Infiltration Test (PIT) as described in the August 2001 Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington. Large single ring and PIT tests have been shown to more closely match actual full-scale facility performance than smaller test methods.
2. The test hole or apparatus shall be filled with water and maintained at depths above the test elevation for the **saturation periods** specified for the appropriate test.
3. Following the saturation period, the rate shall be determined in accordance with the specified test procedures, with a **head** of 6 inches of water.
4. The design engineer shall perform sufficient tests to determine a representative infiltration rate. At a minimum, three small-scale **tests** shall be performed for each proposed infiltration facility location, and at least 2 tests per acre (minimum of 4 tests) shall be performed for a closed depression. If large-scale tests are performed, the number of tests may be reduced at the discretion of the review engineer.
5. A minimum of two **soils logs** shall be obtained for each tank and for each 10,000 square feet (plan view area) of proposed pond infiltration surface area. Soils shall be logged for a minimum of 5 feet below the bottom of each proposed infiltration facility. The logs shall describe the SCS series of the soil, indicate the textural class of the soil horizons throughout the depth of the log, note any evidence of high groundwater level (such as mottling), and estimate the maximum groundwater elevation, if within the limits of the log.

❑ DESIGN INFILTRATION RATE

In the past, many infiltration facilities have been built that have not performed as the designer intended. This has resulted in flooding and substantial public expenditures to correct problems. Monitoring of actual facility performance has shown that the full-scale infiltration rate is far lower than the rate determined by small-scale testing. Actual measured facility rates of 10% of the small-scale test rate have been seen. It is clear that great conservatism in the selection of design rates is needed, particularly where conditions are less than ideal. The design infiltration rate shall be determined using an analytical groundwater model to investigate the effects of the local hydrologic conditions on facility performance. Since this analysis may be excessively costly for small projects, the simplified method described below

may be used in lieu of groundwater modeling for ***single family residential projects*** (excluding plats and short plats of 5 or more lots), ***agricultural projects***, and commercial projects with ***project sites*** of less than 1 acre.

Groundwater modeling (mounding analysis) of the proposed infiltration facility shall be done using the design infiltration rate and the estimated maximum groundwater elevation determined for the proposed facility location. MODRET or an equivalent model must be used unless DDES approves an alternative analytic technique. Developed condition hydrographs should be exported from the KCRTS model of the ***project site*** for the groundwater mounding analysis. Test hydrographs should include at a minimum the full year 8 synthetic record and at least one other runoff event that is the highest volume, peak-flow event identified through KCRTS analysis of the infiltration facility. Note that an iterative process may be required beginning with an estimated design rate, KCRTS sizing, then groundwater model testing.

Simplified Method

A simplified method may be used for determining the preliminary design infiltration rate by applying correction factors to the measured infiltration rate. The correction factors account for uncertainties in testing, depth to the water table or impervious strata, infiltration receptor geometry, and long-term reductions in permeability due to biological activity and accumulation of fines. Equation 5-9 has been developed to account for these factors. This equation estimates the **maximum** design infiltration rate (I_{design}); additional reduction in rate beyond that produced by the equation may be appropriate. Note that the design infiltration rate I_{design} **must not exceed 20 inches/hour.**

$$I_{design} = I_{measured} \times F_{testing} \times F_{geometry} \times F_{plugging} \qquad (5\text{-}11)$$

Correction factor $F_{testing}$ accounts for uncertainties in the testing methods. For the EPA method, $F_{testing}$ = 0.30; for the ASTM D3385 method or large-scale testing, $F_{testing}$ = 0.50

$F_{geometry}$ accounts for the influence of facility geometry and depth to the water table or impervious strata on the actual infiltration rate. A shallow water table or impervious layer will reduce the effective infiltration rate of a large pond, but this will not be reflected in a small scale test. Clearly, a large pond built over a thin pervious stratum with a shallow water table will not function as well as the same pond built over a thick pervious stratum with a deep water table. $F_{geometry}$ must be between 0.25 and 1.0 as determined by the following equation:

$$F_{geometry} = 4\,D/W + 0.05 \qquad (5\text{-}12)$$

where D = depth from the bottom of the proposed facility to the maximum wet-season water table or nearest impervious layer, whichever is less
W = width of the facility

$F_{plugging}$ accounts for reductions in infiltration rates over the long term due to plugging of soils. This factor is:

- 0.7 for loams and sandy loams
- 0.8 for fine sands and loamy sands
- 0.9 for medium sands
- 1.0 for coarse sands or cobbles, or any soil type in an infiltration facility preceded by a water quality facility.

❑ PERFORMANCE TESTING

Where the design is based on the Simplified Method, before final construction approval of the facility by King County, the completed facility must be tested and monitored to demonstrate that the facility performs as designed. If the facility performance is not satisfactory, the facility will need to be modified or expanded as needed in order to make it function as designed. Where a groundwater mounding analysis was used in the design, small-scale infiltration testing in the bottom of the facility to demonstrate that the soils in the constructed facility are representative of the design assumptions is required.

❑ 100-YEAR OVERFLOW CONVEYANCE

An overflow route shall be identified for stormwater flows that overtop the facility when infiltration capacity is exceeded or the facility becomes plugged and fails. The overflow route must be able to safely convey the 100-year developed peak flow to the downstream conveyance system or other acceptable discharge point in accordance with conveyance requirements in Section 1.2.4.

Where the entire ***project site*** is located within a closed depression (such as some gravel pits), the requirement to identify and analyze a 100-year overflow pathway may be waived by DDES if (1) an additional correction factor of 0.5 is used in calculating the **design infiltration rate**, (2) the facility is sized to fully infiltrate the 100-year runoff event, and (3) the facility is not bermed on any side. **Intent:** to address situations where the infiltration facility may be a highly permeable onsite closed depression, such as a gravel pit, where all stormwater is currently, and will remain, fully infiltrated.

❑ SPILL CONTROL DEVICE

All infiltration facilities must have a spill control device upstream of the facility to capture oil or other floatable contaminants before they enter the infiltration facility. The spill control device shall be a **tee section** per Figure 5.3.4.A (p. 5-39) or an equivalent device approved by DDES. If a tee section is used, the top of the riser shall be set above the 100-year overflow elevation to prevent oils from entering the infiltration facility.

❑ PRESETTLING

Presettling must be provided before stormwater enters the infiltration facility. This requirement may be met by either of the following:

- A water quality facility from the Basic WQ menu (this alternative is recommended; see Section 6.1.1 for facility options).
- A presettling pond or vault with a treatment volume equal to 0.75 times the runoff from the mean annual storm V_r (see Section 6.4.1.1 for information on computing V_r.).

If water in the WQ facility or presettling facility will be in direct contact with the soil, the facility must be lined according to the liner requirements in Section 6.2.4. If the presettling facility is a vault, design of the vault shall be the same as required for presettling cells in sand filter vaults (see Section 6.5.3.2).

The settling pond or vault shall be designed to pool water 4 to 6 feet deep with an overflow capacity sufficient to pass the developed 100-year peak flow. Settling facilities must have a length-to-width ratio of at least 3:1. The inlet(s) and outlet should be situated to maximize the length of travel through the settling pond or vault. Berms or baffles may be used to lengthen the travel distance if ***site*** constraints limit the inlet/outlet placement. Inlets should be designed to minimize velocity and turbulence. Roof runoff need not be treated before entering an infiltration facility.

❑ PROTECTION FROM UPSTREAM EROSION

Erosion must be controlled during construction of areas upstream of infiltration facilities since sediment-laden runoff can permanently impair the functioning of the system. Erosion control measures must be designed, installed and maintained with great care. Various strategies may be employed to protect infiltration facilities during construction, as described below.

Projects may be phased to limit clearing and minimize the time that soils are exposed. An alternative to this approach is to serve the undeveloped area with a large sediment trap on an undeveloped tract with the trap left in place until all clearing and construction is complete and all permanent landscaping is in place. See *Erosion and Sediment Control Standards* (detached Appendix D) for design details. At the completion of all construction, the sediment trap must be cleaned out (taking care that no sediment enters the drainage system) and filled in, and the flow routed to the permanent drainage system.

Another alternative for subdivisions is to stage excavation of the pond as follows:

1. Bottom elevation of the pond prior to paving of plat roadways: 3 feet above the final pond bottom elevation. At this stage of rough grading, the facility may be used to meet sediment retention requirements.
2. Bottom elevation of the pond during and after paving and prior to construction of 80% of the houses: 18 inches above the final pond bottom elevation with upstream sediment retention, as needed. At this stage, the pond will serve as an interim flow control facility pending final stabilization of the ***site***. Note that KCC 9.04.090 requires that flow control facilities be operational prior to the construction of any improvements.

❑ FACILITY CONSTRUCTION GUIDELINES

Excavation of infiltration facilities should be done with a backhoe working at "arms length" to **minimize disturbance and compaction of the completed infiltration surface**. If the bottom of the facility will be less than three feet below final grade, the facility area should be cordoned off so that construction traffic does not traverse the area. The exposed soil should be inspected by a soils engineer after excavation to confirm that soil conditions are suitable.

Two simple **staff gages for measuring sediment depth** should be installed at opposite ends of the bottom of ponds. The gages may consist of 1-inch pipe driven at least one foot into the soil in the bottom of the pond, with 12 inches of the pipe protruding above grade.

❑ OFFSITE GROUNDWATER LEVEL IMPACTS

Potential impacts to groundwater levels off the ***project site*** should be considered. In general, replacing vegetation with impervious cover will increase the total annual volume of runoff generated on a ***site***. Infiltrating this runoff will tend to increase ground water recharge, which may affect groundwater levels offsite. The impacts of infiltration could include increased water to ***landslide hazard areas***, increased groundwater resources available, increased water levels in closed depressions, and higher groundwater levels. Higher groundwater levels offsite could result in increased flooding of basements, or impaired functioning of infiltration systems resulting in surface water flooding. Evidence of offsite groundwater flooding problems should be examined during the offsite analysis required under Core Requirement #2 (see Section 1.2.2).

In general, groundwater level impacts will be very difficult to reduce, and there are no specific requirements that apply in many cases. The design engineer is encouraged to consider whether there are any feasible approaches to reduce groundwater flooding impacts, such as moving facilities or changing facility geometry, retaining forest cover, minimizing impervious coverage, or fixing downstream problems.

❑ GROUNDWATER PROTECTION

The protection of groundwater quality is recognized as an issue of greater concern than in the past, and groundwater protection standards are changing rapidly. Increased safeguards are often required. The applicant should check the Critical Aquifer Recharge (CARA) map, sole source aquifer designations, and wellhead protection areas mapped by the Washington State Department of Health, to determine if the project lies within a ***groundwater protection area*.**

The **groundwater protection requirements** of this manual set forth in Chapter 1 call for implementing one of the following actions when infiltrating runoff from pollution-generating surfaces:

1. Provide water quality treatment prior to infiltration as specified in Core Requirement #8 and Special Requirement #5, or
2. Demonstrate that the soil beneath the infiltration facility has properties that reduce the risk of groundwater contamination from typical stormwater runoff. Such properties are defined below depending on whether the project is located outside of or within a ***groundwater protection area***.

Note: The soil properties given below are primarily for groundwater protection and do not necessarily satisfy other protection needs. For example, projects infiltrating runoff within a quarter-mile of a Sensitive Lake may still be required to provide water quality treatment to meet the resource protection needs of the Sensitive Lake. See Core Requirement #8 (Section 1.2.8) for additional WQ requirements.

Soil Properties Required for Groundwater Protection Outside of Groundwater Protection Areas

For infiltration facilities located outside of ***groundwater protection areas***, acceptable groundwater protection is provided by the soil if the first two feet or more of the soil beneath the infiltration facility has a *cation exchange capacity*[9] greater than 5 and an *organic content*[10] greater than 0.5%, AND meets **one of the following** criteria:

a) The soil has a measured infiltration rate less than or equal to 9 inches per hour[11] or is logged as one of the classes from the **USDA Textural Triangle** (Figure 5.4.1.A, p. 5-63), excluding sand and loamy sand (*Note: soil texture classes other than sand and loamy sand may be assumed to have an infiltration rate of less than or equal to 9 inches per hour without doing field testing to measure rates.*[12]), OR

b) The soil is composed of less than 25% gravel by weight with at least 75% of the soil passing the #4 sieve. The portion passing the #4 sieve must meet one of the following gradations:

- At least 50% must pass the #40 sieve and at least 2% must pass the #100 sieve, or
- At least 25% must pass the #40 sieve and at least 5% must pass the #200 sieve.

Note: These soil properties must be met by the native soils onsite. Soil may not be imported in order to meet groundwater protection criteria without an approved adjustment.

---

[9] *Cation exchange capacity* shall be tested using EPA Laboratory Method 9081.

[10] *Organic content* shall be measured on a dry weight basis using method ASTM D2974 for the fraction passing the #40 sieve.

[11] See discussion of the measured infiltration rate on page 5-58.

[12] Criteria (a) is based on the relationship between infiltration rates and soil texture. However, there are many other factors, such as high water table, presence of impervious strata or boulders close to the surface, etc., which also affect infiltration rate. When any such condition is suspected because soils are coarser than expected from the measured infiltration rate, a sieve analysis should be done to establish soil characteristics. The judgment of a geotechnical engineer, geologist or soil scientist shall determine whether a sieve analysis is warranted. The sieve analysis must meet Criteria (c) above to be considered protective.

Soil Properties Required within Groundwater Protection Areas

For projects located within ***groundwater protection areas***, acceptable groundwater protection is provided by the soil if the first two feet or more of the soil beneath the infiltration facility has a **cation exchange capacity** greater than 5 and an **organic content** greater than 0.5%, AND meets **one of the following** criteria:

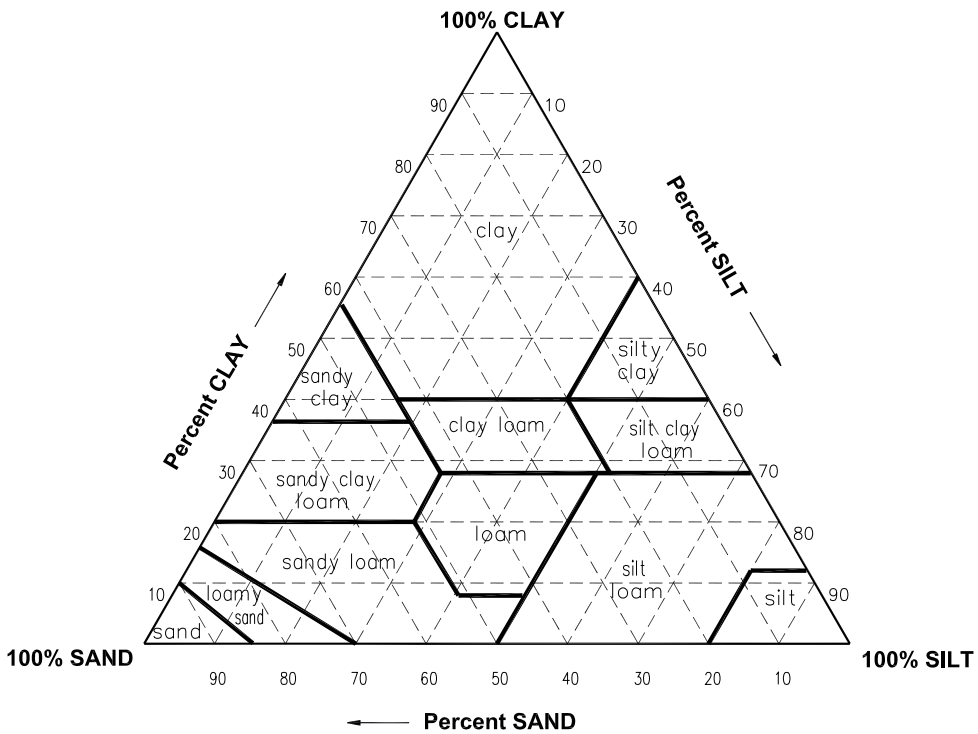
a) The soil has a **measured infiltration rate** less than or equal to **2.4 inches per hour** or is logged as one of the classes from the **USDA Textural Triangle** (Figure 5.4.1.A, p. 5-63), excluding sand, loamy sand, and sandy loam (*Note: soil triangle texture classes other than sand, loamy sand, and sandy loam may be assumed to have an infiltration rate of less than or equal to 2.4 inches per hour without doing field testing to measure rates.*[13]), OR

b) The soil has a measured infiltration rate less than or equal to 9 inches per hour, and it must be composed of less than 25% gravel by weight with at least 75% of the soil passing the #4 sieve. The portion passing the #4 sieve must meet one of the following gradations:

- At least 50% must pass the #40 sieve and at least 2% must pass the #100 sieve, or
- At least 25% must pass the #40 sieve and at least 5% must pass the #200 sieve.

Note: The above soil properties must be met by the native soils onsite. Soil may not be imported in order to meet groundwater protection criteria without an approved adjustment.

FIGURE 5.4.1.A USDA TEXTURAL TRIANGLE



[13] Concerns regarding Criteria (a) and the correspondence between the measured infiltration rate and soil textures are the same as discussed for projects outside sole-source aquifer areas.

Infiltration near Water Supply Wells

The design engineer should consider the following when designing infiltration facilities near water supply wells:

1. In no case should infiltration facilities be placed closer than 100 feet from drinking water wells and 200 feet from springs used for drinking water supplies. Where water supply wells exist nearby, it is the responsibility of the applicant's engineer to locate such wells, meet any applicable protection standards, and assess possible impacts of the proposed infiltration facility on groundwater quality. If negative impacts on an individual or community water supply are possible, additional runoff treatment must be included in the facility design, or relocation of the facility should be considered.
2. All infiltration facilities located within the one-year capture zone of any well should be preceded by a water quality treatment facility.

Infiltration near Steep Slopes and Landslide Hazard Areas

The following restrictions apply to the design of infiltration systems located near a slope steeper than 15%.

1. Infiltration facilities (excluding individual lot systems) shall be placed no closer to the top of slope than the distance equal to the total vertical height of the slope area that is steeper than 15%. Where infiltration facilities are proposed within 200 feet of a ***steep slope hazard area*** or a ***landslide hazard area***, a detailed geotechnical evaluation may be required.
2. Individual lot infiltration and dispersion systems rather than a centralized infiltration facility should be used to the extent feasible, except for lots immediately adjacent to a ***landslide hazard area***. The runoff from such lots should be discharged into a tightline system, if available, or other measures should be implemented as recommended by a geotechnical engineer, engineering geologist, or DDES staff geologist.

❑ UNDERGROUND INJECTION CONTROL WELL REGISTRATION

The Department of Ecology adopted revisions to Chapter 173-218 WAC, the Underground Injection Control (UIC) program rules, on January 3, 2006. The newly adopted revisions went into effect on February 3, 2006. These rules require the registration of new injection wells that manage stormwater. Information regarding these new regulations may be found at Ecology's Underground Injection Control Program website. In general, infiltration systems that have buried pipe, tanks, or vaults would be considered injection wells, but systems managing runoff only from single-family roofs are exempt. Open ponds are not considered injection wells.

5.4.2 INFILTRATION PONDS

Infiltration ponds may be constructed by excavating or constructing berms. See Figure 5.4.2.A (p. 5-67) for a typical detail.

5.4.2.1 DESIGN CRITERIA

General

The following criteria for ponds are in addition to the general requirements for infiltration facilities specified in Section 5.4.1:

1. The proposed **pond bottom** must be at least 3 feet above the seasonal high groundwater level and have at least 3 feet of permeable soil beneath the bottom.
2. Infiltration ponds are **not allowed on slopes greater than 25%** (4:1). A geotechnical analysis and report may be required if located on slopes steeper than 15% or within 200 feet of a ***steep slope hazard area*** or ***landslide hazard area***.
3. The infiltration surface **must be in native soil** (excavated at least one foot in depth).
4. **Maintenance access** shall be provided to both the presettling pond or vault (if provided) and the infiltration pond.
5. An **overflow structure** such as that shown in Figure 5.3.1.C (p. 5-28) shall be provided. In addition, infiltration ponds shall have an emergency spillway as required for detention ponds in Section 5.3.1.1 (p. 5-18).
6. The criteria for **general design**, side slopes, embankments, planting, maintenance access, access roads, fencing, signage, and right-of-way shall be the **same as for detention ponds** (see Section 5.3.1, p. 5-17), except as required for the infiltration design.

Setbacks

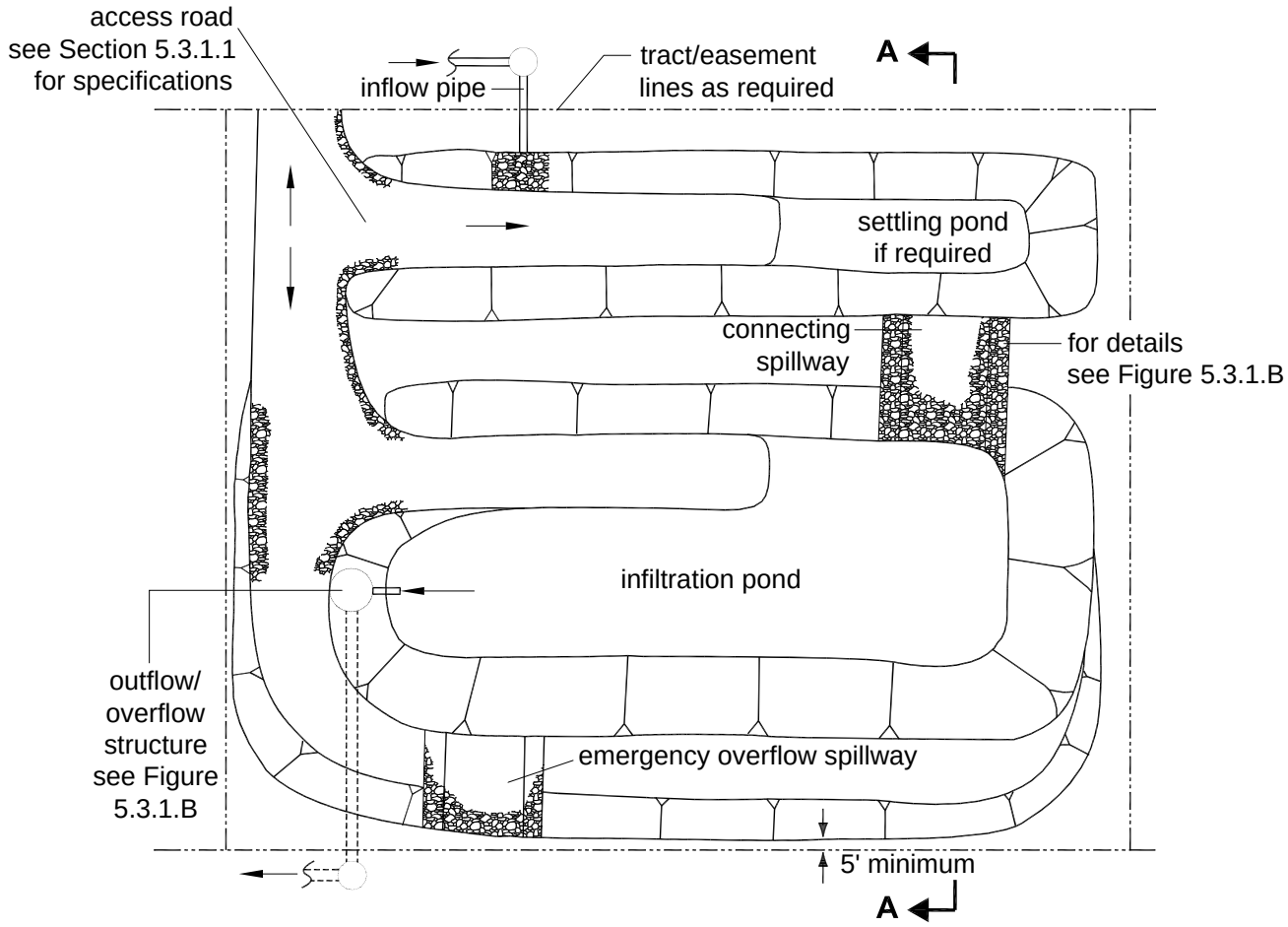
1. The **toe of the exterior slope** of an infiltration pond berm embankment shall be set back 5 feet from the tract, easement, or property line.
2. The tract, easement, or property line on an **infiltration pond cut slope** shall be set back 5 feet from the emergency overflow water surface.
3. The infiltration pond design water surface shall be set back 100 feet from proposed or existing **septic system drainfields**. This setback may be reduced to 30 feet with approval from the Seattle - King County Department of Public Health.
4. The infiltration pond design water surface shall be a minimum of 50 feet from any ***steep slope hazard area,*** unless an approved geotechnical report recommends closer placement. The facility soils report must address the potential impact of infiltration on the ***steep slope hazard area***.
5. **Building setback lines for adjacent internal lots** shall be 20 feet. These may be reduced to the minimum allowed by zoning if the facility soils report addresses the potential impacts of the facility phreatic surface on structures so located.
6. The infiltration pond design water surface shall be set back 20 feet from **external tract, easement or property lines**. This may be reduced to 5 feet if the facility soils report addresses the potential impacts of the facility phreatic surface on existing or future structures located on adjacent external lots.

5.4.2.2 METHODS OF ANALYSIS

The size of the pond shall be determined using the hydrologic analysis and routing methods described for detention ponds in Chapter 3. The **storage volume** in the pond is used to detain runoff prior to infiltration. The **stage/discharge curve** shall be developed from the design infiltration rate determined according to Section 5.4.1 (p. 5-57). At a given stage the discharge may be computed using the **area of pervious surface** through which infiltration will occur (which will vary with stage) multiplied by the recommended design infiltration rate (in appropriate units). Berms (which should be constructed of impervious soil such as till), maintenance access roads, and lined swales should not be included in the design pervious surface area.

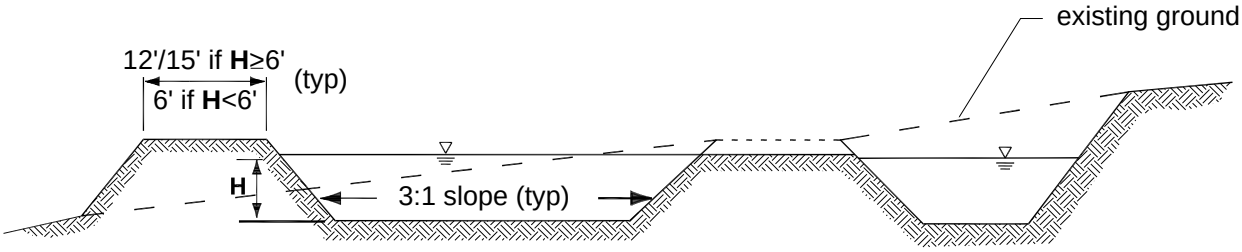
Note: The KCRTS program "Size a Facility" module can provide a preliminary pond volume for a given side slope, storage depth, design infiltration rate, and allowable release rate through a control structure (if applicable).

FIGURE 5.4.2.A TYPICAL INFILTRATION POND



PLAN VIEW

overflow/emergency overflow
provided per Section 5.3.1.1



SECTION A-A
NTS

NOTE:
Detail is a schematic representation only. Actual configuration will vary depending on specific site constraints and applicable design criteria.

5.4.3 INFILTRATION TANKS

Infiltration tanks consist of underground pipe that has been perforated to allow detained stormwater to be infiltrated. Figure 5.4.3.A (p. 5-70) shows a typical infiltration tank.

5.4.3.1 DESIGN CRITERIA

General

The following criteria for tanks are in addition to the general requirements for infiltration facilities specified in Section 5.4.1:

1. The proposed **tank trench bottom** shall be at least 3 feet above the seasonal high groundwater level and have at least 3 feet of **permeable soil** beneath the trench bottom.
2. Infiltration tanks are **not allowed on slopes greater than 25%** (4:1). A geotechnical analysis and report may be required if located on slopes steeper than 15% or within 200 feet of a ***steep slope hazard area*** or ***landslide hazard area***.
3. The infiltration surface elevation (bottom of trench) **must be in native soil** (excavated at least one foot in depth).
4. **Spacing between parallel tanks** shall be calculated using the distance from the lowest trench bottom to the maximum wet season ground water surface (D) and the design width of the trench for a single tank (W). The tank spacing $S = W^2/D$, where S is the centerline spacing between trenches (or tanks) in feet. S shall not be less than W, and S need not exceed 2W.
5. Tanks shall be **bedded and backfilled with washed drain rock** that extends at least 1 foot below the bottom of the tank, at least 2 feet but not more than 5 feet beyond the sides, and up to the top of the tank.
6. Drain rock (3 to $1^1/_2$ inches) shall be completely covered with **filter fabric** prior to backfilling.
7. The **perforations** (holes) in the tank must be one inch in diameter and located in the bottom half of the tank starting at an elevation of 6 inches above the invert of the tank. The number and spacing of the perforations should be sufficient to allow complete utilization of the available infiltration capacity of the soils with a safety factor of 2.0 without jeopardizing the structural integrity of the tank.
8. Infiltration tanks shall have an overflow structure equipped with a **solid bottom riser** (with clean-out gate) and outflow system for safely discharging overflows to the downstream conveyance system or another acceptable discharge point.
9. The criteria for **general design,** materials, structural stability, buoyancy, maintenance access, access roads, and right-of-way shall be the **same as for detention tanks** (see Section 5.3.2, p. 5-31), except for features needed to facilitate infiltration.

Setbacks

1. Tanks shall be set back 100 feet from proposed or existing **septic system drainfields**. This setback may be reduced to 30 feet with approval from the Seattle - King County Department of Public Health.
2. All tanks shall be a minimum of 50 feet from any ***steep slope hazard area***. The facility soils report must address the potential impact of infiltration on the ***steep slope hazard area***.
3. **Building setback lines for adjacent internal lots** shall be 20 feet. These may be reduced to the minimum allowed by zoning if the facility soils report addresses the potential impacts of the facility phreatic surface on structures so located.

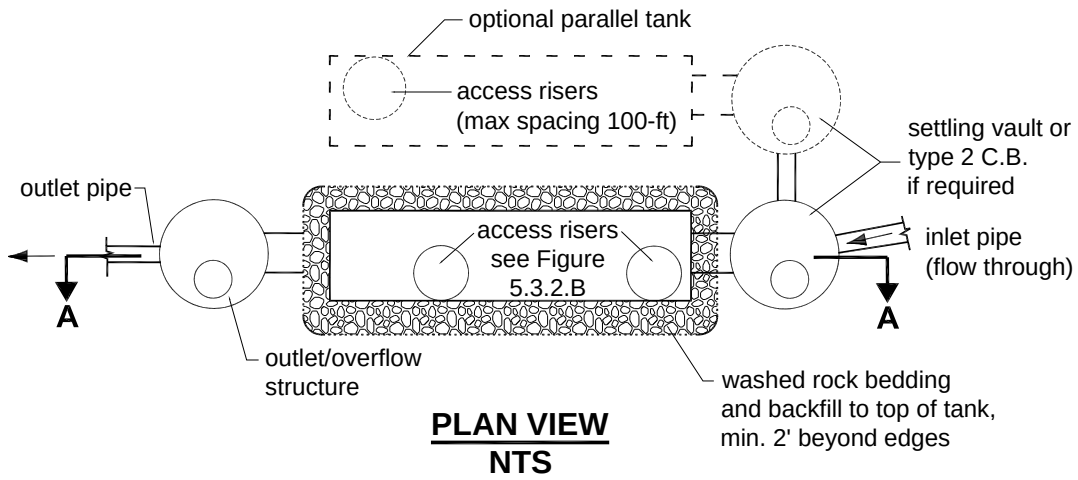
4. Infiltration tanks shall be set back 20 feet from **external tract, easement, or property lines**. This may be reduced to 5 feet if the facility soils report addresses the potential impacts of the facility phreatic surface on existing or future structures located on adjacent external lots.

5.4.3.2 METHODS OF ANALYSIS

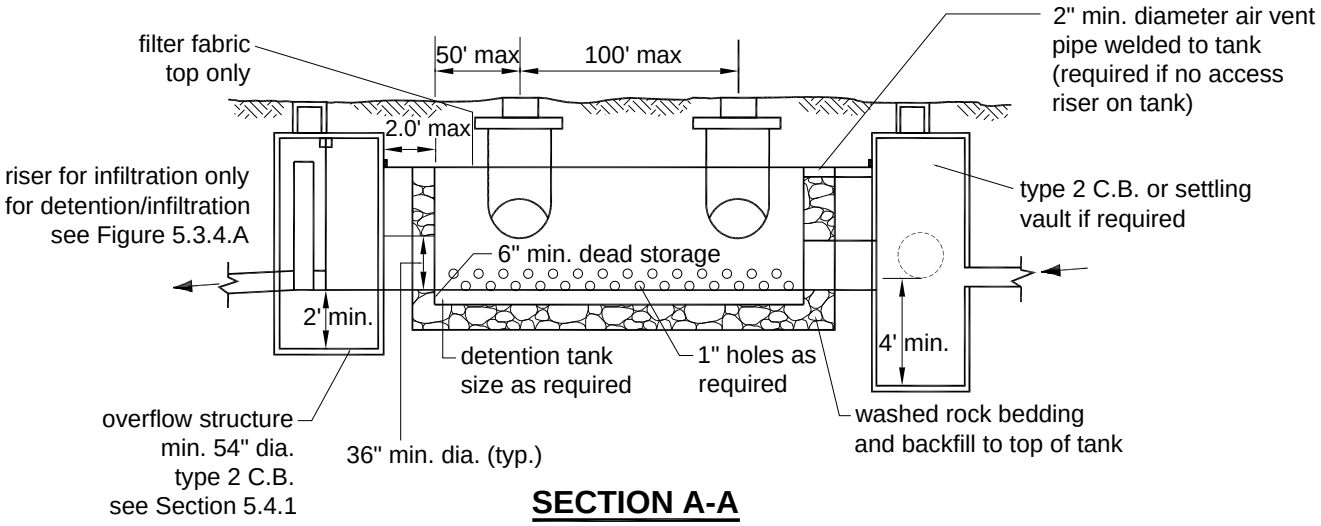
The **size of the tank** shall be determined using the hydrologic analysis and routing methods described in Chapter 3, and the **stage/discharge curve** developed from the recommended design infiltration rate as described in Section 5.4.1 (p. 5-57). The **storage volume** in the tank is used to detain runoff prior to infiltration with the perforations providing the outflow mechanism. At any given stage, the discharge may be computed using the **area of pervious surface** through which infiltration will occur multiplied by the recommended design infiltration rate (in appropriate units). The area of pervious surface used for determining the potential infiltration from the tank shall be computed by taking the lesser of the trench width, or two times the width of the tank, and then multiplying by the length of the tank (assuming infiltration through the bottom of the trench only).

Note: The KCRTS program "Size a Facility" module can provide a preliminary tank length for a given tank diameter, storage depth, design infiltration rate, and allowable release rate through a control structure (if applicable).

FIGURE 5.4.3.A TYPICAL INFILTRATION TANK



PLAN VIEW
NTS



SECTION A-A
NTS

NOTES:

- All metal parts corrosion resistant. Steel parts galvanized and asphalt coated (treatment 1 or better).
- Filter fabric to be placed over washed rock backfill.

5.4.4 INFILTRATION VAULTS

Infiltration vaults consist of a bottomless concrete vault structure placed underground in native infiltrative soils. Infiltration is achieved through the native soils at the bottom of the structure.

Infiltration vaults are similar to detention vaults. A standard detention vault detail is shown in Figure 5.3.3.A (p. 5-37). Overflow riser details are shown in Section 5.3.4 beginning on page 5-38.

5.4.4.1 DESIGN CRITERIA

General

The following criteria for vaults are in addition to the general requirements for infiltration facilities specified in Section 5.4.1:

1. The proposed **vault bottom** shall be at least 3 feet above the seasonal high groundwater level and have at least 3 feet of permeable soil beneath the bottom.
2. Infiltration vaults are **not allowed on slopes greater than 25%** (4:1). A geotechnical analysis and report may be required if located on slopes steeper than 15% or within 200 feet of a ***steep slope hazard area*** or ***landslide hazard area***.
3. The vault bottom **must be in native soil** (excavated at least one foot in depth).
4. A suitable means to dissipate energy at the inlet is required to prevent scour and may be accomplished by using the detail for the sand filter vault (see Figure 6.5.3.A).
5. Infiltration vaults shall have a **solid bottom riser** (with clean-out gate) and outflow system for safely discharging overflows to the downstream conveyance system or another acceptable discharge point.

Structural Stability

All vaults shall meet structural requirements for overburden support and H-20 vehicle loading. Vaults located under roadways must meet the live load requirements of the *King County Road Standards*. Cast-in-place wall sections shall be designed as retaining walls. Structural designs for vaults must be stamped by a licensed structural engineer unless otherwise approved by DDES. Bottomless vaults shall be provided with footings placed on stable, well-consolidated native material and sized considering overburden support, traffic loading (assume maintenance traffic, if placed outside ROW), and lateral soil pressures when the vault is dry. Infiltration vaults shall not be allowed in fill slopes unless analyzed in a geotechnical report for stability. The infiltration surface at the bottom of the vault must be in native soil.

Access Requirements

Same as specified for detention vaults in Section 5.3.3.1 (p. 5-35).

Access Roads

Same as specified for detention vaults in Section 5.3.3.1 (p. 5-35).

Right-of-Way

Infiltration vaults to be maintained by King County but not located in King County right-of-way shall be in a tract dedicated to King County. Any tract not abutting public right-of-way will require a 15-foot wide extension of the tract to accommodate an access road to the vault.

Setbacks

1. Infiltration vaults shall be set back 100 feet from proposed or existing **septic system drainfields**. This setback may be reduced to 30 feet with approval from the Seattle - King County Department of Public Health.
2. Infiltration vaults shall be a minimum of 50 feet from any ***steep slope hazard area***. The facility soils report must address the potential impact of infiltration on the ***steep slope hazard area***.
3. **Building setback lines for adjacent internal lots** shall be 20 feet. These may be reduced to the minimum allowed by zoning if the facility soils report addresses the potential impacts of the facility phreatic surface on structures so located.
4. Infiltration vaults shall be set back 20 feet from **external tract, easement, or property lines**. This may be reduced to 5 feet if the facility soils report addresses the potential impacts of the facility phreatic surface on existing or future structures located on adjacent external lots.

5.4.4.2 METHODS OF ANALYSIS

The **size of the vault** shall be determined using the hydrologic analysis and routing methods described in Chapter 3 and the **stage/discharge curve** developed from the recommended design infiltration rate as described in Section 5.4.1 (p. 5-57). The **storage volume** in the vault is used to detain runoff prior to infiltration. At any given stage, the discharge may be computed using the **area of pervious surface** through which infiltration will occur (the exposed soil comprising the vault bottom) multiplied by the recommended design infiltration rate (in appropriate units).

Note: The KCRTS program "Size a Facility" module can provide preliminary vault volume (modeled as an infiltration pond with vertical side slopes) for a given storage depth, design infiltration rate, and allowable release rate through a control structure (if applicable).

5.4.5 INFILTRATION TRENCHES

Infiltration trenches can be a useful alternative for developments with constraints that make siting a pond difficult. Infiltration trenches may be placed beneath parking areas, along the ***site*** periphery, or in other suitable linear areas.

5.4.5.1 DESIGN CRITERIA

General

The following criteria for trenches are in addition to the general requirements for infiltration facilities specified in Section 5.4.1:

1. The proposed **trench bottom** must be at least 3 feet above the seasonal high groundwater level and 3 feet below finished grade.
2. There must be at least 3 feet of **permeable soil** beneath the trench bottom.
3. The infiltration surface elevation (bottom of trench) must be in **native soil** (excavated at least one foot in depth).
4. Infiltration trenches are **not allowed on slopes greater than 25%** (4:1). A geotechnical analysis and report may be required if located on slopes steeper than 15% or within 200 feet of a ***steep slope hazard area*** or ***landslide hazard area***.
5. Trenches shall be a minimum of **2 feet wide and no more than 5 feet wide**.
6. Trenches shall be **backfilled with $1^1/_2$ - $^3/_4$-inch washed rock**, completely surrounded by filter fabric and overlain by a minimum 1 foot of compact backfill.
7. Level 6-inch minimum diameter rigid **perforated distribution pipes** shall extend the length of the trench. Distribution pipe inverts shall be a minimum of 2 feet below finished grade. Provisions (such as clean-out wyes) shall be made for cleaning the distribution pipe. The pipe capacity shall be calculated to verify that the distribution pipe has capacity to handle the maximum design flow.
8. Alternative trench-type systems such as **pre-fabricated bottomless chambers** that provide an equivalent system may be used at the discretion of DDES.
9. Two feet minimum **cover** shall be provided in areas subject to vehicle loads.
10. Trenches shall be **spaced** no closer than 10 feet, measured on center.

Setbacks

1. Trench systems shall be set back 100 feet from proposed or existing **septic system drainfields**. This setback may be reduced to 30 feet with approval from the Seattle - King County Department of Public Health.
2. Trench systems shall be a minimum of 50 feet from any ***steep slope hazard area***. The facility soils report must address the potential impact of infiltration on the ***steep slope hazard area***.
3. **Structures** shall be set back 20 feet from individual trenches. This may be reduced if the facility soils report addresses potential impacts of trench phreatic surface on structures so located.

5.4.5.2 METHODS OF ANALYSIS

The sections and lengths of trenches shall be determined using the hydrologic analysis and routing methods for flow control design described in Chapter 3. The **stage/discharge curve** shall be developed from the design infiltration rate recommended by the soils engineer, as described in Section 5.4.1 (p. 5-57). **Storage volume** of the trench system shall be determined considering void space of the washed

rock backfill and maximum design water surface level at the crown of the distribution pipe. At any given stage, the discharge may be computed using the **area of pervious surface** through which infiltration will occur (trench bottom area only) multiplied by the recommended design infiltration rate (in appropriate units).

Note: The KCRTS program "Size a Facility" module can provide a preliminary total trench bottom area for a given trench depth (from spring line), design infiltration rate, and allowable release rate through a control structure (if applicable). The program assumes 30% void space in the trench backfill.

5.4.6 ALTERNATIVE INFILTRATION SYSTEMS

Manufactures have developed other systems made with pre-cast plastic that have properties in common with vaults, tanks, and trenches, but that do not conform to the standards for those facility types. These systems may be approved by DDES using suitable design standards adapted from the established standards for similar systems.

5.4.6.1 DESIGN CRITERIA

General

The following criteria for alternative systems are in addition to the general requirements for infiltration facilities specified in Section 5.4.1:

1. The proposed infiltration surface must be at least 3 feet above the seasonal high groundwater level.
2. There must be at least 3 feet of **permeable soil** beneath the infiltration surface.
3. The infiltration surface elevation must be in **native soil** (excavated at least one foot in depth).
4. Infiltration systems are **not allowed on slopes greater than 25%** (4:1). A geotechnical analysis and report may be required if located on slopes steeper than 15% or within 200 feet of a ***steep slope hazard area*** or ***landslide hazard area***.
5. Systems shall be **backfilled with $1^1/_2$ - $^3/_4$-inch washed rock or similar material**, completely surrounded by filter fabric and overlain by a minimum 1 foot of compact backfill.
6. Two feet minimum **cover** shall be provided in areas subject to vehicle loads.
7. **Chambers** shall be spaced **no more than 10 feet apart** as measured from the adjacent edges. Inflow pipes or a manifold system shall be connected to each infiltration chamber. Inspection and maintenance access to each chamber shall be provided as deemed necessary by the County.

Setbacks

1. Alternative systems shall be set back 100 feet from proposed or existing **septic system drainfields**. This setback may be reduced to 30 feet with approval from the Seattle - King County Department of Public Health.
2. Systems shall be a minimum of 50 feet from any ***steep slope hazard area***. The facility soils report must address the potential impact of infiltration on the ***steep slope hazard area***.
3. **Structures** shall be set back 20 feet from infiltration systems. This may be reduced if the facility soils report addresses potential impacts of trench phreatic surface on structures so located.

5.4.6.2 METHODS OF ANALYSIS

The sizing and layout of the system shall be determined using the hydrologic analysis and routing methods for flow control design described in Chapter 3, using "Route Through a Single Outlet Reservoir" Tool in KCRTS. The **stage/discharge curve** shall be developed from the design infiltration rate recommended by the soils engineer, as described in Section 5.4.1 (p. 5-57). **Storage volume** of the system shall be determined considering void space of the washed rock backfill and the volume contained in system elements. At any given stage, the discharge may be computed using the **area of pervious surface** through which infiltration will occur multiplied by the recommended design infiltration rate (in appropriate units).

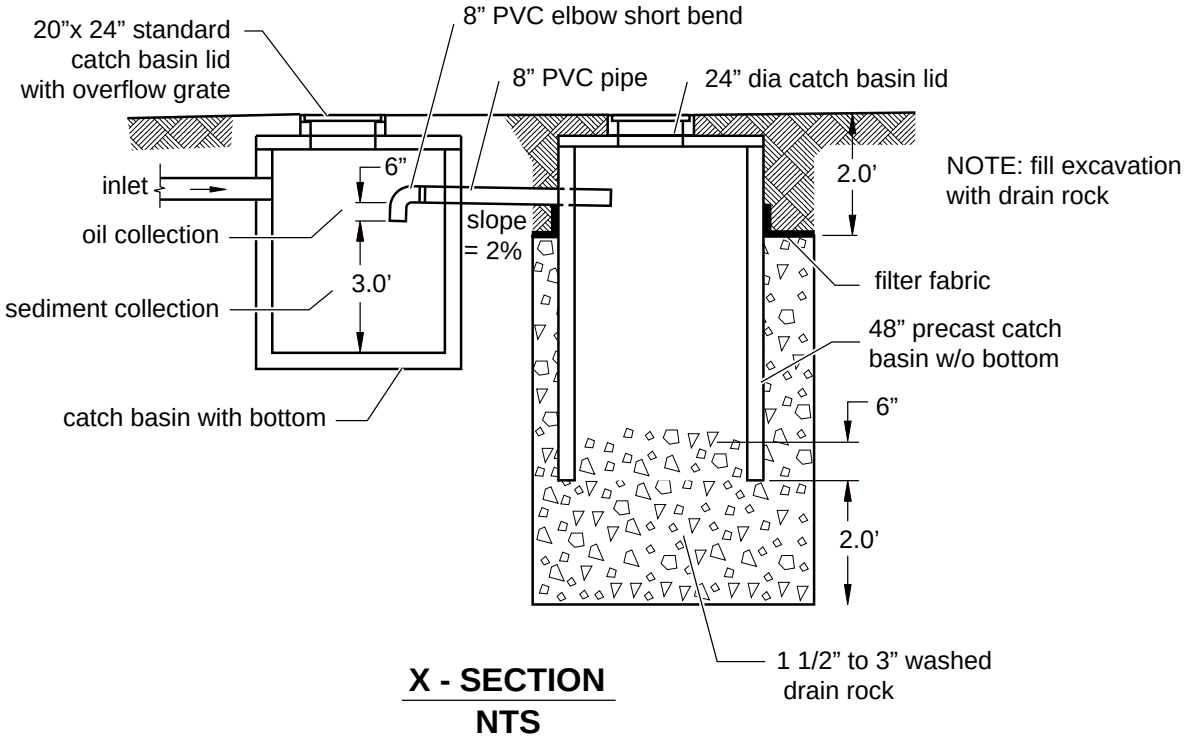
5.4.7 SMALL INFILTRATION BASINS

Small infiltration basins consist of a bottomless, precast concrete catch basin or equivalent structure placed in an excavation filled with washed drain rock. Stormwater infiltrates through the drain rock into the surrounding soil. This facility is intended for use with contributing surface areas of less than 5,000 square feet. Presettlement is most easily provided by a catch basin or manhole with a turned-down elbow; see Figure 5.4.7.A (below) for a generic design sketch. If water quality treatment is required by Core Requirement #8 or Special Requirement #5, runoff from pollution-generating impervious surfaces must be treated before it enters the infiltration portion of the system.

5.4.7.1 DESIGN CRITERIA

The design criteria for small infiltration basins are essentially the same as for infiltration tanks (see Sections 5.4.1 and 5.4.3), except that only one infiltration rate test and soil log is required for each small infiltration basin. Access into the basins shall be provided for inspection and maintenance. Designs may incorporate Type II catch basins, but equivalent designs using other materials may be accepted.

FIGURE 5.4.7.A EXAMPLE SMALL INFILTRATION BASIN



CHAPTER 6

WATER QUALITY DESIGN

KING COUNTY, WASHINGTON

SURFACE WATER DESIGN MANUAL

Section 6.1	**Water Quality Menus**	**6-3**
Section 6.1.1	Basic Water Quality Menu	6-4
Section 6.1.2	Enhanced Basic Water Quality Menu	6-7
Section 6.1.3	Sensitive Lake Protection Menu	6-9
Section 6.1.4	Sphagnum Bog Protection Menu	6-13
Section 6.1.5	High-Use Menu	6-14
Section 6.2	**General Requirements for WQ Facilities**	**6-17**
Section 6.2.1	Water Quality Design Flows	6-17
Section 6.2.2	Sequence of Facilities	6-19
Section 6.2.3	Setbacks, Slopes, and Embankments	6-21
Section 6.2.4	Facility Liners	6-23
Section 6.2.5	Flow Splitter Designs	6-29
Section 6.2.6	Flow Spreading Options	6-33
Section 6.3	**Biofiltration Facility Designs**	**6-39**
Section 6.3.1	Basic Biofiltration Swales	6-39
Section 6.3.2	Wet Biofiltration Swales	6-55
Section 6.3.3	Continuous Inflow Biofiltration Swales	6-58
Section 6.3.4	Basic Filter Strips	6-59
Section 6.3.5	Narrow Area Filter Strips	6-66
Section 6.4	**Wetpool Facility Designs**	**6-69**
Section 6.4.1	Wetponds — Basic and Large	6-69
Section 6.4.2	Wetvaults	6-83
Section 6.4.3	Stormwater Wetlands	6-89
Section 6.4.4	Combined Detention and Wetpool Facilities	6-95
Section 6.5	**Media Filtration Facility Designs**	**6-103**
Section 6.5.1	General Requirements	6-103
Section 6.5.2	Sand Filters — Basic and Large	6-104
Section 6.5.3	Sand Filter Vaults	6-123
Section 6.5.4	Linear Sand Filters	6-129
Section 6.5.5	StormFilter	6-134
Section 6.6	**Oil Control Facility Designs**	**6-139**
Section 6.6.1	Catch Basin Inserts	6-139
Section 6.6.2	Oil/Water Separators	6-145

CHAPTER 6

WATER QUALITY DESIGN

This chapter presents the King County approved methods, criteria, and details for analysis and design of water quality facilities pursuant to Core Requirement #8, discussed in Section 1.2.8, and Special Requirement #5, discussed in Section 1.3.5.

Chapter Organization

The information in this chapter is organized into the following six main sections:

- Section 6.1, "Water Quality Menus" (p. 6-3), details the **area-specific water quality menus** referred to in Core Requirement #8 of Chapter 1, and the **High-Use Menu** referred to in Special Requirement #5, also in Chapter 1.
- Section 6.2, "General Requirements for WQ Facilities" (p. 6-17), presents general design requirements and details pertinent to all water quality facilities.
- Section 6.3, "Biofiltration Facility Designs" (p. 6-39), presents the details for analysis and design of biofiltration facilities such as **biofiltration swales** and **filter strips**.
- Section 6.4, "Wetpool Facility Designs" (p. 6-69), presents the details for analysis and design of wetpool water quality facilities such as **wetponds**, **wetvaults**, **stormwater wetlands**, and combinations of these facilities with detention facilities.
- Section 6.5, "Media Filtration Facility Designs" (p. 6-103), presents the details for analysis and design of filtration facilities such as **sand filters** and **StormFilters**.
- Section 6.6, "Oil Control Facility Designs" (p. 6-139), presents the details for analysis and design of oil control facilities such as **catch basin inserts** and **oil/water separators**.

Required vs. Recommended Design Criteria

Both required and recommended design criteria are presented in this chapter. Criteria stated using "shall" or "must" are mandatory, to be used unless there is a good reason to deviate as allowed under the adjustment process in Section 1.4. These criteria are **required design criteria** and generally affect facility performance or critical maintenance factors.

Sometimes options are stated as part of the required design criteria using the language "should" or "may." These latter criteria are really **recommended design criteria**, but are so closely related to the required criteria that they are placed with it. In some cases **recommended design features** are presented under a separate heading in the "Design Criteria" sections.

Use of Chapter 6 Figures: The figures provided in Chapter 6 illustrate **one example** of how the WQ facility design criteria may be applied. There may be other engineering solutions that also meet the design criteria. Those options are also allowed unless it is the judgment of DDES that the option has other problems that render it a poor engineering choice. Although the figures are meant to illustrate many of the most important design criteria, they may not show **all** criteria that apply. In general, the figures in Chapter 6 are not used to specify requirements unless they are indicated elsewhere in the Manual.

Water Quality Facility Sizing Worksheets

To make the water quality facility sizing methods more standardized for plan review purposes, sizing worksheets are included in Reference Section 8-C for the major water quality facilities. These worksheets are based on the step by step sizing methods given for the water quality facilities in this Chapter. Most design criteria that are not required for facility sizing are omitted from the worksheets. It is the designer's responsibility to make sure that all the required design criteria for each water quality facility are provided on submitted plans.

Please note that the worksheets are dated in the footer of each page. It is the designer's responsibility to ensure that any Manual updates affecting the sizing procedure or design criteria after that date are incorporated into the worksheet.

If there are instances in which the worksheet differs from the Design criteria in the text of this Chapter, the criteria as given in this Chapter, and as modified by subsequent updates, shall be considered the governing criteria.

6.1 WATER QUALITY MENUS

This section identifies facility choices and, in some cases, non-structural options that comprise the water quality (WQ) menus referred to in Chapter 1. The menus covered in this section are as follows:

- "Basic Water Quality Menu," Section 6.1.1 (p. 6-4)
- "Enhanced Basic Water Quality Menu," Section 6.1.2 (p. 6-7)
- "Sensitive Lake Protection Menu," Section 6.1.3 (p. 6-9)
- "Sphagnum Bog Protection Menu," Section 6.1.4 (p. 6-13)
- "High-Use Menu," Section 6.1.5 (p. 6-15).

Guide to Applying Water Quality Menus

1. Determine the WQ treatment area in which your project is located by consulting the Water Quality (WQ) Applications map (back pocket). If this determination cannot be made from the map, a more detailed delineation of WQ treatment areas is available on King County's Geographic Information System. The map also lists some of the inventoried sphagnum bog wetlands using the numbering convention of the King County wetlands inventory.
2. Read Core Requirement #8 to determine if any exemptions apply to your project.
3. If the map indicates your project is within a Sensitive Lake WQ Treatment Area or a Sphagnum Bog WQ Treatment Area and no exemptions apply, determine if the ***project site*** will actually drain to the sensitive lake or bog. For instance, projects near drainage boundaries, especially in areas with underground storm drains, may drain in a direction different from the surface topography. If the ***project site*** does not drain to the sensitive lake or bog, it is located within the Basic WQ Treatment Area.
4. Check the detailed threshold and exceptions information in Section 1.2.8.1 to determine which WQ menu applies to all or part of your project. On some ***sites***, more than one menu may apply depending on proposed land cover, soil characteristics, and how runoff from developed surfaces will be collected.
5. Find the WQ menu in this section that applies to your project. Each menu presents two or more water quality treatment options; **select one**. Since all options are sized to provide equivalent removal of the target pollutant, the choice will depend only on the constraints and opportunities of your ***site***. (If detention requirements apply, it will usually be most economical to use the combined WQ/detention pond option). Detailed facility designs for the option selected are given in Sections 6.3 (p. 6-39), 6.4 (p. 6-69), and 6.5 (p. 6-103). Information about non-structural options is included in the menu itself.
6. Read the implementation requirements in Chapter 1 (Section 1.2.8.2) that address pollution-generating pervious surfaces. For some WQ menus, and in some situations, the facility requirements for these surfaces are eased.
7. Determine if your project fits the definition of a ***high-use site*** (see Special Requirement #5 in Chapter 1). If it does, or if you elect to provide enhanced oil pollution control, choose one of the options presented in the High-Use menu, Section 6.1.5. Detailed designs for oil control facilities are given in Section 6.6 (p. 6-139).
8. General water quality facility requirements (see Section 6.2, p. 6-17) apply to all menus and may affect the placement of facilities on your ***site***.

6.1.1 BASIC WATER QUALITY MENU

Where applied: The Basic Water Quality menu is generally applied to areas outside the drainage basin of sensitive lakes or sphagnum bog wetlands. Such areas are designated and mapped as Basic Water Quality Treatment areas in this manual. For precise details on the application of this and other water quality menus, refer to Section 1.2.8, "Core Requirement #8: Water Quality."

Treatment goal: The Basic Water Quality menu facility choices are designed to remove 80 percent of total suspended solids[1] (TSS) for flows or volumes up to and including the WQ design flow or volume (defined in Section 6.2.1, p. 6-17). Flows and volumes in excess of the WQ design flow or volume may be routed around the WQ facility or may be passed through untreated.

Basis: The goal of 80 percent TSS removal was chosen since it provides good pollutant removal. For higher removals, there are diminishing returns, and relatively less treatment is gained for incremental increases in facility size.

There are **seven facility options** that comprise the Basic WQ menu; **any one option** may be chosen to satisfy the basic WQ protection requirement.

❑ BASIC WQ OPTION 1 — BIOFILTRATION SWALE

A *biofiltration swale* is a long, gently sloped, vegetated ditch designed to filter pollutants from stormwater. Grass is the most common vegetation used. Design details are given in Section 6.3.1 (p. 6-39). The wet biofiltration swale (see Section 6.3.2, p. 6-55) is a variation of the basic biofiltration swale for use where the longitudinal slope is slight (1 to 2 percent or less), water tables are high, or continuous low base flow is likely to result in saturated soil conditions. Under such conditions, healthy grass growth is not possible and wetland plants are used to provide the biofiltration mechanism. The continuous inflow biofiltration swale (see Section 6.3.3, p. 6-58) may be used in situations such as roadways where water enters the swale continuously rather than at one discrete inflow point. Table 6.1.1.A (p. 6-6) summarizes when the biofiltration swale and its variations are to be applied.

❑ BASIC WQ OPTION 2 — FILTER STRIP

A *filter strip* is a grassy area with gentle slopes which treats stormwater runoff from adjacent paved areas before it concentrates into discrete channels; see Section 6.3.4 (p. 6-59) for design details. The narrow area filter strip may be used along a roadway or parking lot in limited space situations as specified in Section 6.3.5 (p. 6-66).

❑ BASIC WQ OPTION 3 — WETPOND

Wetponds are stormwater ponds that maintain a pool of water for most of the year. Stormwater entering the pond is treated during the relatively long residence time within the pond. The sizing method used in this manual is based on a method developed by the Nationwide Urban Runoff Program (NURP). The basic wetpond has a volume three times larger than the volume of runoff from NURP's mean annual storm.[2] See Section 6.4.1 (p. 6-69) for design details.

❑ BASIC WQ OPTION 4 — WETVAULT

An underground vault may be used to comply with the Basic Water Quality menu. The treatment volume is the same as for the basic wetpond; see Section 6.4.2 (p. 6-83) for design details.

[1] This goal assumes the project generates a typical level of TSS (between 30 and 100 milligrams per liter (mg/L). For projects expected to generate a higher level of TSS, such as a sand and gravel operation, a higher treatment goal may be appropriate.

[2] The mean annual storm is derived from dividing the annual rainfall (in inches) by the number of storms per year.

❑ BASIC WQ OPTION 5 — STORMWATER WETLAND

A *stormwater wetland* uses biological processes of plant uptake and bacterial degradation as well as physical and chemical processes and gravity settling to remove pollutants. The footprint of the stormwater wetland is sized based on the wetpond sizing, but the depth of water in the second cell is reduced to encourage plant growth; see Section 6.4.3 (p. 6-89) for design details.

❑ BASIC WQ OPTION 6 — COMBINED DETENTION AND WETPOOL FACILITIES

This option allows the wetpond, wetvault, or stormwater wetland to be placed under the detention facility live storage. Where ***site*** conditions permit its use, this option occupies less space than separate siting of detention and water quality facilities. The basic wetpond portion of the combined facility is sized using the same method as the wetpond in Option 3; see Section 6.4.4 (p. 6-95) for design details.

❑ BASIC WQ OPTION 7 — SAND FILTER

A *sand filter* is a depression or pond with the bottom made of a layer of sand. Stormwater is treated as it percolates downward through the sand layer. Sand filters treat to a higher level of TSS removal than do other water quality facilities. Therefore, slightly less of the annual runoff volume may be treated through the sand filter and still meet the Basic WQ menu goal for TSS removal.

Sand filters may be built as open ponds, underground vaults or linear perimeter trenches; see Section 6.5.2 (p. 6-104) for basic and large sand filters, Section 6.5.3 (p. 6-123) for sand filter vaults, and Section 6.5.4 (p. 6-129) for linear sand filters. A sand layer may also be installed above an infiltration pond or vault to treat stormwater before it infiltrates. Presettling is required prior to sand filtration if no other WQ or detention facility precedes the sand filter.

❑ BASIC WQ OPTION 8 — STORMFILTER

The Stormwater Management StormFilter® (StormFilter) is a flow-through stormwater filtration system comprised of a vault that houses media-filled cartridges. As stormwater fills the treatment chamber, stormwater filters through the media to the center of the cartridge, and treated stormwater is collected and discharged through underdrain collection pipes. Currently, ZPG™ (zeolite/perlite/granular activated carbon) media is the only media approved for meeting the Basic water quality treatment requirements. The StormFilter is sized using both mass-based and flow-based methods; see Section 6.5.5 (p. 6-134) for details. *Note: Presettling is required.*

TABLE 6.1.1.A SELECTION OF BIOFILTRATION SWALE TYPE APPROPRIATE FOR SITE	
Site Circumstances	**Biofiltration Swale Type**
Flow enters at head of swale • Longitudinal slope 1% or less OR • Located downstream of a Level 2 or 3 detention facility	Wet biofiltration swale (Section 6.3.2, p. 6-55)
Flow enters at head of swale • Longitudinal slope between 1 and 2% • Soil saturation or base flows likely in wet season	EITHER wet biofiltration swale (Section 6.3.2), OR basic biofiltration swale (Section 6.3.1, p. 6-39), depending on site; may require underdrain or low-flow drain.
Flow enters at head of swale • Longitudinal slope ≥ 2% • Base flows may or may not be likely in wet season • Not downstream of Level 2 or 3 detention.	Basic biofiltration swale (Section 6.3.1, p. 6-39); may require low-flow drain, depending on site
Along a roadway or parking lot with: • Continuous inflow into the biofilter, OR • Numerous discrete inflows with no single inflow contributing more than about 10% of total swale flow.	Continuous inflow biofiltration swale (Section 6.3.3, p. 6-58)

6.1.2 ENHANCED BASIC WATER QUALITY MENU

Where applied: The Enhanced Basic Water Quality menu[3] is applied where an enhanced level of treatment is required for those development ***sites*** or portions thereof that generate the highest concentrations of metals in stormwater runoff and drain by surface flows to a fish-bearing stream. Acute concentrations of metals such as copper and zinc in streams are toxic to fish. For precise details on the application of this and other water quality menus, refer to Section 1.2.8, "Core Requirement #8: Water Quality."

Note: The Enhanced Basic menu is a stand-alone menu. It integrates the Basic menu level of protection and the additional measures needed to achieve a higher level of metals removal. When this menu is required in Basic WQ Treatment Areas per Section 1.2.8.1-A of Core Requirement #8, it is intended to replace the Basic WQ menu on development ***sites*** *or portions of development* ***sites*** *that generate the highest concentrations of metals in stormwater runoff. When this menu is required in Sensitive Lake WQ Treatment Areas per Section 1.2.8.1-B, it is intended to be combined with the Sensitive Lake Protection Menu such that a facility design option common to both menus must be used.*

Treatment goal: The Enhanced Basic WQ menu is designed to achieve 50 percent total zinc removal for flows up to and including the WQ design flow or volume (defined in Section 6.2.1, p. 6-17).[4]

Basis: The treatment goal is expressed in terms of total zinc removal. Although zinc is not the most toxic metal in stormwater, it is usually present in significant amounts, making it a practical and reliable indicator of overall performance. Many metals are readily adsorbed onto particulates in the runoff, usually the finer fraction of the particulates. Facility combinations that remove more of the particulate load than the Basic menu, including the finer fraction, are specified by the Enhanced Basic menu. Facilities providing organic binding sites that enhance metal adsorption are also specified.

❑ ENHANCED BASIC OPTION 1 — LARGE SAND FILTER

This option includes use of a **large sand filter**, **large sand filter vault**, or **large linear sand filter**. Sizing specifications for these facilities can be found in Sections 6.5.2 (p. 6-104), 6.5.3 (p. 6-123), and 6.5.4 (p. 6-129), respectively. *Note: A presettling cell is required if the sand filter is not preceded by a detention facility.*

❑ ENHANCED BASIC OPTION 2 — STORMWATER WETLAND

Provision of a **stormwater wetland** (see Section 6.4.3, p. 6-89) or **combined detention and stormwater wetland** (see Section 6.4.4, p. 6-95) satisfies the 50 percent zinc removal goal without additional facilities. The large amount of organic material in the stormwater wetland provides organic binding sites and is considered very effective in removing metals.

❑ ENHANCED BASIC OPTION 3 — TWO-FACILITY TREATMENT TRAIN

This option uses one of the basic water quality treatment options listed in Table 6.1.2.A (p. 6-8) followed by a basic sand filter (see Section 6.5.2, p. 6-104), sand filter vault (see Section 6.5.3, p. 6-123), linear sand filter (see Section 6.5.4, p. 6-129), or StormFilter with CSF™ leaf compost media (see Section 6.5.5, p. 6-134).

[3] The Enhanced Basic WQ menu targets different pollutants than the lake or bog protection menus. It does not necessarily provide a higher level of treatment except for the target pollutant, metal contaminants.

[4] This goal assumes total zinc concentrations for untreated runoff are between 0.10 and 0.25 milligrams per liter (m/L). For projects that are expected to generate higher levels of metals, such as a mining operation, a higher treatment goal may be appropriate.

TABLE 6.1.2.A PAIRED FACILITIES FOR ENHANCED BASIC TREATMENT TRAIN, OPTION 3	
First Basic WQ Facility:	**Second WQ Facility:**
Biofiltration swale (Sections 6.3.1, 6.3.2, and 6.3.3)	Basic sand filter or sand filter vault (Section 6.5.2 or 6.5.3) or StormFilter with CSF (Section 6.5.5)
Filter strip (Sections 6.3.4 and 6.3.5)	Linear sand filter (Section 6.5.4) with no presettling cell needed
Linear sand filter (Section 6.5.4)	Filter strip (Sections 6.3.4 and 6.3.5)
Basic wetpond (Section 6.4.1)	Basic sand filter or sand filter vault (Section 6.5.2 or 6.5.3) or StormFilter with CSF (Section 6.5.5)
Wetvault (Section 6.4.2)	Basic sand filter or sand filter vault (Section 6.5.2 or 6.5.3) or StormFilter with CSF (Section 6.5.5)
Basic combined detention and wetpool facility (Section 6.4.4)	Basic sand filter or sand filter vault (Section 6.5.2 or 6.5.3) or StormFilter with CSF (Section 6.5.5)
Basic sand filter or sand filter vault (Sections 6.5.2 or 6.5.3). *A presettling cell is required if the sand filter is not preceded by a detention facility.*	StormFilter with CSF (Section 6.5.5)
StormFilter with ZPG (Section 6.5.5)	Basic sand filter or sand filter vault (Section 6.5.2 or 6.5.3) or StormFilter with CSF (Section 6.5.5)

6.1.3 SENSITIVE LAKE PROTECTION MENU

Where applied: The Sensitive Lake Protection menu is applied to the watersheds of lakes that have been determined to be particularly sensitive to phosphorus and that are being managed to reduce water quality impacts. This menu applies to stormwater conveyed to the lake by surface flow as well as to stormwater infiltrated within one-quarter mile of the lake in soils with high infiltration rates (i.e., measured rate exceeding 9 inches per hour). If stormwater is infiltrated further than one-quarter mile from the lake, then the Basic WQ menu is applied unless the project is exempt from Core Requirement #8 per Section 1.2.8. For precise details on the application of this and other area-specific water quality menus, refer to Section 1.2.8, "Core Requirement #8: Water Quality."

*Note: The Sensitive Lake Protection menu is a **stand-alone menu**. It integrates the Basic WQ menu level of protection and the additional protection needed to achieve lake protection goals in the options described below. When this menu is required as specified in Core Requirement #8 (see Section 1.2.8), it is intended to replace the Basic WQ menu in the watersheds of sensitive lakes.*

Treatment goal: The Lake Protection menu is designed to achieve a goal of 50 percent total phosphorus (TP) removal for the WQ design flow or volume (defined in Section 6.2.1, p. 6-17), assuming typical forms and concentrations of phosphorus in untreated stormwater runoff.[5]

Basis: The Lake Protection menu will result in removal of more of the TSS load, including more of the finer fraction of TSS, than the Basic menu. The additional increment of solids removal will also provide enough phosphorus removal to meet the TP goal stated above.

❑ LAKE PROTECTION OPTION 1 — LARGE WETPOND

The 50 percent TP removal goal can be satisfied by use of a **large wetpond** or **large combined detention and wetpond** sized so that the wetpond volume is 4.5 times the volume of runoff from the mean annual storm, rather than 3 times the volume as in the basic pond. See Section 6.4.1.1 (p. 6-70) for the large wetpond design, and Section 6.4.4.1 (p. 6-95) for the large combined pond design. *Note: A large wetvault option is not included in this menu since the biological processes thought to remove phosphorus do not take place in underground vaults.*

❑ LAKE PROTECTION OPTION 2 — LARGE SAND FILTER

This option includes use of a **large sand filter, large sand filter vault**, or **large linear sand filter**. Sizing specifications for these facilities can be found in Sections 6.5.2 (p. 6-104), 6.5.3 (p. 6-123), and 6.5.4 (p. 6-129), respectively. *Note: A presettling cell is required if the sand filter is not preceded by a Level 2 or 3 detention facility.*

❑ LAKE PROTECTION OPTION 3 — TWO-FACILITY TREATMENT TRAIN

This option involves use of one of the basic water quality treatment options, listed in Table 6.1.3.A, followed by either a basic sand filter (Section 6.5.2, p. 6-104) or basic sand filter vault (Section 6.5.3, p. 6-123). For dispersed flows, a linear sand filter may be used as the second facility.

[5] Typical TP concentrations in untreated Seattle-area runoff are considered to be between 0.10 and 0.50 mg/L. For projects that are expected to generate higher levels of TP, such as animal husbandry operations, a higher treatment goal may be appropriate.

TABLE 6.1.3.A PAIRED FACILITIES FOR LAKE PROTECTION TREATMENT TRAIN, OPTION 3	
First Basic WQ Facility	**Second WQ Facility**
Biofiltration swale (Sections 6.3.1, 6.3.2, and 6.3.3)	Basic sand filter or sand filter vault (Section 6.5.2 or 6.5.3)
Filter strip (Sections 6.3.4 and 6.3.5)	Linear sand filter (no presettling cell needed) (Section 6.5.4)
Linear sand filter (Section 6.5.4)	Filter strip (Sections 6.3.4 and 6.3.5)
Basic wetpond (Section 6.4.1)	Basic sand filter or sand filter vault (Section 6.5.2 or 6.5.3)
Wetvault (Section 6.4.2)	Basic sand filter or sand filter vault (Section 6.5.1 or 6.5.3)
Stormwater wetland (Section 6.4.3)	Basic sand filter or sand filter vault (Section 6.5.2 or 6.5.3)
Basic combined detention and wetpool facility (Section 6.4.4)	Basic sand filter or sand filter vault (Section 6.5.2 or 6.5.3)
StormFilter with ZPG (Section 6.5.5)	Basic sand filter or sand filter vault (Section 6.5.2 or 6.5.3)

❑ LAKE PROTECTION OPTION 4 — BASIC MENU PLUS PHOSPHORUS CREDIT

This option provides credit to developments that integrate land use and ***site*** design measures to prevent or reduce the levels of phosphorus leaving the ***site***. Credit is also given for the voluntary use of extra levels of onsite detention, since less in-stream erosion is likely to take place with more highly controlled stormwater releases. This reduction in in-stream erosion and bank failure translates directly into control of the phosphorus load delivered to downstream lakes.

The measures for which credit is given are detailed below, along with the point values assigned to each of the actions. Providing any combination of these measures equaling 10 points or more earns this credit. The credit excuses the applicant from the requirement to provide a second water quality facility. *Thus, even though the development is located in the watershed of a sensitive lake, the water quality requirements can be fully met with the provision of a single water quality facility from the Basic Water Quality menu.*

Credit-Earning Actions

Several land use actions and source controls are particularly effective in reducing phosphorus. These actions are not required by this manual or other regulations; they are an alternative to end-of-the-pipe treatment of stormwater. Credit options for phosphorus-reducing actions are described below.

1. **Leaving at least 65 percent of the *site* undisturbed, including undevelopable land.** Full credit, or 10 points, is awarded for leaving 65 percent of a ***site*** in undisturbed native vegetation or allowing native vegetation to re-establish. Critical areas and their buffers may be counted. All areas for phosphorus credit must be in tracts dedicated to the County or protected by covenant (one example of covenant language to protect vegetated tracts from disturbance is shown in Reference section 8-O). A descending scale of points applies where lower percentages of the ***site*** are left undisturbed. **Possible credit = 1 to 10 points.** *Note: In rural residential projects, an exemption from all WQ requirements is possible in certain situations if 65% of the area is set aside in open space. See Core Requirement #8 exemptions in Section 1.2.8.*

2. **Providing extra flow control.** Credit for providing extra flow control applies only in cases where ***site*** runoff travels via stream or open drainage system to the sensitive lake. Voluntary use of the Level 2 flow control standard when the Level 1 standard would be required = 5 points. Voluntary use of the Level 3 flow control standard when the Level 1 standard would be required = 8 points. Voluntary use of the Level 3 flow control standard when the Level 2 standard would be required = 3 points. **Possible credit = 3 to 8 points.**

3. **Directing runoff from target pollution-generating surfaces to grassy areas with level spreading.** Directing runoff from target pollution-generating areas to grassy areas that are not routinely fertilized or to areas of native vegetation results in pollutant removals similar to those obtained in swales while also providing an increased opportunity for infiltration. To use this option, flows must remain unconcentrated and be spread uniformly over the intended area. (Flow spreader details are given in Section 6.2.6.)

   In general, the vegetated area receiving dispersed flows should be at least 25 percent as large as the area contributing flow. The receiving area should be increased by one percent for each percent increase in slope over four percent. The area should be configured so that the length of the flow path is no longer than the width over which flows are dispersed.

   Example:

   Assume a parking lot is 100' × 600', or 60,000 sf. Flows will be dispersed through an adjacent area of native vegetation with a slope of 8 percent.

   The area of vegetation must be at least 17,400 sf (25% + 4% (for steeper slope) × 60,000 sf). Assuming runoff is dispersed continuously along the wider edge of the parking lot, the flow path would need to be at least 29 feet (17,400' ÷ 600'). If the water were dispersed along the shorter edge, flow path would be 174 feet (17,400' ÷ 100'). However, this flow path would be longer than the width over which flows were dispersed (100'), and would not be a satisfactory option. The parking lot could be graded, however, so that flows would be dispersed at both of the 100 foot ends, making each flow path 87 feet, which would be acceptable.

   Credit is proportional to the total volume of runoff diverted; one point is earned for every 25 percent of total volume so directed. **Possible credit = 1 to 4 points.**

4. **Providing covered parking or covered waste disposal and recycling areas isolated from the stormwater conveyance system.** This item applies to all land uses for which covered parking for employees, residents, guests, and the general public is provided. This can be achieved for commercial land uses simply by covering the parking required by code. For other land uses, provision of additional covered parking for guests or the general public (total parking) in lieu of on-street parking may be used to provide this assurance. It is intended that covered parking would isolate the area from stormwater run-on as well as direct rainfall. A low curb, berm, or enclosing walls, in addition to a roof, would typically be needed.

   The water quality credit is proportional to the percentage of the total surface area that is effectively covered. One point is earned for every 25 percent of parking covered and protected from run-on. One additional point is earned if all solid waste management areas are covered and protected from stormwater run-on. **Possible credit = 1 to 5 points**

5. **Providing covered vehicle washing areas connected to the sanitary sewer system.** This item applies to commercial, industrial, and multifamily ***sites***. Frequent car-washing can contribute significant amounts of phosphorus to stormwater. Note that sewer districts may have pretreatment requirements before allowing connection to the sanitary sewer. **Possible credit = 3 points.**

Table 6.1.3.B (p. 6-12) details the credit options and associated point totals.

Credit may be applied to the whole ***site*** or to a ***natural discharge area*** within the ***site***. It may be advantageous for a developer to concentrate only on a ***natural discharge area*** if the point total for that particular area could equal 10. For example, assume a particular ***natural discharge area*** is one half the

total ***site*** area. If 65 percent of the land area in the ***natural discharge area*** will remain undisturbed, that ***natural discharge area*** is eligible for 10 points (see Table 6.1.3.B). The stormwater from that ***natural discharge area*** could be treated with a single water quality facility from the Basic WQ menu; the second facility could be waived. The rest of the ***site*** would still have the two-facility requirement.

Alternatively, if the entire ***site*** were considered, the undisturbed area decreases to 35 percent, eligible for only 3 points. In this case, the developer would need to implement other controls worth 7 points in order to waive the second water quality facility for the entire ***site***.

If the credit option is used, it shall be applied for during initial drainage review by the King County Department of Development and Environmental Services (DDES). The application shall include a **written request for credit** based on either the ***site*** plan or the grading plan for the project, and the ***threshold discharge areas*** shall be delineated on the plans. The request shall outline where the credit would be applied and how the point totals are to be achieved. DDES staff would then evaluate the request and may waive the second water quality treatment requirement for the ***site*** or ***threshold discharge area*** based on point totals outlined in Table 6.1.3.B (below). **Credit is not given unless requested.**

TABLE 6.1.3.B WATER QUALITY CREDIT FOR PHOSPHORUS CONTROL

Credit Option	Points	Credit Option	Points
Leaving site undisturbed, in native vegetation. Buffers without trails may be counted.	At least 65 % = 10 60 % = 9 55 % = 8 50 % = 7 45 % = 6 40 % = 5 35 % = 4 30 % = 3 25 % = 2 20 % = 1	Covered parking protected from run-on	100 % parking = 4 75 % parking = 3 50 % parking = 2 25 % parking = 1
		Covered car wash area connected to sanitary sewer (multifamily)	3
Directing road runoff to pervious, non-pollution-generating vegetated area.	100 % of volume = 4 75 % of volume = 3 50 % of volume = 2 25 % of volume = 1	Covered solid waste storage area	1
		Extra detention with next most restrictive release rate (if discharge to stream)	Level 1→ Level 2 = 5 Level 1→ Level 3 = 8 Level 2→ Level 3 = 3

6.1.4 SPHAGNUM BOG PROTECTION MENU

Where applied: The Sphagnum Bog Protection menu[6] covers sphagnum bog wetlands[7] greater than 0.25 acres in size.[8] It applies to stormwater conveyed by surface flow to the sphagnum bog vegetation community. If stormwater is infiltrated by the project, then the Basic WQ menu is applied unless the project is exempt from Core Requirement #8, "Water Quality." For precise details on the application of this and other area-specific water quality menus, refer to Section 1.2.8.

Note: The Sphagnum Bog Protection menu is a stand-alone menu. It integrates the Basic WQ menu level of protection and the additional measures needed to achieve bog protection goals in the options described below. When this menu is required as specified in Core Requirement #8 (see Section 1.2.8), it is intended to replace the Basic WQ menu in areas draining to sphagnum bogs.

Treatment goal: If surface water must be discharged to a bog, the treatment goal is to reduce total phosphate by 50 percent, reduce nitrate + nitrite by 40 percent, maintain alkalinity below 10 mg/L, and maintain pH below 6.

Basis: In their undeveloped condition, bogs are isolated from surface water, being supplied almost solely by rainwater. The best strategy for protection of bog water quality is to infiltrate the water quality design volume while routing high flows around the bog. Although it is not known whether alkalinity or nitrogen can be reduced sufficiently by the options outlined below, there are no other technologically-feasible alternatives at this time. An experimental design adjustment (see Section 1.4) could be pursued as additional technology becomes available.

❑ SPHAGNUM BOG PROTECTION OPTION 1 — LARGE WETPOND FOLLOWED BY LARGE SAND FILTER

This option uses a **large wetpond** (see Section 6.4.1, p. 6-69) or a **large combined detention and wetpond** (see Section 6.4.2, p. 6-83), sized so that the wetpond volume is 4.5 times the volume of runoff from the mean annual storm, rather than 3 times the volume as in the Basic Water Quality menu. A large sand filtration facility (see Section 6.5.2, p. 6-104, or 6.5.3, p. 6-123) must follow the pond. In order to ensure that algae and sources of alkalinity from the pond are not washed from the pond into the bog, the **sand filter must be the last facility.**

❑ SPHAGNUM BOG PROTECTION OPTION 2 — STORMWATER WETLAND IN SERIES WITH A LARGE SAND FILTER

This option uses a **stormwater wetland** (see Section 6.4.3, p. 6-89) or **combined detention and stormwater wetland** (see Section 6.4.4, p. 6-95) to remove solids and enhance the concentration of organic acids, and a **large sand filter** (see Section 6.5.2, p. 6-104) to remove the finer sediment for alkalinity and nutrient reduction. **The order of facilities is interchangeable** since there are both advantages and disadvantages to having the sand filter last in the train. *Note: A presettling cell is required if the first treatment facility is not preceded by a detention facility.*

❑ SPHAGNUM BOG PROTECTION OPTION 3 — LARGE SAND FILTER IN SERIES WITH A STORMFILTER

This option uses a **large sand filter** or **large sand filter vault** followed by a **StormFilter**. Sizing specifications for the large sand filters can be found in Sections 6.5.2 (p. 6-104) and 6.5.3 (p. 6-123). StormFilters are detailed in Section 6.5.5 (p. 6-134). **The order of facilities is interchangeable** since

[6] The Bog Protection menu targets a different set of pollutants than the Sensitive Lake or Enhanced Basic menus. Since the targeted pollutants are more difficult to remove, use of larger and/or additional treatment facilities is required.

[7] A *sphagnum bog wetland* is defined as a wetland having a predominance of sphagnum moss creating a substrate upon which a distinctive community of acid-loving plants is established (see Section 1.2.8.C and "Definitions" for more detail).

[8] The *size* of a sphagnum bog wetland is defined by the boundaries of the sphagnum bog plant community.

there are both advantages and disadvantages to having the StormFilter last in the train. *Note: A presettling cell is required if the first treatment facility is not preceded by a detention facility.*

❑ SPHAGNUM BOG PROTECTION OPTION 4 — THREE-FACILITY TREATMENT TRAIN

This option uses one of the basic water quality treatment options followed by two other facilities. Table 6.1.4.A lists the possible choices of facilities for this option.

TABLE 6.1.4.A
FACILITY COMBINATIONS FOR BOG PROTECTION TREATMENT TRAIN, OPTION 4

First Facility	Second Facility	Third Facility
Biofiltration swale (Sections 6.3.1, 6.3.2, and 6.3.3)	StormFilter* with CSF (Section 6.5.5)	Basic sand filter (Sections 6.5.2, 6.5.3, or 6.5.4)
Filter strip (Sections 6.3.4 and 6.3.5)	StormFilter* with CSF (Section 6.5.5)	Basic sand filter (Sections 6.5.2, 6.5.3, or 6.5.4)
Basic wetpond (Section 6.4.1)	Basic sand filter (Sections 6.5.2, 6.5.3, or 6.5.4)	StormFilter* with CSF (Section 6.5.5)
Basic combined detention and wetpool facility (Section 6.4.4)	Basic sand filter (Sections 6.5.2, 6.5.3, or 6.5.4)	StormFilter* with CSF (Section 6.5.5)
Wetvault (Section 6.4.2)	Basic sand filter (Sections 6.5.2, 6.5.3, or 6.5.4)	StormFilter* with CSF (Section 6.5.5)
Stormwater wetland (Section 6.4.3)	Basic sand filter (Sections 6.5.2, 6.5.3, or 6.5.4)	StormFilter* with CSF (Section 6.5.5)
StormFilter with ZPG (Section 6.5.5)	StormFilter* with CSF (Section 6.5.5)	Basic sand filter (Sections 6.5.2, 6.5.3, or 6.5.4)

** Note that the order of the second and third facilities may be interchanged. Other treatment options may be pursued through an experimental design adjustment per Section 1.4.*

6.1.5 HIGH-USE MENU

Where applied: The High-Use menu is applied to all new development and ***redevelopment projects*** that have ***high-use site*** characteristics, as defined in Chapter 1 (see "Special Requirement # 5, Oil Control"). Oil control devices are to be placed upstream of other facilities, as close to the source of oil generation as practical.

Note: Where this menu is applicable, it is in addition to the area-specific WQ menus.

Treatment goal: Oil control options given in the High-Use menu are designed to meet the goals of no visible sheen or less than 10 mg/L total petroleum hydrocarbons (TPH) leaving the ***site***.

❑ OIL CONTROL OPTION 1 — CATCH BASIN INSERT

Catch basin inserts (see Section 6.6.1, p. 6-139) may be used to meet the oil control requirements for new or redeveloped ***high-use sites***. For new development, the criteria for flow capture given in "Design Criteria" (p. 6-141) must be met. The flow capture criteria apply to the high-use area only, provided that flows not subject to high use are shunted around the insert. For redevelopment ***sites***, additional flow may be routed through the insert if it is not possible for the ***site*** to meet the flow capture criteria without installing new catch basins. Up to 40 percent additional flow may be directed to the insert in these cases.

All catch basin inserts must be fitted with oil sorbent media, to be changed at least monthly in wet weather (generally October through May) and whenever the surface of the media is covered with sediment. Acceptable sorbent media include wood fiber products, such as *Absorbent W* or *SuperSorb*; whole, green fibrous moss such as that supplied by floral shops (must not be ground peat moss); or polymers such as *Petrolok* and *Streamguard*™. These media have been investigated and found to retain captured oil fairly effectively. Cedar Grove compost was tested and found unacceptable for oil retention. Stormwater Management's patented CFS® mix was also tested, and although it performed fairly well, it did not retain oil as well as the other products tested. Therefore, the CFS® shall not be used in catch basin inserts for oil control.

Alternative media may be used if it can be shown they are substantially equivalent to the media listed above. The method that should be used to demonstrate oil retention is given in the decision paper entitled "Oil leachate tests for various adsorbent filter media," May 1994, King County Surface Water Management Division (now Water and Land Resources Division).

❑ OIL CONTROL OPTION 2 — BAFFLE OIL/WATER SEPARATOR

Baffle oil/water separators (see Section 6.6.2, p. 6-145) may be used to treat stormwater runoff from high-use developments and facilities that produce relatively high concentrations of oil and grease. Baffle separators historically have been effective in removing oil having droplet sizes of 150 microns or larger. If sized properly, they can achieve effluent concentrations as low as 10 to 15 mg/L.

❑ OIL CONTROL OPTION 3 — COALESCING PLATE OIL/WATER SEPARATOR

Coalescing plate separators (see Section 6.6.2, p. 6-145) may be used to treat stormwater runoff from high-use developments and facilities that can produce relatively high concentrations of oil and grease. Current technology and design of coalescing plate separators achieve effluent concentrations as low as 10 mg/L with removal of oil droplet sizes as small as 20 to 60 microns.

❑ OIL CONTROL OPTION 4 — LINEAR SAND FILTER

The linear sand filter (see Section 6.5.4, p. 6-129) is used in the Core Requirement #8 water quality menus (i.e., the Basic, Enhanced Basic, Sensitive Lake, and Sphagnum Bog menus), as well as for oil control in the High-Use menu (Special Requirement #5). However, if used to satisfy Core Requirement #8, the same facility shall not also be used to satisfy the oil control requirement (Special Requirement #5) unless

enhanced maintenance is assured. This is to prevent clogging of the filter by oil so that it will function for TSS or TP removal as well. Quarterly cleaning is required unless specified otherwise by the designer.

❑ OIL CONTROL OPTION 5 — WETVAULT WITH BAFFLE

A wetvault may be modified to fulfill requirements for oil control provided the following are true:

1. The criteria given at the end of Section 6.4.2.2 for modification of wetvaults for use as a baffle oil/water separators shall be met, and
2. Assurance is provided that the maintenance frequency and oil removal frequency for baffle oil/water separators will be followed (see Section 6.6.2, p. 6-145).

❑ OIL CONTROL OPTION 6 — COMPLIANCE WITH OTHER AGENCY REQUIREMENTS

If the ***site*** has a National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) industrial stormwater permit that specifically addresses oil control for the target ***pollution-generating impervious surface*** of the ***site***, compliance with NPDES permit conditions may be adequate to comply with the oil control requirements of Special Requirement #5. Copies of the ***site's*** NPDES permit requirement and the best management practices specifically addressing oil control shall be submitted to determine adequacy.

If the area under the covered fueling island drains to the sanitary sewer, then only the remaining high-use area actually draining to the storm drainage system (normally ingress and egress routes) need comply with the High-Use menu.

Note: Covered fueling islands draining to the sanitary sewer or a dead-end sump are recommended in the Department of Ecology's Stormwater Management Manual for the Puget Sound Basin, Section IV 4.1 and required by the King County Industrial Waste Section for new construction.

6.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR WQ FACILITIES

This section presents general requirements and other information applicable to the design of water quality (WQ) facilities. Topics covered include the following:

- "Water Quality Design Flows," Section 6.2.1
- "Sequence of Facilities," Section 6.2.2 (p. 6-19)
- "Setbacks, Slopes, and Embankments," Section 6.2.3 (p. 6-21)
- "Facility Liners," Section 6.2.4 (p. 6-23)
- "Flow Splitter Designs," Section 6.2.5 (p. 6-29)
- "Flow Spreading Options," Section 6.2.6 (p. 6-33).

When detail in the WQ designs is lacking, refer to Chapter 5 for guidance. In cases where requirements are extremely costly, a less expensive alternative that is functionally equivalent in terms of performance, environmental effects, health and safety, and maintenance may be sought through the adjustment process (see Section 1.4).

Emerging Technologies

New emerging technologies may be reviewed through an Experimental Design Adjustment per Section 1.4. In addition, any new treatment technologies must be approved through the state Department of Ecology's *TAPE program*[9] before the technology can be approved by King County. Once a treatment technology has been shown to meet pollutant removal goals, King County may allow use of the technology through a blanket adjustment per Section 1.4. New technologies may be limited to use only on projects that will be privately owned and maintained. The blanket adjustment will specify the design criteria.

Use of Metal Materials

Galvanized metals leach zinc into the environment, especially in standing water situations. High zinc concentrations, sometimes in the range that can be toxic to aquatic life, have been observed in the region.[10] Therefore, use of galvanized materials in stormwater facilities and conveyance systems is discouraged. Where other metals, such as aluminum or stainless steel, or plastics are available, they shall be used.

6.2.1 WATER QUALITY DESIGN FLOWS

Water Quality Design Flow

The water quality design flow is defined as follows:

- *Preceding detention*: **60% of the developed two-year peak flow rate, as determined using the KCRTS model** with 15-minute time steps calibrated to ***site*** conditions (see Chapter 3).
- *Downstream of detention*: The full **2-year release rate from the detention facility**.

The KCRTS model will typically be used to compute the WQ design flow. When examining the peak flow rates associated with various runoff volumes, it was found that detained flows and undetained flows must be described differently. However, unlike peak flows, the KCRTS model computation of volume of

[9] *TAPE* stands for Technology Assessment Protocol – Ecology. For more information, see Ecology's website at http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/newtech/index.html.

[10] Finlayson, 1990. Unpublished data from reconnaissance of Metro Park and Ride lot stormwater characteristics.

runoff is unaffected by whether or not the runoff is detained. Therefore, facilities such as wetponds, which are sized by a simple volume-based approach that does not route flows through a detention facility, are the same size whether they precede or follow detention.

Note that facilities which are sized based on volume and which include routing of flows through a detention facility, such as the detailed sand filter method, are significantly smaller when located downstream of detention, even though the same volume of water is treated in either situation. This is because the detention facility routing sequence stores peaks within the pond and releases them at a slow rate, reducing the size of the sand filter pond subsequently needed (the volume needed to store the peaks need not be provided again in the sand filter pond).

Flow Volume to be Treated

When water quality treatment is required pursuant to the core and special requirements of this manual, it is intended that a minimum of **95% of the annual average runoff volume** in the (8 year) time series, as determined with the KCRTS model, be treated. Designs using the WQ design flow (as discussed above) will treat this minimum volume.

Treatable Flows

As stated in Chapter 1, only runoff from target pollution-generating surfaces must be treated using the water quality facility options indicated in the applicable water quality menu. These surfaces include both ***pollution-generating impervious surface*** and ***pollution-generating pervious surface***. "Target" means that portion from which runoff must be treated using a water quality facility as specified in Chapter 1. ***Pollution-generating impervious surfaces*** are those impervious surfaces which are subject to vehicular use or storage of erodible or leachable materials, wastes, or chemicals; and which receive direct rainfall or the run-on or blow-in of rainfall. For subdivisions, target ***pollution-generating impervious surfaces*** typically include right-of-way improvements (roads), parking areas and driveways that are not ***fully dispersed*** as specified in Section 1.2.3.2. Metal roofs are also considered to be ***pollution-generating impervious surface*** unless they are treated to prevent leaching. ***Pollution-generating pervious surfaces*** are those non-impervious surfaces subject to use of pesticides and fertilizers, loss of soil, or the use or storage of erodible or leachable materials, wastes, or chemicals. For subdivisions, target ***pollution-generating pervious surfaces*** typically include lawns and landscaped areas that are not ***fully dispersed*** and from which there will not be a concentrated surface discharge in a natural channel or man-made conveyance system from the ***site***.

The following points summarize which ***site*** flows must be treated and under what circumstances:

- All runoff from target ***pollution-generating impervious surfaces*** is to be treated through the water quality facility or facilities required in Chapter 1 and specified in the Chapter 6 menus.
- Runoff from lawns and landscaped areas generally overflows toward street drainage systems where it is conveyed to treatment facilities along with the road runoff. However, sometimes runoff from backyards drains into open space or buffer areas. In these cases, buffers may be used to provide the requisite water quality treatment provided (1) runoff sheet flows into the buffer or a dispersal trench is provided to disperse flows broadly into the buffer, and (2) the flow path through the pollution-generating area is limited to about 200 feet.
- Drainage from impervious surfaces that are **not pollution-generating** (such as most roofs) or are **not target pollution-generating surfaces** may bypass the treatment facility.[11] Roof runoff is, however, still subject to flow control per Core Requirement #3. Note that **metal roofs** are considered pollution-generating unless they are treated to prevent leaching.

[11] Available data on the quality of roof runoff was examined. Although there are instances of polluted roof runoff, they tend to be related to galvanized roofing materials or industrial processes. There is also data that suggests the pollutant concentration of atmospheric fallout decreases with vertical elevation. See "Water Quality Thresholds Decision Paper," April 1994, King County Surface Water Management Division (now Water and Land Resources Division).

- Drainage from areas in native vegetation should not be mixed with untreated runoff from streets and driveways, if possible. It is best to infiltrate or disperse this relatively clean runoff to maximize recharge to shallow groundwater, wetlands, and streams.
- If runoff from roofs or areas in native vegetation reaches a water quality facility, flows from those areas must be included in the sizing calculations for the facility. Once runoff from non-pollution-generating areas and non-target pollution-generating areas is combined with runoff from target pollution-generating areas, it cannot be separated before treatment.

6.2.2 SEQUENCE OF FACILITIES

As specified in the water quality menus, where more than one water quality facility is used, the order is often prescribed. This is because the specific pollutant removal role of the second or third facility in a treatment train often assumes that significant solids settling has already occurred. For example, phosphorus removal using a two-facility treatment train relies on the second facility (sand filter) to remove a finer fraction of solids than those removed by the first facility.

There is a larger question, however, of whether water quality facilities should be placed upstream or downstream of detention facilities. In general, all water quality facilities may be installed upstream of detention facilities, although presettling basins are needed for sand filters and infiltration basins. Not all water quality facilities, however, can be located downstream of detention facilities. Those facilities that treat unconcentrated flows, such as filter strips and narrow-area biofilters, will seldom be practical downstream of detention facilities. Other facilities present special problems that must be considered before placement downstream is advisable.

Two facilities that fall into this latter category are the basic biofiltration swale (see Section 6.3.1, p. 6-39) and the sand filter or sand filter vault (see Sections 6.5.2 or 6.5.3). For both of these facilities, the prolonged low flows resulting from Level 2 or 3 flow control may interfere with facility operation. In the case of basic biofilters, prolonged flows, generally in excess of about two weeks, will cause the grass to die. This can be dealt with by using the wet biofilter design.

In the case of sand filters, prolonged flows may result in the sand being saturated for long periods. Saturated sand can become anoxic (lose all oxygen) when dissolved oxygen in the pore water becomes depleted. If the sand layer becomes anoxic, some forms of phosphorus can become soluble and be released, negating the positive P removals achieved earlier. To prevent long periods of sand saturation, adjustments may be necessary after the sand filter is in operation to bypass some areas of the filter, allowing them to drain completely. If saturated conditions are present after facility operation, adjustments to the design shall be required. It may also be possible to employ a different alternative that uses facilities less sensitive to prolonged flows. Table 6.2.2.A summarizes placement considerations of water quality facilities in relation to detention.

Oil control facilities must be located upstream of water quality facilities and as close to the source of oil-generating activity as possible. They should also be located upstream of detention facilities, if possible.

TABLE 6.2.2.A WATER QUALITY FACILITY PLACEMENT IN RELATION TO DETENTION		
Water Quality Facility	**Preceding Detention**	**Following Detention**
Basic biofiltration swale (Section 6.3.1)	OK	OK if downstream of Level 1 detention. However, prolonged flows may cause soil saturation and injure grass. If downstream of a Level 2 or 3 flow control pond, the wet biofiltration swale may be needed. (See Section 6.3.2.)
Wet biofiltration swale (Section 6.3.2)	OK	OK
Continuous inflow biofiltration swale (Section 6.3.3)	OK	No—must be installed before flows concentrate.
Filter strip or roadway filter strip (Sections 6.3.4 and 6.3.5)	OK	No—must be installed before flows concentrate.
Basic or large wetpond (Section 6.4.1)	OK	OK—less water level fluctuation in ponds downstream of detention may improve aesthetic qualities.
Basic or large combined detention and wetpond (Section 6.4.4)	Not applicable	Not applicable
Wetvault (Section 6.4.2)	OK	OK
Basic or large sand filter or sand filter vault (Section 6.5.2 or 6.5.3)	OK, but presettling and control of floatables needed	OK—sand filters downstream of a Level 2 or 3 flow control pond may require field adjustments if prolonged flows cause sand saturation and interfere with the phosphorus removal mechanism.
Stormwater wetland/pond (Section 6.4.3)	OK	OK—less water level fluctuation and better plant diversity are possible if the stormwater wetland is located downstream of the detention facility.

6.2.3 SETBACKS, SLOPES, AND EMBANKMENTS

This section presents the general requirements for water quality facility setbacks, side slopes, fencing, and embankments.

When locating water quality facilities near wetlands and streams, there is a potential that the water level may be lowered. Care in the design and siting of the facility or conveyance elements associated with the facility is needed to assure this impact is avoided. Sufficient setback of the facility from the water body is one method to prevent impact.

❑ SETBACKS FROM TRACT LINE

Water quality facilities that are maintained by the County must be in tracts dedicated to the County. Different water quality facilities and different types of side slopes (bermed vs. cut) have somewhat different requirements for setback from the tract line or setbacks for structures on adjacent tracts; these various requirements are given in Table 6.2.3.A (p. 6-22).

Most setbacks from tract lines are for maintenance equipment maneuverability. Setback requirements do not apply to water quality facilities that are privately maintained, but adequate room for maintenance equipment shall be considered during ***site*** design. Restrictions on the placement of structures on adjacent internal lots, as specified for infiltration facilities in Sections 5.4.2, 5.4.3, and 5.4.4, do however apply to privately maintained facilities.

❑ SIDE SLOPES, FENCING, AND EMBANKMENTS

Side slopes for water quality facilities should not exceed a slope of 3H:1V. Moderately undulating slopes are acceptable and can provide a more natural setting for the facility. In general, gentle side slopes improve the aesthetic attributes of the facility and enhance safety.

Water quality facilities must meet the following requirements for side slopes, fencing, and embankments:

1. If the water quality facility (wetpond, sand filter, or stormwater wetland) will hold standing water deeper than 2 feet, **fencing is required** for interior slopes steeper than 3H:1V. If only sections of the slope are steeper than 3:1, barrier shrubs, such as barberry, may be used rather than fencing for sections shorter than 20 feet. Planting climbing vines at the base of a fence can enhance its aesthetic qualities.
2. If required, fencing shall be placed **at or above the overflow water surface**. Side slope and attendant fencing requirements are not applicable to slopes **above** the overflow water surface. The specific fencing requirements given in Chapter 5 (see Section 5.3) also apply to WQ facilities.
3. If facilities are **privately owned and maintained**, the fencing requirements of this manual are recommended rather than required. However, the ***site*** must still comply with any fencing requirements in other codes or regulations.
4. For facilities owned and maintained by the County, at least **25 percent of the facility perimeter** shall have interior sides no steeper than 3H:1V, even if fenced, to minimize safety risks. Access to the side slopes shall be provided for maintenance. For private facilities, the same is recommended rather than required.
5. Interior side slopes may be **retaining walls**, provided that the design is prepared and stamped by a ***civil engineer***. A fence shall be provided along the top of the wall.
6. Exterior side slopes shall not be **steeper than 2H:1V** unless confirmed stable by a geotechnical engineer.
7. Water quality facilities with embankments that impound water must comply with Washington State **dam safety regulations** (WAC 173-175). Under current regulations (as of January 1996), if the

impoundment has a storage capacity (including both water and sediment storage volumes) greater than 10 acre-feet above natural ground level and a dam height of more than 6 feet, then dam safety design and review are required by the Washington Department of Ecology (Ecology). If the storage capacity is less than 10 acre-feet above natural ground level, then the facility is exempt from Ecology review. If the dam height is less than 6 feet but capacity is greater than 10 acre-feet, then Ecology reviews on a case-by-case-basis to determine the hazard potential downstream in the event of a failure.

Intent: The requirements for slopes and fencing are intended to accomplish the following objectives:

- To prevent persons from inadvertently slipping into the pond, either by providing gentle interior side slopes (3H:1V or gentler) or by fencing or other barrier
- To allow easy egress from the pond (gentle side slopes, safety benches, etc.) when access is not restricted by a fence or other barrier
- To ensure interior and exterior slopes or embankments are stable and will not create a hazardous or damaging situation.

TABLE 6.2.3.A SETBACK REQUIREMENTS *

WQ FACILITY	SETBACK FROM TRACT LINE		
	At Grade or Underground	**If Facility Slope is Cut into Grade**	**If Slope is an Embankment**
Biofiltration swale	N/A	See conveyance system requirements (Section 4.1)	5 feet from toe of exterior slope
Filter strip	5 feet from toe	5 feet from toe	N/A
Wetpond	N/A	5 feet from emergency overflow water surface (WS)	5 feet from toe of exterior slope
Combined detention and wetpond	N/A	5 feet from emergency overflow WS	5 feet from toe of exterior slope
Wetvault or sand filter vault	5 feet from property line	N/A	N/A
Sand filter ponding area	N/A	5 feet from emergency overflow WS	5 feet from toe of exterior slope
Linear sand filter	5 feet from property line	N/A	N/A
StormFilter	5 feet from property line	N/A	N/A

* Greater setback distances are required whenever expressly stated or referenced in this manual or when required by other County codes or other agencies. Steep slopes, land slide areas, open water features, springs, wells, and septic tank drainfields are features that often have additional setback requirements. Some typical setback distances imposed by the Seattle-King County Department of Public Health include the following:

- Open water features: 100 feet
- Wells: 100 feet
- Springs used for potable water: 200 feet
- Septic tank drainfields: 100 feet for open ponds. Wetvaults or tanks are usually considered watertight and often have no specific setback requirements. However, tanks or vaults must not be located so that they could impede downgradient subsurface effluent flows.

6.2.4 FACILITY LINERS

Water quality facilities in which water is in direct contact with the soil must be lined with either a **low permeability liner** or a **treatment liner** when the soil does not have properties which reduce the risk of groundwater contamination from stormwater runoff that may infiltrate in the facility. Such properties are defined and determined as specified in the "Groundwater Protection" requirements for infiltration facilities in Section 5.4.1. In short, a liner is required if the soil has an *infiltration rate*[12] greater than 9 inches per hour (0.15 inches per minute) and does not meet any of the other soil property criteria required for groundwater protection in Section 5.4.1. In areas designated as ***groundwater protection areas***, this liner requirement applies when the soil infiltration rate exceeds 2.4 inches per hour (0.04 inches per minute) and the other soil property criteria for ***groundwater protection areas*** are not met. If detention ponds are used in soils with infiltration rates above the specified rates, either water quality treatment facilities must precede the detention pond, or the detention pond must also be lined.

In addition to groundwater protection considerations, some facility types require permanent water for proper functioning. An example is the first cell of a wetpond.

Low permeability liners reduce infiltration to a very slow rate, generally less than 0.02 inches per hour (1.4×10^{-5} cm/s). Low permeability liners may be fashioned from compacted till, clay, geomembrane, or concrete as detailed in Section 6.2.4.1 (p. 6-26). Till liners are preferred because of their general resilience and ease of maintenance.

Treatment liners amend the soil with materials that treat stormwater before it reaches more freely draining soils. They have slow rates of infiltration, generally less than 2.4 inches per hour (1.7×10^{3} cm/s), but not as slow as low permeability liners. Treatment liners may use in-place native soils or imported soils. Options for this type of liner include a fine sand layer or a soil layer which has high organic content; see Section 6.2.4.2 (p. 6-27) for more option details.

Intent: In soils with high rates of infiltration, the potential exists for the transfer of pollutants from stormwater to groundwater before treatment in water quality facilities occurs. Liners are intended to reduce the likelihood that pollutants in stormwater will reach the groundwater when WQ treatment facilities are constructed in soils with high infiltration rates. A more conservative infiltration rate is used as the lining threshold for WQ facilities in ***groundwater protection areas***. This is because the potential consequences of pollutant transfer are more serious in these areas.

General Design Criteria

1. Table 6.2.4.A (p. 6-25) identifies the type of liner for use with various water quality treatment facilities. If a facility requires a liner, a **treatment liner** shall be provided, except where a low permeability liner is noted in Table 6.2.4.A.
2. Liners shall be evenly placed over the bottom and/or sides of the treatment area of the facility as indicated in Table 6.2.4.A. Areas above the treatment volume that are required to pass flows greater than the water quality treatment flow (or volume) need not be lined. However, the lining must be extended to the top of the interior side slope and anchored if it cannot be permanently secured by other means.
3. For **low permeability liners**, the following criteria apply**:**
   a) Where the seasonal high groundwater elevation is likely to contact a low permeability liner, liner buoyancy may be a concern. A low permeability liner shall not be used in this situation unless evaluated and recommended by a geotechnical engineer.

[12] Infiltration rates can either be measured in the field using methods given in Chapter 5 or inferred from the USDA soil textural triangle (shown in Section 5.4.1). If inferred, the measured infiltration rate is assumed less than 9 inches per hour for all soil texture classes except sand and loamy sand.

b) Where grass must be planted over a low permeability liner per the facility design, a minimum of 6 inches of good topsoil or compost-amended native soil (2 inches compost tilled into 6 inches of native soil) must be placed over the liner in the area to be planted. Twelve inches is preferred.

c) If an **identification sign** is required for the facility (see detention pond requirements in Section 5.3.1), the face of the sign shall bear a note indicating the facility is lined to protect water quality. In addition, the back of the sign shall include information indicating which facilities are lined, the extent of lining, the liner material used, the liner thickness (if clay or till), and the type and distance of the marker above the liner (if a geomembrane). This information need only be readable by someone standing at arms-length from the sign.

4. If a **treatment liner** will be below the seasonal high water level, the pollutant removal performance of the liner must be evaluated by a geotechnical or groundwater specialist and found to be as protective as if the liner were above the level of the groundwater.

See Sections 6.2.4.1 and 6.2.4.2 for more specific design criteria on the various options for low permeability liners and treatment liners.

TABLE 6.2.4.A LINING TYPES FOR WQ FACILITIES		
WQ Facility	**Area to be Lined**	**Type of Liner**
Basic biofiltration swale	Bottom and sides	Treatment liner
Wet biofiltration swale	Bottom and sides	Low permeability liner (If the swale will intercept the seasonal high groundwater table, a treatment liner is recommended.)
Continuous inflow biofiltration swale	Bottom and sides	Treatment liner
Filter strip, narrow-area filter strip	Bottom	Treatment liner
Wetpond	**First cell**: bottom and sides to WQ design water surface	Low permeability liner (If the cell will intercept the seasonal high groundwater table, a treatment liner is recommended.)
	Second cell: bottom and sides to WQ design water surface	Treatment liner
	Single cell (4L:1W or greater): bottom and sides to WQ design water surface	Low permeability liner
Combined detention/WQ facility	**First cell**: bottom and sides to the 2-year live storage elevation	Low permeability liner (If the cell will intercept the seasonal high groundwater table, a treatment liner is recommended.)
	Second cell: bottom and sides to the 2-year live storage elevation	Treatment liner
	Single cell (4L:1W or greater): bottom and sides to the 2-year live storage elevation	Low permeability liner
Wet vault	Not applicable	No liner needed
Stormwater wetland	Bottom and sides, both cells	Low permeability liner (If the facility will intercept the seasonal high groundwater table, a treatment liner is recommended.)
Sand filter	Pond sides only	Treatment liner
Sand filter vault	Not applicable	No liner needed
Linear sand filter	Not applicable if in vault Bottom and sides of presettling cell if not in vault	No liner needed Low permeability or treatment liner
StormFilter (in vault)	Not applicable	No liner needed

6.2.4.1 DESIGN CRITERIA FOR LOW PERMEABILITY LINER OPTIONS

This section presents the design criteria for each of the following four low permeability liner options:

- Compacted till liners
- Clay liners
- Geomembrane liners
- Concrete liners.

❑ COMPACTED TILL LINERS

1. Liner thickness shall be 18 inches after compaction.
2. Soil shall be compacted to 95% minimum dry density, modified proctor method (ASTM D-1557).
3. A different depth and density sufficient to retard the infiltration rate to 2.4×10^{-5} inches per minute (1×10^{-6} cm/s) may also be used in lieu of Criteria 1 and 2.
4. Soil should be placed in 6 inch lifts.
5. Soils may be used that meet the following gradation:

Sieve Size	Percent Passing
6 inch	100
4 inch	90
#4	70 - 100
#200	20 - 100

❑ CLAY LINERS

1. Liner thickness shall be 12 inches.
2. Clay shall be compacted to 95% minimum dry density, modified proctor method (ASTM D-1557).
3. A different depth and density sufficient to retard the infiltration rate to 2.4×10^{-5} inches per minute (1×10^{-6} cm/s) may also be used in lieu of Criteria 1 and 2.
4. The slope of clay liners must be restricted to 3H:1V for all areas requiring soil cover; otherwise, the soil layer must be stabilized by another method so that soil slippage into the facility does not occur. Any alternative soil stabilization method must take maintenance access into consideration.
5. Where clay liners form the sides of ponds maintained by the County, the interior side slope must not be steeper than 3:1, irrespective of fencing. This restriction is to ensure that anyone falling into the pond may safely climb out. The same criterion is recommended for privately owned and maintained ponds.

❑ GEOMEMBRANE LINERS

1. Geomembrane liners shall be UV resistant and have a minimum thickness of 30 mils. A thickness of 40 mils shall be used in areas of maintenance access or where heavy machinery must be operated over the membrane.
2. Geomembranes shall be bedded according to the manufacturer's recommendations.

3. Liners shall be installed so that they can be covered with 12 inches of top dressing forming the bottom and sides of the water quality facility.[13] Top dressing shall consist of 6 inches of crushed rock covered with 6 inches of native soil. The rock layer is to mark the location of the liner for future maintenance operations. As an alternative to crushed rock, 12 inches of native soil may be used if orange plastic "safety fencing" or another highly-visible, continuous marker is embedded 6 inches above the membrane.
4. If possible, liners should be of a contrasting color so that maintenance workers are aware of any areas where a liner may have become exposed when maintaining the facility.
5. Geomembrane liners shall not be used on slopes steeper than 5H:1V to prevent the top dressing material from slipping. Textured liners may be used on slopes up to 3H:1V upon recommendation by a geotechnical engineer or engineering geologist that the top dressing will be stable for all ***site*** conditions, including maintenance.

❑ CONCRETE LINERS

1. Portland cement liners are allowed irrespective of facility size, and shotcrete may be used on slopes. However, specifications must be developed by an engineer who certifies the liner against cracking or losing water retention ability under expected conditions of operation, including facility maintenance operations. Weight of maintenance equipment can be up to 80,000 pounds when fully loaded.
2. Asphalt concrete may not be used for liners due to its permeability to many organic pollutants.
3. If grass is to be grown over a concrete liner, slopes must be no steeper than 5H:1V to prevent the top dressing material from slipping.

6.2.4.2 DESIGN CRITERIA FOR TREATMENT LINER OPTIONS

This section presents the design criteria for each of the following two treatment liner options:

- Sand layer
- Organic layer.

❑ SAND LAYER

1. A one-foot thick layer of sand may be used as a treatment layer beneath a water quality or detention facility if it is equivalent or finer than one of the following:
   a) The sand filter specification given in Table 6.5.2.C (p. 6-113)
   b) One of the following specifications:

Sieve Size	**Option 1** Minimum Percent Passing	**Option 2** Minimum Percent Passing
#4	75	75
#40	25	50
#200	5	2

2. Certification shall be provided to the DDES inspector that the sand meets one of the above criteria. Such certification may be provided by the sand supplier or by a soils testing laboratory.
3. In-place soils may be substituted for sand if they meet one of the above criteria as demonstrated by testing one soil sample per 1,000 square feet of facility area. Each sample shall be a composite of subsamples taken throughout the depth of the treatment layer.

[13] An exception is the linear sand filter which does not require a soil top dressing to the liner.

❑ ORGANIC SOIL LAYER

1. A one-foot thick layer of soil with a minimum organic content of 1% AND a minimum cation exchange capacity (CEC) of 5 milliequivalents/100 grams may be used as a treatment layer beneath a water quality or detention facility.

   If a thicker layer of treatment soil is available, the organic content and CEC requirements can be reduced by $^1/_2$ unit for each additional foot of soil thickness provided.

   Example

   If the treatment liner will be 3 feet thick, 2 feet more than the required 1 foot, the organic content may be reduced by $^1/_2$ x 2 = 1 unit. The organic content could then be 4%, and the CEC requirement could be 4 milliequivalents/100 grams and still meet the groundwater protection criteria.

2. **Organic content** shall be measured on a dry weight basis using ASTM D2974.
3. **Cation exchange capacity** (CEC) shall be tested using EPA laboratory method 9081.
4. **Certification** by a soils testing laboratory that imported soil meets the organic content and CEC criteria above shall be provided to the DDES inspector.
5. **Animal manures** used in treatment soil layers must be sterilized because of potential for bacterial contamination of the groundwater.
6. To demonstrate that in-place soils meet Requirement 1 above, one **sample** per 1,000 square feet of facility area shall be tested. Each sample shall be a composite of subsamples taken throughout the depth of the treatment layer (usually two to six feet below the expected facility invert).
7. If a reduction in the organic content and CEC criteria is sought because the treatment layer is thicker than 2 feet, soil tests must represent the entire treatment layer.

6.2.5 FLOW SPLITTER DESIGNS

Most water quality facilities may be designed as **flow-through, or on-line, systems** with flows above the water quality design flow or volume simply passing through the facility untreated. However, it is sometimes desirable to restrict flows to water quality treatment facilities and bypass the remaining higher flows around them **(off-line facilities)**. This can be accomplished by **splitting flows** in excess of the water quality design flow upstream of the facility and diverting higher flows to a bypass pipe or channel. The bypass typically enters a detention facility or the downstream receiving drainage system, depending on flow control requirements. In most cases, it is a designer's choice whether WQ facilities are designed as on-line or off-line; an exception is oil/water separators, which must be designed off-line.

A crucial factor in designing flow splitters is to ensure that low flows are delivered to the treatment facility up to the **WQ design flow rate**. Above this rate, additional flows are diverted to the bypass system with minimal increase in head at the flow splitter structure to avoid surcharging the water quality facility under high flow conditions.

Flow splitters are typically catch basins or vaults with concrete baffles. In place of baffles, the splitter mechanism may be a half tee section with a solid top and an orifice in the bottom of the tee section. A full tee option may also be used (see "Design Criteria" below). Two possible design options for flow splitters are shown in Figure 6.2.5.A and Figure 6.2.5.B. Other equivalent designs that achieve the result of splitting low flows, up to the WQ design flow, into the WQ treatment facility and divert higher flows around the facility are also acceptable.

6.2.5.1 METHODS OF ANALYSIS

Flow splitters may be modeled using the two outlet reservoir routine as described in Section 3.2.4, Storage Routing. The stage/discharge relationship of the outflow pipes should be determined using the backwater analysis techniques in Chapter 5. The orifice shall be sized per Section 5.3.4.2. Weirs should be analyzed as sharp-crested weirs.

6.2.5.2 DESIGN CRITERIA

General

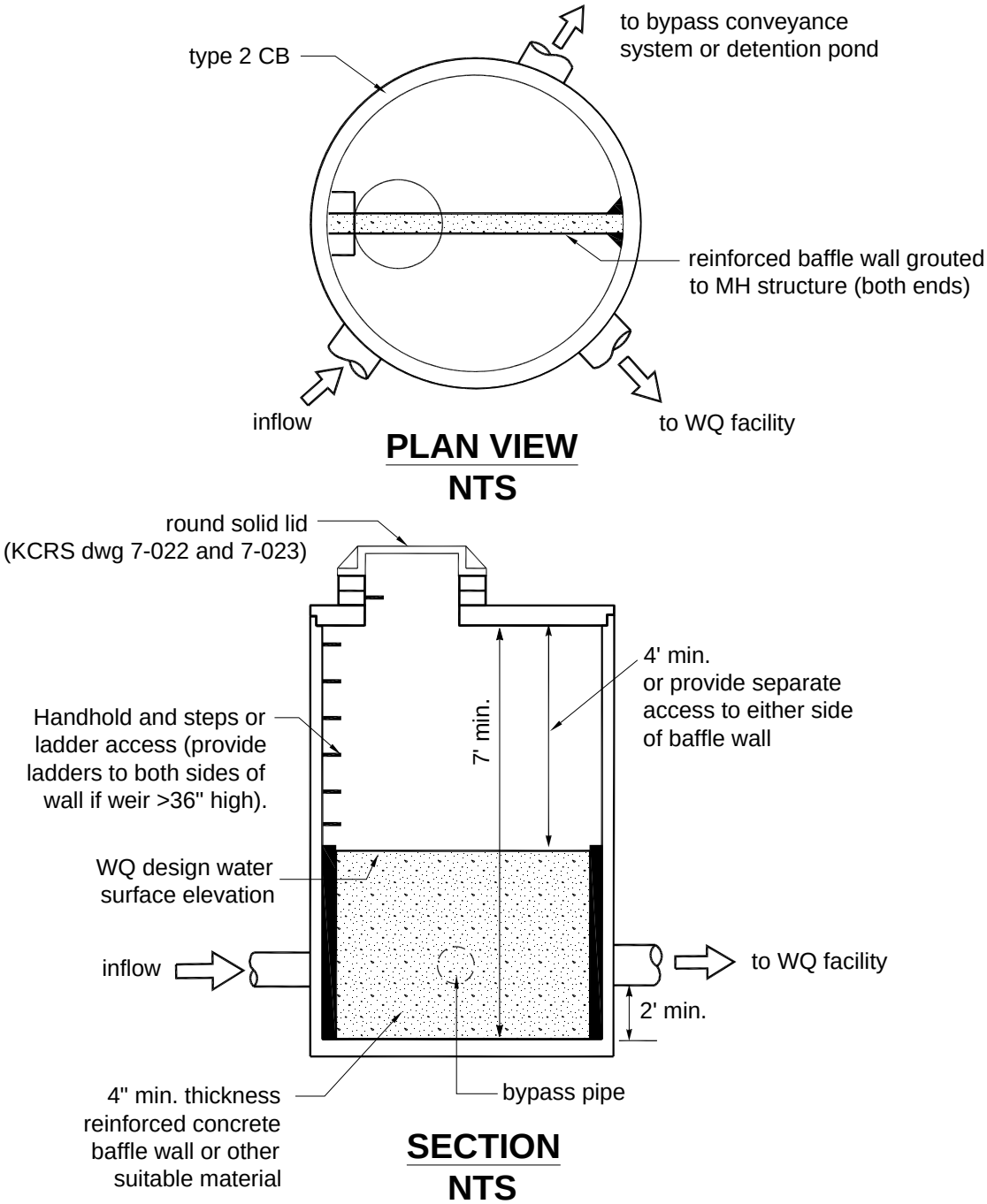
1. A flow splitter shall be designed to deliver the required **water quality design flow rate** specified in Section 6.2.1 (p. 6-17) to the WQ treatment facility. For the basic size sand filter, which is sized based on volume, use the WQ design flow rate to design the splitter. For the large sand filter, use the 2-year flow rate.
2. The **top of the weir** shall be located at the water surface for the design flow. Remaining flows enter the bypass line. Flows modeled using the KCRTS program shall use 15-minute time steps.
3. The **maximum head** shall be minimized for flow in excess of the water quality design flow. Specifically, flow to the WQ facility at the 100-year water surface shall not increase the design WQ flow by more than 10%.
4. Either design shown in Figure 6.2.5.A (p. 6-31) or Figure 6.2.5.B (p. 6-32) shall be used. Equivalent designs are also acceptable.
5. Special applications, such as roads, may require the use of a **modified flow splitter**. The baffle wall may be fitted with a notch and adjustable weir plate to proportion runoff volumes other than high flows.
6. For ponding facilities, backwater effects must be included in designing the height of the standpipe in the catch basin.

7. Ladder or step and handhold access (per King County Road standards) shall be provided. If the weir wall is higher than 36 inches, two ladders, one to either side of the wall, are required.

Material Requirements

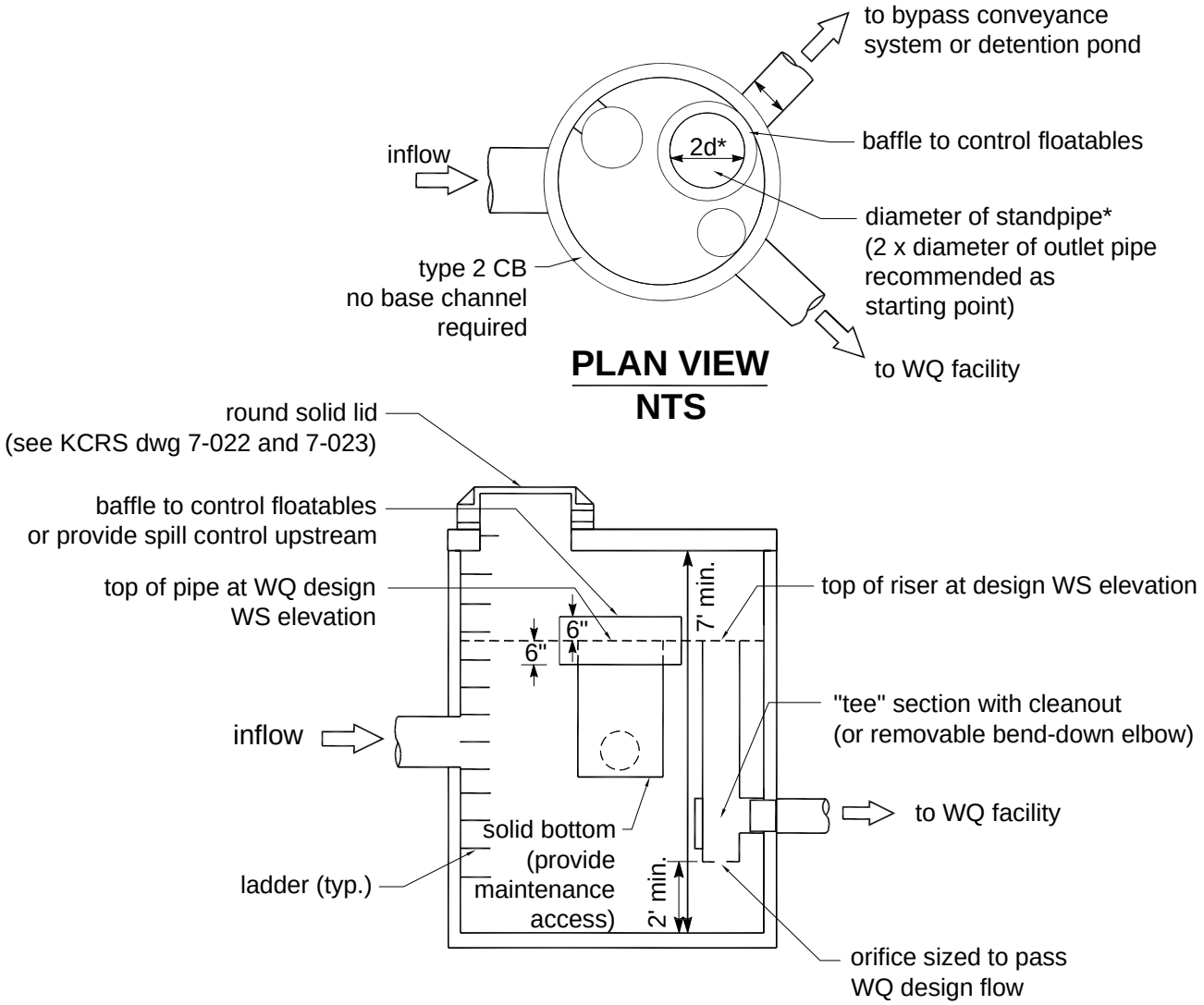
1. The **splitter baffle** shall be installed in a Type 2 catch basin or vault.
2. The **baffle wall** shall be made of reinforced concrete or another suitable material resistant to corrosion, and have a minimum 4-inch thickness. The minimum clearance between the top of the baffle wall and the bottom of the catch basin cover shall be 4 feet; otherwise, dual access points shall be provided.
3. All **metal parts** shall be corrosion resistant. Examples of preferred materials include aluminum, stainless steel, and plastic. Zinc and galvanized materials are discouraged because of aquatic toxicity. Painting metal parts shall not be allowed because of poor longevity.

FIGURE 6.2.5.A FLOW SPLITTER, OPTION A



Note: The water quality discharge pipe may require an orifice plate to be installed on the outlet to control the height of the design water surface (weir height). The design water surface should be set to provide a minimum headwater/diameter ratio of 2.0 on the outlet pipe.

FIGURE 6.2.5.B FLOW SPLITTER, OPTION B



***NOTE:** Diameter (d) of standpipe should be large enough to minimize head above WQ design WS and to keep WQ design flows from increasing more than 10% during 100-year flows.

6.2.6 FLOW SPREADING OPTIONS

Flow spreaders function to uniformly spread flows across the inflow portion of water quality facilities (e.g., sand filter, biofiltration swale, or filter strip). There are five flow spreader options presented in this section:

- Anchored plate (Option A)
- Concrete sump box (Option B)
- Notched curb spreader (Option C)
- Through-curb ports (Option D)
- Interrupted curbing (Option E).

Options A through C may be used for spreading flows that are concentrated. Any one of these options may be used when spreading is required by the facility design criteria. Options A through C may also be used for unconcentrated flows, and in some cases must be used, such as to correct for moderate grade changes along a filter strip.

Options D and E are only for flows that are already unconcentrated when they enter a filter strip or continuous inflow biofiltration swale. Other flow spreader options are possible with approval from DDES.

6.2.6.1 DESIGN CRITERIA FOR FLOW SPREADER OPTIONS

General Design Criteria

1. Where flow enters the flow spreader through a pipe, it is recommended that the **pipe be submerged** to the extent practical to dissipate energy as much as possible.
2. For **higher velocity inflows** (greater than 5 cfs for the 100-yr storm), a Type 1 catch basin should be positioned in the spreader, and the inflow pipe should enter the catch basin with flows exiting through the top grate. The top of the grate should be lower than the level spreader plate, or if a notched spreader is used, lower than the bottom of the v-notches.
3. Table 4.2.2.F in Chapter 4 provides general guidance for rock protection at outfalls.

❑ OPTION A — ANCHORED PLATE (FIGURE 6.2.6.A)

1. An anchored plate flow spreader shall be **preceded by a sump** having a minimum depth of 8 inches and minimum width of 24 inches. If not otherwise stabilized, the sump area shall be lined to reduce erosion and to provide energy dissipation.
2. The top surface of the flow spreader plate **shall be level**, projecting a minimum of 2 inches above the ground surface of the water quality facility, or **v-notched** with notches 6 to 10 inches on center and 1 to 6 inches deep (use shallower notches with closer spacing). Alternative designs are allowed.
3. A flow spreader plate shall extend horizontally beyond the bottom width of the facility to prevent water from eroding the side slope. The **horizontal extent** should be such that the bank is protected for all flows up to the 100-year flow or the maximum flow that will enter the WQ facility.
4. Flow spreader plates shall be **securely fixed in place**.
5. Flow spreader plates may be made of either **wood, metal, fiberglass reinforced plastic, or other durable material**. If wood, pressure treated 4 by 10-inch lumber or landscape timbers are acceptable.
6. **Anchor posts** shall be 4-inch square concrete, tubular stainless steel, or other material resistant to decay.

❑ OPTION B — CONCRETE SUMP BOX (FIGURE 6.2.6.B)

1. The **wall of the downstream side** of a rectangular concrete sump box shall extend a minimum of 2 inches above the treatment bed. This serves as a weir to spread the flows uniformly across the bed.
2. The **downstream wall** of a sump box shall have "wing walls" at both ends. **Side walls and returns** shall be slightly higher than the weir so that erosion of the side slope is minimized.
3. **Concrete** for a sump box may be either cast-in-place or precast, but the bottom of the sump shall be reinforced with wire mesh for cast-in-place sumps.
4. Sump boxes shall be placed over bases that consists of 4 inches of crushed rock, $^5/_8$-inch minus to help assure the sump remains level.

❑ OPTION C — NOTCHED CURB SPREADER (FIGURE 6.2.6.C)

Notched curb spreader sections shall be made of extruded concrete laid side by side and level. Typically five "teeth" per four-foot section provide good spacing. The space between adjacent "teeth" forms a v-notch.

❑ OPTION D — THROUGH-CURB PORTS (FIGURE 6.2.6.D)

Unconcentrated flows from paved areas entering filter strips or continuous inflow biofiltration swales may use curb ports or interrupted curbs (Option E) to allow flows to enter the strip or swale. Curb ports use fabricated openings that allow concrete curbing to be poured or extruded while still providing an opening through the curb to admit water to the WQ facility.

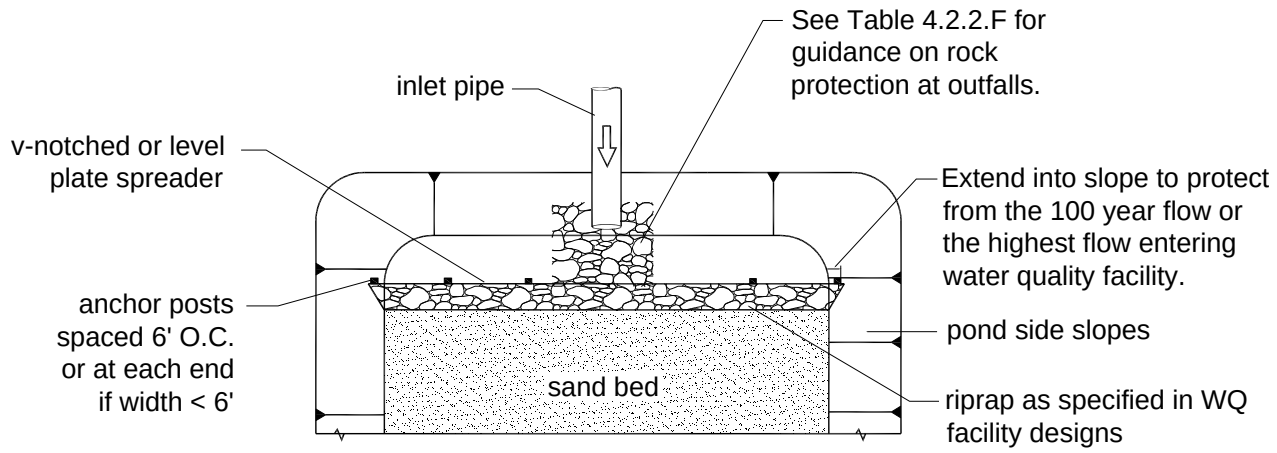
Openings in the curb shall be at regular intervals but at least every 6 feet (minimum). The width of each curb port opening shall be a minimum of 11 inches. Approximately 15 percent or more of the curb section length should be in open ports, and no port should discharge more than about 10 percent of the flow.

❑ OPTION E — INTERRUPTED CURB (NO FIGURE)

Interrupted curbs are sections of curb placed to have gaps spaced at regular intervals along the total width (or length, depending on facility) of the treatment area. At a minimum, **gaps** shall be every 6 feet to allow distribution of flows into the treatment facility before they become too concentrated. The opening shall be a minimum of 11 inches. As a general rule, no opening should discharge more than 10 percent of the overall flow entering the facility.

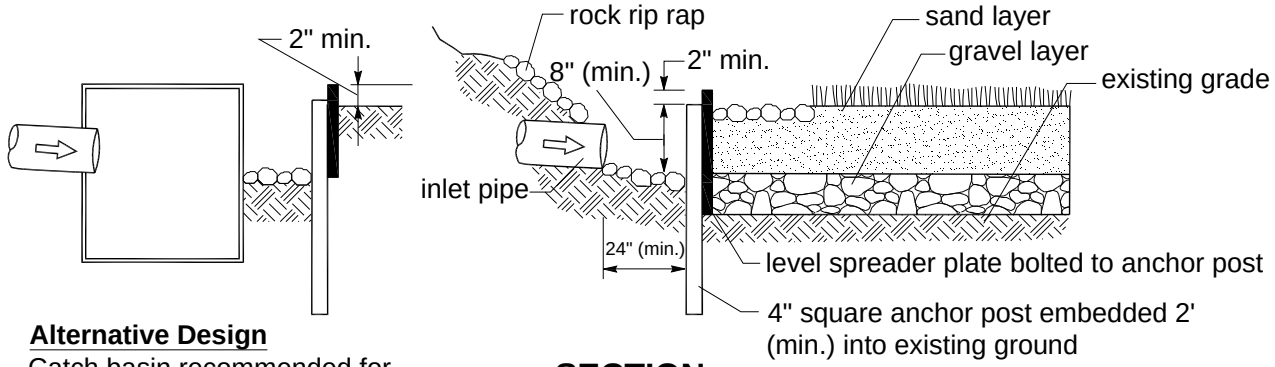
FIGURE 6.2.6.A FLOW SPREADER OPTION A: ANCHORED PLATE

Example of anchored plate used with a sand filter* (may also be used with other water quality facilities).



*sand filter may use other spreading options

PLAN VIEW
NTS

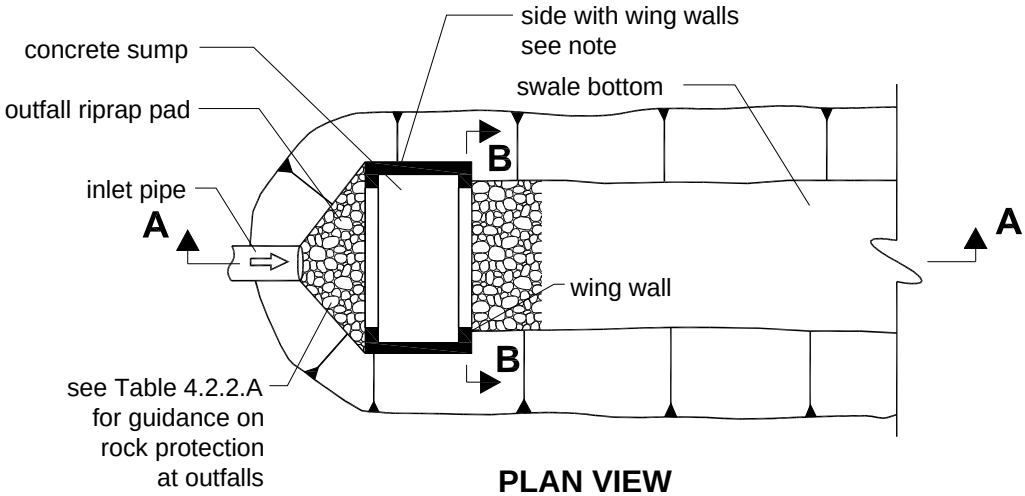


Alternative Design
Catch basin recommended for higher flow situations (generally for inflow velocities of 5 fps or greater for 100 year storm).

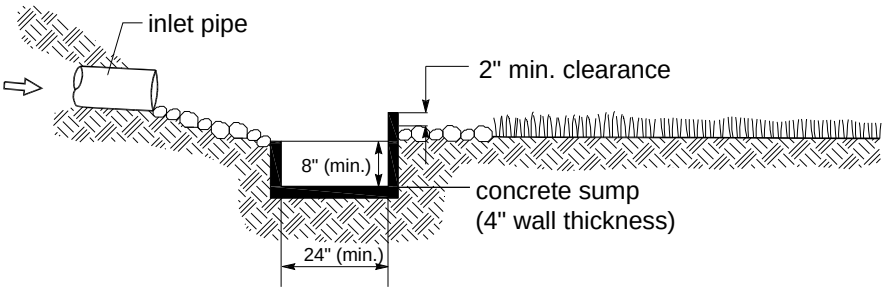
SECTION
NTS

FIGURE 6.2.6.B FLOW SPREADER OPTION B: CONCRETE SUMP BOX

Example of a concrete sump flow spreader used with a biofiltration swale (may be used with other WQ facilities).

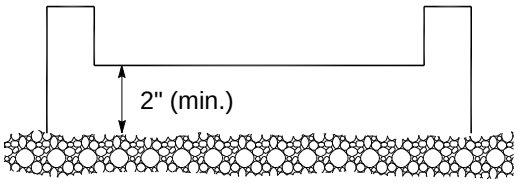


PLAN VIEW
NTS



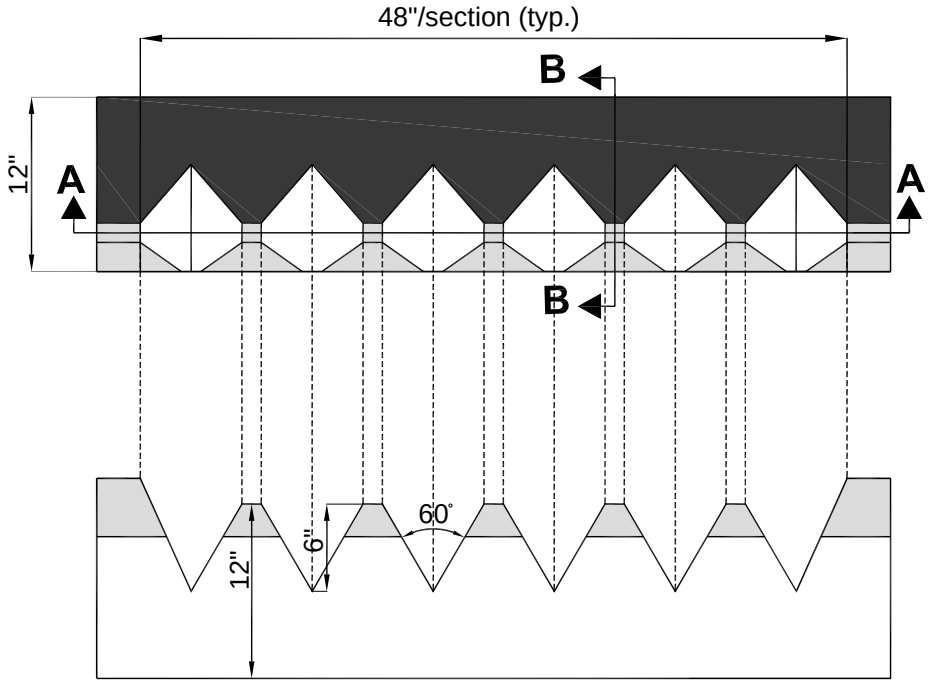
Note: Extend sides into slope. Height of side wall and wing walls must be sufficient to handle the 100-year flow or the highest flow entering the facility.

SECTION A-A
NTS



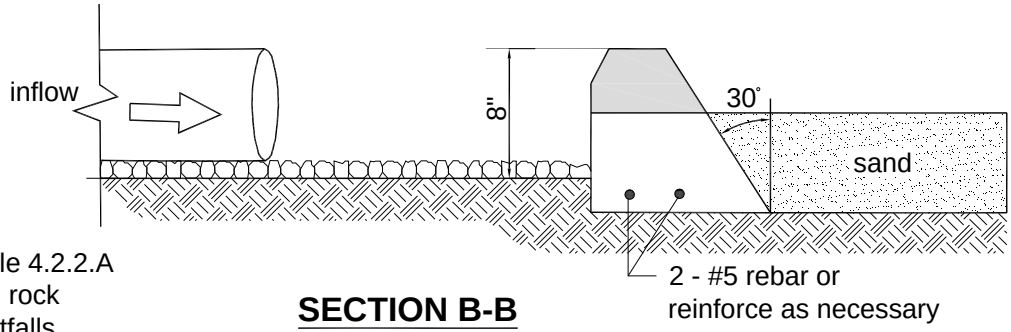
SECTION B-B
NTS

FIGURE 6.2.6.C FLOW SPREADER OPTION C: NOTCHED CURB SPREADER



PLAN VIEW
NTS

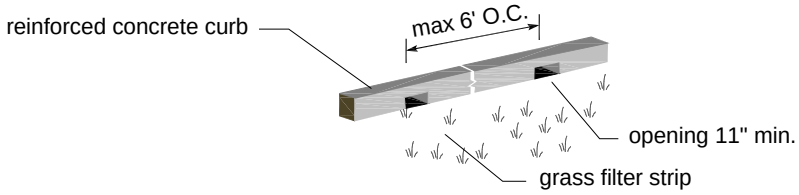
SECTION A-A
NTS



Note: See Table 4.2.2.A for guidance on rock protection at outfalls.

SECTION B-B
NTS

FIGURE 6.2.6.D FLOW SPREADER OPTION D: THROUGH-CURB PORT



CURB PORT
NTS

6.3 BIOFILTRATION FACILITY DESIGNS

This section presents the methods, details of analysis, and design criteria for biofiltration swales and filter strips. Included in this section are the following specific facility designs:

- "Basic Biofiltration Swales," Section 6.3.1
- "Wet Biofiltration Swales," Section 6.3.2 (p. 6-55)
- "Continuous Inflow Biofiltration Swales," Section 6.3.3 (p. 6-58)
- "Basic Filter Strips," Section 6.3.4 (p. 6-59)
- "Narrow Area Filter Strips," Section 6.3.5 (p. 6-66).

The information presented for each facility is organized into the following two categories:

1. **Methods of Analysis:** Contains a step-by-step procedure for designing and sizing each facility.
2. **Design Criteria:** Contains the details, specifications, and material requirements for each facility.

6.3.1 BASIC BIOFILTRATION SWALES

A *biofiltration swale* is an open, gently sloped, vegetated channel designed for treatment of stormwater (see the details in Figure 6.3.1.A through Figure 6.3.1.E beginning on page 6-52). The primary pollutant removal mechanisms are filtration by grass blades which enhance sedimentation, and trapping and adhesion of pollutants to the grass and thatch. Biofiltration swales generally do not remove dissolved pollutants effectively.

Applications and Limitations

A biofiltration swale is designed so that water will flow evenly across the entire width of a densely-vegetated area. A swale may be designed for both treatment and conveyance of onsite stormwater flow. This combined use can reduce development costs by eliminating the need for separate conveyance systems.

Biofiltration swales are best applied on a relatively small scale (generally less than 5 acres of impervious surface). They work well along roadways, driveways, and parking lots. Swales are more costly to apply in situations where the swale channel would be deep; in deep swales, self-shading can inhibit the necessary grass growth, resulting in poor pollutant removal performance. Some specific considerations for biofiltration swale applications are as follows:

- A biofiltration swale **shall not be located in a shaded area**. For healthy grass growth, a swale should receive a minimum of 6 hours of sunlight daily during the summer months throughout the length of the swale.
- To maintain healthy grass growth, a **swale must dry between storms**. It shall not receive continuous base flows (such as seepage from a hill slope throughout the winter) or be located in a high groundwater area, because saturated soil conditions will kill grass. If these conditions are likely to occur, design options given under "Design Criteria" (p. 6-43) shall be used, or the wet biofiltration swale design may be used (see Section 6.3.2, p. 6-55, for details).
- Stormwater runoff carrying **high concentrations of oil and grease** impairs the treatment capability of a swale. Oil control options given in Section 6.6 (p. 6-139) should be applied in these situations.
- **Modifying an existing drainage ditch** to create an engineered biofiltration swale may be difficult due to physical constraints and because ditches often serve as conveyance for flows from larger offsite areas.

- **Utilities** may be located in swale side slopes above the WQ design depth. However, the repair or placement of utilities in swale side slopes requires aggressive implementation of erosion control practices to prevent soil and sediment from reaching the treatment area of the swale.

Note: Consult the water quality menus in Section 6.1 (p. 6-3) for information on how this facility may be used to meet Core Requirement # 8. Also see Table 6.1.1.A on page 6-6 for guidance on which type of biofiltration swale (basic, wet or continuous inflow) to use for a given set of ***site*** *characteristics.*

6.3.1.1 METHODS OF ANALYSIS

Biofiltration swale sizing is based on several variables, including the peak water quality design flow, longitudinal slope, vegetation height, bottom width, side slope, required hydraulic residence time (i.e., the time required for flow to travel the full length of the swale), and design flow depth. Swales sized and built using the method of analysis outlined in this section and the required design criteria presented in Section 6.3.1.2 are expected to meet the Basic Water Quality menu goal of 80% TSS removal. Procedures for sizing swales are summarized below.

Step 1: Calculate design flows. The swale design is based on the water quality design flow Q_{wq} (see Section 6.2.1, p. 6-17, for a definition of water quality design flow). If a biofilter is used for conveyance, the capacity requirements of Core Requirement #4 must be met. These flows must be estimated using the hydrologic analysis procedures described in detail in Chapter 3. If the swale is located downstream of an onsite detention facility, the swale design flow shall be the 2-year release rate from the detention facility.

Step 2: Calculate swale bottom width. The swale bottom width is calculated based on Manning's equation for open-channel flow. This equation can be used to calculate discharges as follows:

$$Q = \frac{1.49}{n} A R^{0.67} s^{0.5} \tag{6-1}$$

where
Q = flow rate (cfs)
n = Manning's roughness coefficient (unitless)
A = cross-sectional area of flow (sf)
R = hydraulic radius (ft) = area divided by wetted perimeter
s = longitudinal slope (ft/ft)

For shallow flow depths in swales, channel side slopes are ignored in the calculation of bottom width. Use the following equation (a simplified form of Manning's formula) to estimate the swale bottom width:

$$b = \frac{Q_{wq} n_{wq}}{1.49 y^{1.67} s^{0.5}} \tag{6-2}$$

where
b = bottom width of swale (ft)
Q_{wq} = water quality design flow (cfs)
n_{wq} = Manning's roughness coefficient for shallow flow conditions = 0.20 (unitless)
y = design flow depth (ft)
s = longitudinal slope (along direction of flow) (ft/ft)

See "Water Depth and Base Flow" (p. 6-44) to determine the allowable design water depth. Proceed to Step 3 if the bottom width is calculated to be between 2 and 10 feet.

A minimum 2-foot bottom width is required. Therefore, if the calculated bottom width is less than 2 feet, increase the width to 2 feet and recalculate the design flow depth y using Equation (6-3) as follows:

$$y = \left(\frac{Q_{wq} n_{wq}}{1.49 s^{0.5} b} \right)^{0.6} \tag{6-3}$$

where Q_{wq}, n_{wq}, and s are the same values as used in Equation (6-2), but b = 2 feet.

The maximum bottom width is 10 feet; therefore if the calculated bottom width exceeds 10 feet, then one of the following steps is necessary to reduce the design bottom width:

- Increase the longitudinal slope s to a maximum of 6 feet in 100 feet (0.06 feet per foot).
- Increase the design flow depth y to a maximum of 4 inches (0.333 feet).
- Reduce the design flow rate by rearranging the swale location with respect to detention facilities; a swale located downstream of a detention facility may have a lower flow rate due to flow attenuation in the detention facility. However, if a swale is located downstream of a detention facility providing Level 2 or Level 3 flow control, and it is located in till soils (according to the KCRTS soil group in Chapter 3), then the swale must be designed as a wet biofiltration swale (see Section 6.3.2, p. 6-55).
- Place a divider lengthwise along the swale bottom (cross section) at least three-quarters of the swale length (beginning at the inlet), without compromising the design flow depth and swale lateral slope requirements. See "Design Criteria" (p. 6-43) for swale divider requirements. A flow spreader must be provided at the inlet to evenly divide flows into each half of the swale cross section. See Section 6.2.6 (p. 6-33) for details on flow spreaders.

Step 3: Determine design flow velocity. To calculate the design flow velocity through the swale, use the flow continuity equation:

$$V_{wq} = \frac{Q_{wq}}{A_{wq}} \tag{6-4}$$

where V_{wq} = design flow velocity (fps)
A_{wq} = $by + Zy^2$ = cross-sectional area (sf) of flow at design depth
Z = side slope length per unit height (e.g., Z = 3 if side slopes are 3H:1V)

If the design flow velocity exceeds 1 foot per second, go back to Step 2 and modify one or more of the design parameters (longitudinal slope, bottom width, or flow depth) to reduce the design flow velocity to 1 foot per second or less. If the design flow velocity is calculated to be less than 1 foot per second, proceed to Step 4. *Note: It is desirable to have the design velocity as low as possible, both to improve treatment effectiveness and to reduce swale length requirements.*

Step 4: Calculate swale length. Use the following equation to determine the necessary swale length to achieve a hydraulic residence time of at least 9 minutes (540 seconds):

$$L = 540 V_{wq} \tag{6-5}$$

where L = minimum allowable swale length (ft)
V_{wq} = design flow velocity (fps)

The minimum swale length is 100 feet; therefore, if the swale length is calculated to be less than 100 feet, increase the length to a minimum of 100 feet, leaving the bottom width unchanged. If a larger swale could be fitted on the ***site***, consider using a greater length to increase the hydraulic residence time and improve the swale's pollutant removal capability. If the calculated length is too long for the ***site***, or if it

would cause layout problems, such as encroachment into shaded areas, proceed to Step 5 to further modify the layout. If the swale length can be accommodated on the ***site***, proceed to Step 6.

Step 5: Adjust swale layout to fit on site. If the swale length calculated in Step 4 is too long for the ***site***, the length may be reduced (to a minimum of 100 feet) by increasing the bottom width up to a maximum of 16 feet, **as long as the 9 minute retention time is retained**. However, the length cannot be increased in order to reduce the bottom width because Manning's depth-velocity-flow rate relationships would not be preserved. If the bottom width is increased to greater than 10 feet, a low dividing berm is needed to split the swale cross section in half.

Length can be adjusted by finding the top area of the swale and providing an equivalent top area with the adjusted dimensions.

a) Calculate the swale treatment top area based on the swale length calculated in Step 4:

$$A_{top} = (b_i + b_{slope})\, L_i \qquad (6\text{-}6)$$

where A_{top} = top area (sf) at the design treatment depth
b_i = bottom width (ft) calculated in Step 2
b_{slope} = the additional top width (ft) above the side slope for the design water depth (for 3:1 side slopes and a 4-inch water depth, b_{slope} = 2 feet)
L_i = initial length (ft) calculated in Step 4.

b) Use the swale top area and a reduced swale length L_f to increase the bottom width, using the following equation:

$$L_f = \frac{A_{top}}{(b_f + b_{slope})} \qquad (6\text{-}7)$$

where L_f = reduced swale length (ft)
b_f = increased bottom width (ft).

c) Recalculate V_{wq} according to Step 3 using the revised cross-sectional area A_{wq} based on the increased bottom width b_f. Revise the design as necessary if the design flow velocity exceeds 1 foot per second.

d) Recalculate to assure that the 9 minute retention time is retained.

Step 6: Provide conveyance capacity for flows higher than Q_{wq}. Biofiltration swales may be designed as flow-through channels that convey flows higher than the water quality design flow rate, or they may be designed to incorporate a high-flow bypass upstream of the swale inlet. A high-flow bypass usually results in a smaller swale size (see flow splitter options, page 6-29, for more information on designing bypasses). If a high-flow bypass is provided, this step is not needed. If no high-flow bypass is provided, proceed with the procedure below.

a) Check the swale sized using Steps 2 through 5 above to determine whether the swale can convey the 25-year and 100-year peak flows consistent with the conveyance requirements of Core Requirement #4 in Chapter 1. The roughness coefficient *n* in Manning's equation shall be selected to reflect the deeper flow conditions with less resistance provided by grass during these high-flow events. The bottom width (Step 2) should be calculated as per Section 4.4.1.2, "Methods of Analysis" for open channels.

b) The 100-year peak flow velocity ($V_{100} = Q_{100}/A_{100}$) based on the 100-year flow depth must be less than 3.0 feet per second. If V_{100} exceeds 3.0 feet per second, return to Step 2 and increase the bottom width or flatten the longitudinal slope as necessary to reduce the 100-year peak flow velocity to 3.0 feet per second or less. If the longitudinal slope is flattened, the swale bottom width must be recalculated (Step 2) and meet all design criteria.

c) The conveyance requirements in Core Requirement #4 (see Section 1.2.4) must be met.

6.3.1.2 DESIGN CRITERIA

An effective biofiltration swale achieves uniform sheet flow over and through a densely vegetated area for a period of several minutes. Figure 6.3.1.A (p. 6-52) shows a typical biofiltration swale schematic. Basic design requirements for achieving proper flow conditions through a biofiltration swale are described below.

Swale Geometry

1. Swale **bottom width** shall be between 2 and 16 feet.[14]
   a) **Minimum bottom width** is 2 feet to allow for ease of mowing.
   b) If the bottom width exceeds 10 feet, a length-wise divider shall be provided. The divider shall extend from the flow spreader at the inlet for at least three-quarters of the swale length.
   c) **Maximum bottom width** is 16 feet, excluding the width of the divider.

   Note: Multiple swales may be placed side by side provided the flow to each swale is split at the inlet and spread separately for each swale. Adjacent swales may be separated with a vertical wall, but a low berm is preferred for easier maintenance and better landscape integration.
2. The **longitudinal slope** (along the direction of flow) shall be between 1 percent and 6 percent.
   a) If the longitudinal slope is less than 1.5 percent, **underdrains** must be provided (see next page and Figure 6.3.1.C, p. 6-53, for underdrain specifications).
   b) If the longitudinal slope is less than 1 percent, the swale must be designed according to the criteria presented in Section 6.3.2 (p. 6-55) for **wet biofiltration swales**.
   c) If the longitudinal slope exceeds 6 percent, **check dams** with vertical drops of 12 inches or less shall be provided to achieve a bottom slope of 6 percent or less between the drop sections.
3. The swale shall be **flat** in cross section (perpendicular to the flow direction) to promote even flow across the whole width of the swale.
4. The **minimum swale length** shall be 100 feet; no maximum length is set.
5. The **swale treatment area** (below the WQ design water depth) shall be trapezoidal in cross-section. If trapezoidal, **side slopes within the treatment area** should be 3H:1V or flatter whenever possible, but shall not steeper than 2H:1V.
6. **Side slope sections above the treatment area** may be steeper than 3H:1V, subject to the following provisions:
   a) If there is an interior side slope between 1H:1V and 2H:1V outside the treatment area, the slope shall be reinforced with **erosion control netting or matting** during construction.
   b) Any interior slope steeper than 1H:1V shall be constructed as a **rockery or structural retaining wall**[15] to prevent the swale slope from sloughing. To ensure that adequate sunlight reaches the swale bottom, **only one wall can be taller than 2 feet.** If possible, the higher wall should be on the northern or eastern side of the swale to maximize the amount of light reaching the swale bottom.

[14] Experience with biofiltration swales shows that when the width exceeds about 10 feet it is difficult to keep the water from forming low-flow channels. It is also difficult to construct the bottom level and without sloping to one side. Biofilters are best constructed by leveling the bottom after excavating, and after the soil is amended. A single-width pass with a front-end loader produces a better result than a multiple-width pass.

[15] Soil bioengineering techniques may be used as an alternative to a rockery or structural retaining wall.

7. **Curved swales** are encouraged for aesthetic reasons, but curves must be gentle to prevent erosion and allow for vehicle access to remove sediment. Criteria for maintenance access road curves shall also be applied for swale curves (see Section 5.3.1.1 for design of access roads).

Water Depth and Base Flow

1. A swale that will be **frequently mowed**, as in commercial or landscaped areas, shall have a **design water depth** of no more than 2 inches (0.17 feet) under the water quality design flow conditions.
2. A swale that will **not be frequently mowed**, such as along roadsides or in rural areas, shall have a **design water depth** of no more than 4 inches (0.33 feet) under the water quality design flow conditions.
3. If a swale is located **downstream of a detention facility providing Level 2 or Level 3 flow control**, and it is located in till soils (according to the KCRTS soil group in Chapter 3), then the swale must be designed as a **wet biofiltration swale** (see Section 6.3.2, p. 6-55).
4. If a swale will receive **base flows** because of seeps and springs onsite, then either a low-flow drain shall be provided or a wet biofiltration swale shall be used. *Low-flow drains* are narrow surface drains filled with pea gravel that run lengthwise through the swale to bleed off base flows; they should not be confused with underdrains. In general, base flows less than 0.01 cfs per acre can be handled with a low-flow drain. If flows are likely to be in excess of this level, a wet biofiltration swale shall be used.
5. If a **low-flow drain** is used, it shall extend the entire length of the swale. The drain shall be a minimum of 6 inches deep, and its width shall be no greater than 5 percent of the calculated swale bottom width; the width of the drain shall be in addition to the required bottom width. If an anchored plate or concrete sump is used for flow spreading at the swale inlet, the plate or sump wall shall have a v-notch (maximum top width = 5% of swale width) or holes to allow preferential exit of low flows into the drain. See Figure 6.3.1.D (p. 6-54) for low-flow drain specifications and details.

Flow Velocity, Energy Dissipation, and Flow Spreading

1. The **maximum flow velocity** through the swale under the water quality design flow conditions shall not exceed 1.0 foot per second.
2. The **maximum flow velocity** through the swale under the peak 100-year flow conditions shall not exceed 3.0 feet per second.
3. A **flow spreader** shall be used at the inlet of a swale to dissipate energy and evenly spread runoff as sheet flow over the swale bottom. Flow spreaders are recommended but not required at mid-length. For details on various types of flow spreaders, see Section 6.2.6 (p. 6-33).
4. If **check dams** are used to reduce the longitudinal slope of the swale, a **flow spreader** shall be provided at the toe of each vertical drop. The spreader must span the width of the swale. An **energy dissipater** shall also be provided if flows leaving the spreader could be erosive.
5. If a swale **discharges flows to a slope** rather than to a piped system or confined channel, an **energy dissipater** shall be provided at the swale outlet. This requirement also applies to discharges from swale underdrains. The outlet energy dissipater may be a riprap pad sized according to the specifications described in Table 4.2.2.A for conveyance system outfalls.

Underdrains

If underdrains are required by Criterion 2 under "Swale Geometry" (p. 6-43), they must meet the following criteria:

1. Underdrains must be made of **PVC perforated pipe** (SDR 35), laid parallel to the swale bottom and backfilled and bedded as shown in Figure 6.3.1.C (p. 6-53).

2. For facilities to be maintained by the County, the underdrain pipe must be 6 inches or greater in **diameter**. (Six inches is the smallest diameter pipe that can be cleaned without damage to the pipe.)
3. Six inches of clean **drain rock** ($^5/_8$-inch minus) must be above the top of the pipe.
4. The drain rock must be wrapped in **geotextile**. Geotextile requirements are summarized in Table 6.3.1.A below.
5. The underdrain **must infiltrate** into the subsurface **or drain freely** to an acceptable discharge point.

TABLE 6.3.1.A GEOTEXTILE MATERIAL MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS

Geotextile Property	Value	Test Method
Grab Tensile Strength, min in machine and x-direction	250 lbs/160 lbs min.	ASTM D4632
Grab Failure Strain, in machine and x-machine direction	<50%/>50%	ASTM D4632
Seam Breaking Strength (if seams are present)	220 lbs/140 lbs min.	ASTM D4632 and ASTM D4884 (adapted for grab test)
Puncture Resistance	80 lbs/50 lbs min.	ASTM D4833
Tear Strength, min. in machine and x-machine direction	80 lbs/50 lbs min.	ASTM D4533
Ultraviolet (UV) Radiation stability	50% strength min., after 500 hrs. in weather meter	ASTM D4355
AOS	.43 mm max. (#40 sieve)	ASTM D4751
Water Permitivity	.5 sec – 1 min.	ASTM D4491

Notes:

- Minimum values should be in the weaker principal direction. All numerical values represent minimum average roll value (i.e., test results from any sampled lot shall meet or exceed the minimum values in the table). Stated values are for noncritical and nonsevere applications.

AOS: Apparent Opening Size is the measure of the diameter of the pores on the geotextile.

Swale Divider

1. If a swale divider is used (such as when swale bottom widths are greater than 10 feet), the divider shall be constructed of a **firm material** that will resist weathering and not erode, such as treated lumber, concrete, plastic, or compacted soil seeded with grass. Selection of divider material shall take into consideration swale maintenance, especially mowing.
2. The divider shall have a **minimum height** of one inch higher than the water quality design water depth.
3. **Earthen berms** shall be no steeper than 2H:1V.
4. Materials other than earth (e.g. treated lumber, recycled plastic lumber, concrete, etc.) shall be embedded to a depth sufficient to be stable.

Access

1. For swales to be maintained by King County, an **access road** shall be provided to the swale inlet and along one side of the swale according to the schedule shown in Table 6.3.1.B below. *Note: County streets and paved parking areas adjacent to the top of slope may be counted as access.*

TABLE 6.3.1.B REQUIREMENTS FOR BIOFILTRATION SWALE ACCESS ROAD	
Swale Bottom Area*: *L* x *w* (sf)	**Access Road Length**
200 - 1000	$^1/_2$ swale length L
1000 - 1600	$^2/_3$ swale length L
Over 1600	entire swale length L
* The swale area used for computing access road length may be the bottom area.	

2. In areas outside critical area buffers, **wheel strips** made of modular grid pavement may be built into the swale bottom for maintenance vehicle access instead of an access road. The subgrade for the strips must be engineered to support a vehicle weight of 16,000 pounds and installed according to the manufacturer's recommendations on firm native soil or structural fill, not on the amended topsoils. Each strip shall be 18 inches wide and spaced as shown in Figure 6.3.1.E (p. 6-54). The strip lattice should be filled or covered with native soil (no amendments required) and overseeded with grass. If a low-flow drain is also needed (see "Water Depth and Base Flow" on page 6-44), a portion of the wheel strip may be filled with pea gravel as appropriate to form the drain. Continuous vehicle access shall be provided to the wheel strips from the access road. If access to the wheel strips is over the flow-spreader, then a grate (or other DDES approved method) shall be placed over the flow-spreader for vehicle access. Wheel strips shall not be counted as treatment area; therefore, the swale bottom width must be increased accordingly.

Soil Amendment

1. Two inches (minimum) of **well-rotted compost** shall be tilled into the entire swale treatment area to amend the topsoil unless the soil already has an organic content of 1 percent or greater. This applies to both till soils as well as sandy soils. In very coarse soils (gravels or courser), **top soil** must be imported and amended to the required organic content.

   a) Compost must be tilled into the underlying native soil to a depth of 6 inches to prevent the compost from being washed out and to avoid creating a defined layer of different soil types that can prevent downward percolation of water.

   b) Compost shall not contain any sawdust, straw, green or under-composted organic matter, or toxic or otherwise harmful materials.

   c) Compost shall not contain unsterilized manure because it can leach fecal coliform bacteria into receiving waters.

2. **Soil or sod** with a clay content of greater than 10 percent should be avoided. If there is concern for contamination of the underlying groundwater, the swale bottom shall be lined with a treatment liner to prevent groundwater contamination. See Section 6.2.4 (p. 6-23) for details on treatment liner options.

Planting Requirements

1. Grass shall be established throughout the entire treatment area of the swale subject to the following provisions:

   a) **Seeding** is best performed in spring (mid-March to June) or fall (late September to October). For summer seeding, sprinkler systems or other measures for watering the grass seed must be provided.

   b) Seed may be applied via **hydroseeding** or broadcast application.

   c) **Irrigation** is required during the first summer following installation if seeding occurs in spring or summer. Swales seeded in the fall may not need irrigation. However, the maintenance and defect financial guarantee will not be released unless a healthy grass cover is established. Therefore, ***site*** planning should address the need for sprinklers or other means of irrigation.

2. Swale treatment areas are subject to both dry and wet conditions, as well as accumulation of sediment and debris. A mixture of dry-area and wet-area grass species that can continue to grow through silt deposits is most effective. Two acceptable **grass seed mixes** for the King County area are listed in Table 6.3.1.C (p. 6-48). The mixes shall be applied throughout the swale in the treatment area at a rate of 80 pounds per acre. As an alternative to these mixes, a horticultural or erosion control specialist may develop a seed specification tailored to the ***site***. Table 6.3.1.D (p. 6-48) lists grasses or other plants particularly tolerant of wet conditions. Some of these seed types, however, may not be commercially available.

3. A newly constructed swale shall be **protected from stormwater flows until grass has been established**. This may be done by diverting flows or by covering the swale bottom with clear plastic until the grass is well rooted. If these actions are not feasible, an erosion control blanket shall be placed over the freshly applied seed mix. See detached Appendix D, *ESC Standards*, for details on erosion control blankets.

4. **Above the design treatment elevation**, either a typical lawn seed mix or landscape plants may be used. However, for swales also used to convey high flows, consideration shall be given to the soil binding capacity of the vegetation. Acceptable grasses and groundcovers are presented in Table 6.3.1.E (p. 6-49). Plant material other than that given in the table may be used if the swale is privately maintained and the plants selected will not spread into the swale treatment area. Ivy shall not be used because of its tendency to spread. Native plant species (e.g., kinnikinnick) are preferred.

   Note: These recommendations are for the King County area. If these designs are used in other areas, local knowledge should be used to tailor these recommendations to local conditions.

5. **Sod** may be used as a temporary cover during the wet season, but sodded areas must be reseeded with a suitable grass seed mix as soon as the weather is conducive to seed germination, unless the sod is grown from a seed mix suitable for the wetter conditions of a biofiltration swale. Sod must be removed or rototilled into the underlying soil before reseeding. Criteria #1 and 2 above for seeding shall then be followed.

TABLE 6.3.1.C
GRASS SEED MIXES SUITABLE FOR BIOFILTRATION SWALE TREATMENT AREAS

Mix 1		Mix 2	
75-80 percent	Tall or Meadow Fescue	60-70 percent	Tall Fescue
10-15 percent	Seaside Creeping Bentgrass or Colonial Bentgrass	10-15 percent	Seaside Creeping Bentgrass or Colonial Bentgrass
5-10 percent	Redtop	10-15 percent	Meadow Foxtail
		6-10 percent	Alsike Clover
		1-5 percent	Marshfield Big Trefoil
		1-6 percent	Redtop
Note: All percentages are by weight.			

TABLE 6.3.1.D FINELY-TEXTURED PLANTS TOLERANT OF FREQUENT SATURATED SOIL CONDITIONS OR STANDING WATER

Grasses		Wetland Plants	
Water Foxtail	*Alopecurus geniculatus*	Sawbeak Sedge	*Carex stipata*
Shortawn Foxtail	*Alopecurus aequalis*	Spike Rush	*Eleocharis palustris*
Bentgrass	*Agrosits* spp.	Slender Rush	*Juncus tenuis*
Spike Bentgrass	*A. exarata*	Grass-leaf rush	*Juncus marginatus*
Redtop	*A. alba* or *gigantea*		
Colonial Bentgrass	*A. tenuis* or *capillaris*		
Mannagrass	*Glyceria* spp.		
Western	*G. occidentalis*		
Northern	*G. borealis*		
Slender-Spiked	*G. leptostachya*		
Rough-Stalked Bluegrass	*Poa trivialis*		
Velvet Grass	*Holcus mollis*		

TABLE 6.3.1.E GROUNDCOVERS AND GRASSES SUITABLE FOR THE UPPER SIDE SLOPES OF A BIOFILTRATION SWALE	
Groundcovers	
Kinnikinnick*	*Arctostaphylos uva-ursi*
Epimedium	*Epimedium grandiflorum*
—	*Euonymus lanceolata*
Strawberry*	*Fragaria chiloensis*
—	*Genista*
St. John's-Wort	*Hypericum sempervirens*
Broadleaf Lupine*	*Lupinus latifolius*
White Sweet Clover*	*Melilotus alba*
Creeping Forget-Me-Not	*Omphalodes verna*
—	*Rubus calycinoides*
White Lawn Clover	*Trifolium repens*
Yellow-Root	*Xanthorhiza simplissima*
Grasses (drought-tolerant, minimum mowing)	
Buffalo Grass	*Buchloe dactyloides*
Tufted Fescue	*Festuca amethystina*
Tall Fescue *	*Festuca arundinacea*
Hard Fescue	*Festuca ovina duriuscula* (e.g., Reliant, Aurora)
Red Fescue*	*Festuca rubra*
Dwarf Tall Fescues	*Festuca* spp. (e.g., Many Mustang, Silverado)
Blue Oatgrass	*Helictotrichon sempervirens*
Low-growing turf mix: 40% dwarf tall fescue 30% dwarf perenial rye "Barclay" 25% red fescue 5% colonial bentgrass	
* *Native species.* *Notes*: • *Many other ornamental grasses which require only annual mowing are suitable.* • *Ivy is not permitted because of its tendency to spread.*	

Recommended Design Features

The following features should be incorporated into biofiltration swale designs where ***site*** conditions allow.

Swale Layout and Grading

1. If the longitudinal slope is less than 1.5 percent (requiring the use of underdrains along the swale length), the **subgrade** should contain 10 percent or more of sand to promote infiltration of standing water. If sand is added to promote drainage, the soil or sand substrate must still be amended with compost.

2. **Underdrains** are also recommended for swales greater than 1.5 percent longitudinal slope on till soils, especially if it is likely that the swale will intercept groundwater.
3. Biofiltration swales should be aligned to avoid sharp bends where erosion of the swale side slope can occur. However, gradual meandering bends in the swale are desirable for aesthetic purposes and to promote slower flow.

Location and Landscaping

1. During seeding, slow-release **fertilizers** may be applied to speed the growth of grass. If the swale is located in a sensitive lake watershed, low phosphorus fertilizers (such as formulations in the proportion 3:1:3 N-P-K or less) or a slow-release phosphorus formulation such as rock phosphate or bone meal should be used. A typical fertilizer application rate should be 2 pounds per 1,000 square feet. If animal manures are used in the fertilizer, they must be sterilized to avoid leaching fecal coliform bacteria into receiving waters.
2. Consultation with a **landscape or erosion control specialist** is recommended for project-specific recommendations on grass seed, fertilizer, and mulching applications to ensure healthy grass growth. The **grass mix** should be capable of surviving and remaining healthy under both dry and wet conditions with limited maintenance.
3. A grassy swale should be incorporated into the ***project site*** landscape design. **Shrubs** may be planted along the edges of a swale (above the WQ treatment level) provided that exposure of the swale bottom to sunlight and maintenance accessibility are not compromised. *Note: For swales used to convey high flows, the plant material selected must bind the soil adequately to prevent erosion.*
4. Swales should not be located in areas where **trees** will drop leaves or needles that can smother the grass or clog part of the swale flowpath. Likewise, landscaping plans should take into consideration the problems that **falling leaves and needles** can cause for swale performance and maintenance. Landscape **planter beds** should be designed and located so that soil does not erode from the beds and enter a nearby biofiltration swale.

Construction Considerations

1. If a biofiltration swale is put into operation before all construction in the drainage area of the swale is complete, the swale must be cleaned of sediment and reseeded prior to acceptance by the County. The County will not release financial guarantees if swales are not restored and vigorous grass growth established.
2. It is preferable to provide good erosion control before runoff enters a biofiltration swale. Swales are designed to handle only modest sediment loads from stabilized ***sites***.

Maintenance Considerations

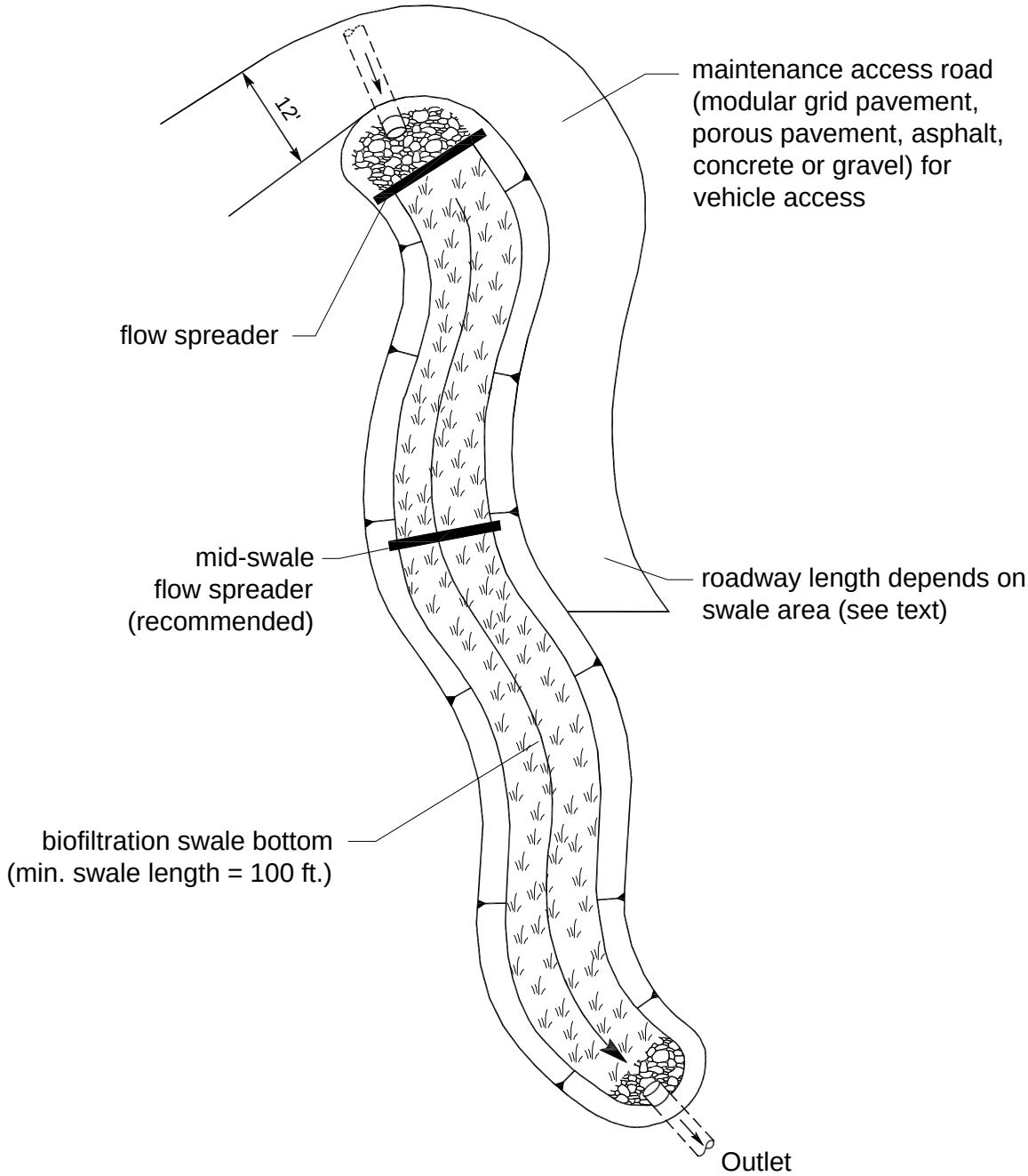
The design criteria given previously have incorporated maintenance concerns into swale design. However, the designer should know the type and frequency of maintenance anticipated so that alternative proposals can incorporate maintenance activity.

Typical swale maintenance includes routine mowing, sediment and debris removal, and repair of eroded or scoured channel sections as described below.

1. Grass should be **mowed to maintain an average grass height** between 4 inches and 9 inches, depending on the ***site*** situation. Monthly mowing is needed from May through September to maintain grass vigor. If a swale is not mowed at least annually, trees and brush will invade the swale and inhibit grass growth, compromising the swale's performance for water quality treatment.
2. **Grass clippings** should be removed from the swale and composted onsite or disposed of properly offsite.

3. **Sediment** deposited at the head of the swale should be removed if grass growth is being inhibited for more than 10 percent of the swale length or if the sediment is blocking the even spreading or entry of water to the rest of the swale. Annual sediment removal and spot reseeding will probably be necessary.
4. If flow **channelization or erosion** has occurred, the swale should be regraded to produce a flat bottom width, and then reseeded as necessary. If the channel results from constant base flow, it may be better to install a low-flow drain rather than to regrade. Regrading should not be required every year.
5. For swales with underdrains, **vehicular access to the swale bottom** (other than grass mowing equipment) should be avoided because the drainpipe cannot support vehicle weight. Consideration should be given to providing wheel strips in the swale bottom if access is needed.

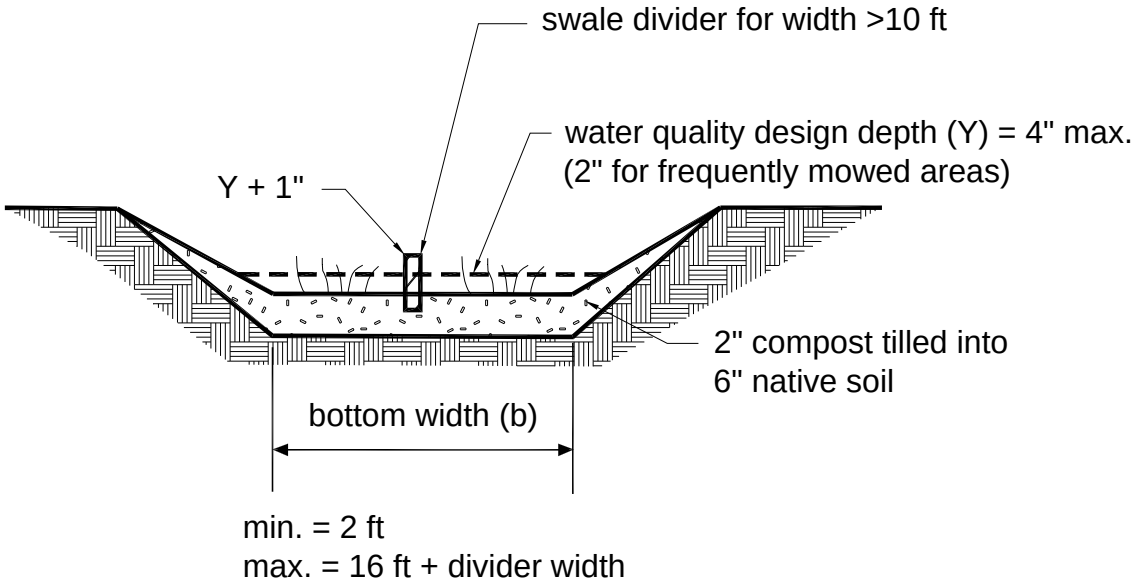
FIGURE 6.3.1.A BIOFILTRATION SWALE SCHEMATIC



PLAN VIEW
NTS

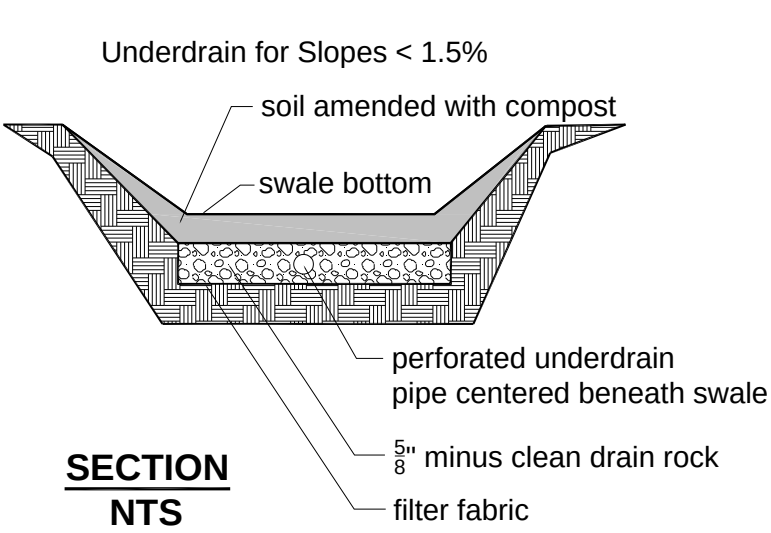
NOTE: Longitudinal slope 1-6%.
Provide underdrain for slopes < 1.5%.

FIGURE 6.3.1.B BIOFILTRATION SWALE CROSS-SECTIONS

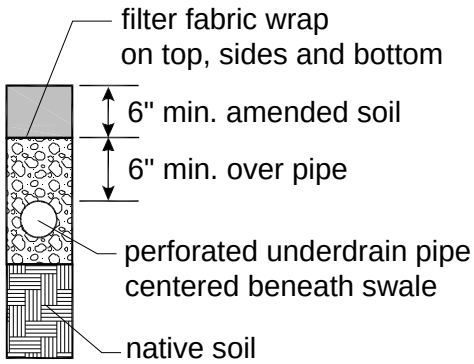


TYPICAL SWALE SECTION
NTS

FIGURE 6.3.1.C BIOFILTRATION SWALE UNDERDRAIN DETAIL



SECTION
NTS



DETAIL A

NOTE: Underdrain must infilitrate or drain freely to an acceptable discharge point.

FIGURE 6.3.1.D BIOFILTRATION SWALE LOW-FLOW DRAIN

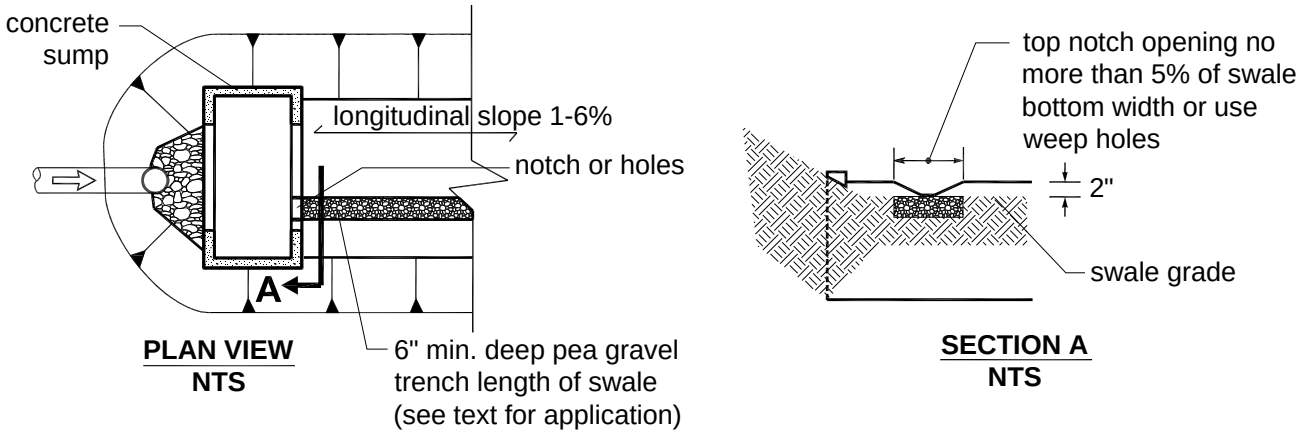
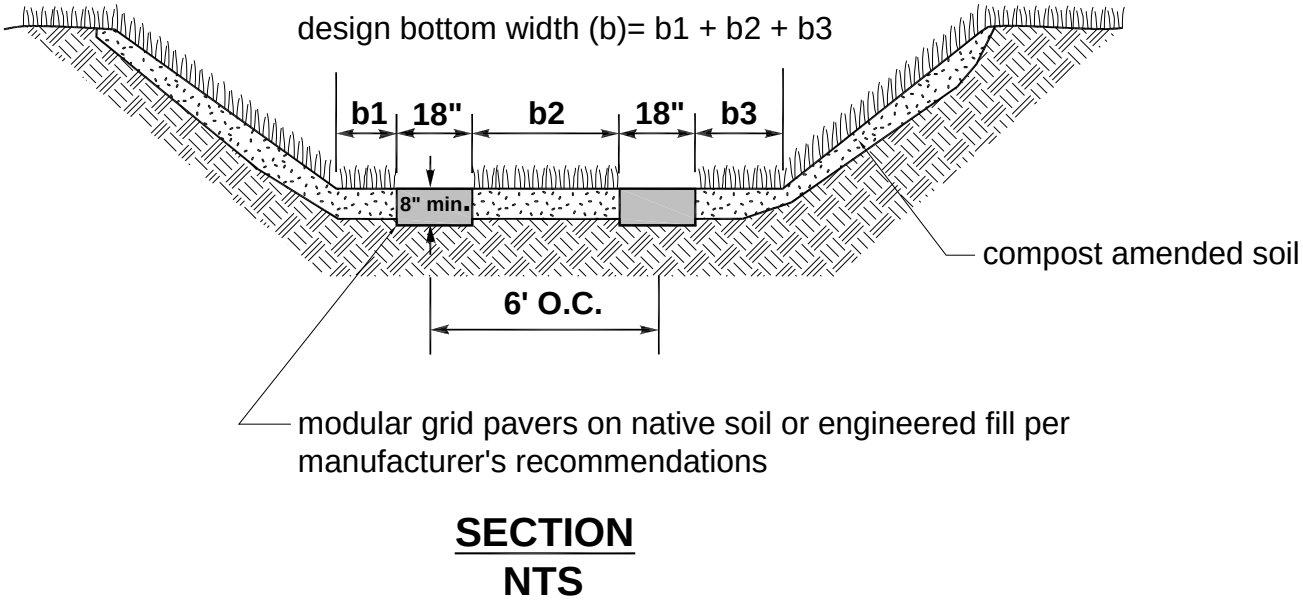


FIGURE 6.3.1.E BIOFILTRATION SWALE WHEEL STRIPS



6.3.2 WET BIOFILTRATION SWALES

A *wet biofiltration swale* is a variation of a basic biofiltration swale for use where the longitudinal slope is slight, water tables are high, or continuous low base flow is likely to result in saturated soil conditions. Where saturation exceeds about 2 weeks, typical grasses will die. Thus, vegetation specifically adapted to saturated soil conditions is needed. Different vegetation in turn requires modification of several of the design parameters for the basic biofiltration swale detailed in Section 6.3.1 (p. 6-39).

Applications

Wet biofiltration swales are applied where a basic biofiltration swale is desired but not allowed or advisable because one or more of the following conditions exist:

- The swale is on till soils and is downstream of a detention facility providing Level 2 or 3 flow control.
- Saturated soil conditions are likely because of seeps or base flows on the ***project site***.
- Longitudinal slopes are slight (generally less than 2 percent).

Consult the water quality menus in Section 6.1 (p. 6-3) for information on how this facility may be used to meet Core Requirement #8.

6.3.2.1 METHODS OF ANALYSIS

Wet biofiltration swales use the **same methods of analysis as basic biofiltration swales** (see Section 6.3.1.1, p.6-40) except the following **step is added**:

Step 7: Adjust for extended wet season flow. If the swale will be downstream of a detention facility providing Level 2 or 3 flow control, multiply the treatment area (bottom width times length) of the swale by 2, and readjust the swale length, if desired. Maintain a 5:1 length to width ratio (see criteria under "Swale Geometry" below).

Intent: An increase in the treatment area of swales following Level 2 or 3 detention facilities is required because of the differences in vegetation established in a constant flow environment. Although flows following Level 2 or 3 detention facilities are small, and swales are likewise much smaller than those sized for upstream flows, they are much more protracted. These protracted flows result in more stream-like conditions than are typical for other wet biofilter situations. Since vegetation growing in streams is often less dense, this increase in treatment area is needed to ensure that equivalent pollutant removal is achieved in extended flow situations.

6.3.2.2 DESIGN CRITERIA

Swale Geometry

Same as specified for **basic biofiltration swales** (see Section 6.3.1.2, p. 6-43) except for the following **modifications:**

1. **Criterion 1:** The **maximum bottom width** may be increased to 25 feet, but a length-to-width ratio of 5:1 must be provided. No longitudinal dividing berm is needed. *Note: The minimum swale length is still 100 feet.*
2. **Criterion 2:** If **longitudinal slopes** are greater than 2 percent, the wet swale must be stepped so that the slope within the stepped sections averages 2 percent. Steps may be made of retaining walls, log check dams, or short riprap sections. **No underdrain or low-flow drain is required**.
3. **Criterion 3: Curved swales** are allowed and the application of criteria for maintenance access road curves are not required.

High-Flow Bypass

A high-flow bypass is required for flows greater than the water quality design flow to protect wetland vegetation from damage.[16] The bypass may be an open channel parallel to the wet biofiltration swale.

Water Depth and Base Flow

Same as for basic biofiltration swales (see page 6-44), except the **design water depth** shall be 4 inches or less for all wetland vegetation selections, and **no underdrains or low-flow drains are required**.

Flow Velocity, Energy Dissipation, and Flow Spreading

Same as for basic biofiltration swales (see page 6-44), except **no flow spreader is needed**.

Access

Same as for basic biofiltration swales (see page 6-46) except access is only required to the inflow and the outflow of the swale; access along the length of the swale is not required. Also, wheel strips may not be used for access in the swale.

Intent: An access road is not required along the length of a wet swale because of infrequent access needs. Frequent mowing or harvesting is not desirable. In addition, wetland plants are fairly resilient to sediment-induced changes in water depth, so the need for access should be infrequent.

Soil Amendment

Same as for basic biofiltration swales (see page 6-46).

Planting Requirements

Same as for **basic biofiltration swales** (see page 6-47) except for the following **modifications:**

1. A list of acceptable plants with recommended spacing is given in Table 6.3.2.A (p. 6-57). In general, it is best to plant several species to increase the likelihood that at least some of the selected species will find growing conditions favorable.
2. A wetland seed mix may be applied by hydroseeding, but if coverage is poor, planting of rootstock or nursery stock is required. Poor coverage is considered to be more than 30 percent bare area through the upper $^{2}/_{3}$ of the swale after four weeks.

Recommended Design Features

Same as for basic biofiltration swales (see page 6-49).

Construction Considerations

Same as for basic biofiltration swales (see page 6-50).

Maintenance Considerations

Same as for basic biofiltration swales (see page 6-50), except mowing of wetland vegetation is not required. However, harvesting of very dense vegetation may be desirable in the fall after plant die-back to prevent the sloughing of excess organic material into receiving waters. Many native *Juncus* species remain green throughout the winter; therefore, fall harvesting of *Juncus* species is not recommended.

[16] Unlike grass, wetland vegetation will not quickly regain an upright attitude after being laid down by high flows. New growth, usually from the base of the plant, often taking several weeks, is required to regain its upright form.

TABLE 6.3.2.A RECOMMENDED PLANTS FOR WET BIOFILTRATION SWALE		
Common Name	**Scientific Name**	**Spacing (on center)**
Shortawn foxtail	*Alopecurus aequalis*	seed
Water foxtail	*Alopecurus geniculatus*	seed
Spike rush	*Eleocharis spp.*	4 inches
Slough sedge*	*Carex obnupta*	6 inches or seed
Sawbeak sedge	*Carex stipata*	6 inches
Sedge	*Carex* spp.	6 inches
Western mannagrass	*Glyceria occidentalis*	seed
Velvetgrass	*Holcus mollis*	seed
Slender rush	*Juncus tenuis*	6 inches
Watercress*	*Rorippa nasturtium-aquaticum*	12 inches
Water parsley*	*Oenanthe sarmentosa*	6 inches
Hardstem bulrush	*Scirpus acutus*	6 inches
Small-fruited bulrush	*Scirpus microcarpus*	12 inches

** Good choices for swales with significant periods of flow, such as those downstream of a Level 2 or 3 detention facility.*

Note: Cattail (Typha latifolia) is not appropriate for most wet swales because of its very dense and clumping growth habit which prevents water from filtering through the clump.

6.3.3 CONTINUOUS INFLOW BIOFILTRATION SWALES

In situations where water enters a biofiltration swale continuously along the side slope rather than discretely at the head, a different design approach–the continuous inflow biofiltration swale–is needed. The basic swale design (see Section 6.3.1, p. 6-39) is modified by increasing swale length to achieve an equivalent average residence time.

Applications

A continuous inflow biofiltration swale is to be **used when inflows are not concentrated**, such as locations along the shoulder of a road without curbs. This design may also be **used where frequent, small point flows enter a swale**, such as through curb inlet ports spaced at intervals along a road, or from a parking lot with frequent curb cuts. In general, no inlet port should carry more than about 10 percent of the flow.

A continuous inflow swale is not appropriate for a situation in which significant lateral flows enter a swale at some point downstream from the head of the swale. In this situation, the swale width and length must be recalculated from the point of confluence to the discharge point in order to provide adequate treatment for the increased flows.

Consult the water quality menus in Section 6.1 (p. 6-3) for information on how this facility may be used to meet Core Requirement #8.

6.3.3.1 METHODS OF ANALYSIS

The design flow for continuous inflow swales must include runoff from the pervious side slopes draining to the swale along the entire swale length.

The method of analysis for continuous inflow swales is the same as for basic biofiltration swales (see Section 6.3.1.1, p. 6-40) except for the following **clarification of Step 1** and **modification to Step 4**:

- **Step 1:** The WQ design flow may be variable to reflect the increase in flows along the swale length. If only a single design flow is used, the flow at the outlet shall be used.
- **Step 4:** Double the hydraulic residence time so that it is a minimum of 18 minutes (1,080 seconds). Equation (6-5) becomes:

$$L = 1080 V_{wq} \qquad (6\text{-}8)$$

where L = minimum allowable swale length (ft)
V_{wq} = design flow velocity calculated in Step 3 (fps).

Note: Although bottom widths may be increased to reduce length, bottom width cannot be reduced because Manning's depth-velocity-flow rate relationships would not be preserved.

6.3.3.2 DESIGN CRITERIA

Same as specified for **basic biofiltration swales** (in Section 6.3.1.2, p. 6-43) except for the following **modification:**

Planting Requirements, Criterion 4: For continuous inflow biofiltration swales, interior side slopes above the WQ design treatment elevation shall be planted in grass. A typical lawn seed mix or the biofiltration seed mixes are acceptable. Landscape plants or groundcovers other than grass shall not be used anywhere between the runoff inflow elevation and the bottom of the swale.

Intent: The use of grass on interior side slopes reduces the chance of soil erosion and transfer of pollutants from landscape areas to the biofiltration treatment area.

6.3.4 BASIC FILTER STRIPS

A *filter strip* is a grassy slope located adjacent and parallel to an impervious area such as a parking lot, driveway, or roadway (see the filter strip detail in Figure 6.3.4.A on page 6-65). A filter strip is graded to maintain sheet flow of stormwater runoff over the entire width of the strip. A filter strip removes pollutants primarily by means of filtration by grass blades which enhance sedimentation, and the trapping and adhesion of pollutants to the grass and thatch. Pollutants can also be adsorbed by the underlying soil when infiltration occurs, but the extent of infiltration depends on the type of soil, the density of the grass, and the slope of the strip.

In this manual, design procedures are provided for two types of filter strip applications: (1) the basic filter strip that should typically apply to parking lots, driveways, and roads where sufficient space is available, and (2) a modified, narrow area filter strip for roadside applications with limited right-of-way space that constricts the filter strip sizing. The basic filter strip is covered in this section, and the narrow area filter strip is covered in Section 6.3.5.

Applications and Limitations

Filter strip design is based on the expectation that water will flow fairly evenly across the entire width and length of the strip area. Thus, paved areas without underground stormwater collection systems, gutters, or other runoff control features are good candidates for filter strips.

Filter strips are suitable for areas that meet the following conditions:

- Stormwater runoff from the area requiring treatment shall be uniformly distributed along the top of the entire filter strip. If stormwater runoff from the entire area cannot be spread evenly along the top of the filter strip, the filter strip shall be applied only to flows that can be uniformly distributed. A different stormwater treatment facility, such as a swale, should be used for areas of the ***project site*** with concentrated flow (for instance, at road intersections).
- The flowpath draining to the filter strip shall not exceed 150 feet. Runoff flows traveling greater distances tend to concentrate before entering the filter strip.
- The lateral slope of the drainage area contributing flows to the filter strip (parallel to the edge of pavement) shall be less than 2 percent. A stepped series of flow spreaders installed at the head of the strip could compensate for slightly steeper slopes (see "Flow Spreading and Energy Dissipation," p. 6-62).
- The longitudinal slope of the contributing drainage area (parallel to the direction of flow entering the filter strip) should be less than 5 percent. Contributing drainage areas with slopes steeper than 5 percent shall either use a different WQ facility or must provide energy dissipation and flow spreading mechanisms upslope of the upper edge of the filter strip.

A filter strip generally requires more land area than a biofiltration swale because the flow depth through the filter is shallower than through a swale. Although the space requirements may be greater, the filter strip is a viable water quality treatment option in locations where grassy slopes already exist, or where a slope can be incorporated easily into the landscape design for the ***project site***. Other limitations that shall be considered are listed below:

1. Filter strips are susceptible to short-circuiting via flow channelization because they rely on a large smoothly graded area. If rills, gullies, or channels occur in the filter strip area, inflows will travel too quickly through the filter strip, reducing contact time and pollutant removal performance. A filter strip slope with uneven grading perpendicular to the sheet flow path will develop flow channels over time. These problems can be overcome with careful ***site*** planning, good soil compaction, skillful grading, and periodic maintenance.

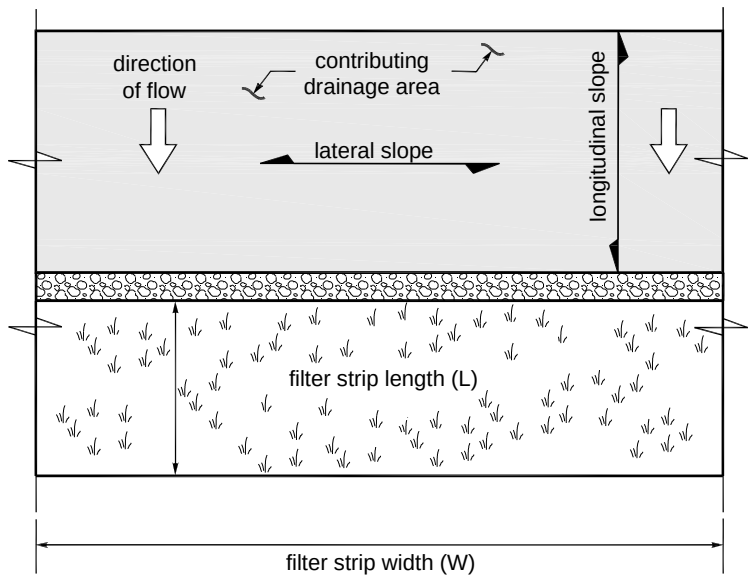
2. Filter strip areas shall not be used for material storage or any activities that could cause disturbance of the ground surface in a manner that could create or promote preferential flowpaths (rills or channels) in the filter strip.
3. Filter strips shall not be located in shaded areas, for filter strips require exposure to sunlight to ensure healthy grass growth.

Consult the water quality menus in Section 6.1 (p. 6-3) for information on how this facility may be used to meet Core Requirement # 8.

6.3.4.1 METHODS OF ANALYSIS

In this manual, *filter strip length* is defined as the length of the flowpath through the strip. Strip width is typically the same as the extent of pavement along the upstream edge of the strip. Thus, in sizing filter strips, the length is normally the dimension to be sized (see Figure 6.3.4.A below for definitions of terms).

FIGURE 6.3.4.A FILTER STRIP TERMINOLOGY



The procedure for filter strip design (described below) relies on Manning's equation to calculate some design variables. It is recognized that there are problems in this application.[17] The filter strip sizing method will be modified as new research results become available.

Filter strips sized and built using the method of analysis outlined below and the required design criteria presented in Section 6.3.4.2 are expected to meet the Basic Water Quality menu goal of 80% TSS removal.

Step 1: Calculate design flow. Determine the water quality design flow Q_{wq} (see Section 6.2.1, p. 6-17) using the hydrologic analysis procedures described in Chapter 3.

Step 2: Calculate design flow depth. The design flow depth is calculated based on the width of the filter strip (typically equivalent to the length of the edge of impervious surface contributing flow to the filter strip) and the longitudinal slope of the filter strip (parallel to the direction of flow) using a form of Manning's equation as follows:

[17] Ree, W.O., F.L. Wimberley, and F.R. Crow. 1977. Manning *n* and the overland flow equation. Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers 20 (89).

$$Q_{wq} = \frac{1.49}{n_{wq}} W d_f^{1.67} s^{0.5} \tag{6-9}$$

where Q_{wq} = water quality design flow (cfs)
n_{wq} = Manning's roughness coefficient (either 0.35 or 0.45; see the criteria under "Filter Strip Geometry and Flow Resistance," p. 6-62)
W = width of filter strip perpendicular to the direction of flow (ft) (≅ length of impervious surface contributing flow)
d_f = design depth of flow (ft), which is also assumed to be the hydraulic radius (maximum 1 inch, or 0.083 feet; see the criteria under "Water Depth and Velocity," p. 6-62)
s = longitudinal slope of filter strip parallel to the direction of flow (ft/ft) (averaged over the width of the filter strip; all portions averaged must also meet the slope design criteria).

Rearranging the above equation, the design depth of flow can be calculated using the following equation:

$$d_f = \left(\frac{Q_{wq} n_{wq}}{1.49 W s^{0.5}} \right)^{0.6} \tag{6-10}$$

If the calculated flow depth exceeds 1 inch (0.083 feet), the design flow rate routed through the strip must be reduced. If this is not feasible, it is not possible to use a filter strip.

Step 3: Calculate design flow velocity through filter strip. The design flow velocity V_{wq} is based on the water quality design flow rate, the width of the filter strip, and the calculated design flow depth from Step 2 using the following equation:

$$V_{wq} = \frac{Q_{wq}}{W d_f} \tag{6-11}$$

where V_{wq} = design flow velocity (fps)
W = strip width (ft) (parallel to the edge of pavement)
d_f = water depth (ft).

If V_{wq} exceeds 0.5 feet per second, a filter strip shall not be used. Either redesign the area to provide a gentler longitudinal slope for the strip, or select a different WQ facility.

Step 4: Calculate required length of filter strip. Determine the required length L of the filter strip to achieve a desired hydraulic residence time of at least 9 minutes (540 seconds) using the following equation:

$$L = 540 V_{wq} \tag{6-12}$$

where L = filter strip length (ft)
V_{wq} = design flow velocity from Step 3 (fps)

6.3.4.2 DESIGN CRITERIA

Figure 6.3.4.B (p. 6-65) shows typical filter strip details. The most effective filter strips achieve uniform sheet flow under all runoff flow conditions. To achieve proper flow conditions, the following basic design requirements apply.

Drainage Area Restrictions

1. The **longest flowpath** from the area contributing sheet flow to the filter strip shall not exceed 150 feet.
2. The **lateral slope of the contributing drainage** (parallel to the edge of pavement) shall be 2 percent or less.
3. A stepped series of **flow spreaders** installed at the head of the strip may be used to compensate for drainage areas having lateral slopes of up to 4 percent (see Section 6.2.6, p. 6-33, for information on flow spreader designs).
4. The **longitudinal slope of the contributing drainage area** (parallel to the direction of flow entering the filter strip) should be 5 percent or less.
5. Contributing drainage areas with longitudinal slopes steeper than 5 percent shall either use a different WQ facility or provide energy dissipation and flow spreading options upslope of the upper edge of the filter strip to achieve flow characteristics equivalent to those meeting the Criteria in items 2 and 4 above.

Filter Strip Geometry and Flow Resistance

1. The **longitudinal slope** of a filter strip (along the direction of flow) shall be between 1 percent minimum and 15 percent maximum.
2. The **lateral slope** of a strip (parallel to the edge of pavement, perpendicular to the direction of flow) shall be less than 2 percent.
3. The **ground surface** at the upper edge of a filter strip (adjacent to the contributing drainage area) shall be at least 1 inch lower than the edge of the impervious area contributing flows.
4. Manning's **roughness coefficient (n_{wq})** for flow depth calculations shall be 0.35. An exception to this requirement may be made for situations where the filter strip will be mowed weekly in the growing season to consistently provide a grass height of less than 4 inches; in this case, the value of n_{wq} in Equation (6-10) may be set to 0.45. *Note: In filter strip design, a larger* n *value results in a smaller strip size.*

Water Depth and Velocity

1. The **maximum depth** of flow through a filter strip for the WQ design flow shall be 1.0 inch.
2. The **maximum allowable flow velocity** for the water quality design flow V_{wq} shall be 0.5 feet per second.

Flow Spreading and Energy Dissipation

1. Runoff entering a filter strip must not be concentrated. A **flow spreader** shall be installed at the edge of the pavement to uniformly distribute the flow along the entire width of the filter strip.
2. At a minimum, a **gravel flow spreader** (gravel-filled trench) shall be placed between the impervious area contributing flows and the filter strip, and meet the following requirements:
   a) The gravel flow spreader shall be a minimum of 6 inches deep and shall be 18 inches wide for every 50 feet of contributing flowpath.

b) The gravel shall be a minimum of 1 inch below the pavement surface.

Intent: This allows sediment from the paved surface to be accommodated without blocking drainage onto the strip.

c) For strips less than 50 feet, the spreader width may be reduced to a minimum of 12 inches.

d) Where the ground surface is not level, the gravel spreader must be installed so that the bottom of the gravel trench and the outlet lip are level.

e) Along **roadways**, gravel flow spreaders must meet the specification for shoulder ballast given in Section 9-03.9(2) of the current WSDOT/APWA *Standard Specifications for Road, Bridge and Municipal Construction.* The ballast shall be compacted to 90 percent standard proctor.

Intent: This specification was chosen to meet traffic safety concerns as well as to limit fines to less than 2 percent passing the No.100 sieve.

3. Other flow spreaders (see Section 6.2.6, p. 6-33) may also be used. For filter strip applications, the notched curb spreader and through-curb port spreaders shall not be used without also adding a gravel spreader to better ensure that water sheet-flows onto the strip.

4. **Energy dissipaters** are needed in a filter strip if sudden slope drops occur, such as locations where flows in a filter strip pass over a rockery or retaining wall aligned perpendicular to the direction of flow. Adequate energy dissipation at the base of a drop section can be provided by a riprap pad (see Chapter 4, Table 4.2.2.A, for guidance).

Access

Access shall be provided at the **upper edge of a filter strip** to enable maintenance of the inflow spreader throughout the strip width and allow access for mowing equipment.

Soil Amendment

1. Two inches (minimum) of **well-rotted compost** shall be provided for the entire filter strip treatment area to amend the topsoil unless the soil already has an organic content of 1 percent or greater. The compost must be tilled into the underlying native soil to a depth of 6 inches to prevent washing out the compost and avoid creating a defined layer of different soil types that can prevent downward percolation of water.

   a) Compost shall not contain any sawdust, straw, green or under-composted organic matter, or toxic or otherwise harmful materials.

   b) Compost shall not contain unsterilized manure because it can leach fecal coliform bacteria into receiving waters.

2. **Soil or sod** with a clay content of greater than 10 percent should be avoided. If there is potential for contamination of the underlying groundwater, the filter strip shall be lined with a treatment liner to prevent groundwater contamination. See Section 6.2.4 (p. 6-23) for details on soil liner options.

Planting Requirements

1. **Grass** shall be established throughout the entire treatment area of the filter strip.

2. **Sod** may be used instead of grass seed as long as the entire filter strip area is completely covered with no gaps between sod pieces.

3. Filter strips are subject to drier conditions than biofiltration swales and also may be more vulnerable to erosion than swales. For these reasons, the following permanent **erosion-control grass seed mix** shall be applied at a rate of 80 pounds per acre in filter strips (percentages are by weight):

   40 percent turf-type rye

   40 percent fescue

10 percent white dutch clover

10 percent colonial bentgrass

4. **Alternate seed mixes** may be used if a horticultural or erosion-control specialist recommends a different mix and if erosion prevention is adequately addressed by other erosion-control measures.
5. Seed may be applied by **hydroseeding or broadcast application**.
6. **Seeding** is best performed in spring (mid-March to June) or fall (late September to October). If seed is applied in the spring or summer, irrigation must be provided to ensure grass survival.
7. Runoff shall be diverted around a filter strip until the grass is established, or an **erosion control blanket** shall be placed over the freshly applied seed mix. See *ESC Standards* (detached Appendix D) for information on erosion control blankets.

Recommended Design Features

Where conditions allow, the following features should be incorporated into a filter strip's design and its corresponding site configuration.

Site Layout and Landscaping

1. Filter strips should be incorporated into the **landscape design** of the ***site***; however, the treatment areas (i.e., grassy areas) should not be fertilized unless needed for healthy grass growth.
2. **Curbs** should be avoided, if possible, at the downslope edge of the contributing area. If curbing is needed, through-curb ports shall be provided (see Section 6.2.6, p. 6-33).
3. If **parking lot wheel stops** are necessary, individual wheel stops should have gaps for water to pass through. The shorter the wheel stops, the better for sheet flow purposes. See Section 6.2.6 (p. 6-33) for requirements.
4. During seeding, slow-release **fertilizers** may be applied to speed the growth of grass. If the filter strip is located in a sensitive lake watershed, low phosphorus fertilizers (such as formulations in the proportion 3:1:3 N-P-K or less) or a slow-release phosphorus formulation such as rock phosphate or bone meal should be used.
5. Filter strips should be well defined on a ***site*** and **marked with signs** to prevent future destruction or alteration of the treatment areas. Small at-grade signage is preferred.

Maintenance Features

1. **Irrigation** may be required in the summer months following initial filter strip construction to prevent the filter strip grass from wilting or dying. ***Site*** planning should address the need for sprinklers or other means of irrigation.
2. **Flatter slopes** are preferred for filter strips to make grass mowing easier.

Use with Oil Control Facilities

A project providing **oil control** (see the high-use definition in Chapter 1) may employ a filter strip for runoff treatment if a **linear sand filter** (see Section 6.5.4, p. 6-129) is used for oil control. In this situation, the sand filter should be designed so that flows exit the underdrain gravel along the whole length of the trench directly to the filter strip.

Construction Considerations

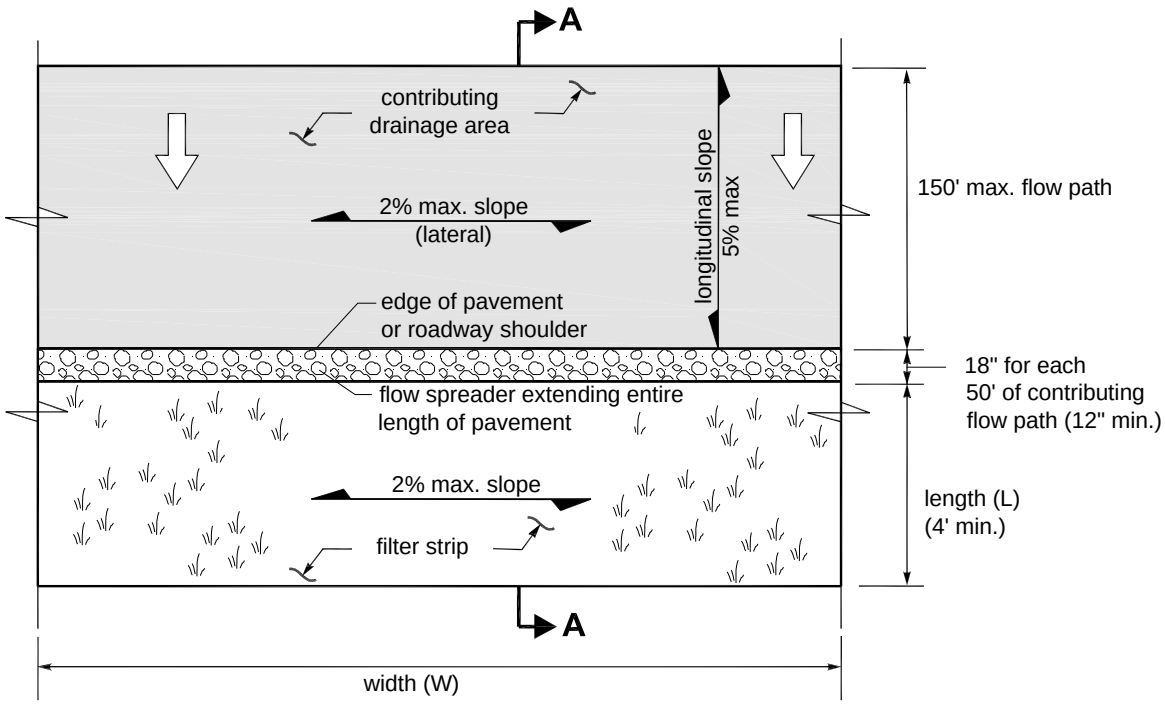
1. If a filter strip is put into operation before all construction in the contributing drainage catchment has been completed, the strip must be cleaned of sediment and reseeded prior to acceptance by the County. The County will not release financial guarantees if the filter strip is not restored and vigorous grass growth re-established.

2. It is preferable to provide erosion control before construction-phase sediment enters the filter strip. Filter strips are designed to handle only modest sediment loads without frequent maintenance.

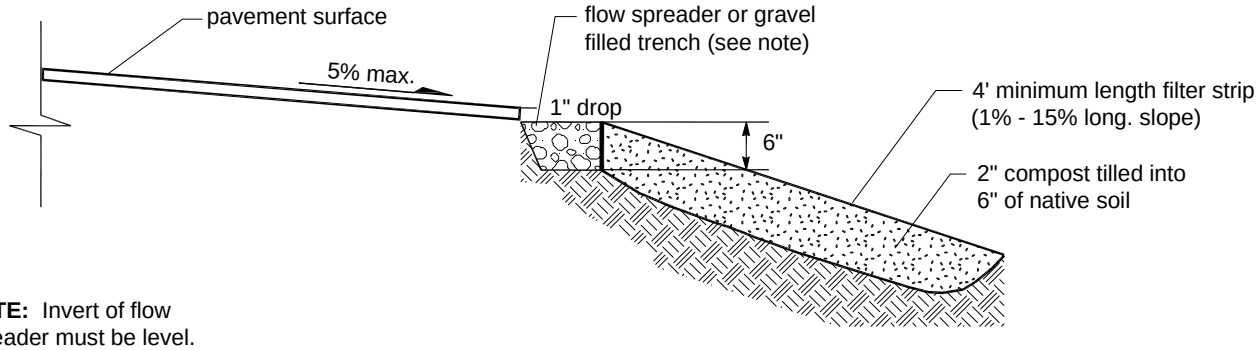
Maintenance Considerations

Maintenance considerations, including mowing frequency and sediment removal, are similar to those for biofiltration swales (see page 6-50).

FIGURE 6.3.4.B TYPICAL FILTER STRIP DETAILS



PLAN VIEW
NTS



NOTE: Invert of flow spreader must be level. Roadway shoulders must use shoulder ballast.

SECTION A-A
NTS

6.3.5 NARROW AREA FILTER STRIPS

This section describes a filter strip design[18] for impervious areas with flowpaths of 30 feet or less that can drain along their widest dimension to grassy areas (see Figure 6.3.4.A, p. 6-60, for definitions of filter strip geometry terms).

The treatment objectives, applications and limitations, design criteria, materials specifications, and construction and maintenance requirements set forth in the basic filter strip design apply to narrow filter strip applications.

If space is available to use the basic filter strip design, that design shall be used in preference to the narrow filter strip. However, along roadways with limited right-of-way, or for narrow parking strips, the narrow strip may be used.

Consult the water quality menus in Section 6.1 (p. 6-3) for information on how this facility may be used to meet Core Requirement #8.

6.3.5.1 METHODS OF ANALYSIS

The sizing of a narrow area filter strip is based on the length of flowpath draining to the filter strip and the longitudinal slope of the filter strip itself (parallel to the flowpath).

Step 1: Determine length of flowpath draining to filter strip. Determine the length of the flowpath from the upstream to the downstream edge of the impervious area draining sheet flow to the strip. Normally this is the same as the width of the paved area, but if the area is sloped, the flow path may be longer than the width of the impervious area.

Step 2: Determine average longitudinal slope of filter strip. Calculate the longitudinal slope of the filter strip (along the direction of unconcentrated flow), averaged over the total width of the filter strip. The minimum sizing slope is 2 percent. If the slope is less than 2 percent, use 2 percent for sizing purposes. The maximum allowable filter strip slope is 20 percent. If the slope exceeds 20 percent, the filter strip must be stepped down the slope so that the treatment areas between drop sections do not have a longitudinal slope greater than 20 percent. Drop sections must be provided with erosion protection at the base and flow spreaders to re-spread flows. Vertical drops along the slope must not exceed 12 inches in height. If this is not possible, a different treatment facility must be selected.

Step 3: Determine required length of filter strip. Select the appropriate filter strip length for the flowpath length and filter strip longitudinal slope (Steps 1 and 2 above) **from the graph in Figure 6.3.5.A (p. 6-67)**.[19] The filter strip must be designed to provide this minimum length *L* along the entire stretch of pavement draining into it.

To use the graph: Find the **length of the flowpath** on one of the curves (interpolate between curves as necessary). Move along the curve to the point where the **design longitudinal slope** of the filter strip (x-axis) is directly below. Read the filter **strip length** on the y-axis that corresponds to the intersection point.

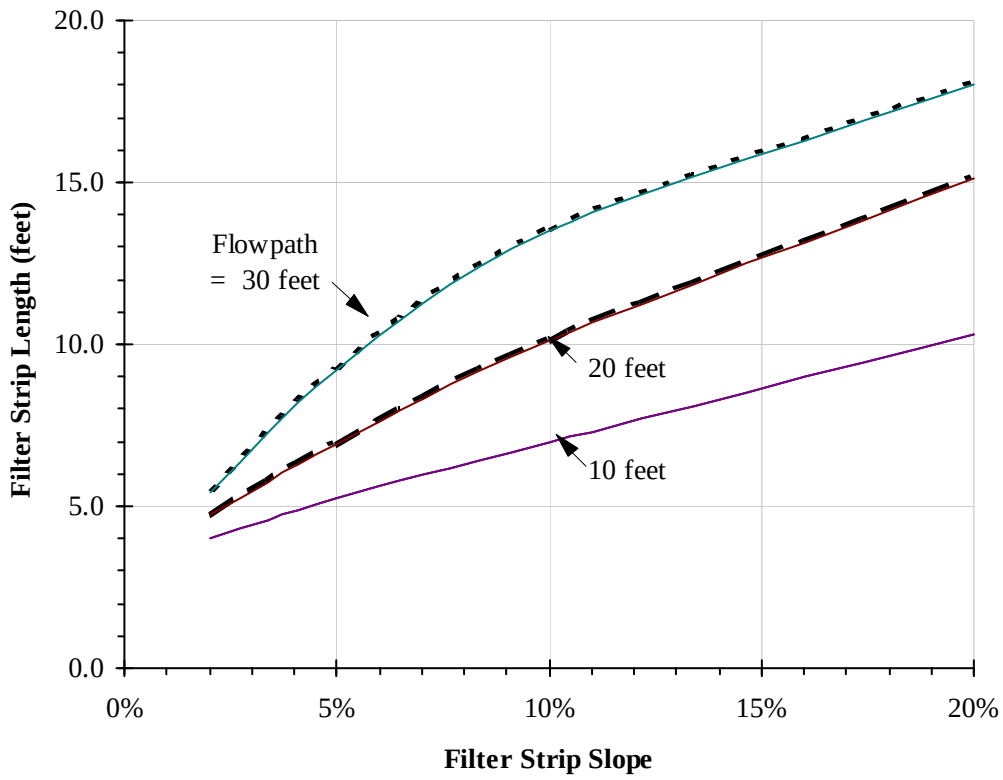
Example

If the length of flowpath through a parking strip is 20 feet and the filter strip will be at 5 percent longitudinal slope, move along the middle curve until it intercepts the 5 percent grid from the x-axis. The required filter strip length is 7 feet (read from the y-axis).

[18] This narrow area filter strip design method is included here because technical limitations exist in the basic design method that result in filter strips which are proportionately longer as the contributing drainage becomes narrower (a result that is counter-intuitive). Research by several parties is underway to evaluate filter strip design parameters. This research may lead to more stringent design requirements that would supersede the design criteria presented here.

[19] The filter strip length requirements reflected in Figure 6.3.5.A are scaled from dimensions of biofiltration swale treatment areas for the same slope and flow rate conditions.

FIGURE 6.3.5.A FILTER STRIP LENGTHS FOR NARROW RIGHT-OF-WAY



Note: minimum allowable filter strip length is 4 feet

6.3.5.2 DESIGN CRITERIA

Required and recommended design criteria for narrow area filter strips are the **same as specified for basic filter strips**. Note that for roadway applications, gravel spreaders must meet the specification for shoulder ballast given in Section 9-03.9(2) of the current *Standard Specifications for Road, Bridge and Municipal Construction*, 1994compacted to 90 percent standard proctor.

6.4 WETPOOL FACILITY DESIGNS

This section presents the methods, criteria, and details for analysis and design of wetponds, wetvaults, and stormwater wetlands. These facilities have as a common element a permanent pool of water, the *wetpool*. Each of the wetpool facilities may be combined with a detention or flow control pond in a combined facility. Included are the following specific facility designs:

- "Wetponds — Basic and Large," Section 6.4.1
- "Wetvaults," Section 6.4.2 (p. 6-83)
- "Stormwater Wetlands," Section 6.4.3 (p. 6-89)
- "Combined Detention and Wetpool Facilities," Section 6.4.4 (p. 6-95).

The information presented for each facility is organized into the following two categories:

1. **Methods of Analysis:** Contains a step-by-step procedure for designing and sizing each facility.
2. **Design Criteria:** Contains the details, specifications, and material requirements for each facility.

6.4.1 WETPONDS — BASIC AND LARGE

A *wetpond* is a constructed stormwater pond that retains a permanent pool of water (a "wetpool") at least during the wet season (see the wetpond detail in Figure 6.4.1.B on page 6-80). The volume of the wetpool is related to the effectiveness of the pond in settling particulate pollutants. The following design procedures, requirements, and recommendations cover two wetpond applications, the basic wetpond and the large wetpond. The two sizes are designed for two different levels of pollutant removal.

Applications and Limitations

A wetpond requires a larger area than a biofiltration swale or a sand filter, but it can be integrated to the contours of a ***site*** fairly easily. In till soils, the wetpond holds a permanent pool of water that provides an attractive aesthetic feature. In more porous soils, wetponds may still be used, but water seepage from unlined cells could result in a dry pond, particularly in the summer months. Lining with impervious material is one way to deal with this situation.

Wetponds may be single-purpose facilities, providing only water quality treatment, or they may be combined with a detention pond to also provide flow control. If combined, the wetpond can often be stacked under the detention pond with little further loss of development area. See Section 6.4.4 (p. 6-95) for a description of combined WQ and detention facilities.

Wetponds treat water both by gravity settling and by biological uptake by algae and microorganisms. Wetponds can remove some dissolved pollutants such as soluble phosphorus by this uptake mechanism. They are therefore used in the Sensitive Lake Protection menu for phosphorus control in addition to the Basic WQ menu for solids removal. Wetponds work best when the water already in the pond is moved out *en masse* by incoming flows, a phenomena called *plug flow*. Because treatment works on this displacement principle, the dead storage pool of wetponds may be provided below the groundwater level without interfering unduly with treatment effectiveness. However, if combined with a detention function, the live storage must be above the seasonal high groundwater level.

Consult the water quality menus in Section 6.1 (p. 6-3) for information on how basic and large wetponds may be used to meet Core Requirement #8.

6.4.1.1 METHODS OF ANALYSIS

This section describes methods of analysis for the following two wetpond sizes:

- **Basic wetpond** (see below)
- **Large wetpond** (see page 6-73).

❑ BASIC WETPOND

The primary design factor that determines a wetpond's **particulate removal efficiency** is the volume of the wetpool in relation to the volume of stormwater runoff from the *mean annual storm*.[20] The larger the wetpond volume in relation to the volume of runoff, the greater the potential for pollutant removal. Also important are the avoidance of short-circuiting and the promotion of plug flow. *Plug flow* describes the hypothetical condition of stormwater moving through the pond as a unit, displacing the "old" water in the pond with incoming flows. To prevent short-circuiting, water is forced to flow, to the extent practical, to all potentially available flow routes, avoiding "dead zones" and maximizing the time water stays in the pond during the active part of a storm.

Design features that encourage plug flow and avoid dead zones are as follows:

- Dissipating energy at the inlet
- Providing a large length-to-width ratio
- Providing a broad surface for water exchange across cells rather than a constricted area.

Maximizing the flowpath between inlet and outlet, including the vertical path, also enhances treatment by increasing residence time.

Wetponds designed using the method below (with the volume = $3V_r$) and the required design criteria in Section 6.6.2.2 are expected to meet the Basic WQ menu goal of 80% TSS removal. The actual performance of a wetpond may vary, however, due to a number of factors, including design features, maintenance frequency, storm characteristics, pond algae dynamics, and waterfowl use.

Procedures for determining a wetpond's dimensions and volume are outlined below.

Step 1: Identify required wetpool volume factor (*f*). A basic wetpond requires a volume factor of **3**. This means that the required wetpond volume is 3 times the volume of runoff V_r from the mean annual storm (see Steps 2 and 3).

Step 2: Determine rainfall (*R*) for the mean annual storm. The rainfall for the mean annual storm R is obtained by locating the ***project site*** on Figure 6.4.1.A (p. 6-71) and interpolating between isopluvials. Convert to feet for use in Equation (6-13).

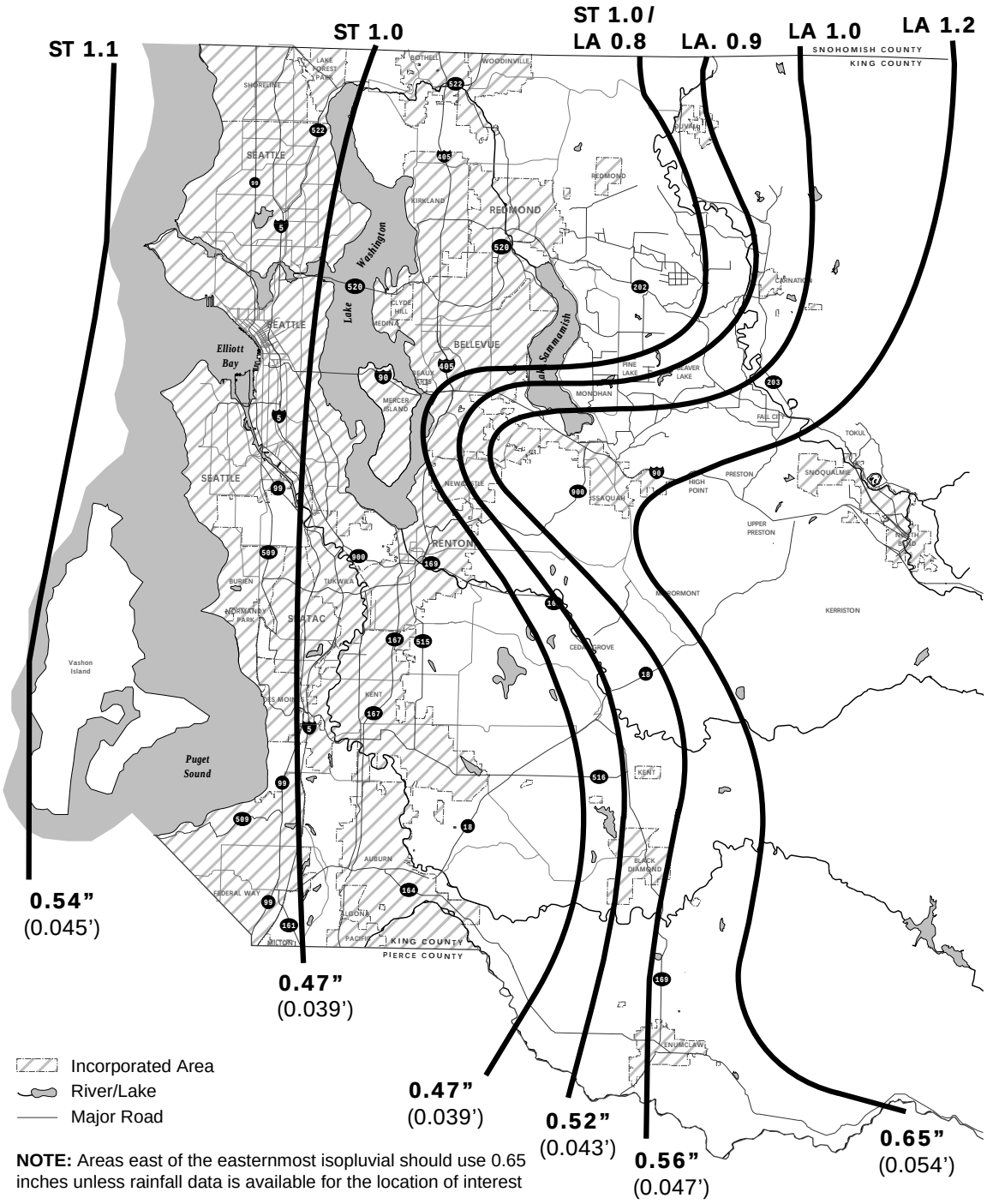
Step 3: Calculate runoff from the mean annual storm (V_r) for the developed *site*. The runoff volume V_r is the amount of rainfall that runs off a particular set of land covers. To determine V_r, each portion of the wetpond tributary area is assigned to one of four cover types, each having a different runoff coefficient: impervious surface, till grass, till forest, or outwash.

- **Impervious surface** is a compacted surface, such as pavement, gravel, soil, or other hard surfaces, as well as open water bodies. *Note: The effective impervious computations given in Chapter 3, Table 3.2.2.E may be used, unless more detailed information is available.*

- **Till grass** is post-development grass or landscaped area and onsite forested land on till soil that are not permanently in critical area buffers or covenants. *Till* is soil that does not drain readily and, as a

[20] The *mean annual storm* is a statistically derived rainfall event defined by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency in "Results of the Nationwide Urban Runoff Program," 1986. It is defined as the annual rainfall divided by the number of storm events in the year. The NURP studies refer to pond sizing using a V_b/V_r ratio: the ratio of the pond volume V_b to the volume of runoff from the mean annual storm V_r. This is equivalent to using a volume factor f times V_r.

FIGURE 6.4.1.A PRECIPITATION FOR MEAN ANNUAL STORM IN INCHES (FEET)



NOTE: Areas east of the easternmost isopluvial should use 0.65 inches unless rainfall data is available for the location of interest

result, generates large amounts of runoff. For this application, till soil types include Buckley and bedrock soils, and alluvial and outwash soils that have a seasonally high water table or are underlain at a shallow depth (less than 5 feet) by glacial till. U.S. Soil Conservation Service (SCS) hydrologic soil groups that are classified as till soils include a few B, most C, and all D soils. See Chapter 3 for classification of specific SCS soil types.

- **Till forest** is all permanent onsite forest and/or shrub cover, located on till soils, that retains the natural understory vegetation and forest duff, irrespective of age, if densities are sufficient to ensure at least 80 percent canopy cover within 5 years. To be counted in this category, forest must be protected as permanent open space. Such areas shall be placed in a separate open space tract or shall be protected through covenants or conservation easements. Section 5.2.1 has a brief discussion of forested open space under the heading "Rural Residential Projects."
- **Outwash** is soil that infiltrates well and as a result produces small amounts of runoff. SCS hydrologic soil groups classified as outwash soils include all A, most B, and some C soils. See Chapter 3 for classification of specific SCS soil types.

Cover categories are based on existing U.S. Department of Agriculture soil survey data or ***site***-specific data where available.

Next, coefficients specific to the four cover types are weighted by the drainage areas and then multiplied by the rainfall R from Step 2 to produce the runoff volume V_r:

$$V_r = (0.9A_i + 0.25A_{tg} + 0.10A_{tf} + 0.01A_o) \text{ x } (R) \qquad (6\text{-}13)$$

where
V_r = volume of runoff from mean annual storm (cf)
A_i = area of impervious surface (sf)
A_{tg} = area of till soil covered with grass (sf)
A_{tf} = area of till soil covered with forest (sf)
A_o = area of outwash soil covered with grass or forest (sf)
R = rainfall from mean annual storm (ft)

Step 4: Calculate wetpool volume (V_b). Use the results of the previous steps to calculate the required wetpool volume according to the following equation:

$$V_b = f\,V_r \qquad (6\text{-}14)$$

where
V_b = wetpool volume (cf)
f = volume factor from Step 1
V_r = runoff volume (cf) from Step 3

Step 5: Determine wetpool dimensions. Determine the wetpool dimensions satisfying the design criteria outlined below. A simple way to check the volume of each wetpool cell is to use the following equation:

$$V_b = \frac{h(A_1 + A_2)}{2} \qquad (6\text{-}15)$$

where
V_b = wetpool volume (cf)
h = wetpool depth (ft)
A_1 = water quality design surface area of wetpool (sf)
A_2 = bottom area of wetpool (sf)

Step 6: Design pond outlet pipe and determine primary overflow water surface. The design criteria for wetponds (see Section 6.4.1.2) calls for a pond outlet pipe to be placed on a reverse grade from the pond's wetpool to the outlet structure. Use the following procedure to design the pond outlet pipe and determine the primary overflow water surface elevation:

a) Use the nomographs in Section 4.3 (Figures 4.3.1.B and 4.3.1.C) to select a trial size for the pond outlet pipe sufficient to pass the WQ design flow Q_{wq}.

b) Use Figure 4.3.1.F to determine the critical depth d_c at the outflow end of the pipe for Q_{wq}.

c) Use Figure 4.2.1.G to determine the flow area A_c at critical depth.

d) Calculate the flow velocity at critical depth using continuity equation ($V_c = Q_{wq} / A_c$).

e) Calculate the velocity head V_H ($V_H = V_c^2 / 2g$), where g is the gravitational constant, 32.2 feet per second).

f) Determine the primary overflow water surface elevation by adding the velocity head and critical depth to the invert elevation at the outflow end of the pond outlet pipe (i.e., overflow water surface elevation = outflow invert + d_c + V_H)

g) Adjust outlet pipe diameter as needed and repeat Steps (a) through (e).

❑ LARGE WETPOND

Large wetponds are expected to meet the Sensitive Lake Protection menu goal of 50% total phosphorus removal. The actual performance of a wetpond may vary, however, due to a number of factors. The methods of analysis presented above for basic wetponds apply to large wetponds, except that **Step 1 is modified** as follows:

Step 1: A large wetpond requires a volume factor of 4.5.

6.4.1.2 DESIGN CRITERIA

This section sets forth design criteria for the following:

- **Basic wetpond** (see below)
- **Large wetpond** (see page 6-79).

General wetpond design criteria and concepts are shown in Figure 6.4.1.B (p. 6-80).

❑ BASIC WETPOND

Wetpool Geometry

1. The wetpool shall be divided into **two cells** separated by a baffle or berm.[21] The first cell shall contain between 25 to 35 percent of the total wetpool volume. The baffle or berm volume shall not count as part of the total wetpool volume.

   Intent: The full-length berm or baffle promotes plug flow and enhances quiescence and laminar flow through as much of the entire water volume as possible. Use of a pipe and full-width manifold system to introduce water into the second cell is possible on a case-by-case basis if approved by DDES.

2. Wetponds with wetpool volumes less than or equal to 4,000 cubic feet may be **single celled** (i.e., no baffle or berm is required).

3. **Sediment storage** shall be provided in the first cell. The sediment storage shall have a minimum depth of 1 foot.

4. The **minimum depth of the first cell** shall be 4 feet, exclusive of sediment storage requirements. The depth of the first cell may be greater than the depth of the second cell. If the wetpool is a single cell, the volume equivalent to the first cell shall have a minimum depth of 4 feet.

5. The **maximum depth of each cell** shall not exceed 8 feet (exclusive of sediment storage in the first cell). Pool depths of 3 feet or shallower (second cell) shall be planted with emergent wetland vegetation (see **Planting requirements**).

[21] As used here, the term *baffle* means a vertical divider placed across the entire width of the pond, stopping short of the pond bottom. A berm is a vertical divider typically built up from the bottom, or if in a vault, connects all the way to the bottom.

6. Inlets and outlets shall be placed to maximize the flowpath through the facility. The **ratio of flowpath length to width** from the inlet to the outlet shall be at least 3:1. The *flowpath length* is defined as the distance from the inlet to the outlet, as measured at mid-depth. The *width* at mid-depth can be found as follows: width = (average top width + average bottom width)/2.
7. All inlets shall enter the first cell. If there are multiple inlets, the length-to-width ratio shall be based on the average flowpath length for all inlets.

Berms, Baffles, and Slopes

1. A berm or baffle shall extend across the full width of the wetpool, and tie into the wetpond side slopes. If the berm embankments are greater than 4 feet in height, the berm **must be constructed by excavating a key** equal to 50% of the embankment cross-sectional height and width. This requirement may be waived if recommended by a geotechnical engineer for specific ***site*** conditions.[22]
2. The **top of the berm shall extend** to the **WQ design water surface** or be one foot below the WQ design water surface. If at the WQ design water surface, berm side slopes must be 3H:1V. Berm side slopes may be steeper (up to 2:1) if the berm is submerged one foot.

   Intent: Submerging the berm is intended to enhance safety by discouraging pedestrian access when side slopes are steeper than 3H:1V.
3. If good vegetation cover is not established on the berm, **erosion control measures** shall be used to prevent erosion of the berm back-slope when the pond is initially filled.
4. The interior berm or baffle may be a **retaining wall** provided that the design is prepared and stamped by a ***civil engineer***. If a baffle or retaining wall is used, it shall be submerged one foot below the design water surface to discourage access by pedestrians.
5. Criteria for wetpond **side slopes** and **fencing** are given under "General Requirements for WQ Facilities," Section 6.2.3 (p. 6-21).
6. Berm **embankments** shall be the same as for detention ponds (see Section 5.3.1).
7. **Internal berms** to lengthen the flow path or allow the inlet and outlet to be at the same side of the pond may be used if an **adjustment** is granted. An adjustment may be granted only if **physical *site* constraints** prevent the standard configuration and design features promote water quality treatment. Required design features to approve an adjustment include minimizing dead spaces, minimizing turbulence, and promoting plug flow. Internal berms must extend to the 2-year water elevation, a minimum of 10 feet must be between the berms, and a distance equal to the width between the internal berms must be provided between the internal berm and the pond side at the point that the flow turns around the berm.

Inlet and Outlet

See Figure 6.4.1.B (p. 6-80) for details on the following requirements:

1. The **inlet** to the wetpond shall be **submerged** with the inlet pipe invert a minimum of two feet from the pond bottom (not including sediment storage). The top of the inlet pipe shall be submerged at least 1 foot.

   Intent: The inlet is submerged to dissipate energy of the incoming flow. The distance from the bottom is set to minimize resuspension of settled sediments. Alternative inlet designs that accomplish these objectives are acceptable.
2. An **outlet structure** shall be provided. Either a Type 2 catch basin with a grated opening (jail house window) or a manhole with a cone grate (birdcage) may be used (see Section 5.3.1.1). No sump is

[22] The geotechnical analysis must address situations in which one of the two cells is empty while the other remains full of water. These situations can occur, for example, during pump down of either cell for sediment removal, or when water from the second unlined cell percolates into the ground.

required in the outlet structure for wetponds not providing detention storage. The outlet structure receives flow from the pond outlet pipe. The grate or birdcage openings provide an overflow route should the pond outlet pipe become clogged. Criterion 5 below specifies the sizing and position of the grate opening.

3. The **pond outlet pipe** (as opposed to the structure outlet) shall be back-sloped or have a turn-down elbow, and extend 1 foot below the WQ design water surface. *Note: A floating outlet, set to draw water from 1 foot below the water surface, is also acceptable if vandalism concerns are adequately addressed.* **Intent:** The inverted outlet pipe provides for trapping of oils and floatables in the wetpond.

4. The **pond outlet pipe** shall be sized, at a minimum, to pass the WQ design flow. *Note: The highest invert of the outlet pipe sets the **WQ design water surface** elevation.*

5. The **overflow** criteria for single-purpose wetponds are as follows:

   a) The requirement for **primary overflow** as described for flow control ponds is satisfied by either the **grated inlet** to the outlet structure or by a **birdcage** above the pond outlet structure as shown in Figure 5.3.1.C.

   b) The bottom of the grate opening in the outlet structure shall be set at or above the height needed to pass the WQ design flow through the pond outlet pipe (see page 6-72 for sizing details). *Note: The grate invert elevation sets the **overflow water surface** elevation.*

   c) In flow-through ponds, the grated opening shall be sized to pass the 100-year design flow.

6. An **emergency spillway** shall be provided and designed according to the requirements for detention ponds (see Section 5.3.1).

7. A **gravity drain** for maintenance shall be provided if grade allows.

   a) The **drain invert** shall be at least 6 inches below the top elevation of the dividing berm or baffle. Deeper drains are encouraged where feasible, but must be no deeper than 18 inches above the pond bottom.

      Intent: to prevent highly sediment-laden water from escaping the pond when drained for maintenance.

   b) The drain shall be at least 8 inches (minimum) diameter and shall be controlled by a valve. Use of a shear gate is allowed only at the inlet end of a pipe located within an approved structure.

      Intent: Shear gates often leak if water pressure pushes on the side of the gate opposite the seal. The gate should be situated so that water pressure pushes toward the seal.

   Intent: It is anticipated that sediment removal will only be needed for the first cell in the majority of cases. The gravity drain is intended to allow water from the first cell to be drained to the second cell when the first cell is pumped dry for cleaning.

8. Operational access to the valve shall be provided to the finished ground surface.

   a) The valve location shall be accessible and well-marked with one foot of paving placed around the box. It must also be protected from damage and unauthorized operation.

   b) A valve box is allowed to a maximum depth of 5 feet without an access manhole. If over 5 feet deep, an access manhole or vault is required.

9. All metal parts shall be corrosion-resistant. Galvanized materials are discouraged where substitutes are available.

Access and Setbacks

1. The location of the pond relative to ***site*** constraints (e.g., buildings, property lines, etc.) shall be the same as for detention ponds (see Section 5.3.1). See Section 6.2.3 (p. 6-21) for typical setback requirements for WQ facilities.
2. Access and maintenance **roads** shall be provided and designed according to the requirements for detention ponds (see Section 5.3.1). Access and maintenance roads shall extend to both the wetpond inlet and outlet structures. An access ramp (7H minimum:1V) shall be provided to the bottom of the first cell unless all portions of the cell can be reached and sediment loaded from the top of the pond. Also see Section 5.3.1, "Access Requirements" for more information on access alternatives.
3. If the **dividing berm** is also **used for access**, it must be built to sustain loads of up to 80,000 pounds.

Signage

1. General signage shall be provided according to the requirements for detention ponds (see Section 5.3.1).
2. Signage discouraging feeding of waterfowl is required. The sign entitled "Four reasons not to feed ducks and geese" is available to download from the King County Water and Land Resources Division *Surface Water Design Manual* website. This sign, or other approved equivalent sign, shall be placed for maximum visibility from adjacent streets, sidewalks, and paths. Specifications for installing the sign are shown in Figure 6.4.1.C (p. 6-82).

Planting Requirements

1. Planting requirements for detention ponds (see Section 5.3.1.1) also apply to wetponds.

   If the second cell of the wetpond is 3 feet or shallower, the bottom area shall be planted with emergent wetland vegetation. See Table 6.4.1.A (p. 6-77) for recommended emergent wetland plant species for wetponds. **Intent:** Planting of shallow pond areas helps to stabilize settled sediment and prevent resuspension. *Note: The recommendations in* Table 6.4.1.A *are for western Washington only. Local knowledge should be used to adapt this information if used in other areas.*
2. Cattails (*Typha latifolia*) are not allowed because they tend to crowd out other species, and the dead shoots need to be removed to prevent oxygen depletion in the wetpool.
3. If the wetpond is in a sensitive lake or sphagnum bog protection area, shrubs that form a dense cover shall be planted on slopes above the WQ design water surface on at least three sides. For banks that are berms, no planting is allowed if the berm is regulated by dam safety requirements (see Section 5.3.1). The purpose of planting is to discourage waterfowl use of the pond and to provide shading.[23] Some suitable trees and shrubs include vine maple (*Acer circinatum*), wild cherry (*Prunus emarginata*), red osier dogwood (*Cornus stolonifera*), California myrtle (*Myrica californica*), Indian plum (*Oemleria cerasiformis*), and Pacific yew (*Taxus brevifolia*) as well as numerous ornamental species.

Recommended Design Features

The following design features should be incorporated into the wetpond design where ***site*** conditions allow:

1. For wetpool depths in excess of 6 feet, it is recommended that some form of **recirculation** be provided in the summer, such as a fountain or aerator, to prevent stagnation and low dissolved oxygen conditions. A special use permit is needed for a pump or fountain in a County maintained pond.
2. A flow length-to-width ratio greater than the 3:1 minimum is desirable. If the ratio is 4:1 or greater, then the **dividing berm is not required**, and the pond may consist of one cell rather than two.

[23] Waterfowl are believed to limit use of areas where their view of predator approach paths is blocked. Some suitable native shrubs include vine maple, Indian plum, bitter cherry, red osier dogwood, cascara, and red elderberry. Ornamental hedge plants such as English laurel, privet and barberry are also good choices.

TABLE 6.4.1.A EMERGENT WETLAND PLANT SPECIES RECOMMENDED FOR WETPONDS

Species	Common Name	Notes	Maximum Depth
INUNDATION TO 1 FOOT			
Agrostis exarata(1)	Spike bent grass	Prairie to coast	to 2 feet
Carex stipata	Sawbeak sedge	Wet ground	
Eleocharis palustris	Spike rush	Margins of ponds, wet meadows	to 2 feet
Glyceria occidentalis	Western mannagrass	Marshes, pond margins	to 2 feet
Juncus effusus	Soft rush	Wet meadows, pastures, wetland margins	to 2 feet
Juncus tenuis	Slender rush	Wet soils, wetland margins	
Oenanthe sarmentosa	Water parsley	Shallow water along stream and pond margins; needs saturated soils all summer	
Scirpus atrocinctus (formerly S. cyperinus)	Woolgrass	Tolerates shallow water; tall clumps	
Scirpus microcarpus	Small-fruited bulrush	Wet ground to 18 inches depth	18 inches
Sagittaria latifolia	Arrowhead		
INUNDATION 1 TO 2 FEET			
Agrostis exarata(1)	Spike bent grass	Prairie to coast	
Alisma plantago-aquatica	Water plantain		
Eleocharis palustris	Spike rush	Margins of ponds, wet meadows	
Glyceria occidentalis	Western mannagrass	Marshes, pond margins	
Juncus effusus	Soft rush	Wet meadows, pastures, wetland margins	
Scirpus microcarpus	Small-fruited bulrush	Wet ground to 18 inches depth	18 inches
Sparganium emmersum	Bur reed	Shallow standing water, saturated soils	
INUNDATION 1 TO 3 FEET			
Carex obnupta	Slough sedge	Wet ground or standing water	1.5 to 3 feet
Beckmania syzigachne(1)	Western sloughgrass	Wet prairie to pond margins	
Scirpus acutus(2)	Hardstem bulrush	Single tall stems, not clumping	to 3 feet
Scirpus validus(2)	Softstem bulrush		
INUNDATION GREATER THAN 3 FEET			
Nuphar polysepalum	Spatterdock	Deep water	3 to 7.5 feet
Nymphaea odorata(1)	White waterlily	Shallow to deep ponds	to 6 feet

Notes:

(1) Non-native species. *Beckmania syzigachne* is native to Oregon. Native species are preferred.

(2) *Scirpus* tubers must be planted shallower for establishment, and protected from foraging waterfowl until established. Emerging aerial stems should project above water surface to allow oxygen transport to the roots.

Primary sources: Municipality of Metropolitan Seattle, *Water Pollution Control Aspects of Aquatic Plants*, 1990. Hortus Northwest, *Wetland Plants for Western Oregon*, Issue 2, 1991. Hitchcock and Cronquist, *Flora of the Pacific Northwest*, 1973.

3. A **tear-drop shape**, with the inlet at the narrow end, rather than a rectangular pond is preferred since it minimizes dead zones caused by corners.
4. A small amount of **base flow** is desirable to maintain circulation and reduce the potential for low oxygen conditions during late summer.
5. Evergreen or columnar deciduous **trees along the west and south sides** of ponds are recommended to reduce thermal heating, except that no trees or shrubs shall be planted on berms meeting the criteria of dams regulated for safety (see Dam Safety Compliance in Section 5.3.1). In addition to shade, trees and shrubs also discourage waterfowl use and the attendant phosphorus enrichment problems they cause. Trees should be set back so that the branches will not extend over the pond.

   Intent: Evergreen trees or shrubs are preferred to avoid problems associated with leaf drop. Columnar deciduous trees (e.g., hornbeam, Lombardy poplar, etc.) typically have fewer leaves than other deciduous trees.
6. The **number of inlets** to the facility should be limited; ideally there should be only one inlet. The flowpath length should be maximized from inlet to outlet for all inlets to the facility.
7. The **access and maintenance road** could be extended along the full length of the wetpond and could double as playcourts or picnic areas. Placing finely ground bark or other natural material over the road surface would render it more pedestrian friendly.
8. **Stormwater tracts** may be credited to meet recreational space requirements under some circumstances (criteria in KCC 21A.14.180.D) or may sometimes be located in open space set aside through the four to one program. See Section 5.3.1.1 for details.
9. The following design features should be incorporated to **enhance aesthetics** where possible:
   a) Provide pedestrian access to shallow pool areas enhanced with emergent wetland vegetation. This allows the pond to be more accessible without incurring safety risks.
   b) Provide side slopes that are sufficiently gentle to avoid the need for fencing (3:1 or flatter).
   c) Create flat areas overlooking or adjoining the pond for picnic tables or seating that can be used by residents. Walking or jogging trails around the pond are easily integrated into ***site*** design.
   d) Include fountains or integrated waterfall features for privately maintained facilities.
   e) Provide visual enhancement with clusters of trees and shrubs. In most pond areas, it is important to amend the soil before planting since ponds are typically placed well below the native soil horizon in very poor soils. Make sure dam safety restrictions against planting do not apply.
   f) Orient the pond length along the direction of prevailing summer winds (typically west or southwest) to enhance wind mixing.[24]

Construction Considerations

1. Sediment that has accumulated in the pond must be removed after construction in the drainage area of the pond is complete (unless used for a liner—see Criteria 2 below). If no more than 12 inches of sediment have accumulated after plat construction, cleaning may be left until after building construction is complete. In general, sediment accumulation from stabilized drainage areas is not expected to exceed an average of 4 inches per year in the first cell. If sediment accumulation is greater than this amount, it will be assumed to be from construction unless it can be shown otherwise. The County will not release maintenance and defect financial guarantees or assume maintenance responsibility for a facility unless it has been cleaned of construction phase sediments.

[24] Wind moving over the surface of standing water can often induce some mixing of surface and near-surface water, replenishing oxygen and reducing stagnant conditions. If the pond is aligned with the prevailing wind direction, this effect can be maximized.

2. Sediment that has accumulated in the pond at the end of construction may be used as a liner in excessively drained soils if the sediment meets the criteria for low permeability or treatment liners defined in Section 6.2.4 (p. 6-23) and in keeping with guidance given in Table 6.2.4.A (p. 6-25). Sediment used for a soil liner must be graded to provide uniform coverage and thickness.

Maintenance Considerations

1. The pond should be inspected annually. Floating debris and accumulated petroleum products should be removed as needed, but at least annually.
2. Nearby vegetation should be trimmed as necessary to keep the pond free of leaves and to maintain the aesthetic appearance of the area. Slope areas that have become bare should be revegetated and eroded areas should be regraded prior to being revegetated.
3. Sediment should be removed when the 1-foot sediment zone is full plus 6 inches. Sediments should be tested for toxicants in compliance with current disposal requirements if land uses in the catchment include commercial or industrial zones, or if visual or olfactory indications of pollution are noticed.
4. Water drained or pumped from ponds prior to sediment removal may be discharged to storm drains if it is not excessively turbid (i.e., if water appears translucent when held to light) and if floatable debris and visual petroleum sheens are removed. Excessively turbid water (i.e., water appears opaque when held to light) should be discharged only after the solids have been settled and removed.
5. Pumping rates should be slow enough so that downstream channel erosion problems do not develop.

❑ LARGE WETPOND

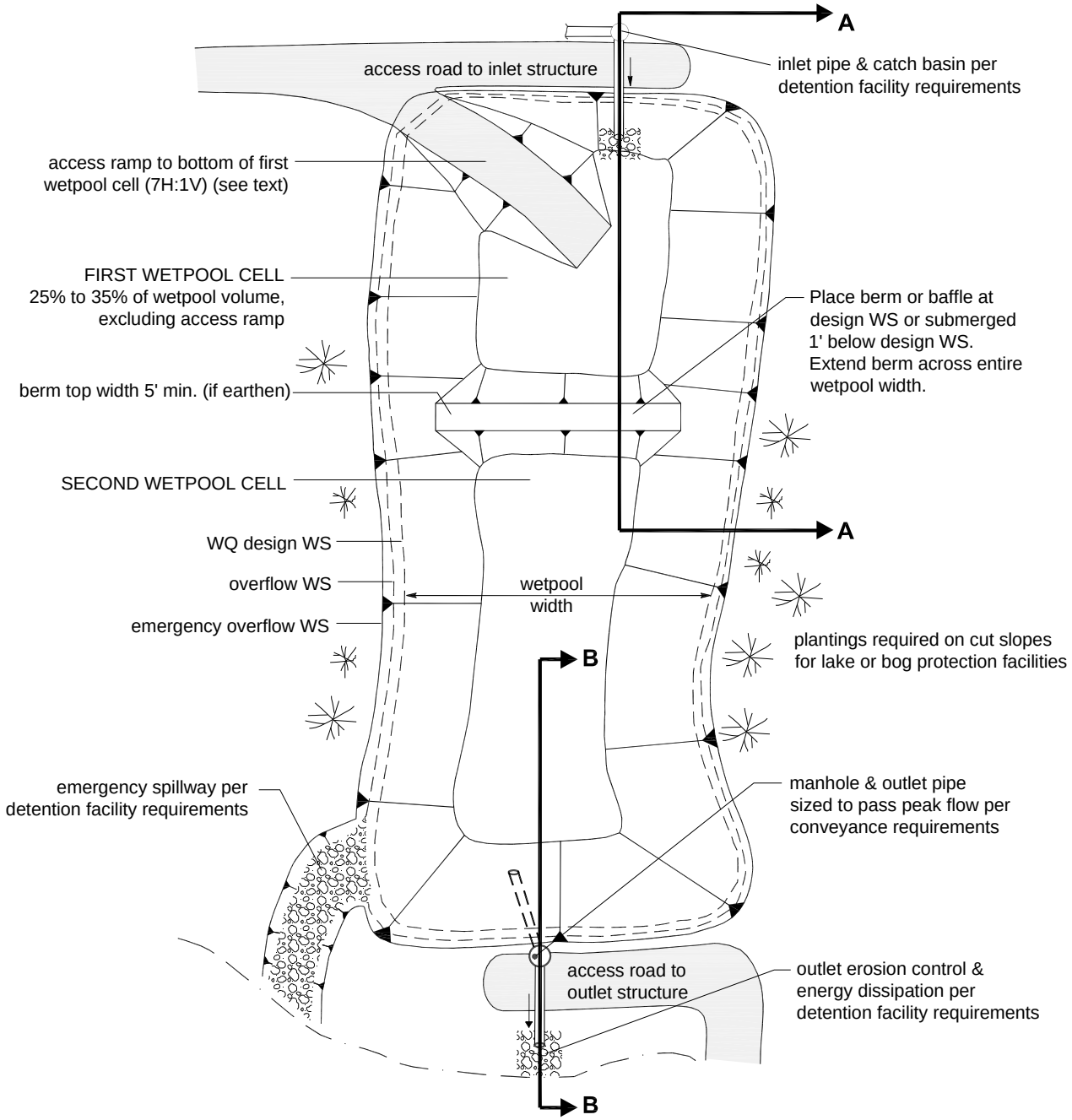
All design criteria for **basic wetponds** shall apply to large wetponds, with the following **modifications:**

1. The wetpool for a large wetpond shall have a volume factor of 4.5.
2. If the project is subject to the Sensitive Lake Protection menu or the Sphagnum Bog Protection menu, the following shall apply:
   a) Shrubs that form a dense cover shall be planted along the top of the wetpond bank on cut slopes. **Planting** is recommended for bermed slopes, except for berms meeting the criteria of dams regulated for safety (see Dam Safety Compliance in Section 5.3.1). Evergreen trees and shrubs are preferred.

      Intent: Trees and shrubs discourage waterfowl use. Waterfowl tend to avoid areas that are not visually open.

   b) Measures to enhance **waterfowl habitat value** (e.g., nesting structures) are not allowed.
   c) **Signage** discouraging feeding of waterfowl is required. The sign entitled "Four reasons not to feed ducks and geese" is available to download from the King County Water and Land Resources Division *Surface Water Design Manual* website. This sign, or other approved equivalent sign, shall be placed for maximum visibility from adjacent streets, sidewalks, and paths. Specifications for installing the sign are shown in Figure 6.4.1.C (p. 6-82).
3. **Recommended Design Features:** If joint use of the facility is planned, public fishing or water contact access should be limited to the second cell since the first cell functions to collect and concentrate sediment and attached pollutants.

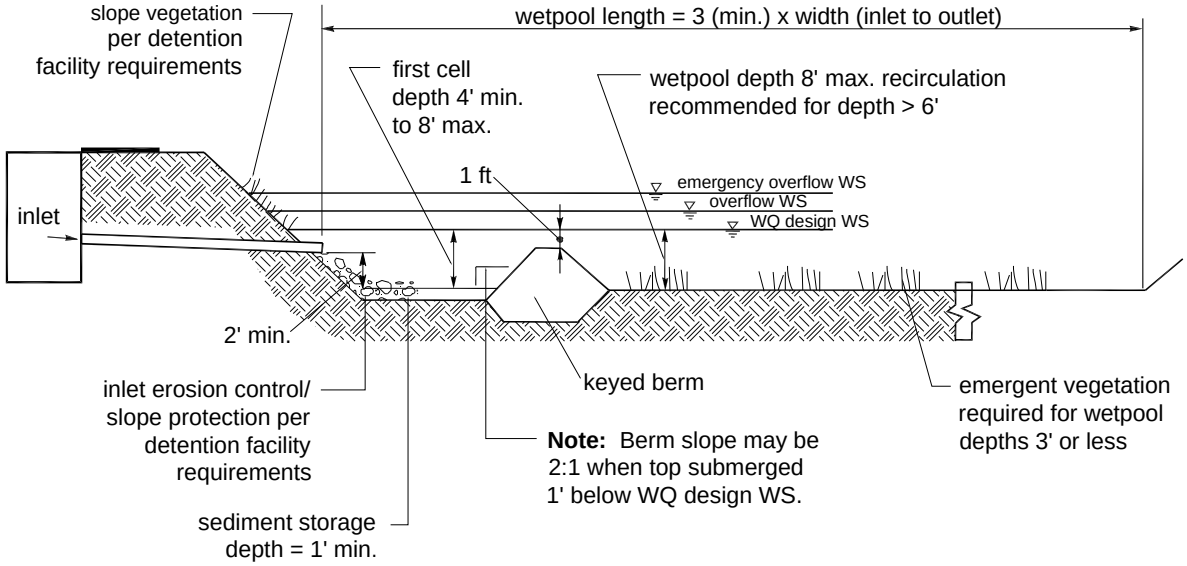
FIGURE 6.4.1.B WETPOND



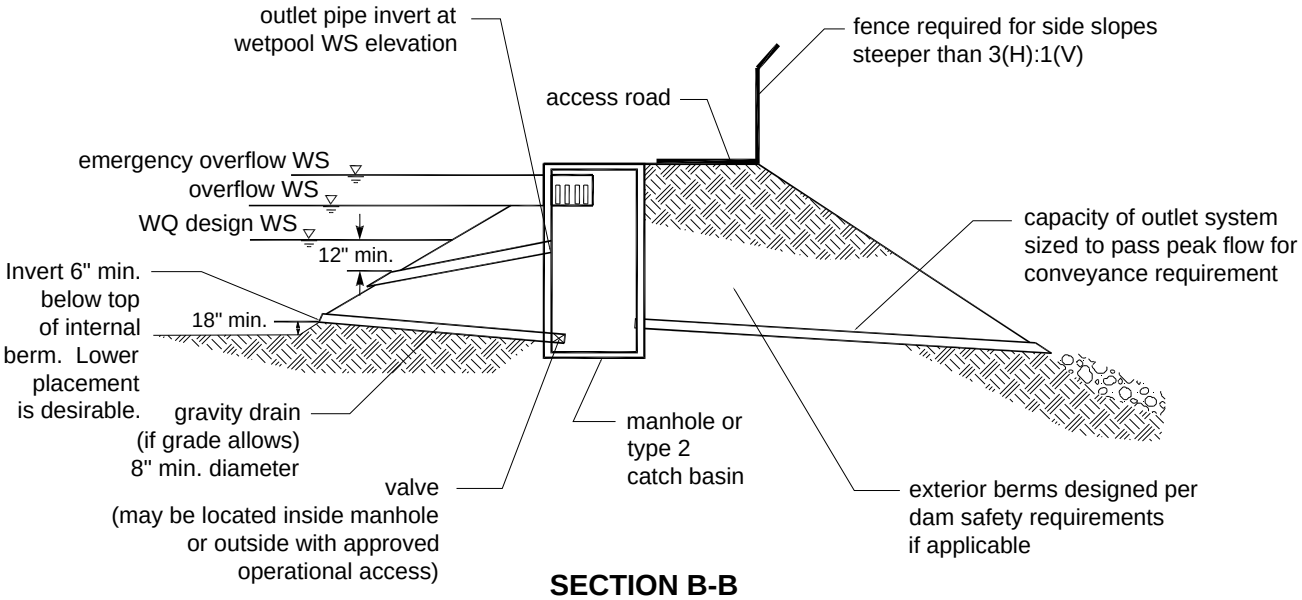
NOTE: Berm not required for ponds with length to width ratio 4:1 or if volume less than 4000 c.f.

PLAN VIEW
NTS

FIGURE 6.4.1.B WETPOND (*CONTINUED*)



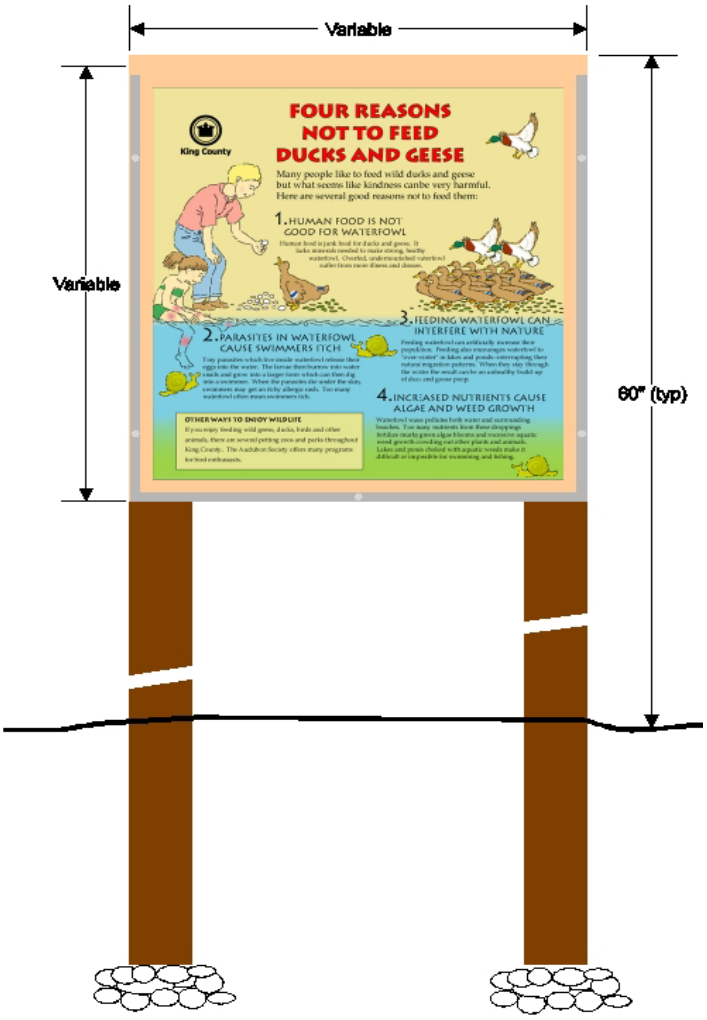
SECTION A-A
NTS



SECTION B-B
NTS

NOTE: see detention facility requirements for location and setback requirements.

FIGURE 6.4.1.C WATERFOWL SIGNAGE



Specifications:

Size:	Variable. Minimum 2' x 2'
Substrate:	½" MDO plywood, primed and finish coated in Beige enamel.
Face:	Digital print on 3M Control Tack material with a UV overlay.
Graffiti Protection:	$^{1}/_{8}$" Lexan panel covered in 3M 2980 Protective Overlay, then mounted to substrate with anti-reversing screws.
Posts:	Pressure treated 4" x 4" posts.
Installation:	Mount digital print centered both directions to a beige substrate 2" larger in both directions than print. Secure substrate to 4" x 4" post with four to six - 2½" wood screws depending on size, ½" on center from edge of plywood. Attach double sided automotive tape to both edges and bottom edge of the plywood covering the wood screws then attach the Lexan panel with the protective overlay facing outward. Additional secure the Lexan with 2 to 3 anti-reversible screws down each side centered in the automotive tape and one centered in the bottom. Attach a plywood cap the same length as the substrate and six inches wide with 2½" wood screws centered over the posts and sign.

6.4.2 WETVAULTS

A *wetvault* is an underground structure similar in appearance to a detention vault, except that a wetvault has a permanent pool of water that dissipates energy and improves the settling of particulate pollutants (see the wetvault details, Figure 6.4.2.A, on page 6-88). Being underground, the wetvault lacks the biological pollutant removal mechanisms, such as algae uptake, present in surface wetponds.

Applications and Limitations

A wetvault may be used in any type or size of development. However, it is most practical in relatively small catchments (less than 10 acres of impervious surface) with high land values because vaults are relatively expensive. Combined detention and wetvaults are allowed; see Section 6.4.4 (p. 6-95).

A wetvault is believed to be ineffective in removing dissolved pollutants such as soluble phosphorus or metals such as copper. There is also concern that oxygen levels will decline, especially in warm summer months, because of limited contact with air and wind. However, the extent to which this potential problem occurs has not been documented.

If oil control is required for a project, the wetvault may be combined with the **baffle oil/water separator** facility (see Section 6.6.2, p. 6-145) to fulfill Special Requirement #5, "Oil Control" (see Option 5, Section 6.1.5, p. 6-15). *Consult the water quality menus in Section 6.1 (p. 6-3) for information on how this facility may be used to meet Core Requirement #8 and Special Requirement #5.*

6.4.2.1 METHODS OF ANALYSIS

As with wetponds, the primary design factor that determines the removal efficiency of a wetvault is the volume of the wetpool in relationship to the volume of runoff (***V_r***.) from the mean annual storm[25]. The larger the volume, the higher the potential for pollutant removal. Performance is also improved by avoiding dead zones (like corners) where little exchange occurs, using large length-to-width ratios, dissipating energy at the inlet, and ensuring that flow rates are uniform to the extent possible and not increased between cells.

Wetvaults sized using the design methodology below (with a volume of $3V_r$) and following the required design criteria in Section 6.4.2.2 are expected to meet the Basic WQ menu goal of 80% TSS removal.

The methods of analysis for a wetvault are **identical to the methods of analysis for the wetpond**. Follow the procedure specified in Section 6.4.1.1 (p. 6-70) to determine the wetpool volume for a wetvault.

6.4.2.2 DESIGN CRITERIA

Typical design details and concepts for a wetvault are shown in Figure 6.4.2.A (p. 6-88).

Wetpool Geometry

Same as specified for **wetponds** (see Section 6.4.1.2, p. 6-73) except for the following **two modifications:**

1. **Criterion 3:** The **sediment storage** in the first cell shall be an average of 1 foot. Because of the v-shaped bottom, the depth of sediment storage needed above the bottom of the side wall is roughly proportional to vault width according to the schedule below:

Vault Width	Sediment Depth (from bottom of side wall)
15'	10"
20'	9"
40'	6"
60'	4"

[25] U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, *Results of the Nationwide Urban Runoff Program*, 1986.

2. **Criterion 5:** The second cell shall be a minimum of 3 feet deep since planting cannot be used to prevent resuspension of sediment in shallow water as it can in open ponds.

Vault Structure

1. Wetvaults shall be designed as flow-through systems.
2. The vault shall be separated into two cells by a **wall** or a **removable baffle**.[26] If a **wall or non-removable baffle** is used, a 5-foot by 10-foot removable maintenance access must be provided for both cells. If a removable baffle is used, the following criteria apply:
   a) The baffle shall extend from a minimum of 1-foot above the WQ design water surface to a minimum of 1 foot below the invert elevation of the inlet pipe.
   b) The lowest point of the baffle shall be a minimum of 2 feet from the bottom of the vault, and greater if feasible.
3. If the vault is less than 2,000 cubic feet (inside dimensions) or if the length-to-width ratio of the vault pool is 5:1 or greater, the **baffle or wall** may be omitted and the vault may be one-celled.
4. The two cells of a wetvault shall not be divided into additional subcells by **internal walls**. If internal structural support is needed, post and pier construction may be used to support the vault lid rather than walls. Any walls used within cells must be positioned so as to lengthen, rather than divide, the flowpath.

   Intent: Treatment effectiveness in wetpool facilities is related to the extent to which plug flow is achieved and short-circuiting and dead zones are avoided. Structural walls placed within the cells can interfere with plug flow and create significant dead zones, reducing treatment effectiveness.
5. Internal walls to lengthen the flow path or allow the inlet and outlet to be at the same side of the vault may be used if an **adjustment** is granted. An adjustment may be granted only if **physical *site* constraints** prevent the standard configuration and design features promote water quality treatment. Required design features to approve an adjustment include minimizing dead spaces, minimizing turbulence, and promoting plug flow. Internal walls must extend to the 2-year water elevation, a minimum of 10 feet must be between the walls, and a distance equal to the width between the internal walls must be provided between the internal wall and the vault wall at the point that the flow turns around the wall. All vault requirements apply to each length/segment.

   Intent: Confined movement around the internal walls creates turbulence, creates dead zones and decreases treatment effectiveness.
6. The bottom of the first cell shall be sloped toward the access opening. Slope shall be between 0.5 percent (minimum) and 2 percent (maximum). The second cell may be level (longitudinally) sloped toward the outlet, with a high point between the first and second cells.
7. The **vault bottom** shall slope laterally a minimum of 5% from each side towards the center, forming a broad "v" to facilitate sediment removal. *Note: More than one "v" may be used to minimize vault depth.*

   ***Exception**:* The vault bottom may be flat if **removable panels** are provided over the entire vault. Removable panels shall be at grade, have stainless steel lifting eyes, and weigh no more than 5 tons per panel.
8. The highest point of a **vault bottom** must be at least 6 inches below the outlet elevation to provide for sediment storage over the entire bottom.
9. Provision for passage of flows should the outlet plug shall be provided.

[26] As used here, the term *baffle* means a divider that does not extend all the way to the bottom of the vault, or if a bottom baffle, does not extend all the way to the top of the water surface. A *wall* is used here to mean a divider that extends all the way from near the water surface to the bottom of the vault.

10. Wetvaults may be constructed using **arch culvert sections** provided the top area at the WQ design water surface is, at a minimum, equal to that of a vault with vertical walls designed with an average depth of 6 feet. If arched culverts are used, the manufacturer must certify that they are water-tight.

    Intent: To prevent decreasing the surface area available for oxygen exchange.

11. Wetvaults shall conform to the **"Materials"** and **"Structural Stability"** criteria specified for **detention vaults** in Section 5.3.3.

12. Where pipes enter and leave the vault below the WQ design water surface, they shall be **sealed** using a non-porous, non-shrinking grout.

Inlet and Outlet

1. The **inlet** to the wetvault shall be submerged with the inlet pipe invert a minimum of 3 feet from the vault bottom (not including sediment storage). The top of the inlet pipe shall be submerged at least 1 foot. *Note: These dimensional requirements may increase the minimum 4 foot depth of the first cell, depending on the size of the inlet pipe.*

   Intent: The submerged inlet is to dissipate energy of the incoming flow. The distance from the bottom is to minimize resuspension of settled sediments. Alternative inlet designs that accomplish these objectives are acceptable.

2. Unless designed as an off-line facility, the capacity of the **outlet pipe** and available head above the outlet pipe shall be designed to convey the 100-year design flow for developed ***site*** conditions (as described in Section 5.3.4.2) without overtopping the vault. The available head above the outlet pipe must be a minimum of 6 inches.

3. The outlet pipe shall be back-sloped or have tee section, the lower arm of which shall extend 1 foot below the WQ design water surface to provide for trapping of oils and floatables in the vault.

4. A **gravity drain** for maintenance shall be provided if grade allows.

   a) The gravity drain should be as low as the ***site*** situation allows; however, the **invert** shall be no lower than the average sediment storage depth. At a minimum, the invert shall be 6 inches above the base elevation of the vault side walls.

      Intent: This placement prevents highly sediment-laden water from escaping when the vault is drained for maintenance. A lower placement is allowed than for wetponds since the v-shaped vault bottom will capture and retain additional sediments.

   b) The drain shall be 8 inches (minimum) diameter and shall be controlled by a valve. Use of a shear gate is allowed only at the inlet end of a pipe located within an approved structure.

      Intent: Shear gates often leak if water pressure pushes on the side of the gate opposite the seal. The gate should be situated so that water pressure pushes toward the seal.

   c) Operational access to the valve shall be provided to the finished ground surface. The valve location shall be accessible and well marked with one foot of paving placed around the box. It must also be protected from damage and unauthorized operation.

   d) If not located in the vault, a valve box is allowed to a maximum depth of 5 feet without an access manhole. If over 5 feet deep, an access manhole is required.

Access Requirements

Same as for detention vaults (see Section 5.3.3). *Note: If the 5-foot by 10-foot removable maintenance access also provides inlet/outlet access, then a 3-foot by 3-foot inspection port must be provided at the inlet pipe and outlet structure.*

Ventilation Requirements

A minimum of 50 square feet of **grate** shall be provided over the second cell. For vaults in which the surface area of the second cell is greater than 1,250 square feet, 4% of the total surface area shall be grated. This requirement may be met by one grate or by many smaller grates distributed over the second cell area. If the vault is a single cell, ventilation shall be provided over the second half of the vault. *Note: a grated access door may be used to meet this requirement.*

Intent: The grate allows air contact with the wetpool in order to minimize stagnant conditions that can result in oxygen depletion, especially in warm weather.

Access Roads, Right of Way, and Setbacks

Same as for detention vaults (see Section 5.3.3).

Recommended Design Features

The following design features should be incorporated into wetvaults where feasible, but they are not specifically required:

1. The floor of the second cell should slope toward the outlet for ease of cleaning.
2. The **inlet and outlet** should be at opposing corners of the vault to increase the flowpath.
3. A **flow length-to-width** ratio greater than 3:1 minimum is desirable.
4. **Lockable grates** instead of solid manhole covers are recommended to increase air contact with the wetpool.
5. **Galvanized materials** should be avoided whenever possible.
6. The **number of inlets** to the wetvault should be limited, and the flowpath length should be maximized from inlet to outlet for all inlets to the vault.

Construction Considerations

Sediment that has accumulated in the vault must be removed after construction in the drainage area is complete. If no more than 12 inches of sediment have accumulated after the infrastructure is built, cleaning may be left until after building construction is complete. In general, sediment accumulation from stabilized drainage areas is not expected to exceed an average of 4 inches per year in the first cell. If sediment accumulation is greater than this amount, it will be assumed to be from construction unless it can be shown otherwise. The County will not release maintenance and defect financial guarantees or assume maintenance responsibility for a facility unless it has been cleaned of construction phase sediments.

Maintenance Considerations

1. Accumulated sediment and stagnant conditions may cause noxious gases to form and accumulate in the vault.
2. Facilities should be inspected annually. Floating debris and accumulated petroleum products shall be removed as needed, but at least annually. The floating oil shall be removed from wetvaults used as oil/water separators when oil accumulation exceeds one inch.
3. Sediment should be removed when the 1-foot (average) sediment zone is full thus 6 inches. Sediments should be tested for toxicants in compliance with current disposal requirements if land uses in the catchment include commercial or industrial zones, or if visual or olfactory indications of pollution are noticed.
4. Water drained or pumped from the vault prior to removing accumulated sediments may be discharged to storm drains if it is not excessively turbid (i.e., if water appears translucent when held to light) and if all floatable debris and visual petroleum sheens are removed. Excessively turbid water (i.e., water

appears opaque when held to light) should be discharged only after the settleable solids have been removed.

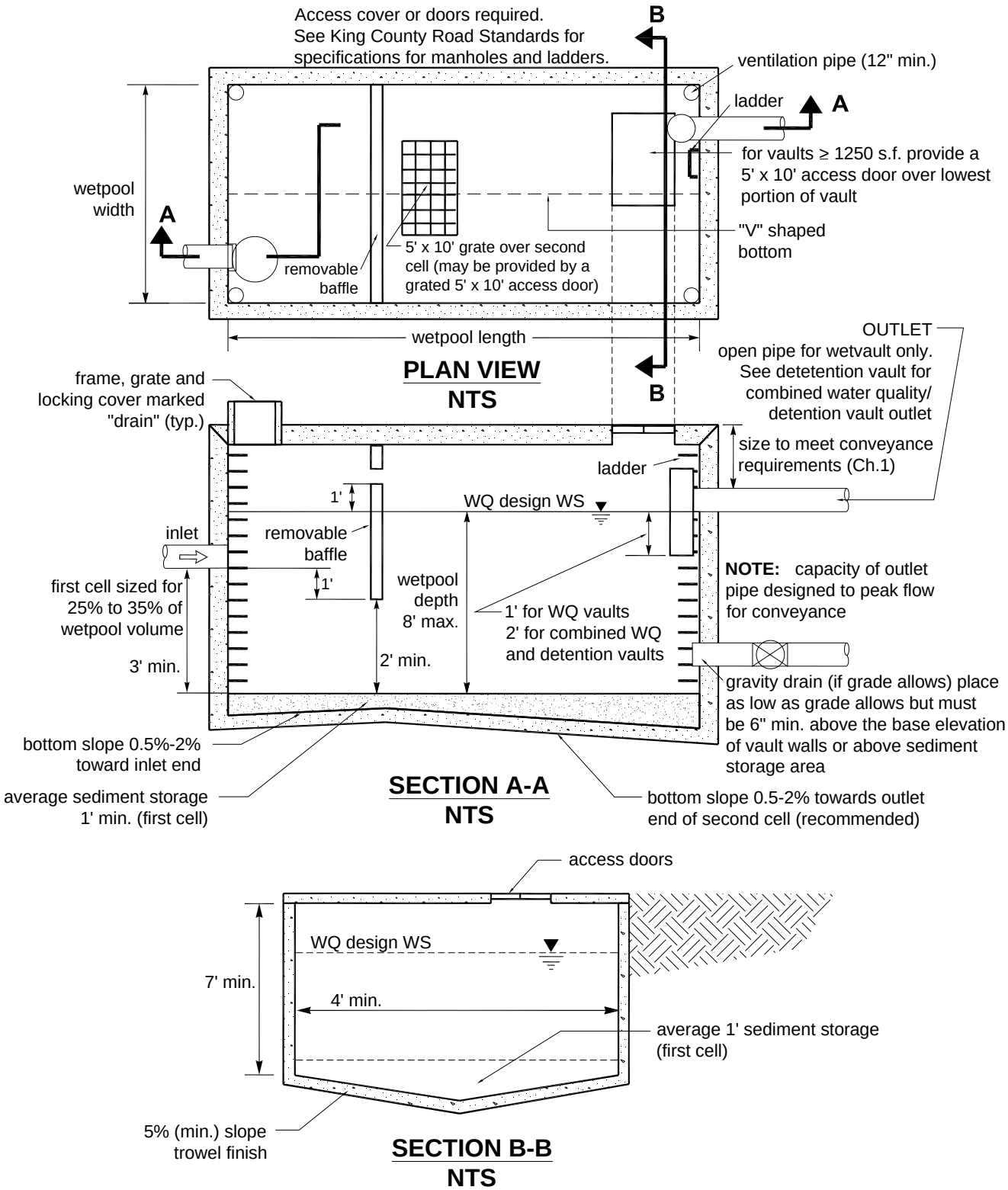
❑ MODIFICATIONS FOR COMBINING WITH A BAFFLE OIL/WATER SEPARATOR

If the ***project site*** is a ***high-use site*** and a wetvault is proposed to meet the Basic WQ menu criteria, the vault may be combined with a baffle oil/water separator (see Section 6.6.2) to meet the requirements of Special Requirement #5 with one facility rather than two. Structural modifications and added design criteria are given below. However, the maintenance requirements for baffle oil/water separators must be adhered to, in addition to those for a wetvault. This will result in more frequent inspection and cleaning than for a wetvault used only for TSS removal. See page 6-154 for information on maintenance of baffle oil/water separators.

1. The sizing procedures for the baffle oil/water separator (p. 6-146) should be run as a check to ensure the vault is large enough. If the oil/water separator sizing procedures result in a larger vault size, increase the wetvault size to match.
2. An **oil retaining baffle** shall be provided in the second cell near the vault outlet. The baffle should not contain a high-flow overflow, or else the retained oil will be washed out of the vault during large storms.
3. The vault shall have a minimum **length-to-width ratio** of 5:1.
4. The vault shall have a design water **depth-to-width** ratio of between 1:3 to 1:2.
5. The vault shall be **watertight** and shall be coated to protect from corrosion.
6. Separator vaults shall have a **shutoff mechanism** on the outlet pipe to prevent oil discharges during maintenance and to provide emergency shut-off capability in case of a spill. A valve box and riser shall also be provided.
7. Wetvaults used as oil/water separators must be **off-line** and must bypass flows greater than the WQ design flow.

   Intent: This design minimizes the entrainment and/or emulsification of previously captured oil during very high flow events.

FIGURE 6.4.2.A WETVAULT



6.4.3 STORMWATER WETLANDS

In land development situations, wetlands are usually constructed for two main reasons: to replace or mitigate impacts when natural wetlands are filled or impacted by development (mitigation wetlands), and to treat stormwater runoff (stormwater treatment wetlands). *Stormwater wetlands* are shallow man-made ponds that are designed to treat stormwater through the biological processes associated with emergent aquatic plants (see the stormwater wetland details in Figure 6.4.3.A, p. 6-93, and Figure 6.4.3.B, p. 6-94).

In King County, wetlands created to mitigate disturbance impacts, such as filling, shall not also be used as stormwater treatment facilities. This is because of the different, incompatible functions of the two kinds of wetlands. **Mitigation wetlands** are intended to function as full replacement habitat for fish and wildlife, providing the same functions and harboring the same species diversity and biotic richness as the wetlands they replace. **Stormwater treatment wetlands** are used to capture and transform pollutants, just as wetponds are, and over time the sediment will concentrate pollutants. This is not a healthy environment for aquatic life. Stormwater treatment wetlands are used to capture pollutants in a managed environment **so that they will not reach natural wetlands** and other ecologically important habitats. In addition, vegetation must be harvested and sediment dredged in stormwater treatment wetlands, further interfering with use for wildlife habitat.

In general, stormwater wetlands perform well to remove sediment, metals, and pollutants which bind to humic or organic acids. Phosphorus removal in stormwater wetlands is highly variable.[27]

Applications and Limitations

This stormwater wetland design occupies about the same surface area as wetponds, but has the potential to be better integrated aesthetically into a ***site*** because of the abundance of emergent aquatic vegetation. The most critical factor for a successful design is the provision of an **adequate supply of water** for most of the year. Careful planning is needed to be sure sufficient water will be retained to sustain good wetland plant growth. Since water depths are shallower than in wetponds, water loss by evaporation is an important concern. Stormwater wetlands are a good WQ facility choice in areas with **high winter groundwater levels**.

Consult the water quality menus in Section 6.1 (p. 6-3) for information on how this facility may be used to meet Core Requirement #8.

6.4.3.1 METHODS OF ANALYSIS

When used for stormwater treatment, stormwater wetlands employ some of the same design features as wetponds. However, instead of gravity settling being the dominant treatment process, pollutant removal mediated by aquatic vegetation and the microbiological community associated with that vegetation becomes the dominant treatment process. Thus when designing wetlands, water volume is not the dominant design criteria. Rather, factors which affect plant vigor and biomass are the primary concerns.

Stormwater wetlands designed and constructed using the criteria below are expected to meet the Basic WQ menu goal of 80% TSS removal and the Enhanced Basic WQ menu goal of 50% total zinc removal.

Steps 1 through 5: Determine the volume of a basic wetpond. Follow Steps 1 through 5 for wetponds (see Section 6.4.1.1, p. 6-70). The volume of a basic wetpond is used as a template for sizing the stormwater wetland.

Step 6: Calculate the surface area of the stormwater wetland. The surface area of the wetland shall be the same as the top area of a wetpond sized for the same ***site*** conditions. Calculate the surface area of the stormwater wetland by using the volume from Step 5 and dividing by the average water depth (use 3 feet).

[27] Richardson, C. 1987. "Mechanisms controlling phosphorus retention capacity in freshwater wetlands," *Science*, 228: 1424.

Step 7: Determine the surface area of the first cell of the stormwater wetland. Use the volume determined from Criterion 2 under "Wetland Geometry" (p. 6-90), and the actual depth of cell 1.

Step 8: Determine the surface area of the wetland cell. Subtract the surface area of the first cell (Step 7) from the total surface area (Step 6).

Step 9: Determine water depth distribution in the second cell. Decide if the top of the dividing berm will be at the surface or submerged (designer's choice). Adjust the distribution of water depths in the second cell according to Criterion 8 under "Wetland Geometry" below. *Note: This will result in a facility that holds less volume than that determined in Step 5 above. This is acceptable.*

Intent: The surface area of the stormwater wetland is set to be roughly equivalent to that of a wetpond designed for the same ***project site*** so as not to discourage use of this option.

Step 10: Choose plants. See Table 6.4.1.A (p. 6-77) for a list of plants recommended for wetpond water depth zones, or consult a wetland scientist.

6.4.3.2 DESIGN CRITERIA

Typical details for a **stormwater wetland** are shown in Figure 6.4.3.A (p. 6-93) and Figure 6.4.3.B (p. 6-94).

Wetland Geometry

1. Stormwater wetlands shall consist of two cells, a presettling cell and a wetland cell.
2. The **presettling cell** shall contain a volume equal to the volume of runoff from the mean annual storm (V_r). This is approximately 33 percent of the wetpool volume calculated in Step 5 of "Methods of Analysis," Section 6.4.3.1.
3. The **depth of the presettling cell** shall be between 4 feet (minimum) and 8 feet (maximum).
4. One foot of **sediment storage** shall be provided in the presettling cell.
5. The **wetland cell** shall have an average **water depth** of about 1.5 feet (plus or minus 3 inches).
6. The **"berm"** separating the two cells shall be shaped such that its downstream side gradually slopes to form the second shallow wetland cell (see the section view in Figure 6.4.3.A, p. 6-93). Alternatively, the second cell may be graded naturalistically from the top of the dividing berm (see Criterion 8 below).
7. The **top of berm** shall be either at the WQ design water surface or submerged 1 foot below the WQ design water surface, as with wetponds. Correspondingly, the **side slopes** of the berm must meet the following criteria:
   a) If the top of berm is at the WQ design water surface, the berm side slopes shall be no steeper than 3H:1V.
   b) If the top of berm is submerged 1 foot, the upstream side slope may be up to 2H:1V.[28]
8. Two options (A and B) are provided for **grading the bottom of the wetland cell**. Option A is a shallow, evenly graded slope from the upstream to the downstream edge of the wetland cell (see Figure 6.4.3.A, p. 6-93). Option B is a "naturalistic" alternative, with the specified range of depths intermixed throughout the second cell (see Figure 6.4.3.B, p. 6-94). A **distribution of depths** shall be provided in the wetland cell depending on whether the dividing berm is at the water surface or submerged (see Table 6.4.3.A, below). The maximum depth is 2.5 feet in either configuration.

[28] If the berm is at the water surface, then for safety reasons, its slope must be no greater than 3:1, just as the pond banks must be 3:1 if the pond is not fenced. A steeper slope (2:1 rather than 3:1) is allowed if the berm is submerged in 1 foot of water. If submerged, the berm it is not considered accessible, and the steeper slope is allowed.

TABLE 6.4.3.A DISTRIBUTION OF DEPTHS IN WETLAND CELL			
DIVIDING BERM AT WQ DESIGN WATER SURFACE		DIVIDING BERM SUBMERGED 1 FOOT	
Depth Range (feet)	Percent	Depth Range (feet)	Percent
0.1 to 1	25	1 to 1.5	40
1 to 2	55	1.5 to 2	40
2 to 2.5	20	2 to 2.5	20

Lining Requirements

1. **In infiltrative soils**, both cells of the stormwater wetland shall be lined. To determine whether a low-permeability liner or a treatment liner is required, determine whether the following conditions will be met. If soil permeability will allow sufficient water retention, lining may be waived.
   - The second cell must retain water for at least 10 months of the year.
   - The first cell must retain at least three feet of water year-round.
   - The complete KCRTS precipitation record should be used when establishing these conditions.

   Intent: Many wetland plants can adapt to periods of summer drought, so a limited drought period is allowed in the second cell. This may allow a treatment liner rather than a low permeability liner to be used for the second cell. The first cell must retain water year-round in order for the presettling function to be effective.
2. If a **low permeability liner** is used, a minimum of 18 inches of native soil amended with good topsoil or compost (one part compost mixed with 3 parts native soil) must be placed over the liner. For **geomembrane liners**, a soil depth of 3 feet is recommended to prevent damage to the liner during planting. Hydric soils are not required.
3. The criteria for liners given in Section 6.2.4 (p. 6-23) must be observed.

Inlet and Outlet

Same as for basic wetponds (see page 6-74) but with the added requirement that spill control be provided as detailed in Section 4.2.1.1 prior to discharge of runoff from non-roof-top ***pollution generating impervious surface*** into the stormwater wetland.

Access and Setbacks

1. Location of the stormwater wetland relative to ***site*** constraints (e.g., buildings, property lines, etc.) shall be the same as for detention ponds (see Section 5.3.1). See Section 6.2.3 (p. 6-21) for typical setback requirements for WQ facilities.
2. Access and maintenance **roads** shall be provided and designed according to the requirements for detention ponds (see Section 5.3.1). Access and maintenance roads shall extend to both the wetland inlet and outlet structures. An access ramp (7H minimum:1V) shall be provided to the bottom of the first cell unless all portions of the cell can be reached and sediment loaded from the top of the wetland side slopes. Also see "Access Requirements" in Section 5.3.1, for more information on access alternatives.
3. If the dividing berm is also used for access, it must be built to sustain loads of up to 80,000 pounds.

Signage

1. General signage shall be provided according to the requirements for detention ponds (see Section 5.3.1).
2. If the wetland is in a lake or sphagnum bog protection area, then signage discouraging feeding of waterfowl is required. The sign entitled "Four reasons not to feed ducks and geese" is available to download from the King County Water and Land Resources Division *Surface Water Design Manual* website. This sign, or other approved equivalent sign, shall be placed for maximum visibility from adjacent streets, sidewalks, and paths. Specifications for installing the sign are shown in Figure 6.4.1.C (p. 6-82).

Planting Requirements

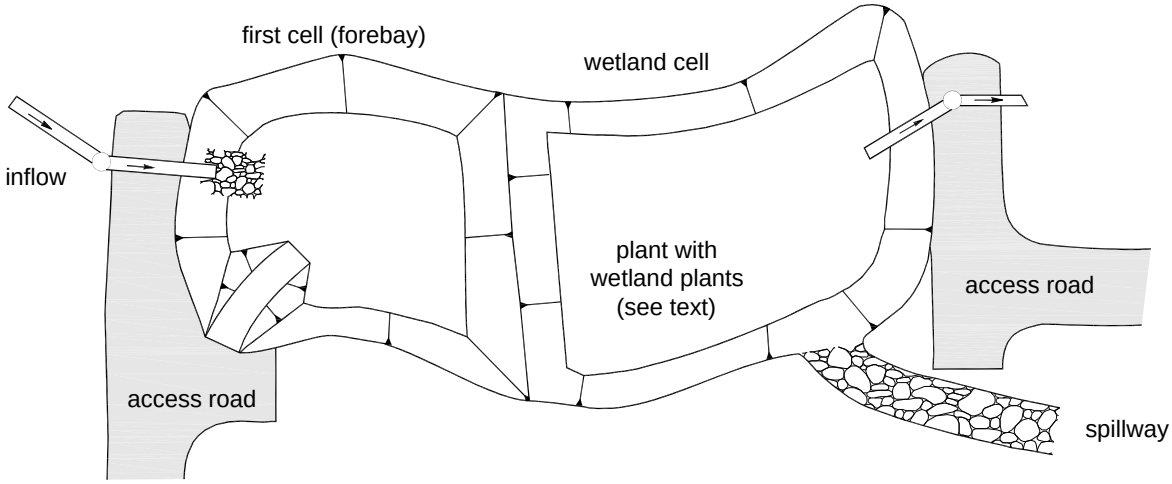
1. The wetland cell shall be planted with emergent wetland plants following the recommendations given in Table 6.4.1.A (p. 6-77) or the recommendations of a wetland specialist. *Note: Cattails (Typha latifolia) are not allowed. They tend to escape to natural wetlands and crowd out other species. In addition, the shoots die back each fall and will result in oxygen depletion in the wetpool unless they are removed.*
2. If the stormwater wetland is in a sensitive lake or sphagnum bog protection area, shrubs that form a dense cover shall be planted on slopes above the WQ design water surface on at least three sides of the presettling cell. For banks that are berms, no planting is allowed if the berm is regulated by dam safety requirements (see Section 5.3.1). The purpose of planting is to discourage waterfowl use of the pond and to provide shading.[29] Some suitable trees and shrubs include vine maple (*Acer circinatum*), wild cherry (*Prunus emarginata*), red osier dogwood (*Cornus stolonifera*), California myrtle (*Myrica californica*), Indian plum (*Oemleria cerasiformis*), and Pacific yew (*Taxus brevifolia*) as well as numerous ornamental species.

Construction and Maintenance Considerations

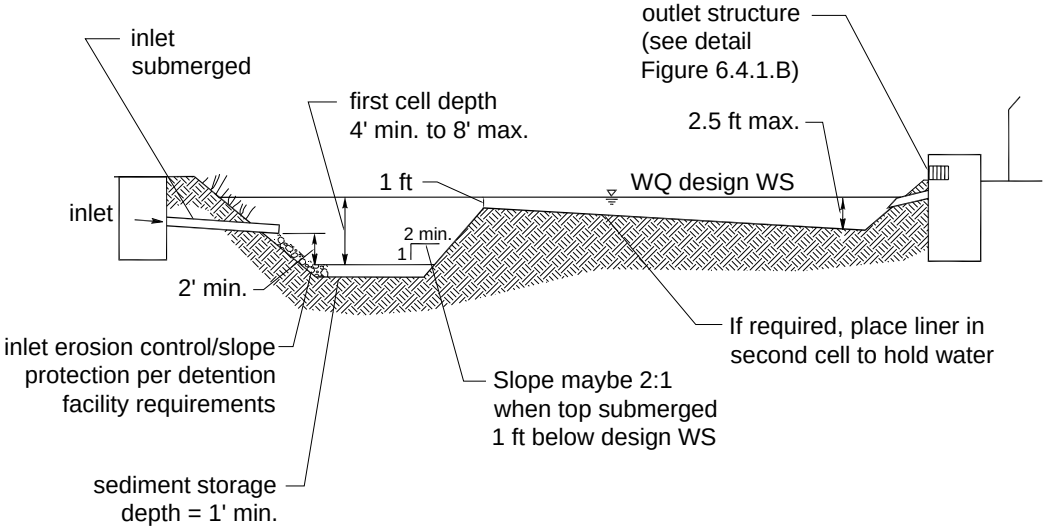
Construction and maintenance considerations are the same as for basic wetponds. Construction of the naturalistic alternative (Option B) can be easily done by first excavating the entire area to the 1.5-foot average depth. Then soil subsequently excavated to form deeper areas can be deposited to raise other areas until the distribution of depths indicated in the design is achieved.

[29] Waterfowl are believed to limit use of areas where their view of predator approach paths is blocked. Some suitable native shrubs include vine maple, Indian plum, bitter cherry, red osier dogwood, cascara, and red elderberry. Ornamental hedge plants such as English laurel, privet and barberry are also good choices.

FIGURE 6.4.3.A STORMWATER WETLAND — OPTION A



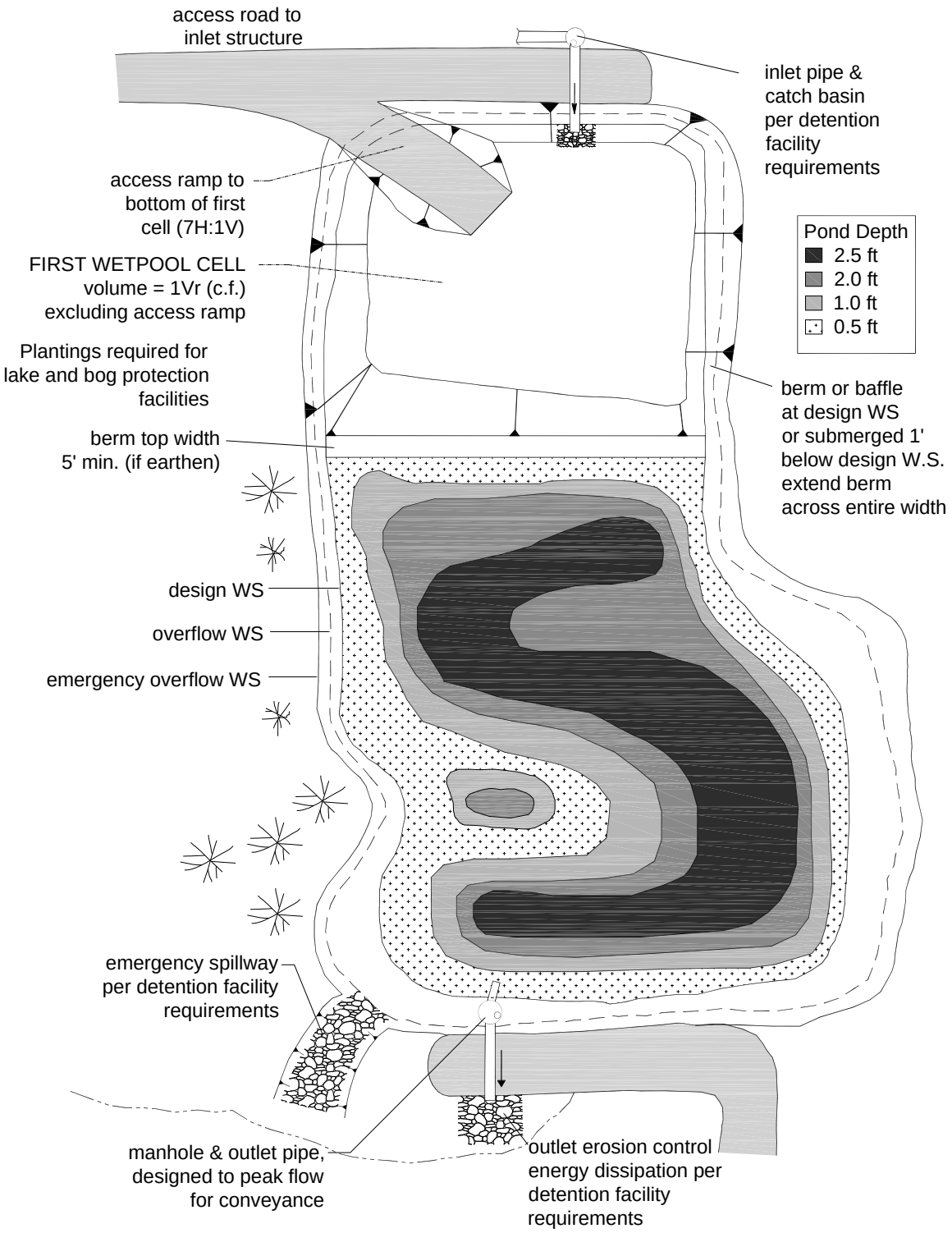
PLAN VIEW Option A
NTS



SECTION Option A
NTS

Note: See detention facility requirements for location and setback requirements.

FIGURE 6.4.3.B STORMWATER WETLAND — OPTION B



PLAN VIEW Option B

NTS

6.4.4 COMBINED DETENTION AND WETPOOL FACILITIES

Combined detention and WQ wetpool facilities have the appearance of a detention facility but contain a permanent pool of water as well. The following design procedures, requirements, and recommendations cover differences in the design of the stand-alone WQ facility when combined with detention storage. The following combined facilities are addressed:

- Detention/wetpond (basic and large)
- Detention/wetvault
- Detention/stormwater wetland.

There are two sizes of the combined wetpond, a basic and a large, but only a basic size for the combined wetvault and combined stormwater wetland. The facility sizes (basic and large) are related to the pollutant removal goals stated in the WQ menus. See Section 6.1 (p. 6-3) for more information on the WQ menus and treatment goals.

Applications and Limitations

Combined detention and water quality facilities are very efficient for ***sites*** that also have detention requirements. The water quality facility may often be placed beneath the detention facility without increasing the facility surface area. However, the **fluctuating water surface** of the live storage will create unique challenges for plant growth and for aesthetics alike.

The basis for pollutant removal in combined facilities is the same as in the stand-alone WQ facilities. However, in the combined facility, the detention function creates fluctuating water levels and added turbulence. For simplicity, the positive effect of the extra live storage volume and the negative effect of increased turbulence are assumed to balance, and are thus ignored when sizing the wetpool volume.[30] For the combined detention/stormwater wetland, criteria that limit the extent of water level fluctuation are specified to better ensure survival of the wetland plants.

Unlike the wetpool volume, the **live storage component** of the facility should be provided above the seasonal high water table.

Consult the water quality menus in Section 6.1 (p. 6-3) for information on how these combined facilities may be used to meet Core Requirement #8.

6.4.4.1 METHODS OF ANALYSIS

❑ COMBINED DETENTION AND WETPOND (BASIC AND LARGE)

The methods of analysis for combined detention and wetponds are identical to those outlined for wetponds and for detention facilities. Follow the procedure specified in Section 6.4.1.1 (p. 6-70) to determine the wetpool volume for a combined facility. Follow the standard procedure specified in Chapter 5 to size the detention portion of the pond.

❑ COMBINED DETENTION AND WETVAULT

The methods of analysis for combined detention and wetvaults are identical to those outlined for wetvaults and for detention facilities. Follow the procedure specified in Section 6.4.2 (p. 6-83) to determine the wetvault volume for a combined facility. Follow the standard procedure specified in Chapter 5 to size the detention portion of the vault.

[30] Many of the ponds studied in the Nationwide Urban Runoff Program were combined ponds.

❑ COMBINED DETENTION AND STORMWATER WETLAND

The methods of analysis for combined detention and stormwater wetlands are identical to those outlined for stormwater wetlands and for detention facilities. Follow the procedure specified in Section 6.4.3.1 (p.6-89) to determine the stormwater wetland size. Follow the standard procedure specified in Chapter 5 to size the detention portion of the wetland.

6.4.4.2 DESIGN CRITERIA

❑ COMBINED DETENTION AND WETPOND (BASIC AND LARGE)

Typical design details and concepts for a combined detention and wetpond are shown in Figure 6.4.4.A (p. 6-99). The **detention portion** of the facility shall meet the design criteria set forth in Chapter 5 and sizing procedures in Chapter 3.

Detention and Wetpool Geometry

1. The wetpool and sediment storage volumes shall not be included in the required detention volume.
2. The **"Wetpool Geometry"** criteria for wetponds (see page 6-73) shall apply with the following **modifications/clarifications:**

   a) **Criterion 1:** The **permanent pool** may be made shallower to take up most of the pond bottom, or deeper and positioned to take up only a limited portion of the bottom. Note, however, that having the first wetpool cell at the inlet allows for more efficient sediment management than if the cell is moved away from the inlet. Wetpond criteria governing water depth must, however, still be met. See Figure 6.4.4.B (p. 6-101) for two possibilities for wetpool cell placement.

   Intent: This flexibility in positioning cells is provided to allow for multiple use options, such as volleyball courts in live storage areas in the drier months. Landscape credit may be received subject to criteria in KCC 21A.14.180.D, summarized in "Stormwater Tracts as Recreational or Open Space" in Section 5.3.1.1.

   b) **Criterion 3:** The minimum **sediment storage depth** in the first cell is 1 foot. The 6 inches of sediment storage required for detention ponds does not need to be added to this, but 6 inches of sediment storage must be added to the second cell to comply with the detention sediment storage requirement.

Berms, Baffles, and Slopes

Same as for wetponds (see page 6-74).

Inlet and Outlet

The "Inlet and Outlet" criteria for **wetponds** (see page 6-74) shall apply with the following **modifications:**

1. **Criterion 2:** A **sump** must be provided in the outlet structure of combined ponds.
2. The detention flow restrictor and its outlet pipe shall be designed according to the requirements for detention ponds (see Section 5.3.4.2).

Access and Setbacks

Same as for wetponds (see page 6-76).

Signage

1. Signage shall be provided according to the requirements for detention ponds (see Section 5.3.1).
2. If the wetpond is in a lake or sphagnum bog protection area, signage discouraging feeding of waterfowl is required. The sign entitled "Four reasons not to feed ducks and geese" is available to download from the King County Water and Land Resources Division *Surface Water Design Manual* website. This sign, or other approved equivalent sign, shall be placed for maximum visibility from adjacent streets, sidewalks, and paths. Specifications for installing the sign are shown in Figure 6.4.1.C (p. 6-82).

Planting Requirements

Same as for wetponds (see page 6-76).

❑ COMBINED DETENTION AND WETVAULT

The design criteria for detention vaults and wetvaults must **both** be met, except for the following **modifications or clarifications:**

1. The minimum **sediment storage depth** in the first cell shall average 1 foot. The 6 inches of sediment storage required for detention vaults does not need to be added to this, but 6 inches of sediment storage must be added to the second cell to comply with detention vault sediment storage requirements.
2. The **oil retaining baffle** shall extend a minimum of 2 feet below the WQ design water surface.

   Intent: The greater depth of the baffle in relation to the WQ design water surface compensates for the greater water level fluctuations experienced in the combined vault. The greater depth is deemed prudent to better ensure that separated oils remain within the vault, even during storm events.

Note*: If a vault is used for detention as well as water quality control, the facility shall not be modified to function as a baffle oil/water separator as allowed for wetvaults on page 6-87. This is because the added pool fluctuation in the combined vault does not allow for the quiescent conditions needed for oil separation.*

❑ COMBINED DETENTION AND STORMWATER WETLAND

The design criteria for detention ponds and stormwater wetlands must both be met, except for the following **modifications or clarifications:**

1. The **"Wetland Geometry"** criteria for stormwater wetlands (see page 6-90) are modified as follows:

   Criterion 4: The minimum **sediment storage depth** in the first cell is 1 foot. The 6 inches of sediment storage required for detention ponds does not need to be added to this, nor does the 6 inches of sediment storage in the second cell of detention ponds need to be added.

   Intent: Since emergent plants are limited to shallower water depths, the deeper water created before sediments accumulate is considered detrimental to robust emergent growth. Therefore, sediment storage is confined to the first cell which functions as a presettling cell.
2. The "**Inlet and Outlet**" criteria for **wetponds** (see page 6-74) shall apply with the following **modifications:**
   a) **Criterion 2:** A **sump** must be provided in the outlet structure of combined facilities.
   b) The detention **flow restrictor** and its outlet pipe shall be designed according to the requirements for detention ponds (see Section 5.3.4.2).

3. The **"Planting Requirements"** for stormwater wetlands (see page 6-92) are **modified** to use the following plants which are better adapted to water level fluctuations:

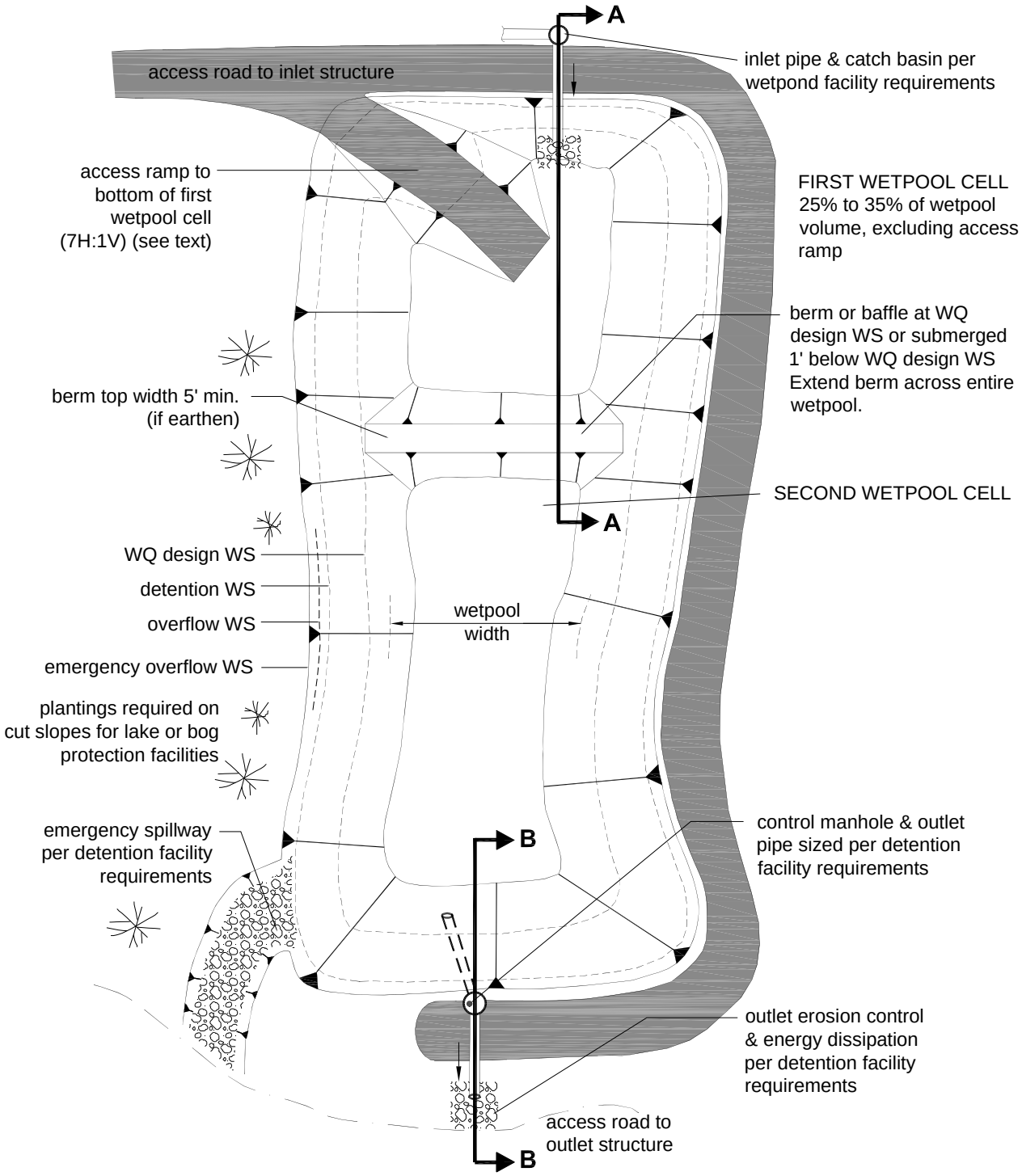
   - *Scirpus acutus* (hardstem bulrush) 2 - 6' depth
   - *Scirpus microcarpus* (small-fruited bulrush) 1 - 2.5' depth
   - *Sparganium emersum* (burreed) 1 - 2' depth
   - *Sparganium eurycarpum* (burreed) 1 - 2' depth
   - *Veronica* sp. (marsh speedwell) 0 - 1' depth

   In addition, the shrub *Spirea douglasii* (Douglas spirea) may be used in combined facilities.

   Water Level Fluctuation Restrictions: The difference between the WQ design water surface and the maximum water surface associated with the 2-year runoff shall not be greater than 3 feet. If this restriction cannot be met, the size of the stormwater wetland must be increased. The **additional area** may be placed in the first cell, second cell, or both. If placed in the second cell, the additional area need not be planted with wetland vegetation or counted in calculating the average depth.

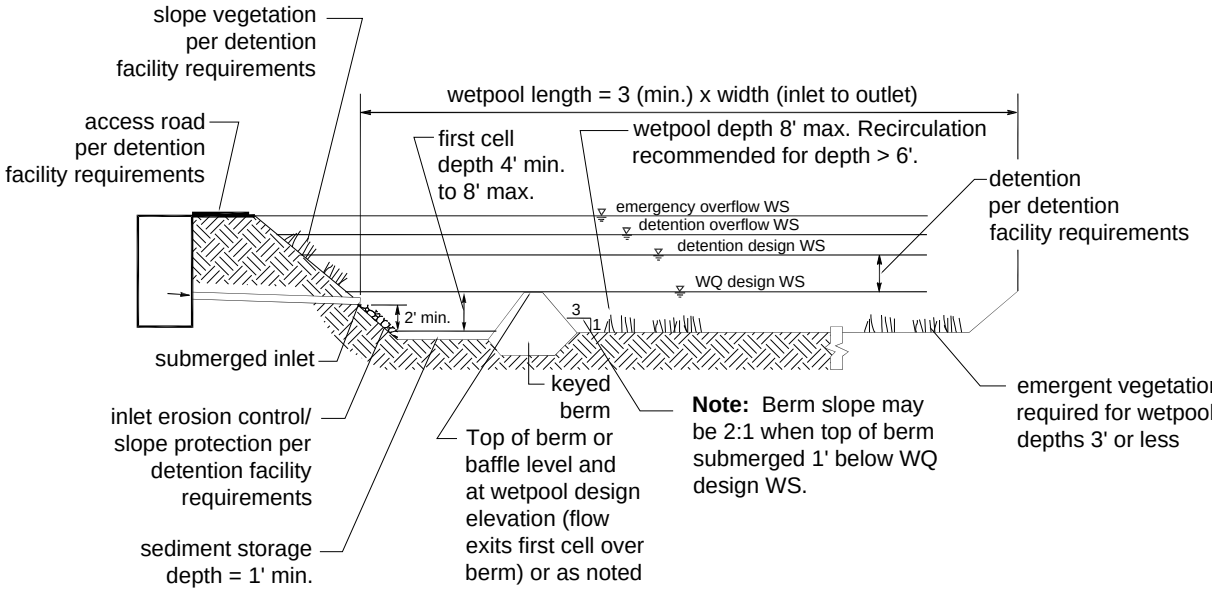
   Intent: This criterion is designed to dampen the most extreme water level fluctuations expected in combined facilities to better ensure that fluctuation-tolerant wetland plants will be able to survive in the facility. It is **not intended** to protect native wetland plant communities and is **not to be applied to natural wetlands**.

FIGURE 6.4.4.A COMBINED DETENTION AND WETPOND

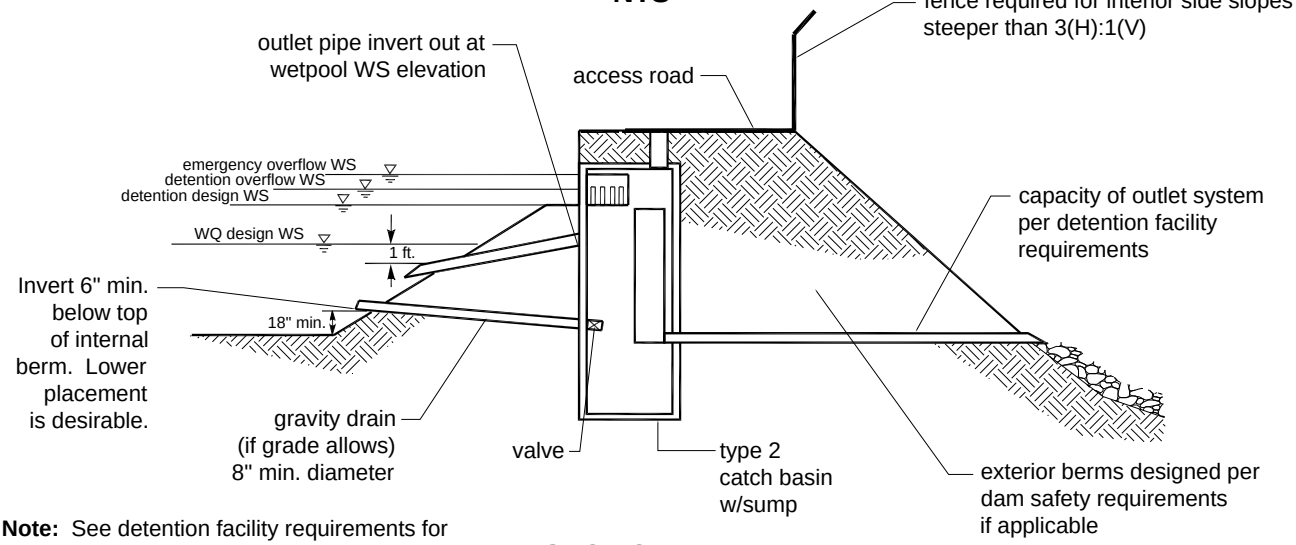


PLAN VIEW
NTS

FIGURE 6.4.4.A COMBINED DETENTION AND WETPOND (*CONTINUED*)



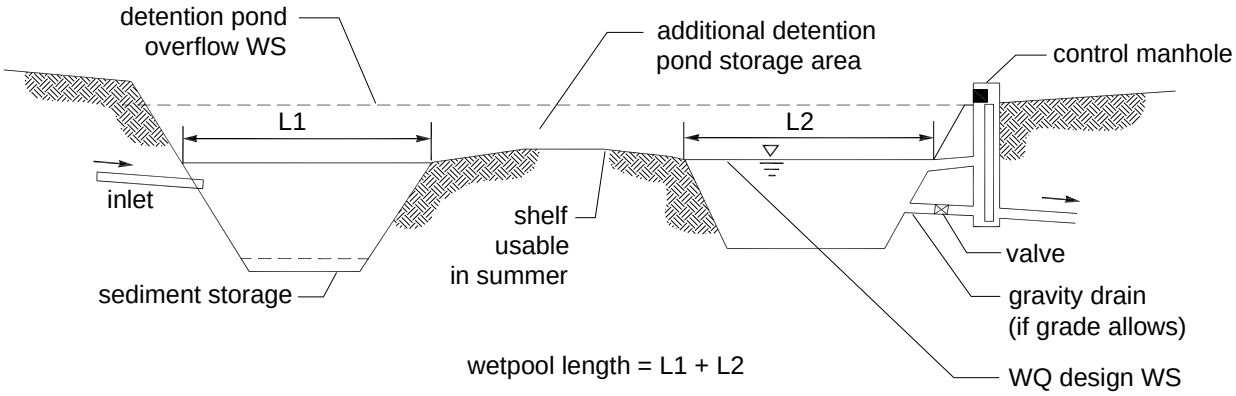
SECTION A-A
NTS



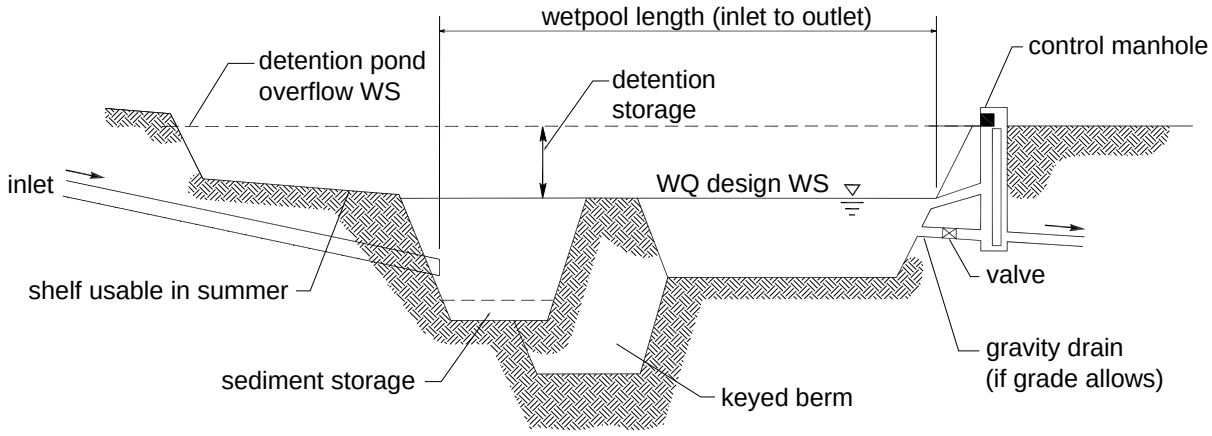
Note: See detention facility requirements for location, interior & exterior sideslopes, and setback requirements.

SECTION B-B
NTS

FIGURE 6.4.4.B ALTERNATIVE CONFIGURATIONS OF DETENTION AND WETPOOL AREAS



SECTION
NTS



SECTION
NTS

Note: These examples show how the combined detention/wetpool can be configured to allow for "shelves" for joint use opportunities in dry weather. Other options may also be acceptable.

6.5 MEDIA FILTRATION FACILITY DESIGNS

This section presents the methods, criteria, and details for analysis and design of sand filters and generic information for StormFilters. Specifically, the following specific facility designs are included in this section:

- "Sand Filters — Basic and Large," Section 6.5.2 (p. 6-104)
- "Sand Filter Vaults," Section 6.5.3 (p. 6-123)
- "Linear Sand Filters," Section 6.5.4 (p. 6-129)
- "StormFilter," Section 6.5.5 (p. 6-134).

The information presented for each filtration facility is organized into the following categories:

1. **Methods of Analysis:** Contains a step-by-step procedure for designing and sizing each facility.
2. **Design Criteria:** Contains the details, specifications, and material requirements for each facility.

6.5.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR MEDIA FILTRATION FACILITIES

Presettling Requirement

Filtration facilities are particularly susceptible to clogging. Presettling must therefore be provided before stormwater enters a filtration facility. The presettling treatment goal is to remove 50 percent of the total suspended solids (TSS). This requirement may be met by **any of the following:**

1. A water quality facility from the Basic WQ Menu (see Section 6.1.1 for facility options).
2. A presettling pond or vault, which may be integrated as the first cell of the filtration facility, with a treatment volume equal to 0.75 times the runoff from the mean annual storm (V_r = 0.75). See Section 6.4.1.1 (p. 6-70) for information on computing V_r. See design requirements below. *Note: For the linear sand filter, use the sediment cell sizing given in the design instead of the above sizing.*
3. A detention facility sized to meet the Level 2 flow control standard.
4. A King County approved pretreatment technology (see Section 6.2 Emerging Technologies).

Other Pretreatment Requirements

1. Sand filters not preceded by a facility that captures floatables, such as a spill control tee, must provide pretreatment to remove **floatable trash and debris** before flows reach the sand bed. This requirement may be met by providing a catch basin with a capped riser on the inlet to the sand filter (see Figure 6.5.2.B, p. 6-121).
2. For ***high-use sites***, sand filters must be preceded by an **oil control option** from the High-Use menu, Section 6.1.5 (p. 6-15).

Design Criteria for Presettling Cells

1. If water in the presettling cell or upstream WQ facility will be in direct contact with the soil, it must be **lined** per the liner requirements in Section 6.2.4.

   Intent: to prevent groundwater contamination from untreated stormwater runoff in areas of excessively drained soils.

2. The presettling cell shall conform to the following:
   a) The **length-to-width ratio** shall be at least 2:1 and should be 3:1. Berms or baffles may be used to lengthen the flowpath.
   b) The **minimum depth** shall be 3 feet; the **maximum depth** shall be 6 feet.
   c) One foot of sediment storage shall be provided.
3. Inlets and outlets shall be designed to minimize velocity and reduce turbulence. The top of the inlet pipe shall be submerged at least 1 foot. The bottom of the inlet pipe shall be at least 1 foot above sediment storage.
4. If the presettling cell is in a sensitive lake or sphagnum bog protection area, shrubs that form a dense cover shall be planted on slopes above the WQ design water surface on at least three sides (see the wetpond planting requirements in Section 6.4.1.2).
5. See Section 6.5.3.2 (p. 6-123) for details of presettling vault structures.

6.5.2 SAND FILTERS — BASIC AND LARGE

A *sand filter* operates much like an infiltration pond (see the sand filter detail in Figure 6.5.2.A, p. 6-119). However, instead of infiltrating into native soils, stormwater filters through a constructed sand bed with an underdrain system. Runoff enters the pond and spreads over the surface of the filter. As flows increase, water backs up in the pond where it is held until it can percolate through the sand. The treatment pathway is vertical (downward through the sand) rather than horizontal as it is in biofiltration swales and filter strips. High flows in excess of the WQ treatment goal simply spill out over the top of the pond. Water that percolates through the sand is collected in an underdrain system of drain rock and pipes which directs the treated runoff to the downstream drainage system.

A sand filter removes pollutants by filtration. As stormwater passes through the sand, pollutants are trapped in the small spaces between sand grains or adhere to the sand surface. Over time, soil bacteria will also grow in the sand bed, and some biological treatment may occur. To get better performance from a sand filter, the volume of water spilled over the top should be reduced. Increasing the sand thickness will not dependably improve performance.

The following design procedures, requirements, and recommendations cover two sand filter sizes: a basic size and a large size. The **basic sand filter** is designed to meet the Basic WQ menu goal of 80% TSS removal. The **large sand filter** is expected to meet the Sensitive Lake Protection menu goal of 50% total phosphorus removal.

Applications and Limitations

A sand filter may be used in most residential, commercial, and industrial developments where ***site*** topography and drainage provide adequate hydraulic head to operate the filter. *An elevation difference of about 4 feet between the inlet and outlet of the filter is usually needed to install a sand filter.*

Sand filters could be easily integrated into landscape plans as areas for summer sports, such as volleyball. Landscape uses may be somewhat constrained because the vegetation capable of surviving in sand is limited. Trees and shrubs which generate a large leaf fall shall be avoided in the immediate vicinity of the filter because leaves and other debris can clog the surface of the filter.

Sand filters are designed to prevent water from backing up into the sand layer (the underdrain system must drain freely). Therefore, a sand filter is more **difficult to install in areas with high water tables** where groundwater could potentially flood the underdrain system. Water standing in the underdrain system will also keep the sand saturated. Under these conditions, oxygen can be depleted, releasing pollutants such as metals and phosphorus that are more mobile under anoxic conditions.

Sand filters can not be used in combination with a pump system. If the pump fails, the sand will become saturated, create anoxic conditions, and release pollutants.

Because the surface of the sand filter will clog from sediment and other debris, this facility **should not be used in areas where heavy sediment loads are expected**. A sand filter should not be used during construction to control sediments unless the sand bed is replaced periodically during construction and after the ***project site*** is stabilized.

Consult the water quality menus in Section 6.1 (p. 6-3) for information on how basic and large sand filters may be used to meet Core Requirement # 8.

6.5.2.1 METHODS OF ANALYSIS

This section presents the methods of analysis for both **basic and large sand filters**.

A sand filter is designed with two parts: (1) a **temporary storage reservoir** to store runoff, and (2) a **sand filter bed** through which the stored runoff must percolate. Usually the storage reservoir is simply placed directly above the filter, and the floor of the reservoir pond is the top of the sand bed. For this case, the storage volume also determines the hydraulic head over the filter surface, which increases the rate of flow through the sand.

Two methods are given here to size sand filters: a simple method and a detailed computer modeling method. The **simple method** uses standard values to define filter hydraulic characteristics for determining the sand surface area. This method is useful for planning purposes, for a first approximation to begin iterations in the detailed method, or when use of the detailed computer model is not desired or not available. The simple sizing method **very often results in a larger filter** than the detailed method.

The **detailed routing method** uses the King County Runoff Time Series (KCRTS) computer model to determine sand filter area and pond size based on individual ***site*** conditions. Use of the KCRTS design method **very often results in smaller filter sizes** than the simple method, **especially if the facility is downstream of a detention facility**. Both methods include parameters for sizing either a basic or a large sand filter.

Background

There are several variables used in sand filter design which are similar and often confused, even by well-trained individuals. Use of these variables is explained below.

The sand filter design is based on Darcy's law:

$$Q = KiA \tag{6-16}$$

where Q = WQ design flow (cfs)
K = hydraulic conductivity (fps)
A = surface area perpendicular to the direction of flow (sf)
i = hydraulic gradient (ft/ft) for a constant head and constant media depth, computed as follows:

$$i = \frac{h + l}{l} \tag{6-17}$$

where h = average depth of water above filter (ft), defined for this design as $d/2$
d = maximum storage depth above filter (ft)
l = thickness of sand media (ft)

Although it is not seen directly, Darcy's law underlies both the simple and the routing design methods. ***V***, or more correctly, ***1/V***, is the direct input in the sand filter design. The relationship between V and K is

revealed by equating Darcy's law and the equation of continuity, $Q = VA$. *Note: When water is flowing into the ground, V is commonly called the* ***filtration rate****. It is ordinarily measured in a percolation test.*

Specifically:

$$Q = KiA \quad \text{and} \quad Q = VA$$

So,

$$VA = KiA \quad \text{or} \quad V = Ki \tag{6-18}$$

Note that $V \neq K$—that is, the filtration rate is not the same as the hydraulic conductivity, but they do have the same units (distance per time). K can be equated to V by dividing V by the hydraulic gradient i, which is defined above in Equation (6-17).

The hydraulic conductivity ***K* does not change with head** nor is it dependent on the thickness of the media, only on the characteristics of the media and the fluid. The hydraulic conductivity of 1 inch per hour (2.315×10^{-5} fps) used in this design is based on bench-scale tests of conditioned rather than clean sand. This design hydraulic conductivity represents the average sand bed condition as silt is captured and held in the filter bed.[31]

Unlike the hydraulic conductivity, the filtration rate ***V* changes with head and media thickness**, although the media thickness is constant in the sand filter design. Table 6.5.2.B on page 6-110 shows values of V for different water depths d (remember, $d = 2h$).

The KCRTS program uses the inverse of the filtration rate, $1/V$, in units of minutes per inch; this is how Darcy's law is expressed in the design. The simple method is also based on $1/V$, but flows and areas are computed for the user in terms of acre equivalents. Thus both the simple and the KCRTS method are based on Darcy's law.

The simple sizing method is different from the KCRTS method because it does not route flows through the filter. It determines the size of the filter based on the simple assumption that inflow is immediately discharged through the filter as if there were no storage volume. An **adjustment factor**–the 0.7 in Equation (6-19)–is applied to compensate for the greater filter size resulting from this method. Even with this adjustment factor, however, the simple method generally produces larger filter sizes than the detailed routing method.

Simple Sizing Method

The simple method has been developed to design sand filters that meet the required treatment volume without performing detailed modeling. Steps for the simple sizing procedure are summarized below.

Step 1: Determine whether a basic or large sand filter is needed. Consult the water quality menus in Section 6.1 (p. 6-3) to determine the size of filter needed, either basic or large.

Step 2: Determine the rainfall region and regional scale factor. Regional scale factors are used to account for differences in rainfall at locations distant from the two gaging locations in King County, Sea-Tac Airport and Landsburg. Refer to the precipitation scaling map in Chapter 3, Figure 3.2.2.A, to determine the scale factor for the project area.

Step 3: Determine maximum depth of water above sand filter. Determine the maximum water storage depth above the surface of the filter. This depth is defined as the depth at which water begins to overflow

[31] King County has tested various sand mixes conditioned with simulated stormwater to establish realistic design standards. Tests were conducted under falling head conditions in columns containing 18 inches of sand underlain with a 2-inch layer of washed drain gravel containing a section of 2-inch perforated PVC pipe to simulate the underdrain system. Details are given in Koon, John, "Determination of infiltration rate and hydraulic conductivity for various sand filter media." January 1996.

the reservoir pond, and it depends on ***site*** topography and hydraulic constraints. The depth is chosen by the designer.

Step 4: Determine *site* characteristics. Determine the total number of impervious acres and the total number of grass acres draining to the sand filter. Determine whether the ***project site*** is on till or outwash soils. Refer to Table 3.2.2.B in Chapter 3 to determine which soil types are considered till and which are considered outwash.

Step 5. Calculate minimum required surface area for sand filter. Determine the sand filter area by multiplying the values in Table 6.5.2.A by the tributary acreages from Step 4 using the following equation:

$$A_{sf} = 0.7C_s\,(T_iA_i + T_{tg}A_{tg} + T_{og}A_{og}) \qquad (6\text{-}19)$$

where A_{sf} = sand filter area (sf)
0.7 = adjustment factor to account for routing effect on size
C_s = regional scale factor (unitless) from Step 2
$T_{i,tg,og}$ = tributary area per soil/cover type (acres)
$A_{i,tg,og}$ = filter area per soil/cover type (sf/acre) from Table 6.5.2.A

For depths between the values given in the table, areas may be interpolated. For depths outside the range presented in the table, the detailed routing method must be used.

TABLE 6.5.2.A SAND FILTER AREA INCREMENTS FOR VARIOUS SOIL AND COVER TYPES

Region and Treatment Goal	Maximum Depth above filter (ft)	SOIL AND COVER TYPES[32] [filter area (sf) / tributary area (acre)]		
		A_i Impervious	A_{tg} Till Grass	A_{og} Outwash Grass
Sea-Tac Basic size	6	760	160	140
	3	1140	240	210
	1	1711	360	314
Landsburg Basic size	6	819	180	160
	3	1229	270	235
	1	1844	405	355
Sea-Tac Large size	6	1179	279	250
	3	1769	419	370
	1	2654	629	550
Landsburg Large size	6	1300	300	260
	3	1950	449	395
	1	2926	674	590

Note: Forested areas may be ignored. Vegetated areas other than grass may still be represented as grass for the simple sizing method, or the detailed routing method may be employed using actual cover types.

[32] The values in Table 6.5.2.A were derived as follows. Flows were estimated using the KCRTS model for one acre of the cover types selected in the table. Darcy's law ($Q = Ki\,A$) was then used to determine sand filter area using this flow Q, the hydraulic gradient i for the various ponding depths given, and a hydraulic conductivity k of 2.3 X 10^{-5} fps (1 inch/hr). The hydraulic gradient i was calculated as $(h+l)/\,l$, where h = the average depth of water above the filter, taken to be the ponding depth $d/2$, and l = the thickness of the sand layer, which is 1.5 feet. The hydraulic conductivity represents a partially plugged sand condition found by bench-scale testing using successive trials with turbid water.

Step 6: Size the underdrain system. The underdrain system is sized to convey the peak filtered flows to the outlet. The design criteria in "Underdrain Systems" (p. 6-114) may be used in lieu of analyzing conveyance capacity for feeder pipes. Strip drains must be analyzed for conveyance per manufacturer's specifications.

The collector pipe (i.e., the pipe collecting flows from the rest of the underdrain system) shall be sized to convey the 2-year, 15-minute peak flow with one foot of head above the invert of the upstream end of the collector pipe. Conveyance capacity can be checked using the "BW" computer program.

Intent: The underdrain must be able to remove standing water from beneath the sand. If standing water remains, the sand will remain saturated. This could cause oxygen depletion and reducing conditions in the sand, allowing some pollutants to become mobile and be released from the filter to downstream receiving waters.

Simple Method Sizing Example

For a ***site*** near the city of Snoqualmie with 2 acres of impervious area and 2 acres of outwash grass draining to the sand filter, and 3 feet of head above the filter, the **required sand area** for a **basic size sand filter** would be found as follows:

Site Areas		Table 6.5.2.A values for Landsburg, basic size		
2 acres	x	1229 sf/acre	=	2458 sf
+ 2 acres	x	235 sf/acre	=	470 sf
			=	2928 sf

Multiply 2928 square feet by the C_s for the Snoqualmie area, which (from Figure 3.2.2.A) is 1.2 times the increments for the Landsburg area. Also, multiply that result by the 0.7 adjustment factor.

2928 sf x 1.2 x 0.7 = 2460 sf

The required sand bed area is therefore **2460 square feet.**

Note: Find the total facility area by adding 3H:1V side slopes for the 3 foot ponding depth plus extra vertical height to convey the 100-year flow. If the total pond depth is 3.5 feet, the sand filter will require a total land area of (50 ft + 10.5 ft) x (50 ft + 10.5 ft) = 3660 square feet, plus access and setback requirements.

Detailed KCRTS Routing Method

The KCRTS routing method allows the designer to optimize filter geometry and sizing to meet specific ***site*** conditions. For sand filters located downstream of detention facilities, this method will result in **significantly smaller facilities** than using the simple method described above. The detailed method requires a trial and error solution using KCRTS to route the developed inflow runoff time series through various sand filter configurations until the amount of runoff that passes through the filter media and is treated meets or exceeds the treatment objective defined for the facility. Refer to the *KCRTS Computer Software Reference Manual* for general instructions on using the KCRTS program. Steps for the design process, with specific instructions on how to use KCRTS for sand filter sizing, are described below.

Step 1: Determine whether a basic or large sand filter is required. Consult the water quality menus in Section 6.1 (p. 6-3) to determine the size of filter needed. A basic sand filter is sized so that 90% of the runoff volume will pass through the filter, rather than 95% as stated in Section 6.2.1 (p. 6-17) for the WQ

design volume. A large sand filter is sized such that a minimum of 95% of the runoff volume passes through the filter.[33]

Step 2: Create inflow time series. The developed inflow time series is created using the KCRTS program as described in Chapter 3. If the sand filter is upstream of detention, the time series is that of the developed ***site***. If the sand filter is downstream of detention, the time series is that the outflow time series leaving the detention facility. Detailed instructions for creating the time series can be found in the *KCRTS Computer Software Reference Manual*.[34]

Note: Sand filters located downstream from detention facilities are significantly smaller than those treating runoff before it is detained. Likewise, sand filters receiving flows from Level 2 detention facilities are smaller than those below Level 1 facilities.

Step 3: Determine the design overflow volume (on-line facilities). The percent of total runoff volume required to pass through the filter was determined in Step 1 (either 90 or 95%). To determine the design overflow volume, multiply the total runoff volume by one minus the percentage (either 0.10 or 0.05). The total runoff volume can be found using the "Compute Volume Discharge" routine found in the "Analysis Tools Module" after the inflow time series is created.

Select the existing inflow time series file and specify a filename of the new output file. The start and end dates for the reduced runoff time series are as follows:

Start date: 10/01/00 00:00

End date: 09/30/08 23:59

Note: For most WQ facilities, the designer may chose to design the facility as either on-line (all flow goes through the facility) or off-line (flows above the WQ design flow bypass the facility). An off-line sand filter has a high-flow bypass with an upstream flow splitter designed to bypass flows above 60% of the 2-yr peak discharge using 15-min time steps calibrated to specific ***site*** *conditions (see Section 6.2.5, p. 6-29, for more information on flow splitter design). The design overflow volume for off-line sand filters is zero, since all flows routed to the filter will be at or below the WQ design flow. Flow-splitting can be performed within the KCRTS 2-Outlet Reservoir routine. Using the WQ design flow should ensure treatment of the design water quality volume will be achieved. A check using Compute Volume may be performed to verify treatment volume.*

Step 4: Define sand filter modeling parameters. Sand filters can be sized with the "Size a Facility" routine using the infiltration pond option. The following parameters are required for the analysis:

a) Side slope: horizontal component of slope (ft/ft) for the pond (reservoir above the sand filter)

b) Sand filter area A_{sf}: the surface area of the filter (sf). As a first approximation, it is recommended that the area calculated using the simple sizing method be used. KCRTS refers to this area as the bottom area of the infiltration pond. Bottom area can be specified using Length, Width, or Area. Press F2 to view additional help file information on how KCRTS handles these entries.

c) Maximum water depth *d* over filter: depth at which runoff begins to overflow the sand filter (ft), referred to in KCRTS as the effective storage depth of the reservoir.

[33] For sand filters, the volume to be treated to meet the Basic menu goal is only 90% (rather than 95%) of the total runoff volume. This is because the sand filter has been documented to provide better than 80% TSS removal, and thus exceeds the treatment goal of the Basic WQ menu. Therefore, less runoff volume can be treated and still meet the basic water quality goal.

[34] Instructions for creating the time series are summarized as follows: **Select** "CREATE a new time series" at the main menu. Enter rainfall region and scale factor (see Figure 3.2.2.A), soil and land cover areas, time step, and data type (reduced record). **Select** "COMPUTE total area." Enter a name for the inflow time series. **Select** "COMPUTE time series." Press F10 to view information created; press "ENTER" to return to main menu. At the main menu, **select** "ENTER Analysis TOOLS module." **Select** "COMPUTE volume discharge," and enter the inflow time series name. Enter start date and end date for time series. **Select** "EXTRACT discharge volume." This is the total runoff volume in the time series. **Select** "CONTINUE," and then **select** "RETURN to previous menu."

d) Elevation at 0 Stage: Zero is fine for design. This sets a datum adjustment; which if set, the program will display water levels based on relative stage and absolute elevation. KCRTS will set stage 0.0 at the top of the sand filter media.

e) Permeable surfaces: bottom only.

f) Riser and orifice information:

- Riser head: same as the maximum water depth.
- Riser diameter: 12 - 36 inches (must meet the criteria for "Overflow and Bypass Structures," p. 6-112). KCRTS will not include spillway overflows. Riser Diameter should be set carefully to closely simulate the actual overflow structure.
- Number of orifices: zero. All runoff will either percolate through sand or overflow the riser.
- Top of riser: flat.

g) Vertical infiltration: the inverse of the filtration rate *V*, or 1/*V*, and is entered in units of **minutes per inch.** Values for *V* and 1/*V* for various ponding depths are summarized in Table 6.5.2.B (below).

TABLE 6.5.2.B SAND FILTER DESIGN PARAMETERS

	Sand Filter Design Parameters					
Facility ponding depth *d* (ft)	1	2	3	4	5	6
Filtration rate *V* (in/hr)*	1.33	1.67	2.00	2.33	2.67	3.0
1/*V* (min/in)	45	36	30	26	22.5	20

* *Note:* The filtration rate is not used directly but is provided for information. *V* equals the hydraulic conductivity *K* times the hydraulic gradient *i*. The hydraulic conductivity used is 1 inch/hr. The hydraulic gradient = $(h + l) / l$, where $h = d/2$ and l = the sand depth (1.5 ft). See "Background" (p. 6-105) for more information on the definition of terms.

Step 5: Size the sand filter. The KCRTS facility sizing routine is used to design the sand filter as follows:

a) Select "Size a Retention/Detention Facility" option from the KCRTS main menu.

b) Set the "Design Technique" to manual mode which allows the user full control of the facility parameters.

c) Specify a filename to save the sand filter facility data.

d) Select "Create a New R/D Facility."

e) Select an Infiltration Pond as the facility type, and input the facility specifications determined in Step 4. The primary variable to be adjusted by the designer is the bottom area, which corresponds to the required filter area.

f) Select "Point of Compliance."

g) Enter existing inflow times series file (.tsf). Select "Return to Facility Edit Menu." Since sizing of sand filters is done in manual (rather than automatic) mode, there is no need to complete the setup of the test hydrograph parameters.

h) Skip Edit Test Hydrograph Parameters and Define Riser Orifices and Notch.

i) Select the "Save Facility" option.

Step 6: Route inflow time series through sand filter and compare volumes. Compare the outflow volume passing through the filter with the required treatment volume. KCRTS can perform the time series routing and the volume comparisons. To set up the volume comparison, perform the following steps:

a) Select "Modify Auto-Analysis Setup".

b) Select "Calculate Volume." Additionally, toggle to "Skip Peaks," "Do not Notify" and "Skip Durations," as necessary.

c) Select "Edit Peak/Duration/Volume Information," and specify the same start and end dates specified in Step 3.

d) Select "Return to Facility Design Menu" and overwrite the facility file.

e) From the facility design menu, select "Route Time Series Perform Auto Analysis."

f) Press F10 to display routing data; press ENTER to continue with volume calculation. Press F10 to view the time series outflow volume. This represents the total volume of water which overtopped the riser and was not treated. Compare the overflow volume with the maximum allowable design discharge volume identified in Step 3.

- If the volume of water spilled exceeded the design outflow volume, increase the bottom area of the facility by selecting "Edit Facility." Repeat this step until the desired performance is achieved.
- If the volume of water spilled is less than the design outflow volume, decrease the bottom area until the outflow and the design outflow match (approximately).

Note: By modeling the sand filter as an infiltration facility, KCRTS assumes that the runoff infiltrated through the sand is lost from the model. However, most sand filters are designed with underdrain collection systems that collect filtered runoff and convey treated runoff to the downstream drainage system; the attenuating effects of the sand filter reservoir are ignored.

Step 7: Size the underdrain system. The underdrain system is sized to convey the peak filtered flows to the outlet. The **central collector pipe(s)** shall be conservatively sized to convey the WQ design flow into the facility using the KCBW program's backwater analysis techniques described in Chapter 4. To simplify the analysis, all flows may be assumed to enter the collector pipe at the upstream end. Typically, the collector pipe will not be inlet controlled, so a simple square inlet type may be assumed. The full head of the facility may be utilized to convey flows through the pipe. Minimum pipe capacity shall be no less than that required to convey the water quality design flow entering the facility.

Feeder pipes may be sized using the design criteria in "Underdrain Systems" (p. 6-114) instead of analyzing the conveyance capacity as described above.

Strip drains must be analyzed for conveyance per manufacturer's specifications.

Intent: The underdrain must be able to remove standing water from beneath the sand. If standing water remains, the sand will remain saturated. This could cause reducing conditions in the sand, allowing some pollutants to become mobile and be released from the filter to downstream receiving waters.

6.5.2.2 DESIGN CRITERIA

General design concepts and a typical layout of a sand filter are shown in Figure 6.5.2.A (p. 6-119) and Figure 6.5.2.B (p. 6-121).

Sand Filter Geometry

1. **Any shape** sand bed may be used, including circular or free-form designs. *Note: The treatment process is governed by **vertical** flow, so short-circuiting is not a concern as it is in wetponds.*

2. **Sand depth** (*l*) shall be 18 inches (1.5 feet) minimum.
3. **Depth of storage** over the filter media (*d*) shall be 6 feet maximum.

Pretreatment, Flow Spreading, and Energy Dissipation

1. See general presettling and pretreatment requirements for filtration facilities in Section 6.5.1 (p. 6-103).
2. A **flow spreader** shall be installed at the inlet along one side of the filter to evenly distribute incoming runoff across the filter and prevent erosion of the filter surface. See Section 6.2.6 (p. 6-33) for details on flow spreaders.
   a) **If the sand filter is curved or an irregular shape**, a flow spreader shall be provided for a minimum of 20 percent of the filter perimeter.
   b) If the **length-to-width ratio** of the filter is 2:1 or greater, a flow spreader must be located on the longer side and for a **minimum length** of 20 percent of the facility perimeter.
   c) In other situations, use good engineering judgment in positioning the spreader.
3. **Erosion protection** shall be provided along the first foot of the sand bed adjacent to the flow spreader. Geotextile (meeting the specifications in Table 6.5.2.D, page 6-113) weighted with sand bags at 15-foot intervals may be used. Quarry spalls may also be used.

Overflow and Bypass Structures

1. **On-line filters**[35] shall be equipped with **overflows** (primary, secondary, and emergency) in accordance with the design criteria for detention ponds (see Section 5.3.1.1, criteria for "Overflow" and "Emergency Overflow Spillway"). *Note: The primary overflow may be incorporated into the emergency spillway in cases where the spillway discharges into a downstream detention facility, or where overflows can be safely controlled and redirected into the downstream conveyance system.*
2. For **off-line filters**, the outlet structure must be designed to pass the 2-yr peak inflow rate, as determined using KCRTS with 15-minute time steps calibrated to specific ***site*** conditions.

   Intent: Overflow capacity is required for low-flow, high-volume storms which may exceed the storage capacity of the filter.
3. To the extent base flow conditions can be identified, **base flow** must be bypassed around the filter to keep the sand from remaining saturated for extended periods of time.

Filter Composition

A sand filter consists of three or four layers:

- Top layer (optional): grass seed or sod grown in sand
- Second layer: sand
- Third layer: geotextile fabric
- Fourth layer: underdrain system.

Sand Specifications

The sand in a filter shall consist of a medium sand with few fines meeting the size gradation (by weight) given in Table 6.5.2.C. The contractor must obtain a grain size analysis from the supplier to certify that the No. 100 and No. 200 sieve requirements are met. *Note: Many sand mixes supplied locally meet this specification. However, standard backfill for sand drains (as specified in the Washington Standard Specifications 9-03.13) does not meet this specification and shall not be used for sand filters.*

[35] Whether a WQ facility is designed as on-line (all flow going through the facility) or off-line (high flows bypassing the facility) is a choice made by the designer. Section 6.2.5 (p. 6-29) contains information on flow splitters for WQ facilities.

TABLE 6.5.2.C SAND MEDIA SPECIFICATIONS	
U.S. Sieve Size	**Percent passing**
U.S. No. 4	95 to 100 percent
U.S. No. 8	70 to 100 percent
U.S. No. 16	40 to 90 percent
U.S. No. 30	25 to 75 percent
U.S. No. 50	2 to 25 percent
U.S. No. 100	Less than 4 percent
U.S. No. 200	Less than 2 percent

Geotextile Materials

Geotextile material requirements are summarized in Table 6.5.2.D (below).

TABLE 6.5.2.D GEOTEXTILE SPECIFICATIONS		
Geotextile Property	**Value**	**Test Method**
Grab Tensile Strength, min in machine and x-direction	250 lbs/160 lbs min.	ASTM D4632
Grab Failure Strain, in machine and x-machine direction	<50%/>50%	ASTM D4632
Seam Breaking Strength (if seams are present)	220 lbs/140 lbs min.	ASTM D4632 and ASTM D4884 (adapted for grab test)
Puncture Resistance	80 lbs/50 lbs min.	ASTM D4833
Tear Strength, min. in machine and x-machine direction	80 lbs/50 lbs min.	ASTM D4533
Ultraviolet (UV) Radiation stability	50% strength min., after 500 hrs. in weather meter	ASTM D4355
AOS	0.43 mm max. (#40 sieve)	ASTM D4751
Water Permittivity	0.5 sec – 1 min.	ASTM D4491

Notes:

- Minimum values should be in the weaker principal direction. All numerical values represent minimum average roll value (i.e., test results from any sampled lot shall meet or exceed the minimum values in the table). Stated values are for noncritical and nonsevere applications.
- AOS: Apparent Opening Size is the measure of the diameter of the pores on the geotextile.

Underdrain Systems

1. Several **underdrain systems** are acceptable:
   - A central collector pipe with lateral feeder pipes in an 8-inch drain rock bed
   - A central collector pipe with a geotextile drain strip in an 8-inch drain rock bed
   - Longitudinal pipes in an 8-inch drain rock bed, with a collector pipe at the outlet end.

   In smaller installations a single perforated pipe in 8 inches of drain rock may be adequate.

2. The **maximum perpendicular distance** between any two feeder pipes, or the edge of the filter and a feeder pipe, shall be 15 feet.

   Intent: This spacing is required to prevent the underdrain system from backing up into the sand filter during the early life of the filter when high filtration rates exist.

3. All pipe shall be placed with a **minimum slope** of 0.5 %.

4. The **invert of the underdrain outlet** shall be above the seasonal high groundwater level. The *seasonal high groundwater level* is the highest elevation of groundwater observed.

   Intent: The underdrain must be able to remove standing water from beneath the sand. If standing water remains, the sand will remain saturated. This could cause depletion of dissolved oxygen and reducing conditions in the sand, allowing some pollutants to become mobile and be released from the filter to downstream receiving waters.

5. **Cleanout** wyes with caps or junction boxes shall be provided at both ends of all collector pipes. Cleanouts shall extend to the surface of the filter.

   a) A valve box must be provided for access to the cleanouts.

   b) The cleanout assembly must be water tight to prevent short circuiting of the filter.

   Intent: Caps are required on cleanout wyes to prevent short-circuiting of water into the underdrain system when the pond fills with water.

6. If a **drain strip** is used for lateral drainage, the strip must be placed at the slope specified by the manufacturer but at least at 0.5%. All drain strip must extend to the central collector pipe. Drain strips installations must be analyzed for conveyance because manufactured products vary in the amount of flow they are designed to handle.

7. At least 8 inches of drain rock must be maintained over all underdrain piping or drain strip, and 6 inches must be maintained on either side to prevent damage by heavy equipment during maintenance.

   Note: If drain strip is used, it may be easier to install the central collector pipe in an 8-inch ***trench*** *filled with drain rock, making the cover over the drain strip and the collector pipe the same thickness. In this case the pipe shall be wrapped with geotextile to prevent clogging. Use the same geotextile specification as given in* Table 6.5.2.D, *Page 6-113*.

8. A **geotextile fabric** shall be used between the sand layer and the drain rock and be placed so that one inch of drain rock is above the fabric.

   Intent: The position of the geotextile fabric provides a **transition layer** of mixed sand and drain rock. A distinct layer of finely textured sand above a coarser one may cause water to pool at the interface and not readily drain downward due to the greater capillary forces in the finer material.

9. Sand filters shall not be used in combination with a downstream pump system.

   Intent: Sand filters are designed to prevent water from backing up into the sand layer; the underdrain system must drain freely. If the pump fails, the sand will become saturated, create anoxic conditions, and release pollutants.

Underdrain Materials

1. Underdrain **pipe** shall be minimum 6 inch diameter perforated PVC, SDR 35. One acceptable specification for perforations is as follows: 2 rows of holes ($^1/_2$-inch diameter) spaced 6 inches apart longitudinally (max), with rows 120 degrees apart (laid with holes downward). Other drain pipe may be used if it adequately drains the filter.
2. **Drain rock** shall be $1^1/_2$ to $^3/_4$ -inch rock, washed and free from clay or organic material.
3. If a geotextile drain strip system is used, the attached **geotextile fabric** should not be used, or the fabric side should be positioned away from the sand blanket. Geotextile is already required between the sand and drain rock layers, and must meet the specifications in Table 6.5.2.D (p. 6-113) to avoid clogging the filter prematurely.

Access Roads & Setbacks

1. An access road shall be provided to the inlet and outlet of a sand filter for inspection and maintenance purposes. Requirements for access roads are the same as for detention ponds (see Section 5.3.1.1, "Design of Access Roads" and "Construction of Access Roads").
2. The location of the facility relative to ***site*** constraints (e.g., buildings, property lines, etc.) shall be the same as for detention ponds (see Section 5.3.1). See Section 6.2.3 (p. 6-21) for typical setback requirements for WQ facilities.

Grass Cover

1. **No top soil** shall be added to sand filter beds because fine-grained materials (e.g., silt and clay) reduce the hydraulic capacity of the filter.
2. **Growing grass** will require selecting species that can tolerate the demanding environment of the sand bed. Sand filters experience long periods of saturation during the winter wet season, followed by extended dry periods during the summer. Modeling predicts that sand filters will be dry about 60 percent of the time in a typical year. Consequently, vegetation must be capable of surviving drought as well as wetness.
   - The grasses and plants listed in Table 6.5.2.E (below) are good choices for pond sides. They are facultative (i.e., they can tolerate fluctuations in soil water). These species can generally survive approximately 1 month of submersion while dormant in the winter (until about February 15), but they can withstand only about 1 to 2 weeks of submersion after mid-February.
   - The lower portion of Table 6.5.2.E lists grass species that are good choices for the sand filter bottom. They can withstand summer drying and are fairly tolerant of infertile soils. In general, planting a mixture of 3 or more species is recommended. This ensures better coverage since tolerance of the different species is somewhat different, and the best adapted grasses will spread more rapidly than the others. Legumes, such as clover, fix nitrogen and hence can thrive in low-fertility soils such as sands. This makes them particularly good choices for planting the sand filter bed.
3. To prevent overuse that could compact and potentially damage the filter surface, **permanent structures** (e.g., playground equipment or bleachers) are not permitted. Temporary structures or equipment must be removed for filter maintenance.
4. If the sand filter is located in a Sensitive Lake Protection Area, low phosphorus **fertilizers** (such as formulations in the proportion 3: 1: 3 N-P-K or less) or a slow-release phosphorus formulation such as rock phosphate or bone meal should be used.

TABLE 6.5.2.E RECOMMENDED PLANTS FOR SATURATED AREAS	
RECOMMENDED PLANTS FOR POND SIDES	
Scientific Name	**Common Name**
Agrostis alba	Redtop
Agrostis palustris	Creeping bentgrass
Alopecurus pratensis	Meadow foxtail
Calamagrostis nutkaensis	Pacific reed grass
Glyceria borealis	Northern mannagrass
Holcus lanatus	Common velvet grass
Poa palustris	Fowl bluegrass
Poa pratensis	Kentucky bluegrass
Juncus acuminatus	Tapertip rush
Juncus effusus	Soft rush
RECOMMENDED PLANTS FOR POND BOTTOM (SAND SURFACE)	
Agrostis tenuis	Colonial bentgrass (Highland strain good)
Buchloe dactyloides	Buffalo grass
Festuca elatior	Tall fescue
Festuca elatior "Many Mustang," "Silverado"	Dwarf tall fescues
Festuca rubra	Red fescue
Lolium perenne	Perennial ryegrass
Zoysia tenuifolia	Korean grass
Trifolium repens	White lawn clover
Note: Other grasses may be used if recommended by a horticultural or erosion control specialist for the specific site.	

Recommended Design Features

The following design features should be incorporated into sand filter designs where ***site*** conditions allow:

1. A **horticultural specialist** should be consulted for advice on planting.
2. **Seed** should be applied in spring or mid to late fall unless irrigation is provided. If the filter is seeded during the dry summer months, surface irrigation is needed to ensure that the seeds germinate and survive. Seed should be applied at 80 lbs/acre.
3. Slow-release **fertilizers** may be applied to improve germination; however, see requirements above for sensitive lake protection areas.
4. A sand filter can add landscape interest and should be incorporated into the project **landscape design**. Interior side slopes may be stepped with flat areas to provide informal seating with a game or play area below. Perennial beds may be planted above the overflow water surface elevation. However, large shrubs and trees are not recommended because shading limits evaporation and can inhibit drying of the filter surface. In addition, falling leaves and needles can clog the filter surface, requiring more

frequent maintenance. *Note: Examples of areas with stepped side slopes can be found at the Ballard Locks in Seattle and at Luther Burbank Park on Mercer Island.*

5. If **recreational use** is intended, such as for a badminton or volleyball play area, the interior side slopes of the filter embankment should be no steeper than 3:1 and may be stepped as shown in Figure 6.5.2.C (p. 6-122). Drainage tracts may be credited for up to 50 percent of the onsite recreation space requirement under certain conditions. Refer to King County Code 21A.14.180.D for recreation requirements (see Section 5.3.1.2).

Construction Considerations

1. If sand filters are put into service before construction of all parcels within the catchment is complete and all disturbed soil in the sand filter catchment has been stabilized, the filter will very likely clog prematurely. If individual lots are not stabilized, the options for **protection from upstream erosion** given in Section 5.4.1 for infiltration ponds may be used.

   An **alternative** is to install the sand filter pond including full excavation for the filter sand and underdrain layers, delaying placement of the sand and underdrains until the ***project site*** is stabilized. The partially complete sand filter will then function like a small wetpond. Later, the accumulated sediment should be cleaned and the underdrain and sand layers placed. A second alternative is to place only the gravel underdrain during the construction phase. Then clean the gravel and place the sand layer after the ***project site*** is stabilized.

   The County will not assume maintenance responsibility or release financial guarantees, however, unless the sand filter is installed per design and functioning properly. If the final sand layer cannot be completed before the typical two-year holding period for financial guarantees, the applicant may elect to pay the County to clean and install the sand when the watershed is stabilized, or may arrange a smaller financial guarantee specifically for completion of the sand filter.

2. **Careful placement of the sand** is necessary to avoid formation of voids within the sand that could lead to short-circuiting, particularly around penetrations for underdrain cleanouts, as well as to prevent damage to the underlying geomembranes and underdrain system. Voids between the trench wall and geotextile fabric should also be avoided.

3. **Over compaction must be avoided** to ensure adequate filtration capacity. Sand is best placed with a low ground pressure tracked bulldozer (4.6 pounds per square inch or less ground pressure). The number of passes over sand fill should be minimized during placement; using low ground-pressure vehicles can minimize ground pressure and compaction.

4. After the sand layer is placed, water settling is recommended. Flood the sand with 10 to 15 gallons of water per cubic foot of sand.

Maintenance Considerations

Sand filters are subject to clogging by fine sediment, oil and grease, and other debris (e.g., trash and organic matter such as leaves). Filters and pretreatment facilities should be inspected every 6 months during the first year of operation. Inspections should also occur immediately following a storm event to assess the filtration capacity of the filter. Once the filter is performing as designed, the frequency of inspection may be reduced to once per year.

During an inspection the following features should be evaluated and maintained as needed:

1. Remove debris and sediment from the pretreatment facility when depth exceeds 12 inches.

2. Remove debris and sediment from the surface of the filter when accumulations exceed 0.5 inches.

3. Observe operation of the overflow and drawdown time in the filter. Frequent overflow through the grated "birdcage" or "jailhouse" window into the outlet structure or slow drawdown are indicators of plugging problems. Under normal operating conditions, a sand filter should completely empty within 9 to 24 hours following a storm event (i.e., after the inflow of runoff to the filter ceases), depending

on pond depth. Generally, if the water level over the filter drops at a rate less than $^1/_2$-inch per hour ($V < {}^1/_2$-inch per hour), corrective maintenance is needed. Recommendations for improving sand filter performance are summarized below:

a) Remove thatch accumulation in grass.

b) Aerate the filter surface to improve permeability.

c) Till the filter surface. Two separate passes following a criss-cross pattern (i.e., second pass at right angles to the first) are recommended.

d) Replace upper 4 to 6 inches of grass and sand.

4. Experience with sand filters used for stormwater treatment in Austin, Texas, has shown that the sand becomes clogged and must be replaced every 4 to 10 years.

5. Rapid drawdown in the filter (i.e., greater than 12 inches per hour) indicates short-circuiting of the filter media. Inspect the cleanouts on the underdrain pipes and along the base of the embankment for leakage.

6. Formation of rills and gullies on the surface of the filter indicates improper function of the inlet flow spreader or poor sand compaction. Check for accumulation of debris on or in the flow spreader, and refill rills and gullies with sand.

Other maintenance practices that should be employed to ensure proper operation of the sand filter are summarized below:

1. Avoid use of excess fertilizers along the bottom or sides of a landscape sand filter.

2. Avoid driving heavy machinery or equipment on the sand filter to minimize compaction of the filter media and prevent the formation of ruts in the surface of the filter that could concentrate or channelize flow.

3. Mow grass as needed, and remove the cut grass from the sand filter.

4. Water the vegetation periodically when needed, especially during the summer dry season.

5. Discourage use of the sand bed by pets by installing signs reminding residents of scoop laws, planting barriers such as barberry, or providing other measures as appropriate.

❑ MODIFICATIONS FOR COMBINING WITH AN INFILTRATION POND

Where an infiltration pond is proposed for flow control, a sand filter (basic or large) may be combined with the infiltration pond by making the following modifications in design criteria:

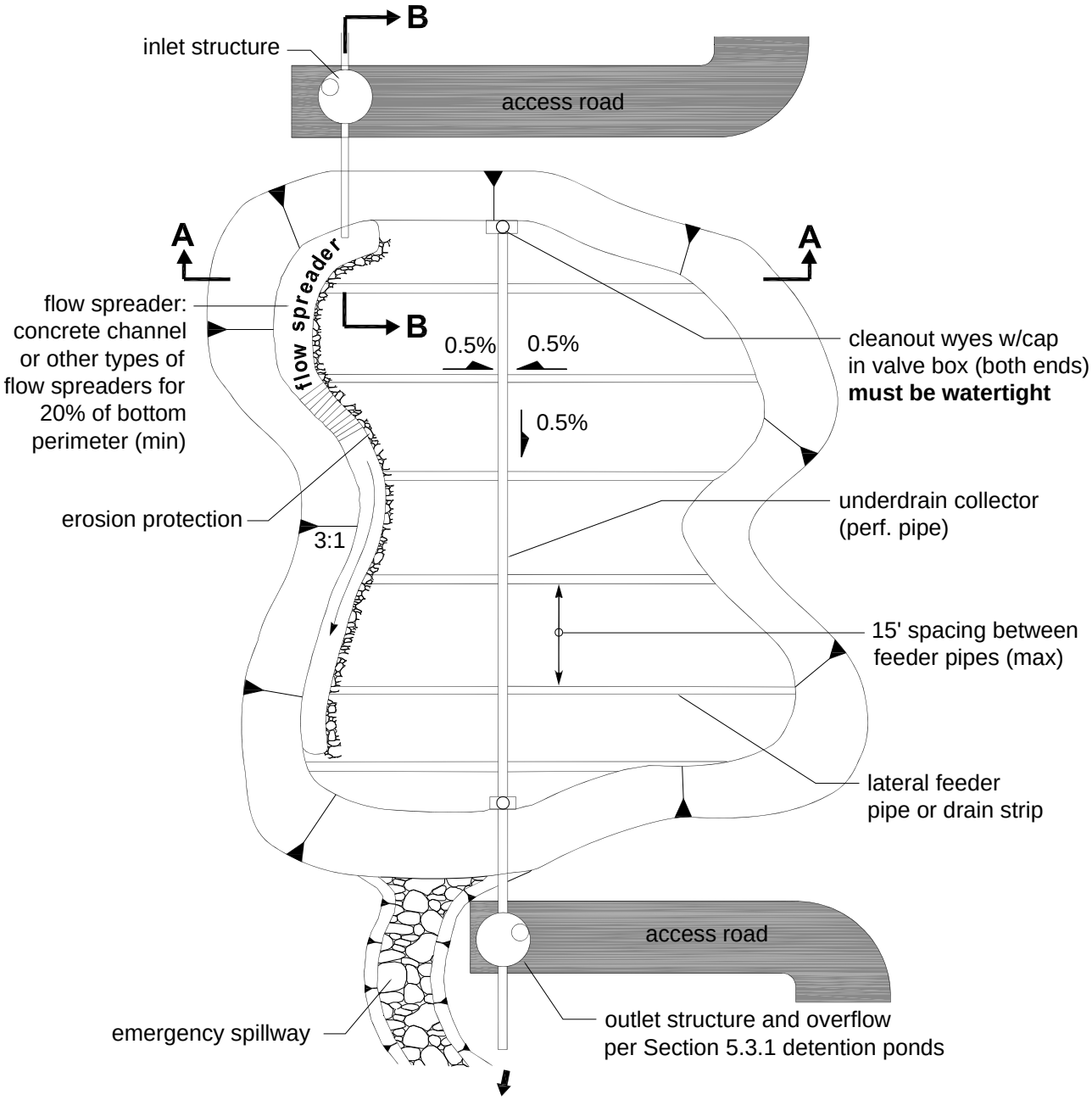
1. The **"100-year Overflow Conveyance"** requirements for infiltration ponds (see Section 5.4.1) shall apply in place of the **"Overflow and Bypass"** requirements for sand filters.

2. The **"Filter Composition"** criteria are changed to eliminate the requirement for an underdrain system. The fourth layer of the filter becomes the native infiltrative soils.

3. The **"Underdrain System"** and **"Underdrain Materials"** criteria for sand filters are not applied. Water infiltrating through the sand layer need not be collected but may simply continue infiltrating downward into native soils.

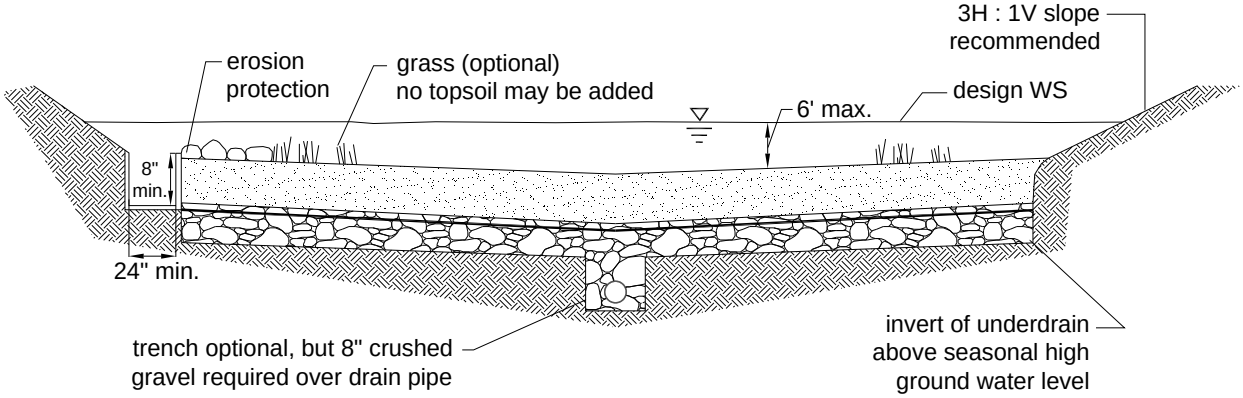
4. The sides of the infiltration pond must be provided with a **treatment liner** up to the WQ design water surface elevation, at a minimum. See Section 6.2.4.2 (p. 6-27) for information on liners.

FIGURE 6.5.2.A SAND FILTER WITH LEVEL SPREADER

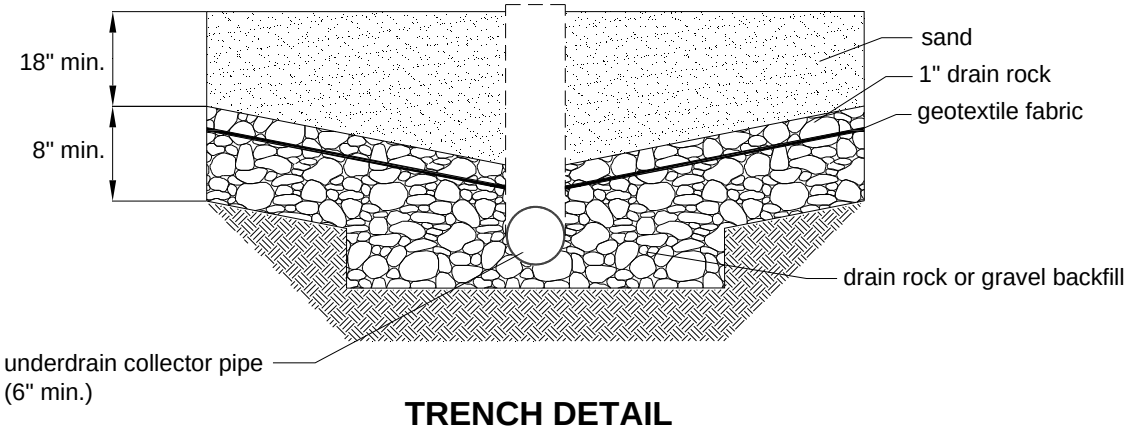


PLAN VIEW
NTS

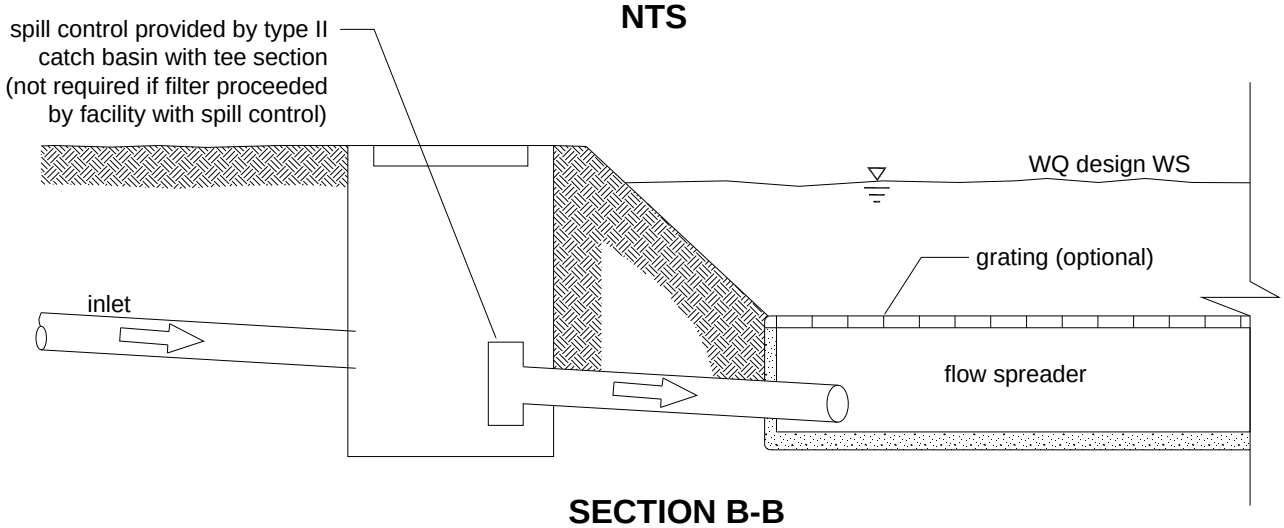
FIGURE 6.5.2.A SAND FILTER WITH LEVEL SPREADER (*CONTINUED*)



SECTION A-A
NTS

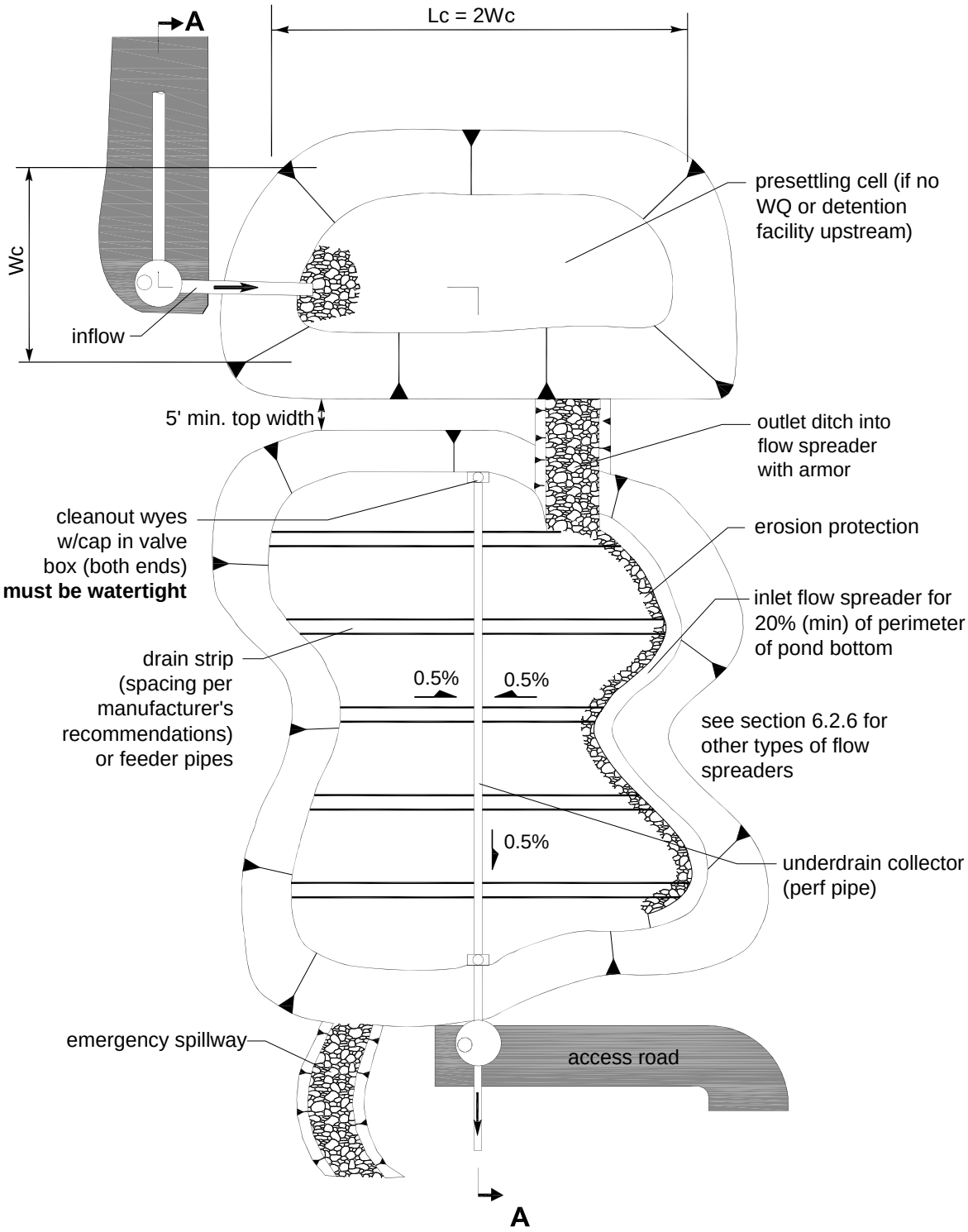


TRENCH DETAIL
NTS



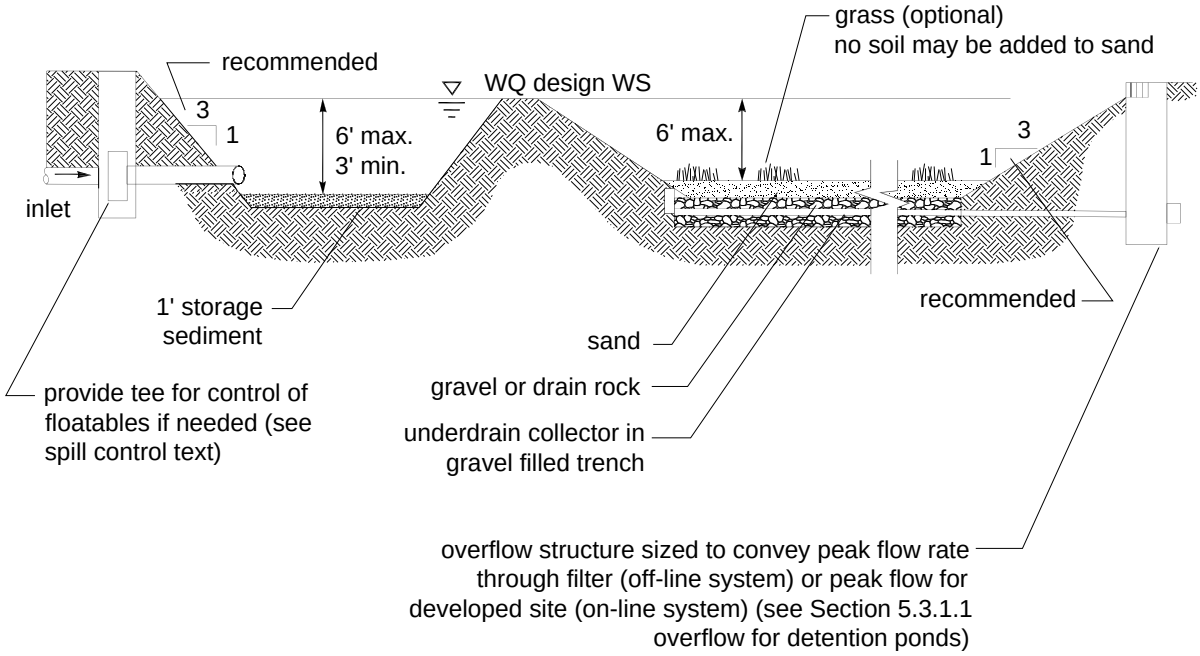
SECTION B-B
NTS

FIGURE 6.5.2.B SAND FILTER WITH PRETREATMENT CELL



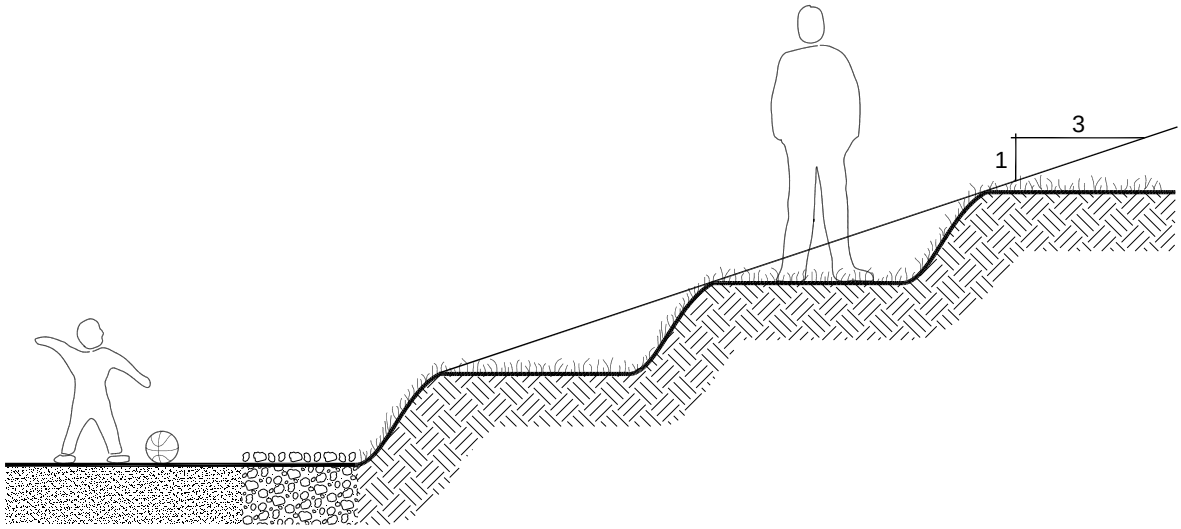
PLAN VIEW
NTS

FIGURE 6.5.2.B SAND FILTER WITH PRETREATMENT CELL (*CONTINUED*)



SECTION A-A
NTS

FIGURE 6.5.2.C SCHEMATIC OF STEPPED SIDE SLOPES



SECTION
NTS

6.5.3 SAND FILTER VAULTS

A *sand filter vault* is similar to an open sand filter except that the sand layer and underdrains are installed below grade in a vault. Like a sand filter, a sand filter vault may be sized as either a basic or a large facility to meet different water quality objectives. The **basic sand filter vault** is designed to meet the Basic WQ menu goal of 80% TSS removal for the water quality design flow. The **large sand filter vault** is expected to meet the Sensitive Lake Protection menu goal of 50% total phosphorus removal.

Applications and Limitations

A sand filter vault may be used on ***sites*** where **space limitations preclude the installation of above ground facilities**. In highly urbanized areas, particularly on redevelopment and infill projects, a vault is a viable alternative to other treatment technologies that require more area to construct.

Like sand filters, sand filter vaults are **not suitable for areas with high water tables** where infiltration of groundwater into the vault and underdrain system will interfere with the hydraulic operation of the filter. Soil conditions in the vicinity of the vault installation should also be evaluated to identify special design or construction requirements for the vault.

It is desirable to have an **elevation difference of 4 feet between the inlet and outlet** of the filter for efficient operation. Therefore, ***site*** topography and drainage system hydraulics must be evaluated to determine whether use of an underground filter is feasible.

Because the surface of a sand filter vault is prone to clogging from sediment and other debris, this facility **should not be used in areas where heavy sediment loads are expected**.

Refer to the WQ menus, Section 6.1 (p. 6-3), for information on how sand filter vaults may be used to meet Core Requirement #8.

6.5.3.1 METHODS OF ANALYSIS

The **methods of analysis** for basic and large sand filter vaults are identical to the methods described for basic and large sand filters. Follow the procedures described in Section 6.5.2.1 (p. 6-105).

6.5.3.2 DESIGN CRITERIA

General **design concepts** for sand filter vaults are shown in Figure 6.5.3.A (p. 6-127).

Sand Filter Geometry

Same as for sand filters (see page 6-111).

Pretreatment, Flow-Spreading, and Energy Dissipation

1. See general presettling and pretreatment requirements for filtration facilities, Section 6.5.1, p. 6-103.
2. A **flow spreader** shall be installed at the inlet to the filter bed to evenly distribute incoming runoff across the filter and prevent erosion of the filter surface.
3. For **vaults with presettling cells**, the presettling cells shall be constructed so that the **divider wall** extends from the floor of the vault to the WQ design water surface and is water tight
4. The flow spreader shall be positioned so that the **top of the spreader** is no more than 8 inches above the top of the sand bed (and at least 2 inches higher than the top of the inlet pipe if a pipe and manifold distribution system is used). See Section 6.2.6 (p. 6-33) for details on flow spreaders. For **vaults with presettling cells**, a **concrete sump-type flow spreader** (see Figure 6.2.6.B, p. 6-36) shall be built into or affixed to the divider wall. The sump shall be a minimum of 1 foot wide and extend

the width of the sand filter. The downstream lip of the sump shall be no more than 8 inches above the top of the sand bed.

5. Flows shall enter the sand bed by **spilling over the top of the wall into a flow spreader pad**, or alternatively a **pipe and manifold system** may be designed and approved at the discretion of DDES to deliver water through the wall to the flow spreader. *Note: Water in the first or presettling cell is dead storage. Any pipe and manifold system designed must retain the required dead storage volume in the first cell, minimize turbulence, and be readily maintainable.*
6. If a pipe and manifold system is used, the **minimum pipe size** shall be 8 inches. Multiple inlets are recommended to minimize turbulence and reduce local flow velocities.
7. **Erosion protection** shall be provided along the first foot of the sand bed adjacent to the spreader. Geotextile weighted at the corners with sand bags, quarry spalls, or other suitable erosion control may be used.

Overflow and Bypass Structures

Same as for sand filters (see page 6-112).

Filter Composition

The filter bed shall consist of three layers as follows:

- Top layer: sand
- Second layer: geotextile fabric
- Third layer: underdrain system.

Sand Specifications and Geotextile Materials

Same as for sand filters (see page 6-113).

Underdrain Systems and Underdrain Materials

Same as for sand filters (see page 6-114).

Vault Structure

1. Sand filter vaults are typically designed as on-line (flow-through) systems with a flat bottom under the filter bed.
2. If a presettling cell is provided, the **cell bottom** may be longitudinally level or inclined toward the inlet. To facilitate sediment removal, the bottom shall also slope from each side towards the center at a minimum of 5%, forming a broad "v." *Note: More than one "v" may be used to minimize cell depth.*

   Exception: The bottom of the presettling cell may be flat rather than v-shaped if **removable panels** are provided over the entire presettling cell. Removable panels shall be at grade, have stainless steel lifting eyes, and weigh no more than 5 tons per panel.
3. One foot (average) of **sediment storage** must be provided in the presettling cell.
4. Where pipes enter and leave the presettling cell below the WQ design water surface, they shall be **sealed** using a non-porous, non-shrinking grout.
5. If an **oil retaining baffle** is used for control of floatables in the presettling cell, it must conform to the following:

   a) The baffle shall extend from 1 foot above to 1 foot below the WQ design water surface (minimum requirements) and be spaced a minimum of 5 feet horizontally from the inlet and 4 feet horizontally from the outlet.

   b) Provision for passage of flows in the event of plugging shall be provided.

c) An access opening and ladder shall be provided on both sides of the baffle into the presettling cell.

6. Sand filter vaults shall conform to the **"Materials"** and **"Structural Stability"** criteria specified for **detention vaults** in Section 5.3.3.

7. The **arch culvert sections** allowed for wetvaults **shall not be used** for sand filter vaults. Free access to the entire sand bed is needed for maintenance.

Access Requirements

Same as for **detention vaults** (see Section 5.3.3) except for the following **modifications:**

1. For facilities maintained by King County, removable panels must be provided over the entire sand bed. Panels shall be at grade, have stainless steel lifting eyes, and weigh no more than 5 tons per panel. Concrete bridge decking or industrial decking are options. If within the roadway, the panels must meet the traffic loading requirements of the King County road standards.

2. A minimum of 24 square feet of ventilation grate must be provided for each 250 square feet of sandbed surface area. Grates may be located in one area if the sand filter is small, but placement at each end is preferred. Small grates may also be dispersed over the entire sand bed.

   Intent: Grates are important to allow air exchange above the sand. Poor air exchange will hasten anoxic conditions which may result in release of pollutants such as phosphorus and metals and cause objectionable odors.

Access Roads, Right of Way, and Setbacks

Same as for detention vaults (see Section 5.3.3).

Recommended Design Features

The following design features should be incorporated into sand filter vaults where feasible but are not specifically required:

1. The **floor of the presettling cell** should be **sloped toward the inlet** to allow for sediment accumulation and ease of cleaning.

2. A **geotextile fabric** is recommended over the sand bed to make sand bed maintenance easier. If used, the geotextile should be a flexible, high-permeability, three-dimensional matrix of the kind commonly used for erosion control. Sand bags should be used at 10 to 15 foot intervals to hold the geotextile in place.

3. **Additional grates** are recommended instead of solid panels to increase air contact with the sand bed.

Construction Considerations

Same as for sand filters (see page 6-117) plus, upon completion of installation, the vault shall be thoroughly cleaned and flushed prior to placement of sand and drain rock.

Maintenance Considerations

Maintenance considerations for sand filter vaults are similar to those described for sand filters (see p. 6-117). Maintenance practices need to be modified somewhat due to the sand filter being in a vault, including the use of safe confined space entry procedures.

❑ MODIFICATIONS FOR COMBINING WITH AN INFILTRATION VAULT

Where an infiltration vault is proposed for flow control, a sand filter vault (basic or large) may be combined with the infiltration facility by making the following modifications in design criteria:

1. The **"100-year Overflow Conveyance"** requirements for infiltration ponds (see Section 5.4.1) shall apply in place of the **"Overflow and Bypass"** requirements for sand filter vaults.
2. The **"Filter Composition"** criteria are changed to eliminate the requirement for an underdrain system. The third layer of the filter becomes the native infiltrative soils.
3. The **"Underdrain System"** and **"Underdrain Materials"** criteria for sand filter vaults are not applied. Water infiltrating through the sand layer need not be collected but may simply continue infiltrating downward into native soils.
4. **"Access requirements"** for grating may be reduced at the discretion of the design and review engineers.

   Intent: when water infiltrates into the soil directly without being collected by an underdrain system, the concern for pollutant release diminishes. Ventilation for odor control is, then, the only concern.

FIGURE 6.5.3.A SAND FILTER VAULT

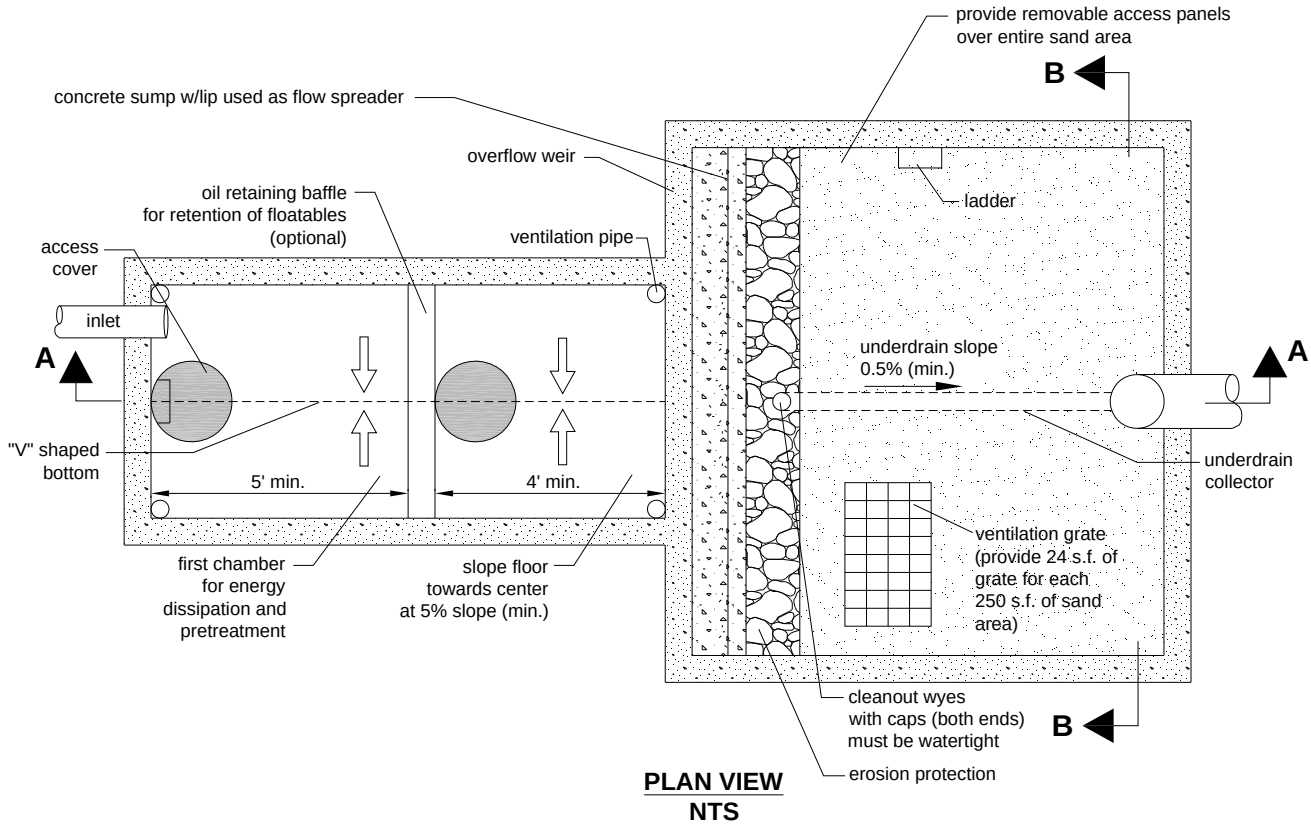
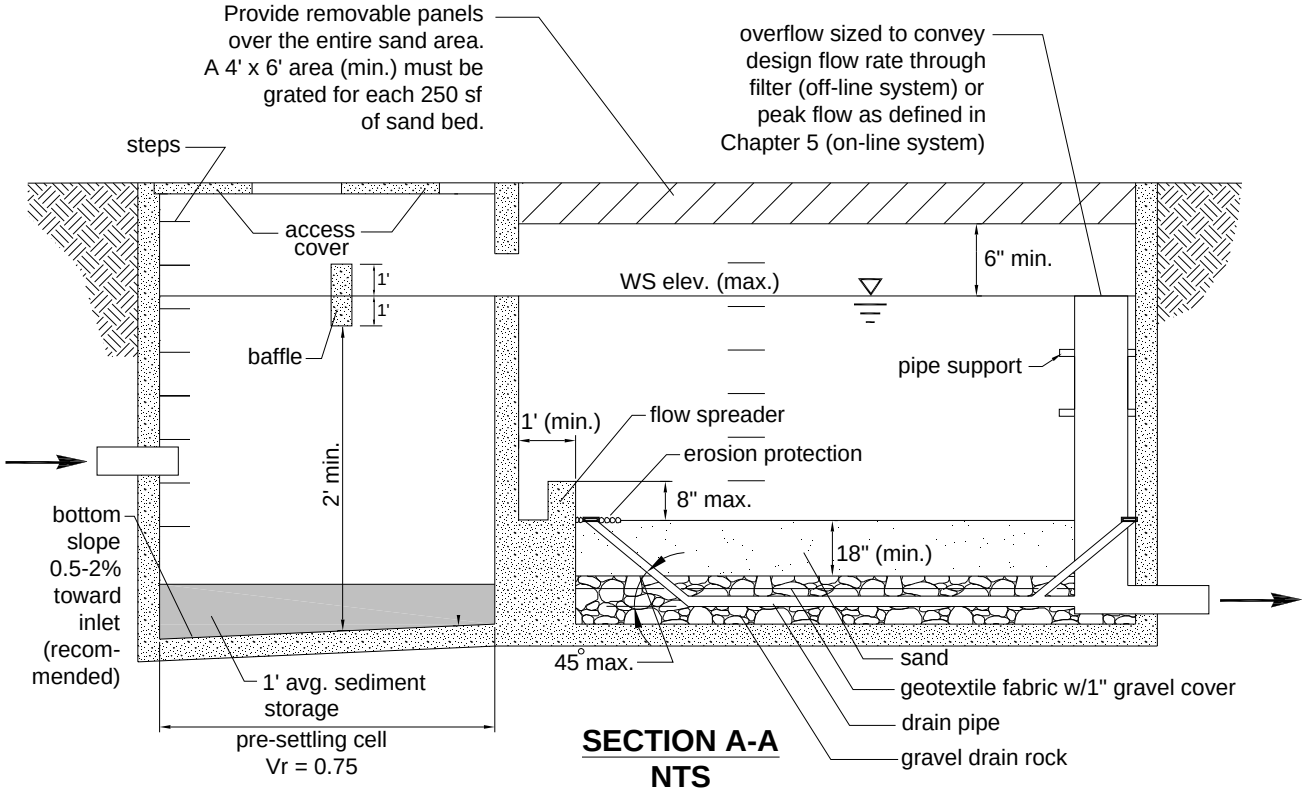
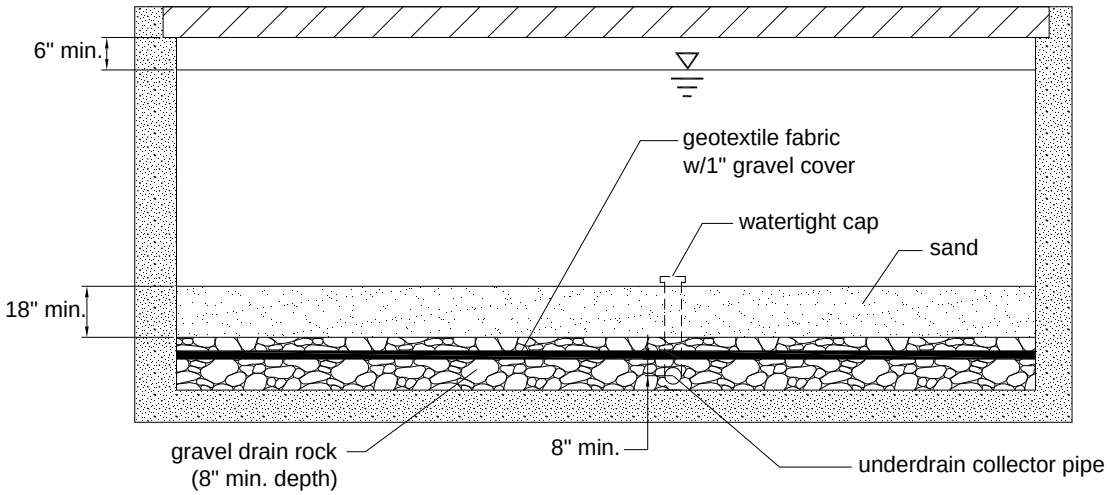


FIGURE 6.5.3.A SAND FILTER VAULT (*CONTINUED*)



SECTION A-A
NTS



SECTION B-B
NTS

6.5.4 LINEAR SAND FILTERS

Linear sand filters are typically long, shallow, rectangular vaults. The vaults consist of two cells or chambers, one for settling coarse sediment from the runoff and the other containing sand. Stormwater flows into the second cell via a weir section that also functions as a flow spreader to distribute the flow over the sand. The outlet consists of an underdrain pipe system that connects to the storm drain system. As with other sand filters, linear filters come in two sizes, basic and large. The **basic linear sand filter** is designed to meet the Basic WQ menu goal of 80% TSS removal for the water quality design flow. The **large linear sand filter** is expected to meet the Sensitive Lake Protection menu goal of 50% total phosphorus removal.

Applications and Limitations

The linear sand filter is used for stormwater flows for two different treatment purposes:

1. To provide basic or second-tier water quality treatment, and
2. To treat runoff from ***high-use sites*** (i.e., ***sites*** generating higher than typical concentrations of oil and grease).

Linear sand filters are **best suited for treating small drainages** (less than 5 acres), particularly long, narrow areas. The goal is to keep linear sand filters fairly shallow and narrow in width. A linear sand filter may be located along the perimeter of a paved impervious surface or may be installed downstream of a filter strip where additional treatment is needed. If used for oil control, the filter should be located upstream from the main water quality treatment facility (i.e., wetpond, biofiltration swale, or combined detention and wetpond).

Consult the water quality menus in Section 6.1 (p. 6-3) for information on how linear sand filters may be used to meet Core Requirement # 8 or Special Requirement #5.

6.5.4.1 METHODS OF ANALYSIS

A linear sand filter is sized based on the infiltration rate of the sand and the amount of runoff draining to the facility. The filter is sized to infiltrate the sand filter design flow without significant ponding above the sand. The sizing methods specified below are for both the basic and large linear sand filter.

Step 1: Identify the size of sand filter needed, either basic or large. Consult the water quality menus, Section 6.1 (p. 6-3) to determine which size is needed. A basic linear sand filter is sized to permit 90 percent of the runoff volume to pass through the filter. A large linear sand filter allows 95 percent of the volume to pass through the filter. For oil control purposes, use the basic sand filter size.

Step 2: Determine the rainfall region and regional scale factor. Regional scale factors are used to account for differences in rainfall at locations distant from the two gage locations in King County, Sea-Tac Airport and Landsburg. Refer to the precipitation scaling map in Chapter 3, Figure 3.2.2.A, to determine the scale factor for the project area.

Step 3: Determine *site* characteristics. Determine the total number of impervious acres and the total number of grass acres draining to the sand filter. Determine whether the ***project site*** is on till or outwash soils. Refer to Table 3.2.2.B in Chapter 3 to determine which soil types are considered till and which are considered outwash.

Step 4: Calculate the minimum required surface area for the linear sand filter. Determine the sand filter area by multiplying the values in Table 6.5.4.A (p.6-130) by the tributary acreages from Step 3 using the following equation:

$$A_{sf} = 0.7\, C_s\, (T_i A_i + T_{tg} A_{tg} + T_{og} A_{og}) \qquad (6\text{-}20)$$

where A_{sf} = sand filter area (sf)
0.7 = adjustment factor to account for routing effect on size
C_s = regional scale factor (unitless) from Step 2
$T_{i,tg,\,og}$ = tributary area per soil/cover type (acres)
$A_{i,tg,\,og}$ = filter area per soil/cover type (sf/acre) from Table 6.5.4.A.

The values in Table 6.5.4.A (below) are identical to those in Table 6.5.2.A for the simple sizing method but are repeated below for convenience. For depths less than 1 foot, the detailed routing method must be used.

Linear sand filters may also be sized using the detailed routing procedure of Section 6.5.2.1 (p. 6-105). It is expected that filters designed with the detailed routing method would be narrower than those sized using Table 6.5.4.A.

TABLE 6.5.4.A
LINEAR SAND FILTER AREA INCREMENTS FOR SEA-TAC AND LANDSBURG

		Soil/Cover Types [filter area (sf) / tributary area (acres)]		
Region and Treatment Goal	**Max. Water Depth (ft)**	A_i **Impervious**	A_{fg} **Till grass**	A_{og} **Outwash grass**
SeaTac Basic	1	1711	360	314
Landsburg Basic	1	1844	405	355
SeaTac Large	1	2654	629	550
Landsburg Large	1	2926	674	590

Step 5: Size the sediment cell. The sediment cell width should be set after the sand filter width is determined. Use Table 6.5.4.B below to set the width of the sediment cell. If another WQ facility precedes the sand filter, the sediment cell may be waived.

TABLE 6.5.4.B SEDIMENT CELL WIDTH, LINEAR SAND FILTER

If Sand filter width is:	Width of sediment cell shall be:
1 to 2 feet	12 inches
2 to 4 feet	18 inches
4 to 6 feet	24 inches
Over 6 feet	One-third of sand cell width

Example

A ***site*** in the White Center area has 1 acre of impervious area and 0.2 acres of till grass draining to the sand filter (1 foot of head above the filter). The designer wants to install a linear sand filter along a 200-foot parking area. The required sand area for a basic size linear sand filter would be found as follows:

Site Areas		Table 6.5.4.A values for SeaTac, basic size		
1 acres	x	1711 sf/acre	=	1711 sf
+ 0.2 acres	x	360 sf/acre	=	72 sf
			=	1783 sf

Multiply 1783 square feet by the C_s for the White Center area, which (from Figure 3.2.2.A) is 1.0 times the SeaTac area increments. Also multiple that result by the 0.7 adjustment factor.

1783 sf x 1.0 x 0.7 = 1248 sf

The required sand bed area is therefore **1248 square feet.** Divide 1248 square feet by 200 feet, the length of the filter for the project, to get a required sand bed width of 6.2 feet. The sediment cell would be one-third of 6.2 feet, or about 2 feet.

Note: To save space, the designer could cover the sand filter with grating that would bear traffic load and use the space for parking. The designer could also hire an engineer to perform the KCRTS detailed routing method. With this method, the sand bed width could be reduced to about 5 feet.

For background on the derivation of numbers in Table 6.5.4.A, refer to the "Background" discussion (p. 6-105) for the sand filter.

6.5.4.2 DESIGN CRITERIA

Linear sand filter details are shown in Figure 6.5.4.A (p. 6-133).

Geometry, Sizing, and Overflow

1. A linear sand filter shall consist of **two cells** or chambers, a sediment cell and a sand bed cell, divided by a low divider wall. If the sand filter is preceded by another WQ facility, and the flow enters the sand filter as sheet flow, the sediment cell may be waived.
2. Stormwater may enter the sediment cell by sheet flow or via a piped inlet.
3. **Minimum inside width** of the sand filter cell shall be 1 foot. **Maximum width** shall be 15 feet.
4. The **divider wall** must be level and extend 12 inches (max) above the sand bed.
5. The **sand filter bed** shall be 12 inches deep. An 8-inch layer of **drain rock with perforated drainpipe** shall be installed beneath the sand layer.
6. The **drainpipe** shall have a minimum diameter of 6 inches and be wrapped in **geotextile** and sloped 0.5 % (min) to drain.
7. For design, the **maximum depth of ponding** over the sand shall be 1 foot.
8. If separated from traffic areas, a linear sand filter may be **covered or open**, but if covered, the cover must be removable for the entire length of the filter. Covers must be grated if flow to the filter is from sheet flow.

9. A linear sand filter shall have an **emergency overflow route**, either surface overland, tightline, or other structure for safely controlling the overflow, and shall meet the conveyance requirements specified in Chapter 1.

Structure Specifications

1. A linear sand filter vault shall be concrete (precast/prefabricated or cast-in-place). The concrete must conform to the **"Material"** requirements for **detention vaults** in Section 5.3.3.
2. At the discretion of DDES, the sediment cell may be made of materials other than concrete, provided water can be evenly spread for uniform delivery into the sand filter cell.
3. Where linear sand filters are located in traffic areas, they must meet the **"Structural Stability"** requirements specified for **detention vaults** in Section 5.3.3. The sediment cell shall have a **removable grated cover** that meets HS-25 traffic loading requirements. The cover over the sand filter cell may be either solid or grated.
4. A minimum of 24 square feet of **ventilation grate** must be provided for each 250 square feet of sandbed surface area. Grates located over the sediment chamber are preferred. Grates may be in one central location or dispersed over the entire sand bed. Vertical grates may also be used such as at a curb inlet. If a sediment chamber is not required, ventilation shall be provided over the sandbed.

   Intent: Grates are important to allow air exchange above the sand. Poor air exchange will hasten anoxic conditions which may result in release of pollutants such as phosphorus and metals and cause objectionable odors.

Sand Specifications

Same as for sand filters (see Table 6.5.2.C, p. 6-113).

Geotextile Materials

Same as for sand filters (see Table 6.5.2.D, p. 6-113).

Underdrain Materials

Same as for sand filters (see page 6-115).

Access Roads, Right of Way, and Setbacks

Same as for detention vaults (see Section 5.3.3).

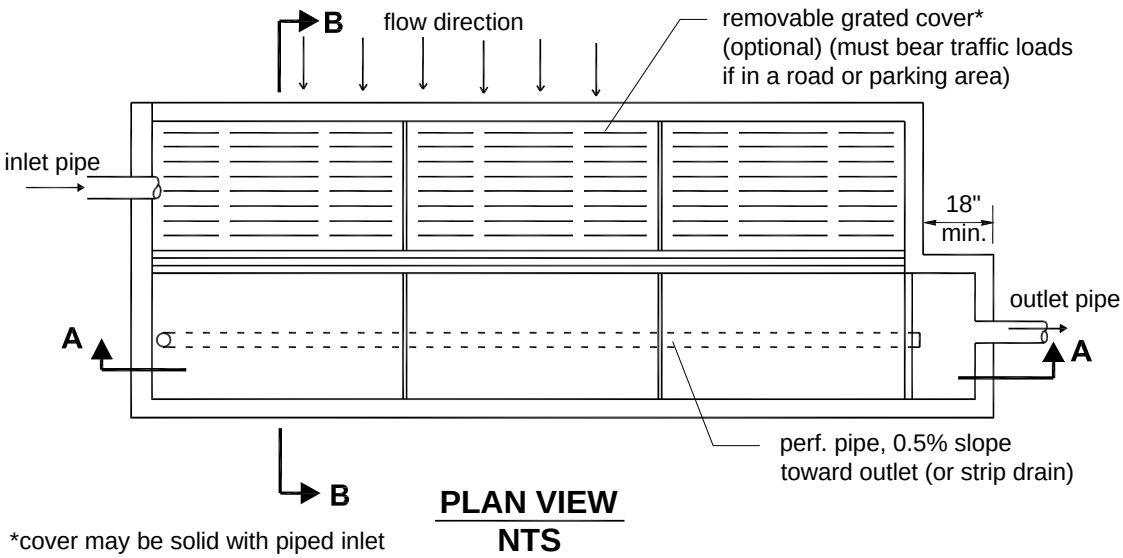
Construction Considerations

If put into service before the ***project site*** is stabilized, placement of the sand layer should be delayed, and the linear sand filter may be used with the gravel layer only. The gravel layer must be replaced and the vault cleaned when the ***project site*** is stabilized and the sand bed installed. King County will not assume maintenance responsibility or release financial guarantees until the final installation is complete.

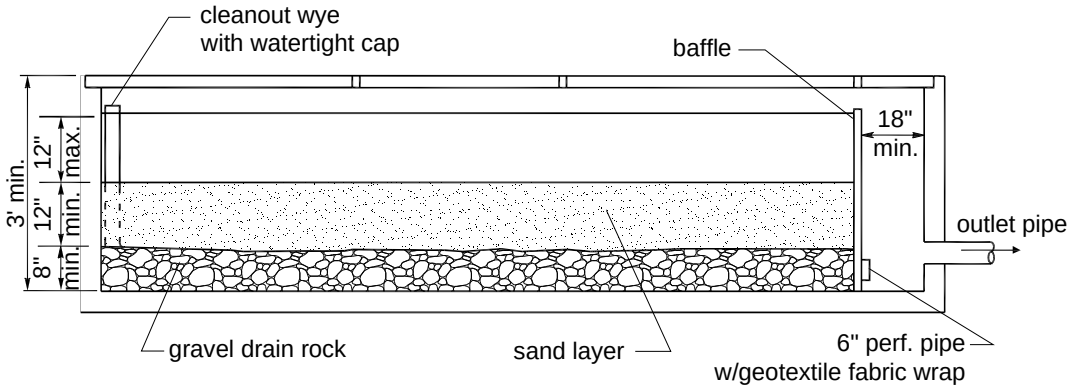
Maintenance Considerations

Maintenance considerations for linear sand filters are similar to those for basic sand filters (see Section 6.5.2.2) except sediment should be removed from the sediment cell when the depth exceeds 6 inches.

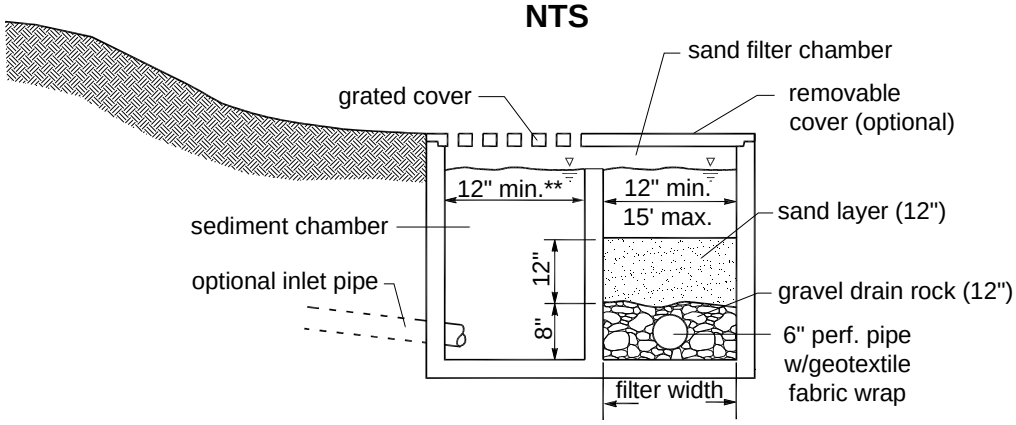
FIGURE 6.5.4.A LINEAR SAND FILTER



PLAN VIEW
NTS



SECTION A-A
NTS



** See text for sizing

SECTION B-B
NTS

6.5.5 STORMFILTER

The Stormwater Management StormFilter® (StormFilter) is a flow-through stormwater filtration system comprised of a vault that houses media-filled cartridges. As stormwater fills the treatment chamber, stormwater filters through the media to the center of the cartridge, and treated stormwater is collected and discharged through underdrain collection pipes. Figure 6.5.5.A (p. 6-137) shows a schematic representation of a StormFilter.

Applications and Limitations

A StormFilter with ZPG™ (zeolite/perlite/granulated activated carbon) media may be used as a single facility (with pretreatment) to meet the Basic treatment requirement. In addition, the StormFilter with ZPG may be used as the first (Basic) facility in a treatment train to meet Enhanced Basic, Sensitive Lake Protection, or Sphagnum Bog Protection. Use of the StormFilter with ZPG as the first facility in a treatment train will require pretreatment.

A StormFilter with CSF™ (leaf compost) media may be used as a second water quality facility in an Enhanced Basic treatment train (per Table 6.1.2.A, p. 6-8) or a Spagnum Bog Protection treatment train (per Table 6.1.4.A, p. 6-14). StormFilters are especially effective in situations where removal of metal contaminants is desired.

The StormFilter may be filled with several types of filter media. Until additional performance data is collected for additional types, **only the CSF leaf media is acceptable to meet Enhanced Basic and only the ZPG media is acceptable to meet Basic water quality requirements**. Other types of media may be allowed with an Experimental Design Adjustment after the media has been approved through the state Department of Ecology's TAPE program (see Section 1.4.2). An adjustment without presettling may be considered on an experimental basis for drainage basins less than ½ acre of impervious area. The StormFilter with ZPG media does not meet the Lake Protection Standard as a stand-alone facility.

Consult the water quality menus in Section 6.1 (p. 6-3) for specific information on how a StormFilter may be used to meet Core Requirement # 8.

6.5.5.1 METHODS OF ANALYSIS

StormFilter sizing is based on the water quality design flow and a mass loading method. Since the process and the compost are patented, CONTECH Stormwater Solutions (CSS) personnel will configure a StormFilter based on the design flow provided and specific ***site*** characteristics. The WQ design flow should be based on the KCRTS modeled flows, described in Chapter 3, rather than on other flow-estimation methods. An accurate description of land use and potential sediment and pollutant loading sources shall also be provided to CSS personnel, who will consider these factors in sizing. The specific sizing methodologies are described below.

StormFilter with ZPG Media for Basic Water Quality Treatment

1. The maximum flow rate (gpm/cartridge) is based on the effective cartridge height. The **maximum flow rate per cartridge** shall be per Table 6.5.5.A (below). The maximum specific flow rate is 1 gpm/ft^2.
2. The **water quality design flow** shall be as follows, whichever is applicable:
   - **Preceding detention (or no detention):** 35% of the developed two-year peak flow rate, as determined using the KCRTS model with 15-minute time steps calibrated to ***site*** conditions.[36]
   - **Downstream of flow control:** The full 2-year release rate from the detention facility.

[36] The StormFilter was approved by DOE for Basic treatment (80% TSS removal) based on DOE's water quality design flow. This is the KCRTS flow rate equivalent to that approved in the General Use Level Designation for Basic (TSS) Treatment: http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/newtech/use_designations/StormFilterGULD12307.pdf.

3. The StormFilter shall be **sized using both the flow-based and mass-based methods** as described in the *Product Design Manual Version 4.1 (April 2006)*, or the most current version, and the designer shall select the result yielding the larger number of cartridges.
4. **Presettling** shall be provided per Section 6.5.1, General Requirements for Media Filtration Facilities.
5. StormFilter systems shall be installed in such a manner that the **flows exceeding the design flow rates** (Table 6.5.5.A) are bypassed or will not suspend captured sediments.
6. **ZPG media shall conform to the following specifications**. Verification that these specifications are met shall be required.
   a) Each cartridge contains a total of approximately 2.6 cubic feet of media. The **ZPG cartridge** consists of an outer layer of perlite that is approximately 1.3 cubic feet in volume and an inner layer, consisting of a mixture of 90% zeolite and 10% granular activated carbon, which is approximately 1.3 cubic feet in volume.
   b) **Zeolite Media:** Zeolite media shall be made of naturally occurring clinoptilolite. The zeolite media shall have a bulk density ranging from 44 to 50 lbs per cubic foot and particle sizes ranging from 0.13" (#6 mesh) to 0.19" (#4 mesh). Additionally, the cation exchange capacity (CEC) of zeolite shall range from approximately 1.0 to 2.2 meq/g.
   c) **Perlite Media:** Perlite media shall be made of natural siliceous volcanic rock free of any debris or foreign matter, The expanded perlite shall have a bulk density ranging from 6.5 to 8.5 lbs per cubic foot and particle size ranging from 0.09" (#8 mesh) to 0.38" (3/8" mesh).
   d) **Granular Activated Carbon:** Granular activated carbon (GAC) shall be made of lignite coal that has been steam-activated. The GAC media shall have a bulk density ranging from 28 to 31 lbs per cubic foot and particle sizes ranging from a 0.09" (#8 mesh) to 0.19" (#4 mesh).

TABLE 6.5.5.A MAXIMUM STORMFILTER DESIGN FLOW RATES PER CARTRIDGE FOR BASIC TREATMENT WITH ZPG MEDIA

Effective Cartridge Height (inches)	12	18	27
Cartridge Flow Rate (gpm/cartridge)	5	7.5	11.3

StormFilter with CSF Leaf Media for Enhanced Basic and Spagnum Bog Protection Treatment.

1. The StormFilter with CSF leaf media shall be sized based on the **water quality design flow** specified in Section 6.2.1.

   ***Exception*:** If the StormFilter with CSF follows a StormFilter with ZPG in a treatment train, then the water quality design flow used for sizing the StormFilter with CSF may be as specified above for the StormFilter with ZPG.
2. The **maximum specific flow rate** shall be 2 gpm/ft^2 per cartridge.
3. The StormFilter shall be **sized using both the flow-based and mass-based methods** as described in the *Product Design Manual Version 4.1 (April 2006)*, or the most current version, and the designer shall select the result yielding the larger number of cartridges.

6.5.5.2 DESIGN CRITERIA

Figure 6.5.5.A (p. 6-137) illustrates the general configuration of a typical StormFilter unit using standard precast concrete vaults.

General

1. Vaults used for a StormFilter shall conform to the **"Materials"** and **"Structural Stability"** requirements specified for detention vaults (see Section 5.3.3).
2. Several vault sizes are available for the StormFilter. The details of cartridge configuration and maximum number of cartridges allowed in each size vault are available in Reference Section 7C, StormFilter Access and Cartridge Configuration.

Pretreatment

The StormFilter for Enhanced Basic treatment is the second or third facility in a treatment train, and pretreatment is provided by the first facility. Currently, the use of the StormFilter for Basic treatment or as the first facility (Basic) in a treatment train requires pretreatment. If used in another situation, an approved adjustment is required (see Section 1.4). See Section 6.5.1, p. 6-103 for general pretreatment requirements.

Access Requirements

1. **Access must be provided** by either removable panels or other King County approved accesses to allow for removal and replacement of the filter cartridges. Approved access details are available in Reference Section 7C, StormFilter Access and Cartridge Configuration. Removable panels, if used, shall be at grade, have stainless steel lifting eyes, and weight no more than 5 tons per panel.
2. Access to the **inflow and outlet cells** must also be provided.
3. **Ladder access** is required when vault height exceeds 4 feet.
4. **Locking lids** shall be provided as specified for detention (see Section 5.3.3).
5. If removable panels or the Reference Section 7C access configurations are not used, corner **ventilation pipes** shall be provided, and the **minimum internal height and width** and **maximum depth** shall be met (see Section 5.3.3).

Access Roads, Right of Way, and Setbacks

Same as for detention vaults (see Section 5.3.3).

Construction Considerations

Installation of a StormFilter shall follow the manufacturer's recommended procedures.

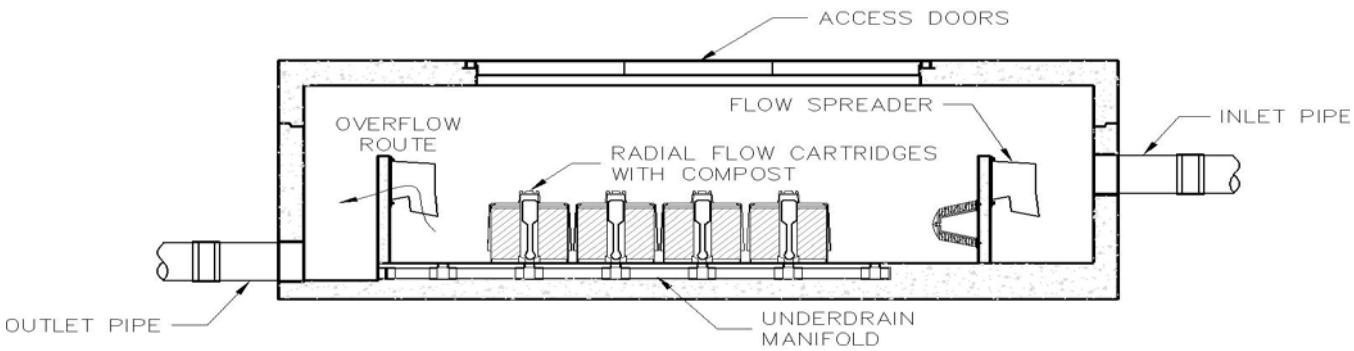
Maintenance Requirements

Maintenance needs vary from ***site*** to ***site*** based on the type of land use activity, implementation of source controls, and weather conditions. The StormFilter shall be inspected quarterly or at a frequency recommended by the supplier. Inspection and maintenance shall include the following:

1. The operation and maintenance instructions from the manufacturer shall be kept along with an inspection and maintenance log. The **maintenance log** shall be available for review by County inspectors.
2. **Routine maintenance** shall include inspecting for debris, vegetation, and sediment accumulation, flushing the underdrain, and removing or replacing media.

3. **Maintenance is required when** $^1/_4$ inch of sediment has accumulatedon top of the cartridge hood, or 2 inches of sediment have accumulated on the floor. If the cartridges are in standing water more than 12 hours after rainfall has occurred, maintenance is required. The inspector should make sure that the cartridges are not submerged due to backwater conditions caused by high groundwater, plugged pipes, or high hydraulic grade lines.
4. **CSF (leaf compost) media** used for Enhanced Basic or Spagnum Bog Protection treatment should be replaced according to the sediment recommendations above or at a minimumof every two years.
5. Media shall be disposed of in accordance with applicable regulations, including the Seattle-King County Department of Public Health solid waste regulations (Title 10) and state dangerous waste regulations (WAC 173-303). In most cases, the media may be disposed of as solid waste.

FIGURE 6.5.5.A STORMFILTER SCHEMATIC



6.6 OIL CONTROL FACILITY DESIGNS

This section presents the methods, criteria, and details for oil control facilities that are not discussed in other sections. Included are the following facility designs:

- "Catch Basin Inserts," Section 6.6.1
- "Oil/Water Separators," Section 6.6.2 (p. 6-145).

Other oil control facilities include wetvaults, with minor modifications (see Section 6.4.2, p. 6-83), and linear sand filters (see Section 6.5.4, p. 6-129). Non-facility options include parking lot washing with proper disposal of wash water and compliance with a NPDES permit that already addresses oil control. More information on non-structural options can be found in the High-Use menu, Section 6.1.5 (p. 6-15).

The information presented for each facility is organized into the following two categories:

1. **Methods of Analysis:** Contains a step-by-step procedure for designing and sizing each facility.
2. **Design Criteria:** Contains the details, specifications, and material requirements for each facility.

6.6.1 CATCH BASIN INSERTS

A *catch basin insert* is a device installed underneath a catch basin inlet that treats stormwater through filtration, settling, absorption, adsorption, or a combination of these mechanisms. Catch basin inserts vary greatly in form, some being rectangular, tray-like structures, some more like oil absorbent bags or pillows. Figure 6.6.1.A (p. 6-144) presents a schematic representation of a catch basin insert.

King County, in conjunction with other local agencies, has tested several catch basin inserts and found performance and removal rates to be highly variable, depending upon system configuration, pollutant particle size and concentration, and maintenance frequency. Because performance varies widely among the different devices, King County has developed a set of **performance criteria** that the devices must satisfy to be used for oil control pursuant to Special Requirement #5. Table 6.6.1.A (p. 6-140) lists the performance criteria and describes the tests to be used to evaluate whether a device meets the criteria.

Water Quality Treatment Objectives

The catch basin inserts manufactured to date typically have been configured to remove sediment, pollutants adsorbed to sediment, and oil and grease. The inserts described here **are intended to capture total petroleum hydrocarbons** (TPH) for use in new or redeveloped ***high-use sites*** (see Chapter 1 for information on ***high-use sites***). Devices meeting the design criteria outlined in Table 6.6.1.A (p. 6-140) should provide oil and grease removals comparable to those of other high-use treatment options. However, catch basin inserts provide little if any spill protection and do not meet spill-containment requirements unless the catch basin in which they are installed has a tee section.

While the inserts described here are focused on treating TPH, catch basin inserts may **also be configured with other sorbents to remove specific pollutants**. Owners proposing to use catch basin inserts to treat specific pollutants should obtain assistance from King County's water quality compliance program or from another pollution control agency such as the Department of Ecology.

Catch basin inserts also **may be used for sediment control during construction**, as described in Appendix D. In some instances, particularly for ***redevelopment projects*** at ***high-use sites***, existing catch basins may first be equipped with inserts for sediment control during construction and then be reconfigured (e.g., changing treatment media) to treat TPH following completion of construction activities.

TABLE 6.6.1.A
PERFORMANCE CRITERIA AND EVALUATION METHODS FOR CATCH BASIN INSERTS

	Criteria	Methods of Evaluation
1	Insert has ability to treat the water quality design flow for a minimum of 6 weeks under typical high-traffic conditions (in the Seattle area, this flow rate is approximately 0.042 cfs (19 gpm) for a drainage area of 5,000 square feet).	Subject the system to the maximum flow rate when new, and again after 4 and 6 weeks deployment. All flow must pass through the treatment area without short-circuiting or bypass.
2	Insert has ability to create a positive seal around grate to prevent low-flow bypass.	Install and observe unit under low-flow conditions. All flow must pass through the treatment area.
3	Media system functions so that its surface does not become plugged or blinded shortly after deployment and cause stormwater to bypass media before full use of media is realized.	Inspect media after 4 and 6 weeks deployment. If filtration rate as tested in Method #1 above has been compromised and media still can absorb oil, clogging is a problem.
4	Medium resists water saturation and maintains oil-absorbing properties for a minimum of 6 weeks under constantly wet conditions.	Examine media after 4 and 6 weeks deployment for signs of water saturation or degradation. Media in acceptable condition should still absorb oil and repel water.
5	Insert has means of preventing floating oil from escaping the unit. This requirement will be waived for inserts designed to be used with a tee section or down-turned elbow.	Inspect the insert for the presence of an under-over weir at the high-flow relief. If this or some comparable device exists, it is assumed that free oils will be retained.
6	Insert has means of preventing oil-soaked media from escaping the unit.	When the insert is new, and again after 4 to 6 weeks deployment, subject it to the peak flow rate (defined under Criterion #7) and observe whether media escapes.
7	Insert has ability to pass high flows without causing excessive ponding; no ponding to occur for the 25-year peak flow rate (in Seattle this rate is approximately 43 gpm for a drainage area of 5,000 square feet).	Close off all filtration surfaces with plastic sheeting and subject the insert to the required flow. No ponding around the drain inlet should occur for the 25-year peak rate.
8	Manufacturer provides complete installation and maintenance instructions.	Verify that instructions include information on the following: • Installation • Creating an adequate seal • Removal (including safety considerations) • Cleaning and replacement • Decant and disposal of liquid wastes • Media disposal guidance
	Desirable Features	**Methods of Evaluation**
1	Insert has high-flow bypass to prevent resuspension and washout.	Subject the insert to the flow rate calculated for Criterion #1, and then gradually increase the flow. Only the designed flow rate should pass through the treatment surfaces.
2	Service contract is provided.	There is no method for evaluating service contracts. Service contracts are listed as a desirable feature because they offer greater assurance of regular system maintenance and, consequently, treatment reliability.

Note: The evaluation tests assume the use of suitable oil-absorbing/adsorbing media (see "Material Requirements," p. 6-142).

Applications and Limitations

Consult the water quality menus in Section 6.1 (p. 6-3) for information on how catch basin inserts may be used to meet Special Requirement #5. Note that catch basin inserts **shall not be in a public road right-of-way maintained by King County**. This is because the County does not have the resources needed to maintain catch basin inserts as frequently as needed for effective operation.

Catch basin inserts may be used to meet the oil control requirements for new or redevelopment ***high-use sites***. The minimal space requirements, planning and engineering needs, and implementation time make catch basin inserts particularly attractive for ***redevelopment projects***. The initial cost investment may be much lower than that of comparable oil treatment options. However, long-term costs associated with the **more frequent maintenance required** for catch basin inserts may offset some of the initial cost savings. Applicants considering catch basin inserts are encouraged to investigate maintenance costs associated with a particular device. Costs for maintaining catch basin inserts are on the order of $10 to $100 per unit per month, assuming monthly media replacement. The use of a catch basin insert is limited by drainage area, available space inside the catch basin, availability of maintenance personnel or services, and access.

Catch Basin Interior Space

Pipe stub-outs, misaligned inlet frames, and shallow drainage systems limit the use of catch basin inserts for redevelopment. Therefore, an applicant considering catch basin inserts for a ***redevelopment project*** must ensure that the devices are physically compatible with existing catch basins and will achieve the desired performance.

Availability of Maintenance Staff or Services

To be effective, a catch basin insert must be maintained at a frequency recommended by the manufacturer, but at least monthly (the cycle may be extended up to six weeks depending upon local conditions; see "Maintenance Requirements" on p. 6-143). Because of the importance of regular maintenance, **owners using catch basin inserts will be required to keep a maintenance log** that specifies when the facilities were cleaned or replaced; the log must be available for review by County inspectors. Commercial maintenance services for facilities like catch basin inserts are increasingly available. Applicants intending to use catch basin inserts should include maintenance in a routine program such as grounds maintenance or contract with a commercial service.

Applicants planning to use a catch basin insert should also **consider the weight of candidate devices** and whether the insert must be completely lifted out of the catch basin to be maintained. Some of the inserts currently produced are heavy and may require two people or machinery, such as a forklift, to perform routine maintenance.

6.6.1.1 METHODS OF ANALYSIS

Catch basin inserts require little design or analysis but must meet the design criteria listed in the following section.

6.6.1.2 DESIGN CRITERIA

Figure 6.6.1.A (p. 6-144) illustrates the general configuration of a catch basin insert. Catch basin inserts must meet the criteria outlined below.

General

1. Catch basin inserts shall not be used to satisfy Special Requirement #5 if they will be installed in a **public road right-of-way** and maintained by King County; another option from the High-Use menu must be used instead.
2. The **total maximum tributary area** for catch basin inserts shall not exceed 5,000 square feet per unit for new development projects. This limit is based on a target of treating 90 percent of the runoff

volume. For a 5,000 square foot impervious area in the Seattle region, this flow is approximately 19 gallons per minute (gpm), or 0.04 cubic feet per second for the WQ design flow.[37] The total maximum tributary area shall not exceed 7,000 square feet per unit for ***redevelopment projects***.

3. If a manufacturer develops a catch basin insert that is proven to effectively treat flow rates higher than 20 gpm (0.045 cubic feet per second) without releasing previously trapped material (in accordance with Performance Criteria #1, #5, and #6 listed in Table 6.6.1.A, p. 6-140), King County may allow specific catch basin inserts to drain areas larger than 5,000 square feet.
4. A catch basin insert for a new development project shall be **designed to fit with a standard grate**, as specified in the *King County Road Standards* (see *KCRS* Drawing No. 7-013 and 7-014). If the insert is installed in an existing catch basin, **the insert shall be demonstrated to fit properly** so that there is a positive seal around the grate to prevent low-flow bypass. The maximum height of the grate above the top of the frame, with the insert installed, shall not exceed $^{3}/_{16}$ inch, and the grate should be non-rocking.
5. Catch basin inserts shall be accessible as needed for maintenance and should not be limited by continuous vehicle parking.

Pretreatment

While no pretreatment is required with a catch basin insert, the use of the source control BMPs described in the *King County Stormwater Pollution Prevention Manual* (available from DNRP) will decrease maintenance needs**.** *Catch basin inserts shall not be used in place of source control best management practices.*

Material Requirements

1. A catch basin insert must be fitted with **oil-absorbent/adsorbent filter media**, to be changed at least monthly (October to June) and whenever the filter media surface is covered with sediment. **Acceptable sorbent media** include wood fiber products such as A*bsorbent W* or S*uperSorb*, whole fibrous moss (need not be sphagnum), or *Petrolok*; these media have been investigated by the County and found to retain captured oil fairly effectively. *Streamguard*™ polymer (currently distributed by Foss Environmental) was also tested using the same method established by the County and found to achieve acceptable oil retention. Other products which absorb oil without significant release are also acceptable.[38] Other polypropylene-based products are expected to be acceptable, although none but the Streamguard™ polymer have been investigated to date.
2. **Unacceptable filter media**. Cedar Grove compost was tested and found unacceptable for oil retention. Compost from Stormwater Management, Inc., who produce a patented CFS®, was also tested. Although it performed fairly well, it did not retain oil as well as the other products tested. Therefore, CFS® leaf compost shall not be used in catch basin inserts for oil control. Other materials that are unsuitable for use in catch basin inserts include Fuller's or diatomaceous earth and kitty litter.
3. To minimize the generation of solid waste and the consumption of natural resources, systems constructed of or using **recycled products are preferred**. Reusable filter materials shall be refreshed according to the manufacturer's instructions.

Construction Requirements

1. Installation of a catch basin insert for a new development or ***redevelopment project*** shall follow the manufacturer's recommended procedures. The insert should be installed in the catch basin after the

[37] Testing by King County indicates that few of the devices tested could continue to meet treatment requirements at flow rates in excess of about 20 gpm. In addition, due to the very short contact time and potential for flushing previously trapped materials, treatment would be compromised at higher flow rates.

[38] Criteria used for acceptable absorbent materials are that a completely oil-saturated sample of the material does not release more than 10 mg/L of total petroleum hydrocarbon in any two minute period when flushed with tap water (running at a rate of 0.3 to 0.5 gpm) for 10 consecutive minutes.

site has been paved or stabilized (for new development) or after completion of construction (for a redevelopment site that is already paved).

2. If a catch basin insert is **used for sediment control during construction**, it shall be reconfigured in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. When used for sediment control, the insert should be inspected at least weekly and maintained if needed (see Appendix D for information on using the insert for sediment control).

Maintenance Requirements

Catch basin insert systems require more frequent maintenance than other oil treatment systems. While maintenance requirements of individual units may be relatively minor, the need for diligence and the potentially large number of units required in place of other more typical oil treatment systems make sound maintenance planning essential to the successful use of these devices. Therefore, the following provisions are necessary for proper maintenance:

1. A **drainage facility declaration of covenant and grant of easement** per Reference Section 8-J (or equivalent) must be recorded allowing King County to inspect facilities.

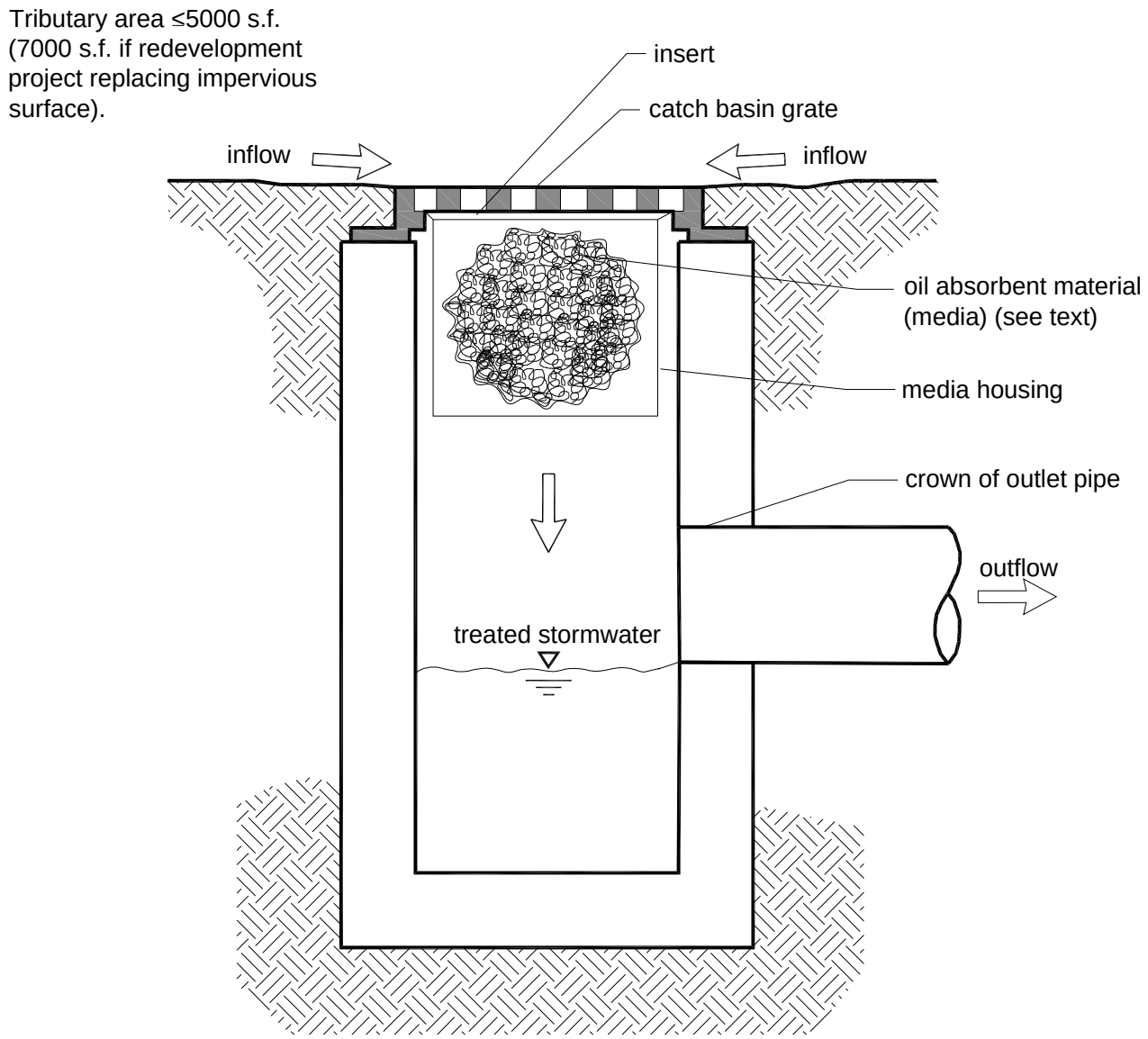
2. Maintenance needs vary from site to site based on the type of land use activity, implementation of source controls, and weather conditions. Catch basin inserts should be **maintained at a frequency recommended by the manufacturer**, but at least monthly during the wet season (October through April) and once every 2 months during the remainder of the year. *Note: During the first wet season, it is recommended that inspection be carried out every other week to determine whether a shorter maintenance cycle is needed for the particular site.*

3. Maintenance shall include full replacement or renewal of oil absorbent/adsorbent material. In addition, when maintaining the insert, the catch basin sump should be inspected for sediment accumulation. Sediment should be removed if the depth of sediment in the sump is greater than 0.5 feet. **An inspection and maintenance log shall be kept onsite** and made available to County inspectors on an as-needed basis. At a minimum, the maintenance log shall include the following information: date, type of maintenance performed, names of persons performing the work, and signature. Persons conducting maintenance activities should wear rubber gloves for health and safety protection while handling used filter media.

4. The **operation and maintenance instructions** from the catch basin insert manufacturer shall be kept with the maintenance log. Manufacturer's instructions should include installation, removal (including safety instructions), cleaning and replacement (including a practical means of determining when the unit is in need of service), and media disposal guidance (including decanting of liquid wastes).

5. Owners should follow the manufacturer's instructions for **dewatering filter media**, which vary depending on the type of unit. Generally, catch basin inserts that drain by gravity can be dewatered in place during dry weather. If an owner is unable to perform monthly maintenance because there has not been sufficient dry weather, the maintenance period may be extended up to an additional two weeks. If by the end of the additional two weeks there has been insufficient dry weather to allow dewatering, the owner shall make other arrangements for dewatering the filter media. Such arrangements could include use of a commercial service, dewatering the insert in a watertight container, or other methods meeting environmental regulations. Media shall be disposed of in accordance with applicable regulations, including the Seattle-King County Department of Public Health solid waste regulations (Title 10) and State dangerous waste regulations (WAC 173-303). In most cases, dewatered filter media may be disposed of as solid waste.

FIGURE 6.6.1.A SCHEMATIC OF CATCH BASIN INSERT



SECTION VIEW
NTS

6.6.2 OIL/WATER SEPARATORS

Oil/water separators rely on passive mechanisms that take advantage of oil being lighter than water. Oil rises to the surface and can be periodically removed. The two types of oil/water separators typically used for stormwater treatment are the baffle type or API (American Petroleum Institute) oil/water separator and the coalescing plate oil/water separator.

Baffle oil/water separators use vaults that have multiple cells separated by baffles extending down from the top of the vault (see Figure 6.6.2.D on page 6-155 for schematic details). The baffles block oil flow out of the vault. Baffles are also commonly installed at the bottom of the vault to trap solids and sludge that accumulate over time. In many situations, simple floating or more sophisticated mechanical oil skimmers are installed to remove the oil once it has separated from the water.

Coalescing plate separators are typically manufactured units consisting of a baffled vault containing several inclined corrugated plates stacked and bundled together (see Figure 6.6.2.E on page 6-156 for schematic details). The plates are equally spaced (typical plate spacing ranges from $^1/_4$-inch to 1 inch) and are made of a variety of materials, the most common being fiberglass and polypropylene. Efficient separation results because the plates reduce the vertical distance oil droplets must rise in order to separate from the stormwater. Once they reach the plate, oil droplets form a film on the plate surface. The film builds up over time until it becomes thick enough to migrate upward because of oil's lower density relative to water. When the film reaches the edge of the plate, oil is released as large droplets which rise rapidly to the surface, where the oil accumulates until the unit is maintained. Because the plate pack increases treatment effectiveness significantly, coalescing plate separators can achieve a specified treatment level with a smaller vault size than a simple baffle separator.

Oil/water separators are meant to treat stormwater runoff from more intensive land uses, such as high-use sites, and facilities that produce relatively high concentrations of oil and grease. Although baffle separators historically have been used to remove larger oil droplets (150 microns or larger), they may also be sized to remove smaller oil droplets. Both separators may be used to meet a **performance goal of 10 to 15 mg/L** by designing the unit to removal oil particles 60 microns and larger.

Applications and Limitations

Oil/water separators are designed to remove free oil and are not generally effective in separating oil that has become either chemically or mechanically emulsified and dissolved in water. Therefore, it **is desirable for separators be installed upstream of facilities and conveyance structures that introduce turbulence and consequently promote emulsification**. Emulsification of oil can also result if surfactants or detergents are used to wash parking areas that drain to the separator. Detergents shall not be used to clean parking areas unless the wash water is collected and disposed of properly (usually to the sanitary sewer).

Oil/water separators are **best located in areas where the tributary drainage area is nearly all impervious, and a fairly high load of petroleum hydrocarbons is likely to be generated**. Oil/water separators are not recommended for areas with very dilute concentrations of petroleum hydrocarbons since their performance is not effective at low concentrations. Excluding unpaved areas helps to minimize the amount of sediment entering the vault, reducing the need for maintenance. A unit that fails and ceases to function can release previously trapped oil to the downstream receiving water, both in release from the oily sediments and from entrainment of surface oils.

Wetvaults may also be modified to function as baffle oil/water separators (see design criteria for wetvaults, Section 6.4.2.2, p. 6-83).

Consult the water quality menus in Section 6.1 (p. 6-3) for information on how baffle and coalescing plate oil/water separators may be used to meet Special Requirement # 5.

6.6.2.1 METHODS OF ANALYSIS

Background

Generally speaking, in most oil and water mixtures the degree of oil/water separation that occurs is dependent on both the time the water is detained in the separator and the oil droplet size. The sizing methods in this section are based on Stokes' law:

$$V_T = \frac{g\left(d_p - d_c\right)D_o^2}{18\mu} \tag{6-21}$$

where V_T = rise velocity of oil droplet
g = gravitational constant
d_p = density of droplet to be removed
d_c = density of carrier fluid
D_o = diameter of oil droplet
μ = absolute viscosity of carrier fluid

1. The basic assumptions inherent in Stokes' law are: (1) flow is laminar, and (2) the oil droplets are spherical.

Traditional baffle separators are designed to provide sufficient hydraulic residence time to permit oil droplets to rise to the surface. The residence time T_r is mathematically expressed as follows:

$$T_r = \frac{V}{Q} \tag{6-22}$$

where V = effective volume of the unit or container, or A_s x H, where
A_s = surface area of the separator unit, and
H = height of water column in the unit

Q = hydraulic capacity or flow through the separator

The time required for the oil droplet to rise to the surface within the unit is found by the relation:

$$T_T = \frac{H}{V_T} \tag{6-23}$$

where V_T = rise velocity of the oil droplet

The oil droplet rises to the water surface if the residence time in the separator is at least equal to the oil droplet rise time. This can be expressed as follows:

$$T_r = T_T$$

By substituting terms and simplifying:

$$V_T = \frac{Q}{A_s} \tag{6-24}$$

where A_s = surface area of the separator unit

The ratio in Equation (6-24) is designated as the surface overflow rate or loading rate. It is this rate that governs the removal efficiency of the process and predicts whether an oil droplet will be removed by the separator.

Method for Baffle Separators

Design steps for the baffle separator are summarized below:

Step 1: Determine the WQ design flow (*Q*). The facility is sized based on the WQ design flow (see Section 6.2.1, p. 6-17). The separator **must be designed as an off-line facility**. That is, flows higher than the WQ design flow must bypass the separator.

Step 2: Calculate the minimum vertical cross-sectional area. Use the following equation:

$$A_c = \frac{Q}{V_H} \tag{6-25}$$

where A_c = minimum cross-sectional area (sf)
Q = water quality design flow (cfs)
V_H = design horizontal velocity (fps)

Set the horizontal velocity V_H equal to 15 times the oil droplet's rise rate V_T. A **design rise rate of 0.033 feet per minute shall be used** unless it is demonstrated that conditions of the influent or performance function warrant the use of an alternative value. Using the 0.033 feet per minute rise rate results in V_H = 0.008 fps (= 0.495 fpm).

Step 3: Calculate the width and depth of the vault. Use the following equation:

$$D = \frac{A_c}{W} \tag{6-26}$$

where D = maximum depth (ft)
W = width of vault (ft)
and where A_c is from Step 2 above.

The computed depth D must meet a depth-to-width ratio r of between 0.3 and 0.5 (i.e., $0.3 \le D/W \le 0.5$).
Note: $D = (r\,A_c)^{0.5}$ and
$W = D/r$ and
r = the depth-to-width ratio

Step 4: Calculate the length of the vault. Use the following equation:

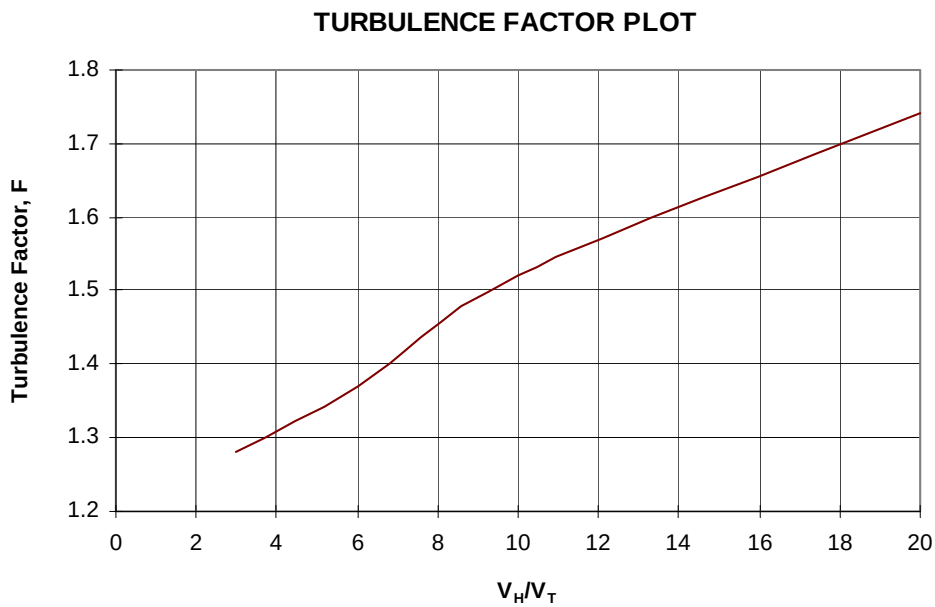
$$L = FD\left(\frac{V_H}{V_T}\right) \tag{6-27}$$

where L = length of vault (ft)
F = turbulence and short-circuiting factor (unitless, see Figure 6.6.2.A)
V_H = horizontal velocity (ft/min)
V_T = oil droplet rise rate (ft/min)
D = depth (ft)

The turbulence factor F shall be selected using a V_H/V_T ratio of 15, so $F = 1.64$.

Therefore Equation (6-27) becomes: $L = 1.65 \times 15 \times D$

FIGURE 6.6.2.A TURBULENCE FACTOR PLOT



Step 5: Check the separator's length-to-width ratio. The length L of the vault must be at least 5 times its width in order to minimize effects from inlet and outlet disturbances. The length of the forebay shall be approximately $L/3$.

Step 6: Compute and check that the minimum horizontal surface area (A_H) criterion is satisfied. This criterion is expressed by the following equation:

$$A_H = \left(\frac{1.65Q}{0.00055}\right) \leq LW \qquad (6\text{-}28)$$

Step 7: Compute and check that the horizontal surface area of the vault forebay. This area must be greater than 20 square feet per 10,000 square feet of tributary impervious area. The length of the forebay ($L/3$) may be increased to meet this criterion without having to increase the overall length of the vault.

Step 8: Design the flow splitter and high-flow bypass. See Section 6.2.5 (p. 6-29) for information on flow splitter design.

Method for Coalescing Plate Separators

Coalescing plate separators are designed using the same basic principles as baffle separators. The major difference is that in the baffle separator, horizontal separation is related only to water surface area, while in the coalescing plate separator, horizontal separation is related to the sum of the plan-areas of the plates. The treatment area is increased by the sum of the horizontal projections of the plates being added, and is referred to as the plate *effective separation area*.

The basic procedure for designing a coalescing plate separator is to determine the effective separation area required for a given design flow. The specific vault sizing then depends on the manufacturer's plate design. The specific design, analysis, configuration, and specifications for coalescing plates are empirically based and variable. Manufacturers' recommendations may be used to vary the recommendations given below.

Step 1: Determine the WQ design flow. The coalescing plate oil/water separator must be sized based on the WQ design flow (see Section 6.2.1, p. 6-17). The separator **must be designed as an off-line facility**; flows higher than the WQ design flow must bypass the separator.

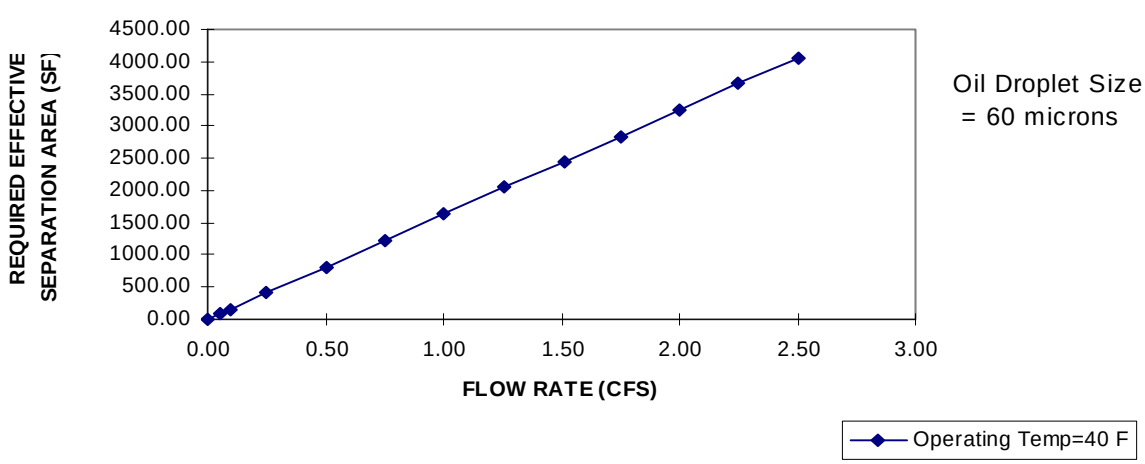
Step 2: Calculate the plate minimum effective separation area (A_h). A_h is found using the following equation:

$$A_h = \frac{60Q}{0.00386\left(\dfrac{S_w - S_o}{\mu}\right)} \qquad (6\text{-}29)$$

where S_w = specific gravity of water = 1.0
S_o = specific gravity of oil = 0.85
μ = absolute viscosity of water (poises); use 0.015674 for temp = 39° F
Q = water quality design flow rate (cfs)
A_h = required effective (horizontal) surface area of plate media (sf).

Equation (6-29) is based on an oil droplet diameter of 60 microns. A graphical relation of Equation (6-29) is shown in Figure 6.6.2.B below. This graph may be used to determine the required effective separation surface area of the plate media.

FIGURE 6.6.2.B EFFECTIVE SEPARATION SURFACE VS FLOW RATE



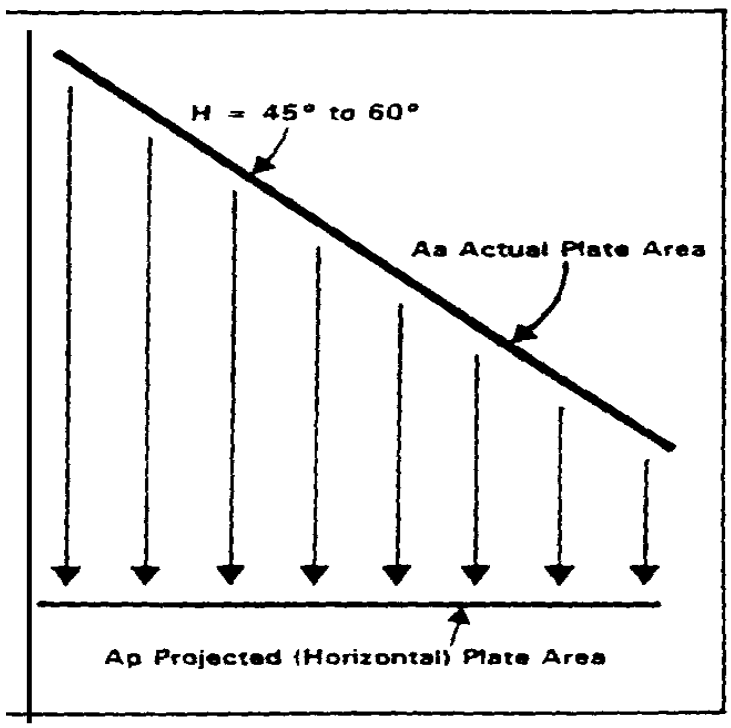
Step 3: Calculate the collective projected surface area (A_p). A key design step needed to assure adequate performance of the separator unit is to convert the physical plate area (the surface area of the plates if laid flat) into the effective (horizontal) separation surface area A_h (calculated in step 2). The effective separation surface area A_h is based on the collective projected horizontal surface area A_p of the plates where the plates are inclined, rather than their laid flat.

$$A_h = A_p = A_a (\cos H) \qquad (6\text{-}30)$$

where A_a = actual collective plate area of the plate configuration (sf)
H = angle of the plates to the horizontal (degree)

This equation is represented graphically in Figure 6.6.2.C below. The designer shall make sure that the manufacturer sizes the oil/water separator using the projected surface area rather than the actual plate area. *Note: For this method, only the* ***lower plate surface*** *may be counted as effective separation surface, regardless of manufacturer's claims.*

FIGURE 6.6.2.C PROJECTED HORIZONTAL PLATE AREA FOR COALESCING PLATE OIL/WATER SEPARATOR



Step 4: Check with specific separator manufacturers. Check with specific manufacturers to choose a separator that provides the required actual collective plate area calculated in Step 3, and meets the other design criteria given in the next section, p. 6-151. The specific vault design will depend upon each manufacturer's design. The geometric configuration and dimensions of the plate pack as well as the vault design are variable and flexible depending on each manufacturer's product.

Table 6.6.2.A (p. 6-151) provides approximate vault sizes for rough planning purposes. In reality, various manufacturers have quite different designs, both for the plate packs themselves as well as for forebay and afterbays. In addition, standard pre-cast vault dimensions vary with each manufacturer. These various factors can greatly affect the volume of vault needed to provide a given effective separation area. The numbers in Table 6.6.2.A should, then, be considered "order of magnitude" estimates only.

TABLE 6.6.2.A APPROXIMATE COALESCING PLATE OIL/WATER SEPARATOR VAULT DIMENSIONS*	
Area of Effective Separation (square feet)	**Approximate vault volume required (cubic feet) for plates with $^1/_2$ inch spacing and inclined 60 degrees from horizontal (cubic feet)**
100	150
200	240
300	330
600	530
1,200	890
2,400	1150
3,200	2090
4,800	2640
** Order of magnitude estimates for planning purposes only. Actual vault volumes vary considerably depending on separator design features and pre-cast vault dimensions.*	

6.6.2.2 DESIGN CRITERIA

Details for a typical baffle oil/water separator are shown in Figure 6.6.2.D (p. 6-155). **Other designs** and configurations of separator units and vaults are allowed, including above ground units. However, they must produce equivalent treatment results and treat equivalent flows as conventional units.

General Siting

1. Oil/water separators **must be installed off-line**, bypassing flows greater than the WQ design flow.
2. When a separator is required, it **shall precede other water quality treatment facilities** (except wetvaults). It may be positioned either upstream or downstream from flow control facilities, since there are both advantages and disadvantages with either placement.
3. In moderately pervious soils where **seasonal groundwater** may induce flotation, buoyancy tendencies shall be balanced by ballasting or other methods as appropriate.
4. Any **pumping devices** shall be installed downstream of the separator to prevent oil emulsification in stormwater.

Vault Structure — General

The following criteria apply to both baffle and coalescing plate separators:

1. Separator vaults shall be **watertight**. Where pipes enter and leave a vault below the WQ design water surface, they shall be sealed using a non-porous, non-shrinking grout.
2. Separator vaults shall have a **shutoff mechanism** on the outlet pipe to prevent oil discharges during maintenance and to provide emergency shut-off capability in case of a spill. A valve box and riser shall also be provided according to the design criteria for wetponds (see "Inlet and Outlet Criteria," Section 6.4.1.2, p. 6-73).

Vault Structure — Baffle Separators

In addition to the above general criteria, the following criteria apply specifically to baffle separators:

1. Baffle separators shall be divided into **three compartments**: a forebay, an oil separation cell, and an afterbay. The **forebay** is primarily to trap and collect sediments, encourage plug flow, and reduce turbulence. The **oil separation cell** traps and holds oil as it rises from the water column, and it serves as a secondary sediment collection area. The **afterbay** provides a relatively oil-free cell before the outlet, and it provides a secondary oil separation area and holds oil entrained by high flows.
2. The **length of the forebay** shall be approximately $^1/_3$ to $^1/_2$ of the length of the vault, *L*. In addition, the **surface area of the forebay** must be at least 20 square feet per 10,000 square feet of tributary impervious area draining to the separator.
3. A **removable flow-spreading baffle**, extending from the surface to a depth of up to $^1/_2$ the vault depth (*D*) is required to spread flows.
4. The **removable bottom baffle** (sediment-retaining baffle) shall be a minimum of 24 inches (see Figure 6.6.2.D, p. 6-155), and located at least 1 foot from the oil-retaining baffle. A "window wall" baffle may be used, but the area of the window opening must be at least three times greater than the area of the inflow pipe.
5. A **removable oil retaining baffle** shall be provided and located approximately $^1/_4$ *L* from the outlet wall or a minimum of 8 feet, whichever is greater (the 8-foot minimum is for maintenance purposes). The oil-retaining baffle shall extend from the elevation of the water surface to a depth of at least 50% of the design water depth. Various configurations are possible, but the baffle shall be designed to minimize turbulence and entrainment of sediment.
6. Baffles may be fixed rather than removable if additional entry ports and ladders are provided so that both sides of the baffle are accessible by maintenance crews.
7. Baffle separator vaults shall have a minimum **length-to-width ratio** of 5.
8. The **design water depth** (*D*) shall be no deeper than 8 feet unless approved by DDES.
9. Baffle separator vaults shall have a **design water depth-to-width** ratio of between 0.3 and 0.5.

Vault Structure — Coalescing Plate Separators

In addition to the above general criteria, the following criteria apply specifically to coalescing plate separators:

1. Coalescing plate separators shall be divided by baffles or berms into **three compartments**: a forebay, an oil separation cell which houses the plate pack, and an afterbay. The **forebay** controls turbulence and traps and collects debris. The **oil separation cell** captures and holds oil. The **afterbay** provides a relatively oil-free exit cell before the outlet.
2. The **length of the forebay** shall be a minimum of $^1/_3$ the length of the vault, *L* (but $^1/_2$ *L* is recommended). In addition, it is recommended that the **surface area of the forebay** be at least 20 square feet per 10,000 square feet of tributary impervious area draining to the separator. In lieu of an attached forebay, a separate grit chamber, sized to provide be at least 20 square feet per 10,000 square feet of tributary impervious area, may precede the oil/water separator.
3. An **oil-retaining baffle** shall be provided. If maintained by the County, the baffle must be a minimum of 8 feet from the outlet wall (for maintenance purposes). For large units, a baffle position of 0.25*L* from the outlet wall is recommended. The oil-retaining baffle shall extend from the water surface to a depth of at least 50% of the design water depth. Various configurations are possible, but the baffle shall be designed to minimize turbulence and entrainment of sediment.
4. A bottom **sediment-retaining baffle** shall be provided upstream of the plate pack. The minimum height of the sludge-retaining baffle shall be 18 inches. Window walls may be used, but the window opening must be a minimum of three times greater than the area of the inflow pipe.

5. It is recommended that entire space between the sides of the plate pack and the vault wall be filled with a solid but light-weight removable material such as a **plastic or polyethylene foam** to reduce short-circuiting around the plate pack. Rubber flaps are not effective for this purpose.
6. If a separator will be maintained by King County, the **separator plates** shall meet the following requirements:
   a) Plates shall be inclined at 45° to 60° from the horizontal. This range of angles exceeds the angle of repose of many solids and therefore provides more effective droplet separation while minimizing the accumulation of solids on the individual plates.
   b) Plates shall have a minimum plate spacing of $^1/_2$-inch and have corrugations.
   c) Plates shall be securely bundled in a plate pack so that they can be removed as a unit.
   d) The plate pack shall be a minimum of 6 inches from the vault bottom.
   e) There should be 1 foot of head space between the top of the plate pack and the bottom of the vault cover.

Inlet and Outlet

1. The **inlet shall be submerged**. A tee section may be used to submerge the incoming flow and must be at least 2 feet from the bottom of the tank and extend above the WQ design water surface.

   Intent: The submerged inlet is to dissipate energy of the incoming flow. The distance from the bottom is to minimize resuspension of settled sediments. Extending the tee to the surface allows air to escape the flow, thus reducing turbulence. Alternative inlet designs that accomplish these objectives are acceptable.
2. The **vault outlet pipe** shall be sized to pass the WQ design flow before overflow (using the pipe sizing methods in Chapter 4). The vault outlet pipe shall be back-sloped or have a tee extending 1 foot above and below the WQ design water surface to provide for secondary trapping of oils and floatables in the wetvault. *Note: The invert of the outlet pipe sets the **WQ design water surface** elevation.*

Material Requirements

1. All **metal parts shall be corrosion-resistant**. Zinc and galvanized materials are to be avoided when substitutes are available because of aquatic toxicity potential. Painting metal parts for corrosion resistance is not allowed due to lack of longevity.
2. **Vault baffles** shall be concrete, stainless steel, fiberglass reinforced plastic, or other acceptable material and shall be securely fastened to the vault.
3. **Gate valves**, if used, shall be designed for seating and unseating heads appropriate for the design conditions.
4. For coalescing plate separators, **plate packs** shall be made of fiberglass, stainless steel or polypropylene.

Access Requirements

Same as for **detention vaults** (see Section 5.3.3) except for the following **modifications:**

1. Access to **each compartment** is required. If the length or width of any compartment exceeds 50 feet, an additional access point for each 50 feet is required.
2. Access points for the **forebay and afterbay** shall be positioned partially over the inlet or outlet tee to allow visual inspection as well as physical access to the bottom of the vault.
3. For **coalescing plate separators**, the following also apply:

a) Access to the **compartment containing the plate pack** shall be a removable panel or other access able to be opened wide enough to remove the entire coalescing plate bundle from the cell for cleaning or replacement. Doors or panels shall have stainless steel lifting eyes, and panels shall weigh no more than 5 tons per panel.

b) A **parking area or access pad** (25-foot by 15-foot minimum) shall be provided near the coalescing plate bundles to allow for their removal from the vault by a truck-mounted crane or backhoe, and to allow for extracting accumulated solids and oils from the vault using a vactor truck.

Access Roads, Right of Way, and Setbacks

Same as for detention vaults (see Section 5.3.3).

Recommended Design Features

1. A **gravity drain** for maintenance is recommended if grade allows. The drain invert should be at a depth equal to the depth of the oil retaining baffle. Deeper drains are encouraged where feasible.
2. The recommended design features for wetvaults should be applied.
3. If large amounts of oil are likely to be captured, a bleed-off pipe and separate waste oil tank may be located adjacent to the vault to channel separated oils into the tank. This improves the overall effectiveness of the facility, especially if maintenance is only annually. It also improves the quality of the waste oil recovered from the facility.

Construction Considerations

1. Construction of oil/water separators shall follow and conform to the manufacturer's recommended construction procedures and installation instructions as well as Chapter 7 of the *King County Road Standards*. Where the possibility of vault flotation exists, the vault shall be properly anchored in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations or an engineer's design and recommendations.
2. Particular care must be taken when inserting coalescing plate packs in the vault so as not to damage or deform the plates.
3. Upon completion of installation, the oil/water separator shall be thoroughly cleaned and flushed prior to operating.

Maintenance Considerations

1. Oil/water separators must be cleaned regularly to ensure that accumulated oil does not escape from the separator. Separators should be cleaned by November 15 of each year to remove accumulation during the dry season. They must also be cleaned after spills of polluting substances such as oil, chemicals, or grease. Vaults must also be cleaned when inspection reveals any of the following conditions:

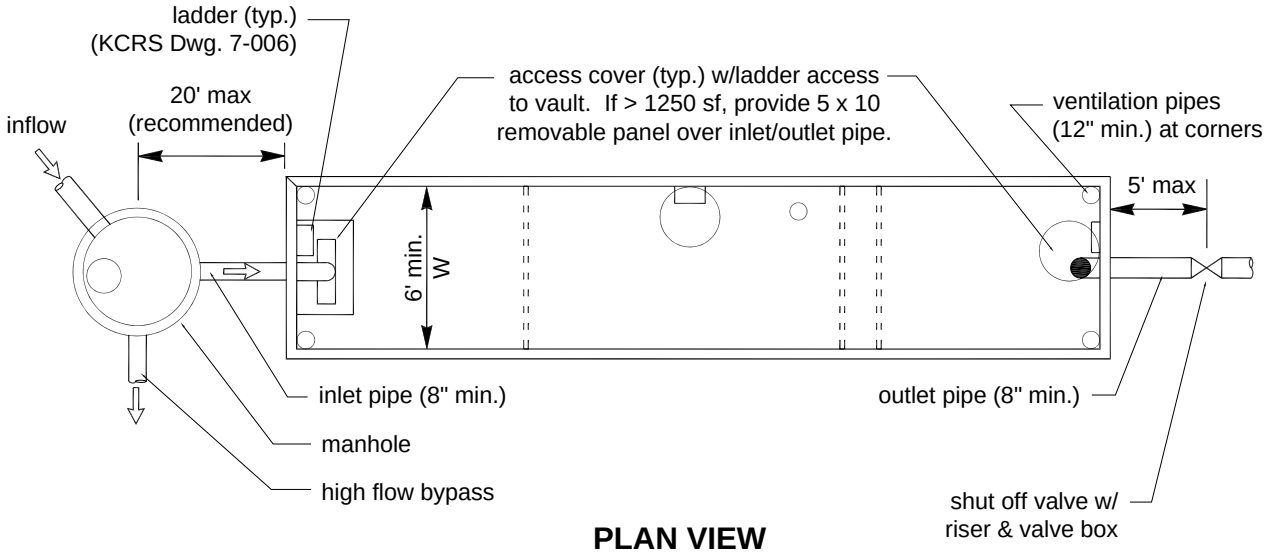
   a) Oil accumulation in the oil separation compartment equals or exceeds 1 inch, unless otherwise rated for greater oil accumulation depths recommended by the specific separator manufacturer.

   b) Sediment deposits in the bottom of the vaults equals or exceeds 6 inches in depth.

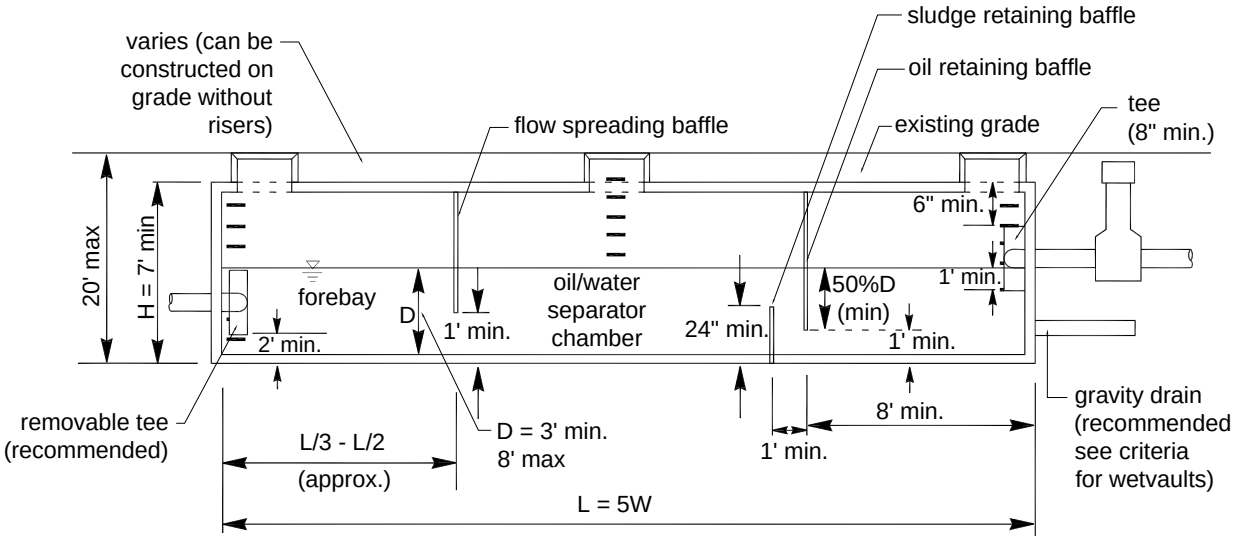
2. For the first several years, oil/water separators should be checked on a quarterly basis for proper functioning and to ensure that accumulations of oil, grease, and solids in the separator are at acceptable levels. Effluent from the vault shall also be observed for an oil sheen to ensure that oil concentrations are at acceptable levels and that expected treatment is occurring. Separators should also be inspected after large storm events (about 2 inches in 24 hours).
3. Access to separators shall be maintained free of all obstructions, and units shall be readily accessible at all times for inspection and maintenance.

4. Maintenance personnel entering oil/water separator vaults should follow the state regulations pertaining to confined space entry, if applicable.

FIGURE 6.6.2.D BAFFLE OIL/WATER SEPARATOR

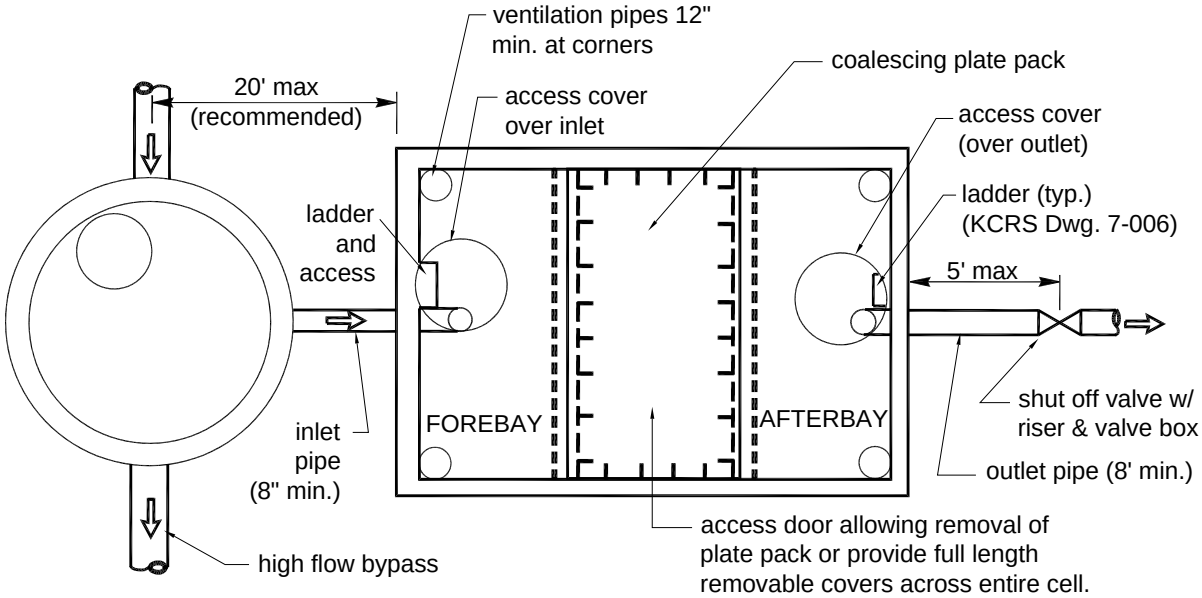


PLAN VIEW
NTS

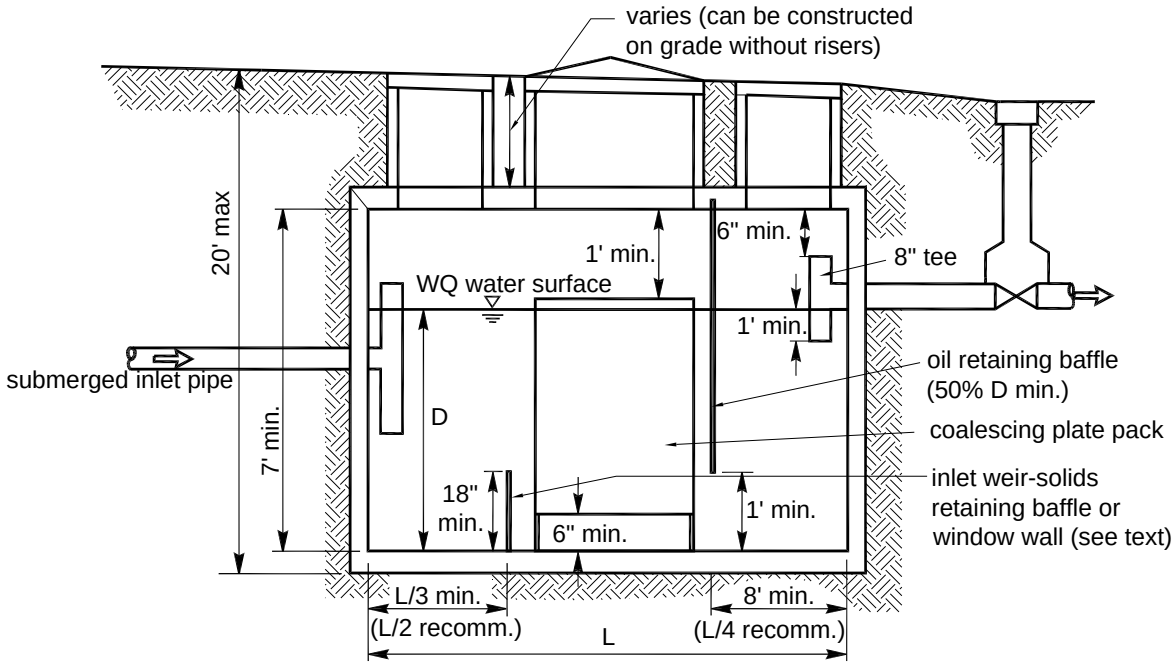


SECTION
NTS

FIGURE 6.6.2.E COALESCING PLATE OIL/WATER SEPARATOR



PLAN VIEW
NTS



SECTION
NTS

DEFINITIONS

KING COUNTY, WASHINGTON

SURFACE WATER DESIGN MANUAL

DEFINITIONS

Note: The following terms are provided for reference and use with this manual. They shall be superseded by any other definitions for these terms adopted by ordinance.

Acceptable discharge point means an enclosed drainage system (i.e., pipe system, culvert, or tightline) or open drainage feature (e.g., ditch, channel, swale, stream, river, pond, lake, or wetland) where concentrated runoff can be discharged without creating a significant adverse impact.

Adjustment means a department-approved variation in the application of the requirements of K.C.C. 9.04.050 and the *Surface Water Design Manual* to a particular project in accordance with K.C.C. 9.04.050C.

Agricultural project means any project located on, and proposing improvements consistent with, the permitted uses of land zoned for Agriculture (A zoned lands) as defined in KCC 21A.08.

Alkalinity means a measure of the acid neutralizing capacity of water; the ability of a solution to resist changes in pH by neutralizing acidic input.

Alluvial soil means a soil found in valley bottoms that is generally fine-grained and often has a high seasonal water table.

Anadromous fish means fish that ascend rivers from the sea for breeding.

Applicant means a property owner or a public agency or public or private utility that owns a right-of-way or other easement or has been adjudicated the right to such an easement under RCW 8.12.090, or any person or entity designated or named in writing by the property or easement owner to be the applicant, in an application for a development proposal, permit, or approval.

Appurtenances means machinery, appliances, or auxiliary structures attached to a main structure, but not considered an integral part thereof, for the purpose of enabling it to function.

Aquatic area means any non-wetland water feature including all shorelines of the state, rivers, streams, marine waters, inland bodies of open water including lakes and ponds, reservoirs and conveyance systems and impoundments of these features if any portion of the feature is formed from a stream or wetland and if any stream or wetland contributing flows is not created solely as a consequence of stormwater pond construction. Aquatic area does not include water features that are entirely artificially collected or conveyed storm or wastewater systems or entirely artificial channels, ponds, pools or other similar constructed water features.

Aquifer means a geologic stratum containing groundwater that can be withdrawn and used for human purposes.

Area-specific flow control facility requirement means the requirement of an onsite flow control facility or facilities designed in accordance with the performance criteria, target surfaces, and exceptions specified for the mapped flow control area in which a proposed project is located.

Area-specific water quality facility requirement means the requirement of an onsite water quality facility or facilities designed in accordance with the treatment menu, target surfaces, and exceptions specified for the mapped water quality treatment area in which a proposed project is located.

As-built drawings means engineering plans which have been revised to reflect all changes to the plans which occurred during construction.

Back-up system means a retention/detention facility where inflows are routed through the control structure before entering the facility; they are "backed up" into the facility by the flow restrictor.

Backwater means water upstream from an obstruction that is deeper than it would normally be without the obstruction.

Bacteria problem means a stream reach, lake, or other waterbody of the state that is either (1) currently designated by the state as a Category 5, 4, or 2 Water due to exceedance or concern for exceedance of the state's numeric water

quality standard for fecal coliform as documented in the state's latest published Clean Water Act Section 303d list (an electronic map of these waterbodies is posted at http://apps.ecy.wa.gov/wqawa/viewer.htm), or (2) is currently designated by the County as a bacteria problem based on credible data indicating exceedance or concern for exceedance of the state's numeric water quality standard for fecal coliform as documented in the latest published list of King County-Identified WQ Problems (Reference Section 10) posted at http://www.kingcounty.gov/environment/waterandland/stormwater/documents/surface-water-design-manual.aspx.

Baffle means a device to deflect, check or regulate flow.

Base flood means a flood having a one percent chance of being equaled or exceeded in any given year; also referred to as the 100-year flood. The base flood is determined for existing conditions, unless a basin plan including projected flows under future developed conditions has been completed and adopted by King County, in which case these future flow projections shall be used. In areas where the Flood Insurance Study includes detailed base flood calculations, those calculations may be used until projections of future flows are completed and approved by King County.

Base flood elevation means the water surface elevation of the base flood. It shall be referenced to the National Geodetic Vertical Datum of 1929 (NGVD).

Basin means a geographic area that contains and drains to a stream or river named and noted on common maps, such as the Cedar River, Sammamish River, Green River, Snoqualmie River, Skykomish River, or White River, or a geographic area that drains to a non-flowing water body named and noted on common maps, such as Lake Washington or Puget Sound.

Basin plan means a plan and all implementing regulations and procedures including, but not limited to, capital projects, public education activities, land use management adopted by ordinance for managing surface and storm water within the basin.

Berm means a constructed mound of earth or other material used to confine, control, spread, or filter water.

Best management practice (BMP) means a schedule of activities, prohibitions of practices, physical structures, maintenance procedures, and other management practices undertaken to reduce or prevent increases in runoff quantity and pollution.

Biofiltration swale means a long, gently sloped, vegetated ditch designed to filter pollutants from stormwater. Grass is the most common vegetation, but wetland vegetation can be used if the soil is saturated.

Blanket adjustment means an adjustment established by the County that can be applied routinely or globally to all projects where appropriate. Blanket adjustments are usually based on a previously approved adjustment and can be used to effect minor changes or corrections to the design requirements of this manual, or to add new designs and methodologies to this manual.

Blind, blinding means to severely reduce the ability of a normally infiltrative media to pass water, usually by plugging with sediment or debris.

BMP means best management practice.

Bollard means a post used to prevent vehicular access. A bollard may or may not be removable.

BSBL means building setback line.

Buffer means a designated area contiguous to a steep slope or landslide hazard area intended to protect slope stability, attenuation of surface water flows, and landslide hazards, or a designated area contiguous to and intended to protect and be an integral part of an aquatic area or wetland

Building setback line means a line measured parallel to a property, easement, drainage facility, or buffer boundary that delineates the area (defined by the distance of separation) where buildings or other obstructions are prohibited (including decks, patios, outbuildings, or overhangs beyond 18 inches). Wooden or chain link fences and landscaping are allowable within a building setback line. In this manual the minimum building setback line shall be 5 feet.

CAO means the Critical Areas Ordinance, which amends KCC 21A.24 to establish and regulate critical areas. Most types of critical areas were previously regulated as "sensitive areas" in KCC 21A.24 prior to adoption of the CAO (see "critical area").

Catch basin insert means a device installed underneath a catch basin inlet that uses gravity, filtration, or various sorbent materials to remove pollutants from stormwater. When used with sorbent material, catch basin inserts are primarily for oil removal.

Catch line means the point where a severe slope intercepts a different, gentler slope.

Cation exchange capacity means the quantity of ammonium cations in a dry mass saturated with ammonium acetate that can be displaced by a strong solution of NaCl, measured in milliequivalents per gram or 100 grams. The test is usually performed at neutral pH (Freeze & Cherry, *Groundwater*, 1979).

Channel means a long, narrow excavation or surface feature that conveys surface water and is open to the air.

Channel, constructed means a channel or ditch constructed to convey surface water; also includes reconstructed natural channels.

Channel, natural means a channel that has occurred naturally due to the flow of surface waters or a channel that, although originally constructed by human activity, has taken on the appearance of a natural channel including a stable route and biological community.

Civil engineer means a person licensed by the State of Washington as a professional engineer in civil engineering.

Clearing means the conversion of native vegetated surface to a non-native surface.

Closed depression means an area greater than 5,000 square feet at overflow elevation that is low-lying and that has no or such a limited surface water outlet that the area acts as a stormwater retention facility. The primary loss of water volume from a closed depression is through evapotranspiration and discharge into the ground rather than surface flow.

Commercial and industrial site, for the purposes of defining a high-use site, means that portion of a site's developed area associated with an individual commercial or industrial business (e.g., the area occupied by the business's buildings and required parking).

Commercial project (or land use) means any project or land use that requires or would require a commercial building permit or commercial site development permit, excluding *industrial projects/land uses* (see definition of industrial project/land use) and *multifamily projects/land uses* (see definition of multifamily project/land use). Agricultural projects are included if they require a commercial building permit while single family residential projects are not.

Common plan of development or sale means a site where multiple separate and distinct construction activities may take place at different times or on different schedules, but still under a single plan. Examples include: 1) phased projects and projects with multiple filings or lots, even if the separate phases or filings/lots will be constructed under separate contract or by separate owners (e.g. a development where lots are sold to separate builders); 2) a development plan that may be phased over multiple years, but is still under a consistent plan for long-term development; and 3) projects in a contiguous area that may be unrelated but still under the same contract, such as construction of a building extension and a new parking lot at the same facility.

Compensatory storage means new excavated storage volume equivalent to the flood storage capacity eliminated by filling or grading within the flood fringe. Equivalent shall mean that the storage removed shall be replaced by equal volume between corresponding one foot contour intervals that are hydraulically connected to the floodway through their entire depth.

Construct or modify means to install a new drainage pipe/ditch or make improvements to an existing drainage pipe or ditch, for purposes other than maintenance, that either serves to concentrate previously unconcentrated surface and storm water runoff or serves to increase, decrease, or redirect the conveyance of surface and storm water runoff. Construct or modify does not include installation or maintenance of a driveway culvert installed as part of a single family residential building permit.

Construction stormwater pollution prevention plan (CSWPPP) means the plan and supporting documentation for implementing construction site ESC measures, pollution prevention BMPs, and spill control. The CSWPPP is a

component of the engineering plans required for drainage review and has two component plans, the ESC plan and stormwater pollution prevention and spill (SWPPS) plan.

Conveyance means a mechanism for transporting water from one point to another, including pipes, ditches, and channels.

Conveyance system means the drainage facilities and features, both natural and constructed, that collect, contain, and provide for the flow of surface and storm water from the highest points on the land down to a receiving water. The natural elements of the conveyance system include swales and small drainage courses, streams, rivers, lakes, and wetlands. The constructed elements of the conveyance system include gutters, ditches, pipes, channels, and most flow control and water quality treatment facilities.

Conveyance system nuisance problem means a flooding or erosion problem that does not constitute a "severe flooding problem" or "severe erosion problem" and that results from the overflow of a constructed conveyance system for runoff events less than or equal to a 10-year event. Examples include inundation of a shoulder or lane of a roadway, overflows collecting in yards or pastures, shallow flows across driveways, minor flooding of crawl spaces or unheated garages/outbuildings, and minor erosion. See "severe flooding problem" and "severe erosion problem."

Criteria exception means a department-approved exception to the criteria for granting an adjustment from the requirements of K.C.C. 9.05.050 and the *Surface Water Design Manual* based on demonstration that meeting the criteria will deny reasonable use of the applicant's property and the applicant will implement the best practicable alternative to meeting the criteria.

Critical area means any area that is subject to natural hazards or a land feature that supports unique, fragile or valuable natural resources including fish, wildlife or other organisms or their habitats or such resources that carry, hold or purify water in their natural state. "Critical area" includes the following areas: aquatic areas; coal mine hazard areas; critical aquifer recharge areas; erosion hazard areas; flood hazard areas; landslide hazard areas; seismic hazard areas; steep slope hazard areas; volcanic hazard areas; wetlands; wildlife habitat conservation areas; and wildlife habitat networks.

Critical area report means the report that evaluates all probable impacts of a development proposal on critical areas as specified in KCC 21A.24.110. The report is required for any development proposal that is subject to a critical area review by DDES under KCC 21A.24.100.

Critical aquifer recharge area means an area designated on the critical aquifer recharge area map adopted by KCC 20.70.020 as recodified and amended by the CAO that has a high susceptibility to ground water contamination that is located within a sole source aquifer or within an area approved in accordance with Chapter 246-290 WAC as a wellhead protection area for a municipal or district drinking water system. Susceptibility to ground water contamination occurs where there is a combination of permeable soils, permeable subsurface geology, and ground water close to the ground surface.

Critical depth means the depth that minimizes the specific energy E of the flow.

Critical Drainage Area means an area where the Department of Natural Resources and Parks (DNRP) has determined that additional drainage controls (beyond those in this manual) are needed to address a severe flooding, drainage, and/or erosion condition that poses an imminent likelihood of harm to the welfare and safety of the surrounding community. Critical Drainage Areas (CDAs) are formally adopted by administrative rule under the procedures specified in KCC 2.98. When CDAs are adopted, they are inserted in Reference Section 3 of this manual and their requirements are implemented through Special Requirement #1 (see Section 1.3.1).

Critical flow means flow at the critical depth and velocity.

Culvert means pipe or concrete box structure that drains an open channel, swale, or ditch under a roadway or embankment, typically with no catch basins or manholes along its length.

Cut slope means a slope formed by excavating overlying material to connect the original ground surface with a lower ground surface created by the excavation. A cut slope is opposed to a bermed slope, which is constructed by importing soil to create the slope.

DDES means the Department of Development and Environmental Services, which is the King County department responsible for ***drainage review*** of proposed projects, except those projects reviewed by the Department of Natural Resources and Parks (DNRP) as specified in KCC 9.04.070. For those projects in which ***drainage review*** is performed by DNRP, any reference to DDES in this manual may be assumed to be a reference to DNRP as appropriate.

Dead storage means the volume available in a depression in the ground below any conveyance system, or surface drainage pathway, or outlet invert elevation that could allow the discharge of surface and storm water runoff.

Dedication of land means setting aside and assigning ownership for a portion of a property for a specific use or function.

Depression storage means the amount of precipitation that is trapped in depressions on the surface of the ground.

Design engineer means the civil engineer who prepares the analysis, design, and engineering plans for an applicant's permit or approval submittal (see "civil engineer").

Detention means release of surface and storm water runoff from the site at a slower rate than it is collected by the drainage facility system, the difference being held in temporary storage.

Detention facility means a facility that collects water from developed areas and releases it at a slower rate than it enters the collection system. The excess of inflow over outflow is temporarily stored in a pond or a vault and is typically released over a few hours or a few days.

Determination of Non-Significance (DNS) means the written decision by the responsible official of the lead agency that a proposal is not likely to have a significant adverse environmental impact per the SEPA process, and therefore an EIS is not required.

Development means any activity that requires a permit or approval, including, but not limited to, a building permit, grading permit, shoreline substantial development permit, conditional use permit, special use permit, zoning variance or reclassification, subdivision, short subdivision, urban planned development, binding site plan, site development permit, or right-of-way use permit. "Development" does not include a Class I, II, III, or IV-S forest practice conducted in accordance with Chapter 76.09 RCW and Title 222 WAC or a class IV-G nonconversion forest practice, as defined in KCC 21A.06, conducted in accordance with Chapter 76.09 RCW and Title 222 WAC and a county approved forest management plan.

Direct discharge means undetained discharge from a proposed project to a "major receiving water."

Discharge means runoff, excluding offsite flows, leaving the proposed development through overland flow, built conveyance systems, or infiltration facilities.

Dissolved oxygen (DO) problem means a stream reach, lake, or other waterbody of the state that is either (1) currently designated by the state as a Category 5, 4, or 2 Water due to exceedance or concern for exceedance of the state's numeric water quality standard for dissolved oxygen as documented in the state's latest published Clean Water Act Section 303d list (an electronic map of these waterbodies is posted at http://apps.ecy.wa.gov/wqawa/viewer.htm), or (2) is currently designated by the County as a DO problem based on credible data indicating exceedance or concern for exceedance of the state's numeric water quality standard for dissolved oxygen as documented in the latest published list of King County-Identified WQ Problems (Reference Section 10) posted at http://www.kingcounty.gov/environment/waterandland/stormwater/documents/surface-water-design-manual.aspx.

Dispersed discharge means release of surface and storm water runoff from a drainage facility system such that the flow spreads over a wide area and is located so as not to allow flow to concentrate anywhere upstream of a drainage channel with erodible underlying granular soils or the potential to flood downstream properties.

Ditch means a constructed channel with its top width less than 10 feet at design flow.

Diversion means a change in the natural discharge location or runoff flows onto or away from an adjacent downstream property. See Core Requirement #1.

DNS means Determination of Non-Significance.

DNRP means Department of Natural Resources and Parks.

DOE means the state Department of Ecology.

Drainage means the collection, conveyance, containment, or discharge, or any combination thereof, of surface and storm water runoff.

Drainage area means an area draining to a point of interest.

Drainage basin means an area draining to a point of interest.

Drainage channel means a drainage pathway with well-defined bed and banks indicating frequent conveyance of surface and storm water runoff.

Drainage course means a pathway for watershed drainage often characterized by wet soil vegetation and often intermittent in flow.

Drainage easement means a legal encumbrance that is placed against a property's title to reserve specified privileges for the users and beneficiaries of the drainage facilities contained within the boundaries of the easement.

Drainage facility means a constructed or engineered feature that collects, conveys, stores, or treats surface and storm water runoff. A drainage facility includes, but is not limited to, a constructed or engineered stream, pipeline, channel, ditch, gutter, lake, wetland, closed depression, flow control or water quality treatment facility, erosion and sedimentation control facility, and other structure and appurtenance that provides for drainage.

Drainage pathway means the route that surface and storm water runoff follows downslope as it leaves any part of the site.

Drainage plan means a plan that depicts the drainage improvements and mitigation measures proposed for a particular project and includes any documentation/technical information necessary for construction and determination of compliance with drainage requirements. The drainage plan can be an "engineering plan" or "limited scope" engineering plan prepared for drainage review purposes as described in Chapter 2 of the *Surface Water Design Manual (SWDM)*, or it can be a "small project drainage plan" as described in Appendix C of the *SWDM*.

Drainage review means an evaluation by King County staff of a proposed project's compliance with the drainage requirements in the *Surface Water Design Manual*. The types of drainage review include: Small Project Dainage Review, Targeted Drainage Review, Full Drainage Review, and Large Project Drainage Review.

Dry Season means May 1 to September 30.

Easement means the legal right to use a parcel of land for a particular purpose. It does not include fee ownership, but it may restrict the owner's use of the land.

Effective impervious fraction means the fraction of actual total impervious area connected to a drainage system. These figures should be used in the absence of detailed surveys or physical inspection (e.g., via pipe, channel, or short sheet flow path).

EIS means Environmental Impact Statement.

Embankment means a structure of earth, gravel, or similar material raised to form a pond bank or foundation for a road.

Energy dissipater means any means by which the total energy of flowing water is reduced. In stormwater design, it is usually a mechanism that reduces velocity prior to, or at, discharge from an outfall in order to prevent erosion. Energy dissipaters include rock splash pads, drop manholes, concrete stilling basins or baffles, and check dams.

Energy gradient means the slope of the specific energy line (i.e., the sum of the potential and velocity heads).

Engineering geologist means a person licensed by the State of Washington as a geologist specializing in evaluating geologic site characteristics to determine the responses of geologic processes and materials to development activities, such as removal of vegetation; construction activities such as earthwork; applying loads in foundations and embankments; use of earth materials in construction; and modifying ground water flow.

Engineering plan means a plan prepared and stamped by a licensed civil engineer that depicts improvements and mitigation measures proposed for a particular site and includes supporting documentation and technical information. For drainage review purposes, an engineering plan includes a Technical Information Report (TIR),

Site Improvement Plans, and a Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (CSWPPP), which are described in detail in Chapter 2 of the *Surface Water Design Manual*.

Engineering review means an evaluation by the Department of Development and Environmental Services (or its successor agency) of a proposed project's compliance with the drainage requirements in the *Surface Water Design Manual* and with other King County requirements.

Enhancement means an increase in ecological functions and value, desirability, or attractiveness of an environmental feature.

Environmental Impact Statement (EIS) means a document that discusses the likely significant adverse impacts of a proposal, ways to lessen the impacts, and alternatives to the proposal. It is required by the national and state environmental policy acts when projects are determined to have the potential for significant environmental impact.

Equivalent area means the area tributary to the receiving water body equal to or less than the shortest, straight-line distance from the receiving water body (or regional facility) to the farthest point of the proposed project.

Erodible granular soils means soil materials that are easily eroded and transported by running water, typically fine or medium grained sand with minor gravel, silt, or clay content. Such soils are commonly described as Everett or Indianola series soil types in the SCS classification. Also included are any soils showing examples of existing severe stream channel incision as indicated by unvegetated streambanks standing over two feet high above the base of the channel.

Erosion means detachment and transport of soil or rock fragments by water, wind, ice, etc.

Erosion and sediment control (ESC) means any temporary or permanent measures taken to reduce erosion, control siltation and sedimentation, and ensure that sediment-laden water does not leave the site or enter into wetlands or aquatic areas.

Erosion Hazard Area means an area underlain by soils that are subject to severe erosion when disturbed. These soils include, but are not limited to:

- Those classified as having a severe to very severe erosion hazard according to the USDA Soil Conservation Service, the 1990 Snoqualmie Pass Area Soil Survey, the 1973 King County Soils Survey (or any subsequent revisions or addition by or to these sources) such as any occurrence of River Wash (Rh) or Coastal Beaches (Cb) and any of the following when they occur on slopes inclined at 15% or more: Alderwood gravely sandy loam (AgD), Alderwood-Kitsap (AkF), Beausite gravelly sandy loam (BeD and BeF), Kitsap silt loam, (KpD), Ovall gravelly sandy loam (OvP and OvF), Ragnar fine sandy loam (Rad), and Ragnar-Indianola Association (RdE); and
- Those that represent significant risk to sensitive downstream receiving water due to proximity to those receiving waters and the size of the disturbed area.

ESC plan means the plan and supporting documentation for implementing erosion and sediment control measures on the project site. This plan is a component of the construction stormwater pollution prevention plan (CSWPPP), which is submitted with the engineering plans required for drainage review.

ESC Standards means the requirements and specifications for design, maintenance, and implementation of erosion and sediment control measures specified in Appendix D of the King County *Surface Water Design Manual*.

Eutrophic means a condition of a water body in which excess nutrients, particularly phosphorous, stimulates the growth of aquatic plant life usually resulting in the depletion of dissolved oxygen. Thus, less dissolved oxygen is available to other aquatic life.

Eutrophication means the process where excess nutrients in water lead to excessive growth of aquatic plants.

Evapotranspiration is the collective term for the processes of evaporation and plant transpiration by which water is returned to the atmosphere as a vapor.

Exceedance probability means the probability that the flow will be equaled or exceeded in any given year.

Existing conditions means the conditions of drainage, vegetation, and impervious cover at the time of analysis.

Existing offsite conditions means the conditions of drainage, vegetation, and impervious cover offsite, including any problems recorded or observed in the study area (except on the proposed project site), at the time of analysis (see "existing site conditions").

Existing site conditions means the conditions of drainage, vegetation, and impervious cover onsite at present or some time in the past depending on what, if any, land conversion activity has occurred on the site since May 1979 when King County first required flow control on developments adding more than 5,000 square feet of new impervious surface. If a drainage plan has been approved by the County since May 1979 for any land conversion activity which includes the addition of more than 5,000 square feet of new impervious surface, then "existing site conditions" are those created by the site improvements and drainage facilities constructed per the approved engineering plans. Otherwise, "existing site conditions" are those that existed prior to May 1979 as determined from aerial photographs and, if necessary, on knowledge of individuals familiar with the area. The intent is to mitigate unaddressed impacts created by site alterations/improvements, such as clearing, which have occurred since May 1979(see Core Requirement #3). *Note: Air photos flown in 1979 are available for viewing at the map counter of the King County Department of Transportation and at DDES.*

Experimental design adjustment means an adjustment used for proposing new designs or methods which are different from those in this manual, which are not uniquely site specific, and for which data sufficient to establish functional equivalence do not exist.

FEMA means Federal Emergency Management Agency

FEMA floodway means a distinct floodway definition that describes the limit to which encroachment into the natural conveyance channel can cause one foot or less rise in water surface elevation.

Fertilizer means any material or mixture used to supply one or more of the essential plant nutrient elements.

Filter strip means a grassy area with gentle slopes which treats stormwater runoff from adjacent areas before it concentrates into a discrete channel.

Financial guarantee means a form of financial security posted to do one or more of the following: ensure timely and proper completion of improvements; ensure compliance with the King County Code; or provide secured warranty of materials, workmanship of improvements and design. "Financial guarantees" include assignments of funds, cash deposit, surety bonds, or other forms of financial security acceptable to the Director of the Department of Development and Environmental Services. "Performance guarantee," "maintenance guarantee," and "defect guarantee" are considered subcategories of financial guarantee.

FIRM means Flood Insurance Rate Map.

Flood fringe means that portion of the floodplain outside of the floodway which is covered by floodwaters during the base flood; it is generally associated with standing water rather than rapidly flowing water.

Flood Hazard Area means any area subject to inundation by the base flood or risk from channel migration including, but not limited to, an aquatic area (e.g., streams, lakes, etc.), wetland, or closed depression. A flood hazard area may consist of the following components: 100-year floodplain, zero-rise flood fringe, zero-rise floodway, FEMA floodway, and channel migration zones.

Flood hazard reduction plan means a plan and all implementing programs, regulations, and procedures including, but not limited to, capital projects, public education activities and enforcement programs for reduction of flood hazards and prepared in accordance with RCW 86.12.200.

Flood Insurance Rate Map (FIRM) means the official map on which the Federal Insurance Administration has delineated flood hazard areas, floodways, and risk premium zones.

Flood Insurance Study means the official report provided by the Federal Insurance Administration that includes flood profiles and the FIRM.

Floodplain means the total area subject to inundation by the base flood including the flood fringe and floodway.

Flood-proofing means adaptations to ensure that a structure is substantially impermeable to the passage of water below the flood protection elevation, and that it resists hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and effects of buoyancy.

Flood protection elevation means an elevation that is one foot above the base flood elevation.

Flood protection facility means any levee, berm, wall, enclosure, raised bank, revetment, constructed bank stabilization, or armoring that is commonly recognized by the community as providing significant protection to a property from inundation by floodwaters.

Flood routing means an analytical technique used to compute the effects of system storage and system dynamics on the shape and movement of flow; represented by a hydrograph.

Floodway means the channel of the river or stream and those portions of the adjoining floodplain which are reasonably required to carry and discharge the base flood flow (see "zero-rise floodway").

Flow control area means a geographic area of the County within which proposed projects must comply with the flow control facility requirements adopted for that area as part of this manual. There are three such areas that comprise unincorporated King County: the Basic Flow Control Area, the Conservation Flow Control Area, and the Flood Problem Flow Control Area. These areas are mapped on the Flow Control Applications Map adopted with this manual and on the County's Geographic Information System.

Flow control BMP means a method or design for dispersing, infiltrating or otherwise reducing or preventing development-related increases in surface and storm water runoff at, or near, the sources of those increases. Flow control BMPs include, but are not limited to, preservation and use of native vegetated surfaces to fully disperse runoff; use of other pervious surfaces to disperse runoff; roof downspout infiltration; permeable pavements; rainwater harvesting; vegetated roofs; and reduction of development footprint.

Flow control BMP design and maintenance details means the diagrams/figures, design specifications, and maintenance instructions for each flow control BMP proposed on an individual site/lot that does not contain a flow control or water quality facility. These details are intended to be recordable to facilitate attachment to the declaration of covenant and grant of easement required for implementation of flow control BMPs on individual sites/lots. DDES may waive all or a portion of this component if they determine there is no need to specify design details or maintenance instructions for certain proposed BMPs.

Flow control BMP site plan (FCBMP site plan) means a scale drawing of an individual site/lot used to show how required flow control BMPs will be applied to the target surfaces of an individual site/lot that does not contain a flow control or water quality facility. The FCBMP site plan is intended to be a recordable document (or reducible to a recordable document) that can be attached to the declaration of covenant and grant of easement required for implementation of flow control BMPs on individual sites/lots. DDES may allow a written version of this plan if they determine there is no need to illustrate the size and location of proposed flow control BMPs.

Flow control facility means a drainage facility designed to mitigate the impacts of increased surface and storm water runoff generated by site development in accordance with the drainage requirements in KCC Chapter 9.04. Flow control facilities are designed either, to hold water for a considerable length of time and then release it by evaporation, plant transpiration, or infiltration into the ground, or to hold runoff for a short period of time and then release it to the conveyance system.

Flow duration means the aggregate time that peak flows are at or above a particular flow rate (e.g., the amount of time over the last 50 years that peak flows were at or above the 2-year flow rate).

Flow frequency means the inverse of the probability that the flow will be equaled or exceeded in any given year (the *exceedance probability*). For example, if the exceedance probability is 0.01, or 1 in 100, that flow is referred to as the 100-year flow.

Flowpath means the route that surface and storm water runoff follows between two points of interest.

Flow-through system means a retention/detention facility where inflows are routed through the storage facility before discharge through the flow restrictor.

Freeboard means the vertical distance between the design water surface elevation and the elevation of the structure or facility which contains the water.

Full build-out conditions means the tributary area is developed to its full zoning potential except where there are existing sensitive areas, open space tracts, and/or native growth protection easements/covenants.

Full Drainage Review means the evaluation required by KCC 9.04.030 of a proposed project's compliance with the full range of core and special requirements in Chapter 1 of this manual. Full Drainage Review is required for any proposed project, unless the project is subject to small project drainage review, targeted drainage review, or large project drainage review, that (1) would result in two thousand square feet or more of new impervious surface; (2) would result in thirty-five thousand square feet or more of new pervious surface; (3) is a redevelopment project on one or more parcels where the total of new and replaced impervious surface is five thousand square feet or more and when the valuation of proposed improvements exceeds fifty percent of the assessed value of the existing site improvements, including interior improvements and excluding required mitigation and frontage improvements.

Fully dispersed means the runoff from an impervious surface or non-native pervious surface has dispersed per the criteria for fully dispersed surface in Section 1.2.3.2.C.

Geologist means a person who has earned a degree in geology from an accredited college or university or who has equivalent educational training, and who has at least five years of experience as a practicing geologist or four years of experience and at least two years post-graduate study, research, or teaching. The practical experience shall include at least three years work in applied geology and landslide evaluation, in close association with qualified practicing geologists or geotechnical professional/civil engineers.

Geomorphically significant flow means a flow capable of moving sediment.

Geotechnical engineer means a civil engineer, licensed by the State of Washington, who has at least four years of professional employment as a geotechnical engineer in responsible charge, including experience with landslide evaluation. Geotechnical engineers specialize in the design and construction aspects of earth materials.

Groundwater means underground water usually found in aquifers. Groundwater usually originates from infiltration. Wells tap the groundwater for water supply uses.

Gully means a channel caused by the concentrated flow of surface and stormwater runoff over unprotected erodible land.

Habitable building means any residential, commercial, or industrial building that is equipped with a permanent heating or cooling system and an electrical system.

Habitat means the specific area or environment in which a particular type of plant or animal lives and grows.

Hardpan means a cemented or compacted and often clay-like layer of soil that is impenetrable by roots.

Harmful pollutant means a substance that has adverse effects to an organism including death, chronic poisoning, impaired reproduction, cancer, or other effects.

High infiltration rates means those in excess of 9 inches per hour as measured by the EPA method or the double ring infiltrometer method (ASTM D 3385). These will typically be course sand or gravel soil with low silt content.

High-use site means a commercial or industrial site that (1) has an expected average daily traffic (ADT) count equal to or greater than 100 vehicles per 1,000 square feet of gross building area; (2) is subject to petroleum storage or transfer in excess of 1,500 gallons per year, not including delivered heating oil; or (3) is subject to use, storage, or maintenance of a fleet of 25 or more diesel vehicles that are over 10 tons net weight (trucks, buses, trains, heavy equipment, etc.). Also included is any road intersection with a measured ADT count of 25,000 vehicles or more on the main roadway and 15,000 vehicles or more on any intersecting roadway, excluding projects proposing primarily pedestrian or bicycle use improvements. For the purposes of this definition, *commercial and industrial site* means that portion of a site's developed area associated with an individual commercial or industrial business (e.g., the area occupied by the business's buildings and required parking).

Historic site conditions mean those which existed on the site prior to any development in the Puget Sound region. For lands not currently submerged (i.e., outside the ordinary high water mark of a lake, wetland, or stream), "historic site conditions" shall be assumed to be forest cover unless reasonable, historic, site-specific information is provided to demonstrate a different vegetation cover. In some stream basins, as allowed per Exception 1 of the Conservation Flow Control Areas facility requirement, historic site conditions for lands not currently submerged may be assumed to be 75% forest, 15% grass, and 10% impervious surface.

Horton overland flow means a runoff process whereby the rainfall rate exceeds the infiltration rate, and the excess precipitation flows downhill over the soil surface.

Hydraulically connected means connected through surface flow or water features such as wetlands or lakes.

Hydraulic gradient means slope of the potential head relative to a fixed datum.

Hydrogeologist means a person licensed by the State of Washington as a geologist specializing in the study and analysis of ground water and other fluids as they move within the geologic environment. This includes ground water well design, construction supervision, and testing; remediation of soil and ground water at contaminated sites; and impact analysis of proposed man made structures on the environment as they may relate to water.

Hydrograph means a graph of runoff rate, inflow rate, or discharge rate past a specific point over time.

Hydrologic cycle means the circuit of water movement from the atmosphere to the earth and return to the atmosphere through various stages or processes such as precipitation, interception, runoff, infiltration, percolation, storage, evaporation, and transpiration.

Hydrologic soil groups means a soil characteristic classification system defined by the U.S. Soil Conservation Service in which a soil may be categorized into one of four soil groups (A, B, C, or D) based upon infiltration rate and other properties.

Impact means an adverse effect or harm, or the act of adversely affecting or harming.

Impervious surface means a hard surface area that either prevents or retards the entry of water into the soil mantle as under natural conditions before development; or that causes water to run off the surface in greater quantities or at an increased rate of flow from the flow present under natural conditions prior to development (see also "new impervious surface"). Common impervious surfaces include, but are not limited to, roof, walkways, patios, driveways, parking lots, or storage areas, areas that are paved, graveled or made of packed or oiled earthen materials or other surfaces that similarly impede the natural infiltration of surface and storm water. An open, uncovered flow control or water quality treatment facility shall not be considered as impervious surface. For the purposes of applying the impervious surface thresholds and exemptions contained in this manual, open water bodies, including onsite detention and water quality ponds, shall not be considered impervious surfaces. However, for the purposes of computing runoff, such water bodies shall be modeled as impervious surfaces as specified in Chapter 3.

Impoundment means a natural or man-made containment for surface water.

Improvement means a permanent, man-made, physical change to land or real property including, but not limited to, buildings, streets, driveways, sidewalks, crosswalks, parking lots, water mains, sanitary and storm sewers, drainage facilities, and landscaping.

Industrial project (or land use) means any project or land use that requires or would require a commercial building permit or commercial site development permit and is on an industrial-zoned site or is otherwise conducting *industrial activities*. *Industrial activities* means material handling, transportation, or storage; manufacturing; maintenance; treatment; or disposal. Areas with industrial activities include plant yards, access roads and rail lines used by carriers of raw materials, manufactured products, waste material, or by-products; material handling sites; refuse sites; sites used for the application or disposal of process waste waters; sites used for the storage and maintenance of material handling equipment; sites used for residual treatment, storage, or disposal; shipping and receiving areas; manufacturing buildings; storage areas for raw materials, and intermediate and finished products; and areas where industrial activity has taken place in the past and significant materials remain and are exposed to stormwater.

Infiltration facility means a drainage facility designed to use the hydrologic process of water soaking into the ground (commonly referred to as percolation) to dispose of surface and storm water runoff.

Ingress/egress means the points of access to and from a property.

Inlet means a form of connection between the surface of the ground and a channel or pipe for the admission of surface and stormwater runoff.

Inlet control means a flow condition where the flow is governed by the culvert's inlet geometry.

Interflow means near-surface groundwater that moves laterally through the soil horizon following the hydraulic gradient of underlying relatively impermeable soils. When interflow is expressed on the surface, it is called a spring or seepage.

KCAS means King County Aerial Survey.

KCRS means *King County Road Standards*, which are available from the King County Department of Transportation Map Counter.

Lake means an area permanently inundated by water in excess of two meters (7 ft) deep and greater than twenty acres in size as measured at the ordinary high water mark.

Lake management plan means a plan describing the lake management recommendations and requirements adopted by public rule for managing water quality within individual lake basins.

Land disturbing activity means any activity that results in a change in the existing soil cover (both vegetative and non-vegetative and/or the existing soil topography. Land disturbing activities include, but are not limited to demolition, construction, clearing, grading, filling, excavation, and compaction. Land disturbing activity does not include tilling conducted as part of agricultural practices, landscape maintenance, or gardening.

Landscape management plan means a King County approved plan for defining the layout and long-term maintenance of landscaping features to minimize the use of pesticides and fertilizers, and to reduce the discharge of suspended solids and other pollutants.

Landslide means episodic downslope movement of a mass of soil or rock; includes but is not limited to rockfalls, slumps, mudflows, and earthflows.

Landslide Hazard Area means an area subject to a severe risk of landslide such as:

1. Any area with a combination of:
   - Slopes steeper than 15%;
   - Impermeable soils, such as silt and clay, frequently interbedded with granular soils, such as sand and gravel; and
   - Springs or groundwater seepage;
2. Any area which has shown movement during the Holocene epoch, 10,000 years ago to the present, or which is underlain by mass wastage debris from that epoch;
3. Any area potentially unstable as a result of rapid stream incision, stream bank erosion or undercutting by wave action;
4. Any area which shows evidence of, or is at risk from, snow avalanches, or
5. Any area located on an alluvial fan, presently or potentially subject to inundation by debris flows or deposition of stream-transported sediments.

Landslide Hazard Drainage Area means a specially mapped area where the County has determined that overland flows from new projects will pose a significant threat to health and safety because of their close proximity to a landslide hazard area that is on a slope steeper than 15% (a delineation of the known landslide hazard areas can be found in King County's *Sensitive Areas Map Folio).* Such areas are delineated on the Landslide Hazard Drainage Areas map adopted with this manual.

Land surveyor means a person licensed by the State of Washington as a professional land surveyor.

Large Project Drainage Review means the evaluation required by KCC 9.04.030 for development proposals that are large and/or involve resources or problems of special sensitivity or complexity. Large Project Drainage Review is required of any project that (1) has an urban plan development land use designation in the King County Comprehensive Plan land use map, as defined in K.C.C. 21A.06.1340; (2) would, at full buildout of the project site, result in fifty acres or more of new impervious surface within a drainage subbasin or a number of subbasins hydraulically connected across subbasin boundaries; or (3) has a project site of fifty acres or more within a critical aquifer recharge area, as defined in the K.C.C. Title 21A. Large Project Drainage Review entails preparation of a master drainage plan (MDP) or limited scope MDP which is reviewed and approved by DDES.

Leachable materials, wastes, or chemicals means those substances which, when exposed to rainfall, measurably alter the physical or chemical characteristics of the rainfall runoff; examples include erodible soil, uncovered process wastes, manure, fertilizers, oily substances, ashes, kiln dust, garbage dumpster leakage, etc.

Leaf compost filter (a.k.a. StormFilter™) means a patented treatment device that uses a specially prepared and patented compost product to remove pollutants from stormwater.

Level pool routing means the basic technique of storage routing used in King County for sizing and analyzing detention storage and determining water levels for ponding water bodies. The level pool routing technique is based on the continuity equation: Inflow - Outflow = Change in storage.

Local drainage system means any natural or constructed drainage feature that collects and concentrates runoff from the site and discharges it downstream.

Lowest floor means the lowest enclosed area (including basement) of a structure. An area other than a basement area that is used solely for parking of vehicles, building access, or storage is not considered a building's lowest floor, provided that the enclosed area meets all of the structural requirements of the flood hazard standards.

Maintenance means those usual activities taken to prevent a decline, lapse, or cessation in the use of currently serviceable structures, facilities, equipment, or systems if there is no expansion of the structure, facilities, equipment, or system and there are no significant hydrologic impacts. Maintenance includes the repair or replacement of non-functional facilities and the replacement of existing structures with different types of structures, if the repair or replacement is required to meet current engineering standards or is required by one or more environmental permits and the functioning characteristics of the original facility or structure are not changed. For the purposes of applying this definition to the thresholds and requirements of this manual, DDES will determine whether the functioning characteristics of the original facility or structure will remain sufficiently unchanged to consider replacement as maintenance.

Major receiving water means a large receiving water that has been determined by King County to be safe for the direct discharge of increased runoff from a proposed project without a flow control facility, subject to the restrictions on such discharges set forth in Core Requirement #3, Section 1.2.3. A list of major receiving waters is provided in Section 1.2.3.1. Major receiving waters are also considered safe for application of Basic WQ treatment in place of otherwise required Enhanced Basic WQ treatment (see Section 1.2.8.1).

Mass wasting means the movement of large volumes of earth material downslope.

Master Drainage Plan (MDP) means a comprehensive drainage control plan intended to prevent significant adverse impacts to the natural and man-made drainage system, both on and offsite.

Maximum extent practicable means the use of best management practices that are available and capable of being designed, constructed and implemented in a reliable and effective manner including, but not limited to, consideration of site conditions and cost.

MDNS means a Mitigated Determination of Non-Significance per SEPA (see "DNS" and "mitigation").

Mean annual storm means a statistically derived rainfall event derived by dividing the annual rainfall in an area by the number of storm events per year, as defined by the Nationwide Urban Runoff Program studies (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, "Results of the Nationwide Urban Runoff Program," 1986).

Metals means elements, such as mercury, lead, nickel, zinc and cadmium, that are of environmental concern because they do not degrade over time. Although many are necessary nutrients, they are sometimes magnified in the food chain, and they can be toxic to life in high enough concentrations.

Metals problem means a stream reach, lake, or other waterbody of the state that is either (1) currently designated by the state as a Category 5, 4, or 2 Water due to exceedance or concern for exceedance of the state's numeric water quality standards for metals (e.g., copper, zinc, lead, mercury, etc.) as documented in the state's latest published Clean Water Act Section 303d list (an electronic map of these waterbodies is posted at http://apps.ecy.wa.gov/wqawa/viewer.htm), or (2) is currently designated by the County as a metals problem based on credible data indicating exceedance or concern for exceedance of the state's numeric water quality standards for metals (e.g., copper, zinc, lead, mercury, etc.) as documented in the latest published list of King County-Identified

WQ Problems (Reference Section 10) posted at http://www.kingcounty.gov/environment/waterandland/stormwater/documents/surface-water-design-manual.aspx.

Mitigation means an action taken to compensate for adverse impacts to the environment resulting from a development activity or alteration.

Modified site improvement plan means a limited or simplified "site improvement plan" used for some projects in Targeted Drainage Review and/or where major improvements are not proposed.

Monitor means to systematically and repeatedly measure something in order to track changes.

Monitoring means the collection and analysis of data by various methods for the purposes of understanding natural systems and features, evaluating the impacts of development proposals on the biological, hydrologic, and geologic elements of such systems, and assessing the performance of mitigation measures imposed as conditions of development.

Multifamily project (or land use) means any project or land use that requires or would require a commercial building permit or commercial site development permit for development of residential dwelling units that are not detached single family dwelling units.

National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) means the part of the federal Clean Water Act which requires point source discharges to obtain permits. These permits, referred to as NPDES permits, are administered by the Washington State Department of Ecology.

Native Growth Protection Easements (NGPE) means an easement granted to the County for the protection of native vegetation within a sensitive area or its associated buffer. This term was used prior to December 1990 when it was replaced with "sensitive area." As of January 2005, the term "sensitive" is replaced with "critical area;" thus, all references to critical areas in this manual also apply to sensitive areas and native growth protection easements.

Native growth retention area means the area of native vegetated surface set aside by a covenant, easement, or tract for purposes of implementing a flow control BMP.

Native vegetated surface means a surface in which the soil conditions, ground cover, and species of vegetation are like those of the original native condition for the site. More specifically, this means (1) the soil is either undisturbed or has been treated according to the "native vegetated landscape" specifications in Appendix C, Section C.2.1.8; (2) the ground is either naturally covered with vegetation litter or has been top-dressed with 4 inches of hog fuel consistent with the native vegetated landscape specifications in Appendix C; and (3) the vegetation is either (a) comprised predominantly of plant species, other than noxious weeds, that are indigenous to the coastal region of the Pacific Northwest and that reasonably could have been expected to occur naturally on the site or (b) comprised of plant species specified for a native vegetated landscape in Appendix C. Examples of these plant species include trees such as Douglas fir, western hemlock, western red cedar, alder, big-leaf maple and vine maple; shrubs such as willow, elderberry, salmonberry and salal; and herbaceous plants such as sword fern, foam flower, and fireweed.

Natural channel (see "channel, natural")

Natural discharge area means an onsite area tributary to a single natural discharge location (see "natural discharge location").

Natural discharge location means the location where surface and storm water runoff leaves (or would leave if not infiltrated or retained) the site or project site under existing site conditions.

Natural onsite drainage feature means a natural swale, channel, stream, closed depression, wetland, or lake.

New conveyance system elements means those that are proposed to be constructed where there are no existing constructed conveyance elements.

New impervious surface means the addition of a hard or compacted surface like roofs, pavement, gravel, or dirt; or the addition of a more compacted surface, like paving over pre-existing dirt or gravel.

New pervious surface means the conversion of a native vegetated surface or other native surface to a non-native pervious surface (e.g., conversion of forest or meadow to pasture land, grass land, cultivated land, lawn,

landscaping, bare soil, etc.), or any alteration of existing non-native pervious surface that significantly increases surface and storm water runoff (e.g., conversion of pasture land, grass land, or cultivated land to lawn, landscaping, or bare soil).

New PGIS means "new impervious surface" that is "pollution-generating impervious surface." See "new impervious surface" and "pollution-generating impervious surface."

New PGPS means "new pervious surface" that is "pollution-generating pervious surface." See "new pervious surface" and "pollution-generating pervious surface."

NGPE means Native Growth Protection Easement.

NGVD means National Geodetic Vertical Datum (see "base flood elevation").

Non-native pervious surface means a pervious surface that does not meet the definition of a "native vegetated surface."

Normal depth means the depth of uniform flow. This is a unique depth of flow for any combination of channel characteristics and flow conditions. Normal depth is found from Manning's equation.

NPDES means National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System.

Nutrient means one of the essential chemicals needed by plants or animals for growth. Excessive amounts of nutrients can lead to degradation of water quality and excessive algae growth. Some nutrients can be toxic at high concentrations.

Offsite means any area lying upstream of the site that drains onto the site and any area lying downstream of the site to which the site drains (see "site").

Offsite flows means runoff conveyed to a proposed project from adjacent properties.

Oil/water separator means a vault, usually underground designed to provide a quiescent environment to separate oil from water. Floatables (e.g., styrofoam) are also removed.

One-year capture zone means the surface area overlying the portion of the aquifer which contributes water to the well within a one year period.

Onsite means on the site that includes the proposed development (see "site").

Ordinary high water mark means the mark that will be found by examining the bed and banks of a stream, lake, pond, or tidal water and ascertaining where the presence and action of waters are so common and usual, and so long maintained in all ordinary years as to mark upon the soil a vegetative character distinct from that of the abutting upland. In an area where the ordinary high water mark cannot be found, the line of mean high water in areas adjoining freshwater or mean higher high tide in areas adjoining saltwater is the "ordinary high water mark." In an area where neither can be found, the top of the channel bank is the "ordinary high water mark." In braided channels and alluvial fans, the ordinary high water mark or line of mean high water include the entire water or stream feature.

Orifice means an opening with closed perimeter (usually sharp-edged) and of regular form in a plate, wall, or partition through which water may flow, generally used for the purpose of measurement or control of such water.

Outfall means a point where collected and concentrated surface and storm water runoff is discharged from a pipe system or culvert.

Outlet control means a flow condition where the flow is governed by a combination of inlet geometry, barrel characteristics, and tailwater elevation.

Outwash soil means a soil formed from highly permeable sands and gravels.

Overtopping means to flow over the limits of a containment or conveyance element.

Parcel redevelopment project means a redevelopment project on a site comprised of one or more parcels of land on which an assessed value of existing site improvements has been determined by the King County Assessors Office.

Permeable soils means soil materials with a sufficiently rapid infiltration rate so as to greatly reduce or eliminate surface and storm water runoff.

Perviousness means related to the size and continuity of void spaces in soils; related to a soil's infiltration rate.

Pesticide means any substance (usually chemical) used to destroy or control organisms; includes herbicides, insecticides, algaecides, fungicides, and others. Many of these substances are manufactured and are not naturally found in the environment. Others, such as pyrethrum, are natural toxins which are extracted from plants and animals.

pH means a measure of the alkalinity or acidity of a substance found by measuring the concentration of hydrogen ions in the substance. The pH scale ranges from 1 to 14 with 1 being highly acidic, 14 highly basic, and 7 neutral. Most natural waters in King County are slightly acidic having a pH of around 6.5.

Phosphorus problem means a stream reach, lake, or other waterbody of the state that is either (1) currently designated by the state as a Category 5, 4, or 2 Water due to exceedance or concern for exceedance of the state's numeric action standard for total phosphorus as documented in the state's latest published Clean Water Act Section 303d list (an electronic map of these waterbodies is posted at http://apps.ecy.wa.gov/wqawa/viewer.htm), or (2) is currently designated by the County as a nutrient problem based on credible data indicating exceedance or concern for exceedance of the state's numeric action standard for total phosphorus as documented in the latest published list of King County-Identified WQ Problems (Reference Section 10) posted at http://www.kingcounty.gov/environment/waterandland/stormwater/documents/surface-water-design-manual.aspx.

Physiographic means characteristics of the natural physical environment (including hills).

Pipe system means a network of storm drain pipes, catch basins, manholes, inlets, and outfalls designed and constructed to convey surface water.

Plat means a map or representation of a subdivision showing the division of a tract or parcel of land into lots, blocks, streets, or other divisions and dedications.

Point discharge means the release of collected and/or concentrated surface and storm water runoff from a pipe, culvert, or channel.

Point of compliance means the location where detention performance standards are evaluated. In most cases, the point of compliance is the outlet of the proposed detention facility where, for example, 2- and 10-year discharges must match predevelopment 2- and 10-year peak flow rates.

Pollution-generating impervious surface means an impervious surface considered to be a significant source of pollutants in stormwater runoff. Such surfaces include those that are *subject to vehicular use*[1] or storage of *erodible or leachable materials, wastes, or chemicals*,[2] and that receive direct rainfall or the run-on or blow-in of rainfall.[3] Metal roofs are also considered to be PGIS unless they are treated to prevent leaching.

Pollution-generating pervious surface means a non-impervious surface considered to be a significant source of pollutants in surface and storm water runoff. Such surfaces include those subject to use of pesticides and fertilizers, loss of soil, or the use or storage of erodible or leachable materials, wastes, or chemicals. Such surfaces include, but are not limited to, the lawn and landscaped areas of residential or commercial ***sites***, golf courses, parks, sports fields, and County-standard grassed modular grid pavement.

Porosity means the property of having pores (small openings) that allow the passage of water.

---

[1] *Subject to vehicular use* means the surface, whether paved or not, is regularly used by motor vehicles. The following surfaces are considered regularly used by motor vehicles: roads, unvegetated road shoulders, bike lanes within or not separated from the traveled lane of a roadway, driveways, parking lots, unfenced firelanes, diesel equipment storage yards, and airport runways. The following surfaces are not considered regularly used by motor vehicles: road shoulders primarily used for emergency parking, paved bicycle pathways, bicycle lanes adjacent to unpaved or paved road shoulders primarily used for emergency parking, fenced firelanes, and infrequently used maintenance access roads.

[2] *Erodible or leachable materials, wastes, or chemicals* are those substances that, when exposed to rainfall, measurably alter the physical or chemical characteristics of the rainfall runoff (examples include erodible soil, uncovered process wastes, manure, fertilizers, oily substances, ashes, kiln dust, garbage dumpster leakage, etc.).

[3] A covered parking area would be considered pollution-generating if runoff from uphill could regularly run through it, or if rainfall could regularly blow in and wet the pavement surface. The same parking area would not be included if it were enclosed by walls or if a low wall and berm prevented stormwater from being blown in or from running onto the covered area.

Preapplication means the meeting or form used by an applicant for a development permit to present initial project intentions to the Department of Development and Environmental Services. Preapplication does not mean application.

Preapplication adjustment means an adjustment that can be requested prior to permit application. It is useful for when an adjustment decision is needed to determine if a project is feasible, or when the approval conditions must be known to determine if a project is viable before funding a full application. The approval of preapplication adjustments is tied by condition to the project proposal presented at a preapplication meeting with DDES.

Project means any proposed action to alter or develop a site that may also require~~s~~ drainage review.

Project site means that portion of a site and any offsite areas subject to proposed project activities, alterations, and improvements including those required by this manual (see "site").

R/D means retention/detention facility, another term for flow control facility.

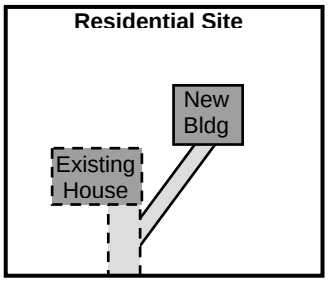
Reach means a length of channel with uniform characteristics.

Receiving waters means bodies of water or surface water systems receiving water from upstream man-made or natural systems.

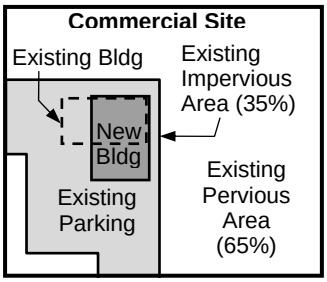
Recharge means the flow to groundwater from the infiltration of surface and storm water runoff.

Redevelopment project means a project that proposes to add, replace, or modify impervious surface (for purposes other than a residential subdivision or maintenance) on a site that is already substantially developed in a manner consistent with its current zoning or with a legal non-conforming use or has an existing impervious surface coverage of 35% or more. The following examples illustrate the application of this definition.

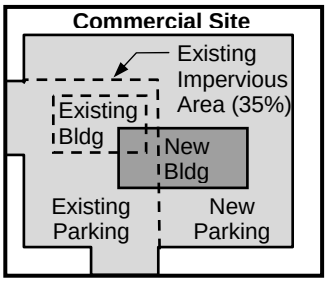
A Redevelopment Project that Adds New Impervious Surface



A Redevelopment Project that Replaces Impervious Surface



A Redev Project that Adds and Replaces Impervious Surface



Regional detention facility means a stormwater quantity control structure designed to prevent or correct the existing or future surface water runoff problems of a basin or subbasin as defined by the King County Department of Natural Resources and Parks (DNRP).

Regional scale factor means a geographically variable multiplier applied to the flow time series to account for the variations in rainfall amounts, and hence runoff, between the project site and the rainfall station (Landsburg or Sea-Tac).

Release rate means the computed peak rate of surface and storm water runoff from a site.

Replaced impervious surface means any existing impervious surface on the project site that is proposed to be removed and re-established as impervious surface, excluding impervious surface removed for the sole purpose of installing utilities or performing maintenance. For the purposes of this definition, *removed* means the removal of buildings down to bare soil or the removal of Portland cement concrete (PCC) slabs and pavement or asphaltic concrete (AC) pavement. It does not include the removal of pavement material through grinding or other surface modification unless the entire layer of PCC or AC is removed.

Replaced PGIS means "replaced impervious surface" that is "pollution-generating impervious surface." See "replaced impervious surface" and "pollution-generating impervious surface."

Resource stream means a stream section mapped and rated by King County as being a regionally significant stream reach that harbors significant concentrations of fish for some period in their life cycle.

Retention means the process of collecting and holding surface and storm water runoff with no surface outflow.

Retention/detention facility (R/D) means a type of drainage facility designed either to hold water for a considerable length of time and then release it by evaporation, plant transpiration, and/or infiltration into the ground, or to hold surface and storm water runoff for a short period of time and then release it to the surface and storm water conveyance system.

Retrofitting means the renovation of an existing site, structure, or facility to meet changed conditions or to improve mitigation of stormwater flow and water quality impacts.

Riparian means pertaining to the banks of rivers and streams, and sometimes also wetlands, lakes, or tidewater.

Riprap means a facing layer or protective mound of stones placed to prevent erosion or sloughing of a structure or embankment due to the flow of surface and storm water runoff.

Runoff means that portion of water originating from rainfall and other precipitation that flows over the surface or just below the surface from where it fell and is found in drainage facilities, rivers, streams, springs, seeps, ponds, lakes, wetlands, and shallow groundwater as well as on ground surfaces.

Runoff files means a database of continuous flows pre-simulated by HSPF.

Runoff Files Method means a hydrologic modeling tool for western King County to produce results (design flows, detention pond sizing, etc.) comparable to those obtained with the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency's HSPF model but with significantly less effort. This is achieved by providing the user with a set of 15 minute and hourly time series files of unit area land surface runoff ("runoff files") pre-simulated with HSPF for a range of land cover conditions and soil types within King County.

Run-on or blow-in of rainfall means stormwater from uphill that could regularly run through an area, or rainfall that could regularly be blown in and wet the pavement surface.

Salmon conservation plan means a plan and all implementing regulations and procedures including, but not limited to, land use management adopted by ordinance, capital projects, public education activities and enforcement programs for conservation and recovery of salmon within a water resource inventory area designated by the state under WAC 173-500-040.

Salmonid means a member of the fish family Salmonidae. In King County salmonid species include Chinook, Coho, chum, sockeye, and pink salmon; cutthroat, rainbow, and brown trout and steelhead; Dolly Varden, brook trout, char, kokanee, and whitefish.

Sand filter means a depression or basin with the bottom made of a layer of sand. Stormwater is treated as it percolates through the sand layer and is discharged via a central collector pipe.

Scour means erosion of channel banks due to excessive velocity of the flow of surface and stormwater runoff.

SCS means Soil Conservation Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture.

SCS Method means a hydrologic analysis based on the Curve Number method (*National Engineering Handbook* - Section 4: Hydrology, August 1972).

Seasonal high groundwater level means the highest elevation attained by groundwater, as measured by piezometers or wells, during any calendar year.

Sediment means fragmented material which originates from weathering and erosion of rocks or unconsolidated deposits, and which is transported by, suspended in, or deposited by water.

Sedimentation means the depositing or formation of sediment.

Sensitive area means the area delineated on a site which contains wetlands, streams, steep slopes, hazard areas, landslide hazard areas, and their required buffers. Sensitive areas are recorded as tracts or sensitive area notice on titles. *Note, effective January 1, 2005, the term "sensitive area" is replaced with the term "critical area" in KCC 21A.24.*

Sensitive area setback area means the area delineated on a site which contains wetlands, streams, steep slopes, hazard areas, landslide hazard areas, and their required buffers. This term was used from November 1990 through

December 1995. References to critical areas and their required buffers in this manual shall also apply to sensitive area setback areas.

Sensitive area tract means a separate tract that is created to protect a sensitive area and its buffer, and whose ownership was assigned as provided in KCC 21A.24 prior to January 1, 2005.

Sensitive lake means a designation applied by the County to lakes that are particularly prone to eutrophication from development-induced increases in phosphorus loading. Such lakes are identified on the Water Quality Applications Map adopted with this manual (see map pocket on inside of back cover).

SEPA means State Environmental Policy Act.

Severe building flooding problem means there is flooding of the *finished floor area*[4] of a *habitable building*,[5] or the electrical/heating system of a habitable building for runoff events less than or equal to a 100-year event. Examples include flooding of finished floors of homes and commercial or industrial buildings, or flooding of electrical/heating system components in the crawl space or garage of a home.

Severe erosion problem means there is an open drainage feature with evidence of or potential for erosion/incision sufficient to pose a sedimentation hazard to downstream conveyance systems or pose a landslide hazard by undercutting adjacent slopes. Severe erosion problems do not include roadway shoulder rilling or minor ditch erosion.

Severe flooding problem means a "severe building flooding problem" or a "severe roadway flooding problem." See "severe building flooding problem" and "severe roadway flooding problem."

Severe roadway flooding problem means there is flooding over all lanes of a *roadway*,[6] or a *sole access driveway*[7] is severely impacted, for runoff events less than or equal to the 100-year event. A severely impacted sole access driveway is one in which flooding overtops a culverted section of the driveway, posing a threat of washout or unsafe access conditions due to indiscernible driveway edges, or flooding is deeper than 6 inches on the driveway, posing a severe impediment to emergency access.

Shared facility means a drainage facility designed to meet one or more of the requirements of KCC 9.04.050 for two or more separate projects contained within a basin. Shared facilities usually include shared financial commitments for those drainage facilities.

Sheet erosion means the relatively uniform removal of soil from an area without the development of conspicuous water channels.

Sheet flow means relatively uniform flow over plane surfaces without the concentration of water into conspicuous channels.

Shoreline development means the proposed projects regulated by the Shoreline Management Act. Usually this includes the construction over water or within a shoreline zone (generally 200 feet landward of the water) of structures such as buildings, piers, bulkheads, and breakwaters, including environmental alterations such as dredging and filling, or any project which interferes with public navigational rights on the surface waters.

Shredded wood mulch means a mulch made from shredded tree trimmings, usually from trees cleared on site and stockpiled until needed. It must be free of garbage and weeds and may not contain excessive resin, tannin, or other material detrimental to plant growth.

Siltation means the process by which a river, lake, or other water body becomes clogged with sediment. Silt can clog gravel beds and prevent successful survival of salmon eggs.

---

[4] *Finished floor area*, for the purposes of defining ***severe building flooding problem***, means any enclosed area of a building that is designed to be served by the building's permanent heating or cooling system.

[5] *Habitable building* means any residential, commercial, or industrial building that is equipped with a permanent heating or cooling system and an electrical system.

[6] *Roadway*, for the purposes of this definition, means the traveled portion of any public or private road or street classified as such in the *King County Road Standards*.

[7] *Sole access driveway* means there is no other unobstructed, flood-free route for emergency access to a habitable building.

Single family residential project means any project that (a) constructs or modifies a single family dwelling unit, (b) makes improvements (e.g., driveways, roads, outbuildings, play courts, etc.) or clears native vegetation on a lot that contains or will contain a single family dwelling unit, or (c) is a plat, short plat, or boundary line adjustment that creates or adjusts lots that will contain single family dwelling units.

Site (a.k.a. development site) means a single parcel, or two or more contiguous parcels that are under common ownership or documented legal control, used as a single parcel for purposes of applying for authority from King County to carry out a development/project proposal. For projects located primarily within dedicated rights-of-way, site includes the entire width of right-of-way within the total length of right-of-way subject to improvements proposed by the project.

Site improvement plan means the plan that consists of all the plans, profiles, details, notes and specifications necessary to construct road, drainage structure and off-street parking improvements. See also "modified site improvement plan."

Slope means the gradient in feet (vertical) per feet (horizontal) or expressed as percent. Side slopes of drainage facilities are usually referred to with the horizontal dimension first (as in 3H:1V).

Sloughing means the sliding of overlying material. Sloughing has the same effect as caving, but it usually occurs when the bank or an underlying stratum is saturated or scoured.

Small project drainage plan means a simplified form of site improvement and erosion and sediment control plans (without a technical information report) which can be prepared by a non-engineer from a set of pre-engineered design details. Small project drainage plans are allowed for projects in Small Project Drainage Review.

Small Project Drainage Review means the drainage review for a proposed single family residential project or agricultural project that: .would result in: (a) ten thousand square feet or less of total impervious surface added on or after January 8, 2001; or (b) would result in four percent or less of total impervious surface on a site and limits new pervious surface as specified in the Section 1.1.2.1, and meets the small project drainage requirements specified in Appendix C of the *SWDM*, including flow control best management practices, erosion and sediment control measures, and drainage plan submittal requirements.

Small site ESC plan means a plan and supporting documentation for implementing erosion and sediment control measures that may be prepared by a person who is not a civil engineer for projects that are exempt from drainage review or that are subject to Small Project Drainage Review but disturb less than 3 acres of a site. The plan is a scale drawing of the site or project site that shows the limits of disturbance and how required ESC measures will be applied to prevent sediment from leaving the project site. The plan must include or be accompanied by any diagrams or figures necessary for installation of proposed ESC measures. DDES may allow a written version of this plan if they determine there is no need to illustrate the extent and location of proposed ESC measures.

Soil bioengineering means a method of soil or land stabilization that uses living plant material selected for the specific site situation as the major structural or engineering component of the stabilization.

Soil permeability means the ease with which gases, liquids, or plant roots penetrate or pass through a layer of soil.

Soil scientist means a person who has earned a degree in soil science, agronomy, or hydrogeology from an accredited college or university, or who has equivalent educational training and has at least five years of experience, or who has four years of experience and at least two years of post-graduate study. Two years of experience must be in the State of Washington with local soil types.

Soil stabilization means the use of measures such as rock lining, vegetation, or other engineering structures to prevent the movement of soil when loads are applied to the soil.

Sole access driveway means there is no other unobstructed, flood-free route for emergency access to a habitable building. *Severely impacting* means the flooding overtops a culverted section of the driveway, posing a threat of washout or unsafe access conditions due to indiscernible driveway edges, or the flooding is deeper than 6 inches on the driveway, posing a severe impediment to emergency access.

Sole access roadway means there is no other flood-free route for emergency access to one or more dwelling units.

Sole-source aquifer means an aquifer that is the only source of drinking water for a given community and that is so designated by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency.

Specific energy means the total energy within any system with respect to the channel bottom; equal to the potential head plus velocity and pressure heads.

Sphagnum bog wetland means a unique wetland having a predominance of sphagnum moss creating a substrate upon which a distinctive community of plants is established. Some of these include *ledum groenlandicum* (Labrador tea), *Kalmia occidentalis* (bog laurel), *Drosera rotundifolia* (sundew), and *Vaccinium oxycoccos* (cranberry). Stunted evergreen trees are also sometimes present. In addition to a distinctive plant community, the water chemistry of a sphagnum bog wetland is also unique. It is characterized by acidic waters (pH 3 to 5.5), low nutrient content, low alkalinity, and a buffering system composed predominantly of organic acids. In the Puget Sound area, mature sphagnum bog wetlands are typically very old, often dating back thousands of years. There are several classification schemes for wetlands dominated by sphagnum moss, and a successional series from conventional wetlands to fens to sphagnum bog is recognized by most ecologists. Some biologists use water chemistry and plant community composition to determine where in this successional series a wetland should be placed. In these classification schemes, the sphagnum wetlands defined in this manual would be bogs. Others base the wetland type on the source of water, in which case most King County sphagnum wetlands would be fens. This manual has adopted the classification scheme based on water chemistry and plant communities and hence refers to these wetlands as bogs rather than fens.

Spill control device means a Tee section or down turned elbow designed to retain a limited volume of pollutant that floats on water, such as oil or antifreeze. Spill control devices are passive and must be followed by clean-up activity for the spilled pollutant to actually be removed.

State Environmental Policy Act (SEPA) means the Washington State law intended to minimize environmental damage. SEPA requires that state agencies and local governments consider environmental factors when making decisions on activities, such as development proposals over a certain size and comprehensive plans. As part of this process, environmental documents are prepared and opportunities for public comment are provided.

Steep slope hazard area means an area on a slope of 40% inclination or more within a vertical elevation change of at least ten feet. For the purpose of this definition, a slope is delineated by establishing its toe and top, and is measured by averaging the inclination over at least ten feet of vertical relief. Also, for the purpose of this definition:

- The *toe* of a slope means a distinct topographic break in slope that separates slopes inclined at less than 40% from slopes inclined at 40% or more. Where no distinct break exists, the toe of a steep slope is the lower most limit of the area where the ground surface drops ten feet or more vertically within a horizontal distance of 25 feet; AND
- The *top* of a slope is a distinct topographic break in slope that separates slopes inclined at less than 40% from slopes inclined at 40% or more. Where no distinct break exists, the top of a steep slope is the uppermost limit of the area where the ground surface drops ten feet or more vertically within a horizontal distance of 25 feet.

Storage routing means a method to account for the attenuation of peak flows passing through a detention facility or other storage feature.

Storm drains means the enclosed conduits that transport surface and storm water runoff toward points of discharge (sometimes called storm sewers).

Storm drain system means the system of gutters, pipes, streams, or ditches used to carry surface and storm water from surrounding lands to streams, lakes, or Puget Sound.

Stormwater means water originating from rainfall and other precipitation that ultimately flows into drainage facilities, rivers, streams, ponds, lakes, and wetlands, or flows from springs and seeps, as well as shallow groundwater. As applied in this manual, it is synonymous with the codified term, "surface and storm water."

Stormwater compliance plan means a plan or study and all regulations and procedures that have been adopted by the county to implement the plan or study, including, but not limited to, capital projects, public education activities, and enforcement programs for managing stormwater quantity and quality discharged from the county's municipal separate

storm sewer system in compliance with the National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System permit program under the Clean Water Act.

Stormwater Pollution Prevention Manual means the manual referenced in KCC 9.12, Water Quality, and adopted in accordance with KCC 2.98, including supporting documentation referenced or incorporated in the manual, describing best management practices and procedures for eliminating or reducing surface, storm, and ground water contamination from existing facilities and existing and new activities not covered by the *Surface Water Design Manual*.

Stormwater pollution prevention and spill (SWPPS) plan means the plan and supporting documentation for implementing pollution and spill prevention BMPs on the project site during construction as required by the *Stormwater Pollution Prevention Manual*. This plan is a component of the construction stormwater pollution prevention plan (CSWPPP), which is submitted with the engineering plans required for drainage review.

Stormwater wetland means a wetland constructed, often in areas of upland soil, for the purpose of treating stormwater. When created in upland soils, stormwater wetlands are not considered waters of the State if they are regularly maintained. In King County, stormwater wetlands cannot currently be used to mitigate for impacts to an existing natural wetland.

Stream means an aquatic area where surface water produces a channel, not including a wholly artificial channel unless it is used by salmonids or used to convey a stream that occurred naturally before construction of the artificial channel. Those topographic features that resemble streams but have no defined channels (e.g., swales) shall be considered streams when hydrologic and hydraulic analyses done pursuant to a development proposal predict formation of a defined channel after development.

Structural engineer means a person licensed by the State of Washington as a professional civil engineer specializing in structural engineering.

Structure means a catch basin or manhole in reference to a storm drainage system or as defined in KCC zoning code 21A.

Stub-out means a length of pipe provided for future connection to the storm drainage system.

Subbasin means a geographic area that (1) drains to a stream or waterbody named and noted on common maps and (2) is contained within the basin of the stream or water body.

Subcritical flow means flow at depths greater than the critical depth.

Supercritical flow means flow at depths less than the critical depth.

Surface and storm water means water originating from rainfall and other precipitation that is found on ground surfaces and in drainage facilities, rivers, streams, springs, seeps, ponds, lakes, wetlands, and shallow groundwater.

Surface and storm water management system means drainage facilities and any other natural features which collect, store, control, treat, and/or convey surface and storm water.

Surface flow means that which travels over land or in an open or piped conveyance system.

Surface Water Design Manual means the manual, and supporting documentation referenced or incorporated in the manual, describing surface and storm water design and analysis requirements, procedures, and guidance that has been formally adopted by rule under the procedures in KCC 2.98. The *Surface Water Design Manual* is available from the King County Department of Development and Environmental Services or the Department of Natural Resources and Parks, Water and Land Resources Division, or their successor agencies.

Swale means a shallow drainage conveyance with relatively gentle side slopes, generally with flow depths less than one foot.

SWDM means *Surface Water Design Manual*.

SWM means the former Surface Water Management Division of the King County Department of Natural Resources and Parks.

Targeted Drainage Review means an abbreviated evaluation required by KCC 9.04.030 for certain types of proposed projects that are not subject to full or large project drainage review. Targeted drainage review may be required for some projects in small project drainage review.

Target impervious surface means that portion of a site's existing, new, and replaced impervious surface from which runoff impacts are required to be mitigated by a particular set of drainage requirements. For the area-specific flow control facility requirement (Section 1.2.3.1), target impervious surface is different for each mapped flow control area. In some flow control areas, replaced impervious surface is required to be mitigated, and in others, it is not. For the area-specific water quality facility requirement (Section 1.2.8.1), target impervious surface is limited to pollution-generating impervious surface. For the flow control BMPs requirement (Section 1.2.3.3), target impervious surface is as specified for each of the three categories of site/lot size and impervious surface coverage set forth in the individual lot BMP requirements of Section 5.2.1. For projects in Small Project Drainage Review, target impervious surface is as specified for each of the two categories of site/lot size set forth in the flow control BMP requirements of Section C.1.3 of detached Appendix C. See the above referenced sections for more specific definitions of target impervious surface to be used with the requirements of these sections.

Target surface means a developed surface from which runoff impacts are required to be mitigated by a particular set of drainage requirements.

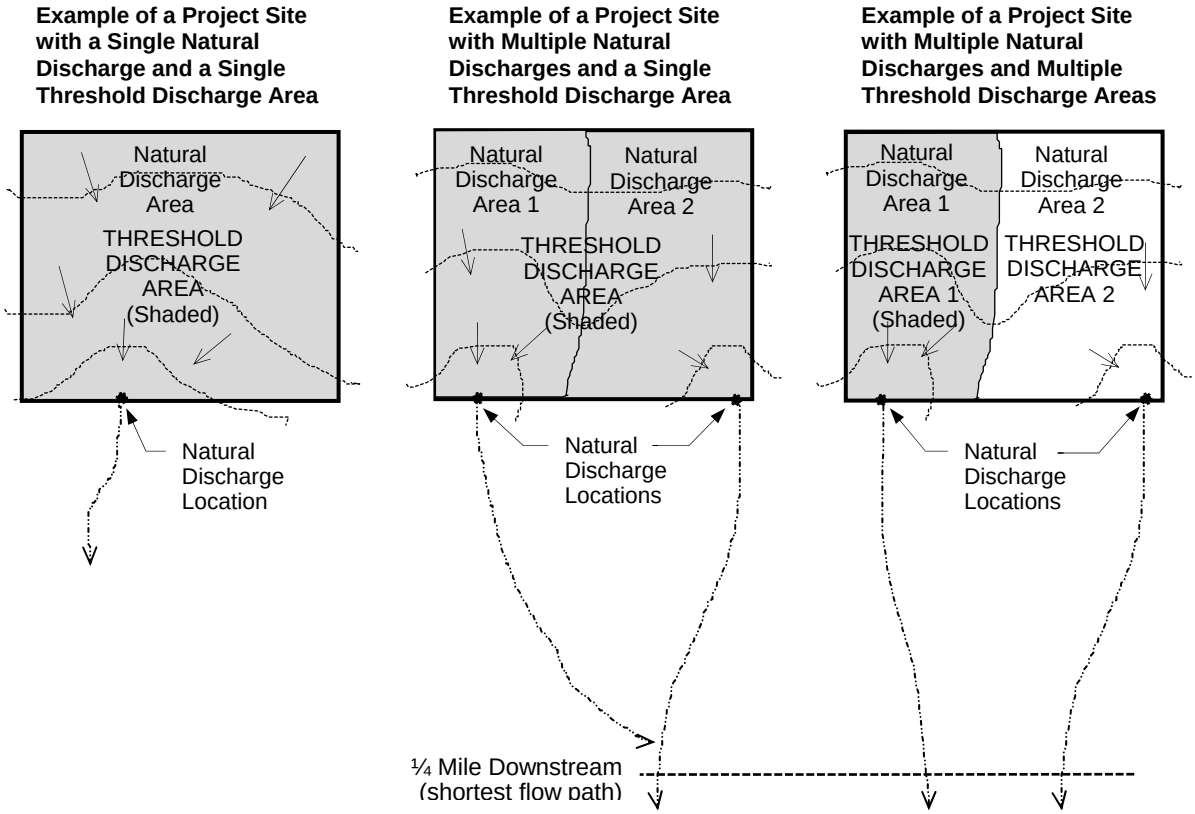
Target PGIS means a pollution-generating impervious surface from which runoff impacts to water quality are required to be mitigated by the area-specific water quality facility requirement (see "pollution-generating impervious surface").

Target PGPS means a pollution-generating pervious surface from which runoff impacts to water quality are required to be mitigated by the area-specific water quality facility requirement (see "pollution-generating pervious surface").

Temperature problem means a stream reach, lake, or other waterbody of the state that is either (1) currently designated by the state as a Category 5, 4, or 2 Water due to exceedance or concern for exceedance of the state's numeric water quality standard for temperature as documented in the state's latest published Clean Water Act Section 303d list (an electronic map of these waterbodies is posted at http://apps.ecy.wa.gov/wqawa/viewer.htm), or (2) is currently designated by the County as a temperature problem based on credible data indicating exceedance or concern for exceedance of the state's numeric water quality standard for temperature as documented in the latest published list of King County-Identified WQ Problems (Reference Section 10) posted at http://www.kingcounty.gov/environment/waterandland/stormwater/documents/surface-water-design-manual.aspx.

Temporary ESC Measures means those erosion and sediment control measures implemented before final stabilization of the site to reduce erosion, control siltation and sedimentation, and prevent the discharge of sediment-laden water from the site.

Threshold discharge area means an onsite area draining to a single natural discharge location, or multiple natural discharge locations that combine within one-quarter-mile downstream (as determined by the shortest flowpath). The examples below illustrate this definition. This term is used to clarify how the thresholds, exemptions, and exceptions of this manual are applied to project sites with multiple discharge points.



Tightline means a continuous length of pipe that conveys water from one point to another (typically down a steep slope) with no inlets or collection points in between.

Tightline system means a continuous length of pipe used to convey flows down a steep or sensitive slope with appropriate energy dissipation at the discharge end.

Till means a layer of poorly sorted soil deposited by glacial action; in the King County area, till typically has a high silt content (see Section 3.2.2.1 for a description of soil groups).

Time of concentration means the time it takes runoff to travel overland (from the onset of precipitation) from the most hydraulically distant location in the drainage basin to the point of discharge.

Total phosphorous (TP) means a naturally occurring element essential for plant growth. Total phosphorous includes both dissolved and particulate phases of phosphorous. Excess phosphorous can cause excess algae growth in lakes and streams, resulting in aesthetic problems and threats to aquatic life.

Total suspended solids (TSS) means that portion of the solids carried by stormwater that can be caught on a standard glass filter. Additional pollutants such as metals and organics are often associated with the finer portion of the solids.

Toxic means poisonous, carcinogenic, or otherwise directly harmful to life.

Tract means a legally created parcel of property designated for special non-residential and non-commercial uses.

Transportation redevelopment project means a stand-alone transportation improvement project that proposes to add, replace, or modify impervious surface, for purposes other than maintenance, within a length of dedicated public or private road right-of-way that has an existing impervious surface coverage of thirty-five percent or more. Road

right-of-way improvements required as part of a subdivision or commercial development project may not be defined as a separate transportation redevelopment project.

Travel time means the estimated time for surface water to flow between two points of interest.

Treatment train means a combination of two or more treatment facilities connected in series (i.e., the design water volume passes through each facility in turn).

Tributary means a drainage feature that collects water and conveys it to another drainage feature (e.g., a drainage channel is tributary to a stream into which it flows).

Tributary area means the geographical area (not constrained by property boundaries) that drains to the point of concern.

Turbidity means the dispersion or scattering of light in a liquid, caused by suspended solids and other factors: commonly used as a measure of suspended solids in a liquid.

Turbidity problem means a stream reach, lake, or other waterbody of the state that is either (1) currently designated by the state as a Category 5, 4, or 2 Water due to exceedance or concern for exceedance of the state's numeric water quality standard for turbidity as documented in the state's latest published Clean Water Act Section 303d list (an electronic map of these waterbodies is posted at http://apps.ecy.wa.gov/wqawa/viewer.htm), or (2) is currently designated by the County as a turbidity problem based on credible data indicating exceedance or concern for exceedance of the state's numeric water quality standard for turbidity as documented in the latest published list of King County-Identified WQ Problems (Reference Section 10) posted at http://www.kingcounty.gov/environment/waterandland/stormwater/documents/surface-water-design-manual.aspx.

Undisturbed buffer means a zone where development activity, including logging and the construction of utility trenches, roads, and/or surface and storm water drainage facility systems, shall not occur.

Undisturbed low gradient uplands means forested land that is sufficiently large and flat to infiltrate surface and storm runoff without allowing the concentration of water on the surface of the ground.

Urban residential development means proposed plats or short plats in urban residential zoning per KCC 21.A12. These development proposals generally lie within the Urban Growth Area and create small (generally less than 10,000 square foot) lots.

Water quality facility means a drainage facility designed to reduce pollutants once they are already contained in surface and storm water runoff. Water quality (WQ) facilities are a structural component of best management practices (BMPs). When used singly or in combination, WQ facilities reduce the potential for contamination of both surface and ground waters.

Water quality treatment area means a geographic area of the County within which proposed projects must comply with the water quality facility requirements adopted for that area as part of this manual. There are three such areas that comprise unincorporated King County: the Basic WQ Treatment Area, the Sensitive Lake WQ Treatment Area, and the Sphagnum Bog WQ Treatment Area. These areas are mapped on the Water Quality Applications Map adopted with this manual and on the County's Geographic Information System.

Watershed means the geographic region from which water drains toward a central collector such as a stream, river, lake, or salt water.

Wetpool means the volume of water more or less permanently contained in a pond or vault. The volume of water in a wetpool is normally lost only through natural processes such as evaporation, evapotranspiration, or slow infiltration into the ground.

Wetpond and **wetvault** mean drainage facilities for water quality treatment that contain a permanent pool of water. They are designed to optimize water quality by providing long retention times (on the order of a week or more) to settle out particles of fine sediment to which pollutants such as heavy metals adsorb, and to allow biologic activity to occur that metabolizes nutrients and organic pollutants. For wetvaults, the permanent pool of water is covered by a lid which blocks sunlight from entering the facility, limiting light-dependent biologic activity.

Wetland means an area that is not an aquatic area and that is inundated or saturated by ground or surface water at a frequency and duration sufficient to support, and under normal circumstances supports, a prevalence of vegetation typically adapted for life in saturated soil conditions. For purposes of this definition:

- Where the vegetation has been removed or substantially altered, wetland is determined by the presence or evidence of hydric soil, by other documentation such as aerial photographs of the previous existence of wetland vegetation or by any other manner authorized in the wetland delineation manual required by RCW 36.70A.175; and
- Except for artificial features intentionally made for purposes of mitigation, wetland does not include an artificial feature made from a non-wetland area, which may include, but is not limited to a surface water conveyance for drainage or irrigation; a grass-lined swale; a canal; a flow control facility; a wastewater treatment facility; a farm pond; a wetpond; landscape amenities; or a wetland created after July 1, 1990, that was unintentionally made as a result of construction of a road, street or highway.

Wetland edge means the line delineating the outer edge of a wetland, consistent with the wetland delineation manual required by RCW 36.70A.175.

Wet Season means October 1 to April 30.

WQ means water quality.

Zero-rise floodway means the channel of a stream and that portion of the adjoining floodplain that is necessary to contain and discharge the base flood flow without measurable increase in the base flood elevation. For the purpose of this definition, "measurable increase in base flood elevation" means a calculated upward rise in the base flood elevation, equal to or greater than 0.01 foot, resulting from a comparison of existing conditions and changed conditions directly attributable to alterations of the topography or any other flow obstructions in the floodplain. The "zero rise floodway" is broader than that of the FEMA floodway but always includes the FEMA floodway. The "zero-rise floodway" includes the entire floodplain unless a critical areas report demonstrates otherwise.

Zinc means one of several metals of concern in the aquatic environment, and is used as an indicator of a whole range of metals found in urban runoff.